

P. P. 5262. aa.

THE
Novelist's Magazine.

VOL. IV.

CONTAINING

Gil Blas,
and
Robinson Crusoe.



LONDON:

Printed for Harrison and C^o

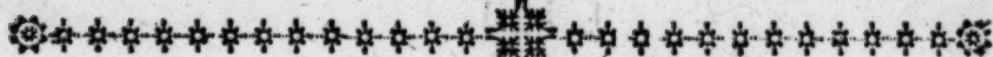
N^o 18, Paternoster-Row.

17 81.

128

11





Le Sage

THE

AUTHOR'S DECLARATION.

AS there are some people who cannot read, without making applications of the vicious and ludicrous characters they meet with in works of this kind, I declare to these evil-minded readers, that they will be to blame, if they apply any of the pictures drawn in this book. I publicly own, that my purpose is, to represent life as we find it; but God forbid, that I should undertake to delineate any man in particular! Let no reader, therefore, assume to himself that which as properly belongs to others; lest, as Phædrus observes, he make an unlucky discovery of his own character. *Stulte nudabit animi conscientiam.* There are physicians in Castile, as well as in France, whose practice consists in evacuating their patients a little too much; and the same vices and peculiarities of disposition, are to be seen every where. I confess, that I have not always exactly observed the manners of the Spaniards; and those who are acquainted with the disorderly lives of the players at Madrid, may reproach me with having described their irregularities with too much tenderness: but I thought it was necessary to soften them a little, that they might be the more conformable to the manners of our own country.

GIL BLAS TO THE READER.

GENTLE reader, before thou readest the history of my life, give me leave to entertain thee with a short story.

Two scholars, in their way from Pennafiel to Salamanca, being thirsty and fatigued, sat down by a spring they met with on the road: there, while they rested themselves, after having quenched their thirst, they perceived, by accident, upon a stone that was even with the surface of the earth, some letters, already half effaced by time, and the feet of flocks that came to water at the fountain: having washed it, they read these words in the Castilian tongue; *Aquí está encerrada el alma del Licenciado Pedro Garcias:* 'Here is interred, the soul of the Licenciado Peter Garcias.' The younger of the two students, being a pert coxcomb, no sooner read this inscription, than he cried with a loud laugh: 'A good joke, i'faith! here is interred the soul—a soul interred! Who the devil could be the author of such a wise epitaph!' So saying, he got up and went away; while his companion, who was blessed with a greater share of penetration, said to himself, 'There is certainly some mystery in this affair: I'll stay, in order to unriddle it.' Accordingly, his

B

comrade

comrade was no sooner out of sight, than he began to dig with his knife all round the stone; and succeeded so well, that he got it up, and found beneath it, a leathern purse, containing an hundred ducats, and a card on which was written the following sentence, in Latin: ' Whosoever thou art, who hast wit enough to discover the meaning of the inscription, inherit my money, and make a better use of it than I have done.' The scholar, rejoiced at his good fortune, placed the stone in it's former situation, and walked home to Salamanca, with the soul of the licenciado.

Of what complexion soever thou mayest be, friendly reader, thou wilt certainly resemble one of those two scholars; for, if thou perusest my adventures, without perceiving the moral instructions they contain, thou wilt reap no harvest from thy labour; but, if thou redest with attention, thou wilt find in them, according to the precept of Horace, profit mingled with pleasure.

THE



THE
ADVENTURES
OF
GIL BLAS
OF
SANTILANE.

VOLUME THE FIRST.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

OF THE BIRTH AND EDUCATION
OF GIL BLAS.



MY father, Blas of Santillane, after having carried arms many years in the service of the Spanish monarchy, retired to the town in which he was born, where he chose a wife among the second-rate citizens; who, though she was no chicken, brought me into the world ten months after her marriage. They afterwards removed to Oviedo, where my mother became a waiting-woman, and my father squire to a lady*: and as they had nothing but their wages to depend upon, I should have run the hazard of being very poorly educated, had it not been my good fortune to have a canon for my uncle, whose name was Gil

Perez: he was my mother's eldest brother, as well as my godfather; a little man, three feet and an half high, excessive fat, with his head sunk between his shoulders; otherwise, an honest priest, whose chief care was to live well, that is, to make good cheer; and his living, which was no lean one, furnished him with the means.

He carried me home to his house, while an infant, and took the charge of my education; and I appeared so sprightly, that he resolved to cultivate my genius. With this view, he bought for me an hornbook, and undertook (himself) to learn me to read; a task no less useful to him than to me: for, in teaching me my letters, he had recourse to his reading, which he had always neglected too much; and, by dint of application, enabled himself to read his breviary without hesitation; a qualification he had never been possessed of before. He had all the inclination in the world, to instruct me

* Squire, or gentleman-usher, (in Spanish, *escudero*) is a person who waits on a lady. Formerly, decayed gentlemen were entertained by the nobility for this purpose; they derived their appellation, from those eminent squires, whose office was to carry the shield (in Spain called *escudo*) of their master.

in the Latin tongue also, because it would have been too much money saved to him: but, alas, poor Gil Perez! he had never in his life understood the rudiments of that language, and was, perhaps, (but this I do not vouch for certainly) the most illiterate canon of the whole chapter. I have been told, indeed, that he had not obtained his benefice by his erudition; but owed it entirely to the gratitude of some pious nuns, for whom he had acted the part of a zealous commissioner, and by whose influence the order of priesthood had been conferred upon him without examination.

He was, therefore, obliged to subject me to the birch of a schoolmaster, and accordingly sent me to the house of Dr. Godinez, who was esteemed the most expert flogger in Oviedo. I improved so well under his instructions, that in five or six years I understood a little Greek; was a pretty good Latin scholar; and applying myself also to logick, began to argue apace: I was so much in love with dispute, that I stopped passengers, known or unknown, and proposed arguments to them; and sometimes meeting with Hibernian geniuses, who were very glad of the occasion, it was a good jest to see us dispute: by our extravagant gestures, grimace, contortions, our eyes full of fury, and our mouths full of foam, one would have taken us for bedlamites, rather than philosophers.

By these means, however, I acquired the reputation of a great scholar, in town; a circumstance that pleased my uncle extremely, as he foresaw that I should not be much longer an expence to him. 'Hark'e, Gil Blas,' said he to me one day; 'thou art no longer a child, and it is high time for a brisk lad of seventeen, like thee, to push thy fortune in the world: I am determined to send thee to Salamanca, where, with such genius and learning, thou canst not fail of obtaining some good post: thou shalt have some ducats in thy pocket, to bear thy expences on the road; and I will give thee my own mule, which thou mayest sell at Salamanca for ten or twelve pistoles, and live upon the money until thou shalt be settled to thy satisfaction.'

He could not have proposed any thing more agreeable to me; for I passionately

longed to see the world: nevertheless, I had discretion enough to conceal my joy; and when the time of my departure arrived, affecting the most lively sorrow at leaving an uncle to whom I owed so many obligations; the honest man was melted, and gave me more money than he would have done, could he have seen to the bottom of my heart. Before I set out, I went to take leave of my father and mother, who enriched me with advice; exhorted me to pray to God for my uncle; to live inoffensively; to eschew evil; and, by all means, to refrain from stealing. After they had held forth a good while, they made me a present of their blessing, which was all I expected from them; and I, mounting my mule, bade adieu to Oviedo.

CHAP. II.

OF HIS BEING GRIEVOUSLY ALARMED IN HIS WAY TO PENNAFLOR: OF HIS CONDUCT IN THAT TOWN; WITH AN ACCOUNT OF A PERSON WHO SUPPED WITH HIM.

BEHOLD me then in the open field, clear of Oviedo, on the road to Pennaflor, master of my own conduct, of a sorry mule, and forty good ducats, exclusive of some rials, which I had stolen from my much honoured uncle. The first thing I did, was to let my beast go at discretion, that is, very gently; and throwing the bridle on her neck, I emptied my purse into my hat, and amused myself in counting my money: my joy was excessive; and as I had never seen so much cash before, I handled and gazed at it with insatiable delight. I had reckoned it, perhaps, twenty times over, when, all of a sudden, my mule raising her head; and pricking up her ears, stopped in the middle of the highway. Imagining she was frightened at something, I looked about to see what was the matter, and perceived upon the ground, an old hat, turned up, with a rosary of great beads in it; at the same time, heard a lamentable voice pronounce these words: 'Mr. traveller, for God's sake, have pity on a poor maimed soldier: drop, if you please, a few bits into the hat, and

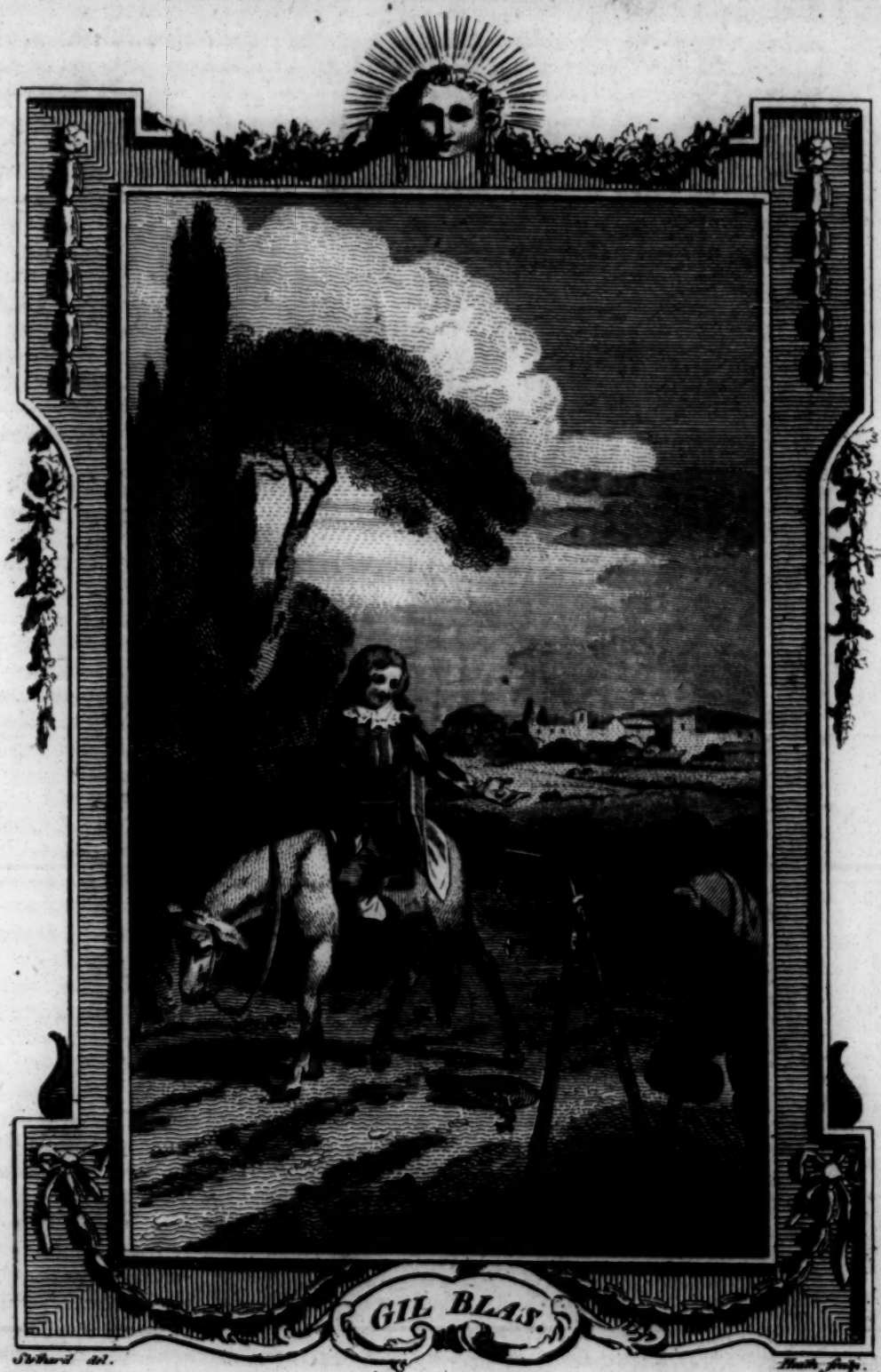


Plate I.

Published as the Act directs, by Hurd & Co, Dec^r 25th 1780.



and you shall be rewarded in heaven.' I turned my eyes immediately on the side from whence the voice issued, and saw, at the root of a bush, about twenty or thirty paces from me, a kind of foldier, who, upon two cross sticks, supported the barrel of a carbine, in my apprehension, longer than a pike, with which he seemed to take aim at me: at this apparition, which made me quake for the church's money, I stopped short, and pocketing my ducats in a great hurry, took out some rials, approaching the hat, that was exposed for the reception of the extorted charity, and dropped them into it, one after another, that the beggar might see how nobly I used him. He was satisfied with the bounty, and gave me a benediction for every kick that I bestowed on the sides of my mule, in order to get out of his reach; but the plaguy beast, regardless of my impatience, moved not a step the faster, having lost the power of galloping, by a long habit of carrying my uncle at her own leisure.

I did not look upon this adventure as a very favourable omen for my journey; I reflected that I might meet with something still worse, before I should arrive at Salamanca; and could not help blaming my uncle's imprudence, for having neglected to put me under the direction of a carrier. This, to be sure, was what he ought to have done; but he imagined that, by giving me his mule, my journey would be the less expensive; and he had more regard to that consideration, than to the dangers I might be exposed to on the road. In order, therefore, to repair his mismanagement, I determined (as soon as I should arrive at Pennasflor) to sell the mule, and take the opportunity of a carrier for Astorga, from whence I could transport myself to Salamanca by the same convenience; for, although I had never been out of Oviedo, I was not ignorant of the names of the towns through which I must pass, having informed myself of these things before I set out.

I arrived in safety at Pennasflor, and, halting at the gate of an inn that made a tolerable appearance, I no sooner alighted than the landlord came out, and received me with great civility; he untied my portmanteau with his own hands, and throwing it on his shoul-

der, conducted me into a room, while one of his servants led my mule into the stable. This inn-keeper, the greatest talker of the Asturias, and as ready to relate his own affairs, without being asked, as to pry into those of another, told me that his name was Andrew Corcuero; that he had served many years in the king's army, in quality of a serjeant; and had quitted the service fifteen months ago, to marry a damsel of Castropol, who (though she was a little swarthy) knew very well how to turn the penny. He said a thousand other things, which I could have dispensed with the hearing of; but after having made me his confidant, he thought he had a right to exact the same condescension from me; and accordingly asked whence I came, whether I was going, and what I was. I was obliged to answer, article by article; for he accompanied every question with a profound bow, and begged me to excuse his curiosity with such a respectful air, that I could not refuse to satisfy him in every particular. This engaged me in a long conversation with him, and gave me occasion to mention my design, and the reasons I had for disposing of my mule, that I might take the opportunity of a carrier. He approved of my intention, though not in a very succinct manner; for he represented all the troublesome accidents that might befall me on the road; he recounted many dismal stories of travellers, and I began to be afraid he would never have done; he concluded at length, however, with telling me, that if I had a mind to sell my mule, he was acquainted with a very honest jocky who would buy her. I assured him he would oblige me in sending for him; upon which he went in quest of him immediately, with great eagerness. It was not long before he returned with his man, whom he introduced to me as a person of exceeding honesty, and we went into the yard all together, where my mule was produced, and passed and repassed before the jocky, who examined her from head to foot, and did not fail to speak very disadvantageously of her. I own there was not much to be said in her praise; but, however, had it been the pope's mule, he would have found some defects in her. He assured me, that she had all the faults a mule could have;

have; and, to convince me of his veracity, appealed to the landlord, who, doubtless, had his reasons for supporting his friend's assertions. 'Well,' said this dealer, with an air of indifference, 'how much money do you expect for this wretched animal?' After the eulogium he had bestowed on her, and the attestation of Signior Corcuelo, whom I believed to be a man of honesty and understanding, I would have given my mule for nothing; and therefore told him I would rely on his integrity; bidding him appraise the beast in his own conscience, and I would stand to the valuation. Upon this he assumed the man of honour, and replied, that in engaging his conscience, I took him on the weak side: in good sooth, that did not seem to be his strong side; for instead of valuing her at ten or twelve pittoles, as my uncle had done, he fixed the price at three ducats, which I accepted with as much joy as if I had made an excellent bargain.

After having so advantageously disposed of my mule, the landlord conducted me to a carrier, who was to set out the next day for Astorga. This muleteer let me know, that he would depart before day-break, and promised to awake me in time, after we had agreed upon the price, as well for the hire of a mule as for my board on the road; and when every thing was settled between us, I returned to the inn with Corcuelo, who, by the way, began to recount the carrier's history; he told me every circumstance of his character in town; and, in short, was going to stupify me again with his intolerable loquacity, when, luckily for me, a man of a pretty good appearance prevented my misfortune, by accosting him with great civility. I left them together, and went on, without suspecting that I had the least concern in their conversation. When I arrived at the inn, I called for supper, and it being a meagre day, was fain to put up with eggs; which while they got ready, I made up to my landlady, whom I had not seen before: she appeared handsome enough, and withal so sprightly and gay, that I should have concluded (even if her husband had not told me so) that her house was pretty well frequented. When the amlet I had bespoke was ready, I sat down to

table by myself; and had not yet swallowed the first morsel when the landlord came in, followed by the man who had stopped him in the street. This cavalier, who wore a long sword, and seemed to be about thirty years of age, advanced towards me with an eager air, saying, 'Mr. Student, I am informed that you are that Signior Gil Blas of Santillane, who is the link of philosophy and ornament of Oviedo! Is it possible that you are that mirror of learning, that sublime genius, whose reputation is so great in this country?—You know not,' continued he, addressing himself to the inn-keeper and his wife, 'you know not what you possess! You have a treasure in your house! Behold, in this young gentleman, the eighth wonder of the world!' Then turning to me, and throwing his arms about my neck, 'Forgive,' cried he, 'my transports! I cannot contain the joy that your presence creates!'

I could not answer for some time, because he locked me so close in his arms, that I was almost suffocated for want of breath; and it was not till I had disengaged my head from his embrace, that I replied, 'Signior Cavalier, I did not think my name was known at Pennasfor.'—'How! known!' resumed he, in his former strain; 'we keep a register of all the celebrated names within twenty leagues of us: you, in particular, are looked upon as a prodigy; and I don't at all doubt, that Spain will one day be as proud of you, as Greece was of her Seven Sages.' These words were followed by a fresh hug; which I was enforced to endure, though at the risk of strangulation. With the little experience I had, I ought not to have been the dupe of his professions and hyperbolical compliments: I ought to have known, by his extravagant flattery, that he was one of those parasites which abound in every town, and who, when a stranger arrives, introduce themselves to him, in order to fill their bellies at his expence: but my youth and vanity made me judge quite otherwise; my admirer appeared to me so much of a gentleman, that I invited him to take a share of my supper. 'Ay, with all my soul!' cried he; 'I am too much obliged to my kind stars, for having thrown me in the

‘ the way of the illustrious Gil Blas, not to enjoy my good fortune as long as I can! I have no great appetite,’ pursued he, ‘ but I will sit down to bear you company, and eat a mouthful, purely out of complaisance.’

So saying, my panegyrist took his place right over-against me; and, a cover being laid for him, attacked the amlet as voraciously as if he had fasted three whole days: by his complaisant beginning, I foresaw that our dish would not last long, and therefore ordered a second; which they dressed with such dispatch, that it was served just as we—or rather he—had made an end of the first. He proceeded on this with the same vigour; and found means, without losing one stroke of his teeth, to overwhelm me with praises during the whole repast, which made me very well pleased with my sweet self. He drank in proportion to his eating; sometimes to my health, sometimes to that of my father and mother; whose happiness, in having such a son as me, he could not enough admire. All the while he plied me with wine, and insisted upon my doing him justice, while I toasted health for health; a circumstance which, together with his intoxicating flattery, put me into such good humour, that seeing our second amlet half devoured, I asked the landlord, if he had no fish in the house. Signior Corcuélo, who, in all likelihood, had a fellow-feeling with the parasite, replied, ‘ I have a delicate trout, but those who eat it must pay for the sauce:—’tis a bit too dainty for your palate, I doubt.’—‘ What do you call too dainty?’ said the sycophant, raising his voice; ‘ you’re a wife-acre, indeed! know, that there is nothing in this house too good for Signior Gil Blas de Santillane, who deserves to be entertained like a prince!’

I was pleased at his laying hold of the landlord’s last words, in which he prevented me; who, finding myself offended, said, with an air of disdain, ‘ Produce this trout of yours, Gaffer Corcuélo, and give yourself no trouble about the consequence.’ This was what the inn-keeper wanted: he got it ready, and served it up in a trice. At sight of this new dish, I could perceive the parasite’s eye sparkle with joy; and he renewed that complaisance—I mean for the fish—which he had al-

ready shewn for the eggs. At last, however, he was obliged to give out, for fear of accident; being crammed to the very throat: having, therefore, eaten and drank his bellyful, he thought proper to conclude the farce, by rising from table, and accosting me in these words: ‘ Signior Gil Blas, I am too well satisfied with your good cheer to leave you, without offering an important advice, which you seem to have great occasion for; henceforth beware of praise, and be upon your guard against every body you do not know. You may meet with other people inclined to divert themselves with your credulity, and perhaps, to push things still farther; but don’t be duped again, nor believe yourself (though they should swear it) the eighth wonder of the world.’ So saying, he laughed in my face, and stalked away. I was as much affected by this bite, as I have since been by misfortunes of far greater consequence. I could not forgive myself, for having been so grossly imposed upon; or rather, I was shocked to find my pride so humbled: ‘ How!’ said I to myself, ‘ has the traitor, then, made a jest of me? His design in accosting my landlord in the street, was only to pump him; or perhaps they understood one another! Ah, simple Gil Blas! go hang thyself, for shame, for having given such calls an opportunity of turning thee into ridicule! I suppose they’ll trump up a fine story of this affair, which will reach Oviedo, and, doubtless, do thee a great deal of honour; and make thy parents repent their having thrown away so much good counsel on an ass. Instead of exhorting me not to wrong any body, they ought to have cautioned me against the knavery of the world!’ Chagrined with these mortifying reflections, and inflamed with resentment, I locked myself in my chamber, and went to bed: where, however, I did not sleep; for, before I could close my eyes, the carrier came to let me know he was ready to set out, and only waited for me. I got up instantly; and while I put on my cloaths, Corcuélo brought me a bill, in which, I assure you, the trout was not forgotten: and I was not only obliged to gratify his exorbitance, but I had also the mortification to per-

ceive,

cive, while I counted the money, that the farcaudick knave remembered my adventure. After having paid sauce for a supper which I had so ill digested, I went to the muleteer with my bags, wishing the parasite, the inn-keeper, and his inn, at the devil.

C H A P. III.

OF THE CARRIER'S TEMPTATION ON THE ROAD, AND IT'S CONSEQUENCE. HOW GIL BLAS, IN ATTEMPTING TO GET OUT OF THE FRYING-PAN, FELL INTO THE FIRE.

I Was not the only person who travelled with the carrier, there being in company two children belonging to a gentleman at Pennafior, a little strolling ballad-singer of Mondonedo, and a young tradesman of Astorga, who was bringing home a girl whom he had married at Verco. We became acquainted with one another presently; and every one, in a very short time, told whence he came, and whither he was going. The new-married lady was so stupid and tawny, that I had no great pleasure in looking at her; but her youth and plumpness had a different effect upon the carrier, who resolved to make an attempt upon her inclinations: he spent the whole day in projecting this noble design, the execution of which he deferred until we should arrive at our last stage, which happened to be at Cacabelos. He accordingly made us alight at the first inn we came to, a house situated rather in the country than the town, the landlord of which he knew to be a complaisant and discreet person. He took care to have us conducted into a remote apartment, where he allowed us to sup in tranquillity; but when our meal was ended, he entered with a furious look, crying, 'Blood and coons! I am robbed of one hundred pistoles, which I had in a leathern bag, and I must find them immediately; otherwise I will apply to the magistrate of the place, who is no joker in these matters, and have you all put to the rack, till such time as you confess the crime, and restore the money.' Having pronounced these dreadful words with a very natural air,

he went out, leaving us all in the utmost consternation.

As we were strangers to each other, none of us had the least suspicion of the finesse; for my own part, I suspected that the poor ballad-singer had done the deed; and, perhaps, he had the same opinion of me. Besides, we were all raw fools, utterly ignorant of the formalities used in such cases, and believed in good earnest, that the process would be begun by putting us all to the torture. Giving way, therefore, to our fear, we evacuated the room in a great hurry, some running into the street, others flying into the garden, and every one betaking himself to his heels for safety. Among the rest, the young tradesman of Astorga, as much scared as any of us at the thoughts of the torture, made his escape, like another Æneas, without incommoding himself with his wife. It was then that the carrier, (as I have since learned) more incontinent than his mules, and overjoyed to see his stratagem succeed according to his expectation, went to the bride, boasted of his own ingenuity, and endeavoured to profit by the occasion: but this Lucrece of the Asturias, to whom the villainous aspect of her tempter lent new strength, made a vigorous resistance, and screamed most powerfully. The patrolle, which happened at that instant to pass by the house that they knew deserved their attention, went in, and demanded the reason of those cries: upon which the landlord, who sat singing in the kitchen, and pretended to know nothing of the matter, was obliged to conduct the officer and his guard into the chamber of the person who made the noise. They arrived very seasonably, the chaste Asturian being quite exhausted; and the commander (who was none of the most delicate people in the world) perceiving what was the matter, gave the amorous muleteer a wooden salutation with the handle of his halbert, addressing him at the same time in terms as inconsistent with modesty as the action that suggested them. This was not all; he apprehended the criminal, and carried him before the judge, together with his accuser; who, notwithstanding her disorder, would have gone of herself to crave justice for the outrage that was committed upon her. The

The magistrate having heard, and attentively considered the cause, found the defendant guilty; caused him to be stripped and scourged in his presence; and ordered that, if the husband of the plaintiff should not appear before next day, she should be escorted to Astorga by two horsemen, at the charge of the delinquent.

As for me, more terrified, perhaps, than the rest, I got into the country; and crossing I don't know how many fields and heaths, and leaping all the ditches I found in my way, I arrived at last at the border of a wood, and was just going into it, with a view of concealing myself in some thicket, when all of a sudden, two men on horseback appeared before me, and called, 'Who goes there?' As my surprize hindered me from making immediate answer, they advanced; and each clapping a pistol to my throat, commanded me to tell who I was, whence I came, my business in the forest, and, above all things, to hide nothing from them. To these interrogations, the manner of which seemed to me equal to the rack with which the carrier had threatened us, I replied, that I was a lad of Oviedo, going to Salamanca; recounted the alarm we had undergone, and confessed, that the fear of being put to the torture had induced me to run away. They burst out into a loud laugh at this discovery, which manifested the simplicity of my heart; and one of them said, 'Take courage, friend; come along with us, and fear nothing: we will put thee in a place of safety.' So saying, he made me get up behind him, and then we retreated into the wood.

Though I did not know what to make of this rencounter, I did not preface any thing bad from it: 'for,' said I to myself, 'if these people were thieves, they would have robbed, and perhaps murdered me, at once: they must certainly be honest gentlemen, who live hard by, and who, seeing me in a panic, have pity on my condition, and carry me home with them out of charity.' But I did not long remain in suspense; for, after several windings and turnings, which we performed in great silence, we came to the foot of a hill, where we alighted; and one of the horsemen said to me, 'This is our

'dwelling-place.' I looked around, but could perceive neither house, hut, nor the least appearance of any habitation: nevertheless, these two men lifted up a huge wooden trap-door, covered with earth and brambles, which concealed the entrance of a long shelving passage under ground, into which the horses went of themselves, like beasts that were used to it; while the cavaliers, taking the same path, made me follow them; then lowering the cover, with cords fastened to the inside for that purpose, behold the worthy kinsman of my uncle Perez caught like a mouse in a trap!

CHAP. IV.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE SUBTERRANEAN HABITATION, AND OF WHAT GIL BLAS OBSERVED THEREIN.

I Now discovered my situation, and any one may easily believe that this discovery effectually dispelled my former fear: a terror more mighty, and better founded, took possession of my soul! I laid my account with losing my life as well as my ducats; and looking upon myself as a victim led to the altar, walked (more dead than alive) between my two conductors, who, feeling me tremble, exhorted me in vain to fear nothing. When we had gone about two hundred paces, turning and descending all the way, we entered into a stable, lighted by two great iron lamps hanging from the arch above. Here I saw plenty of straw, and a good many casks full of provender: there was room enough for twenty horses; but at that time there were only the two that we brought along with us, which an old negro, who seemed vigorous for his years, was tying to a rack. We went out of the stable, and by the dismal glimmer of some lamps, that seemed to enlighten the place only to shew the horrors of it, came to a kitchen, where an old cook-maid was busy in broiling steaks, and providing for supper. The kitchen was adorned with all necessary utensils; and hard by, there was a larder stored with all sorts of provisions. The cook (for I must draw her picture)

C

was

was a person somewhat turned of sixty: in her youth the hair of her head had been red as a carrot; for time had not as yet so much bleached it, but that one might still perceive some shades of it's primitive colour: she had an olive complexion, a chin pointed and prominent, with lips fallen in, a huge aquiline nose that hung over her mouth, and eyes that flamed in purple.

'Well, dame Leonarda,' said one of the gentlemen, presenting me to this fair angel of darkness, 'here's a young man we have brought for you.' Then turning to me, and observing me pale and dismayed, 'Friend,' said he, 'banish thy fear; we will do thee no harm. Having occasion for a servant to assist our cook-maid, we met with thee, and happy it is for thee we did: thou shalt here supply the place of a young fellow, who let himself die about fifteen days ago: he was a lad of a very delicate complexion; but thou seemest to be more robust, and wilt not die so soon: indeed, thou wilt never see the light of the sun again; but in lieu of that, thou shalt have good cheer, and a rousing fire. Thou shalt pass thy time with Leonarda, who is a very gentle creature, and enjoy all thy little conveniences. I will shew thee,' added he, 'that thou hast not got among beggars.' With these words he took up a flambeau, and, bidding me follow him, carried me into a cellar, where I saw an infinite number of bottles and jars well corked, which, he told me, were filled with excellent wine. He afterwards made me pass through divers apartments, some of which contained bales of linen, others of silks and stuffs: in one I perceived gold and silver, and a great quantity of plate in different cupboards. Then I followed him into a large hall, illuminated by three branches of copper, which also gave light to the rooms that communicated with it: here he put fresh questions to me; asked my name, and reason for leaving Oviedo; and when I had satisfied his curiosity in these particulars, 'Well,

'Gil Blas,' said he, 'since thy design in quitting the place of thy nativity was to obtain some good post, thou must certainly have been born with a cawl upon thy head, seeing thou hast fallen into our hands. I have already told thee, that thou shalt live here in affluence, and roll upon gold and silver: nay, more, thou shalt be safe; for such is the contrivance of this retreat, that the officers of the holy brotherhood may come into the wood an hundred times without discovering it. The entry is unknown to every living soul, except me and my comrades: perhaps thou wilt wonder how it could be executed without being perceived by the people in the neighbourhood! Know, then, my lad, that this is not a work of our hands, but was made many years ago; for, after the Moors had got possession of Grenada, Arragon, and almost the whole of Spain, the christians, rather than submit to the yoke of infidels, fled, and concealed themselves in this country, in Biscay, and in the Asturias, whither the valiant Don Pelagio retired: fugitives, and dispersed in small numbers, they lived in mountains and woods; some lurked in caves, and others contrived many subterranean abodes, of which number this is one. Having afterwards been so lucky as to drive their enemies out of Spain, they returned into the towns; and, since that time, their retreats have served for asylums to people of our profession. It is true, indeed, the holy brotherhood* have discovered and destroyed some of them; but there are still plenty remaining; and, thank Heaven, I have lived here in safety near fifteen years; my name is Captain Rolando: I am chief of the company, and he whom thou sawest with me is one of my gang.'

CHAP. V.

OF THE ARRIVAL OF MORE THIEVES
IN THE SUBTERRANEAN HABITATION,

* The Holy Brotherhood in Spain, called *la Santa Hermandad*, was formerly an association to suppress robbers, in times of civil commotion; and at this day, is an establishment kept up through all the kingdoms and provinces of Spain for the same purpose.

gn
ity
ou
ith
ou
ve
ive
old
be
of
the
he
if-
wn
nd
ilt
ted
co-
w,
rk
ny
ad
on,
the
the
led
if-
the
gi-
m-
nd
nd
can
ne,
as
in,
nd,
ave
our
the
red
but
nd,
in
me
of
hou
g.



VE6
BI-

an
ame

ON,



Plate X

Published as the Act directs by Harrison & C^o Feb^y 24 1781.

TATION, AND THE AGREEABLE
CONVERSATION THAT PASSED
AMONG THEM,

SIGNIOR Rolando had scarce done speaking, when six new faces appeared in the hall; these were the lieutenant with five of the company, who returned loaded with booty, which consisted of two hampers full of sugar, cinnamon, pepper, dried figs, almonds and raisins. The lieutenant addressing himself to the captain, told him, that he had taken these hampers from a grocer of Benavento, whose mule he had also carried off. When he had given an account of his expedition to his superior, the pillage of the grocer was ordered into the store, and it was unanimously agreed to make merry. A table being covered in the great hall, I was sent back into the kitchen, where dame Leonarda instructed me in the nature of my office; and, yielding to necessity, (since my cruel fate had so ordained) I suppressed my sorrow, and prepared myself for the service of those worthy gentlemen.

My first essay was on the side-board, which I adorned with silver cups, and many stone bottles of that good wine which Signior Rolando praised so much. I afterwards brought in two ragouts, which were no sooner served, than the whole company sat down to eat. They began with a good appetite, while I stood behind, ready to supply them with wine; and acquitted myself so handsomely, that I had the honour to be complimented upon my behaviour. The captain recounted my story in a few words, which afforded a good deal of diversion, and afterwards observed that I did not want merit: but I was at that time cured of my vanity, and could hear myself praised without danger. Not one of them was silent on the subject; they said, I seemed born to be their cup-bearer; that I was worth an hundred of my predecessor; and although Dame Leonarda (since his death) had been honoured with the office of presenting nectar to these infernal gods, they divested her of that glorious employment, in which they installed me, like a young Ganymede succeeding an ancient Hebe.

A great dish of roast meat, served up after the ragouts, finished the repast of those gormandizing thieves; who, drinking in proportion to their gluttony, soon became frolicksome, made a hellish noise, and spoke all together: one began a story, another broke a jest, a third shouted, a fourth sung; so that there was nothing but riot and confusion. At length Rolando, tired of a scene in which he was so little regarded, cried, (with a voice that silenced the whole company) 'Gentlemen, I have a proposal to make; instead of stunning one another in this manner, by speaking all together, would it not be better to entertain ourselves like reasonable creatures? There is a thought come into my head: since the time of our association, we have never had the curiosity to know what families we are derived from, and by what train of adventures we have been severally led to embrace this way of life; as these things seem worthy to be known, let us, for our diversion, communicate them to one another.' The lieutenant, and the rest, as if they had something very entertaining to relate, embraced, with great demonstrations of joy, the proposal of their chief, who began his own history in these words.

'Gentlemen, you must know that I am the only son of a rich citizen of Madrid; the day of my birth was celebrated in the family by vast rejoicings; my father pretty well stricken in years, was ravished at sight of an heir, and my mother undertook to suckle me at her own breasts: her father, who was still alive, was a good old man, who meddled with nothing but his beads, and recounted his own warlike exploits, having been many years in the army; so that becoming insensibly the idol of these three persons, I was incessantly dandled in their arms. Lest study should fatigue me in my tender years, I was allowed to spend them in the most childish amusements; my father observing, that children ought not to apply seriously to any thing, until time should have ripened the understanding. In expectation of this maturity, I neither learned to read nor write; but, nevertheless, made good use of my time; for my father

C 2

taught

taught me a thousand different games: I became perfectly acquainted with cards, was no stranger to dice; and my grandfather filled my head with romantick stories of the military expeditions in which he had been concerned. He sung the same catches over and over, and when I had got ten or twelve lines by heart, by dint of hearing them repeated for three months together, my memory became a subject for admiration to my parents, who seemed no less satisfied with my genius. When, profiting by the liberty I enjoyed of speaking what came uppermost, I used to interrupt their discourse with my nonsensical prattle—"Ah! what a charming creature it is!" would my father cry, (looking at me with inexpressible delight) while my mamma overwhelmed me with caresses, and my old grandfire wept with joy. I committed, in their presence, the most indecent actions with impunity: every thing was forgiven; and, in short, they adored me. In the mean time, having attained my twelfth year, without being put to school, a master was at length provided; but he received precise orders to instruct me without using any violence, being only permitted to threaten me sometimes, with a view of inspiring me with awe. This permission had not the most salutary effects upon me, who either laughed at his menaces, or, with tears in my eyes, went and complained to my mother and grandpapa of his barbarity. It was in vain for the poor devil to deny the accusation; he was looked upon as a tyrant, and my assertion always believed, in spite of his remonstrance. I happened one day to scratch myself, upon which, setting up my pipes, as if he had flayed me, my mother came running in, and turned my master out of doors, though he protested, and took Heaven to witness, that he had not touched my skin.

In the same manner I got rid of all my preceptors, until such an one as I wanted presented himself: this was a bachelor of Alcala; an excellent tutor for a person of fashion's child! he was a lover of play, women and wine, consequently the fittest person in the world for me. The

first thing he set about was, to gain my affection, in which he succeeded; and by these means gained the love of my parents, who left me entirely to his management: indeed, they had no cause to repent of their confidence; for, in a very little time, he made me perfect in the knowledge of the world. By dint of carrying me along with him, to the places he frequented, I imbibed his taste so well, that, except in Latin, I became an universal proficient; and when I found I had no farther occasion for his instructions, he went to offer them elsewhere.

If, during my childhood, I had lived pretty freely, it was quite another thing when I became master of my own actions: I every moment ridiculed my parents, who did nothing but laugh at my sallies, which were the more agreeable, the more insolence they contained. Mean while, I committed all kinds of debauchery, in the company of other young men of the same disposition; and as our parents did not supply us with money sufficient to support such a delicious life, every one pilfered what he could, at his own home; but that being also insufficient, we began to rob in the dark; when, unfortunately, the corregidore got notice of us, and would have caused us to be apprehended, had we not been informed of his treacherous design: upon which we consulted our safety in flight, and transferred the scene of our exploits to the highway. Since which time, gentlemen, God has given me grace to grow old in my profession, in spite of the dangers to which it is exposed."

Here the captain left off speaking; and the lieutenant, taking his turn, began with—"Gentlemen, an education quite opposite to that of Signior Rolando has, nevertheless, produced the same effect. My father was a butcher of Toledo, reckoned the greatest brute in the whole city, nor was my mother's disposition much more gentle. While I was a child, they whipped me as if it had been through emulation, at the rate of a thousand stripes a day: the least fault I committed was attended with the most severe chastisement; and it was in vain for me to ask pardon, with
tears

tears in my eyes, and protest that I was sorry for what I had done; far from being forgiven, I was often punished without a cause: while my father belaboured me, my mother, (as if he had not exerted himself) instead of interceding for her child, frequently came to his assistance. This treatment inspired me with such aversion for my paternal habitation, that I ran away before I had attained my fourteenth year; and taking the road of Arragon, went to Saragosa, subsisting on charity by the way. There I consoled myself with beggars, who led a pretty comfortable life; they taught me to counterfeit blindness, to appear lame, and afflict my limbs with fictitious ulcers, &c. In the morning (like players, who disguise themselves in order to appear upon the stage) we prepared ourselves for the different parts we intended to act, and every one ran to his post: in the evening we met again, and enjoyed ourselves all night, at the expence of those who had compassion on us in the day. Tired, however, of living among those wretches, and ambitious of appearing in a higher sphere, I associated myself with some knights of the post, who taught me a great many stratagems; but we were, in a very short time, obliged to quit Saragosa, having quarrelled with a certain justice, whose protection we had enjoyed. Every one took his own course: for my own part, I engaged myself in a company of brave fellows, who put travellers under contribution; and liked their manner of living so well, that hitherto I have never felt the least inclination to seek another. I am, therefore, gentlemen, very much obliged to the barbarity of my parents; for had they treated me a little less savagely, instead of being an honourable lieutenant, I should have been, doubtless, at this day, a miserable butcher.

The next that spoke was a young thief; who, sitting between the captain and lieutenant, said, 'Gentlemen, the stories we have heard are neither so complicated, nor so curious as mine: I owe my being to a peasant's wife, who lived in the neighbourhood of Seville: three weeks after she had brought me into the

world, (being still young, handsome, and healthy) it was proposed to her, to nurse a man of quality's only son, lately born in Seville: this proposal my mother cheerfully accepted, and went to fetch the child; which being committed to her care, she no sooner brought it home to her house, than perceiving some small resemblance between us, she was tempted to make me pass for the infant of quality, in hopes that she should one day be well rewarded by me for that kind office: my father, who was not more scrupulous than his neighbours, approved of the deceit; so that, after having made us exchange our swaddling-cloaths, the son of Don Rodrigo de Herrera was sent to another nurse under my name, and my mother suckled me under his.

Notwithstanding all the fine things that are said of instinct, and the force of blood, the little gentleman's parents swallowed the change with great ease: they had not the least suspicion of the trick that was played upon them; for, till I was seven years old, I was scarce ever out of their arms. Their intention being to make me a compleat cavalier, all sorts of masters were provided; but I had no great inclination for the exercises I learned, and still less relish for the sciences they explained; I loved much better to game with the servants, for whose company I frequented the kitchen and stable: but play was not long my predominant passion; for before I was seventeen years of age, I got drunk daily, seduced all the women in the house, but attached myself chiefly to the cook-maid, who seemed to merit my principal regard: she was a fat jolly wench, whose pleasantry and sleekness pleased me much; and I made love to her with so little circumspection, that Don Rodrigo himself perceived it. He reprimanded me sharply; reproached me with the baseness of my inclinations; and, lest the sight of this amiable object should render his remonstrances ineffectual, turned my princess out of doors.

I was disgusted at this piece of conduct, for which I resolved to be revenged: with this view, I stole his lady's jewels, and running in quest of my fair Helen, who had retired

to

‘ to the house of a washer-woman of
 ‘ her acquaintance, I carried her off;
 ‘ at noon-day, to the end that nobody
 ‘ might be ignorant of my passion.
 ‘ That was not all: I conducted her
 ‘ into her own country, where I mar-
 ‘ ried her in a solemn manner, that I
 ‘ might not only give Herrera the more
 ‘ vexation, but also afford such a wor-
 ‘ thy example to the children of noble-
 ‘ men. Three months after my mar-
 ‘ riage, I was informed of Don Ro-
 ‘ drigo’s death; a piece of news I did
 ‘ not receive with indifference; but
 ‘ repairing instantly to Seville, in or-
 ‘ der to demand his estate, I found
 ‘ things strangely altered! My mo-
 ‘ ther, who was dead, had been silly
 ‘ enough, on her death-bed, to con-
 ‘ fess the whole affair, in presence of
 ‘ the curate of the village, and other
 ‘ credible witnesses; in consequence
 ‘ of which, the true son of Don Ro-
 ‘ drigo was already in possession of
 ‘ my place, or rather of his own; and
 ‘ had been received with the more joy,
 ‘ on account of their being dissatisfied
 ‘ with me. Wherefore, having no-
 ‘ thing to expect from that quarter,
 ‘ and no longer feeling my inclination
 ‘ for my fat spouse, I joined some gen-
 ‘ tlemen of the road, with whom I be-
 ‘ gan my expeditions.’

The young robber having ended his story, another informed us, that he was the son of a merchant at Burgos, and, prompted by an inconsiderate devotion, had taken the habit, and professed a very austere order, from which, in a few years, he apostatized. In short, those eight highwaymen spoke in their turns, and when I had heard them all, I was not at all surprized to find them together. The discourse was afterwards changed; they brought upon the carpet several projects for their next excursions, and after having come to a determination, got up from table, in order to go to rest. Having lighted their wax candles, and withdrawn, I followed Captain Rolando into his chamber, where, while I helped to undress him, ‘ Well, Gil Blas,’ says he, ‘ thou seest how we live: we
 ‘ are always merry, and hatred and
 ‘ envy never get footing among us:
 ‘ we never have the least quarrel with
 ‘ one another, but are more united
 ‘ than a convent of monks; thou wilt,
 ‘ my child,’ pursued he, ‘ lead a very

‘ agreeable life in this place; for I
 ‘ don’t believe thee fool enough to
 ‘ boggle at living with robbers. Eh!
 ‘ dost thou think there are any honefter
 ‘ people in the world than we? No;
 ‘ my lad, every one loves to prey up-
 ‘ on his fellows: it is an universal
 ‘ principle, though variously exerted.
 ‘ Conquerors (for example) seize up-
 ‘ on the territories of their neighbours:
 ‘ people of quality borrow without
 ‘ any intention of repaying; bankers,
 ‘ treasurers, exchange-brokers, clerks;
 ‘ and all kinds of merchants, great
 ‘ and small, are not a whit more con-
 ‘ scientious. As for your limbs of
 ‘ the law, I need not mention them:
 ‘ every body knows what they can do:
 ‘ I must own, however, that they are
 ‘ somewhat more humane than we;
 ‘ for we often put innocent people to
 ‘ death, and they sometimes save the
 ‘ lives of the guilty.’

CHAP. VI.

OF THE ATTEMPT OF GIL BLAS TO
 MAKE HIS ESCAPE, AND THE
 SUCCESS THEREOF.

WHEN the captain of the thieves had made this apology for his profession, he went to bed, and I returned into the hall, where I uncovered the table, and put every thing in order: from thence I went into the kitchen, where Domingo (so was the old negro called) expected me to supper. Though I had no appetite, I sat down with them; but as I could not eat, and appeared as melancholy as I had cause to be so, these two apparitions, equally qualified, undertook to give me consolation. ‘ Why do you
 ‘ afflict yourself, child?’ said the old lady: ‘ you ought rather to rejoice at
 ‘ your good fortune. You are young,
 ‘ and seem to be of an easy temper;
 ‘ consequently would have been, in a
 ‘ little time, lost in the world: there
 ‘ you would have fallen into the hands
 ‘ of libertines, who would have en-
 ‘ gaged you in all manner of debauch-
 ‘ ry; whereas, here your innocence
 ‘ finds a secure haven.’—‘ Dame Leo-
 ‘ narda is in the right,’ said the old
 ‘ black-a-moor, with great gravity;
 ‘ and let me add, the world is full
 ‘ of affliction: thank Heaven, there-
 ‘ fore,

‘fore, my friend, for having delivered thee all at once from the dangers, difficulties, and misery of life.’

I bore their discourse with patience, because to fret myself would have done me no service: at last Domingo, having eaten and drank plentifully, retired into the stable; while Leonarda, with a lamp in her hand, conducted me into a vault, which served as a burying-place to the robbers who died a natural death, and in which I perceived a miserable truckle-bed, that looked more like a tomb than a couch: ‘Here is your bed-chamber,’ said she: ‘the lad, whose place you have the good fortune to supply, slept here, as long as he lived amongst us; and now that he is dead, rests in the same place. He slipped away in the flower of his age: I hope you will not be so simple as to follow his example.’ So saying, she put the light into my hand, and returned into her kitchen; while I, setting the lamp upon the ground, threw myself upon the bed, not so much in expectation of enjoying the least repose, as with a view to indulge my melancholy reflections. ‘O Heavens!’ cried I, ‘was ever destiny so terrible as mine! I am banished from the sight of the sun: and, as if it was not enough to be buried alive at the age of eighteen, I am moreover condemned to serve thieves, to spend the day among highwaymen, and the night among the dead!’ I wept bitterly over these suggestions, which seemed to me, and were in effect, extremely shocking. A thousand times I cursed my uncle’s design of sending me to Salamanca: I repented of my flying from justice at Cacabelos, and even wished I had submitted to the torture. But recollecting that I consumed myself in vain complaints to no purpose, I began to think of some means by which I might escape. ‘What,’ said I to myself, ‘is it then impossible to deliver myself! the thieves are asleep; the cook-maid and negro will be in the same condition presently; cannot I, while they are all quiet, by the help of my lamp, find out the passage through which I descended into this infernal abode! It is true, indeed, I don’t think myself strong enough to lift the trap-door that covers the entry; but, however, that I may have no-

‘thing to reproach myself with, I will try; my despair will, perhaps, supply me with strength, and who knows but I may accomplish it!’

Having then projected this great design, I got up, when I imagined Leonarda and Domingo were at rest; and taking the lamp in my hand, went out to the vault, recommending myself to all the saints in heaven. It was not without great difficulty, that I found again all the windings of this new labyrinth, and arrived at the door of the stable; where, at last, perceiving the passage I was in search of, I went into it, advancing towards the trap, with as much nimbleness as joy: but, alas! in the middle of the entry, I met with a cursed iron gate, fast locked, and consisting of strong bars, so close to one another, that I could scarce thrust my hand between them. I was confounded at the sight of this new obstacle, which I had not observed when I came in, the grate being then open: I did not fail, however, to feel the bars and examine the lock, which I even attempted to force; when, all of a sudden, I felt, across my shoulders, five or six lusty thwacks with a bull’s pizzle; upon which, I uttered such a dreadful yell, that the whole cavern echoed with the sound; and looking behind me, perceived the old negro in his shirt, with a dark lanthorn in one hand, and the instrument of his execution in the other. ‘Ah, ha! Mr. Jackanapes,’ said he, ‘you want to make your escape, hah! You must not imagine that I am to be caught napping. I heard you all the while. I suppose you thought the grate was open, didn’t you? Know, my boy, that henceforth thou shalt always find it shut; and that, when we detain any body here, against his inclination, he must be more cunning than thou, if ever he gets off.’

In the mean time, two or three of the thieves, starting out of their sleep, at the noise of my cries, and believing that the holy brotherhood was coming souse upon them, got up in a hurry, and alarmed their companions. In an instant all were a-foot; and, seizing their swords and carbines, advanced half-naked to the place where Domingo chastised me; but they no sooner understood the cause of the noise they had heard, than their uneasiness was changed

changed into fits of laughter. ‘How,’ ‘Gil Blas!’ said the apostate thief to me, ‘thou hast not been here six hours, and want’st to take thy leave of us already! Sure thou must have a great aversion to a retired life, hah? What would’st thou do, if thou wert a Carthusian friar? Go to bed; thou art quit for once, on account of the stripes Domingo has bestow’d on thee; but if ever thou should’st make another effort to escape, by St. Bartholomew! we will flay thee alive!’ This said, he withdrew; the other thieves retired into their apartments; the old negro, proud of his exploit, returned into his stable; and I sneaked back to my Golgotha, where I spent the remaining part of the night in sighs and tears.

CHAP. VII.

OF THE BEHAVIOUR OF GIL BLAS;
WHEN HE COULD DO NO BETTER.

DURING the first days of my captivity, I was like to sink under the sorrow that oppressed me, and might have been said to die by inches; but at last, my good genius inspired me with the resolution to dissemble: I affected to appear less sad than usual; I began to laugh and sing, though, God knows, with an aching heart. In a word, I counterfeited so well, that Leonarda and Domingo were deceived, and believed that the bird was at last reconciled to his cage. The robbers were of the same opinion; for I assumed a gay air when I filled wine for them, and mingled in their conversation, whenever I found an opportunity of acting the buffoon. This freedom, far from displeasing, afforded them diversion. ‘Gil Blas,’ said the captain to me one evening, while I entertained them in this manner, ‘thou hast done well, my lad, to banish thy melancholy; I am charmed with thy wit and humour: I find people are not known all at once; for I did not think thou hadst been so sprightly and good-natured.’

The rest joined also in my praise, and appeared so well satisfied with me, that, taking the advantage of this good disposition, ‘Gentlemen,’ said I, ‘allow me to tell my mind: since my a-

bode in this place, I find myself quite another sort of a person than heretofore. You have divested me of the prejudices of education, and I insensibly imbibe your disposition: I have a taste for your profession, and a longing desire of being honoured with the name of your companion, and of sharing the dangers of your expeditions.’ All the company approved of my discourse, and commended my forwardness; so that it was unanimously resolved, to let me serve a little longer, in order to approve myself worthy, then carry me out in their excursions; after which, I should obtain the honourable place I demanded.

Well, then, I was obliged to persist in my dissimulation, and exercise the post of cup-bearer still, a circumstance that mortified me extremely: for my design in aspiring to the honour of becoming a thief, was only to have the liberty of taking the air with the rest, in hopes that one day I should be able to escape from them, in the course of their expeditions. This hope alone supported my life; but nevertheless appeared so distant, that I tried more than once to baffle the vigilance of Domingo; though it was never in my power, he being always so much upon his guard, that I would have defied an hundred Orpheus’s to charm such a Cerberus. It is true, indeed, I did not do all that I could have done to beguile him, lest I should have wakened his suspicion; for he had a hawk’s eye over me, and I was obliged to act with the utmost circumspection, that I might not betray myself. I therefore resigned myself to my fate, until the time should be expired that was prescribed by the robbers for receiving me into their gang; and this event I expected as impatiently as if I had been to be inrolled in a list of commissioners.

Heaven be praised! in six months that time arrived; when Signior Rolando, addressing himself to his company, said, ‘Gentlemen, we must keep our word with Gil Blas: I have no bad opinion of that young fellow, and I hope we shall make something of him: it is therefore my opinion, that we carry him along with us to-morrow to gather laurels on the highway, and usher him into the

'the path of glory.' The robbers agreed to their captain's proposal; and to shew that they already looked upon me as one of their companions, from that moment dispensed with my service, and re-established Dame Leonarda in the office she had lost on my account. They made me throw away my habit, that consisted of a sorry threadbare short cassock, and dressed me in the spoils of a gentleman whom they had lately robbed; after which I prepared me for my first campaign.

C H A P. VIII.

GIL BLAS ACCOMPANIES THE THIEVES, AND PERFORMS AN EXPLOIT ON THE HIGHWAY.

IT was in the month of September, when, towards the close of the night, I came out of the cavern, in company with the robbers; armed like them, with a carbine, two pistols, sword and bayonet, and mounted on a pretty good horse, which they had taken from the same gentleman whose dress I wore. I had lived so long in darkness, that when day broke, I was dazzled with the light; which, however, soon became familiar to my eyes.

Having passed hard by Ponferrada, we lay in ambush in a small wood which bordered on the road to Leon. There we waited, expecting that Fortune would throw some good luck in our way; when we perceived a Dominican (contrary to the custom of these good fathers) riding upon a sorry mule: 'God be praised,' cried the captain, laughing, 'there's the *coup d'essai* of Gil Blas—Let him go and unload that monk, while we observe his behaviour.' All the rest were of opinion, that this was a very proper commission for me; and exhorted me to acquit myself handsomely in it. 'Gentleman,' said I, 'you shall be satisfied: I will make that priest as bare as my hand, and bring hither his mule in a twinkling.'—'No, no,' replied Rolando, 'she is not worth the trouble: bring us only the purse of his reverence; that is all we expect of thee.' For this purpose, I sallied from the wood, and made towards the clergyman; begging Heaven, all the way, to pardon the action I was about

to commit. I would gladly have made my escape that moment; but the greatest part of the thieves were better mounted than I; and, had they perceived me running away, would have been at my heels in an instant, and entrapt me again in a very short time, or, perhaps, discharged their carbines at me; in which case, I should have nothing to brag of. Not daring, therefore, to hazard such a delicate step, I came up with the priest, and clapping a pistol to his breast, demanded his purse. He stopped short to survey me; and without seeming much afraid, 'Child,' said he, 'you are very young: you have got a bad trade by the hand betimes.'—'Bad as it is, father,' I replied, 'I wish I had begun it sooner.'—'Ah! son, son,' said the good friar, (who did not comprehend the true meaning of my words) 'what blindness!—allow me to represent to you the miserable condition—' 'O father,' said I, interrupting him hastily, 'a truce with your morals, if you please! my business on the highway is not to hear sermons: I want money.'—'Money!' cried he, with an air of astonishment; 'you are little acquainted with the charity of the Spaniards, if you think people of my cloth have occasion for money, while they travel in this kingdom. Undeceive yourself; we are every where cheerfully received, having lodging and victuals; and nothing is asked in return, but our prayers: in short, we never carry money about us on the road; but confide altogether in Providence.'—'That won't go down with me,' I replied: 'your dependance is not altogether so visionary; for, you have always some good pistoles in reserve, to make more sure of Providence. But, my good father,' added I, 'let us have done; my comrades, who are in that wood, begin to be impatient; therefore throw your purse upon the ground instantly, or I shall certainly put you to death.'

At these words, which I uttered with a menacing look, the friar, seeming afraid of his life, said, 'Hold! I will satisfy you then, since there is a necessity for it: I see tropes and figures have no effect on people of your profession.' So saying, he pulled from underneath his gown a large purse of

shamoy leather, which he dropped upon the ground. Then I told him, he might continue his journey; a permission he did not give me the least trouble of repeating; but clapped his heels to the sides of his mule; which belying the opinion I had conceived of her, (for I imagined she was not much better than my uncle's) all of a sudden went off at a pretty round pace. As soon as he was at a distance, I alighted, and taking up the purse, which seemed heavy, mounted again, and got back to the wood in a trice; where the thieves waited with impatience to congratulate me upon my victory. Scarce would they give me time to dismount, so eager were they to embrace me. 'Courage, Gil Blas!' said Rolando, 'thou hast done wonders; I have had my eyes on thee during thy expedition: I have observed thy countenance all the time; and I prophecy, thou wilt in time become an excellent highwayman.' The lieutenant and the rest approved of the prediction, which they assured me I should one day certainly fulfil. I thanked them for the high idea they had conceived of me, and promised to do all that lay power to maintain it.

After they had loaded me with so much undeserved praise, they were desirous of examining the booty I had made. 'Come,' said they, 'let us see what there is in the clergyman's purse.'—'It ought to be well furnished,' continued one among them; 'for those good fathers don't travel like pilgrims.' The captain untied the purse, and, opening it, pulled out two or three handfuls of copper medals, mixed with bits of hallowed wax, and some scapularies*. At the sight of such an uncommon prey, all the robbers burst out into an immoderate fit of laughter. 'Upon my soul,' cried the lieutenant, 'we are very much obliged to Gil Blas, for having, in his *coup d'essai*, performed a theft so salutary to the company.' This piece of wit brought on more. Those miscreants, and he in particular who had apostatized, began to be very merry upon the matter: a thousand sallies escaped them, that too well denoted their immorality. I was the only person who did not laugh; my mirth be-

ing checked by the ralliers, who enjoyed themselves at my expence. Every one having shot his bolt, the captain said to me, 'In faith, Gil Blas, I advise thee, as a friend, to joke no more with monks; who are, generally speaking, too arch and cunning for such as thee.'

CHAP. IX.

OF THE SERIOUS AFFAIR THAT FOLLOWED THIS ADVENTURE.

WE remained in the wood the greatest part of the day, without perceiving any traveller that could make amends for the priest. At last we left it, in order to return to our cavern, confining our exploits to that ludicrous event, which still constituted the subject of our discourse, when we discovered, at a distance, a coach drawn by four mules, advancing at a brisk trot, and escorted by three men on horseback, who seemed well armed. Upon this, Rolando ordered his troop to halt, and held a council; the result of which was, that they should attack the coach. We were immediately arranged according to his disposition, and marched up to it in order of battle. In spite of the applause I had acquired in the wood, I felt myself seized with an universal tremor, and immediately a cold sweat broke out all over my body, which I looked upon as no very favourable omen. To crown my good luck, I was in the front of the line, between the captain and lieutenant, who had stationed me there, that I might accustom myself to stand fire all at once. Rolando observing how much nature suffered within me, looked at me askance, saying with a fierce countenance, 'Hark'e, Gil Blas, remember to do thy duty; for if thou hang'st an arse, I'll blow thy brains out.' I was too well persuaded that he would keep his word, to neglect this caution; for which reason I thought of nothing now but of recommending my soul to God.

In the mean time the coach and horsemen approached, who knowing what sort of people we were, and guessing our design by our appearance, stopped within musket-shot, and prepared

* Scapularies are pieces of consecrated stuff, worn by priests and nuns.

to receive us; while a gentleman of a good mien, and richly dressed, came out of the coach, and mounting a horse that was led by one of his attendants, put himself at their head, without any other arms than a sword and a pair of pistols. Though they were but four against nine, (the coachman remaining on the seat) they advanced towards us with a boldness that redoubled my fear: I did not fail, however, though I trembled in every joint, to make ready to fire; but, to tell the truth, I shut my eyes, and turned away my head, when I discharged my carbine; and, considering the manner in which it went off, my conscience ought to be acquitted on that score.

I will not attempt to describe the action; for although I was present, I saw nothing; and my fear, in confounding my imagination, concealed from me the horror of the spectacle that occasioned it. All I know of the matter is, that after a great noise of firing, I heard my companions shout, and cry, 'Victory! victory!' At that exclamation, the terror which had taken possession of my senses, dissipated, and I saw the four horsemen stretched lifeless on the field of battle. On our side we had but one man killed, and he was no other than the apostate, who had met with his deserts for his apostacy and profane jests upon the scapularies. The lieutenant received a wound in the arm; but it was a very slight one, the shot having only ruffled the skin.

Signior Rolando ran immediately to the door of the coach, in which there was a lady of about four or five and twenty years of age, who appeared very handsome, notwithstanding the melancholy condition in which she was; for she had swooned during the engagement, and was not yet recovered. While he was busied in looking after her, we took care of the booty, beginning with securing the horses of the killed, which, frightened at the noise of the firing, had run away, after having lost their riders. As for the mules, they had not stirred, altho' the coachman, during the action, had quitted his place, in order to make his escape. We alighted; and, unyoking, loaded them with some trunks we found fastened to the coach, before and behind. This being done, the lady, who had

not as yet recovered her senses, was, by order of the captain, taken out, and placed on horseback before one of the robbers that was best mounted; after which, quitting the high road, the coach, and the dead, whom we had stripped, we carried off the lady, the mules, and the horses.

CHAP. X.

IN WHAT MANNER THE ROBBERS BEHAVED TO THE LADY. OF THE GREAT DESIGN WHICH GIL BLAS PROJECTED, AND THE ISSUE THEREOF.

IT was within an hour of day-break when we arrived at our habitation; and the first thing we did was, to lead our beasts into the stable, where we were obliged to tie them to the rack, and take care of them with our own hands, the old negro having been three days before seized with a violent fit of the gout and rheumatism, that kept him a-bed, deprived of the use of his limbs: the only member at liberty was his tongue, which he employed in testifying his impatience, by the most horrible execrations. Leaving this miserable wretch to swear and blaspheme, we went to the kitchen, where our whole attention was engrossed by the lady, and we succeeded so well as to bring her out of her fit; but when she had recovered the use of her senses, and saw herself in the hands of several men whom she did not know, she perceived her misfortune, and was seized with horror! The most lively sorrow and direful despair appeared in her eyes, which she lifted up to heaven, as if to reproach it with the indignities that threatened her; then giving way of a sudden to these dismal apprehensions, she relapsed into a swoon, her eyelids closed, and the robbers imagined that death would deprive them of their prey. The captain, thinking it more proper to leave her to herself than to torment her with their assistance, ordered her to be carried to Leonarda's bed, where she was left alone, at the hazard of what might happen.

We repaired to the hall, where one of the thieves, who had been bred a surgeon, dressed the lieutenant's wound: after which, being desirous of seeing

what was in the trunks, we found some of them filled with lace and linen, others with cloaths; and the last we opened, contained some bags full of pistoles, at sight of which, the gentlemen concerned were infinitely rejoiced. This enquiry being made, the cook-maid furnished the side-board, laid the cloth, and served up supper. Our conversation at first turned upon the great victory we had obtained; and Rolando addressing himself to me, 'Confess, Gil Blas,' said he, 'confess that thou wast horribly afraid.' I ingenuously owned, that what he said was very true; but that when I should have made two or three campaigns, I would fight like a knight-errant: whereupon the whole company took my part, observing that my fear was excusable; that the action had been very hot; and that, considering I was a young fellow who had never smelled gunpowder, I had acquitted myself pretty well.

The discourse afterwards turning upon the mules and horses we had brought into our retreat, it was agreed that to-morrow before day we should all set out together, in order to sell them at Mansilla; which place, in all probability, the report of our expedition had not yet reached. This resolution being taken, we finished our meal, and returned into the kitchen to visit the lady, whom we found still in the same situation. Nevertheless, tho' it was with difficulty we could perceive any signs of life in her, some of the villains did not scruple to regard her with a prophane eye, and even to discover a brutal desire; which they would have satisfied immediately, had not Rolando prevented it, by representing to them, that they ought at least to wait until the lady should get the better of that oppression of sorrow which deprived her of reflection. The respect they had for their captain restrained their incontinence; otherwise, nothing could have saved the lady, whose honour death itself, perhaps, would not have been able to secure.

We left this unfortunate gentlewoman in the same condition in which we found her; Rolando contenting himself with laying injunctions on Leonarda to take care of her, while every one retired into his own apart-

ment. For my own part, as soon as I got to bed, instead of resigning myself to sleep, I did nothing but think of that lady's misfortune: I never doubted that she was a person of quality, and looked upon her situation as the more deplorable for that reason. I could not, without shuddering, represent to myself the horrors to which she was destined, and felt myself as deeply concerned for her, as if I had been attached by blood or friendship. At last, after having bewailed her hard fate, I began to revolve the means of rescuing her honour from the danger in which it was, and of delivering myself at the same time from the subterranean abode. I recollected that the old negro was not in a condition to move; and that, since his being taken ill, the cook-wench kept the key of the grate. This reflection warmed my imagination, and made me conceive a scheme, which I digested so well, that I proceeded to put it in practice immediately in the following manner.

Pretending to be racked with the cholick, I began with complaints and groans; then raising my voice, uttered dreadful cries, that wakened the robbers, and brought them instantly to my bed-side. When they asked what made me roar so hideously, I answered that I was tortured with an horrible cholick; and, the better to persuade them of the truth of what I said, grinded my teeth, made frightful grimaces and contorsions, and writhed myself in a strange manner: then I became quiet all of a sudden, as if my pains had given me some respite. In a moment after, I began again to bounce upon the bed, and twist about my limbs: in a word, I played my part so well, that the thieves, cunning as they were, allowed themselves to be deceived, and believed, in good earnest, that I was violently griped. In a moment, all of them were busied in endeavours to ease me: one brought a bottle of usquebagh, and made me swallow one half of it; another, in spite of my teeth, injected a clyster of oil of sweet almonds; a third warmed a napkin, and applied it broiling hot to my belly. I roared for mercy in vain: they imputed my cries to the cholick; and continued to make me suffer real pains, in attempting to free me

me from one, I did not feel. At last, being able to resist them no longer, I was fain to tell them that the gripes had left me, and to conjure them to give me quarter. Upon which they left off tormenting me with their remedies, and I took care to trouble them no more with my complaints, for fear of undergoing their good offices a second time.

This scene lasted almost three hours, after which the robbers, judging that day was not far off, prepared themselves to set out for Manilla: I would have got up, to make them believe I was desirous of accompanying them; but they would not suffer me to rise, Signior Rolando saying, 'No, no, Gil Blas! stay at home, child; thy cholick may return. Thou shalt go with us another time; but thou art in no condition to go abroad to-day.' I was afraid of insisting upon it too much, lest he should yield to my request: therefore I only appeared very much mortified, because I could not be of the party. This I acted so naturally, that they went out of the cavern without the least suspicion of my design. After their departure, which I had endeavoured to hasten by my prayers, I said to myself, 'Now, Gil Blas! now is the time for thee to have resolution: arm thyself with courage, to finish that which thou hast so happily begun. Domingo is not in a condition to oppose thy enterprise, and Leonarda cannot hinder it's execution. Seize this opportunity of escaping, than which, perhaps, thou wilt never find one more favourable.' These suggestions filled me with confidence; I got up, took my sword and pistols, and went first towards the kitchen; but before I entered, hearing Leonarda speaking, stopped in order to listen. She was talking to the unknown lady; who, having recovered her senses, and understood the whole of her misfortune, wept in the utmost bitterness of despair. 'Weep, my child,' said the old beldame to her; 'dissolve yourself into tears, and don't spare sighs; for that will give you ease. You have had a dangerous qualm; but now there is nothing to fear, since you shed abundance of tears. Your grief will abate by little and little, and you will soon accustom yourself

to live with our gentlemen, who are men of honour. You will be treated like a princess, meet with nothing but complaisance, and fresh proofs of affection every day. There are a great many women who would be glad to be in your place.'

I did not give Leonarda time to proceed; but entering, clapped a pistol to her breast, and with a threatening look, commanded her to surrender the key of the grate. She was confounded at my behaviour; and, though almost at the end of her career, so much attached to life, that she durst not refuse my demand. Having got the key in my possession, I addressed myself to the afflicted lady, saying, 'Madam, Heaven has sent you a deliverer; rise, and follow me, and I will conduct you whithersoever you shall please to direct.' The lady did not remain deaf to my words; which made such an impression upon her, that summoning up all the strength she had left, she got up, and throwing herself at my feet, conjured me to preserve her honour. I raised her, and assured her that she might rely upon me; then taking some cords which I perceived in the kitchen, with her assistance, I tied Leonarda to the feet of a large table, swearing that, if she opened her mouth, I would kill her on the spot. I afterwards lighted a flambeau, and going with the stranger into the room where the gold and silver was deposited, filled my pockets with pistoles and double pistoles; and to induce the lady to follow my example, assured her, that she only took back her own. When we had made a good provision of this kind, we went towards the stable, which I entered alone with my pistols cock'd, firmly believing that the old negro, in spite of his gout and rheumatism, would not suffer me to saddle and bridle my horse in quiet; and fully resolved to cure him of all his distempers, if he should take it in his head to be troublesome: but, by good luck, he was so overwhelmed with the pains he had undergone, and those he still suffered, that I brought my horse out of the stable, even without his seeming to perceive it; and the lady waiting for me at the door, we threaded, with all dispatch, the passage that led out of the cavern; arrived at the grate, which we opened; and at last came to the trap-door,

door, which we lifted up with great difficulty; or rather, the desire of escaping lent us new strength, without which we should not have been able to succeed.

Day began to appear just as we found ourselves delivered from the jaws of this abyss; and as we fervently desired to be at a greater distance from it, I threw myself into the saddle, the lady mounting behind me, and following the first path that presented itself, at a round gallop, got out of the forest in a short time, and entered a plain, divided by several roads, one of which we took at random. I was mortally afraid that it would conduct us to Mansilla, where we might meet with Rolando and his confederates; but happily my fear was vain. We arrived at the town of Astorga, at two o'clock in the afternoon, where people gazed at us with extreme attention, as if it had been an extraordinary thing to see a woman on horseback, sitting behind a man. We alighted at the first inn we came to, where the first thing I did, was to order a partridge and a young rabbit to the fire; and while this was a doing, I conducted the lady into a chamber, where we began to converse with one another; for we had rode so fast, that we had no discourse upon the road. She shewed how sensible she was of the service I had done to her, and observed, that after I had performed such a generous action, she could not persuade herself that I was a companion of the thieves, from whom I had rescued her. I told her my story, in order to confirm the good opinion she had conceived of me; and, by that means, engaged her to honour me with her confidence, and inform me of her misfortunes, which she recounted as I shall relate in the following chapter,

CHAP. XI.

THE HISTORY OF DONNA MENCIA OF MOSQUERA.

I Was born at Valladolid, and my name is Donna Mencia of Mosquera. Don Martin, my father, after having spent almost his whole patrimony in the service of his king, was killed in Portugal, at the head of his own regiment, and left me so mode-

rately provided, that though I was an only child, I was far from being an advantageous match. I did not want admirers, however, in spite of the lowness of my fortune; a good many of the most considerable cavaliers in Spain made their addresses to me: but he who attracted my attention most, was Don Alvaro de Mello; he was, indeed, more handsome than any of his rivals, but more substantial qualifications determined me in his favour; he was endued with wit, prudence, probity and valour, and withal the most gallant man in the world. When he gave entertainments, nothing could be more elegant; and when he appeared at tournaments, every body admired his vigour and address: I preferred him, therefore, to all others, and married him accordingly.

A few days after our marriage, he happened to meet with Don Andrea de Baesa, who had been one of his rivals, in a private place; where quarrelling with each other, they came to blows, and Don Andrea lost his life in the encounter. As he was nephew to the corregidor of Valladolid, a violent man, and mortal enemy to the family of Mello, Don Alvaro knew he could not leave the city too soon: he returned home in a hurry; and, while they saddled his horse, told me what had happened. "My dear Mencia," said he, "we must part! you know the corregidor: don't let us then flatter ourselves, for he will prosecute me with the utmost rancour; and as you are not ignorant of his credit, you know I cannot be safe in this kingdom." He was so much penetrated with his own sorrow, and with that which he saw take possession of my breast, that he could say no more; and when I had prevailed upon him to furnish himself with some money and jewels, he clasped me in his arms, and during a whole quarter of an hour, we did nothing but mingle our sighs and tears. At last, being told the horse was ready, he tore himself from me; he departed, and left me in a condition not to be described. Happy! had the excess of my affliction, at that time, put an end to my life! what troubles and sorrows would my death have prevented! Some hours af-

ter

ter Don Alvaro was gone, the corregidor being informed of his flight, ordered him to be pursued; and spared nothing to have him in his power: but my husband always baffled the pursuit, and kept himself secure, in such a manner, that the judge found himself obliged to limit his revenge to the sole satisfaction of ruining the fortune of a man whose blood he wanted to shed: his efforts were not unsuccessful, all the effects of Don Alvaro being confiscated.

Left in a most afflicting situation, and having scarce wherewithal to subsist, I began to live a very solitary life, all my attendants being reduced to one servant-maid: I spent the day in bemoaning — not an indigence, which I could have borne with patience; but the absence of my dear husband, whose condition I was utterly ignorant of, although he had promised, in his last melancholy adieu, that he would take care to inform me of his lot, into whatever part of the world his cruel fate should conduct him. Nevertheless, seven long years elapsed, without my hearing the least account of him; and this uncertainty of his destiny plunged me into an abyss of sorrow! At last I was told that, in fighting for the King of Portugal in Fez, he had lost his life in battle: a man lately returned from Africk confirmed this report, assuring me, that he was perfectly well acquainted with Don Alvaro de Mello, had served with him in the Portuguese army, and even seen him fall in the action: to this he added many other circumstances, which persuaded me that my husband was no more.

At that time, Don Ambrosio Mesia Carillo, Marquis of Guardia, came to Valladolid: he was one of those old lords who, by the politeness and gallantry of their manners, make people forget their age, and continue still agreeable to the ladies. One day, hearing by accident the story of Don Alvaro, and being desirous of seeing me, on account of the picture which had been drawn of me; for the satisfaction of his curiosity, he engaged one of my relations, who carried me to her house. Seeing me there, I had the fortune to please him, in spite of the remarkable impression which grief had made on my

countenance; but why do I say, in spite of it! perhaps he was touched alone by my sad and languishing air, which prepossessed him in favour of my fidelity; his love, in all probability, was the effect of my melancholy; for he told me more than once, that he regarded me as a miracle of constancy; and that, for this reason, he even envied the fate of my husband, how deplorable soever it was in other respects: in a word, he was struck at sight of me, and had no occasion to see me a second time, in order to take the resolution of making me his wife.

He chose the intercession of my kinswoman, towards the obtaining of my consent: she came to my lodgings accordingly, and represented to me, that my husband having ended his days in the kingdom of Fez, as we had been informed, it was not reasonable that I should bury my charms any longer; that I had sufficiently bewailed the fate of a man with whom I had been united but a few moments; and that I ought to profit by the occasion that now presented itself; by which means I should be the happiest woman in the world. Then she extolled the great family of the old marquis, his vast estate, and unblemished character: but her eloquence in displaying the advantages he possessed, was in vain: it was not in her power to persuade me; not that I doubted the death of Don Alvaro, or was restrained by the fear of seeing him again, when I should least expect him; the little inclination, or rather the reluctance, I felt for a second marriage, after having suffered so many misfortunes by my first, was the only obstacle my relation had to remove. She did not despair for all that; on the contrary, it redoubled her zeal for Don Ambrosio; she engaged my whole family in the interests of that lord; my relations pressed me to accept of such an advantageous match; I was every moment besieged, importuned, and tormented; and my misery, which daily increased, contributed not a little to overcome my resistance.

Being unable, therefore, to hold out any longer, I yielded to their pressing instances, and married the

Marquis

' Marquis of Guardia; who, the day
 ' after our nuptials, carried me to a
 ' very fine castle which he had, situated
 ' near Burgos, between Grajal and
 ' Rodillas. He conceived the most
 ' violent passion for me, and I ob-
 ' served, in the whole of his beha-
 ' viour, the utmost desire of pleasing
 ' me. His sole study was to antici-
 ' pate my wishes: no husband had ever
 ' such a tender regard for his wife;
 ' and no lover ever shewed more com-
 ' plaisance to his mistress. I should
 ' have been passionately fond of Don
 ' Ambrosio, notwithstanding the dis-
 ' proportion of our years, had I been
 ' capable of loving any one after Don
 ' Alvaro; but a constant heart can
 ' never change. The endeavours of
 ' my second husband to please me,
 ' were rendered ineffectual by the re-
 ' membrance of my first; so that I
 ' could only requite his tenderness
 ' with pure sentiments of gratitude.

' I was in this disposition, when,
 ' one day, taking the air at the win-
 ' dows of my apartment, I perceived
 ' in the garden, a kind of peasant,
 ' who earnestly looked at me: think-
 ' ing he was the gardener's servant, I
 ' took no notice of him; but next day
 ' being again at the window, I saw
 ' him in the same place, and he seem-
 ' ed to view me with uncommon at-
 ' tention: struck with this circumstance,
 ' I looked at him in my turn, and af-
 ' ter having some time considered him,
 ' thought I recognized the features of
 ' the unfortunate Don Alvaro! This
 ' apparition raised an inconceivable
 ' tumult within me; I shrieked aloud!
 ' but luckily there was nobody pre-
 ' sent, except Inez, who, of all my
 ' servants, enjoyed the greatest share
 ' of my confidence. When I impart-
 ' ed to her the suspicion that alarmed
 ' me, she laughed at my apprehension,
 ' believing that my eyes were imposed
 ' upon by some slight resemblance.
 ' "Recollect yourself, Madam," said
 ' she, "and don't imagine you have
 ' seen your former husband: what
 ' likelihood is there, that he should
 ' be here in the dress of a peasant?
 ' "or, indeed, what probability is there
 ' of his being alive? I will go down
 ' into the garden," added she, "and
 ' talk to this countryman, and when
 ' I have learned who he is, come back
 ' and let you know." Inez accord-

' ingly went into the garden, and soon
 ' after returned to my apartment in
 ' great emotion, saying, "Madam,
 ' your suspicion is but too just! it is
 ' Don Alvaro himself whom you
 ' have seen! he has discovered him-
 ' self, and demands a secret inter-
 ' view."

' As I had, at that very time, an
 ' opportunity of receiving Don Al-
 ' varo, the marquis being at Burgos,
 ' I ordered my maid to bring him into
 ' my closet, by a private stair-case.
 ' You may well think that I was in a
 ' terrible agitation, and altogether un-
 ' able to support the presence of a man
 ' who had a right to load me with re-
 ' proaches. As soon as he appeared,
 ' I fainted away. Inez and he flew to
 ' my assistance; and, when they had
 ' brought me out of my swoon, Don
 ' Alvaro said, "Madam, for Hea-
 ' ven's sake, compose yourself; let
 ' not my presence be a punishment to
 ' you; I have no intention to give
 ' you the least pain. I come not as
 ' a furious husband, to call you to an
 ' account of your plighted troth, and
 ' upbraid you with the second en-
 ' gagement you have contracted. I
 ' know very well that it was the work
 ' of your relations; I am acquainted
 ' with all the persecutions you have
 ' suffered on that score: besides, the
 ' report of my death was spread all
 ' over Valladolid; and you had the
 ' more reason to believe it true, as no
 ' letter from me assured you of the
 ' contrary; in short, I know in what
 ' manner you have lived since our
 ' cruel separation, and that necessity,
 ' rather than love, has thrown you
 ' into the arms of—" "Ah,
 ' Sir!" cried I, interrupting him,
 ' why will you excuse your unhappy
 ' wife! she is criminal, since you
 ' live! why am I not still in that mi-
 ' serable situation in which I lived,
 ' before I gave my hand to Don Am-
 ' brosio! Fatal nuptials! I should
 ' then, at least, have had the conso-
 ' lation, in my misery, to see you
 ' again without a blush!"

' "My dear Mencia!" replied Don
 ' Alvaro, with a look that testified
 ' how much he was affected by my
 ' tears, "I do not complain; and
 ' far from reproaching you with the
 ' splendid condition in which I find
 ' you, by all my hopes, I thank
 ' "Heaven

“ Heaven for it! since the melancholy
 “ day of my departure from Vallado-
 “ lid, fate has been always adverse,
 “ and my life but a chain of misfor-
 “ tunes; and, to crown my misery,
 “ it never was in my power to let you
 “ hear from me! Too confident of
 “ your love, I incessantly represented
 “ to myself the condition to which
 “ my fatal tenderness had reduced
 “ you. My imagination painted Dona
 “ na Mencía in her tears! you was
 “ the greatest of all my misfortunes;
 “ and sometimes, I must confess, I
 “ have looked upon myself as a criminal,
 “ in having had the good fortune
 “ to please you: I have wished that
 “ your affections had inclined towards
 “ some one of my rivals, since the
 “ preference you gave to me had cost
 “ you so dear. Nevertheless, after
 “ seven years of suffering, more in
 “ love than ever, I was resolved to
 “ see you. I could not resist this de-
 “ sire; which, at the end of a long
 “ slavery, having an opportunity to
 “ satisfy, I went, in this disguise, to
 “ Valladolid, at the hazard of my
 “ life; there being informed of every
 “ thing, I came hither, and found
 “ means to introduce myself into the
 “ family of the gardener, who has
 “ hired me to work under him. You
 “ see in what manner I have conducted
 “ myself to obtain this private inter-
 “ view; but do not imagine that my
 “ design is to disturb the felicity you
 “ enjoy, by remaining in this place.
 “ No! I love you more than myself;
 “ I have the utmost regard for your
 “ repose; and now that I have had
 “ the melancholy satisfaction of con-
 “ versing with you, will go and finish
 “ at a distance, that miserable life,
 “ which I sacrifice to your quiet!”

“ No, Don Alvaro! no!” cried I,
 “ at these words; “ I will not suffer you
 “ to leave me a second time! I will
 “ go along with you, and death alone
 “ shall divide us!”—“ Take my ad-
 “ vice,” said he, “ and live with Don
 “ Ambrosio; do not associate yourself
 “ with my misfortunes, but leave me
 “ alone to support the weight of
 “ them.” He said other things to the
 “ same purpose: but the more he seem-
 “ ed willing to sacrifice himself to my
 “ happiness, I felt myself the less dis-
 “ posed to consent to it; and when he
 “ saw me firmly resolved to follow him,

“ he changed his tone all of a sudden,
 “ and assuming a more serene air, said,
 “ Madam, since you have still so much
 “ love for Don Alvaro, as to prefer
 “ his misery to the prosperity you now
 “ enjoy, let us go and live at Betan-
 “ cos, at the farther end of the king-
 “ dom of Galicia, where I have a se-
 “ cret retreat. Although my misfor-
 “ tunes have ruined my estate, they
 “ have not yet deprived me of friends;
 “ I have still some faithful ones re-
 “ maining, who have put me in a con-
 “ dition to carry you off: by their
 “ assistance, I have provided a coach
 “ at Zamora, bought mules and horses,
 “ and am accompanied by three reso-
 “ lute Gallicians, armed with carbines
 “ and pistols, who now wait for my
 “ orders at the village of Rodillas.
 “ Let us, therefore,” added he, “ take
 “ the advantage of Don Ambrosio’s
 “ absence; I will order the coach to
 “ come to the castle-gate, and we will
 “ set out instantly.” I consented;
 “ Don Alvaro flew to Rodillas, and
 “ returned in a short time, with his
 “ three attendants, to carry me off from
 “ the midst of my women; who, not
 “ knowing what to think of this event,
 “ ran all away in the utmost conster-
 “ nation: Inez alone was privy to it,
 “ but refused to attach herself to my
 “ fortunes, because she was in love
 “ with the valet de chambre of Don
 “ Ambrosio.

“ I got into the coach with Don
 “ Alvaro, carrying nothing with me
 “ but my own cloaths, and some jew-
 “ els I had before my second marriage;
 “ for I would take nothing that the
 “ marquis had given me on that occa-
 “ sion. We took the road to Galicia,
 “ without knowing if we should be so
 “ happy as to reach it; having reason
 “ to fear that Don Ambrosio, at his
 “ return, would pursue us with a great
 “ number of people, and overtake us.
 “ Nevertheless, we continued our jour-
 “ ney two days, without seeing one
 “ horseman behind us; and, in hopes
 “ that the third would pass in the same
 “ manner, were conversing with each
 “ other in great tranquillity. Don
 “ Alvaro had just recounted the me-
 “ lancholy adventure which had given
 “ rise to the report of his death; and
 “ how, after having been a slave five
 “ years, he had recovered his liberty;
 “ when yesterday, on the road to Leon,

' we met those thieves, with whom
' you was in company. He is the per-
' son whom they murdered, with all
' his attendants, and for whom these
' my tears are shed !'

CHAP. XII.

THE DISAGREEABLE MANNER IN
WHICH GIL BLAS AND THE
LADY WERE INTERRUPTED.

DONNA Mencía having ended her relation, shed a torrent of tears : while I, letting her give free vent to her sighs, wept also ; so natural is it to interest one's self for the unfortunate, especially for a fine lady in distress. I was going to ask what she intended to do in the present conjuncture ; and perhaps she was about to consult me on the same subject ; when our conversation was interrupted by a great noise in the inn, which, in spite of us, attracted our attention. This noise was occasioned by the arrival of the corregidor, followed by two alguazils * and a guard, who, without any ceremony, entered the room where we were. A gentleman who accompanied them, approached me first, and examining my dress, had no occasion to hesitate long, but cried, ' By St. Jago ! this is my individual doublet ; as easy to be known again as my horse : you may apprehend this gallant on my testimony ; he is one of the thieves who have an unknown retreat somewhere in this country.'

At this discourse, by which I understood he was the gentleman who had been robbed, and whose spoils I was unluckily in possession of, I was surprized, confounded, and dismayed ! The corregidor, whose office obliged him to put a bad construction on my disorder, rather than interpret it favourably, concluded that I was not accused without a reason ; and presuming that the lady might be an accomplice, ordered us to be imprisoned separately. This judge, far from being one of those who assume a stern countenance, was all softness and smiles, but God knows if he was a bit the better for that ; for I was no sooner committed, than he came into the jail with his two terriers, I mean the

alguazils, who, not forgetting their laudable custom, began to rummage me in a moment. What a glorious windfal was this, for those honest gentlemen ! I do not believe that ever they got such a booty before : at every handful of pistoles they pulled out, I saw their eyes sparkle with joy ; the corregidor, in particular, was transported : ' Child,' said he, with a voice full of meekness, ' we must do our duty ; but be not afraid : if thou art innocent, thou shalt sustain no harm.' In the mean time, with all their gentleness, they emptied my pockets, and even robbed me of that which the thieves had respected ; I mean, my uncle's forty ducats : their greedy and indefatigable hands searched me from head to foot ; they turned me about on all sides ; and even stripped me, to see if I had any money between my shirt and my skin. When they had dexterously acquitted themselves in this manner, I was interrogated by the corregidor, to whom I ingenuously recounted every thing that had happened to me. He ordered my deposition to be taken in writing, and then went away with his attendants and my coin, leaving me entirely naked among the straw.

' O life !' cried I, when I found myself alone in this condition, ' how full of capricious accidents and disappointments art thou ! Since I left Oviédo, I have met with nothing but misfortunes ! Scarce had I got out of one danger, when I fell into another ! and when I came into this town, I was far from thinking that I should so soon become acquainted with the corregidor.' While I made these vain reflections, I put on again the cursed doublet, and the rest of the dress which my evil genius had lent me ; then exhorting myself to take courage, ' Come, Gil Blas,' said I to myself, ' display thy fortitude ; it shall ill become thee to despair in an ordinary prison, after having put thy patience to such a severe trial in the subterranean abyss ! — But, alas !' added I, in a sorrowful tone, ' I abuse myself ; how shall I escape from hence, when I am utterly deprived of the means !' In effect, I had too good reason to say so ; for a prisoner without money, is like a bird whose wings are clipped.

* Alguazils are attendants of justice, whose office resembles that of our bailiffs.

Instead of the partridge and rabbit I had bespoke, they brought to me a little brown bread and a pitcher of water, and left me to fret at leisure in a dungeon; where I remained fifteen whole days, without seeing a human creature, except the turnkey, who came every morning to renew my provision. As often as I saw him, I endeavoured to speak, and enter into conversation with him, in order to divert me a little; but this venerable person made no answer to what I said; I could not extract one word from him: nay, for the most part, he came in and went out, without so much as deigning me a look. On the sixteenth day, the corregidor coming in, said, 'Thou mayest now give a loose to joy. I bring thee agreeable tidings. I have ordered the lady who was along with thee, to be conducted to Burgos. I examined her before her departure, and her answers have exculpated thee. Thou shalt be enlarged this very day, provided that the muleteer, with whom (as thou sayest) thou camest from Pennaslor to Cacabelos, confirms thy deposition. He is now in Astorga, and I have sent for him; and if he agrees with thee in the adventure of the rack, I will instantly set thee free.'

These words gave me infinite joy: I looked upon myself as already acquitted; I thanked the judge for his just and expeditious decision; and had not quite finished my compliment, when the carrier, conducted by two soldiers, arrived: I remembered his face immediately; but he, having, without doubt, sold my portmanteau, and all that was in it, was afraid of being obliged to restore the money he had received for it, if he should own that he knew me; and therefore affirmed, with astonishing assurance, that far from knowing me, he had never seen me before! 'Ah, traitor!' cried I; 'rather confess that thou hast sold my goods; and bear witness to the truth. Look at me again. I am one of the young people whom you threatened with the torture, at the borough of Cacabelos, and frightened very much.' The carrier answered coldly, that I talked of an affair of which he was utterly ignorant; and, as he maintained to the last, that I was unknown to him, my enlargement was deferred

till another time; so that I was obliged to arm myself with patience anew, and resolve to regale myself still with my bread and water, and a sight of the silent turnkey. The thoughts of being unable to free myself from the claws of justice, although I was not guilty of the least crime, threw me into despair. I wished myself again in the cavern, 'where, in the main,' said I to myself, 'I was less disagreeably situated than in this dungeon: there I ate and drank in plenty, conversed with the robbers, and lived in the sweet hope of making my escape; instead of which, notwithstanding my innocence, I shall, perhaps, think myself happily quit, to get out of this place in order to be sent to the galleys.'

C H A P. XIII.

BY WHAT ACCIDENT GIL BLAS WAS SET AT LIBERTY AT LAST; AND WHITHER HE DIRECTED HIS COURSE.

WHILE I passed my days in entertaining myself with these reflections, my adventures, such as appeared in my deposition, spread all over the town; upon which many people, being curious to see me, came and presented themselves, one after another, at a small chink, through which the light was conveyed into my prison; and after having observed me for some time, went away. I was surprized at this novelty; for since the day of my imprisonment, I had not before seen a living soul at that window, which served to enlighten a court where horror reigned in silence. Guessing from this, that I made some noise in town, I did not know whether to interpret it as a good or bad omen.

One of the first that offered themselves to my view, was the little ballad-singer of Mondonedo, who having been equally afraid of the torture, had fled as well as I. I knew him again immediately; and, as he did not pretend to have forgot me, we saluted one another; and falling into a long conversation, I was obliged to repeat my adventures anew: for his part, he informed me of what had happened at the inn at Cacabelos, between the carrier and the new-married wife, after we had

been driven away by a panick: in a word, he acquainted me with the whole of what I have already rehearsed on that subject. Afterwards, taking leave of me for the present, he promised, without loss of time, to labour for my deliverance: and every body who came (as he did) through curiosity, seemed affected with my misfortune, and even assured me, that they would join the little ballad-singer, and do all that lay in their power to procure my enlargement.

They kept their promise effectually, and spoke in my behalf to the corregidor, who no longer doubting my innocence, especially when the ballad-singer had told him what he knew of the matter, at the end of three weeks came into the prison, and said, 'Gil Blas, I don't chuse to protract things: go; thou art free, and mayest quit the prison when thou wilt. But tell me,' pursued he, 'if thou shouldst be brought to the wood in which the subterranean retreat is, couldst thou not find it out?'—'No Sir,' I replied; 'for as I went in at night, and came out before day, it would be impossible for me to fix upon the spot.' Upon this the judge withdrew; telling me, that he was going to order the turnkey to set the prison-doors open for me. In effect, the gaoler came into my dungeon a moment after, with one of his men carrying a bundle of cloaths; and stripping me (with a grave and silent air) of my doublet and breeches, which were made of fine cloth, and almost new, they put me on a shabby footman's frock, and pushed me out by the shoulders.

The joy that prisoners commonly feel in recovering their liberty, was moderated by my confusion in seeing myself so poorly equipped; and I was tempted to leave the town instantly, that I might withdraw myself from the eyes of the people, whose looks I could scarce endure: but my gratitude got the better of my shame; I went to thank the ballad-singer, to whom I was so much obliged; and he could not help laughing when he saw me. 'What a strange figure you are!' said he: 'justice, I see, has been done you in all her forms.'—'I do not complain of justice,' I replied; 'she is most equitable: I wish only that

'all her officers were honest men. They ought at least to have spared my cloaths, which I think I paid for pretty handsomely.'—'I think so too,' said he; 'but they will tell you, these are formalities which must be observed. What! do you think (for example) that your horse has been restored to the right owner? not at all; I assure you, he is now actually in the stable of the town-clerk, where he has been deposited as a proof of the robbery; and I don't believe the poor gentleman will ever retrieve so much as the crupper. But let us shift our discourse,' continued he: 'what is your design? what scheme do you intend to prosecute at present?'—'I want to go to Burgos,' said I, 'in order to find out the lady I delivered, who will give me a few pistoles, with which I will purchase a new cassock, and repair to Salamanca, where I will endeavour to make my Latin turn to some advantage. All I am concerned at is, that I am at some distance from Burgos, and shall want subsistence on the road.'—'I understand you,' he replied: 'here is my purse; 'tis, indeed, a little low; but a ballad-singer, you know, is not a bishop.' At the same time he slipped it into my hand so cheerfully, that I could not for my soul refuse the offer, such as it was. I thanked him as much as if he had given me all the gold in Peru, and made a thousand professions of service, which I never had an opportunity to perform. Then, bidding him farewell, I left the town, without having visited those other persons who had contributed to my enlargement; contenting myself with bestowing upon them in my thoughts a thousand benedictions.

The little ballad-singer was in the right to speak modestly of his purse, in which I found very little money: but, happily for me, I had been used two months to a very frugal diet; and I had still some rials left, when I arrived at the borough of Ponte de Mula, which is but a little way from Burgos. Here I halted to enquire about Donna Mencía, and going into an inn, the mistress of which was a little, lean, fierce, insolent creature, I perceived at once, by the disdainful look she darted at me, that my frock was not

not at all to her liking; a disgust which I forgave with all my heart. I sat down at table, where I ate some bread and cheese, and swallowed a few draughts of execrable wine, which they brought for me; and during this repast, which was very well suited to my dress, I wanted to enter into conversation with my landlady. I begged her to tell me, if she knew the Marquis of Guardia; if his castle was far from the borough; and, in particular, if she had heard what was become of the marchioness his lady. 'You ask a great many questions,' replied she, with a scornful look. She told me, however, (though with a very bad grace) that the castle of Don Ambrosio was but a short league from Ponte de Mula.

When I had done eating and drinking, (it being by this time pretty late) I expressed a desire of going to rest, and bade them shew me into a bed-chamber. 'A bed-chamber for you!' said the landlady, darting at me a look full of haughtiness and contempt; 'I have no bed-chambers for people who sup on a morsel of cheese. All my beds are bespoke. I expect gentlemen of importance to lodge here to-night; so that all I can do for you is, to quarter you in the barn; and it won't, I suppose, be the first time you have slept upon straw.' She did not know how true she spoke: but I made no reply, and very wisely condescended to sneak into the straw; where, in a very short time, I slept like one who had suffered much fatigue.

CHAP. XIV.

OF HIS RECEPTION AT BURGOS
BY DONNA MENCIA.

I Did not lie a-bed like a sluggard next morning, but went to reckon with my landlady, who seemed less proud and snappish than she had been the night before; a change that I ascribed to the presence of three honest soldiers belonging to the holy brotherhood, who conversed with her in a very familiar manner. They had lodged all night at the inn; and it was, doubtless, for these *gentlemen of importance*, that all the beds had been bespoke,

Enquiring, in the borough, the way to the castle whither I wanted to go, I addressed myself by accident to a man of the character of my landlord at Pennafior: not contented with answering the question I asked, he let me know that Don Ambrosio was dead three weeks ago, and that the marchioness his lady had retired into a convent at Burgos, which he named. I repaired immediately to that city, instead of following the road to the castle, as I formerly intended; and flying directly to the convent where she was, begged the favour of the portress to tell her, that a young man, just released from the gaol of Astorga, desired to speak with her. The nun went immediately to do what I desired, and returning, introduced me into a parlour, where I had not been long, when I saw the widow of Don Ambrosio appear at the grate in deep mourning.

'You are welcome,' said the lady to me: 'four days ago, I wrote to a person at Astorga, desiring him to go to you from me, and tell you, that I should be glad to see you, as soon as you should be released; and I did not doubt of your being enlarged in a very little time, what I said to the corregidor in your behalf having been sufficient for that purpose. In answer to this, he wrote, that you had recovered your liberty; that nobody knew whither you was gone; so that I was afraid I should never see you again, and consequently be deprived of the pleasure of manifesting my gratitude. Don't be ashamed,' added she (observing my confusion, on account of appearing before her in such a miserable dress;) 'let not your present condition give you the least uneasiness. After the important service you have done me, I should be the most ungrateful of all women, if I neglected to do something for you: I intend to extricate you out of the wretched situation in which you are; it is my duty, and I am able to perform it. The considerable wealth I am now mistress of, empowering me to acquit myself towards you, without incommoding myself.'

'You know,' continued she, 'my adventures, to the day on which we were both imprisoned; and I will tell you what has happened to me since.'

‘ since. When the corregidor of Astorga had ordered me to be conducted to Burgos, after having heard from my mouth a faithful relation of my story, I repaired to Don Ambrosio’s castle, where my return occasioned extreme surprize, though I was told it was too late; for the marquis, thunderstruck at the news of my flight, had fallen ill, and the physicians despaired of his life. This was fresh cause for me to complain of the rigour of my fate: nevertheless, having advertised him of my arrival, I entered his chamber, and running to his bedside, threw myself on my knees, my face bathed in tears, and my heart oppressed with the most afflicting grief! — “What brings you hither?” said he, when he perceived me; “are you come to contemplate your own work? Was it not sufficient for you to deprive me of life, but you must also have the satisfaction of being an eye-witness of my death?” — “No, my lord,” I replied, “Inez must have told you, that I fled with my husband; and had it not been for the dismal accident which has robbed me of him, you never should have seen me again!” At the same time I let him know, that Don Alvaro had been murdered by robbers, who afterwards carried me into their subterranean retreat: and, in short, informed him of all that had happened. When I had done speaking, Don Ambrosio stretched out his hand to me, saying, with the utmost tenderness, “I am satisfied; I will not complain: why should I reproach you! Having found again a husband whom you dearly loved, you abandoned me to follow his fortune: ought I to blame you for such a conduct? No, Madam, I should have been in the wrong to murmur at it, therefore would not suffer you to be pursued: I revered the sacred rights of your ravisher, and even your inclination towards him. In fine, I do you justice; and by your return, you have retrieved all my tenderness! Yes, my dear Mencia, your presence overwhelms me with joy! but alas! it will not last long. I feel my last hour approaching! Scarce are you restored

“ to my arms, when I must bid you an eternal adieu!” At these affecting words, my tears redoubled! I felt and expressed an immoderate affliction! I question if the death of Don Alvaro, whom I adored, had cost me more sighs! Don Ambrosio’s presage of his own death was but too true: he expired next day; and I remained mistress of a considerable estate, which he had settled upon me at our marriage. I intend to make no bad use of it. The world shall not see me (though I am still young) throw myself into the arms of a third husband: for, besides that I think such conduct would be inconsistent with the virtue and delicacy of my sex, I own, I have no longer any relish for the world; but design to end my days in this convent, and become a benefactress to it.

Such was the discourse of Donna Mencia; who, taking out a purse from under her robe, put it in my hand, saying, “Here are a hundred ducats, which I give you only to buy cloaths: come and see me again, after you have equipped yourself; for I do not intend to confine my gratitude within such narrow bounds.” I gave the lady a thousand thanks; and swore I would not depart from Burgos, without taking leave of her: after this oath, which I had no intention to break, I went in quest of an inn, and going into the first I perceived, demanded a room, telling the landlord (to prevent the bad opinion he might conceive of me, from the shabby frock) that, notwithstanding my appearance, I was in a condition to pay handsomely for my lodging. At these words, the innkeeper, whose name was Majuelo, naturally a great wag, surveying me from top to bottom, answered dryly, with a sarcastick sneer, there was no occasion for such an assurance, to persuade him that I should spend like a prince in his house; for he discovered something noble in me, by my dress; and, in short, did not doubt that I was a gentleman of a very independent fortune. I could easily perceive that the rascal rallied me, and in order to put an end to his witticisms, shewed my purse. I even counted my ducats on a table before him, and observing that my coin

altered

altered his opinion very much in my favour, desired he would recommend me to a taylor. 'You had better,' said he, 'send for a broker, who will bring along with him all kinds of apparel ready made, and fit you in a trice.' I approved of his advice, and resolved to follow it: but the day being near a close, deferred my purchase till next morning, and thought of nothing but making a good supper, to indemnify me for the sorry meals I had made since my deliverance from the cavern.

CHAP. XV.

OF THE MANNER IN WHICH GIL BLAS DRESSED HIMSELF. OF THE NEW PRESENT HE RECEIVED FROM THE LADY, AND THE EQUIPAGE IN WHICH HE DEPARTED FROM BURGOS.

THEY brought for my supper a huge fricassée of sheep-trotters, which I picked to the bones; and having drank in proportion, betook myself to rest. As I had the convenience of a good bed, I was in hopes of enjoying a sound sleep: but for all that, could not close my eyes; my thoughts being ingrossed in determining upon the dress I was to chuse. 'What must I do?' said I to myself; 'procure my first design, buy a cassock, and go to Salamanca in quest of a tutor's place? But why should I take the habit of a licentiate? Am I ambitious of consecrating myself to the church; or have I the least bias that way? No. I feel myself, on the contrary, quite otherwise inclined: I will turn gentleman, and endeavour to make my fortune in the world.'

Having resolved upon this, I longed for day with the utmost impatience; and no sooner perceived the glimpse of light, than I got up, and made so much noise in the inn, that I awakened all those who were asleep. I called the waiters, who were still a-bed, and who loaded me with curses, by way of answer. They were obliged to rise, however, and I gave them no quarter, until one of them had gone for a broker, who soon appeared, followed by two apprentices, carrying each a great

green bag on his shoulders. He saluted me with great civility, saying, 'Signior Cavalier, you are very happy in having applied to me rather than to any other body. I don't chuse to disparage my brethren. God forbid that I should prejudice their reputation in the least; but between you and me, there's no conscience among them. They are all as abandoned as Jews. I am the only honest broker in town. I confine myself to a moderate profit; being satisfied with a pound in the shilling—I mean, a shilling in the pound. Thank Heaven! I deal upon the square with all mankind.'

The broker, after this preamble, which I took for gospel, ordered his men to untie the bundles, and shewed me suits of all colours. Some which were of plain cloth I rejected with disdain, as being too mean; but they made me try one which seemed to have been made exactly for my shape, and which struck my fancy, although somewhat worn. It consisted of a doublet with slashed sleeves, a pair of breeches, and a cloak, the whole of blue velvet embroidered with gold. Fixing on this, I cheapened it, and the broker, perceiving I was bent upon it, observed that I had an excellent taste. 'Odds bodikins!' cried he, 'one may see you know what you are about. I can tell you that suit was made for one of the greatest lords in the kingdom, who never had it three times on his back. Examine the velvet, nothing can be finer; and as for the embroidery, you must confess the work is exquisite.'—'What will you sell it for?' said I. He answered, 'Sixty ducats: I am a rogue if I have not refused the money.' The alternative was plain. I offered five-and-forty, which might be about double the value. 'Mr. What-d'ye-call 'um,' replied the broker, with an air of indifference; 'I never exact too much. I am always at a word. Here,' continued he, shewing me some of those I had refused, 'buy this; I'll sell it a penny-worth.' This was only to excite my desire of purchasing that which I had cheapened; and accordingly, imagining that he would not abate one farthing of his price, I counted into his hand the sixty ducats. When he

saw

saw me part with them so easily, I believe, in spite of his boasted honesty, he wished that he had asked a great deal more: pretty well satisfied, however, with having gained nineteen shillings in the pound, he went away, with his apprentices, whom I had not forgotten.

Having now a very handsome cloak, doublet, and breeches, I spent the rest of the morning in providing other necessaries. I bought a hat, silk stockings, shoes, linen, and a sword: after which, having dressed, what infinite pleasure had I in beholding myself so well equipped! My eyes (to use the expression) could not sufficiently glut themselves with my attire! never peacock contemplated his own feathers with more satisfaction. That very day I made my second visit to Donna Men-
cia, who still received me very kindly, and thanked me again for the service I had done her. On that score, many compliments passed on both sides; after which, wishing me all happiness, she bade me farewell, and retired without giving me any thing but a ring worth thirty pistoles, which she desired me to keep in remembrance of her.

I looked very blank with my ring, having laid my account with receiving a much more considerable present, and trudged back to my lodgings in a brown study, little satisfied with the lady's generosity. But just as I entered the inn, a man who had followed me all the way, came in likewise, and laying aside the cloak in which he was muffled up, discovered a great bag under his arm. At the apparition of this bag, which had all the air of being full of money, I, as well as some other people who were present, stared with our eyes wide open; and I thought I heard the voice of an angel, when the man, laying the bag upon a table, pronounced, 'Signior Gil Blas, here is something that my Lady Marchioness has sent you.' I made many profound bows to the bearer, whom I overwhelmed with civility; and he was no sooner gone, than I darted upon the bag like a hawk upon his prey; and carrying it to my chamber, untied it, without loss of time, and found in it a thousand ducats. I had just made an end of counting them, when my landlord, who had heard what the porter said, came in to see the contents of the bag. Thunderstruck

at the sight of my coin spread upon the table, 'Zounds,' cried he, 'what a vast sum of money is here! You must be a devil among the women,' added he, with a satirical smile; 'for although you have not been four and twenty hours in Burgos, you have a marchioness already under contribution.'

This discourse did not disgust me; I was tempted to leave Majuelo in his mistake, which already gave me a sensible pleasure; so that I do not wonder that young fellows love to be thought men of intrigue. My innocence, however, got the better of my vanity; I undeceived my landlord, and recounted the story of Donna Men-
cia, to which he listened with great attention. I then disclosed the state of my affairs; and, as he seemed to interest himself in my behalf, begged the assistance of his advice. Having mused a while, 'Signior Gil Blas,' said he, 'I have a regard for you; and since you have confidence enough in me, to unbosom yourself in this manner, I will, without flattery, tell you what I think you are fittest for. As you seem designed by nature for the court, I advise you to go thither, and attach yourself to some grandee: but be sure either to meddle in his concerns, or enter into his pleasures; otherwise you will lose your time. I know the great. They look upon the zeal and attachment of an honest man as nothing at all; and mind only such as are necessary to them. But you have another resource;' continued he, 'you are young and handsome; and these qualifications alone, without the least glimpse of understanding, are more than sufficient to captivate a rich widow, or some fine lady unhappily married: if love ruins gentlemen of fortune, it often maintains those who have none. It is my advice, therefore, that you go to Madrid; but you must by no means appear without attendants: they judge there, as in other places, by appearance; and you will be considered only in proportion to the figure you make. I will recommend a servant to you—a faithful domestick—a prudent, sober fellow—in one word, a man of my own making. Purchase a couple of mules, one for your-

‘yourself, and another for him, and set out as soon as possible.’

This advice was too much to my own taste, to be neglected: I therefore next morning bought two handsome mules, and hired the servant he had recommended: he was a fellow thirty years old, of a simple, religious aspect, born (as he said) in the kingdom of Galicia; his name was Ambrose de Lamela: far from being selfish, like other servants, he made no words about his wages, but assured me he would be contented with what in my goodness I should think proper to bestow. Having provided myself likewise with boots, and a portmanteau to hold my linen and cash, I cleared with my landlord, and early next morning set out from Burgos, on my way to Madrid.

CHAP. XVI.

SHEWS THAT WE OUGHT NOT TO TRUST TOO MUCH TO PROSPERITY.

WE slept the first night at Duennas, and arriving at Valladolid the day following, about four o'clock in the afternoon alighted at an inn, which seemed one of the best in town. I left the care of my mules to my lacquey, and going up stairs into a chamber, whither I ordered a servant of the house to bring my portmanteau, felt myself a little fatigued, and without taking off my boots, threw myself on the bed, where I fell asleep insensibly. It being almost night when I waked, I called for Ambrose, who was gone out, but returned in a little time; when I asked where he had been, he replied, with a pious air, that he was just come from church, where he had been to return thanks to Heaven, for having preserved him from all evil accidents on the road from Burgos even unto Valladolid: I approved of his conduct, and bade him order a fowl to the fire for my supper.

At that very instant, my landlord entered with a taper in his hand, lighting in a lady, who seemed more handsome than young, and very richly dressed: she was squired by an old usher, and a little blackamoor carried her train. I was not a little surprized when

this lady, after having made a low curtsy, asked if I was not Signior Gil Blas of Santillane; to which I had no sooner answered in the affirmative, than she quitted her attendant, and embraced me with a transport of joy, that redoubled my astonishment. ‘Blessed be Heaven,’ cried she, ‘for this meeting! You are the person, Signior Cavalier; you are the very person I was in quest of.’ At this preamble, I thought of the parasite at Pennasflor, and began to look upon the lady as a downright bite; when I was induced to think more favourably of her by what followed. ‘I am,’ added she, ‘cousin-german to Donna Mencia of Mosquera, who has been so much obliged to you; and received a letter from her this morning, importing, that having heard you was going to Madrid, I would oblige her very much by treating you handsomely, provided you should pass this way. I have been running all over the town these two hours, inquiring from inn to inn, about all the strangers that arrived; and by the description your landlord gave me of you, I imagined you might be the deliverer of my cousin. Ah! now that I have found you,’ continued she, ‘you shall see how sensible I am of the services you have done my family, and in particular, to my dear cousin. You shall come to my house immediately, (if you please) where you will be more conveniently lodged than here.’ I would have excused myself, by representing to the lady, that I should incommode her family; but there was no resisting her importunities: there was a coach waiting for us at the door, in which she took care to see my portmanteau secured; ‘Because,’ said she, ‘there are a great many rogues in Valladolid:’ an observation I found but too true! In short, I went into the coach along with her and her squire, and suffered myself to be carried away from the inn; to the mortification of the landlord, who, by these means, found himself disappointed of the money which he expected I would spend at his house.

Our coach having rolled some time, stopped at a pretty large house, where we alighted, and went up stairs into a handsome apartment, lighted by twenty or thirty wax-candles. We passed through

through a good many servants, of whom the lady asked, if Don Raphael was come yet; and was answered in the negative: upon which, addressing herself to me, 'Signior Gil Blas,' said she, 'I have a brother whom I expect this evening from a villa we have two leagues from this; he will be very agreeably surprized, to find in this house a gentleman to whom our whole family is so much indebted.' She had scarce spoke these words, when we heard a noise below, which (we were told) was occasioned by the arrival of Don Raphael; and that cavalier, who was a young man of a good shape and genteel address, appeared soon after. 'Brother,' said the lady to him, 'I am extremely glad of your return! you will assist me in doing honour to Signior Gil Blas of Santillane; to whom we can never enough shew our gratitude, for what he has done in behalf of our kinswoman Donna Mencia: there,' added she, giving him a letter, 'you may read what she has wrote on the subject.' Don Raphael opening the letter, pronounced these words aloud.

'MY DEAR CAMILLA,

'**S**IGNIOR Gil Blas of Santillane, who preserved my honour, as well as my life, has set out for court; and as he will, doubtless, pass through Valladolid, I conjure you, by the blood, and still more by the friendship that unites us, to shew him all the respect in your power, and detain him some time in your family. I flatter myself, that you will give me that satisfaction; and that my deliverer will receive all manner of civility from you and my cousin Don Raphael. At Burgos, your affectionate kinswoman,

'DONNA MENCIA.'

'How!' cried Don Raphael, 'is this the gentleman to whom my cousin owes her honour and life? ah! Heaven be praised for this happy encounter!' So saying, he approached; and clasping me in his arms, 'What joy do I feel,' said he, 'in embracing Signior Gil Blas of Santillane! my cousin the marchioness had no oc-

casion to lay such injunctions upon us; it would have been sufficient to let us know, that you was to pass through Valladolid; my sister and I know very well how to behave ourselves towards a gentleman, who has performed such an important piece of service to the person for whom, of all our family, we have the most tender regard.' I answered as well as I could, to these compliments, which were followed by a great many more of the same nature, and interspersed with a thousand caresses: after which, perceiving that my boots were still on, they ordered their servants to pull them off; and we went into another room, where the cloth being laid, the gentleman, lady, and I, sat down to supper; during which, they said a thousand obliging things to me: not a word escaped me, which they did not repeat as an admirable stroke of wit; and it was surprizing to see how attentive they were in presenting me with all the daintiest morsels. Don Raphael drank frequently to the health of Donna Mencia, in which I followed his example; and I imagined that Camilla, who did us justice, sometimes, threw certain very significant looks at me. I even observed that she chose proper opportunities of so doing, as if she had been afraid that her brother would perceive it. This was enough to persuade me of the lady's being smitten; and I flattered myself with the hopes of profiting by that discovery, during my short stay at Valladolid. This hope induced me to yield, without difficulty, to their intreaties, when they requested me to spend a few days with them. They thanked me for my complaisance; and the joy which Camilla discovered on this occasion, confirmed me in the opinion, that I had found the way to her heart.

Don Raphael seeing me determined to stay with him some time, proposed to carry me to his country-house, of which he gave me a magnificent description; and talked of the pleasures he would there entertain me with. 'Sometimes,' said he, 'we will take the diversion of hunting, sometimes that of fishing; and if you love walking, we have delightful woods, and gardens in abundance: besides, we shall not want good company; and on the whole, I hope you will not grow

‘grow melancholy among us.’ I accepted his offer, and it was determined that we should go to this charming place the very next day. Having projected this agreeable scheme, we rose from table; and Don Raphael embracing me, in a transport of joy, said, ‘Signior Gil Blas, I will leave my filter to entertain you, while I go immediately to give necessary orders, and advertise those people whom I intend shall be of the party.’ So saying, he went out of the room; and I continued conversing with the lady, who did not contradict, by her discourse, the soft glances she had thrown at me. She took hold of my hand, and looking at my ring, said, ‘You have got a pretty diamond enough, but it is a very small one. Are you a connoisseur in stones?’ When I answered in the negative, ‘I am sorry for it,’ says she, ‘for you might have told me what this was worth.’ With these words, she shewed me a large ruby on her finger; and, while I examined it, added, ‘An uncle of mine, who was governor of the Spanish colonies in the Philippine Isles, made me a present of this ruby, which the jewellers here in Valladolid value at three hundred pistoles.’—‘I believe it is well worth the money,’ said I; ‘for it is extremely beautiful.’—‘Since you are pleased with it,’ she replied, ‘I will make an exchange with you.’ And immediately she pulled off my ring, and put her own on my little finger. Having made this exchange, which I looked upon as a genteel way of making a present, Camilla squeezed my hand, and looked at me in the most languishing manner; then started up abruptly, wished me good night, and withdrew in great confusion, as if she had been ashamed of disclosing her sentiments.

Novice as I was in gallantry, I knew well enough how to interpret this precipitate retreat in my favour, and concluded that I should pass my time very agreeably at their villa. Full of this flattering idea, and the prosperous condition of my affairs, I locked myself in the chamber where I was to lie, after having ordered my servant to come and wake me early in the morning; but instead of going to rest, I gave a loose to those agreeable reflections, which my portmanteau, that lay

on the table, and my ruby, inspired. ‘Thank Heaven!’ said I to myself, ‘if I have been unfortunate, I am no longer so. On one side a thousand ducats; a ring worth three hundred pistoles on the other! My finances will not be exhausted in a hurry! I see now that Majuelo did not flatter me: I shall inflame the hearts of a thousand ladies at Madrid, since I have made such an easy conquest of Camilla!’ The favours of that generous lady presented themselves to my imagination with all their charms; and I anticipated the diversions that Don Raphael prepared for me at his house in the country. In the midst of these pleasing images, however, Sleep did not fail to shed his poppies over me: so that, finding myself drowzy, I undressed, and went to bed.

Next morning, when I awaked, I perceived that it was already late, and was a good deal surprized that my valet did not appear, in consequence of the order I had given him over night. ‘Ambrose,’ said I to myself, ‘my faithful Ambrose, is either at church, or very lazy to-day.’ But I soon lost that opinion of him, and conceived one much worse; for getting up, and missing my portmanteau, I suspected him of having stole it in the night. For farther information, I opened the chamber-door, and called the hypocrite several times; at last, an old man hearing me, came and said, ‘What would you please to have, Signior? all your people departed from my house long before day.’—‘How!’ cried I; ‘your house! am I not at present in the house of Don Raphael?’—‘I don’t know who that gentleman is,’ said he; ‘but you are in furnished lodgings, and I am the landlord: last night, an hour before your arrival, the lady who supped along with you came hither, and hired this apartment for a great lord, who, she said, travelled incognito; and even paid me before hand.’

I was no longer in the dark; I guessed the characters of Camilla and Don Raphael, and concluded that my servant, being perfectly well acquainted with my affairs, had sold me to these sharpers. Instead of ascribing this unlucky adventure to myself, and considering that it would not have happened to me, had I not been so indiscreet as to unbosom

myself unnecessarily to Majuelo; I imputed all to innocent fortune, and cursed my fate a thousand times. The owner of the house, to whom I recounted the adventure, which perhaps he knew as well as I did, seemed affected with my sorrow, consoled me, and protested that he was very much mortified to find that such a scene had passed in his house; but, I believe, notwithstanding all his professions, he was as much concerned in the trick as my landlord at Burgos; to whom, however, I have always attributed the honour of the invention.

CHAP. XVII.

HOW GIL BLAS BESTOWED HIMSELF AFTER THE ADVENTURE OF THE READY-FURNISHED LODGING.

HAVING heartily bewailed my misfortune, I considered, that instead of giving way to sorrow, I ought to animate myself against mischance; and summoning all my courage to my assistance, said to myself, while I put on my cloaths, by way of consolation, 'I am happy in that the rogues have not also carried off my apparel, and some ducats which I have still in my purse!' I gave them credit for this piece of civility; and sold my boots, which they had been generous enough to leave likewise, to my landlord, for one third of the money they had cost me. Then taking my leave of the ready-furnished lodging, without having occasion, thank God! for any body to carry my baggage, the first thing I did, was to go and see whether or not my mules were at the inn where I alighted the preceding night; though I was of opinion that Ambrose had not left them there: and I wish to God my opinion of him had been always as just! for they told me, he had taken care to fetch them away that very evening: wherefore, laying my account with having seen the last of them, as well as of my portmanteau, I strolled about the streets in a melancholy manner, musing on what should be my next course. I was tempted to return to Burgos, and have recourse to Donna Mencia once more; but when I reflected, that in so doing, I should abuse the generosity of the la-

dy, and at the same time be looked upon as a booby, I relinquished that thought; swearing I should, for the future, be upon my guard against women: and I believe at that time I should have mistrusted the chaste Susanna. I cast my eyes from time to time upon my ring, and when I considered that it was a present from Camilla, sighed with vexation. 'Alas!' thought I, 'though I am no connoisseur in rubies, I have too good reason to know those who exchanged them; and I believe it is not necessary that I should go to a jeweller, to be persuaded that I am a fool.'

I was willing, however, to be informed of the worth of my ring; and accordingly shewed it to a lapidary, who valued it at three ducats. Though I was not surprized at this estimation, I wished the niece of the governor of the Philippine Isles at the devil; or rather, only repeated the wish. As I came out of the jeweller's house, a young fellow, who was passing, stopped to consider me. Not being able to recollect him at first, although I had formerly been intimate with him, 'How, Gil Blas!' said he, 'do you pretend ignorance of me? or have two years altered the son of Barber Nunnez so much, that you do not know him? don't you remember Fabricius, your companion and school-fellow, with whom you have so often disputed, at the house of Dr. Godinez, upon predicable and metaphysical degrees?'

I remembered him before he had done speaking, and we embraced one another with transport. 'My dear friend,' continued he, 'how glad am I to meet thee! I can't express the joy I feel. But,' added he, with an air of surprise, 'what do I see! egad! thou art dressed like a prince! a fine sword, silk stockings, doublet and cloak of velvet, embroidered with silver! Odd'sniggers! this smells strong of intrigues! I'll hold a wager, that thou sharest the bounty of some liberal old lady.'—'You are mistaken,' said I, 'for my affairs are not so flourishing as you imagine.'—'Pshaw, pshaw!' replied he, 'you affect to be a close fellow; that fine ruby on your finger, Mr. Gil Blas, whence comes that, I pray you?'—'It comes,' said I, 'from an arrant jade, Fabricius, my dear Fabricius,'

‘ Fabricius, far from being in vogue among the women at Valladolid, know that I am a most ridiculous dupe.’

I pronounced these last words so ruefully, that Fabricius was convinced of my having been imposed upon in some shape or other; and pressed me to tell him what were my reasons for complaining of the fair-sex. I was easily prevailed upon to satisfy his curiosity; but as my story was pretty long, and, besides we had no intention of parting in a hurry, we went into a publick-house, that we might converse together more at our ease; and there, while we breakfasted, I recounted to him all that had happened to me, since my departure from Oviedo. He thought my adventures were extremely odd; and after having assured me, that he very much sympathized with me in my present unlucky situation, said, ‘ We must console ourselves, my child, as well as we can, for all the misfortunes of life. When a man of spirit is unlucky, he waits with patience for a more favourable conjuncture. One should never (as Cicero says) let himself be so much dejected, as to forget that he’s a man. For my own part, I am of that very disposition: my misfortunes have not been able to overwhelm me, because I am always above the caprice of fate. For instance, I lov’d a girl of some fashion at Oviedo, who had a tendre for me; I asked her in marriage of her father, and he refused me. Another, on this occasion, would have died of grief; but I (admire the force of genius!) carried off the dear creature: as she was passionate, thoughtless and vain, pleasure, of consequence, always determined her to the prejudice of duty. I led her a dance for six months through the kingdom of Galicia, from whence, as I had given her a taste for travelling, she was desirous of going to Portugal, but thought proper to chuse a new conductor: here was another subject of despair; but, for all that, I did not sink under the weight of it; and, wiser than Menelaus, instead of declaring war against the Paris who had stole my Helen, I thought myself very much obliged to him, for having rid my hands of her. Afterwards, being unwilling to return

to the Asturias, that I might avoid all expostulation with justice, I advanced into the kingdom of Leon; spending, from town to town, the remainder of the money I had carried off with my infant; for we had quitted Oviedo with the full hand, and arrived at Palencia with a solitary ducat, out of which I was obliged to buy a pair of shoes; so that the remaining part could not last much longer. My situation became very perplexing, and I was even reduced to a very strict regimen: there was no time to be lost, I resolved to go to service, and hired myself to a great woollen-draper, whose son was an accomplished rake. Here, though I found an asylum against hunger, I was not a little embarrassed: for the father ordered me to be a spy upon the son, and the son intreated me to assist him in cheating the father. Being obliged to determine, I preferred the intreaty to the command; and that preference cost me my place. I afterwards went into the service of an old painter, who would have taught me, through friendship, the principles of his art; in the demonstration of which, however, I was almost famished. This gave me a disgust for painting, and a disrelish for Palencia at the same time; and coming to Valladolid, by the greatest good fortune in the world, I got into the family of one of the directors of the hospital, where I now live perfectly happy. Signior Manuel Ordonnez, my master, is a man of profound piety, who walks with his eyes always fixed on the ground, and a large rosary in his hand. They say, that from his youth, having nothing in view but the funds of the poor, he attached himself to them with indefatigable zeal; and accordingly his cares have not been ill requited; every thing prospers with him. What a blessing it is, that he has made himself rich in managing the affairs of the poor!’

Fabricius having harangued in this manner, ‘ I am very glad,’ said I to him, ‘ to find thee so well satisfied with thy condition: but, between you and me, I think you might play a more honourable part in the world.’— ‘ You are mistaken, Gil Blas,’ answered he; ‘ there is no situation in

‘ life

• life more agreeable to one of my hu-
 • mour, than that which I now enjoy :
 • the employment of a lacquey is
 • troublesome, I own, to a silly fel-
 • low ; but to a lad of spirit, it is full
 • of charms. A superior genius that
 • goes to service, does not confine
 • himself to the menial circumstances
 • of his duty, like a simpleton : he goes
 • into a family to command rather than
 • obey ; he begins by studying his
 • master, he accommodates himself to
 • his foibles, gains his confidence, and
 • then leads him by the nose. 'Tis
 • thus that I have behaved towards my
 • director. I soon discovered his hy-
 • pocrify, and perceived that he want-
 • ed to pass for a person of great sanc-
 • tity : I pretended to be his dupe ; that
 • costs nothing. I did more ; I imi-
 • tated him : and acting in his pre-
 • sence the same farce that he plays
 • before others, I deceived the deceiv-
 • er, and am, by degrees, become his
 • factotum. Under his auspices, I
 • hope one day to be concerned in the
 • affairs of the poor ; in which case,
 • I may chance to make my fortune
 • too ; for I find myself as well in-
 • clined towards them, as he can be,
 • for his heart.'

• 'These are fine hopes,' replied I,
 • my dear Fabricius ; I congratulate
 • thee upon thy prospect : and for my
 • own part, will have recourse to my
 • former scheme : convert my embroi-
 • dered habit into a cassock ; repair to
 • Salamanca ; and, lifting myself un-
 • der the banners of the university,
 • perform the office of a tutor.'—'A
 • fine project truly !' cried Fabricius ;
 • an agreeable whim ! What a fool
 • wouldst thou be, to turn pedant at
 • thy age ! dost thou know, wretch !
 • what thou art about to do ? Soon as
 • thou shalt be employed, the whole
 • family will have their eyes on thee,
 • and all thy actions will be scrupu-
 • lously examined : thou must be eter-
 • nally under constraint ; cloath thy-
 • self with hypocrisy, and appear pos-
 • sessed of every virtue. Thou wilt
 • not have a moment to bestow upon
 • thy pleasures. Like a perpetual cen-
 • sor of thy pupil, thou must pass the
 • day in teaching him Latin, and in
 • rebuking him, when he shall say or
 • do any thing amiss ; and after so
 • much labour and constraint, what

• will be the fruit of thy cares ? If the
 • little gentleman wants capacity, it
 • will be said thou hast not given him
 • good education ; and his parents will
 • turn thee away, without any recom-
 • pence ; perhaps, even without paying
 • thy appointments. Don't therefore
 • talk to me of a preceptor's post,
 • which is like a benefice with cure of
 • souls ; but commend me to the em-
 • ployment of a lacquey, which is a
 • simple benefice, encumbered with no
 • charge. When a master has vices,
 • a superior genius in his service will
 • flatter them, and often turn them to
 • his advantage. A footman lives in
 • a good family, without the least dis-
 • quiet ; for after having eaten and
 • drank his bellyful, he sleeps like
 • the son of a lord, and gives himself
 • no trouble about either baker or
 • butcher.

• 'I should never have done, child,'
 continued he, 'was I to recount all
 the advantages of footmen. Take
 my advice, Gil Blas, abandon for
 ever, the design of becoming tutor,
 and follow my example.'—'Yes ;
 but,' Fabricius, said I, 'one does not
 always meet with directors ; and if I
 should resolve to turn lacquey, I
 should, at least, chuse to be well
 settled.'—'Oh ! you are in the right,'
 said he ; 'that shall be my business : I
 will insure thee a good place, if it
 was for no other reason, than to
 snatch a pretty fellow from the uni-
 versity.'

The approaching misery with which
 I was threatened, and the air of satis-
 faction that appeared in Fabricius, per-
 suaded me more than his reasons. I de-
 termined to go to service : whereupon,
 leaving the publick-house, my com-
 panion said, 'I will conduct you to
 the house of a person who is consult-
 ed by almost all the footmen out of
 place ; he has spies who inform him
 of what happens in all families ; he
 knows where servants are wanted ;
 and keeps an exact register not only
 of the vacant places, but even of the
 good and bad qualities of masters :
 he is one who was formerly a friar
 in some convent or other ; and, in
 short, 'twas he who recommended
 me to the place I now enjoy.'

While we conversed about such a
 singular office of intelligence, the son of

of Barber Numez carried me into a blind alley, and we entered a little house, where we found a man about fifty years old, writing at a table. We saluted him very respectfully; but whether he was naturally proud, or accustomed to see lacquies and coachmen only, he had contracted an habit of receiving people cavalierly, and did not rise from his seat, but contented himself with making a slight inclination of the head. He looked hard at me, however, and I could easily perceive he was very much surprized that a young man dressed in embroidered velvet should want to turn valet; he had more reason to think I was come to be provided with one: but he did not continue long in suspense with regard to my intention; for Fabricius accosting him at once, said, 'Signior Arias de Lonna, give me leave to present one of my best friends to you: he is a young man of a good family, whom misfortunes have reduced to the necessity of going to service. Pray inform him of a good place, and depend upon his gratitude.'—'Gentlemen,' answered Arias coldly, 'this is the manner of you all: before you are fixed, you make the finest promises in the world, but once you are well settled, you think no more of them.'—'How!' replied Fabricius, 'do you complain of me! have not I done honourably by you?'—'You might have done better still,' said Arias; 'your place is worth a clerk's employment; and you have paid me, as if I had introduced you to the house of an author.' Here I interposed; and told Signior Arias, that, to shew him I was not ungrateful, my acknowledgment should precede his service; at the same time, taking out two ducats, I put them into his hand; with a promise that I would not stop there, provided I should find myself in a good family.

He seemed pleased with my behaviour, and said, he loved to be treated in that manner: 'There are,' continued he, 'excellent posts vacant, which I will mention in order, that you may chuse one that is to your liking.' So saying, he put on his spectacles, opened a register, which lay on the table, turned over some leaves, and began to

read as follows: 'A lacquy is wanted for captain Torbellino; a passionate, cruel, whimsical man, who grumbles incessantly, swears, beats, and commonly maims his servants.'—'Let us pass on to another,' cried I at that picture; 'that captain is not to my taste.' Arias smiled at my vivacity, and proceeded in this manner: 'Donna Manuela of Sandoval, a superannuated widow, full of peevishness and caprice, has, at present, never a footman: she keeps but one for ordinary, and him never a whole day. There has been one livery suit in the house these ten years, which serves all valets who enter, of what size and shape soever they may be: but it may be said they only try it on; for it is still as good as new, although it has been worn by two thousand lacquies. — Doctor Alvar Fannez, a physician and chymist, wants a servant; his domesticks are well fed, handsomely entertained, and have, moreover, great wages; but he tries experiments upon them with his medicines, and there are often vacant places in his house.'

'Oh, I believe it!' cried Fabricius, laughing: 'upon my conscience, you shew us abundance of fine places!'—'Have patience,' said Arias de Lonna, 'we have not yet done; there are some that I am sure will please you.' Then he continued to read in these terms. 'Donna Alfonsa de Solis, an old devotee, who spends two-thirds of the day at church, and insists upon her footman's being always along with her, has not had a lacquy these three weeks.—The Licentiate Sedillo, an old canon of the chapter of this city, yesterday, in the evening, turned away his footman.'—'Halt there, Signior Arias de Lonna,' cried Fabricius in this place, 'we will stick to this last post. The Licentiate Sedillo is one of my master's friends, with whom I am perfectly well acquainted: I know that he has for house-keeper an old devotee called Dame Jacinta, who disposes of every thing in the house: it is one of the best families in Valladolid, for a servant who loves a quiet life and good cheer; beside, the canon is old and infirm, very much subject to the gout, and will

' will soon make his will : so that there
' is room to hope for a good legacy.
' What a charming prospect for a foot-
' man !—Gil Blas,' added he, turning
towards me, ' let us lose no time, my
' lad ; but go instantly to the house of
' the licentiate, where I will myself
' present you, and answer for thy cha-

rafter.' At these words, for fear of
losing such a fair opportunity, we took
our leave, in a hurry, of Signior A-
rias ; who assured me, for my money,
that if I should be baulked of this
place, I might depend upon his recom-
mending to me one as good.

END OF THE FIRST BOOK.

THE

kn
ed
for
fear
be
the
age
and
nest
gow
ther
a br
rofa
perc
Coun



THE
ADVENTURES
OF
GIL BLAS
OF
SANTILLANE.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

FABRICIUS CONDUCTS GIL BLAS, AND INTRODUCES HIM TO THE LICENTIAE SEDILLO. THE SITUATION OF THIS CANON. A DESCRIPTION OF HIS HOUSE-KEEPER.

WE were so much afraid of coming too late, that we made but one leap from the alley to the house of the old licentiate. We knocked at the door, which was opened by a girl ten years old, who passed for the housekeeper's niece, in spite of scandal; and, asking if the canon could be spoke with, Dame Jacinta appeared: she was a person already arrived at the age of discretion, but still handsome; and, in particular, I admired the freshness of her complexion. She wore a long gown of coarse stuff, with a large leathern girdle from one side of which hung a bunch of keys, and from the other a rosary of great beads. As soon as we perceived her, we bowed with profound respect, and she returned the sa-

lute very civilly, but with a modest deportment and downcast eyes.

'Having understood,' said my comrade to her, 'that master Licentiate Sedillo has occasion for an honest valet, I come to present one, with whom, I hope, he will be satisfied.' The housekeeper, at these words, lifting her eyes, surveyed me with attention; and, not being able to reconcile my embroidery with the discourse of Fabricius, asked, if it was I who wanted the vacant place. 'Yes,' said the son of Nunnez, 'it is this young man; who, notwithstanding his appearance, has met with misfortunes that oblige him to go to service: but he will soon forget his mis-haps,' added he, with an insinuating air, 'if he has the happiness to come into this family; and live with the virtuous Jacinta, who deserves to be housekeeper to the patriarch of the Indies.' At these words, the pious governante moved her eyes from me, to consider the polite person who spoke; and, struck with his features, which were not altogether unknown to her, 'I have,' said she, 'a confused notion of having seen you somewhere! pray, assist my recollection.'

'tion.' — 'Chaste Jacinta,' answered Fabricius, 'I am proud of having attracted your notice; I have been twice in this house, with my master Signior Manuel Ordonnez, director of the hospital.' — 'Ha! you're in the right,' replied the housekeeper; 'I remember it very well, and recollect your face. Ah! since you belong to Signior Ordonnez, you must be a lad of worth and honesty: your place proclaims your virtue; and this young man could not have a better recommendation. Come,' added she, 'I will bring you to speak with Signior Sedillo; who, I believe, will be very glad to have a servant of your presenting.'

We followed her accordingly. The canon lodged on the ground-floor, which consisted of four rooms, well wainscoted; in one of which she desired us to wait a little, while she went into the next, where the licentiate was. After she had staid with him some time, in order to give him his cue, she came and told us, that we might go in. We perceived the old goutified canon, buried, as it were, in an elbow-chair, with pillows under his head and arms, and his legs supported on a large down cushion. While we approached him, we did not spare bows; and Fabricius being still spokesman, not only repeated what he had said of me to the housekeeper, but likewise extolled my merit; and enlarged, chiefly, on the honour which I had acquired in philosophical disputes, while I was with Dr. Godinez; as if it was necessary, that a canon's footman should be a profound philosopher. Nevertheless, this fine eulogium that he bestowed on me, did not fail to cast a mist before the eyes of the licentiate, who observing, besides, that I was not disagreeable to Dame Jacinta, said to my recommender; 'Friend, I take into my service the young man whom thou hast brought. I am satisfied, and conceive a favourable opinion of his morals, since he is presented by a domestick of my good friend Signior Ordonnez.'

As soon as Fabricius saw that I was engaged, he made a low bow to the canon, another still lower to the governante, and withdrew, very well satisfied; after having whispered to me, that we should see one another often, and that I had nothing to do but stay

where I was. When he was gone, the licentiate asked my name, and reasons for leaving my native country; and by these questions engaged me, in presence of Dame Jacinta, to recount my story. They were both very much diverted, especially with the account of my last adventure; Camilla and Don Raphael tickling them so much, that it was like to have cost the old canon his life; for while he laughed with all his force, he was seized with such a violent fit of coughing, that I imagined it would have been his last. As he had not yet made his will, you may easily guess how his housekeeper was alarmed: trembling and astonished, she ran to the assistance of the good man, rubbed his forehead, and clapped him on the back, as is practised with children when they have the chin-cough. However, this was but a false alarm; the old man ceased to cough, and his governante to torment him; and I would have finished my story, had not dame Jacinta, who dreaded another fit, opposed it, and carried me out of the canon's chamber into a wardrobe; where, among several suits of cloaths, was that of my predecessor. This she made me put on, and leavemy own in it's room; which I was not sorry to preserve, in hopes that it would still be of use to me: after which, we went to prepare dinner.

I was not a novice in the art of dressing victuals, having served a happy apprenticeship under Dame Leonarda, who might have passed for a good cook; she was not, however, comparable to Dame Jacinta, who, for aught I know, would have gained the palm from the cook of the archbishop of Toledo. She excelled in every thing: her soups were exquisite, on account of her art in chusing and mixing the different kinds of gravy of which they were composed; and her hashes were seasoned in such a manner, as rendered them extremely agreeable to the palate. When dinner was ready, we returned into the canon's chamber, where, while I laid the cloth on a table set just by his elbow-chair, the housekeeper tucked a napkin under the old man's chin, and tied it over his shoulders. In a moment after, I brought in a mess of porridge that might have been presented to the most celebrated director of Madrid; and two courses, which would have

stimulated

stimulated the sensuality of a vice-roy, had not Dame Jacinta been sparing of her spices, for fear of inflaming the gout of the licentiate. At sight of these delicate dishes, my old master, whom I believed impotent in all his members, shewed me, that he had not as yet lost entirely the use of his arms: he helped to disencumber himself of his pillows, and cheerfully prepared himself for eating. Though his hand shook, it did not refuse it's service, but went and came with great expedition; in such a manner, however, that it spilt upon the table-cloth and napkin one half of what was intended for his mouth. I took away the soup when he had done with it, and brought in a roasted partridge, flanked with two quails, which Dame Jacinta carved for him. She took care also to make him drink frequently large draughts of wine, a little diluted in a large and deep silver cup, which she held to his mouth, as if he had been a child of fifteen months. He fell tooth and nail upon this course, and did no less honour to the birds than he had done to the porridge; and when he had stuffed himself to the tongue, the devotee untied his napkin, replaced his pillows, and left him quiet to take his afternoon's nap in his chair; while we, having uncovered the table, went to dinner in our turn.

In this manner did our canon dine every day; who, for aught I know, was the greatest glutton of the whole chapter; though his supper was commonly more slight, consisting, for the most part, of a pullet and some preserves. I fed well in this house, and lived a very peaceable life; having only one grievance, which was no other than being obliged to watch my master, and pass the whole night like a nurse. Besides a retention of urine, that obliged him to ask for his chamber-pot ten times in an hour, he was subject to profuse sweats; and when these happened, it was my business to shift him. 'Gil Blas,' said he, the second night, 'thou hast activity and address; and I foresee that I shall be very well pleased with thy service. I recommend to thee, above all things, to behave thyself respectfully towards Dame Jacinta: she is a wench who has served me these fifteen years with

a singular zeal; and takes such care of my person, that I can never enough shew my gratitude: wherefore, I own she is more dear to me than all my relations. For the love of her, I have turned out of doors my nephew, my own sister's son, who paid no respect to the poor girl; and far from doing justice to the sincere attachment she has for me, the insolent boy treated her as an hypocrite; for in this age, all virtue appears hypocrisy to young people. Thank Heaven! I have got rid of the scoundrel. I prefer the love that is manifested for me, to all the ties of blood, and am swayed only by the benefits I receive.'—'You are in the right, Sir,' said I to the licentiate: 'gratitude ought to have more weight with us than the laws of nature.'—'Doubtless,' he replied; 'and people will see by my last will, that I have no regard for my relations. My house-keeper will have a good share; and thou shalt not be forgot, provided that thou goest on to serve me as thou hast begun. The footman whom I turned away yesterday has lost a good legacy by his own folly; if that poultry fellow had not, by his misbehaviour, obliged me to dismiss him, I would have made his fortune; but he was a proud coxcomb, who was deficient in his respect for Dame Jacinta; and an idle rascal, who dreaded the smallest trouble. He, forsooth, did not love to watch over me; and looked upon it as a great fatigue to spend the night in contributing to my ease.'—'Ah, the wretch!' cried I, as if the genius of my friend had inspired me, 'he was not worthy of living with such an honourable master! a lad who has the happiness of appertaining unto you, ought to be indefatigable in his zeal; he ought to make a pleasure of his duty, and not think himself fatigued, even when he sweats blood and water for your service.'

I perceived that these words were very agreeable to the licentiate, who was no less satisfied with the assurance I gave him of being always perfectly resigned to the will of Dame Jacinta. Willing, therefore, to pass for a valet whom fatigue could not dispirit, I did my duty with the best grace I could assume, and never complained of being

up all night; a circumstance which, however, I found very disagreeable; and had it not been for the legacy with which I fed my hopes, I should have been very soon disgusted with my condition. Indeed, I slept some hours in the day-time; and the governante, to do her justice, had a good deal of regard for me: this must be ascribed to the care I took in gaining her good graces, by the most complaisant and respectful behaviour. When I was at table with her and her niece, whose name was Inesilla, I shifted their plates, filled wine, and served them with a most particular attention; by which means I insinuated myself into their friendship. One day, while Dame Jacinta was gone out to market, seeing myself alone with Inesilla, I began to converse with her, and asked if her father and mother were still alive. 'O, not at all!' answered she; 'they are dead long—long ago, my good aunt told me so. As for my own part, I never saw them.' I sincerely believed the little girl, though her answer was not categorical; and put her into such a humour of talking, that she told me more of the matter than I wanted to know. She informed me, or rather I gathered from her artless chat, that her good aunt had a very good friend, who lived likewise with an old canon, whose temporalities he managed; and that these happy domesticks expected to join the pillage of their masters by a marriage, the sweets of which they tasted before-hand. I have already observed, that Dame Jacinta, though somewhat superannuated, had still a freshness of complexion: true, indeed, she spared nothing to preserve it; for, besides a glyster which she took every morning, she swallowed during the day, and when she went to bed, some excellent jellies of her own composing, and slept soundly all night, while I watched my master: but that which, perhaps, contributed more than any thing to preserve her colour from fading, was an issue, which Inesilla told me she had in each leg.

CHAP. II.

IN WHAT MANNER THE CANON
WAS TREATED WHEN HE FELL

SICK: THE CONSEQUENCE OF
IT; AND THE LEGACY WHICH
HE LEFT TO GIL BLAS.

I Served the Licentiate Sedillo three months, without complaining of the bad nights he made me pass; at the end of which time he fell sick of a fever, and felt his gout increased by the pain which it occasioned; so that, for the first time in his life, which had been long, he had recourse to physicians, and sent for Dr. Sangrado, whom all Valladolid looked upon as another Hippocrates. Dame Jacinta would have been better pleased, if the canon had begun by making his will, and even dropped some hints on the subject; but, besides that he did not believe himself near his end, in some certain things he was extremely obstinate; I therefore went in search of Dr. Sangrado, and brought him to the house. He was a tall, meagre, pale man, who had kept the shears of Clotho employed during forty years at least. This learned physician had a very solemn appearance, weighed his discourse, and gave an emphasis to his expressions: his reasoning was geometrical, and his opinions extremely singular.

After having examined the symptoms of my master's disease, he said to him, with a very physical air, 'The business here is, to supply the defect of perspiration, which is obstructed: others, in my place, would doubtless prescribe saline draughts, diuretics, diaphoreticks, and such medicines as abound with mercury and sulphur; but catharticks and sudorifics are pernicious drugs, and all the preparations of chymistry are only calculated to do mischief: for my own part, I practise a method more simple, and more sure. Pray what is your ordinary diet?'—'My usual food,' replied the canon, 'is broth and juicy meat.'—'Broth and juicy meat!' cried the doctor, surprised; 'truly, I do not wonder to find you sick: such delicious victuals are poisoned pleasures, and snares that luxury spreads for mankind, in order to ruin them the more effectually. You must renounce all palatable food: the most salutary is that which is most insipid; for, as the

‘the blood is insipid, it requires such
‘virtuals as partake the most of it’s
‘own nature. And do you drink
‘wine?’ added he. ‘Yes,’ said the
‘licentiate, ‘wine diluted.’—‘O! dilut-
‘ed as much as you please,’ replied
‘the physician: ‘what an irregularity is
‘here! what a frightful regimen! you
‘ought to have been dead long ago.
‘How old are you, pray?’—‘I am
‘going in my sixty-ninth year,’ re-
‘plied the canon. ‘Right,’ said the
‘physician; ‘an early old age is always
‘the fruit of intemperance. If you
‘had drank nothing else than pure
‘water all your life, and had been
‘satisfied with simple nourishment,
‘such as boiled apples, for example,
‘you would not now be tormented
‘with the gout; and all your limbs
‘would perform their functions with
‘ease. I do not despair, however, of
‘setting you to rights again, provided
‘you be wholly resigned to my direc-
‘tion.’

The licentiate having promised to obey him in all things, Sangrado sent me for a surgeon whom he named, and ordered him to take from my master six good porringers of blood, as the first effort, in order to supply the want of perspiration. Then he said to the surgeon, ‘Mr. Martin Onnez, re- turn in three hours, and take as much more; and repeat the same evacuation to-morrow. It is a gross error, to think that blood is necessary for the preservation of life: a patient cannot be blooded too much; for, as he is obliged to perform no considerable motion or exercise, but just only to breathe, he has no more occasion for blood than a man who is asleep; life, in both, consisting in the pulse and respiration only.’ The doctor having ordered frequent and copious evacuations of this kind, he told us, that we must make the canon drink warm water incessantly; assuring us that water, drank in abundance, was the true specifick in all distempers whatever: and when he went away, he told Dame Jacinta and me, with an air of confidence, that he would answer for his patient’s life, provided we would treat him in the manner he had prescribed. The governante, who possibly thought otherwise of this method, protested that it should be followed with the utmost exactness. Accord-

ingly, we set about warming water with all dispatch; and as the physician had recommended to us, above all things, not to be too sparing of it, we made my master drink for the first dose two or three pints, at as many draughts. An hour after, we repeated it; and returning to the charge, from time to time, overwhelmed his stomach with a deluge of water: the surgeon seconding us, on the other hand, by the quantity of blood which he drew from him, in less than two days the old canon was reduced to extremity.

This good priest being quite spent, said to me with a feeble voice, as I presented him with a large glass of the specifick, ‘Hold, Gil Blas; give me no more of it, my friend: I see plainly that I must die, in spite of the virtues of water; and though there is scarce a drop of blood left in my body, I don’t find myself a whit the better; which is a plain proof, that the most expert physician in the world cannot prolong our days, when their fatal period is arrived: go, therefore, and fetch a notary, for I want to make my will.’ At these last words, which I was not sorry to hear, I affected to seem melancholy; and concealing the desire I had to execute his commission, ‘Well, but, Sir,’ said I, ‘you are not yet so low, thank God, but that you may recover.’—‘No, no, child,’ replied he; ‘it is all over with me. I feel the gout mounting upwards, and death approaching. Make haste, therefore, and do as I bid thee.’ I perceived, sure enough, that he changed visibly, and the affair appeared so urgent, that I went out as fast as possible to fulfil his orders, leaving with him Dame Jacinta, who was more afraid than I that he would die intestate. I went into the house of the first notary I was directed to, and finding him at home, ‘Sir,’ said I, ‘the Licentiate Sedillo, my master, draws towards his end, and wants to have his last will made; so that there is not a moment to lose.’ The notary, who was a brisk old man, and took delight in rallying, asked what physician attended the canon; I answered, ‘Doctor Sangrado.’ At that name, seizing his hat and cloak in a hurry, ‘Zooks!’ cried he, ‘let us make haste; for the doctor is so expeditious,

'peditions, that he seldom gives his patients time to send for notaries: that man has choused me out of a great many jobs.'

So saying, he followed me with great eagerness, and while we walked together at a good pace, that we might arrive before he should be at the last gasp, 'Sir,' said I to him, 'you know that a testator at the point of death is apt to forget things: now, if my master should not remember me, I beg you will remind him of my zeal and attachment.'—'That I will, my child,' replied the little notary; 'thou mayest depend upon me for that. I will even advise him to give thee something considerable, let him be never so little disposed to reward thy service.' The licentiate, when he came into his chamber, had still the use of his senses; and Dame Jacinta, who was with him, her visage bathed in tears, which she had at command, had played her part, and bespoke the good man's benevolence: so that she and I left the notary alone with him, and went into the anti-chamber, where meeting the surgeon whom the doctor had sent to make one evacuation more, we stopped him. 'Hold, Mr. Martin,' said the governante, 'you cannot go into Signior Sedillo's chamber at present; he is dictating his last will to a notary who is with him; when that is done, you shall have leave to do your office.'

This pious gentlewoman and I were much afraid that the licentiate would die before his will could be finished: but happily for us, the deed that occasioned our disquiet was executed; and the notary finding me in his way, as he came out, clapped me on the shoulder, saying with a smile, 'Gil Blas is not forgotten.' These words inspired me with excessive joy; and I thought myself so much obliged to my master for having remembered me, that I promised to pray with all my heart for his soul, after his death, which soon happened; for the surgeon having blooded him again, the poor old man, who was but too much exhausted before, expired almost during the operation. As he breathed his last sighs, the physician came in, and looked very foolish, notwithstanding his long practice of dispatching patients. Nevertheless, far from imputing the canon's

death to his watery draughts and evacuations, he observed, as he went out, with an air of indifference, that the patient had not lost blood enough, nor drank a sufficient quantity of warm water; while the executioner of this sublime art (I mean, the surgeon) seeing also that there was no more occasion for his office, followed Dr. Sangrado.

As soon as the breath went out of our patron's body, Dame Jacinta, Inesilla and I, raised a concert of mournful cries, which were heard all over the neighbourhood: the governante especially, who had the greatest cause to rejoice, uttered such doleful accents, that one would have thought she was the most afflicted person on earth; and the chamber was instantly filled with people drawn thither, more by curiosity than compassion. The relations of the deceased no sooner learned the news of his death, than they poured into the house, to seal up every thing, and found the housekeeper in such affliction, that they imagined, at first, the canon had not made his will: but they soon understood that there was one sanctioned by all the usual formalities; which when they came to open, and saw that the testator had disposed of his best effects in favour of Dame Jacinta and the little girl, they made his funeral speech in terms not much to the honour of his memory: they pronounced an elogium on the devotee, at the same time, and even bestowed some praises on me, who, I must own, deserved some at their hands; for the licentiate (rest his soul!) in order to make me remember him as long as I should live, explained himself in an article of his will, with regard to me, in this manner. 'Item, As Gil Blas is a young man of some understanding already, in order to compleat his learning, I leave to him my library, all my books and manuscripts without exception.'

I could not conceive where this pretended library could be, having never perceived any such thing in the house. I knew only of a few papers, with five or six volumes that stood upon a shelf in my master's closet, and these were my legacy; though the books could not be of any great service to me, one being intitled, *The Compleat Housewife*: another treated of *Indigestion* and *The Method of Cure*; the rest were, *The*
Four

Four Parts of the Breviary, which the moths had almost consumed. With regard to the manuscripts, the most curious contained all the proceedings of a law-suit in which he was once engaged for his prebend. After having examined the legacy with more attention than it deserved, I left it to the relations who envied me so much. I gave them back the very cloaths I wore, and resumed my own; claiming my wages only, as the fruit of my service, and resolving to seek a place elsewhere. As for Dame Jacinta, besides the money which was left to her, she was in possession of some valuable effects, which, by the assistance of her good friend, she had found means to secrete during the licentiate's last illness.

CHAP. III.

GIL BLAS ENGAGES HIMSELF IN THE SERVICE OF DR. SANGRADO, AND BECOMES A CELEBRATED PHYSICIAN.

I Resolved to visit Signior Arias de Londonna, and consult his register for a new place; but as I was just going into the blind alley where he lived, I met Dr. Sangrado, whom I had not seen since the death of my master, and took the freedom to salute him. He recollected me immediately, although I had changed my dress, and expressing some joy at seeing me, 'Art thou there, my child!' said he; 'I was just thinking of thee! having occasion for a good lad to serve me, I imagined that thou wouldst answer my purpose very well, if thou canst read and write.'—'Sir,' answered I, 'in that particular I can do your business.'—'Say'st thou so!' said he; 'then thou art the man I want. Come to my house, where thou shalt find every thing agreeable; I will treat you with distinction; and though I give no wages, thou shalt want for nothing: I will take care to maintain thee handsomely; and will even discover to thee the great mystery of curing all diseases; in a word, thou shalt rather be my pupil than my servant.'

I accepted the doctor's proposal, in hopes of making myself illustrious in physick, under the auspices of such a learned master; and he carried me

home with him on the instant, in order to initiate me in the employment, which consisted in writing the names and places of abode of the patients who sent for him while he was abroad: for this purpose, there was in the house a register, in which an old woman, who was his sole domestick, set down their several directions: but, besides that she was utterly ignorant of spelling, she wrote so ill, that for the most part it was impossible to decypher her scrawl. I was invested with the charge of this book, which might have been with great justice styled a register of the dead; for almost all the people whose names it contained gave up the ghost. I inserted in it (to use the expression) the names of those people who were to set out for the other world, as the clerk of a stage-coach office, registers those who take places. The pen was seldom out of my hand, because there was not, at that time, a physician in Valladolid of more credit than Dr. Sangrado, who had acquired great reputation with the publick, by a pomp of words, a solemn air, and some lucky cures, which had done him more honour than he deserved.

He did not want practice, nor, of consequence, money; which, however, did not make us fare the better, his housekeeper being extremely parsimonious; our ordinary food consisting of pease, beans, boiled codlins, or cheese; which aliments, he said, were agreeable to the stomach, as being most proper for trituration; in other words, easily brayed. Notwithstanding this his opinion, however, he did not approve of our eating a bellyful even of them; in which, to be sure, he was much in the right: but if he forbid his maid and me to eat a great deal, he allowed us, by way of recompence, to drink as much water as we could swallow; far from restricting us in this particular, he would sometimes say, 'Drink, my children; health consists in the suppleness and humectation of the parts; drink water in great abundance: it is an universal menstruum that dissolves all kinds of salt. When the course of the blood is too languid, this accelerates it's motion; and when too rapid, checks it's impetuosity.' The honest doctor was so well convinced of the truth of this doctrine, that he himself drank nothing but water,

ter, though he was well stricken in years. He defined old age—a natural decay, that withers and consumes us: and, in consequence of this definition, deplored the ignorance of those who call wine ‘the milk of old men:’ for he maintained that the juice of the grape wastes and destroys them; and with great eloquence observed, that this fatal liquor is to them, as to all the world, a treacherous friend and deceitful pleasure.

In spite of all this fine reasoning, I had not been eight days in the house, when I was seized with a looseness, and began to feel great disorder in my bowels, which I was rash enough to ascribe to the universal dissolvent and meagre subsistence on which I lived. I complained of it to my master, in hopes that he would relent, and allow me a little wine at meals; but he was too much an enemy to that liquor to gratify my expectation. ‘If thou feelest in thyself,’ said he to me, ‘any reluctance to simple element, there are innocent aids in plenty, that will support thy stomach against the insipid taste of water; sage, for example, and baum, will give it an admirable flavour; and an infusion of corn-poppy, gilliflowers and rosemary, will render it still more delicious.’

Notwithstanding all he could say in praise of water, and the excellent beverages he taught me to compose, I drank of it with such moderation, that perceiving my temperance, he said, ‘Why, truly, Gil Blas, I am not at all surprized that thou dost not enjoy good health. Thou dost not drink enough, my friend. Water, taken in small quantities, serves only to disentangle the particles of the bile, and give them more activity; whereas, they should be drowned in a copious dilution. Don’t be afraid, my child, that abundance of water will weaken and relax thy stomach: lay aside that panick fear which perhaps thou entertainest of plentiful drinking. I will warrant the consequence; and if thou dost not look upon me as a sufficient bondsman, Celsus himself shall be thy security. That Roman oracle bestows an admirable eulogium on water; and afterwards says in express terms, that those who excuse their drinking of wine, on account of a weak stomach, do a mani-

fest injury to that organ, by using such a cloak for their own sensuality.’

As it would not have looked well for me to shew myself untractable in the very beginning of my career in physick, I seemed persuaded of his being in the right, and will even own I was effectually convinced; so that I continued to drink water on the guaranty of Celsus, or rather, to drown my bile in copious draughts of that liquor; and although I felt myself every day more and more incommoded by it, prejudice got the better of experience; so happily was I disposed by nature for becoming a physician. I could not always, however, resist the violence of my disorder, which increased to such a degree, that I resolved at length to leave Dr. Sangrado; but he invested me with a new employment, which made me change that resolution. ‘Hark’e, my child,’ said he, one day, ‘I am not one of those harsh and ungrateful masters who let their domesticks grow grey in their service before they recompence them. I am well pleased with thy behaviour; I have a regard for thee, and without farther delay will make thy fortune. I will immediately disclose to thee the whole extent of that salutary art which I have professed so many years. Other physicians make this consist in the knowledge of a thousand difficult sciences; but I intend to go a shorter way to work, and spare thee the trouble of studying pharmacy, anatomy, botany and physick: know, my friend, all that is required, is to bleed thy patients, and make them drink warm water. This is the secret of curing all the distempers incident to man. Yes! that wonderful secret which I reveal to thee, and which Nature, impenetrable to my brethren, hath not been able to hide from my researches, is contained in these two points—of plentiful bleeding, and frequent draughts of water. I have nothing more to impart; thou knowest physick to the very bottom, and reaping the fruit of my long experience, art become, in a twinkling as skilful as I am. Thou mayest,’ continued he, ‘ease me not a little at present: in the morning, thou shalt keep our register, and in the afternoon, go and visit a part of my patients: while I take care of the nobility and clergy, thou

‘thou shalt go in my room to the houses of tradesmen where I am called; and when thou shalt have practised some time, I will procure thy admission into the faculty. Thou art learned, Gil Blas, before thou turnest physician; whereas, others prescribe a long time, generally all their lives, without ever becoming learned.’

I thanked the doctor for having enabled me with such dispatch to serve as his deputy; and, as an acknowledgment of his favours, assured him that I would follow his maxims as long as I lived, even if they should be contrary to those of Hippocrates. But this assurance was not altogether sincere; for I disapproved of his opinion with regard to water, and resolved to drink wine every day when I went out to visit my patients. I committed my own cloaths to a peg for the second time, and put on a suit of my master's, that I might appear in all respects like a physician; after which, I prepared myself for exercising medicine at the expence of whom it should concern. My *coup d'essai* being upon an alguazil, who was ill of a pleurisy, I ordered him to be blooded without mercy, and filled to the tongue with water. I went afterwards into the house of a pastry-cook, who lay roaring with the gout, and whose blood I was no more sparing of than the alguazil's; taking care also not to restrict him in the article of water. For these prescriptions I received twelve rials, which made me so enamoured of the profession, that I thought ‘the more mischief, the better sport.’ Coming out of the pastry-cook's house, I met Fabricius, whom I had not seen since the death of the Licentiate Sedillo; and who, having looked at me some minutes with surprize, set his hands in his sides, and burst out into an immoderate fit of laughter. It was not without reason; for having a cloak that trailed on the ground, with a doublet and breeches that would have served a man four times as big as me, my figure was truly original. I let him laugh till he was tired, not without being tempted to follow his example; but I restrained myself in order to preserve decorum, and the better ape the physician, who is no risible animal. If my ludicrous appearance had excited the mirth of Fabricius, my gra-

vity increased it; and when he had indulged it sufficiently, ‘Upon my conscience, Gil Blas,’ said he, ‘thou art pleasantly equipped. Who the devil has disguised thee in this manner?’—‘Softly, friend,’ replied I; ‘softly. Learn to shew more respect for another Hippocrates; and know that I am the deputy of Dr. Sangrado, the most celebrated physician of Valladolid, with whom I have lived these three weeks. He has taught me physick to the very bottom; and as he cannot in person attend all the sick who send for him, I assist him in his visitation: he takes care of the great, and I of the plebeians.’—‘Very well,’ replied Fabricius; ‘he leaves the blood of the commonalty to thee; while he reserves that of the gentry to himself! I congratulate thee upon thy share; for it is better to have to do with the populace, than with persons of fashion: happy is a suburb physician! his faults are less observed, and his assassinations less known. Yes, my child,’ added he, ‘thy situation is to be envied; and, to speak in the words of Alexander, if I was not Fabricius, I could wish to be Gil Blas.’

To shew the son of Barber Nunnez that he had reason to praise the happiness of my present condition, I produced the rials which I had received from the alguazil and pastry-cook; upon which we went into a publick-house, in order to spend some of them. Here we were served with pretty good wine, which the longing desire I had of tasting that liquor making me think still better than it was, I drank huge draughts of it, and (no disparagement to the Roman oracle) the more I filled my stomach, the less did that organ complain of the injury it received. Fabricius and I having staid together a long time in the publick-house, and laughed heartily at the expence of our masters, as the custom is among servants, we parted in the twilight, after having made a mutual promise of meeting again in the same place next day in the afternoon.

CHAP. IV.

GIL BLAS CONTINUES TO ACT
THE PHYSICIAN WITH EQUAL
CAPA-

CAPACITY AND SUCCESS. THE
ADVENTURE OF THE RING RE-
TRIEVED.

I Had just got home, when Dr. Sangrado came in, to whom I gave an account of the patients I had visited, and put into his hand eight rials which remained of the twelve I had received for my prescriptions. 'Eight rials!' said he, after having counted them; 'this is a small matter for two visits, but we must refuse nothing.' So it appeared; for he kept six, and giving me two, 'Hold, Gil Blas,' added he; 'there is something for thee to begin stock: I allow thee a fourth part of what thou shalt get, and thou wilt be rich in a very short time, my friend: for, please God, there will be plenty of diseases this season.'

I had reason to be contented with my share; because, resolving to detain always a third part of what I should receive from the patients, and afterwards touching a fourth of what should remain, it would on the whole (if there be any truth in arithmetick) amount to one half of what I should earn. This consideration inspiring me with new ardour for my profession, next day when I had dined, I resumed my physical dress, and going out, visited several patients whom I had registered, and whom I treated after the same manner, though their distempers were quite different. Hitherto things had gone smoothly on; and nobody, thank Heaven! found fault with my prescriptions; but however excellent the practice of physick may be, it cannot escape censure. Going into the house of a grocer whose son was dropical, I there met with a little swarthy physician, called Dr. Cuchillo, whom a relation of the grocer's had brought along with him. I made profound bows to every body present, and in particular to the person who, I concluded, was called to consult with me about the distemper of the patient: he saluted me with great gravity, then eying me attentively for some minutes, 'Signior Doctor,' said he, 'pray excuse my curiosity; I thought I had been acquainted with all my brethren, the physicians of Valladolid; but, I confess, your features are utterly unknown to me: sure you must not have been long settled in this city.' I answered,

that I was a young practitioner, who as yet only prescribed under the auspices of Dr. Sangrado. 'I congratulate you,' said he, bowing, 'on your having embraced the method of such a great man; and I do not doubt, that you are already master of your business, notwithstanding your youthful appearance.' He spoke this so naturally, that I did not know whether he was in jest or earnest; and I was thinking upon some answer, when the grocer, interposing, said, 'Gentlemen, I am persuaded that you are both perfectly well acquainted with the art of physick; therefore, pray examine the situation of my son, and prescribe what you shall judge proper for his cure.'

Accordingly, the little doctor enquired into the state of our patient, and after having made me observe all the symptoms of the disease, asked in what manner I proposed to treat him. 'I am of opinion,' said I, 'that he should be blooded every day, and drink hot water in abundance.' At these words the little physician said, with a satirical grin, 'And do you think these remedies will save his life?'—'Never doubt that,' cried I, in a resolute tone; 'they must certainly produce that effect; being, as Dr. Sangrado observes, specifics against all kinds of distempers.'—'At that rate,' replied he, 'Celsus is very much to blame, in assuring us, that for the more easy cure of a dropsy, it is requisite to make the patient suffer both hunger and thirst.'—'Oh! Celsus,' I resumed, 'is not my oracle; he was as liable to mistakes as any other; and I have sometimes found my account in acting quite contrary to his opinion.'—'I perceive, by your discourse,' said Cuchillo, 'the sure and satisfactory method that Dr. Sangrado would inculcate into young practitioners; the whole of his practice consists in bleeding and aqueous draughts; therefore I am not at all surprized to see so many honest people die under his hands.'—'None of your invectives,' said I, interrupting him with some heat; 'it does not look well to hear a man of your profession cast such reflections. Come, come, Mr. Doctor, abundance of sick people are sent to the other world, without being

‘being blooded, or drinking hot water; and I don’t doubt that you have dismissed your share of them. If you have any thing to say against Dr. Sangrado, commit it to paper; he will answer it, and we shall soon see on which side the laughers are.’—By St. Jago and St. Dennis! cried he, in a rage; ‘you are little acquainted with Dr. Cuchillo! Know, friend, that I have both teeth and nails, and am not at all afraid of Sangrado, who, in spite of his vanity and presumption, is a downright ninny.’ The appearance of the little doctor making me despise his wrath, I replied with great bitterness; he answered in the same manner; and we came to fifty cuffs in a very short time: some blows passed, and each of us lost an handful of hair, before the grocer and his kinsman could part us; which when they had accomplished, I was paid for my visit and dismissed, while they retained my antagonist, who seemed to them the more skilful of the two.

After this adventure, I had like to have met with another as bad; for going to visit a fat chaunter, who was ill of a fever, I no sooner mentioned hot water, than he fell into a rage against the specifick, cursed and swore, called me a thousand names, and even threatened to throw me out of the window. I moved off faster than I came in; and not chusing to see any more patients that day, betook myself to the house appointed for the rendezvous between me and Fabricius, who was already there: and as we found ourselves in a frolicksome humour, we drank hard, and went home in a state of elevation; that is, half seas over.

Signior Sangrado did not observe that I was drunk, because he mistook my extravagant gestures, in recounting the quarrel I had with the little doctor for an effect of the emotion occasioned by the battle: besides, having been principally concerned in our dispute, he became a party, and piqued at Cuchillo, said; ‘Thou hast done well, Gil Blas, in defending the honour of our remedies against that little abortion of the faculty. He affirms, then, that aqueous draughts are improper for the dropfy! Ignorant wretch! I maintain—I do—that a dropfical patient cannot drink too

much. Yes, water,’ added he, ‘can cure all kinds of dropfies, as well as rheumatisms, and the green-sickness; it is moreover excellent in fevers, where the patient burns and shivers at the same time; and of incredible effect even in those distempers that are imputed to cold, serous, and phlegmatick humours: this opinion may appear strange to such raw physicians as Cuchillo; but it is easily supported by theory and practice; and if such as he were capable of reasoning philosophically, instead of decrying my method, they would become my most zealous partizans.’

He did not therefore suspect my being fuddled, so much was he enraged; for, in order to inflame him the more against the little doctor, I had thrown into my story some circumstances of my own invention. Nevertheless, fired as he was with what I had told him, he perceived that I drank more water that evening than usual, the wine having made me very thirsty. Any other than Sangrado would have suspected my extraordinary drought, and the great draughts I swallowed; but he firmly believed, that I began to relish watery potions; and said, with a smile, ‘I see, Gil Blas, thou hast no longer an aversion to water. Heaven be praised! thou drinkest it now like nectar! a change that does not surprize me at all, my friend; for I knew that it would soon grow familiar to thy taste.’—‘Sir,’ I replied, ‘there’s a time for all things: I would not at present give a pint of water for an hogthead of wine.’ The doctor, charmed with this answer, did not neglect such a fair opportunity of extolling the excellence of water; but uttered a new elogium on it, not like a cold advocate, but with all the fervour of an enthusiast. ‘A thousand times,’ cried he, ‘a thousand and ten thousand times more valuable and innocent than the taverns of our days, were those baths of ages past, into which people did not go to prostitute, in a shameful manner, their lives and fortunes, by glutting themselves with wine; but where people met for amusement, and drank hot water with honour and security! One cannot enough admire the wise provision of those masters of civil life, who established publick places where

‘water was freely given to all comers, and who secured the wine in the shops of apothecaries, permitting it to be used by the prescriptions of physicians only. What surprizing sagacity! It is, doubtless,’ added he, ‘owing to some lucky remains of that ancient frugality, worthy of the golden age, that there are still a few, who, like thou and I, drink nothing but water; and who, as a preservative from, or cure of all distempers, trust to hot water unboiled; for I have observed, that boiled water is more heavy, and less agreeable to the stomach.’

While he uttered this eloquent harangue, I had like to have laughed in his face more than once: I kept my gravity, however—I did more: I entered into the doctor’s sentiments, inveighed against the use of wine, and lamented that mankind had contracted a taste for such a pernicious liquor. Then (as my thirst was not sufficiently quenched) I filled a large goblet with water, and having swallowed long draughts of it, ‘Come, Sir,’ said I to my master, ‘let us regale ourselves with this benevolent liquor, and revive, in your house, those ancient baths which you regret so much.’ He applauded my zeal, and during a whole quarter of an hour, exhorted me to drink nothing but water. In order to familiarize myself to this prescription, I promised to swallow a great quantity every evening; and that I might the more easily perform my promise, went to bed with a resolution of going to the tavern every day.

The opposition I met with at the grocer’s house, did not deter me from prescribing warm water and bleeding next day. As I came out of a house where I had been to visit a frantick poet, I met an old woman in the street, who accosting me, asked if I was a physician: when I answered in the affirmative; ‘Well, then,’ said she, ‘I most humbly beg you will come along with me; my niece was yesterday taken ill, and I don’t know what is the matter with her.’ I followed the old gentlewoman, who conducted me to a house, and introduced me to a pretty neat chamber, where I found a person in bed; and going towards her, in order to enquire into the symptoms of her disease, was immediately struck

with her features; which, when I had observed some minutes, I recollected her to be no other than the female adventurer who had so dexterously acted the part of Camilla. As for her part, she did not seem to remember me; whether the oppression of her own distemper, or my physical garb, secured me from her recollection. Laying hold of her arm, in order to feel the pulse, I perceived my ring upon her finger; at sight of which I felt a terrible emotion, and a violent desire of attempting to retrieve it: but considering that the women might fall a crying, and Don Raphael, or some other champion of the fair-sex, come to their assistance, I was at pains to resist the temptation; and imagining it would be better to dissemble, and to take the advice of Fabricius, stuck to this last resolution. In the mean time, the old woman pressing me to let her know the nature of her niece’s distemper, I was not fool enough to own myself ignorant of the matter: but, on the contrary, affecting the man of skill, and copying my master’s deportment, I told her, with great gravity, that the distemper proceeded from the patient’s want of perspiration; and that, of consequence, she must be speedily blooded, that evacuation being the only substitute of perspiration; I likewise prescribed warm water, that the rules of our practice might be exactly observed.

Having made my visit as short as possible, I ran to find the son of Nunnez, whom I met at the door, going out to execute a commission for his master: I told him my new adventure; asking, if he thought I should cause Camilla to be arrested in course of law: he answered, ‘Not, at all; that is not the way to see thy ring again; for the officers of justice hate to make restitution. Remember the gaol of Astorga, where thy horse, money, and even thy cloaths, were detained by these harpies. We must rather make use of our own industry in recovering thy jewel. I’ll undertake to find out some stratagem for that purpose; and I will think of it in my way to the hospital, where I carry a short message to the steward from my master: go and wait for me at our tavern; and be not impatient, for I will be with thee in a very little time.’

He

He did not, however, arrive at the rendezvous, till after I had been there three hours; and then so disguised, that at first I did not know him: for he changed his dress, twisted his hair into a queue, covered one half of his face with a pair of artificial whiskers, provided himself with a huge sword, the hilt of which was at least three feet in circumference; and marched at the head of five men who looked as fierce as himself, and wore also long rapiers and thick mustachios. 'Your servant, Signior Gil Blas,' said he, accosting me; 'you see in me an alguazil of a new stamp, and in these brave fellows who accompany me, soldiers of the same model. Shew us only the house of the woman who stole your diamond, and be assured that we will make her restore it in a twinkling.' I embraced Fabricius at this discourse, which explained the stratagem he intended to put in practice in my behalf; and assured him, that I very much approved of his expedient. I saluted also the false soldiers, who were three valets, and two journeymen barbers of his acquaintance, whom he had engaged to act this part. Having treated the whole brigade with wine, we went all together, in the twilight, to Camilla's lodging, and knocked at the door; which the old woman opening, and taking my attendants for the terriers of justice, who never entered that house without cause, was seized with consternation. 'Courage, good mother,' said Fabricius to her, 'we are come hither only on account of a small affair that will soon be determined.' So saying, we advanced to the chamber of the sick person, conducted by the old woman, who walked before, lighting us with a wax taper in a silver candlestick. Taking the candle in my hand, I went towards the bed, and discovering my face to Camilla, 'Perfidious woman!' said I, 'behold the too credulous Gil Blas, whom you have tricked. Ah, wretch! I have found you at last, and the corregidor, in consequence of my information, has ordered this alguazil to apprehend you.—Come, Mr. Tipstaff,' said I to Fabricius, 'do your office.'—'There is no occasion,' answered he, raising his voice, 'for exhorting me to do my duty. I re-

member that there creature, who has been a long time marked in my memorandum-book with red letters.—Rise, my princess,' added he, 'dress yourself with all dispatch. I intend to be your usher, and conduct you to the city gaol, if you think well of it.'

At these words, Camilla, sick as she was, perceiving that two of his followers, with the great whiskers, were about to drag her out by force, sat up in her bed, clasped her hands in a suppliant posture, and looking at me with terror in her eyes, 'Signior Gil Blas,' said she, 'I conjure you, by the chaste mother who bore you, to have pity upon me! though I am very guilty, I am still more unfortunate! don't ruin me; I will restore your ring.' So saying, she took it off from her finger, and put it into my hand; but I told her my diamond alone would not suffice; and that she must besides make restitution of the thousand ducats which had been stole from me in the furnished lodgings. 'Oh, Signior!' she replied, 'do not ask your ducats of me; the traitor Don Raphael, whom I have not seen since that time, carried them off the same night.'—'O ho! my little darling,' said Fabricius to her; 'you think to get out of the scrape, by denying you had any share of the booty; but you shan't be so easily quit, I assure you: your being an accomplice of Don Raphael is a sufficient reason for obliging you to give an account of your past life. You have, doubtless, a great many things on your conscience, and therefore you shall go to prison, (if you please) and make a general confession. I will carry this old gentlewoman thither also,' added he; 'for I imagine she knows a great many curious stories, which the corregidor will not be sorry to hear.'

At these words the two women put every art in practice to melt us; filling the chamber with cries, groans, and lamentations. While the old woman on her knees, sometimes before the alguazil, and sometimes before his attendants, endeavoured to move their compassion; Camilla implored me, in the most affecting manner, to save her from the hands of justice: upon which I pretended to relent, saying to the son

of Nunnez, 'Mr. Officer, since I have got my diamond, I am satisfied. I don't desire to give this poor woman any farther trouble; and would not even seek the death of a sinner.'—'For shame!' said he; 'a man of your humanity would make a bad trooper; but I must acquit myself of my commission, by which I am expressly ordered to apprehend these infantas; for the corregidor wants to make an example of them.'—'For Heaven's sake!' I replied, 'have some regard to treaty, and abate a little of your severity, in consideration of the present which these ladies will offer.'—'Oh! that's another affair,' said he; 'that is, what we call a figure of rhetorick well placed.—Come, let us see what they have got to give me.'—'I have,' said Camilla, 'a pearl-necklace, and ear-rings of a considerable value.' Here she was interrupted with, 'Yes, but if they come from the Philippine Isles, I'll have none of them.'—'You may take them upon my word; I'll warrant them genuine,' said she: at the same time desiring the old woman to bring a little box; out of which she took the necklace and ear-rings, and put them into the alguazil's hand. Though he knew no more of jewels than I did, he was persuaded that the diamonds of the ear-rings were genuine, [as well as the pearls of the necklace; therefore having examined them attentively, 'These jewels,' said he, 'seem to be of a good water; and provided the silver candlestick, which Signior Gil Blas has in his hand, be added to them, I won't answer for my fidelity.'—'I don't believe,' said I to Camilla, 'that you will for a trifle break off a treaty so much to your advantage.' So saying, I gave the light to the old woman, and the candlestick to Fabricius; who, being satisfied with what he had got, because, perhaps, he saw nothing else in the room which he could easily carry off, said to the ladies, 'Adieu, my princesses; live in peace. I will speak to the corregidor, and represent you whiter than snow: for such as we, can give what turn we please to things, and never tell him the plain truth, except when we are under no temptation to lye.'

CHAP. V.

THE SEQUEL OF THE RING RETRIEVED. GIL BLAS QUILTS THE PROFESSION OF PHYSICK, AND MAKES HIS RETREAT FROM VAL-LADOLID.

AFTER having in this manner executed the scheme of Fabricius, we left Camilla's lodgings, congratulating ourselves upon a piece of success that even surpassed our expectation; for we had laid our account with recovering the ring only. However, we carried off the rest without ceremony; and, far from making a scruple of robbing courtizans, we thought we had done a meritorious action.—'Gentlemen,' said Fabricius, when he had got into the street, 'it is my opinion, that we should go back to the tavern, and spend the night in making merry. To-morrow we will sell the candlestick, necklace, and ear-rings; and share the money like brothers; after which we will return to our several homes, and make the best excuse we can to our masters.' This proposal of the alguazil seeming very reasonable to us all, we returned to the tavern, some of us believing we could easily find an excuse for having lain abroad, and others not caring whether they should be dismissed or no.

We ordered a good supper, and sat down to table with as much appetite as good humour. The repast was seasoned with a thousand agreeable sallies; and Fabricius, in particular, enlivened the conversation, and diverted us all extremely, by innumerable strokes replete with Castilian salt, which is equal at least to the ancient Attick. But while we were in this jovial disposition, our mirth was all of a sudden overcast by an unforeseen accident. A man of a pretty good mien entered the room where we were at supper, followed by two others of terrible aspect; after these, three more appeared; and we counted no less than twelve who came in thus, three by three, armed with carbines, swords, and bayonets. We soon perceived them to be the soldiers of the patrolle, and it was not difficult to guess their intention; wherefore we had some thoughts, at first, of making

making resistance; but they surrounded us in an instant, and kept us in awe, as well by their numbers as their fire-arms. 'Gentlemen,' said their commander to us with a sneer, 'I know by what ingenious artifice you have recovered a ring from the hands of a certain she-adventurer; and, to be sure, the contrivance is excellent, and richly deserves a publick recompence, which you shall by no means miss. Justice has already appointed an apartment for you in her own house, and will not fail to reward such a masterly attempt.' This discourse very much disconcerted all those to whom it was addressed: our countenances changed; and we felt, in our turn, the same fear with which we had inspired Camilla. Fabricius, however, though pale and dismayed, endeavoured to justify what he had done. 'Sir,' said he, 'as we had no bad intention, this little trick might be forgiven.' — 'How the devil!' cried the commandant in a rage, 'do you call this a little trick? Don't you know that it is a hanging matter? For, besides that no man is allowed to do justice to himself without the cognizance of the law, you have carried off a candlestick, necklace and ear-rings, that did not belong to you; and, which is still worse, in order to commit that robbery, you have disguised yourselves like tipstaves—Wretches! to dress yourselves in the habit of such honourable people to do mischief! I shall think you very lucky, if you are only sentenced to the gallies!' When he had convinced us that the affair was much more serious than we at first imagined, we fell down together at his feet, and begged he would have pity on our youth. But our prayers were disregarded; and besides, he rejected a proposal we made of quitting to him the necklace, ear-rings, and candlestick: even my ring was refused, because (I suppose) it was offered before too much company. In short, he was quite inexorable; ordered my companions to be disarmed, and carried us all to the publick goal. In our way thither, one of the guard told me, that the old woman who lived with Camilla, suspecting that we were not real foot-pads of justice, had followed us to the tavern; and there being confirmed in her opinion, had revenged

herself upon us, by informing the patrolle of the whole affair.

We were immediately plundered of every thing; the necklace, diamonds, and candlestick seized; as also my ring, together with the ruby of the Philippine Isles, which I had unfortunately in my pocket. They did not even spare the rials which I had that day received for my prescriptions; which was a sure sign to me, that the people belonging to justice at Valladolid are as expert in their office as those at Astorga, and that the manners of all those gentlemen are every where alike. While I was rifled of my jewels and cash, the officer of the patrolle recounted our adventure to these agents of the plunder; and the affair seemed to them of such a serious nature, that the majority thought we deserved a halter; but others, less severe, imagined we might get off for two hundred lashes each, and a few years service in the gallies. Until the corregidor should think proper to decide our affair, we were locked up in a dungeon, where we lay upon straw, with which it was strewed like a stable littered for horses. Here we might have remained long enough, and at last exchanged our habitation for the gallies, had not Signior Manuel Ordonnez next day heard of our misfortune, and resolved to procure the liberty of Fabricius, which he could not do without obtaining also the dismissal of us all. Being a man very much esteemed in the city, he did not spare solicitations; and partly by his own credit, and partly by that of his friends, at the end of three days effected our enlargement. But we did not come out as we had gone in; the candlestick, necklace, and ear-rings, my ring, ruby, and rials, being detained: which made me remember those verses of Virgil, that begin with, '*Sic vos non vobis.*'

As soon as we were at liberty, we returned to our masters; and Dr. Sangrado received me very kindly, saying, 'My poor Gil Blas, I did not hear of thy misfortune till this morning, and was just going to make strong solicitations in thy behalf. Thou must console thyself, my friend, for this accident, and attach thyself more than ever to physick.' — 'That is my design,' said I. And truly I thought of nothing else. Far from wanting business,

business, it happened, as my master had foretold, that distempers were very rife; the small-pox and putrid fever beginning to ravage the city and suburbs; so that all the physicians in Valladolid, and we in particular, had abundance of practice. Scarce a day passed in which we did not visit eight or ten patients each; from whence it may be easily conceived what a quantity of blood was spilt, and water drank. But I do not know how it happened; all our sick died, either on account of our mal-practice, or because their diseases were incurable. Certain it is, we very seldom had occasion to make three visits to one patient: at the second, we were either told, that he was just going to be buried, or found him at the last gasp; and, as I was but a young physician, who had not yet time to be injured to murder, I began to be very uneasy at the fatal events which might be laid to my charge. 'Sir,' said I, one evening to Dr. Sangrado, 'I take Heaven to witness, that I follow your method with the utmost exactness; yet, nevertheless, every one of my patients leaves me in the lurch. It looks as if they took a pleasure in dying, merely to bring our practice into discredit. This very day I met two of them going to their long home.'—'Why truly, child,' answered he, 'I have reason to make pretty much the same observation: I have not often the satisfaction of curing those who fall into my hands; and if I was not so sure as I am of the principles on which I proceed, I should think my remedies were pernicious in almost all the cases that come under my care.'—'If you will take my advice, Sir,' said I, 'we will change our method, and give chymical preparations to our patients, through curiosity; the worst that can happen will only be, that they produce the same effect that follows our bleedings and warm water.'—'I would willingly make that experiment,' he replied, 'provided it could have no bad consequence; but I have published a book, in which I have extolled the use of frequent bleeding and aqueous draughts; and wouldst thou have me go and decry my own work?'—'Oh! you are

'certainly in the right,' said I; 'you must not give your enemies such a triumph over you: they would say, you are at last disabused; and therefore ruin your reputation: perish, rather, the nobility, clergy, and people! and let us continue in our old path. After all, our brother-doctors, notwithstanding their aversion for bleeding, perform as few miracles as we do; and I believe their drugs are no better than our specifics.'

We went to work, therefore, afresh, and proceeded in such a manner that, in less than six weeks, we made more widows and orphans than the siege of Troy. By the number of burials, one would have thought that the plague was in Valladolid; and every day, some father came to our house, to demand an account of his son, whom we had ravished from him, or some uncle, to upbraid us with his nephew's death. As for the sons and nephews, whose fathers and uncles we had dispatched, they never appeared to complain: the husbands too were very civil, and never cavilled with us about the loss of their wives. But those afflicted people, whose reproaches we were obliged to undergo, were sometimes very brutal in their grief, and called us ignorant assassins. As they did not spare me, in particular, I was afflicted by their epithets; but my master, who was used to such accidents, heard them without the least emotion. I might, perhaps, in time, have been accustomed to reproach, as well as he, if Heaven, doubtless, to rid the sick people in Valladolid of one of their most severe scourges, had not produced an incident that gave me a disgust to physick, which I practised with so little success.

There was in our neighbourhood a tennis-court, to which the idle people in town daily resorted, and among the rest, one of your professed bullies, who take upon themselves the office of arbiters, and decide all differences that happen. He was from Biscay, his name Don Rodrigo de Mondragon, about thirty years of age, of an ordinary make, but lean and muscular; he had two little twinkling eyes, that rolled in his head, and threatened every body he looked at; a very flat nose, placed between red whiskers, that curled

ed up to his very temples, and a manner of speaking so rough and passionate, that his words struck terror into every body. This racket-breaker had made himself tyrant of the tennis-court, where he judged all the disputes that happened among those who played, in the most imperious manner, and no man durst appeal from his decision, unless he would resolve to fight him next day. Such as I have described Don Rodrigo, (who, notwithstanding the Don he had prefixed to his name, was an arrant rascal) he captivated the mistress of the tennis-court, who was a woman about forty years of age, rich and agreeable enough, and in the fifteenth month of her widowhood. I know not how he won her heart; for, doubtless, it was not by his beauty; but surely by that *je ne sçai quoy* which cannot be expressed. Be that as it will, she had a passion for him, and actually designed to take him for her husband; but while preparations were making for the consummation of that affair, she fell sick, and unhappily employed me as her physician. If her distemper had not been a malignant fever, my prescriptions were sufficient to endanger her life; so that, in four days, I filled the tennis-court with mourning; the mistress went the way of all my patients, and her relations took possession of her estate. Don Rodrigo, made desperate by the loss of his mistress, or rather, by being baulked in his expectation of a very advantageous match, not only cursed and reviled me, but also swore that he would run me through the body, whenever he could catch me, and exterminate me from the face of the earth. A charitable neighbour informed me of this oath, and advised me not to stir abroad, for fear of meeting this devil of a man. This advice, which I had no intention to neglect, filled me with confusion and dismay; I fancied incessantly, that I saw this furious Biscayan coming into the house, and could not enjoy one moment's repose. This effectually detached me from physick, and my sole care was how to free myself from disquiet: I resumed my embroidered suit, and after having bid adieu to my master, who could not persuade me to stay, quitted the city at

day-break, not without apprehension of meeting Don Rodrigo in my way.

C H A P. VI.

OF HIS ROUTE WHEN HE LEFT VALLADOLID; AND THE PERSON HE JOINED ON THE ROAD.

I Walked very fast, looking behind me from time to time, to see if this formidable Biscayan was not at my heels; my imagination being so much possessed by that fellow, that I took every tree or bush that I saw for him, and every moment felt my heart throb with fear. I plucked up my courage, however, when I had gone a good league, and continued, at an easier pace, my journey towards Madrid, whither my purpose was to go. I should have quitted Valladolid without regret, had I not been sorry to part from Fabricius, my dear Pylades, to whom I could not so much as bid adieu: but it gave me no mortification to renounce physick; on the contrary, I begged pardon of God for having exercised it at all; though I did not fail to count, with pleasure, the money I had in my purse, notwithstanding it's being the salary of my assassinations: in that respect, resembling those ladies of pleasure who reform their morals, but, nevertheless, keep fast hold of the wages of sin. My whole fortune amounted to pretty near the value of five ducats in rials; on the strength of which I expected to reach Madrid, where I had no doubt of finding some good place: besides, I longed passionately to see that august city, which had been extolled to me as the epitome of all the wonders of the world.

While I recollected all that I had heard in it's praise, and enjoyed it's pleasures by anticipation, I heard the voice of a man behind me singing at full stretch: he had a leathern wallet on his back, a guitar hanging about his neck, a long sword by his side, and walked so fast, that he was up with me in a very short time. Being one of the two journeymen barbers with whom I had been imprisoned in the adventure of the ring, we knew one another immediately, though our

I dress

dress was altered, and were very much surprized at meeting so unexpectedly on the highway. I assured him, that I was extremely glad to have him for a fellow-traveller; and his joy seemed no less at meeting with me. I told him my reason for quitting Valladolid; and he reposed the same confidence in me, by letting me know that he had quarrelled with his master and bid him an eternal adieu. 'If I had been inclined,' added he, 'to live any longer in Valladolid, I could have found employment in abundance of shops; for, without vanity, I can handle a razor, and curl a mustachio, as well as e'er a barber in Spain: but I could no longer resist the violent desire I had to visit the place of my nativity, from which I have been absent these ten years: I want to breathe my own country air a little, and know the situation of my family, with whom I hope to be in two days; for they live at a place called Olmedo, a market-town on this side of Segovia.'

Resolving to accompany this barber to his own home, and from thence go to Segovia, in order to take the opportunity of some convenience to Madrid, we pursued our journey, and discoursed of indifferent subjects. He was a young fellow of some wit and humour; and when we had conversed together an hour, he asked how my stomach was disposed: I answered, that he should see at the first inn. Upon which he said, 'We had better make a pause in the mean time: I have something for breakfast in my wallet; for when I travel, I always take care to have provision along with me. I don't trouble myself with cloaths, linen, and other useless baggage; but resolving to have nothing superfluous, fill my knapsack with belly-timber, my razors, and a washball.' I commended his prudence; and consented, with all my heart, to the pause he proposed; for I was hungry, and resolved to make a good meal, which I could not but expect, after what he had told me. We turned a little out of the highway, in order to sit upon the grass, where my friend the barber took out his victuals, consisting of five or six onions, with a few crusts of bread and cheese; but what he produced as the best furniture

of his budget, was a little bottle full (as he said) of delicate wine. Though our dishes were not very savoury, hunger, being very urgent with us both, made them relish pretty well; and we emptied the bottle, which contained about two pints of a sort of wine that I don't chuse to boast much of; after which, we got up, and continued our journey with great good-humour. The barber, who had been informed by Fabricius that I had met with some very particular adventures, desired to hear them from my own mouth; a satisfaction I could not refuse to a man who had regaled me so sumptuously. When I had gratified his curiosity, I told him he could do no less in return for my complaisance, than recount the story of his own life. 'Oh! as for my story,' cried he, 'it is not worth hearing, as it contains nothing but ordinary facts; nevertheless,' added he, 'since we have nothing else to do, you shall hear it, such as it is.' So saying, he related it nearly in these words.

CHAP. VII.

THE STORY OF THE JOURNEYMAN BARBER.

FERDINAND Feres de la Fuente, my grandfather, (I go to the fountain-head) after having been fifty years barber in the village of Olmedo, died, and left four sons, the eldest of whom took possession of his shop, and succeeded him in the business; Bertrand, the second, having an inclination for trade, became a mercer; Thomas, who was the third, kept a school; and the fourth, whose name was Pedro, feeling himself born for the Belles Lettres, sold a little lot of ground which he had for his patrimony, and went to live at Madrid, where he hoped, one day to distinguish himself by his wit and learning; while his three brothers did not separate, but settling at Olmedo, married the daughters of husbandmen, who, in lieu of fortune, brought them abundance of children, breeding as if it had been for a wager. My mother, the barber's wife, brought six into the world for her share, in the first five years of her marriage; of which number I am one. My father taught me betimes

to shave, and when I arrived at the age of fifteen, put this wallet upon my shoulders, and girding me with a long sword, said, "Go, Diego, thou art now in a condition to gain a livelihood; go, and see the world: thou hast occasion for a little travelling; go rub thee up, and make thee perfect in thy business. March, and don't return to Olmedo, before thou hast made the tour of Spain. Let me not hear from thee until this be performed." At these words, he embraced me very affectionately, and turned me out of doors.

Such was the behaviour of my father at parting with me. But my mother, whose manners were not quite so rough, seemed more affected on this occasion: she let fall some tears, and even slipt a ducat privately into my hand. So I quitted Olmedo, and took the road to Segovia; of which, however, I had not walked above two hundred paces, when I stopt to examine my knapsack, being desirous of seeing what it contained, and of knowing precisely the extent of my possession. I found a case, and two razors so much wore that they seemed to have shaved two generations, with a thong of leather to set them, and a lump of soap: besides, there was a canvas shirt quite new, an old pair of my father's shoes, and what gave me more pleasure than all the rest, twenty rials wrapped up in a linen rag. This was my whole fortune; by which you may conclude, that Master Nicholas the barber relied a good deal on my skill, since he sent me away so poorly provided. Nevertheless, the possession of a ducat and twenty rials did not fail to charm a young fellow like me, who had never before been master of coin; I believed my funds were inexhaustible, and continued my journey in a transport of joy, admiring, every moment the hilt of my sword, which thumped against my hams, or got between my legs, at every step.

Arriving at the village of Ataquines in the evening, very sharp set, I went to lodge at an inn; and, as if I had been a man of fortune, called for supper, with an air of authority: the landlord having surveyed me some time, and seeing who he had

to do with, said, in a very obliging manner, "Master, you shall be satisfied; we will treat you like a prince." So saying, he shewed me into a little room; where, in a quarter of an hour, they brought me a ragout made of ram-cat, which I ate as greedily as if it had been composed of a rabbit or hare. This excellent dish was accompanied with wine, so good, as he said, that the king himself could not drink better. Notwithstanding this elogium, I perceived it was cursedly sour; but this did not hinder me from doing as much honour to it, as I had already done to the ragout; and, to compleat the treatment of a prince, I was conducted to a couch, more proper for encouraging watchfulness than sleep; being a truckle-bed so narrow and short, that, little as I was, I had not room to lie in it with my legs extended; besides, instead of mattresses and feather-bed, it had only a wretched flock-bed, covered with a doubled sheet, which had served an hundred different travellers at least, since the last washing. Nevertheless, in such a convenience, my stomach full of ragout, and that delicious wine which the landlord had recommended, thanks to my youth and constitution, I enjoyed a sound sleep, and spent the night without indigestion.

Next day, after having breakfasted, and paid sauce for my good cheer, I made but one stage to Segovia; and, on my first arrival, had the good fortune to be employed in a shop for my board and lodging. Here, however, I staid but six months; being seduced by a brother journeyman of my acquaintance, who longed to see Madrid, and with whom I set out for that city. There I got a place on the same terms as at Segovia, in a well-accustomed shop, much frequented, on account of the neighbourhood of the church of Santa Cruz, and the Prince's Theatre; my master, two journeymen and I, being scarce sufficient to trim all our customers, who consisted of people of all ranks; and among others, of players and authors. One day, two persons of the last profession being there together, began to discourse a-

‘bout the poetry and poets of the time; and hearing them mention the name of my uncle, I listened to their conversation with great attention. “Don Juan de Zavaleta,” said one of them, “is an author, in my opinion, beneath the publick notice; a cold genius, a man without fancy: his last piece has done him infinite prejudice.”—“And, pray,” said the other, “has ever Lewis Velez de Guevara produced a good work? was ever any thing more wretched than his performances?” They named a great many more poets, whom I have forgot. I remember only, that they spoke contemptuously of them all, except my uncle, of whom they made honourable mention, agreeing that he was a lad of merit. “Yes,” said one of them, “Don Pedro de la Fuente is an excellent writer: his books contain a delicate raillery mixed with erudition, which makes them agreeably satirical; and I am not at all surprized at his being esteemed by the court and city, or at his receiving salaries from several grantees.”—“He has, indeed,” said the other, “enjoyed a pretty large income these many years; and as he lives with the Duke of Medina Coeli, and spends little, must be worth a considerable sum of money.”

‘I did not lose one word which the poets said concerning my uncle, who, we had heard in the family, made a noise in Madrid by his works, some people travelling through Olmedo having told us so; but as he neglected to let us hear from him, and seemed quite detached from his relations, we, on our part, lived in as great indifference towards him. True blood is, however, always guided by a sure instinct: as soon as I heard that he was in good circumstances, and knew where he lodged, I was tempted to wait upon him; though one thing embarrassed me not a little, his being called Don Pedro by the authors. That Don gave me some uneasiness; and I was afraid he might be some other poet than my uncle. I was not, however, stopped by this consideration; but imagined that he might have been ennobled on account of his wit, and therefore re-

solved to go and see him. For this purpose, with my master’s permission, I dressed myself one morning as well as I could, and went out of the shop, not a little proud of being nephew to a man who had acquired such reputation by his genius. As the barbers are not the least vain people in the world, I began to conceive a great opinion of myself, and strutting with an haughty air, enquired for the house of the Duke de Medina Coeli; where presenting myself at the gate, and saying, I wanted to speak with Don Predo de la Fuente, the porter pointed with his finger to a little stair-case, at the farther end of a court, which he bid me ascend, and knock at the first door on my right-hand: I did so, and (a young man coming out) asked if Signior Don Pedro de la Fuente lodged there. “Yes,” said he, “but you cannot see him at present.”—“I should be very glad,” replied I, “to speak with him; for I bring him news of his family.”—“If you could bring him news of the Pope,” said he, “I would not introduce you to his chamber just now, for he is composing; and when that is the case, we must take care not to disturb his imagination: he will not be visible till noon; so that you may go and take a turn, and come back about that time.”

‘I took his advice, and walked through the city the whole morning, thinking continually on the reception I should meet with from my uncle, who I imagined would be extremely glad to see me; I judged of his sentiments by my own; and preparing myself for a very tender scene, returned to his lodgings, with all diligence, at the hour prescribed. “You are come in the very nick of time,” said his valet; “for my master is just going out; stay here a minute, and I will let him know you are come.” So saying, he left me in an outward room; and, returning in a moment, conducted me into the chamber of his master, whose face had so much of our family air in it, that I was struck with the resemblance, and could not help thinking it was my very uncle Thomas, whom I had left at home. Having saluted him with profound respect, I told him I was

the

the son of Master Nicolas de la Fuente, barber in Olmedo; that I had worked at my father's business these three weeks at Madrid, in quality of a journeyman; and that I intended to make the tour of Spain for my improvement. While I spoke, my uncle seemed to muse, considering, in all likelihood, whether he should disown me for his nephew, or get rid of me in a more dextrous manner. He chose this last method, and affecting a smiling air, said, "Well, my friend, how do thy father and uncles? I hope they are in good circumstances." Upon this, I began to describe the plentiful propagation of our family; I told him the names of all the children, male and female, and even comprehended in that list, their godfathers and godmothers. He did not seem to interest himself infinitely in my detail, but coming to his purpose, replied, "Diego, I approve very much of thy resolution to travel, in order to make thee perfect in thy profession; and I advise thee to leave Madrid as soon as possible: it is a pernicious place for youth, in which thou wilt be ruined, my child; it will be more for thy advantage to reside in some of the other cities of the kingdom, where people's morals are not so much corrupted. Go," added he; "and when thou art ready to set out, come and see me again; I will give thee a pistole, to help thee to make the tour of Spain." With these words, he pushed me gently out of his chamber, and sent me about my business.

I had not sense enough to perceive that he wanted to remove me at a good distance from him; but, going to our shop, gave my master an account of what had passed; he was as far from discovering the intention of Signior Don Pedro as I was, and said, "I am not at all of thy uncle's opinion: instead of advising you to travel, he ought rather, I think, to make it your interest to stay in this city; for, being intimate with so many persons of quality, he can easily settle you in some great family, and put you in a condition to make your fortune." Struck with

this discourse, which flattered my imagination, in two days I went back to my uncle, and proposed, that he should employ his credit to procure admission for me into the family of some lord belonging to the court. But this proposal was not at all to his liking: a vain man, like him, who had free access to the great, and ate every day at their tables, could not brook his nephew's sitting with the servants, while he dined with their lords; in this case, little Diego would have made Signior Don Pedro blush. He did not fail, therefore, to refuse my request, and that not in the most civil manner. "How! you little vagabond," said he, with a furious look, "wouldst thou quit thy profession! Go; I abandon thee to those who have given thee such pernicious counsel: get out of my apartment, and never set foot in it again, otherwise I will cause thee to be chastised as thou deservest." Confounded at these words, and still more at the tone in which they were delivered, I retired, with the tear in my eye, very much affected at his harsh behaviour; but as I was naturally brisk and haughty, I soon dried my tears; my grief changed to indignation, and I resolved to take no farther notice of this unkind relation, without whose assistance I had hitherto made shift to live.

My whole thought being now bent on cultivating my talent, I applied to business, shaved all day long, and in the evening learned to play on the guitar, by way of recreation. My master for that instrument was an old Signior Escudero*, whose beard I trimmed, and who taught me music; which he understood perfectly well, having been formerly chorister in a cathedral: his name was Marcos de Obregon, a sage person, who had a large stock of sense as well as experience, and loved me as well as if I had been his own child. He served in quality of usher to a physician's wife, who lived within thirty paces of our house, whither I used to go in the twilight, when we had left off working; and, sitting together on the threshold of the door, we used to make a little concert, not

* Escudero, is a squire to wait on a gentlewoman.

at all disagreeable to the neighbours ;
 not that our voices were exquisite,
 but while we thrummed upon the in-
 strument, each of us, in our turn,
 accompanied it with singing, and
 that was sufficient to please our au-
 dience. In particular, we diverted
 Donna Mergellina, the physician's
 wife, who used to come into the pas-
 sage to hear us, and sometimes made
 us repeat the airs that were most to
 her liking, her husband not being
 offended at her enjoying this diver-
 sion ; for though he was a Spaniard,
 and already well stricken in years, he
 was not jealous : his profession en-
 grossed him wholly, and as he re-
 turned fatigued from his patients in
 the evening, he went to bed betimes,
 without being alarmed at his wife's
 attention to our concerts ; it is pro-
 bable, indeed, that he did not think
 them capable of making dangerous
 impressions ; and we must observe,
 that he imagined he had little or no
 cause to fear, Mergellina being young
 and handsome, it is true, but withal
 so savagely virtuous, that she could
 not so much as endure the look of a
 man. He did not, therefore, be-
 grudge her a pastime that seemed so
 innocent and honourable, but left us
 to sing as much as we pleased. One
 evening when I came to the phy-
 sician's door, with an intention to play
 as usual, I found the old squire ex-
 pecting me, who, taking me by the
 hand, said he wanted to take a turn
 with me before we should begin our
 concert ; then leading me into a by-
 street, where he found we could talk
 with freedom, " Son Don Diego," said
 he, with a melancholy air, " I have
 something extraordinary to disclose :
 I am afraid, my child, that we both
 shall have cause to repent of amusing
 ourselves, in the evening, with con-
 certs at my master's door. I have,
 doubtless, a great friendship for you,
 and am very well pleased with ha-
 ving taught you to play upon the
 guitar, and sing ; but, had I fore-
 seen the misfortune that threatens
 us, please God, I would have given
 you your lessons in some other
 place !"—Frightened at this dis-
 course, I begged the usher to be more
 explicit, and tell me what we had to
 fear ; for I was not a man who could
 brave danger ; nor had I, as yet,

made the tour of Spain. " I will,"
 said he, " tell you what is necessary
 to be known, that you may compre-
 hend the jeopardy in which we are.
 When I entered into the service of
 the physician, which is about a year
 ago, he said to me one morning,
 after having brought me into the
 presence of his wife, " Marcos, be-
 hold your mistress ; this is the lady
 whom you are to attend everywhere."
 I admired Donna Mergellina ; I
 thought her wonderful pretty, ex-
 cessively handsome, and was parti-
 cularly charmed with the agreeable
 air that diffused itself through her
 whole mien. " Sir," answered I to the
 physician, " I am too happy in be-
 ing permitted to serve such a charming
 lady."—Mergellina, disgusted at my
 answer, said, in a passion, " A pretty
 fellow, indeed ! methinks you take
 a great deal of liberty. I want none
 of your compliments—not I !" Such
 words, from a mouth so agreeable,
 surprised me very much : I could
 not reconcile this rustick and in-
 solent manner of speaking with
 the gentle appearance of my mis-
 tress : but her husband, who was
 used to it, rejoiced at his having a
 wife of such a rare character, told
 me that his spouse was a prodigy of
 virtue ; and, perceiving that she put
 on her veil, and prepared to go to
 mass, bade me conduct her to church.
 We were no sooner in the street, than
 we met, which is not at all extra-
 ordinary, several gentlemen, who,
 struck with the fine air of Donna
 Mergellina, paid her a great many
 compliments *en passant*. She re-
 plied to them all ; but you cannot
 imagine how silly and ridiculous her
 answers were. Every body was asto-
 nished, and could not conceive that
 there was a woman in the world who
 could be displeased with praise.—
 Madam," said I to her, " take no
 notice of what is said to you ; it is
 better to keep silence, than to speak
 in passion."—" No, no," answered
 she, " I will let these insolent fel-
 lows know that I won't be treated
 with disrespect." In short, so much
 impertinence escaped her, that I
 could not help telling her my senti-
 ments, at the hazard of her displea-
 sure. I represented to her, as deli-
 cately as I could, that she perverted
 " nature,

“ nature, and spoiled a thousand good qualities, by her savage humour; that a woman of politeness and good-nature might inspire love without the help of beauty; whereas, the handsomest person in the world, without meekness and good-breeding, would become the object of contempt. I strengthened these arguments with many more of the same kind, calculated for the reformation of her behaviour; and after having moralized a good deal, I was afraid that my freedom would enrage my mistress, and bring upon me some severe repartee: nevertheless, she did not rebel against my remonstrance, but contented herself with neglecting it entirely, as well as all the rest that I was afterwards foolish enough to make.

“ At length, I forbore to advise her of her faults, and abandoned her to the ferocity of her nature. Mean while, (would you believe it?) this ferocious disposition, this haughty woman, is, within these two months, entirely changed; she is complaisant to every body, and her behaviour most agreeable; she is not the same Mergellina who made such silly answers to the men that said obliging things to her; she is become sensible to praise; loves to be called handsome, and told that a man cannot behold her with impunity; and flattery is now as agreeable to her as to any other woman: the change is scarce credible; and, what will surprize you still more, you are the author of such a great miracle! Yes, my dear Diego,” continued the usher, “ you have metamorphosed Donna Mergellina in this manner, and converted that tigress into a lamb. In one word, you have attracted her regard: I have perceived it more than once, and am very much mistaken in the sex, if she has not conceived a most violent passion for you. This, my child, is the sad piece of news I had to disclose, and the troublesome dilemma in which we are.”

“ I can't see,” said I to the old man, “ that we have so much cause to be afflicted at this affair; or, that it is a misfortune for me to be beloved by a handsome lady.”—“ Ah, Diego!” he replied, “ you talk like a

“ young man: you look only at the bait, without perceiving the hook; you consider only the pleasure, but I foresee the disagreeable consequences. All will come to light in the end. If you continue coming to sing at our door, you will inflame the passion of Mergellina, who, perhaps, losing all restraint, will betray her weakness before her husband Dr. Oloroso; and he who appears so complaisant at present, because he believes he has no reason to be jealous, will become furious, revenge himself upon her, and in all probability, make both you and me feel the effects of his rage.”—“ Why, truly,” said I, “ Signior Marcos, your reasons are convincing; and I submit myself wholly to your advice; give me, therefore, directions how to behave, in order to prevent mischief.”—“ We have nothing to do,” answered he, “ but to give over our concert: appear no more before my mistress; and when you are no longer seen, she will retrieve her quiet. Stay at your master's house, whither I will come, and we will play on the guitar without danger.”—“ With all my heart,” said I; “ and I promise never to set foot within your door again.” I resolved in good earnest to be as good as my word; and, for the future, to keep myself close in the shop, since the sight of me was so dangerous.

“ In the mean time, honest Marcos, with all his prudence, found, in a very few days, that the means he had contrived to extinguish the flame of Donna Mergellina, produced a quite contrary effect. This lady, not having heard me sing for two nights successively, asked him why we had discontinued our concert, and for what reason I no longer appeared. He replied, I was so busy that I had not a moment to bestow on my pleasures. She seemed satisfied with this excuse, and for three days more supported my absence with fortitude enough; but at the end of that time, my princess lost all patience, and said to her squire, “ You deceive me, Marcos, Diego must have some other reason for not coming hither: there is some mystery in it, which I must have explained; speak, there-fore,”

“fore, I order you, and conceal nothing of the truth.”—“Madam,” answered he, making use of another expedient, “since you must know the truth, I will tell you, that he commonly found supper over, when he went home, after our concert; and he does not chuse to run the risk of going to-bed with an empty stomach?”—“How! with an empty stomach!” cried she, with the marks of uneasiness; “why had not you told me this sooner? Go to bed supperless! Poor baby! Go to him instantly, and bring him hither this very evening. He shan’t go to bed with an empty stomach; there shall always be a plate of something reserved for him.”

“What do I hear?” said the usher, affecting surprize at her discourse; “Heavens, what a change! Is it you, Madam, that talk thus? How long have you been thus gentle and compassionate?”—“How long!” replied she, hastily, “since your abode in this house; or rather since you condemned my disdainful carriage, and laboured to soften the roughness of my behaviour. But alas!” added she in a melting tone, “I have passed from one extremity to another! from being haughty and insensible, I am become too soft and tender! I love your young friend Diego, in spite of all my efforts to the contrary; and his absence, instead of weakening, adds new vigour to my love!”—“Is it possible,” said the old man, “that a lad who is neither handsome nor genteel, should be the object of such a violent passion? I would forgive your sentiments, had they been inspired by some gentleman of shining accomplishments.”—“Ah, Marcos!” said Mergellina, interrupting him, “I don’t resemble the rest of my sex—or rather, notwithstanding all your long experience, you are but little acquainted with women, if you think that merit always determines their choice. If I may be allowed to judge by myself, deliberation has no share in their engagements; love is a disorder of the mind, by which we are involuntarily dragged and fastened to the object; it is a distemper by which we are seized, as dogs are with madness: cease, there-

fore, to represent Diego as unworthy of my tenderness; let it suffice, that my love finds in him a thousand good qualities which escape your notice, and perhaps only exist in my imagination. It is in vain for you to tell me, that neither his features nor his make deserve the least attention: he seems to me born to captivate, and fairer than the day! besides, he has a sweetness of voice that charms me, and in my opinion plays on the guitar with a grace peculiar to himself.”—“But, Madam,” replied Marcos, “do you consider who this Diego is? the meanness of his condition?”—

“Mine is not much higher than his;” said she, interrupting him again; “and if I was even a woman of quality, that should be no objection.”

“The result of this conversation was, that the usher thinking he should make little progress with his remonstrances, ceased to oppose the inclination of his mistress; as an expert pilot yields to the storm that drives him from the port in view. He did more for the satisfaction of his patroness: for, coming to me, he took me aside, and having recounted what passed between her and him; “You see, Diego,” added he, “that we cannot help continuing our concert at Mergellina’s door. There is a necessity for that lady’s seeing you again, my friend; otherwise she will commit some piece of indiscretion that may do infinite prejudice to her reputation.” I was not hard-hearted; but told Marcos, I would in the twilight repair to the place of assignation with my guitar; and that he might go and regale his mistress with this agreeable piece of news. In this he did not fail; and that passionate innamorata was ravished to understand, that she should have the pleasure of seeing and hearing me that very evening.

“A disagreeable accident, however, had well nigh baulked her expectation: for I could not leave the shop before night; which, for my sins, was extremely dark; and as I groped along the street, and had got about half way to the place of rendezvous, I was crowned from a window with the contents of a perfuming pan, that did not at all delight my

my sense of smelling, though I may safely say I lost none of it, so exactly was I equipt. In this condition, I did not know what course to take. Had I returned to the shop, I should have afforded a very diverting scene to my comrades, and exposed myself to a thousand unfavoury jests; and I was shocked at the thought of going in this fine pickle to Mergellina: this last, however, I resolved upon; and going to the physician's house, found the old squire waiting for me at the door. When he told me, that Dr. Oloroso being in bed, we might freely divert ourselves. I answered, I must first clean my cloaths: and then related my misfortune. He sympathized with me; and conducted me into a hall where his mistress was; who no sooner learned my adventure, and saw my condition, than she grieved for me as much as if I had met with the greatest misfortune; and bestowed a thousand curses on the person who had thus accommodated me. "But, Madam," said Marcos to her, "moderate your transports; and consider that this event, being the pure effect of chance, ought not to be so deeply repented."

"Why should not I," answered she, "deeply resent the injury that has been done to this poor lamb, this dove without gall, who does not even complain of the outrage he has received? O that I was a man this moment to revenge it!"

She said a thousand things more that denoted the excess of her love, which she made appear no less by her actions; for while Marcos was busied in wiping me with a towel, she ran to her chamber, and fetched from it a box full of all sorts of perfumes; sweetening my cloaths with the scent of odoriferous drugs which she burned, and afterwards sprinkling them all over with essences. The fumigation and asperision performed, this charitable lady went herself into the kitchen for some bread, wine, and slices of roasted mutton, which she had set apart for my entertainment; and obliging me to eat, took pleasure in serving me, sometimes by cutting my victuals, and sometimes by filling wine, in spite of all that Marcos and I could say to dissuade her from such condescension. When

I had supped, we gentlemen of the band began to tune our voices to our guittars, and performed a concert that charmed Mergellina. We affected, indeed, to sing those airs, the words of which flattered her passion; and it must be observed, that while I sung, I frequently ogled her with the tail of my eye, in such a manner, as blew the coals of love; for I began to be pleased with the game. Although the concert lasted a long time, I was not at all tired; and, as for the lady, to whom the hours seemed minutes, she would willingly have spent the night in hearing us, had not the old usher, to whom the minutes seemed hours, put her in mind of it's being late. This she gave him the trouble to repeat ten or twelve times; but she had to do with one who was indefatigable on that subject, and who gave her no rest until I was gone. This experienced person, seeing his mistress abandoned to a foolish passion, was afraid of some cross accident: and his fear was soon justified; for the doctor, either suspecting some secret intrigue, or agitated by the demon of jealousy, who had respected him hitherto, took it in his head to find fault with our concerts, which he forbade in a peremptory manner; and, without giving any reason for his disgust, declared that for the future he would suffer no stranger to come within his doors.

Marcos advertised me of this declaration, which was particularly intended for me, and mortified me not a little; for I had conceived hopes I was sorry to forego. Nevertheless, that I may act the faithful historian, I will own that I bore my misfortune with patience. This was not the case with Mergellina, whose sentiments were more inflamed than ever. "My dear Marcos," said she to her usher, "from you alone I expect assistance; fall upon some method, I beg of you, to bring Diego and me together in private."—"What do you ask?" cried the old man in a rage; "I have been already but too complaisant, and will not undertake, by gratifying your silly passion, to dishonour my master, ruin your reputation, and entail infamy upon myself."

“ self. I, who have always maintained the character of an irreproachable domestick! I will rather quit your family, than serve you in such a shameful manner.”—
 “ Ah, Marcos!” cried the lady, interrupting him, and frightened at his last words, “ you pierce my very heart when you talk of leaving me! Cruel man! are you going to forsake me now, after having reduced me to this condition! Give me back my former pride, and that savageness of disposition you have deprived me of! Why do I not still possess these happy defects, which would have preserved my tranquillity! whereas, your indiscreet remonstrances have robbed me of the repose I enjoyed! you have corrupted my morals, by endeavouring to correct them. But what do I say,” added she, “ wretch that I am! why do I reproach you unjustly! No, my father; you are not the author of my misfortune, which cruel fate alone decrees! don’t therefore take notice, I conjure you, of the extravagant discourse that escapes me! Alas! my passion disorders my understanding! have pity on my weaknesses! you are all my comfort; and if you have any regard for my life, do not refuse your assistance.”

“ At these words, her tears redoubling in such a manner that she could not go on, she covered her face with her handkerchief, and threw herself upon a chair, like a person sinking under affliction. Old Marcos, who was perhaps the best soul of an usher that ever lived, could not resist such a moving sight, which affected him so much, that he even mingled his tears with those of his mistress, and said, with an air of tenderness, “ Ah, Madam, how bewitching you are! I am not proof against your sorrow! my virtue is vanquished, and I promise you my assistance. I am not surprized that love has been able to make you forget your duty, when pity alone has severed me from mine.” Accordingly, the usher, in spite of his irreproachable conduct, devoted himself very obligingly to the passion of Mergellina; and having

“ come one morning to inform me of what had happened, told me at parting, that he had already concerted a plan for procuring a secret interview between the lady and me. This re-animated my hope; but in less than two hours after, I received a piece of very bad news. A journeyman apothecary in the neighbourhood, one of our customers, came in to be shaved, and while I prepared the lather, said, “ Signior Diego, what is the matter with your old friend, the old squire, Marcos de Obregon? Do you know that he is going to leave Dr. Oloroso?” Upon my answering in the negative, he resumed, “ It is certainly true: he is to be dismissed this very day. His master and mine have been just talking on that subject while I was by; and to the best of my remembrance, their conversation was thus: “ Signior Apuntador,” said the physician, “ I have a favour to ask: being dissatisfied with an old usher who has served me some time, I want to put my wife under the direction of a faithful, severe, and vigilant duenna.”—“ I understand you,” said my master, interrupting him, “ you have occasion for Dame Melancia, who was my wife’s governante, and has lived in the family these six weeks that I have been a widower: though she is very useful to me in house-keeping, I yield her to you, on account of my concern for your honour. You may depend upon her for the safety of your forehead; she is a jewel of a duenna*, and a very dragon to guard the chastity of the female sex: during the whole term of twelve years that she was with my wife, who, you know, was both young and handsome, I never saw so much as the shadow of a gallant in my house. No, faith! it was no place for them to play pranks in; and, let me tell you, the defunct, in the beginning, had a strong propensity to coquetry; but Dame Melancia soon reclaimed, and inspired her with a taste for virtue. In a word, she is a treasure, and you will thank me more than once for the present I make of her.” The Doctor

* Duennas, are females of approved fidelity, to whose care the Spaniards intrust the chastity of their wives and daughters.

“ was rejoiced at this encomium; and
 “ Signior Apuntador and he are agreed,
 “ that the duenna shall this very day
 “ fill the place of the old usher.”

“ This piece of news, which I be-
 “ lieved, and was certainly true, di-
 “ sturbed the ideas of pleasure with
 “ which I had begun again to regale
 “ myself; and Marcus, in the after-
 “ noon, confounded them effectually,
 “ by confirming the report of the jour-
 “ neyman-apothecary. “ My dear Die-
 “ go,” said the honest usher, “ I am
 “ very glad that Dr. Oloroso has dis-
 “ missed me; a circumstance that spares
 “ me a great deal of trouble: for I
 “ not only found myself engaged in a
 “ bad employment, but likewise under
 “ a necessity of contriving tricks and
 “ stratagems to bring Mergellina and
 “ you together in private. What a
 “ dilemma had I brought myself into!
 “ Thank Heaven, I am freed from
 “ those troublesome cares, and the
 “ dangers that attend them! For your
 “ part, my son, you ought to con-
 “ scious yourself for the loss of a few
 “ sweet moments, which might have
 “ been followed by numberless sor-
 “ rows.” I relished the reflection of
 “ Marcos, because I no longer had
 “ any hopes, and thought no more of
 “ the affair. I confess, I was not one
 “ of those stubborn lovers, who are
 “ animated by the obstacles in their
 “ way; but had I been such an one,
 “ Dame Melancia was enough to make
 “ me quit my pursuit; for the cha-
 “ racter I had heard of that duenna,
 “ seemed capable of driving any gal-
 “ lant to despair. Nevertheless, in what-
 “ ever colours she had been painted to
 “ me, I learned, two or three days
 “ after, that the Doctor’s wife had
 “ either lulled this Argus, or cor-
 “ rupted her fidelity. As I went out
 “ to shave one of our neighbours, a de-
 “ cent old woman stopping me in the
 “ street, asked if my name was not
 “ Diego de la Fuente: when I an-
 “ swered, “ Yes”—“ Well, then,” said
 “ she, “ you are the person I want.
 “ Come this night to Donna Mergel-
 “ lina’s door, and make some signal
 “ by which you may be known and
 “ admitted into the house.”—“ Very
 “ well,” said I to her, “ we must first
 “ agree upon the signal. I can mimic
 “ a cat charmingly, and will mew
 “ several times.”—“ That’s enough,”

“ replied this she-Mercury; “ I will
 “ report your answer. Your servant,
 “ Signior Diego. Heaven blefs you!
 “ how handsome you are! By Sr.
 “ Agnes, if I were but fifteen years
 “ old, I would not chuse to engage
 “ you for others!” So saying, the of-
 “ ficious beldame departed.

“ You may well think that I was
 “ furiously agitated by this message.
 “ Adieu the reflection of Marcos! I
 “ expected night with the utmost im-
 “ patience; and when I thought Dr.
 “ Oloroso might be asleep, went to her
 “ door, where I mewed so loud, as to
 “ be heard at a good distance, and did
 “ great honour to the master who taught
 “ me such a polite art. In a moment,
 “ Mergellina herself having opened the
 “ door softly, and let me in, shut it
 “ again in the same manner; and we
 “ went together into the hall where our
 “ last concert was held, and which was
 “ lighted by a small lamp that glim-
 “ mered in the chimney: we sat down
 “ close by one another, for the bene-
 “ fit of conversing more at our ease,
 “ and were both very much affected;
 “ with this difference, however, that
 “ pleasure alone was the occasion of her
 “ emotion, while mine partook a little
 “ of fear. My princess in vain assured
 “ me, that we had nothing to dread
 “ on account of her husband: I was
 “ seized with a fit of shivering that
 “ disturbed my joy. “ Madam,” said
 “ I to her, “ how have you been able
 “ to deceive the vigilance of your go-
 “ vernante? After what I had heard of
 “ Dame Melancia, I did not think it
 “ possible for you to find means to let
 “ me hear from you, much less to give
 “ me a personal interview.” Donna
 “ Mergellina, smiling at my discourse,
 “ answered, “ You will cease to be
 “ surprized at the private opportunity
 “ we now enjoy, after I have told you
 “ what passed between my duenna and
 “ me. When she came first into the
 “ family, my husband loaded her with
 “ civilities, and said to me, “ Mer-
 “ gellina, I commit you to the care
 “ of this discreet gentlewoman, who
 “ is a summary of all the virtues; a
 “ mirror which you must always have
 “ before your eyes, for your improve-
 “ ment in wisdom. This admirable
 “ person governed an apothecary’s
 “ wife (a friend of mine) twelve years,
 “ and that in such an uncommon man-
 “ ner,

ner, that she became a kind of saint under her instruction."

"This encomium, which the severe look of Dame Melancia did not belie, cost me a world of tears, and threw me into despair. I represented to myself the lectures I must hear from morn to night, and the rebukes I must every day undergo. In short, I expected to be the most unhappy woman in the world; and thinking it needless to be on the reserve, in such a cruel state of expectation, I said to my duenna, with a resolute air, (as soon as I found myself alone with her) "You are, doubtless, preparing a great many sufferings for me; but I think proper to advertise you before hand, that I have not a great deal of patience; and that I will endeavour to give you as many mortifications as I can: in the mean time, I declare that my heart entertains a passion which all your remonstrances shall not impair; so that you may take your measures accordingly, and redouble your vigilance; for I confess I will spare nothing to deceive it." At these words, the grim-faced duenna (who I imagined was about to give me a sample of her office) cleared up her austere countenance, and said, with a smiling air, "I am charmed with your humour, your frankness encourages mine, and I see we are designed for one another. Ah, my fair Mergellina! how little are you acquainted with me, when you judge by the character your spouse the doctor gives me, and by this four aspect I assume! I am so far from being an enemy to pleasure, that my sole motive for hiring myself as the minister of jealous husbands is, that I may the more effectually serve their handsome wives. I have long possessed the great mystery of disguising myself; and I may call myself doubly happy, because I enjoy the convenience of sin, and the reputation of virtue at the same time. Between you and me, this is the scope of mankind in general: virtue itself is too difficult to be acquired; and therefore people are satisfied with possessing the appearance of it!"

"Leave your conduct to my direc-

tion," added the governante; "and I warrant you, we will soon impose upon old Dr. Oloroso, who, by my troth, shall soon share the fate of Signior Apuntador; for I don't see why the forehead of a physician should be more respected than that of an apothecary. Poor Apuntador! how many tricks his wife and I have played him! She was a lovely creature! a good-humoured soul, Heaven rest it! I can assure you, she made a good use of her youth, and did not want abundance of admirers, whom I introduced to the house without ever being discovered by her husband: look upon, me, therefore, Madam, with a more favourable eye, and be persuaded, that whatever talent the old squire might have for your service, you will lose nothing by the change, and perhaps find me still more useful than he was."

"I leave you to judge, Diego," continued Mergellina, "how much I thought myself obliged to the duenna for this frank declaration; for I looked upon her as a person of the most austere virtue; so apt are people to be deceived in women. Her sincerity gained my heart in a moment: I embraced her in a transport of joy, that convinced her how much I was charmed with my lot, in having her for a governante; and afterwards freely imparted my sentiments to her, and begged that she would, without loss of time, contrive a private meeting with you; which she has not failed to procure. This very morning she set at work that old woman who spoke to you, and who is an agent whom she often employed for the apothecary's wife. But the most pleasant part of this adventure," added she, laughing, "is, that Melancia, understanding from me, that my husband commonly sleeps sound, has gone to bed to him, and this very minute supplies my place."—"So much the worse, Madam," said I to Mergellina, "I cannot approve of this invention; your husband may wake, and perceive the cheat."—"He cannot perceive it," answered she, with some precipitation; "don't be uneasy on that score; nor let a ground-

left

“less panick poison the delight you ought to enjoy with a young lady who has a regard for you.”

“The old doctor’s wife observing that I was still dismayed, notwithstanding her assurance, did every thing in her power to encourage me; and practised so many different endeavours for that purpose, that she succeeded at last, and I resolved to profit by the occasion; but just as Cupid, attended by the sports and smiles, was about to crown my happiness, we were astonished by a loud rap at the street-door. Immediately love and his train took wing, like a flock of fearful birds, dispersed by sudden noise! Mergellina concealed me in a hurry under a table that was in the hall; then blowing out the lamp, as it had been agreed upon between her governante and her, in case such a cross accident should happen, she went to the chamber where her husband was a-bed. In the mean time, the whole house rung with the repeated knocks that were thundered at the door; and the doctor, starting out of his sleep, called Melancia. The duenna, jumping out of bed, (although the doctor, who mistook her for his wife, bid her lye still) joined her mistress in the dark; who, feeling her, called Melancia also, and bid her go and see who knocked at the door: “Madam,” answered the governante, “I am here. Go to bed again, if you please, and I will go and see what is the matter.” Mean while Mergellina, having undressed, slipped in to bed to the doctor, who had not the least suspicion of the trick. It is true, indeed, this scene was performed in the dark by two actresses, one of whom was matchless in her way, and the other an admirable proficient.

“The duenna, wrapped in a *robe de chambre*, appearing soon after with a candle in her hand, said to her master, “Signior Doctor, be so good as to rise: the bookseller, Fernandez de Buendia, our neighbour, has fallen into an apoplexy, and you are desired to go with all haste to his assistance.” The physician dressed himself as soon as he could, and went away; while his wife, in a loose gown, came along with the

duenna into the hall where I was, and drawing me from under the table, more dead than alive, “You have nothing to fear, Diego,” said she; “recollect yourself.” Then, in a few words, she told me what had happened, and wanted to renew the conversation which had been interrupted; but this the governante opposed, saying, “Madam, perhaps your husband will find the bookseller dead, and return immediately.” Besides,” added she, perceiving me benumbed with fear, “what would you do with this poor lad? he is in no condition to maintain the conference, which you had better defer till to-morrow.” Donna Mergellina consented to this proposal, not without regret; so well did she love the present time: and I believe she was very much mortified, that she could not then bestow upon the doctor the new cap she had destined for him.

“As for my own part, less sorry for having been baulked of love’s most precious favours, than glad to be out of danger, I went back to my master’s house, where I spent the night in reflecting upon my adventure. I hesitated some time about going to the place of rendezvous next night, having as bad an opinion of the second enterprize as of the first; but the devil, who is always laying close siege to us, or rather, on such occasions, takes possession of our faculties, suggested, that I should be a great booby to stop short in the middle of such a delightful journey; representing to my fancy Mergellina adorned with new charms, and heightened the value of the pleasures that awaited me: so that I resolved to pursue my point; and, flattering myself with the hope of behaving with more courage than before, I repaired, in this disposition, to the doctor’s door, between eleven and twelve next night, which was so dark, that not one star appeared in the firmament. I mewed two or three times, to give notice that I was in the street; and nobody coming to the door, I not only repeated the signal, but also mimicked all the different expressions of a cat, which a shepherd of Olmedo had taught me; and acquitted myself so well, that a neighbour

neighbour going home, and mistaking me for one of those animals whose notes I imitated, took up a flint stone he found at his feet, and threw it at me with his whole strength, crying, "Curse on the caterwauler!" I received the blow upon my head, which stunned me so much, that I had well nigh tumbled backwards. I felt myself wounded; a circumstance sufficient to give me a disgust at gallantry; and, losing my love with my blood, returned to our house, where I alarmed and raised the whole family. My master examined and dressed my wound, which he thought dangerous; but it was attended with no bad consequence, and in three weeks disappeared. During all that time, I heard not one syllable about Mergellina; and it is not unlikely that Dame Melancia, in order to detach her from me, introduced her to some better acquaintance. But this gave me no concern: for as soon as I found myself perfectly cured, I left Madrid, in order to perform my tour of Spain.

C H A P. VIII.

GIL BLAS AND HIS COMPANION COME UP WITH A MAN WHOM THEY PERCEIVE SOAKING CRUSTS OF BREAD IN A SPRING; AND ENTER INTO CONVERSATION WITH HIM.

SIGNIOR Diego de la Fuente recounted a good many more adventures that had happened to him; but, in my opinion, so little worth the breath they cost, that I shall pass them over in silence; though I was obliged to hear the recital, which was so tedious, that it brought us as far as Ponte de Duera. In this village we staid the remaining part of the day; and, at the inn where we lodged, ordered for supper a dish of cabbage-soup, and a roasted hare, the species of which we were at great pains to prove beforehand. On the morrow, at break of day, we pursued our journey, after having replenished our bottle with pretty good wine, and furnished our knapsack with some slices of bread, and the half of the hare which remained from our supper.

When we had gone about two leagues, we began to be hungry; and perceiving several large trees, which formed an agreeable shade in the fields, about two hundred paces from the highway, we went thither to make a halt, and found a man, seven or eight and twenty years old, soaking some crusts in a fountain. A long sword lay by him on the grass, with an haversack, of which he had unloaded his shoulders; and, though he was poorly clothed, he discovered a good shape and mien. We accosted him in a civil manner; upon which he saluted us with great complaisance, and presenting his crusts, asked with a smile, if we would be of his mess: we answered, yes, provided he would give us leave to improve the repast, by joining our breakfast with his. He freely consenting, we immediately produced our victuals, which afforded no unpleasing view to the stranger, who cried, in a transport of joy, 'How, gentlemen! egad, there's store of munition for the belly! I see you are provident people; for my own part, I seldom travel so well provided, but depend a good deal upon chance. Notwithstanding my present situation, however, I may say without vanity that I sometimes make a pretty brilliant appearance. You must know, that I am usually treated like a prince, and have guards in my train.'—'I understand you,' said Diego; 'you would intimate that you are a player?'—'You have hit it,' replied the other; 'I have acted these fifteen years at least; for I performed some small parts while I was yet a child.'—'To be plain with you,' said the barber, shaking his head, 'I can scarce believe what you say. I know what sort of people the comedians are; these gentlemen don't travel a foot, and dine with St. Anthony, as you do; therefore I cannot help thinking that you are no more than a candle-snuffer.'—'You may think of me as you please,' replied the stage-player; 'but I affirm, that I act the very top parts, and among the rest, that of the lover.'—'If that be the case,' said my comrade, 'I congratulate you upon it; and am very proud that Signior Gil Blas and I have the honour to breakfast with a person of such importance.'

We then began to gnaw our crusts, and the precious remains of the hare, bestowing such rude embraces on the bottle, that it was empty in a very short time; and being so busy with what we were about, that we scarce spoke one word during the repast; which being ended, the conversation was thus resumed. 'I am surprized,' said the barber to the player, 'to see you in such indifferent circumstances: for a stage-hero, methinks you have a very needy appearance; you'll pardon my freedom.'—'Your freedom!' cried the actor, 'ah! truly, you are little acquainted with Melchior Zapata. Thank Heaven, I am not at all exceptionous! you do me a pleasure, in speaking so frankly; for I myself love to tell my mind without reserve. I sincerely own I am not rich.—Look,' added he, shewing that his doublet was lined with play-bills, 'this is the stuff that usually serves me for lining; and if you have any curiosity to see my wardrobe, it shall be forthwith gratified.' At the same time he took out of his knapsack an old suit laced with tinsel, a sorry hat with some old plumes of feathers, a pair of silk stockings full of holes, and red buskins very much worn. 'You see,' said he, 'I am tolerably poor.'—'That's what surprizes me,' replied Diego. 'So you have neither wife nor daughter?'—'I have a wife, young and handsome,' said Zapata; 'yet I am never a bit the better for it; so wonderfully capricious is my fate. I married a beautiful actress, in hopes that she would not let me starve; and unfortunately for me, she is incorruptibly chaste. Who the devil would not have been deceived as I was? there happened to be one virtuous woman among the strollers, and she must fall to my lot!'—'Truly, you have had bad luck,' said the barber; 'but why did you not marry an actress of the king's company at Madrid, in which case you could not have been disappointed?'—'I grant it,' replied the player: 'but a plague upon it! a little country stroller dares not aspire to those famous heroines; that is as much as an actor of the prince's company can do; some of whom are even obliged to match in the city. Luckily for them, the city is well

stored, and they often light on yoke-fellows not a whit inferior to those princesses who were brought up behind the scenes.'

'Have you never endeavoured,' said my companion to him, 'to be introduced into that company? Must one have infinite merit to be admitted into it?'—'Good!' replied Melchior, 'you are merry with your infinite merit. It is composed of twenty actors: ask their characters in town, and you will hear them finely handled. More than one half deserve to carry the knapsack still; but, for all that, it is no easy matter to be received among them. One must have money, or powerful friends, to supply the want of talents. This I ought to know, since I am just come from making a trial at Madrid, where I have been hooted and hissed in a hellish manner, although I deserved to be applauded to the skies; for I roared, ranted, burlesqued Nature an hundred times; and moreover, in my declamation, clapped my clenched fist to my princess's nose. In a word, I performed in the taste of the great actors in vogue; and yet the same audience that relished this behaviour in them, could not endure it in me. You see the force of prejudice! Wherefore, finding myself incapable of pleasing on that stage, and having nothing to secure my reception in defiance of the town, I am going back to Zamora, where I shall rejoin my wife and comrades, who are not in the most flourishing circumstances. God grant that we may not be obliged to beg our way to the next town! a misfortune which has already happened to us more than once.'

With these words, this prince of the drama sprung up, shouldered his knapsack, girded on his sword, and, at parting, pronounced with a theatrical air, 'Gentlemen, adieu! may the gods ex-haust their bounties on you!'—'And you,' replied Diego, 'may you, at your return to Zamora, behold your wife's condition and temper changed.' Signior Zapata no sooner shewed his heels, than he began to rehearse as he walked, and immediately the barber and I hissed, to put him in mind of his trial: the noise reaching his ears, he thought he still heard the catcalls

catcalls of Madrid; upon which he looked back, and perceiving that we made merry at his expence, far from being incensed at our buffoonery, took all in good part, and continued his noise, bursting into fits of laughter all the way. We returned his mirth with all our might; and, getting back into the high road, pursued our journey.

CHAP. IX.

THE CONDITION IN WHICH DIEGO FINDS HIS FAMILY; AND AN ACCOUNT OF THE REJOICINGS: AFTER WHICH, GIL BLAS BIDS HIM FAREWEL.

HAVING slept that night between Moyados and Valpuesta, in a little village whose name I have forgot, we arrived next day, about eleven o'clock in the forenoon, in the plain of Olmedo. 'Signior Gil Blas,' said my comrade, 'there is the place of my nativity, which I cannot behold again without transport; so natural it is to love one's country.'—'Signior Diego,' answered I, 'one who expresses such regard for his native country, might, I think, have spoke of it a little more advantageously than you have done: Olmedo seems to be a city, and you told me it was only a village. It ought, at least, to be dignified with the epithet of a market-town.'—'I beg it's pardon,' replied the barber; 'but I must own, that after having seen Madrid, Toledo, Saragosa, and all the great cities I touched at in making my tour of Spain, I look upon the small ones as villages.' As we advanced into the plain, we thought we observed a great concourse of people near Olmedo, and when we were near enough to discern objects, we found something to attract our attention.

There were three tents pitched at a small distance from one another, and hard by a great number of cooks and scullions preparing a feast: some laid cloth on long tables, placed under the tents; some filled earthen pitchers with wine; others made the pots boil, and others again turned spits that were loaded with all sorts of meat: but what I considered more attentively than all

the rest, was a great stage, raised and adorned with decorations of painted paper of different colours, and garnished with Greek and Latin devices. The barber no sooner perceived the inscriptions, than he said, 'All these Greek mottoes favour strongly of my uncle Thomas, who, I'll hold a wager, has a hand in the business: for, between you and me, he is a learned man, and has a pour of college-books by heart: his greatest fault is, that he incessantly quotes passages from them in conversation, which is not agreeable to every body. Besides,' added he, 'my uncle has translated a good many Greek and Latin authors, and is quite master of the ancients, as one may see by the learned remarks which he has made: had it not been for him, we should never have known, that in the city of Athens children cried when they were flogged; we owe that discovery to his profound erudition.'

After my comrade and I had observed all those things which I have mentioned, we were curious to know the cause of such preparations, and went forward to enquire, when Diego recognized in the director of the feast, Signior Thomas de la Fuente, whom he accosted with great eagerness. The school-master did not, at first, know the young barber; so much was he altered during an absence of ten years: but recollecting him at last, he embraced him affectionately, saying, 'What! do I see thee, then, Diego, my dear nephew? Do I see thee returned to the town where thou first saw'st the light? Thou art come to revisit thy household gods; and Heaven restores thee safe and sound to thy kindred! O day, thrice and four times happy! O day, worthy to be marked with a white stone! A world of changes have happened, my friend,' pursued he; 'thy uncle Pedro, the poet, has fallen a victim to Pinto, having died three months ago. That miser, while alive, was afraid of wanting the necessaries of life, *Argenti pallebat amore*: for though he received large pensions from several grandees, he did not spend ten pistoles a year for his subsistence, and was even served by a valet whom he did not maintain. That fool, more senseless than the Grecian Aristip-

pus,

pus, who ordered his slaves to throw away, in the deserts of Africk, the riches they carried, as a burden that incommoded them in their march; —he, I say, heaped up all the gold and silver he could scrape together; and for whom? for those very heirs he would not so much as see. He died worth thirty thousand ducats, which thy father, thy uncle Bertrand, and I, have equally shared among us: so that we are able to settle our children to our heart's desire. My brother Nicolas has already disposed of thy sister Theresa, whom he has given in marriage to the son of one of our alcaldes. *Connubio junxit stabili, propriumque dicavit.* These nuptials, performed under the most happy auspices, we have celebrated these two days with such preparation; three tents being pitched in the plain, one for each of the three heirs of Pedro, who, in their turns, bear the expence of the day. I wish thou hadst arrived sooner, to have seen the beginning of our rejoicings. The day before yesterday, when they were married, thy father gave a sumptuous entertainment, which was followed by a course at the ring: thy uncle, the mercer, treated yesterday, and regaled us with a pastoral feast; ten of the gentlest youths, and as many handsome maidens, were dressed like shepherds, all the ribbands and points in his shop being employed to adorn them. This gay company performed several dances, and sung a thousand light and tender catches: nevertheless, tho' nothing was ever more gallant, the spectators did not seem to relish it, which shews that pastoral is quite out of date.

'To-day,' added he, 'every thing is to be at my cost; and I will exhibit to the inhabitants of Olmedo a shew of my own invention. *Finis coronabit opus.* I have ordered a theatre to be raised, on which (God willing) I will make my scholars represent a piece of my own composing, intitled, *The Diversions of Muley Bugentuff, King of Morocco.* It will be extremely well acted, because I have scholars who declaim like the players of Madrid: they are the sons of fashionable people living at Penafiel and Segovia, who are boarded with me, and are become excellent

actors under my instruction. Their performance will appear to be of a masterly stamp, *ut ita dicam.* With regard to the piece, I shall say nothing, that thou mayest enjoy the pleasure of surprize; but only observe, that it must transport the spectators: for it is one of those tragick subjects which wake the soul by the images of death they present to the view.—I am of Aristotle's opinion, that the chief end of tragedy is to raise terror. Oh! if I had attached myself to the drama, I would have introduced none but bloody-minded princes, and heroick assassins on the scene, and would have bathed myself in gore: and in my tragedies, not only the principal persons, but even their guards should have perished. I would have murdered them all, to the very prompter. In a word, my taste, is horror; and we see that such poems captivate the multitude, support the luxury of the players, and enable the author to live at his ease.'

Just as he had done speaking, we saw coming out of the village into the plain a great concourse of men and women. These were no other than the new-married couple, accompanied by their relations and friends, and preceded by ten or twelve musicians, who, playing all together, performed a most thundering concert. We went up to meet them, and Diego made himself known; upon which, the whole assembly broke out into shouts of joy, and every one was eager to embrace him; so that he was sufficiently employed in receiving their expressions of friendship. His whole family, as well as all who were present, having well nigh smothered him with caresses, his father said to him, 'Welcome, Diego; thou findest thy parents somewhat better'd in their circumstances, my child. I shall say no more at present, but explain myself more particularly by and by.' Mean while the company, advancing into the plain, repaired to the tents, and sat down at the tables that were covered; and I and my companion, whom I would not quit, dined with the bridegroom and bride, who seemed to be very well matched. The repast was pretty long, because the schoolmaster had the vanity to furnish three courses, in order to excel his brothers, who had not treated with so much magnificence.

L

After

After the banquet, all the guests expressed impatience to see the representation of Signior Thomas's piece; not doubting (as they said) that the production of such a fine genius would answer their most sanguine expectation. Accordingly, approaching the stage, before which the musicians had already taken their seats, in order to play between the acts, every body, in the most profound silence, waited for the beginning. The actors appeared on the scene, and the author, with his poem in his hand, sat down on one side, to prompt them. It was not without reason that he told us the piece was tragical; for, in the first act, the King of Morocco, by way of recreation, shot an hundred Moorish slaves with arrows: in the second, he beheaded thirty Portuguese officers, whom one of his captains had made prisoners of war; and in the third and last, this monarch, mad with his wives, sets fire with his own hand to a detached palace, in which they were shut up, and reduces them and it to ashes. The Moorish slaves, as well as the Portuguese officers, were figures of ozier, very artfully made; and the palace, composed of paper, seemed all on a flame by an artificial fire-work. This conflagration, accompanied with a thousand doleful shrieks, that seemed to issue from the midst of the flames, concluded the piece, and closed the scene in a very diverting manner. The whole plain echoed with the applause that was given to such a fine tragedy, which justified the good taste of the poet, and shewed that he knew how to chuse his subject.

I thought there was no more to be seen, after the diversions of Muley Bugentuff; but I was mistaken: for

we were advertised of a new shew by the sound of drums and trumpets. This was a distribution of prizes: Thomas de la Fuente, to make the feast more solemn, having ordered all his scholars (as well those who were boarded with him as the rest) to compose, and intending to bestow on those who had succeeded best, books bought at Segovia with his own coin. Immediately, therefore, two school-forms were brought upon the stage, with a press full of little books handsomely bound; then all the actors returned upon the scene, and ranged themselves round Signior Thomas, who looked as big as the head master of a college, and held a paper in his hand, on which were written the names of those who were to obtain the prizes: this he gave to the King of Morocco, who began to read it with a loud voice; and every scholar who was called, going in a respectful manner, received a book from the pedant, who was afterwards crowned with bays, and ordered to sit down on one of the benches, that he might be exposed to the admiration of the crowd. Nevertheless, how delicious soever the schoolmaster was at sending home the spectators satisfied, he could by no means effect it; because having distributed almost all the prizes among his boarders, as the custom is, the mothers of some of the rest being present, were offended; and openly accused the pedant of partiality, in such a manner, that this entertainment, which had hitherto been so glorious for him, had like to have ended in mischief, like the feast of the Lapithæ.



THE
ADVENTURES
OF
GIL BLAS
OF
SANTILLANE.

BOOK III.

CHAP. I.

THE ARRIVAL OF GIL BLAS AT
MADRID; WITH AN ACCOUNT
OF THE FIRST MASTER HE
SERVED IN THAT CITY.

HAVING staid some time with the young barber, I afterwards joined a merchant of Segovia, in his way through Olmedo, with four mules, on which he had transported goods to Valladolid, and was returning with them unloaded. We became acquainted on the road; and he conceived such friendship for me, that he insisted upon my lodging at his house, when we arrived at Segovia. There he detained me two days; and when I was ready to set out for Madrid, along with a carrier, he intrusted me with a letter, which he desired I would in person deliver according to the direction, without telling me that it was a recommendation. I did not fail to present it to Signior Mattheo Melendez, a woollen-draper, who lived near the Sun-gate, at the

corner of the Trunk-maker's Street; and he no sooner opened it, and read the contents, than he said, with a complaisant air, 'Signior Gil Blas, Pedro Palacio, my correspondent, writes so pressingly in your behalf, that I cannot dispense with your lodging at my house. He moreover entreats me to find a place for you; and I undertake the office with pleasure, being persuaded that I shall find no difficulty in procuring for you a good settlement.'

I accepted the offer of Melendez with so much the more joy, as my finances were sensibly diminished: but I did not live long at his expence; for in eight days he gave me to know, that he had recommended me to a gentleman of his acquaintance, who wanted a valet de chambre; and that, in all probability, I should be preferred to the post. The gentlemen coming in at that moment, 'Signior,' said Melendez, shewing me to him, 'this is the young man I mentioned to you. He is a youth of honour and sobriety, and I can answer for his good behaviour, as much as for my own.' The cavalier having looked at me attentively,

tentively, said he liked my countenance, and took me into his service. 'He may follow me now,' added he; 'and I will instruct him in his duty.' At these words, he bade the merchant good morrow, and conducting me into the great street just by St. Philip's Church, we entered a pretty good house, one wing of which he possessed; and going up five or six steps of a stair, he introduced me into a chamber, secured by two strong doors, which he opened; and in the first, I perceived a small window, grated with iron: through this chamber we went into another; where there was a bed and other furniture, more calculated for convenience than show.

If my new master considered me attentively at the house of Melendez, I examined him with great earnestness in my turn. He was a man turned of fifty, seemed to be serious and reserved, though good-natured withal; so that I conceived no bad opinion of him. He put several questions to me about my family, and being satisfied with my answers, 'Gil Blas,' said he, 'I believe thou art a sensible young fellow, and I am very glad to have such an one in my service. As for thee, thou shalt have no cause to complain; I will give thee six rials a day, for victuals, cloaths, wages and all; exclusive of some little perquisites thou mayest enjoy, and I am easily served; for I keep no table, but always dine abroad. All that thou hast to do in a morning is, to clean my cloaths, and thou shalt be at thy own disposal during the rest of the day: take care only to come back early in the evening, and wait for me at the door. This is all I exact.' After having thus prescribed my duty, he took out his purse, and gave me six rials, as a beginning to fulfil articles; then going out, he locked the doors himself, and putting the keys in his pocket, 'Friend,' said he, 'don't follow me; go where you please: but be sure to be on the stair, when I return in the evening.' So saying, he left me to dispose of myself as I should think proper.

'In good faith, Gil Blas,' said I to myself, 'thou couldst not have found a better master: what! to light on a man who, for brushing his cloaths, and helping him to dress of a morn-

ing, gives me six rials per day, with liberty to walk and take my diversion, like a scholar during the vacation! Egad, this is the happiest of all situations! No wonder that I was so desirous of being at Madrid: I had certainly some supernatural intimation of the happiness that awaited me.' I spent the day in strolling about the streets, diverting myself with looking at every thing that was new to me, and this gave me sufficient employment. In the evening, after having supped at an eating-house not far from our lodgings, I betook myself to the place whither my master had ordered me to repair, and where he himself arrived three quarters of an hour after me, seemingly well pleased with my punctuality. 'Very well,' said he, 'this is right: I love to see servants attentive to their duty.' So saying, he opened the doors of his apartment, and shut them again as soon as we had got in: being in the dark, he took a tinder-box, and struck a light, by the help of which I assisted to undress him. When he was a-bed, I lighted, by his order, a lamp that stood in his chimney, and carried the candle into the anti-chamber, where I went to sleep in a bed without curtains. Next morning, he got up between nine and ten o'clock, and when I had dusted his cloaths, counted me six more rials, and dismissed me till the evening: after which, he went out also, not without locking his doors with great care; so we parted again for the remaining part of the day.

Such was our manner of living, which I found very agreeable; and the best joke of all was, I did not know my master's name: Melendez himself was ignorant of it, being only acquainted with him as a gentleman who came sometimes to his shop, and bought cloth of him, as he had occasion for it. Our neighbours could give me no better information; all of them assuring me, that my master was utterly unknown to them, although he had lived two years in the ward. They told me, that he visited nobody in the neighbourhood; and some of them, accustomed to make rash inferences, concluded from thence, that he was no better than he should be. They went still farther, suspecting him to be a spy of the King of Portugal, and cha-
ritably

nitably advertised me of that suspicion, that I might take my measures accordingly. I was disturbed at this advice; and reflected, that if the thing was so, I should run the risk of visiting the prison of Madrid. I could not confide in my innocence, my past misfortunes having taught me to dread Justice; for I had found by experience, that if she does not put the innocent to death, she at least treats them with so little hospitality, that her lodgers are always in a very melancholy situation.

In such a delicate conjuncture I consulted Melendez, who did not know how to advise me: for if he could not believe that my master was a spy, on the other hand, he had no certain reason to think otherwise; so that I resolved to observe my patron narrowly, and to leave him, if I should perceive that he was undoubtedly an enemy to the state; but I thought prudence, and the easiness of my place, required that I should be first perfectly sure of his practices. With this view, I began to keep a strict eye over his actions; and in order to sound him, 'Sir,' said I, one evening, while I undressed him, 'one does not know how to live, so as to avoid slander: the world is very malicious, and we, among others, are very little obliged to our neighbours. You cannot guess in what manner the malicious creatures talk of us!' — 'Right, Gil Blas,' answered he: 'but what can they say of us, child?' — 'Ah! truly,' I replied, 'scandal never wants matter. Virtue herself furnishes food for it. Our neighbours say, that we are dangerous people, and deserve to be taken notice of by the government. In a word, you are thought to be a spy for the King of Portugal.' While I pronounced these words, I looked hard at my master, as Alexander eyed his physician*; and employing all my penetration to discover what effect my report produced in him, thought I observed an emotion that too well agreed with the conjectures of the neighbourhood, and he fell into a fit of musing; upon which I did not put the most favourable construction: but he soon re-

covered himself, and said with an air of tranquillity, 'Gil Blas, let our neighbours think as they please, without making our peace depend on their imaginations; and since we give them no cause to think amiss of us, let their opinion give us no uneasiness.'

Upon this, he went to bed, and I followed his example, without knowing what to think of the matter. Next day, just as we were going out in the morning, we heard a loud rap at the outward door; my master opened the other, and looking through the small grate, saw a decent sort of a man at it, who said, 'Signior Cavalier, I am an alguazil, and come hither to tell you, that the corregidor would speak with you.' — 'What does he want with me?' replied my patron. — 'That I am ignorant of, Signior,' said the alguazil; 'but if you will take the trouble to go to his house, you will soon know.' — 'I am his most humble servant,' resumed my master; 'but have no manner of business with him.' So saying, he shut the second door; and having walked up and down for some time, like one alarmed at the discourse of the alguazil, put six rials into my hand, saying, 'Gil Blas, thou mayest go out, my friend. I do not intend to go abroad so early, and have no farther occasion for thee this morning.' These words made me believe, that the fear of being apprehended obliged him to stay at home; so that when I left him, in order to see if my suspicions were unjust, I hid myself in a place from whence I could see him, if he should come out; and should have had the patience to stay there the whole morning, had he not spared me the trouble. But an hour after, I saw him walking in the street, with an air of assurance, that at first confounded my penetration; but, far from being duped by those appearances, I distrusted them, having no favourable opinion of the man. I looked upon his composure as a piece of affectation, and even imagined that his remaining at home was with a view of securing his gold and jewels; and that, in all probability, he would consult

* Alexander the Great having received a letter, intimating that his physician designed to poison him, took the cup of medicine which he prescribed, and drinking it without hesitation, put the letter into the suspected person's hand, fixing his eyes stedfastly upon him while he read it, in order to discover in his countenance the signs of innocence or guilt.

his safety by immediate flight. I did not expect to see him again, and hesitated about going in the evening to give my attendance at the door; so sure I was that he would quit the city instantly, to escape from the danger that threatened him. I did not fail, however, of being there; and, to my utter surprize, my master returned at his usual time, went to bed without shewing the least uneasiness, and got up next day with the same tranquillity.

When we had done dressing, somebody knocked at the door; upon which, my master looking through the grate, perceived the same alguazil who had been there the preceding day, and asked what he wanted. 'Open,' answered the alguazil, 'here is Monsieur the corregidor*.' At this formidable name, my blood froze in my veins; for I was curdledly afraid of these gentlemen, since I passed through their hands; and wished that moment to be an hundred leagues from Madrid; but my patron, less afraid than I, opened the door, and received the judge with great respect. 'You see,' said the corregidor to him, 'I do not come to your lodgings with many attendants; being desirous of doing every thing with as little noise as possible; and I believe that you deserve this respect, notwithstanding the ugly reports that are spread of you. Tell me, therefore, your name, and business at Madrid?'—'Signior,' replied my master, 'I was born in New Castile, and my name is Don Bernard de Castel Blazo: with regard to my business, I divert myself in walking, frequenting shews, and enjoying the agreeable conversation of a few select friends.'—'Doubtless,' said the judge, 'you have a great income.'—'No, Sir,' resumed my patron, interrupting him, 'I have neither rents, lands, nor house.'—'How do you live then?' replied the corregidor. 'On that which you shall see,' said Don Bernard: at the same time, he lifted up a hanging, opened a door, which I had not before observed, then another behind that, and carried the judge into a closet, where he shewed him a great trunk filled with pieces of gold.

Then he went on: 'Signior, you

' know that the Spaniards are enemies to labour; nevertheless, how averse soever they may be to trouble, I may safely say, that I excel them all in that particular; having a fund of laziness that renders me incapable of any manner of employment. If I had a mind to dignify my vices, I would call this laziness, a philosophical indolence, the work of a mind weaned from every thing that is most ardently pursued in life: but I will frankly own, that I am constitutionally idle; and so idle, that if I was under a necessity of working for my livelihood, I believe I should let myself die of hunger. With a view, therefore, to lead a life agreeable to my humour, to free myself from the trouble of managing my estate, and above all things, to save myself the plague of a steward, I have converted my whole patrimony, consisting of several considerable inheritances, into ready money. In this trunk are fifty thousand ducats; more than I shall ever have occasion for, was I to live another age; for I don't spend a thousand a year, and am already turned of fifty. I am not at all afraid of what is to happen; for, thank Heaven, I am not addicted to any one of the three things which commonly bring men to ruin. I am not a slave to my stomach; I play only for amusement; and am quite cured of women. So that I am under no apprehension of being ranked, in my old age, among those voluptuous dotards, who purchase the favours of courtizans at an extravagant price.'

'What a happy man you are!' said the corregidor: 'you are very unjustly suspected of being a spy; that office being very unfit for a person of your character. Proceed, Don Bernard,' added he; 'continue the life you now lead; and, far from disturbing your happiness, I declare myself the guardian of it. I beg the favour of your friendship, and offer you mine in return.'—'Ah, Signior!' cried my master, penetrated with these obliging expressions, 'I accept the precious offer you make, with equal joy and respect; for, in vouchsafing

* In every city of Spain, the corregidor is the chief civil magistrate, and is always appointed by the king.

‘ me your friendship, you increase my wealth, and crown my felicity.’—

After this conversation, which the alguazil and I overheard at the closet-door, the corregidor took his leave of Don Bernard, who could not enough express his gratitude; while I, to second my master, and assist him in doing the honours of the house, overwhelmed the alguazil with civilities, making a thousand profound bows, though, in the bottom of my soul, I harboured that disdain and aversion which every man of honour has for one of his occupation.

CHAP. II.

THE ASTONISHMENT OF GIL BLAS, WHEN HE MET CAPTAIN ROLANDO AT MADRID, AND THE CURIOUS THINGS WHICH THAT ROBBER RECOUNTED TO HIM.

DON Bernard de Castel Blazo, after having waited upon the corregidor to the street, returned with all expedition to lock his strong box, and all the doors that secured it. Then we went out both very well satisfied; he, for having acquired a powerful friend, and I, for being now secured in my fixtials a day. The desire I had to recount this adventure to Melendez, made me take the road to his house, which, when I had almost reached, I perceived Captain Rolando. I was confounded at finding him in this place, and could not help shivering at sight of him! He knew me at once, accosted me very gravely, and preserving still his air of superiority, ordered me to follow him. I obeyed with fear and trembling, saying to myself, ‘Alas! he will, doubtless, make me pay what I owe him. Whither will he lead me! perhaps to some subterranean abode in this city. A plague upon it! if I thought so, I would let him see, in a hurry, that I have not got the gout in my toes.’ As I walked behind him, I resolved to take particular notice of the place where he should stop; from which I proposed to scamper off as fast as my legs could carry me, should it seem in the least suspicious.

But Rolando soon banished my fear, by going into a noted tavern; whither I followed him, and where he called

for the best wine, and bespoke dinner. In the mean time, we went into a room by ourselves, where the captain spoke in this manner: ‘Thou must be surprized, Gil Blas, to meet thy old commander in this place; and wilt be more so still, when thou shalt hear what I going to relate. That day on which I left thee in our subterranean retreat, and set out for Mansilla with my whole company, in order to dispose of the mules and horses which we had taken the preceding day, it was our fortune to meet the son of the corregidor of Leon in his coach, accompanied by four men on horseback well armed. We made two of them bite the dust, and the others betake themselves to flight; while the coachman, afraid of his master’s life, cried, in a suppliant voice, “O, dear gentlemen! in the name of God, do not kill the only son of the corregidor of Leon.” My people did not at all relent at these words, which, on the contrary, inspired them with fury. “Gentlemen,” said one among us, “let not the son of our mortal enemy escape: how many people of our profession hath his father put to death! let us avenge them now, and sacrifice this victim to their manes.” The rest of my men approved of this proposal; and even my lieutenant prepared to act the high-priest in this ceremony, when I held his hands, saying, “Stop at your peril! why should we shed blood unnecessarily! let us be satisfied with the purse of this young man, whom, since he makes no resistance, it would be the utmost barbarity to kill: besides, he is not accountable for the actions of his father, who does no more than his duty in condemning us to death; just as we do ours in rifling travellers on the highway.”

‘My intercession was far from being unserviceable to the corregidor’s son, from whom we took nothing but his money; and having carried off the horses of the two men we had slain, we sold them, together with our own, at Mansilla; then returning to our cavern, which we reached next day before it was light, we were not a little astonished to find the trap-door lifted up; and our surprize redoubled, when we saw Leonarda fet-
tered

tered in the kitchen. Being briefly informed by her of what had happened, we wondered how thou couldest out-wit us, never having thought thee capable of playing such a clever trick, and we forgave thee on account of the invention. Having untied our cook-maid, and given orders to dress victuals for us, we went to look after our horses in the stable, where the old negro, who had received no sustenance for four and twenty hours, was at the last gasp. We would have given him all the assistance in our power; but he had lost his senses, and was otherwise so low, that notwithstanding our good-will, we left the poor devil in the clutches of death. This did not deprive us of our appetite, which, having satisfied with a sumptuous meal, we retired to our several chambers, and slept the rest of the day: when we got up, Leonarda let us know that Domingo was no more; upon which we carried him to the cellar, where thou mayest remember thy bed was, and there performed his funeral obsequies, as if he had enjoyed the honour of being our companion.

Five or six days after, it happened, that intending to make an excursion, we one morning, on the skirts of the wood, fell in with three troops belonging to the Holy Brotherhood, who seemed waiting in order to attack us. As we perceived only one of the three at first, we despised it, though more numerous than our company, and attacked it accordingly; but while we were engaged with this, the other two, who had found means to keep themselves hitherto concealed, rushed upon us so suddenly, that our valour was of little or no service, and we were under a necessity of yielding to the numbers of the foe. Our lieutenant and two of our men fell on the field, while the two that remained and I, were so hemmed in and overpowered, that we were taken prisoners; and while two of their troops conducted us to Leon, the third went and destroyed our retreat, which had been discovered as follows: a peasant of Luceno crossing the forest in his return home, perceived, by accident, the trap-door of our cavern lifted up, that very day on which thou madest thy escape with the lady; and

suspecting that it was the place of our abode, had not courage to go in, but contented himself with taking a good observation of the place, which the better to mark, he cut off, with his knife, thin slices of bark from the trees at small distances as he went along, until he had got quite out of the wood; then repairing to Leon, imparted his discovery to the corregidor, who receiving it with so much the more joy, as his son had been robbed by our company, assembled three troops in order to apprehend us, and the peasant was their guide.

My arrival furnished a shew for all the inhabitants of Leon: had I been a Portuguese general made prisoner of war, the people could not have been more eager to see me. "Behold," said they, "behold the famous captain who was the terror of this country; and who, with his two comrades, deserves to have the flesh torn from his bones with red-hot pincers." Being carried before the corregidor, he began to insult me, saying, "Well, miserable wretch! Heaven, wearied with the disorders of thy life, at last resigns thee to my justice!"—"Sir," replied I, "if my crimes are manifold, at least, I cannot reproach myself with the death of your only son, whose life I preserved; for which you owe me some acknowledgment."—"Ah, m' screant!" cried he, "people of thy character are not entitled to the privileges of honour; and even if I had a mind to save thy life, the duty of my office would not allow me!" Having spoke to me in this manner, he ordered us to be imprisoned in a dungeon, where he did not let my companions linger long; for they went out in three days, to act their last tragical scene in the market-place. As for me, I remained three whole weeks in gaol, imagining that my punishment was deferred, in order to make it more terrible; and was in expectation of a death altogether new, when the corregidor ordering me to be brought into his presence, said, "Listen to thy sentence. Thou art free. Had it not been for thee, my only son would have been murdered on the highway. As a father, I was willing to acknowledge this piece of service; but not

having

"having it in my power to acquit thee as a judge, I have wrote to court in thy behalf, solicited thy pardon, and obtained it. Thou mayest go, then, whither thou shalt please. But," added he, "take my advice; reflect seriously on thy ill-spent life, and from henceforth quit the profession of robbery."

"I was deeply affected with these words, and took the road to Madrid, resolved to turn over a new leaf, and live honestly in that city. I found my parents were dead, and their effects in the hands of an old relation, who gave me such a faithful account of them as guardians commonly do; all that I have been able to touch, being no more than three thousand ducats, which, in all probability, is not above one fourth of what is my due. But what course could I take? I should gain nothing by going to law: therefore, to avoid idleness, I have purchased the place of an alguazil. My brethren, out of decency, would have opposed my admission, had they been acquainted with my story, which luckily they were ignorant of, or pretended to be so, which is the same thing; for in that honourable corps it is the business of every individual to conceal his own exploits: thank Heaven! not one of us can justly reproach his fellow; so that it may be said of the fraternity, "The devil may take the best." Nevertheless, my friend," added Rolando, "I will now disclose the bottom of my soul: the profession which I have embraced, is not at all to my liking; it requires a behaviour too delicate and mysterious for me; and whatever tricks we practise, must be very crafty and secret. O how I regret my old profession! I grant, there is more safety in this new employment; but there was more pleasure in the other; and liberty is my delight. In all likelihood I shall get rid of my office, and set out one morning for the mountains at the source of the river Tagus, where I know there is a retreat inhabited by a numerous company, chiefly of Catalonians; (that is making their elogium in one word:) if thou wilt accompany me, we will go and increase the number of these

great men: I shall be second captain in their company; and will, for thy better reception, assure them, that I have seen thee ten times engaged by my side; I will extol thy valour to the skies, and say more in thy praise than a general says of an officer whom he wants to promote. I will take care not to mention a word of the trick thou hast played, because it would make them suspicious of thee; the adventure shall therefore be concealed.—Well," added he, "art thou ready to follow my fortune? I wait for thy reply."

"So many men, so many minds," said I to Rolando; "you are born for hardy deeds, and I for a quiet and easy life."—"Oh! I understand you," cried he, interrupting me; "the lady whom love persuaded you to rescue, still keeps possession of your heart; and doubtless you lead a happy life with her in Madrid: confess, Mr. Gil Blas, that you have taken lodgings for her, and spend together the pistoles which you carried off from the subterranean retreat." I told him that he was mistaken, and that, in order to undeceive him, I would, while we should be at dinner, relate the story of the lady; this I did accordingly, and informed him of all that had happened to me since I quitted the company. Towards the end of our repast, he resumed the subject of the Catalonians, acknowledged that he was determined to join them, and made a new attempt to engage me in the same resolution; but finding that I was not to be persuaded, he darted a fierce look at me, saying, in a very serious tone, "Since thou hast such a grovelling soul, as to prefer thy servile condition to the honour of associating with men of courage, I abandon thee to the baseness of thy inclinations; but listen to the words I am about to pronounce, and let them remain engraven on thy memory: forget that thou hast met me to-day, and never talk of me from henceforth; for if ever I shall hear that thou so much as namest me in conversation—thou knowest me—I will say no more." Having thus expressed himself, he called to pay, discharged the bill, and we got up in order to part.

tered in the kitchen. Being briefly informed by her of what had happened, we wondered how thou couldest out-wit us, never having thought thee capable of playing such a clever trick, and we forgave thee on account of the invention. Having untied our cook-maid, and given orders to dress victuals for us, we went to look after our horses in the stable, where the old negro, who had received no sustenance for four and twenty hours, was at the last gasp. We would have given him all the assistance in our power; but he had lost his senses, and was otherwise so low, that notwithstanding our good-will, we left the poor devil in the clutches of death. This did not deprive us of our appetite, which, having satisfied with a sumptuous meal, we retired to our several chambers, and slept the rest of the day: when we got up, Leonarda let us know that Domingo was no more; upon which we carried him to the cellar, where thou mayest remember thy bed was, and there performed his funeral obsequies, as if he had enjoyed the honour of being our companion.

Five or six days after, it happened, that intending to make an excursion, we one morning, on the skirts of the wood, fell in with three troops belonging to the Holy Brotherhood, who seemed waiting in order to attack us. As we perceived only one of the three at first, we despised it, though more numerous than our company, and attacked it accordingly; but while we were engaged with this, the other two, who had found means to keep themselves hitherto concealed, rushed upon us so suddenly, that our valour was of little or no service, and we were under a necessity of yielding to the numbers of the foe. Our lieutenant and two of our men fell on the field, while the two that remained and I, were so hemmed in and overpowered, that we were taken prisoners; and while two of their troops conducted us to Leon, the third went and destroyed our retreat, which had been discovered as follows: a peasant of Luceno crossing the forest in his return home, perceived, by accident, the trap-door of our cavern lifted up, that very day on which thou madest thy escape with the lady; and

suspecting that it was the place of our abode, had not courage to go in, but contented himself with taking a good observation of the place, which the better to mark, he cut off, with his knife, thin slices of bark from the trees at small distances as he went along, until he had got quite out of the wood; then repairing to Leon, imparted his discovery to the corregidor, who receiving it with so much the more joy, as his son had been robbed by our company, assembled three troops in order to apprehend us, and the peasant was their guide.

My arrival furnished a shew for all the inhabitants of Leon: had I been a Portuguese general made prisoner of war, the people could not have been more eager to see me. Behold," said they, "behold the famous captain who was the terror of this country; and who, with his two comrades, deserves to have the flesh torn from his bones with red-hot pincers." Being carried before the corregidor, he began to insult me, saying, "Well, miserable wretch! Heaven, wearied with the disorders of thy life, at last resigns thee to my justice!"—"Sir," replied I, "if my crimes are manifold, at least, I cannot reproach myself with the death of your only son, whose life I preserved; for which you owe me some acknowledgment."—"Ah, man!" cried he, "people of thy character are not entitled to the privileges of honour; and even if I had a mind to save thy life, the duty of my office would not allow me!" Having spoke to me in this manner, he ordered us to be imprisoned in a dungeon, where he did not let my companions linger long; for they went out in three days, to act their last tragical scene in the market-place. As for me, I remained three whole weeks in gaol, imagining that my punishment was deferred, in order to make it more terrible; and was in expectation of a death altogether new, when the corregidor ordering me to be brought into his presence, said, "Listen to thy sentence. Thou art free. Had it not been for thee, my only son would have been murdered on the highway. As a father, I was willing to acknowledge this piece of service; but not

" having

"having it in my power to acquit thee as a judge, I have wrote to court in thy behalf, solicited thy pardon, and obtained it. Thou mayest go, then, whither thou shalt please. But," added he, "take my advice; reflect seriously on thy ill-spent life, and from henceforth quit the profession of robbery."

"I was deeply affected with these words, and took the road to Madrid, resolved to turn over a new leaf, and live honestly in that city. I found my parents were dead, and their effects in the hands of an old relation, who gave me such a faithful account of them as guardians commonly do; all that I have been able to touch, being no more than three thousand ducats, which, in all probability, is not above one fourth of what is my due. But what course could I take? I should gain nothing by going to law: therefore, to avoid idleness, I have purchased the place of an alguazil. My brethren, out of decency, would have opposed my admission, had they been acquainted with my story, which luckily they were ignorant of, or pretended to be so, which is the same thing; for in that honourable corps it is the business of every individual to conceal his own exploits: thank Heaven! not one of us can justly reproach his fellow; so that it may be said of the fraternity, "The devil may take the best." Nevertheless, my friend," added Rolando, "I will now disclose the bottom of my soul: the profession which I have embraced, is not at all to my liking; it requires a behaviour too delicate and mysterious for me; and whatever tricks we practise, must be very crafty and secret. O how I regret my old profession! I grant, there is more safety in this new employment; but there was more pleasure in the other; and liberty is my delight. In all likelihood I shall get rid of my office, and set out one morning for the mountains at the source of the river Tagus, where I know there is a retreat inhabited by a numerous company, chiefly of Catalonians; (that is making their elogium in one word:) if thou wilt accompany me, we will go and increase the number of these

great men: I shall be second captain in their company; and will, for thy better reception, assure them, that I have seen thee ten times engaged by my side; I will extol thy valour to the skies, and say more in thy praise than a general says of an officer whom he wants to promote. I will take care not to mention a word of the trick thou hast played, because it would make them suspicious of thee; the adventure shall therefore be concealed.—Well," added he, "art thou ready to follow my fortune? I wait for thy reply."

"So many men, so many minds," said I to Rolando; "you are born for hardy deeds, and I for a quiet and easy life."—"Oh! I understand you," cried he, interrupting me; "the lady whom love persuaded you to rescue, still keeps possession of your heart; and doubtless you lead a happy life with her in Madrid: confess, Mr. Gil Blas, that you have taken lodgings for her, and spend together the pittoles which you carried off from the subterranean retreat." I told him that he was mistaken, and that, in order to undeceive him, I would, while we should be at dinner, relate the story of the lady; this I did accordingly, and informed him of all that had happened to me since I quitted the company. Towards the end of our repast, he resumed the subject of the Catalonians, acknowledged that he was determined to join them, and made a new attempt to engage me in the same resolution; but finding that I was not to be persuaded, he darted a fierce look at me, saying, in a very serious tone, "Since thou hast such a grovelling soul, as to prefer thy servile condition to the honour of associating with men of courage, I abandon thee to the baseness of thy inclinations; but listen to the words I am about to pronounce, and let them remain engraven on thy memory: forget that thou hast met me to-day, and never talk of me from henceforth; for if ever I shall hear that thou so much as namest me in conversation—thou knowest me—I will say no more." Having thus expressed himself, he called to pay, discharged the bill, and we got up in order to part.

C H A P. III.

HE IS DISMISSED BY DON BERNARD DE CASTEL BLAZO, AND ENTERS INTO THE SERVICE OF A BEAU.

AS we went out of the tavern, and were taking leave of one another, my master happening to pass, saw me; and, I perceived, looked hard at the captain, which made me believe that he was surprized to find me acquainted with such a figure. Certain it is, that the appearance of Rolando could not prepossess people in his favour: for he was a very tall fellow, with a long visage and hook-nose; and, though not ugly, had very much the air of a rank sharper.

I was not deceived in my conjectures; for in the evening, I found Don Bernard still harping on the captain's figure, and extremely well disposed to believe all the fine things I could have said of him, had not my mouth been shut. 'Gil Blas,' said he, 'who is that tall spunger in whose company I saw thee to-day?' I replied, 'He is an alguazil;' and thought he would rest satisfied with that answer: but he asked a great many other questions; and as I appeared embarrassed, because I remembered the threat of Rolando, he broke off the conversation abruptly, and went to bed. Next morning, when I had done my duty as usual, instead of six rials, he gave me as many ducats, saying, 'Hold, my friend; here is what I give thee for having served me hitherto; go, and seek for another place, for I cannot put up with a servant who has such honourable acquaintances.' It came in my head to pretend, in my own justification, that my acquaintance with the alguazil was occasioned by my having prescribed for him, while I practised physick at Valladolid. 'Very well,' replied my master; 'that's an ingenious evasion; but thou shouldst have thought of it last night, and not have been so much disconcerted.'—'Sir,' added I, 'I thought it would be imprudent for me to tell it; and that was the cause of my confusion.'—'O! surely,' replied he, clapping my shoulder very gently, 'you have been very prudent; I did not think

'thou hadst been so cunning. Go, child, I have no farther occasion for thee.'

I went instantly to inform Melendez of this piece of bad news, who told me, for my consolation, that he intended to introduce me into a better family; and accordingly, a few days after, 'Gil Blas, my friend,' said he, 'you don't know what good news I have to tell you; you are going to enjoy the most agreeable post you could desire; for I will settle you with Don Matthias de Silva, a man of the first quality, and one of those young lords who go under the denomination of beaus: he does me the honour to buy cloth of me; on trust, indeed; but there is nothing to be lost by people of his rank; for they commonly marry rich heiresses, who pay their debts; and even if that should not happen, a tradesman, who understands his business, sells always so dear, that he can afford to lose three-fourths of his bargain. The steward of Don Matthias is my particular friend: let us go to him now; he will himself present you to his master; and you may depend upon it, he will, for my sake, treat you with uncommon regard.'

In our way to the house of Don Matthias, the merchant said, 'It will not be amiss, I believe, to give you some information of the character of this steward, whose name is Gregorio Rodriguez. Between you and me, he is a man of no family, who finding himself born for business, followed the bent of his genius, and enriched himself with the pillage of two families which he served in quality of steward. I assure you, he has a great deal of vanity, and loves to see the rest of the servants cringe to him. They must address themselves first to him, when they have the least favour to ask of their master; for should it happen, that they obtain it without his interest, he has always expedients in readiness by which it will either be revoked, or rendered ineffectual. Remember this, Gil Blas, in the regulation of your conduct: pay your court to Signior Rodriguez, preferable to your master himself, and do all that lies in your power to please him; his friendship will bestead you much; he will pay your

Go,
on for

Melen-
who
that he
better
v days
aid he,
ews I
ing to
ft you
le you
a man
f those
deno-
ne the
trust,
to be
r they
, who
f that
, who
ls al-
ord to
rgain.
is my
o him
you to
epend
treat

Don
t will
e you
ter of
Gre-
a and
who
inels,
and
ge of
qua-
e has
es to
ge to
elves
least
for
in it
ways
h it
ered
Gil
con-
nior
after
our
ship
pay
our





Plate VI.

Published as the Act directs, by Harrison & Co. Jan^y 27th 1781.

‘ your wages punctually; and if you are dextrous enough to acquire his confidence, he may give you some pretty bone to pick, out of the number he has in his possession. Don Matthias is a young lord, who minds nothing but his pleasure, and would not for the world inform himself of the state of his own affairs. What a glorious family is that for a steward!’

Arriving at the house, we desired to speak with Signior Rodriguez, who, we were told, was in his own apartment: there we found him with a kind of farmer, who had a blue canvas bag of money in his hand. The steward, who looked more pale and yellow than a girl oppressed with her maidenhead, came towards Melendez with open arms: he, on the other hand, met him in the same manner, and they embraced one another with demonstrations of friendship, in which there was, at least, as much art as nature. Then my affair coming on the carpet, Rodriguez examined me from head to foot, and told me, in a very polite manner, that I was just such an one as Don Matthias wanted, and that he would with pleasure present me to that lord. Upon which, Melendez letting him know how much he was interested in my behalf, and begging that he would favour me with his protection, committed me to his care; and, after abundance of compliments, withdrew. He was no sooner gone, than Rodriguez said to me, ‘ I will conduct you to my master as soon as I can dispatch this honest country-man.’ Then going to the peasant, and taking hold of the bag, ‘ Talego,’ said he, ‘ let us see if there be just five hundred pistoles here.’ Having counted the money, and found it right, he gave the farmer a discharge for the sum, and sent him about his business; and, putting the pistoles into the bag again, addressed himself to me, saying, ‘ This is the right time for us to go to the levee of my master, who commonly rises about noon. It is near the hour, and I suppose he is up.’

This was the case: we found Don Matthias in his morning-gown, lolling in an easy chair, over an arm of which he had tilted one of his legs, and poised himself by leaning with his body the other way, and rasped tobacco, while he talked to a footman; who, for the

present, did the duty of his valet de chambre. ‘ My lord,’ said the steward to him, ‘ here is a young man, whom I take the liberty to present as one fit to fill the place of the valet whom you dismissed two days ago. Melendez, your draper, recommends him, assuring me, that he is a lad of merit; and I hope your lordship will be very well satisfied with his behaviour.’— ‘ Enough,’ answered the young lord; ‘ since you introduce him to me, I receive him into my service with implicit faith, and make him my valet de chambre: so that affair is settled. But, Rodriguez,’ added he, ‘ let us talk of something else: you are come very opportunely; for I was just going to send for you. I have bad news to tell you, my dear Rodriguez! you must know, I had ill luck at play last night. Together with an hundred pistoles which I had about me, I have lost two hundred more on my parole; and you know of what importance it is for people of quality to discharge that sort of debts: it is, indeed, the only kind which we are obliged, in point of honour, to pay; and we do not give ourselves much concern about the rest; you must, therefore, find two hundred pistoles immediately, and send them to the Countess of Pedrosa.’— ‘ Sir,’ said the steward, ‘ it is sooner said than done. Where shall I get that sum to please you? I have not been able to finger one farthing of your tenants, let me threaten as hard as I can; and yet I am obliged to maintain your family in an honourable way, though I sweat blood and water in procuring wherewithal to defray the expence. True, indeed, I have hitherto, thank Heaven! made shift; but I am now reduced to such extremity, that I know not what saint in heaven to invoke.’— ‘ All these harangues are useless,’ cried Don Matthias, interrupting him; ‘ and you worry me with your reflections. Don’t you imagine, Rodriguez, that I will change my disposition, and divert myself with looking into my own affairs. An agreeable amusement, truly, for a man of pleasure like me!’— ‘ Have a little patience,’ replied the steward; ‘ at the rate you go on, I foresee that you will be rid of that care in a very short time.’— ‘ You fatigue me,’ said

the young lord, in a passion; 'you murder me! give me leave to ruin myself imperceptibly: I tell you, I want two hundred pistoles, and I must have them.'—'I'll go, then,' said Rodriguez, 'and have recourse to the little old man, who has already lent you money at high interest.'—'You may, if you please, have recourse to the devil,' answered Don Matthias; 'provided I have the two hundred pistoles, I shall give myself no farther trouble about the matter.'

Just as he had pronounced these words in a hasty and discontented manner, the steward went away, and a young man of quality, called Don Antonio Centelles, came in. 'What is the matter?' said this last to my master; 'thou art cloudy, my friend: I perceive indignation in thy countenance. What can have put you into this bad humour? I'll lay a wager it is the man whom I met going out.'—'Yes,' replied Don Matthias, 'it was my steward: every time he comes to speak with me, I suffer for one quarter of an hour, by his talking about my affairs, and saying, that I have quite exhausted my finances. Impertinent beast! he cannot say that he loses by me, I'm sure.'—'Why, child,' said Don Antonio, 'I am in the same condition; having a factor not a whit more reasonable than thy steward. When the rogue, in obedience to my repeated orders, brings money for me, one would think he gave it out of his own pocket. He overwhelms me with reflections. "Sir," says he, "you are undone; your rents are seized." Upon which, I am obliged to cut him short, in order to put an end to his ridiculous discourse.'—'The misfortune is,' said Don Matthias, 'we cannot live without these people, who are necessary evils.'—'They are so,' replied Centelles; 'but hark'e,' added he, laughing with all his might, 'there is a comical thought come into my head: a most incomparable conception! by which we may convert those scenes which we have with them into mirth, and divert ourselves with that which now gives us so much uneasiness. Let me demand of thy steward all the money thou shalt have occasion for, while thou dost the same by my manager; then they may moralize as they please, we can hear them with

great composure; because thy steward will shew me thy accounts, and my factor will entertain thee with mine; I shall hear of nothing but thy profusion, and thou wilt see nothing but mine. This will be admirable sport!'

A thousand bright strokes succeeded this sally, and mightily diverted the young lords, who conversed together with a great deal of vivacity; until their discourse was interrupted by Gregorio Rodriguez, who returned with a little old man almost quite bald. Don Antonio would have gone away, saying, 'Adieu, Don Matthias, I shall see you by and by: at present you have, doubtless, some serious affair to discuss with these gentlemen.'—'O, not at all,' replied my master; 'stay, it is no secret. That discreet old person whom you see, is an honest man, who lends me money at the rate of twenty per cent.'—'How! twenty per cent.!' cried Centelles, with an air of astonishment; 'egad, I congratulate thee upon being in such good hands! I am not so kindly dealt with, and may say that I purchase silver at the price of gold: I commonly borrow at the rate of forty in the hundred.'—'Heavens! what extortion!' exclaimed the old usurer; 'do these knaves ever think of another world? I am not at all surprized at the hue and cry raised against people who lend upon interest. It is the exorbitant profit which some exact, that ruins our honour and reputation: if all my brethren were like me, we should not be so much reviled; for my sole view in lending, is to befriend my fellow-creatures. Ah! if times were as they have been, I would offer you my purse without interest; and truly, in spite of the present scarcity, I can scarce prevail upon myself to take twenty per cent. But, for my part, I believe money has retired again within the bowels of the earth: there is no such thing to be had; for which reason, I am obliged to retrench my benevolence. How much do you want?' added he, addressing himself to my master. 'I must have two hundred pistoles,' replied Don Matthias. 'Here are four hundred in a bag,' said the usurer; 'you shall have one half.' So saying, he pulled from under his cloak, a blue bag,

bag, which seemed to be the very same which the peasant Talego had left with the five hundred pistoles, in the hands of Rodriguez. I soon knew what to think of the matter; and found that Melendez had not praised the steward's understanding without cause. The old man having emptied the bag on the table, began to count the money; my master was inflamed with desire of possession at the sight; and, struck with the totality of the sum, said to the usurer, 'Signior Discomulgado, I have made a very wise reflection, truly! What a fool I am to borrow no more than what is absolutely necessary to disengage my parole, without considering that I have not a penny in my purse! I shall be obliged to have recourse to you to-morrow; therefore, to spare you the trouble of coming back, I think it will not be amiss to pocket the whole four hundred.' — 'My lord,' said the usurer, 'a part of this money was designed for a good licentiate, who has some fat benefices, which he charitably employs in persuading young girls to retire from the world, and in furnishing their retreats. But since you have occasion for the whole sum, it is at your service: all that I desire, is sufficient security.' — 'Oh! as for security,' said Rodriguez, interrupting him, and taking a paper out of his pocket, 'you shall be satisfied; here is an order to be signed by Don Matthias, for five hundred pistoles, upon one of his tenants, called Talego, a rich farmer of Mondejan.' — 'Very well,' replied the usurer, 'I never make many words.' Upon which, the steward presented a pen to his master; who, without reading the order, set his name to the bottom, whistling all the while.

This affair being ended, the old man took his leave of my patron, who ran and embraced him, saying, 'Till our next meeting, Signior Usurer, I am wholly yours: I don't know why people of your profession are branded with the name of rogues; for my own part, I think you are very necessary and serviceable to society; you are the consolation of a thousand heirs, and the resource of all those lords whose expence exceeds their income.' — 'Thou art in the right,' cried Centelles; 'usurers are very honest people,

whom we never can honour enough. I will, in my turn, embrace this gentleman, on account of his twenty per cent.' With these words, he approached, and hugged the old man; and these two beaus, for their diversion, began to push him backward and forward to one another, like a ball between two tennis-players. After he had been tossed to and fro a good while, they let him go with the steward, who was more deserving than he of their embraces, and of something else also.

Rodriguez and his undertrapper being gone, Don Matthias sent the half of his pistoles to the Countess of Pedrosa, by the footman who was present, and secured the rest in a long embroidered silk purse, which he commonly wore in his pocket. Very well satisfied with seeing himself in cash, he said to Don Antonio, with a gay air, 'What shall we do to-day? Let us consult about it.' — 'You speak like a sensible man,' replied Centelles: 'with all my heart, let us deliberate.' While they were considering how to spend the day, two other lords arrived: these were Don Alexo Segiar, and Don Fernando de Gamboa, both of them about the age of my master, that is, between eight and twenty and thirty. These four cavaliers, at meeting, hugged one another so heartily, that one would have thought they had not met for ten years before; then Don Fernando, who was a jovial companion, addressing himself to Don Matthias and Don Antonio, said, 'Gentlemen, where do you intend to dine to-day? If you are not engaged, I'll conduct you to a tavern, where you shall drink nectar. I supped there last night, and left it only this morning, between five and six o'clock.' — 'Would to Heaven,' cried my master, 'that I had done the same! in which case, I should not have lost my money.'

'As for me,' said Centelles, 'I treated myself last night with a new diversion; for I love variety in my pleasures, which alone makes life agreeable. A friend of mine carried me to the house of a farmer of the revenue, a gentleman who does his own business, together with that of the state. There I saw magnificence and taste, the entertainment being elegant enough. But I was mightily diverted

‘diverted with the ridiculous behaviour of the tax-gatherer himself, who, though the most plebeian of his class, assumed the man of quality: and his wife, though horribly ugly, affected the airs of a beauty; and said a thousand silly things, seasoned with the Biscayan accent, which rendered them still more remarkably foolish. Besides, there were at table four or five children, with their tutor; so that you may easily conceive how I was diverted with this family-supper.’

‘And I, gentlemen,’ said Don Alexo Segiar, ‘supped at the house of Arsenia the actress. We were six in all; Arsenia, Florimonda, with a coquette of her acquaintance, the Marquis of Zeneta, Don Juan of Moncada, and your humble servant. We spent the night in drinking and speaking bawdy. Heavens! what pleasure! It is true, indeed, Arsenia and Florimonda have not much genius, but their wantonness supplies the place of wit. They are merry, brisk, romping creatures; and I love them a thousand times better than your precise women of sense.’

CHAP. IV.

HOW GIL BLAS BECAME ACQUAINTED WITH THE VALETS OF THE BEAUS. THE ADMIRABLE SECRET THEY IMPARTED TO HIM, OF ACQUIRING THE REPUTATION OF A MAN OF WIT, AT A SMALL EXPENCE; AND THE SINGULAR OATH WHICH THEY OBLIGED HIM TO TAKE.

IN this manner did these lords continue the conversation, until Don Matthias, whom, in the mean time, I helped to dress, was ready to go abroad. Then he bade me follow him; and all the beaus together set out for the tavern to which Don Fernando de Gamboa had proposed to conduct them. As I walked in the rear, in company with three other valets, (for each of the cavaliers had one) I observed, not without wonder, that these three domesticks copied the air and manner of their respective masters. Having saluted them as their new comrade, they returned the civility; and one among them, after

having observed me some minutes, said, ‘Brother, I perceive that you have never as yet served a young lord.’—‘No, indeed,’ answered I; ‘it is not long since I came to Madrid.’—‘So I suppose,’ replied he; ‘you smell strong of the country; you seem timorous and awkward, and there is a stiffness in your behaviour: but no matter; we will soon polish you, take my word.’—‘I am afraid you flatter me,’ said I to him. ‘Not at all,’ he replied; ‘if you was the greatest blockhead in the universe, we shall be able to make you pass, you may depend upon it.’

This was enough to make me understand that my confederates were brave lads, and that I could not be in better hands, in order to become a pretty fellow. When we arrived at the tavern, we found an entertainment ready, which Signior Don Fernando had the precaution to bespeak in the morning; our masters sat down to table, and we stood ready to serve them: then they began to talk with such gaiety, that I was delighted to hear them. I was very much diverted with their different characters, thoughts, and expressions; their fire, their sallies of imagination, made me believe them a new species of men! When the desert was upon the table, we brought in a great number of bottles of the best Spanish wine, and left them, to go and dine by ourselves in a little hall, where the cloth was laid on purpose.

I soon perceived that the knights, my companions, had more merit than I at first imagined: they not only assumed the manners of their masters, but even affected their very language; and these rascals succeeded so well, that (the quality air excepted) there was no difference; I admired their free and easy deportment; was charmed with their wit, and despaired of ever being so agreeable. The valet of Don Fernando (because his master treated ours) performed the honours of the banquet; and that nothing might be wanting, called the landlord, saying, ‘Master Andrew Mantuano, give us ten bottles of your very best wine, and, according to custom, add them to my master’s bill.’—‘With all my heart,’ replied the landlord; ‘but, Mr. Gaspard, you know that Signior Don Fernand owes me a good many

'many entertainments already; and if by your means I could touch a little money—' 'Oh!' said the valet, interrupting him, 'give yourself no trouble about what he owes you; I'll answer for it, my master's debts are as good as gold: it is true, indeed, some unmannerly creditors have seized our rents; but we shall obtain a replevy very soon, and then we shall discharge your bill without so much as examining the articles.' Mantuano brought the wine, notwithstanding the rents being seized; and we drank it in expectation of a replevy. It was a good jest to see us, every moment, toasting one another, under the surnames of our masters: Don Antonio's valet giving the name of Gamboa to Don Fernando's servant, and Don Fernando's footman honouring Don Antonio's valet with that of Centelles; they called me Silva; and by degrees we got as drunk under those borrowed names as our masters, to whom they properly belonged.

Though I did not shine so much as my companions, they did not fail to express their approbation of me.—'Silva,' said one of the archest among them, 'we shall make something of thee, my friend: I perceive thou hast a fund of genius, but dost not know how to use it to advantage. The fear of speaking nonsense hinders thee from talking at a venture; and yet, by this alone, a thousand people now-a-days acquire the reputation of wits. If thou hast a mind to shine, give the rein to thy vivacity, and indifferently risque every thing that comes uppermost. Thy blunders will pass for a noble boldness; and if, after having uttered a thousand impertinences, one witticism escapes thee, the silly things will be forgot, the lucky thought will be remembered, and the world will conceive an high opinion of thy merit. This is what our masters practise with such success; and what every man must do, who aspires to the reputation of a distinguished wit.'

Besides that I was but too fond of passing for a fine genius, the secret which he had disclosed to me seemed so easy, that I was resolved not to neglect it. I put it instantly to the proof, and the wine I had drank con-

tributed to it's success; that is, I spoke at random, and had the good fortune to throw out, among a great deal of nonsense, some flashes of wit, by which I acquired great applause. This *coup d'essai* filled me with confidence: I collected all my vivacity to produce some bright sally, and chance befriended me in the attempt.

'Well,' said he who spoke to me in the street, 'don't you begin to get rid of your rust? Thou hast not been two hours in our company, and art already quite another man. Thou wilt improve visibly every day. See what it is to serve people of quality: it elevates the mind; while the being valet to citizens has a quite contrary effect.'—'Doubtless,' answered I; 'and therefore I will henceforth consecrate my service to the nobility.'—'That's nobly said!' cried Don Fernando's valet, half-seas over; 'it does not belong to your citizens to possess such superior geniuses as we are. Come, therefore, gentlemen,' added he, 'let us take an oath never to serve such rascallions, and swear to it by the river Styx.' We laughed heartily at Gaspard's conceit, which we approved of very much, and took the burlesque oath with our glasses in our hands.

Thus we continued at table until our masters were pleased to retire, which was about midnight; a circumstance which my companions looked upon as an excess of sobriety. It is true, indeed, these young lords left the tavern in such good time, only with a view to visit a famous coquette, who lived in the court end of the town, and kept open house for your men of pleasure by night as well as by day. She was between thirty and forty years old, still extremely handsome, agreeable, and so consummate in the art of pleasing, that (it was said) she sold the remains of her beauty at a higher price than that which she had received for it's first-fruits. There were always in her house two or three other courtezans of the first rank, who contributed not a little to the great concourse of lords who frequented it. They went to play in the afternoon, then supped, and spent the night in drinking and making merry. Here our masters staid till morning, and we also, without feeling the time lie heavy on our hands; for while they

diverted

diverted themselves with the mistresses, we amused ourselves with the maids; and at last departed all together at break of day, every one going to bed at his own home.

My master, getting up as usual about noon, dressed himself, and went out. I followed him to the house of Don Antonio Centelles, where we found one Don Alvaro de Acunha, an old gentleman, and professed rake. All the young sparks who had an ambition to become fine gentlemen, put themselves under his tuition; by which they were formed for pleasure, taught to make a figure in the world, and to spend their fortunes with a good grace; he himself being under no apprehension of squandering away his own, which was gone long ago. These three cavaliers having saluted one another, Centelles said to my master, 'Faith, Don Matthias, thou couldst not come at a better time; Don Alvaro is going to carry me to the house of a citizen who has invited the Marquis of Zenta and Don Juan de Moncado to dinner, and thou shalt be of the party.'—'What is the name of this citizen?' said Don Matthias. 'He is called Gregorio de Noriega,' replied Don Alvaro; 'and I will, in two words, give you a character of the man. His father, who is a rich jeweller, having gone abroad to negotiate his affairs, left him the enjoyment of a large income; but Gregorio is a fool, who has a disposition prone to spend his estate; in doing which, he affects the beau, and would fain pass for a man of spirit, in despite of nature. As he begged me to take him under my direction, I govern him at present; and I can assure you, gentlemen, he is in a fair way; his finances being already pretty well sunk.'—'I don't at all doubt it,' cried Centelles: 'I see him already at the workhouse. Come, Don Matthias, let us make an acquaintance with him, that we may have some share in his ruin.'—'With all my heart,' replied my master; 'I love dearly to see the fortune of these little upstart gentlemen overturned, because they vainly pretend to rival us in splendor. Nothing, for example, ever gave me so much diversion as the misfortune of that publican's son, who was, by his inclination for play, and his

'vanity in apeing the great, obliged to sell all, to his very house.'—'Oh! as for him,' said Don Antonio, 'he deserves no compassion; for he is as great a coxcomb in his adversity as he was in high life.'

Centelles and my master repairing with Don Alvaro to the house of Gregorio de Noriega, Mogicon and I went thither also; both of us ravished to find a feast going forward, and to have an opportunity of contributing, on our parts, to the ruin of a citizen. As we went in, we perceived several people busy in dressing the dinner; and the ragouts they were preparing sent forth a savoury steam, that very much prepossessed the smell in favour of the taste. The Marquis of Zeneta and Don Juan of Moncado arrived; and the entertainer seemed to be a great booby, who attempted in vain to assume the carriage of a beau, being a very bad copy of those excellent originals, or rather a downright simpleton, who affected an air of understanding. Imagine to yourself a man of this character in the midst of five wags, whose sole aim was to exercise their raillery upon him, and engage him in insupportable expence. 'Gentlemen,' said Don Alvaro, after the first compliments, 'I present to you Signior Gregorio de Noriega, as a compleat cavalier. Besides a thousand other excellent qualifications, he possesses an understanding so exquisitely cultivated, that you cannot take him amiss. He is equally strong on all subjects, from the most close and subtle logic down to the art of spelling.'—'Oh, now you flatter me!' said the citizen, interrupting him with a very foolish laugh: 'Signior Alvaro, I may with more justice return the compliment; for you are, as one may say, a very draw-well of erudition.'—'I had no design,' replied Don Alvaro, 'to fish for such a genteel repartee; but, upon my word, gentlemen, Signior Gregorio cannot fail of acquiring great reputation in the world.'—'For my own part,' said Don Antonio, 'what I am most charmed with, and what I greatly prefer to his knowledge in orthography, is the judicious choice he makes of his company: instead of confining himself to the conversation of citizens, he cultivates acquaintance with

‘with none but young lords, without giving himself any trouble about the expence attending it. There is in this conduct an elevation of sentiment; and it may be called spending one’s money with taste and discernment.’

These ironical phrases were followed by a thousand more of the same sort, and poor Gregorio was spared by none of them; each of the beaux, in his turn, breaking his jest, the meaning of which the fool did not perceive: on the contrary, he took every thing in a literal sense, and appeared very happy in his guests; nay, he seemed even pleased with being turned into ridicule; and, in short, served them as a butt during the whole time of dinner. They staid with him the remaining part of the day, and all night long, whilst we drank at discretion as well as our masters; and by that time they took leave of the citizen, we were all in an excellent trim.

CHAP. V.

GIL BLAS SETS UP FOR A MAN OF GALLANTRY, AND BECOMES ACQUAINTED WITH A FINE LADY.

AFTER having refreshed myself with some hours of sleep, I got up in good humour; and remembering the advice I had received from Melendez, went (my master not being yet awake) and presented my respects to the steward, whose vanity seemed not a little flattered with this instance of my regard. He received me very graciously; and asked if I was not familiarized to the way of living practised among young noblemen. I replied, that though it was quite new to me as yet, I did not despair of being reconciled to it in time.

And truly this happened very soon; for my humour and disposition suffered a thorough change. From being sedate and pensive, I became a brisk, blundering coxcomb; and the valet of Don Antonio complimented me on my metamorphosis, saying, that there was now nothing wanting to make me illustrious but an intrigue; which he affirmed was absolutely necessary towards finishing the character of a pretty fellow; all our comrades being be-

loved by some fair lady, and he alone being in possession of the good graces of no less than two women of quality. I believed the rogue told a lye, and said to him, ‘Monsieur Mogicon, to be sure, you are a handsome young fellow, and have a great deal of wit and merit; but I cannot conceive how ladies of quality (especially as you don’t live among such) can allow themselves to be charmed by a man of your condition.’—‘Why, truly,’ said he, ‘they don’t know who I am. I make all my conquests in the dress, and even in the name of my master. I’ll tell you how: I dress myself like a young nobleman; I assume his behaviour, and go out to take the air; I ogle all the women I see, until I meet with one who returns the leer; her I follow, and find means to speak with. I call myself Don Antonio de Centelles, and demand an assignation; upon which the lady stands upon ceremony: I press her to comply; she yields, *et cetera*. By this conduct, my child,’ added he, ‘I have succeeded in my intrigues; and I advise thee to follow my example.’

I was too ambitious of making a figure, not to listen to this advice, and besides felt no aversion to a love intrigue: I therefore resolved to disguise myself like a young nobleman, and go in quest of amorous adventures; but as I durst not dress myself in our house, for fear of being observed, I took a rich suit of cloaths from my master’s wardrobe, and making it up into a bundle, carried it to the house of a little barber, a friend of mine; where I thought I could dress and undress with more convenience. There I adorned myself to the best of my power, the barber lending me an helping hand, in order to set me off; and when we imagined it was impossible to add any thing to my appearance, I walked towards St. Jerome’s Meadow, from whence I was persuaded I should not return without having found some intrigue to my liking: but before I was obliged to go so far from home, I started one of a very brilliant expectation.

As I was crossing a by-street, I saw a lady richly dressed, and perfectly genteel, come out of a small house, and get into a hackney-coach that stood be-

fore the door; upon which, stopping short to gaze, I bowed to her in such a manner, as to inform her that I was not at all disgusted at her appearance; and she, to let me see she deserved my notice still more than I imagined, lifted up her veil for a moment, and presented a most agreeable countenance to my view: mean while the coach drove off, and I remained in the street, not a little struck with this apparition. 'What a charming figure!' said I to myself. 'Bless me! this is just what I wanted, to compleat my character. If the two ladies who are in love with Mogicon are as handsome as this, I pronounce him a lucky knave. I should be charmed with my fate, had I such a mistress.'

While I made these reflections, I cast my eyes by accident towards the house from whence I had seen this lovely creature come out, and perceived, at a parlour window, an old gentlewoman who beckoned me to come in.

I flew into the house in an instant, and found, in a pretty handsome parlour, this venerable and discreet matron; who, taking me for a marquis at least, saluted me with great respect, saying, 'I don't at all doubt, Signior, that you have conceived a very bad opinion of a woman who, without being acquainted with you, beckons you into her house; but perhaps you will think more favourably of me, when you shall know that I don't treat every body in the same manner. But you, I suppose, are a court lord.'—'You are not mistaken, my soul,' said I, stretching out my right leg, and poizing my body on my left hip; 'I am, without vanity, of one of the best families in Spain.'—'I thought so, by your appearance,' she replied; 'and I own, I love to oblige people of quality: that is my foible. I observed you through the window, looking very earnestly (as I suppose) at a lady who had just parted from me. Have you a passion for her? tell me sincerely.'—'Upon the faith of a courtier,' answered I, 'she has captivated me. I never saw any thing more tempting than that creature. Bring us together, my good mother, and depend upon my acknowledgment: such good offices rendered to us grandees, seldom pass unrecompensed.'

'I have already told you,' replied the old gentlewoman, 'that I am wholly devoted to people of quality, and delight in being useful to them. I admit into my house, for instance, certain ladies, whom the exterior of virtue hinder from receiving their gallants at home; therefore I accommodate them with my house, in order to reconcile the warmth of their complexions with the rules of decency.'—'Very well,' said I to her; 'and I suppose you have granted that favour to the lady in question?'—'No,' she replied; 'this lady is a young widow of quality, who wants a lover; but she is so nice in that particular, that I don't know if you yourself will please her, notwithstanding your extraordinary merit: I have already presented to her three stout cavaliers, whom she treated with disdain.'—'Adzooks, my dear!' cried I, with an air of assurance, 'thou hast no more to do, but to put me on the scent. I will give thee a good account of her, believe me. I long to have a tête à tête with a shy beauty, having never as yet met with one of that character.'—'Well,' said the old lady; 'if you come hither to-morrow, about this time, your curiosity may be satisfied.'—'I will not fail,' answered I; 'and we shall see whether or not a young nobleman, such as I, may taste the pleasure of a conquest.'

I returned to the house of the little barber, without desiring any other adventures, but very impatient to see the issue of this. Next day, therefore, having been at great pains to set myself off, I repaired to the old gentlewoman's house, an hour before the appointment. 'Signior,' said she, 'I see you are punctual, and am glad of it; for you will find it well worth your trouble. I have seen your young widow, and have had some discourse with her about you. She has forbid me to speak; but I have conceived such a friendship for you, that I cannot hold my tongue. You have had the good fortune to make an impression on her heart, and will be happy very soon. Between you and me, the lady is a delicious morsel; her husband lived with her but a very short time; he fled away, as it were, like a shadow; so that she is

‘as good as a maiden.’ The good matron, doubtless, meant one of those sprightly maidens, who know how to enjoy life without the incumbrance of matrimony.

In a little time, the heroine of the assignation arrived in a stage-coach, as she had done the day before, adorned with all the pomp of dress. As soon as she appeared in the hall, I began by five or six a-la-mode bows, accompanied with their most fashionable contortions; after which, I approached her with a very familiar air, saying, ‘My princess, behold a young nobleman who is enrapt with your beauty. Your image, since yesterday, has incessantly presented itself to my imagination, and expelled a dutchess, who had begun to get footing in my heart.’—‘The triumph,’ answered she, taking off her veil, ‘is too glorious for me, and yet I do not perfectly enjoy it; for you young noblemen are prone to change; and your hearts, they say, more difficult to keep than quicksilver.’—‘But, my queen,’ I replied, ‘let us mind the present only, and let futurity shift for itself: you are handsome, and I amorous; and, if you approve of my passion, let us engage without any farther reflection, and embark like sailors, who think only of the pleasures, without perceiving the perils of their voyage.’

So saying, I threw myself, in a transport, at the feet of my nymph; and, the better to imitate the beaux, pressed her, in a petulant manner, to make me happy. She seemed a little moved by my entreaties, but thought it was too soon to yield; therefore, pushing me gently from her, ‘Hold,’ said she; ‘you are too forward, and have the air of a libertine; I am afraid you are no better than a downright rake.’—‘O fy, Madam!’ cried I, ‘sure you cannot hate what all ladies of fashion love: none but tradesmen’s wives exclaim against libertinism.’—‘You are certainly in the right,’ she replied; ‘and I cannot resist such a convincing reason. It is in vain, I find, to use grimace with noblemen like you; and the women must advance one half of the way. Know then your victory;’ added she, with an appearance of confusion, as if her modesty suffered in the confession: ‘you have inspired me with sentiments which I

never felt before, and I want only to know who you are, that I may determine to chuse you for my lover. I believe you are a young lord, and moreover a man of honour. But of this I am not assured; and howsoever I may be prepossessed in your favour, I am resolved not to bestow my affection on a person unknown.’

It was then I remembered the expedient of Don Antonio’s valet, on the same occasion; and, after his example, having a mind to pass for my master, ‘Madam,’ said I to my widow, ‘I will not refuse to tell you my name, which I need not be ashamed to own;—did you never hear of Don Matthias de Silva?’—‘Yes,’ she replied; ‘I have even seen him at the house of a lady, an acquaintance of mine.’ Although I was pretty well stocked with impudence, this answer disconcerted me a good deal; however, I recollected myself in an instant, and making an effort of genius, to extricate myself, ‘Well, then, my angel,’ said I, ‘you know a lord whom—I know also. Since you must have it, I am one of the same family; his grandfather married my grand uncle’s sister-in-law: so that you see we are very nearly related. My name is Don Cæsar, and I am the only son of the illustrious Don Fernand de Ribera, who was slain fifteen years ago, in a battle that was fought on the frontiers of Portugal. I could describe the action, which was hellishly hot; but that would be losing the precious moments which love prompts us to employ in a more agreeable manner.’

After this discourse, I became more pressing and passionate; but all to little effect; the favours which my goddess bestowed upon me, only serving to make me sigh after those which she refused; but though the barbarous creature got into her coach, that waited at the door, I went home very well satisfied with my good fortune, although I was not yet perfectly happy. ‘If,’ said I to myself, ‘I have not been able to obtain the height of my wishes, it is because my princess is a lady of rank and delicacy, who thinks it indecent to yield to my transports during the first interview. The pride of her birth has retarded my happiness; which, however, is only delayed for a few days.’ Not but

that I had likewise some suspicions, that the whole affair was a well-concerted trick. But I loved to consider it in the most favourable point of view, and to preserve the advantageous opinion I had conceived of the lady, with whom I had agreed to meet again next day; the hope of accomplishing my wishes giving me a taste, by anticipation, of the pleasures I expected to enjoy.

With my fancy full of these smiling images, I returned to the house of my barber, where I changed my dress, and went to wait upon my master at a tennis-court, where I knew he was. I found him engaged in play, and even perceived that he had been lucky: for he was none of those phlegmatick gamers, who enrich or ruin themselves without changing a feature. In his prosperity, he was full of insulting railery; but very morose, when fortune declared against him. Leaving the tennis-court in great good-humour, he went directly to the Prince's Theatre, and I followed him to the playhouse door, where giving me a ducat, 'Here, 'Gil Blas,' said he, 'since I have been 'lucky, thou shalt feel the effects of 'it; go and enjoy thyself with thy 'companions; and, about midnight, 'come to me at the house of Arsenia, 'where I am to sup with Don Alexo 'Segiar.' So saying, he went in, and I remained thinking how I should spend my ducat, according to the intention of the donor. I was not long in suspense. Clarino, Don Alexo's valet, appeared all of a sudden, and I carried him to the next tavern, where we regaled ourselves till twelve o'clock; and from thence repaired together to the house of Arsenia, where he was likewise ordered to rendezvous. A little lacquey opened the door, and introduced us into a parlour, where the waiting-women of Arsenia and Florimonda sat together, laughing as if for a wager, while their mistresses entertained our masters above.

The arrival of two merry fellows, who had supped to their satisfaction, could not be disagreeable to chambermaids, especially to those of the actresses; but what was my astonishment, when, in the person of one of them, I beheld my widow, my adorable widow, whom I believed a marchioness or countess! She seemed no less surprized

at seeing her Don Cesar de Ribera metamorphosed into the valet de chambre of a beau: however, we observed one another without being disconcerted; and both, at one time, were seized with such a violent inclination to laugh, that we could not help indulging it. After which Laura (so was my princess called) taking me aside, while Clarino made up to her companion, very graciously presented her hand, saying, softly, 'Take it, Don Cesar; instead 'of reproaching, let us compliment 'one another, my friend; you performed your part to admiration; and 'I did not behave amiss in mine. 'What say you? confess that you 'took me for one of those fine ladies 'of quality, who amuse themselves 'with intrigues.'—'It is true,' answered I; 'but whosoever you are, my 'queen, I have not changed my sentiments with my dress: I beg you 'will accept my services, and allow the 'valet de chambre of Don Matthias 'to finish that which Don Cesar had 'so happily begun.'—'Yes,' said she; 'I love thee still better in thy own 'character, than in that of another: 'thou art just such a man as I am a 'woman; and that is the strongest approbation I can bestow. I therefore 'receive thee into the crowd of my 'adorers; we shall have no more occasion for the ministry of the old 'woman; for thou mayest come hither with the utmost freedom: we 'ladies of the stage live without constraint, and helter-skelter with the 'men. The effects of this communication are sometimes very visible indeed; but the town laughs at them; and our business, thou knowest, is to 'divert it.'

Here we broke off, because there were others present, and the conversation became general, sprightly, joyous, and full of palpable *double entendres*. Every one bore a part; Arsenia's maid in particular, my lovely Laura, shone very much, and shewed a great deal more wit than virtue. On the other hand, our masters and the actresses often burst out into long fits of laughter, which we overheard; and from which we concluded, that their discourse was much of the same stamp with our own. If all the fine things which were said that night at Arsenia's had been committed to writing, they would have composed,

composed, I believe, a treatise very instructive for youth. In the mean time, the hour of retreat, that is, the dawn arrived, and we were obliged to part. Clarino followed Don Alexo, and I went home with Don Matthias.

CHAP. VI.

THE CONVERSATION OF SOME NOBLEMEN, ABOUT THE PLAYERS OF THE PRINCE'S COMPANY.

THAT day, while my master was dressing, he received a billet from Don Alexo Segiar, desiring his company at his house, whither he went; and found with him the Marquis of Zeneta, and another young nobleman of a good mien, whom I had never seen before. 'Don Matthias,' said Segiar to my master, presenting the unknown cavalier, 'this is Don Pompeio de Castro, a relation of mine, who has been at the court of Portugal almost from his infancy; he arrived at Madrid last night, and will set out to-morrow for Lisbon: so that, as he can spare me only one day, I am resolved to enjoy the precious opportunity; and, in order to make it the more agreeable to him, have called you and the Marquis of Zeneta to my assistance.' Upon this, my master and Don Alexo's kinsman embraced and complimented one another; and I was much pleased with the discourse of Don Pompeio, who seemed to have a great share of judgment and penetration.

Having dined at Segiar's, these noblemen amused themselves at cards, till the hour of going to the play; and then went all together to the Prince's Theatre, to see a new tragedy, intitled, *The Queen of Carthage*. After the representation of the piece, they returned, and supped where they had dined. The conversation, at first, turned on the piece they had seen performed, and afterwards upon the actors. 'As for the work itself,' cried Don Matthias, 'I have no great opinion of it; it makes Æneas still more insipid than he is represented in the Æneid; but every body must agree it was divinely played.—What says Signior Don Pompeio? he does not seem to be of my way of thinking.—

'Gentlemen,' said that cavalier smiling, 'I have perceived you so much charmed with your players, and, in particular with your actresses, that I ought not to be so bold as to signify my dissent from your opinions.'—'You are much in the right,' said Don Alexo in a jocular manner; 'your censures will be very unseasonable here; and you ought to shew some respect for our actresses before us, who are the trumpets of their reputation. As we drink with them every day, we can do no less than warrant them perfect in their vocation; and even give them certificates, if there be occasion for it.'—'I do not at all doubt it,' answered his relation, 'and I dare say, you would do the same for their morals, so much are you their friends.'

'Your comedians at Lisbon,' said the Marquis of Zeneta, with a sneer, 'are, doubtless, much better than ours.'—'Yes, certainly,' replied Don Pompeio; 'at least, there are some of them who have no defect.'—'And these,' resumed the Marquis, 'may depend upon your certificate.'—'I have no connection with them,' said Don Pompeio; 'and as I never enter into their parties of pleasure, can judge of their merit without prejudice. But do you really,' added he, 'think your company so excellent?'—'No, faith!' said the Marquis; 'I believe no such thing: and provided you give me leave to defend a very small number of the players, I will willingly give up all the rest. Won't you allow that she who played the part of Dido, is an admirable actress? did she not represent that queen with all the dignity and grace which is conformable to the idea we have of her? and did not you admire her art in engaging the mind of the spectator, and making him feel the emotions of all those passions that are expressed? She may be said to be consummately skilled in all the refinements of declamation.'—'I agree,' said Don Pompeio, 'that she knows how to awake and touch the passions of the audience; no player had ever more feeling, and, on the whole, her representation is very fine; but she is far from being a perfect actress: I was shocked with two or three things in her performance. When she would
'express

express surprize, she rolls her eyes in such an extravagant manner, as very ill becomes the deportment of a princess. Add to this, that in raising her voice, which is naturally low, she corrupts the sweetness of it, and produces a very disagreeable croaking: besides, in more places than one, she gave reason to suspect that she did not very well understand her part; but, however, I am inclined to impute this rather to inattention than want of capacity.

By what I can see, said Don Matthias to the critick, you will scarce write a panegyrick on our actresses. — Pardon me, replied Don Pompeio, I can discover great talents through their defects. I own, I was enchanted with that actress who performed the part of a chambermaid in the interludes; she has a fine genius, treads the stage gracefully, and every witticism she utters is seasoned with a sarcastick smile, full of charms, which very much enhances the value of what is said. She may, indeed, be blamed for indulging her fire, sometimes, a little too much, and transgressing the bounds of modest assurance: but we must not be too severe; and I could only wish that she would correct one bad habit she has contracted. Oft-times, in the middle of a serious scene, she interrupts the performance all of a sudden, by yielding to a silly desire of laughing, with which she is seized. You'll say she is applauded by the pit, even at these times: there, I own, she is lucky.

Well, what do you think of the men? said the Marquis, interrupting him, surely you'll charge them full volley, since you have been so unmerciful to the women. — No, said Don Pompeio; I think you have some promising young actors; and am particularly pleased with that fat comedian who acted the part of Dido's prime minister: he repeats very naturally, and declaims just as they do in Portugal. — If he can please you, said Segiar, you must be charmed with the action of him who played the part of Æneas. Is not he a great comedian! an original! — Very original, replied the critick; his cadence is quite peculiar, and his tones abundantly shrill: he almost

always deserts nature; hurries over the words which contain the sentiment, and places the emphasis where it should not be; making pauses even on articles and conjunctions. He diverted me very much; particularly when he expressed to his confident the violence he did himself in abandoning the princess; never was grief more comically expressed. — Softly, cousin, replied Don Alexo; thou wilt make us believe, by and by, that there is not a great deal of taste at the court of Portugal. Dost thou know that the actor of whom we speak is reckoned a phoenix? Didst thou not hear what claps of applause he obtained? A plain proof that he is far from being contemptible. — That is no proof at all, answered Don Pompeio: gentlemen, added he, let us not, I beg of you, lay any stress upon the applause of the pit, which is often bestowed very unseasonably; nay, more seldom on true merit than on false, as Phædrus observes, by an ingenious fable, which I beg leave to repeat. Here it is. —

The inhabitants of a certain city being assembled in publick to see pantomimes, there was, among the performers, a favourite actor whom they applauded every moment. This buffoon having a mind to close the scene with a new kind of representation, appeared alone upon the stage, stooped down, covered his head with his cloak, and squeaking like a pig, acquitted himself so well, that the audience actually imagined he had one under his cloaths: they ordered him therefore to strip; which he having done, and nothing appearing the whole assembly thundered applause. A peasant, who happened to be one of the spectators, shocked at these expressions of admiration, cried, Gentlemen, you have little cause to be charmed with that buffoon, who is not such an exquisite actor as you imagine: I can play the pig better than he; and, if you doubt it, come hither again tomorrow at this hour. The people, prepossessed in favour of their pantomimes, re-assembled next day in greater numbers, rather to hiss the peasant than see what he could do. The two rivals appearing on the stage, the buffoon began, and was ap-

“ applauded more than ever : then the countryman stooping in his turn, and muffling his head in his cloak, pinched the ear of a real pig, which he held under his arm, and made it squeak most piercingly : nevertheless, the audience gave the preference to the pantomime ; and hooted the peasant, who all of a sudden producing the pig to the spectators, “ Gentlemen,” said he, “ it is not me whom you hiss, but this poor pig himself ; such excellent judges you are ! ”

“ Cousin,” said Alexo, “ thy fable is too severe : but notwithstanding thy pig, we will not give up our opinion. Let us change the discourse,” added he ; “ I am tired of this subject. So, thou wilt depart to-morrow, in spite of my desire to enjoy thy company a little longer ? ” — “ I wish I could make a longer stay in Madrid,” replied his kinsman ; “ but it is not in my power. I have told you already, that I came to the court of Spain about an affair of state ; and at my arrival yesterday, had an audience of the prime minister, whom I shall see again to-morrow morning ; immediately after which, I shall set out on my return to Lisbon.” — “ Thou art become altogether Portuguese,” said Segiar ; “ and, in all likelihood, wilt never return to live in Madrid.” — “ I believe I shall not,” answered Don Pompeio ; “ for I am so happy as to be beloved by the king of Portugal, and enjoy a great deal of pleasure at his court : but, notwithstanding his kindness to me, would you believe that I have been on the point of quitting his dominions for ever ? ” — “ Pray tell us the reason ! ” said Don Alexo. “ With all my heart,” answered Don Pompeio ; “ and at the same time, I will relate the story of my life.

CHAP. VII.

THE HISTORY OF DON POMPEIO DE CASTRO.

“ DON Alexo,” added he, “ knows, that while I was yet a boy, I resolved to carry arms ; and that seeing our own country in profound

peace, I went to Portugal, from whence I passed over into Africa, with the Duke of Braganza, who gave me employment in the army under his command. Being a younger brother, of very small fortune, I was under a necessity of signaling myself in such a manner as to attract the notice of the general ; and did my duty so well, that the duke promoted and put me in a condition to serve with honour. After a long war, the issue of which you all know, I attached myself to the court ; and the king, upon the recommendation of the general officers, gratified me with a considerable pension. Sensible of this monarch’s generosity, I lost no occasion of manifesting my gratitude by my assiduity ; and was always in attendance at those hours in which people are permitted to pay their respects ; by which behaviour, I insensibly acquired the love of that prince, who honoured me with new favours.

“ Having one day distinguished myself at the ring, and a bull-fight that preceded it, the whole court commended my strength and address ; and when I returned home, loaded with applause, I found a billet, importing, that a lady, the conquest of whom ought to flatter me more than all the honour I had that day acquired, wanted to converse with me ; and that I should, in the twilight, repair to a certain place that was described. This letter gave me more pleasure than all the praise I had received ; and I imagined that the person who wrote it, must be a lady of the first quality. You may easily guess, that I flew to the rendezvous, where an old woman being in waiting, to serve as a guide, introduced me, by a little garden door, into a great house, and shut me in a rich closet, saying, “ Stay here, until I inform my mistress of your arrival.” I perceived a great many curious things in this closet, which was enlightened by a great number of wax-candles ; but my sole view in considering it’s magnificence, was to confirm myself in the opinion I had already conceived of the lady’s rank. If all that I saw seemed to assure me she was a person of the first quality,

lity, when she appeared, I was convinced of it, by her noble and majestic air: nevertheless, I was mistaken.

"Signior Cavalier," said she, "after the advances I have made, it would be ridiculous to conceal the tender sentiments I have for you; which, however, were not inspired by that merit you have this day shewn before the whole court: that only has hastened the discovery; for I have seen you more than once, and enquired into your character; which pleases me so much, that I determined to follow my inclination. Do not imagine," added she, "that you have made a conquest of some dutches: I am no other than the widow of a simple officer of the king's guards: but what makes your victory still more glorious, is the preference I give you to one of the greatest lords of the kingdom. The Duke of Almeyda is in love with me, and spares nothing to inflame me with a mutual passion; but hitherto he has been unsuccessful, and I suffer his addresses only through vanity."

"Though I found by her discourse that I had to do with a coquette, I thought myself very much obliged to fortune for this adventure. Donna Hortensia (so was the lady called) was still in the prime of youth; and I was dazzled with her beauty: besides, she offered me the possession of a heart which would not yield to the addresses of a duke. What a triumph was this for a young Spanish cavalier! I accordingly threw myself at her feet, thanked her for her goodness, said all that a man of gallantry could utter on such an occasion, and she had reason to be satisfied with the transports of my gratitude. We parted the best friends in the world, after having agreed to see one another every night on which she should be disengaged from the Duke of Almeyda, and this she promised to advertise me of punctually; in which she did not fail; so that, in a word, I became the Adonis of this new Venus."

"But the pleasures of life are far from being eternal! Whatever measures the lady could take to conceal our correspondence from my rival,

he did not fail to get notice of the whole of what it was so much our interest to keep from his knowledge. A malecontent chambermaid informed him of the affair; and that lord, naturally generous, but withal haughty, jealous, and passionate, was incensed at my presumption: rage and jealousy took possession of his soul; and following the dictates of his fury, he resolved to avenge himself of me in an infamous manner. One night, while I was with Hortensia, he waited for me at the little garden-door, attended by all his footmen, armed with clubs; and as soon as I came out, making these wretches seize me, ordered them to cudgel me to death. "Strike," said he; "and let the audacious villain perish under your hands; for so I am resolved to punish his insolence." He had no sooner spoke these words, than his people assaulted me all together, and gave me so many blows, that I lay stretched upon the ground without sense or motion: after which they retired with their master, who had regaled himself with this cruel execution, and I remained as they left me during the rest of the night. At break of day, some people happened to pass, and perceiving still some life in me, were so charitable as to carry me to the house of a surgeon: luckily my wounds were not mortal, and I fell into the hands of a skilful artist, who made a perfect cure of me in two months; at the end of which time I repaired again to court, and resumed my former way of living; save that I never went back to Hortensia, who on her part took no step to see me again, because the duke, on these terms, had pardoned her infidelity.

"My adventure being universally known, and nobody suspecting my courage, every one was astonished to see me as tranquil as if I had not received an affront; for I imparted my thoughts to no man breathing, and seemed to be void of all resentment; so that people did not know what to think of my feigned insensibility. Some believed that, notwithstanding my courage, the rank of my antagonist kept me in awe, and obliged me to digest the injury; others, with more reason, suspected my silence,

and

and looked upon the peaceable appearance I put on, as a deceitful calm. Of this opinion was the king, who did not think me a person that would leave such an outrage unpunished; but believed that I would not fail to revenge myself as soon as I could find a favourable opportunity. That he might know whether or not he guessed my sentiments aright, he called me one day into his closet, where he said, "Don Pompeio, I know the accident which has happened to you; and am, I confess, surprized at your tranquillity, which must certainly be dissimulation."—"Sire," I replied, "I know not who was the aggressor, having been attacked in the dark by people unknown; so that I must console myself for the misfortune as well as I can."—"No, no," said the king; "you must not think to dupe me with that evasion, which is all dissembled: I have been informed of the whole affair; the Duke of Almeyda has given you a mortal affront. You are a gentleman, and a Castilian; and I know what these qualities oblige you to do. You have formed a resolution to avenge yourself. Communicate your scheme to me: I insist upon it—and don't be afraid that you shall have cause to repent of making me your confident."

"Since your Majesty," answered I, "commands it, I will discover my sentiments. Yes, Sire, I intend to take vengeance for the affront I have suffered. Every one who bears the name of a gentleman, is accountable for it to his family. You know the unworthy treatment I have received; and I purpose to assassinate the Duke of Almeyda, to revenge myself in a manner suitable to the offence. I will plunge a poniard in his breast, or shoot him through the head, and escape, if I can, into Spain. This is my design."—"It is a violent one," said the king; "nevertheless, I cannot condemn it, after the cruel outrage which the Duke of Almeyda has committed upon you: he is worthy of the chastisement you reserve for him; but do not execute your enterprize in a hurry. Leave it to me to find out an expedient for bring-

ing you to an accommodation."—"Ah, Sire!" cried I, very much disgrined; "why did you oblige me to reveal my secret? What expedient can—" "If I don't find one to your satisfaction," said he, interrupting me, "you may put your resolution in practice. I don't intend to abuse the confidence you have reposed in me, and will by no means betray your honour: so that you may make yourself easy on that score."

"I was greatly at a loss to know in what manner the king pretended to terminate this affair in an amicable manner: and this is the method he took. In a private conversation with the Duke of Almeyda, "My lord," said he, "you have injured Don Pompeio de Castro; and as you are not ignorant of his being a man of illustrious birth, and a gentleman whom I love on account of his faithful services, you ought to give him satisfaction."—"I am not of an humour to refuse it," answered the duke; "if he complains of my wrath, I am ready to do him justice in the field."—"You must give him another sort of reparation," replied the king. "A Spanish gentleman understands the point of honour too well, to fight openly with a secret assassin. I can give you no other name; and you cannot expiate the indignity of your action any other way, than by presenting your enemy with a cane, and submitting to a retaliation."—"O Heavens!" cried the duke; "what, Sire! would you have a man of my rank condescend to humble himself before a simple cavalier, and allow himself to be caned?"—"No," replied the monarch; "I will make Don Pompeio promise that he will not strike you. Only ask pardon for the violence you committed, and present him with a cane—that is all I expect of you."—"And that is too much to expect from me, Sir," said the duke, interrupting him hastily; "I will rather continue exposed to the secret shafts of his revenge."—"Your life is dear to me," said the king; "and my desire is, that this affair may have no bad consequences. To bring it to a

" conclusion the less disagreeably for
 " you, I will be the only witness to
 " that satisfaction which I insist on
 " your making to the Spaniard."

" The king had occasion for all
 " his power over the duke, to bring
 " him to this mortifying condescen-
 " sion. However, he succeeded; and
 " afterwards, sending for me, re-
 " counted the discourse he had with
 " my enemy, and asked if I would be
 " satisfied with the reparation agreed
 " upon between them. I answered in
 " the affirmative, and gave my word
 " and honour, that far from striking
 " the offender, I would not even ac-
 " cept of the cane he should present to
 " me. Things being regulated in this
 " manner, the duke and I, one day,
 " went at a certain hour to the king,
 " who shutting himself up with us in the
 " closet, " Come," said he to the duke,
 " acknowledge your fault, and deserve
 " to be forgiven." Upon this, my
 " enemy made his apology, and pre-
 " sented me with the cane which he
 " had in his hand. " Don Pompeo,"
 " said the monarch to me that instant,
 " take the cane, and let not my pre-
 " sence hinder you from satisfying
 " your injured honour: I acquit you
 " of the promise you made, not to
 " strike the duke."—"No, Sir," an-
 " swered I, " it is sufficient that he
 " submits to be beaten; an injured
 " Spaniard asks no more."—"Well,"
 " replied the king, " since you are
 " contented with that satisfaction, you
 " may now enjoy the privilege of a regu-
 " lar process: measure your swords,
 " and determine your quarrel like men
 " of honour."—"It is what I ardent-
 " ly desire!" cried the Duke of Al-
 " meyda, with precipitation, " and
 " that alone is capable of consoling
 " me for the shameful condescension I
 " have made."

" So saying, he went away full of
 " rage and confusion; and two hours
 " after sent to let me know that he
 " waited for me in a private place.
 " Thither I repaired, and found that
 " lord in a humour to fight heartily.
 " He was not quite forty, and wanted
 " neither courage nor skill, so that the
 " match was pretty equal. " Come,"
 " Don Pompeo," said he, " let us de-
 " cide our difference here: both of us
 " ought to be exasperated to the high-

" est pitch; you, for the treatment you
 " have received at my hands; and I,
 " for having asked your pardon."
 " With these words, he drew upon me
 " so suddenly, that I had no time to
 " make any reply, and pushed with
 " great vigour; but I had the good
 " fortune to parry all his thrusts, and
 " attacked him in my turn; when I
 " found I had to do with an antagonist
 " who knew how to defend as well
 " as to assault; and I don't know
 " what might have happened, if he had
 " not made a false step in retreating,
 " and fallen backward. I stooped im-
 " mediately, and bid him get up; and
 " he answered, " Why do you spare
 " me? I am injured by your pity."—"I
 " will not wrong my glory so
 " much," said I, " as to take the
 " advantage of your misfortune; get
 " up once more, and let us fight it
 " out."

" Don Pompeo," said he, rising,
 " after this instance of your generosity,
 " honour will not permit me to use my
 " sword against you. What would
 " the world say of me should I kill
 " you? I should be looked upon as a
 " coward, who had taken the life of a
 " person who had it in his power to
 " deprive me of mine. I can, there-
 " fore, no longer fight against you,
 " and I feel the warm transports of
 " gratitude succeed those furious emo-
 " tions which reigned within my
 " breast. Don Pompeo," added he,
 " let our mutual hatred cease: let us
 " even go farther, and be friends."—"Ah,
 " my lord," cried I, " I embrace the agreeable proposal with
 " joy! I vow the most sincere friend-
 " ship; and, as the first proof, pro-
 " mise never to set foot within the
 " door of Donna Hortensia, even tho'
 " she should desire to see me."—"It
 " is I," said he, " who must yield
 " that lady to you; you have a just-
 " er title to her, since her inclination
 " is fixed upon you."—"No, no,"
 " cried I, interrupting him, " you love
 " her; and the favours which she
 " might bestow upon me, would give
 " you pain: I sacrifice them, there-
 " fore, to your repose."—"Ah, too
 " generous Castilian!" replied the
 " duke, locking me in his arms, " I
 " am charmed with your sentiments!
 " What remorse do they produce
 " within

"within me! With what grief—with what shame do I reflect on the outrage you received! The satisfaction I gave you in the king's closet, seems now too slight; I will make a better reparation for the injury; and in order to efface the dishonour of it entirely, I offer one of my nieces to you in marriage: she is a rich heiress, not yet fifteen, and still more beautiful than young."

I made my compliments to the duke in such expressions of acknowledgment, as the honour of entering into his alliance inspired; and in a very few days married his niece. The whole court congratulated him on his generosity to a gentleman whom he had covered with ignominy; and my friends rejoiced with me, on the happy conclusion of an adventure which seemed to promise a more melancholy issue. Since that time, gentlemen, I live agreeably at Lisbon, beloved by my wife, of whom I am still fond; the Duke of Almeida gives me every day fresh proofs of his friendship; and I dare boast of being pretty well with the King of Portugal, the importance of this my journey to Madrid, which I undertook by his order, being a sufficient evidence of his esteem."

C H A P. VIII.

BY WHAT ACCIDENT GIL BLAS WAS OBLIGED TO SEEK A NEW PLACE.

SUCH was the story that Don Pompeio recounted, and which the valet of Don Alexo and I overheard, although they had taken the precaution of sending us away before it was begun: but instead of retiring, we stopped at the door, which we had left half open, and from thence lost not a word of what was said. After this, the noblemen set in to drinking, but their debauch did not last till day; because Don Pompeio, who was to attend the prime minister in the morning, was very desirous of a little rest. Accordingly, the Marquis of Zeneta and my master embracing that cavalier, bid him adieu, and left him with his kinsman.

We went to bed for this time, before

morn; and Don Matthias, when he awaked, invested me with a new employment. 'Gil Blas,' said he, 'take paper and ink, and write two or three letters which I will dictate; henceforward thou art my secretary.'—'Good!' said I to myself, 'another addition to my functions. As a lacquey, I follow my master every where; as a valet de chambre, help him to dress; and write under him as his secretary: Heaven be praised! I act, like Hecate, in a threefold capacity.'—'Thou dost not know,' added he, 'what I am about, which is briefly this—but be secret; for thy life shall answer it. As I sometimes meet with people who boast of their good fortune in love-intrigues, I am resolved, in order to excel them all, to have always in my pocket feigned letters from women, which I will read on such occasions. This will afford me some diversion and, more happy than those of my fellows, who acquire conquests only for the pleasure of making them publick, I will publish those which I have not had the trouble to make: but remember to disguise thy hand in such a manner, as that the billets may not appear to be written by the same person.'

Upon this, I took paper, pen and ink, and set down to obey Don Matthias, who at first dictated a love-letter in these terms.

YOU was not to-night at the place of assignation. Ah, Don Matthias! what can you say to justify yourself? How much have I been mistaken, and how well have I been punished for having the vanity to think, that you would sacrifice all the amusements and business of the gay world to the pleasure of seeing
DONNA CLARA DE MENDOZA."

The next billet he made me write, was in the name of a lady who preferred him to a prince; and the last, from one who told him, that if she was sure of his discretion, she would make a voyage with him to the Island of Cythera. He was not satisfied with dictating these fine epistles; he obliged me also to subscribe them with the names of ladies of quality. Upon which, I

could not help observing, that I thought it a ticklish affair; but he desired me to keep my advice to myself, until he should have occasion to ask it. I was therefore obliged to execute his commands in silence. This being done, he got up, dressed, put the letters in his pocket, and went out; and I followed him to the house of Don Juan de Moncada, who had invited five or six gentlemen of his friends to dinner.

The entertainment was sumptuous; and mirth, the best ingredient in all banquets, reigned during the repast. All the guests contributed to enliven the conversation; some by raillery, and others by recounting exploits of which they themselves were the heroes. My master, unwilling to lose such a fair opportunity of profiting by the letters he had made me write, read them aloud, with such an air of assurance, that (his secretary excepted) every body seemed to believe them genuine. Among the gentlemen before whom he was guilty of this effrontery, there was one Don Lope de Velasco, a very sedate man; who, instead of rejoicing, like the rest, at the success of the reader, coldly asked, if the conquest of Donna Clara had cost him dear. 'Almost less than nothing,' replied Don Matthias; 'she made all the advances. Having seen me in the park, I happened to please her; upon which I was followed by her order; and, as soon as she learned who I was, she wrote to me, appointing an assignation at her house in the night, when all the family should be a-bed. I obeyed the summons, and was introduced to her apartment. I am too much of a gentleman to tell what followed.'

At this laconick detail, the Lord of Velasco changed countenance; and it was not difficult to perceive what concern he had in the lady in question. 'All these billets,' said he, darting a furious look at my master, 'are absolutely false, and especially that which you boast of having received from Donna Clara de Mendoza, than whom there is not a more chaste young lady in Spain. A gentleman, no ways your inferior either in birth or personal merit, has done every thing in his power, during two whole years, to make an impression on her heart; and scarce has he been able to obtain the most innocent favours;

though he has reason to flatter himself, that, if she was capable of granting any other kind of indulgence, it would be to him alone.' — 'Hey-day! who says any thing to the contrary?' said Don Matthias, with an air of raillery. 'I agree with you, that she is a lady of honour; and, for my part, I am a young fellow of honour; consequently you ought to believe, that nothing which was not very honourable passed between us.' — 'Ah! this is too much,' cried Don Lope, interrupting him; 'jesting apart, you are an impostor. Donna Clara never made an assignation with you at night; and I will not suffer you to blacken her reputation. I shall say no more at present.' Having thus expressed himself, he looked sternly at the whole company, and retired in such a manner, as to make me believe that this affair would have very bad consequences. My master, who was brave enough for a lord of his character, despising the threats of Don Lope, 'What a fool there is!' cried he, bursting into a fit of laughter; 'your knights-errant pretended only to maintain the beauty of their mistresses; but he, forsooth, must vindicate the chastity of his. Now, this to me seems still more extravagant.'

Velasco's retreat, which was in vain opposed by Moncado, did not at all disturb the banquet; the cavaliers, without taking much notice of it, continued their mirth, and did not part till next morning at five o'clock, when my master and I went home to bed. I was overwhelmed with drowsiness, and hoped to enjoy a good sleep; but I reckoned without my host, or rather without our porter, who came and wakened me an hour after, telling me that there was a young man at the gate, who wanted to speak with me. 'Ah, curse thee for a porter!' cried I, yawning; 'dost thou consider that I have just now got to bed? Tell the young man that I am asleep, and bid him return at another time.' — 'He must speak with you instantly,' replied he, 'for he assures me, that the affair will admit of no delay.' At these words, I got up; and putting on my breeches and doublet only, went to the door, cursing all the way. 'Friend,' said I to the young man who waited for me, 'let me know, if you please, what pressing

‘ pressing affair procures me the honour of seeing you so early in the morning ?—’ ‘ I have,’ answered he, ‘ a letter for Don Matthias, to be delivered into his own hand. He must read it immediately, for it is of the utmost consequence to him : I beg you will therefore shew me into his chamber.’ Thinking it treated of some-very important affair, I took the liberty of waking my master : ‘ I ask pardon,’ said I to him, ‘ for interrupting your repose ; but the importance’—— ‘ What wouldst thou have ?’ cried he hastily : upon which the young man who accompanied me, said, ‘ My Lord, I have a letter for you, from Don Lope de Velasco.’ Don Matthias took, opened, and having read it, said to Don Lope’s valet, ‘ Hark’e, child, I would not get up before noon to make one in the best party of pleasure that ever was proposed ; judge, then, if I shall rise at six o’clock in the morning to fight. Thou mayest tell thy master, if he will be in the same place half an hour after twelve, I will meet him there.’ So saying, he sunk down in his bed, and fell asleep again with great expedition.

Between eleven and twelve he got up ; and, dressing with great composure, went out, telling me, he would dispense with my attendance : but I was too curious to know the consequence, to obey him in this ; and therefore walked at some distance behind him to St. Jerome’s Meadow, where I perceived Don Lope de Velasco waiting for him in a resolute manner. The better to observe them, I concealed myself ; and, from afar, could see them meet, and begin to fight a moment after. The combat was long ; each, in his turn, having pushed his antagonist with great vigour and address ; but victory declared for Don Lope, who run my master through the body ; and, leaving him stretched upon the ground, made off, very well satisfied with the vengeance he had taken. I ran up to the unfortunate Don Matthias, whom I found without sense, and almost without life. I was melted at the sight, and could not help shedding tears, at a death of which I had been an involuntary instrument. Notwithstanding my grief, however, I did not forget my own little concerns ;

but returned home with all haste ; where (without speaking a syllable of the matter) I made up a bundle of my cloaths ; among which I threw, by mistake, some of my master’s moveables ; and when I had carried it to the barber’s house, where I had left my intriguing suit, published through the whole city the fatal accident, of which I was witness : I told it to every body who gave me the hearing ; and, in particular, took care to inform Rodriguez of what had happened. He seemed less afflicted with the news, than busied about the measures he was to take on this occasion. Having assembled the servants, he ordered them to follow him ; and repairing in a body to St. Jerome’s Meadow, we took up our master ; who, though he still breathed, died in three hours after he was carried to his own house. Thus perished Don Matthias de Silva, for having taken it into his head to read forged love-letters at an unseasonable time.

C H A P. IX.

OF THE PERSON IN WHOSE SERVICE HE ENGAGED, AFTER THE DEATH OF DON MATTHIAS DE SILVA.

A Few days after the funeral of Don Matthias, all his servants being paid and dismissed, I fixed my abode in the house of the little barber, with whom I began to live in strict friendship ; and there I promised myself more pleasure than with Melendez. As I did not want money, I was in no hurry to enquire about a new place : besides, I was become nice on that point, and resolved to serve none but the quality for the future ; for which reason I intended to examine narrowly into whatever post should occur, believing that there was none too good for me ; so much did I then think the valet of a young nobleman preferable to all others.

In the mean time, until fortune should present such a family as I thought I deserved, I imagined nothing could be more agreeable than to consecrate my leisure to my handsome Laura, whom I had not seen since that night when we were both so pleasantly undecieved.

undeceived. I durst not dress in the suit of Don Cæsar de Ribera, which (unless I had assumed it for a disguise) would have made me pass for a downright madman; but my own was still very decent, and being very well equipped in stockings, shoes, and hat, I adjusted myself, with the barber's assistance, in a middle way, between Don Cæsar and Gil Blas, and in this condition repaired to Arsenia's house; where, finding Laura alone, in the same parlour where I had seen her before, she no sooner perceived me, than she cried, 'Ha! are you there? I thought I had lost you. Seven or eight days are passed since I gave you the permission of visiting me: I see you don't abuse the liberties in which the ladies indulge you.'

I excused myself on account of my master's death, and the business in which I had been engaged; and added, in a very polite manner, that even in the midst of all my cares, the fair Laura had still kept possession of my heart. 'Well, then,' said she, 'I will reproach you no more; but own, that I have also thought of you; and as soon as I heard of the misfortune of Don Matthias, formed a project, which perhaps will not displease you. Some time ago, I heard my mistress say, that she wanted to have a kind of steward in the house; a young man who should understand œconomy, and keep an exact account of the money disbursed for house-keeping. I have cast my eyes on your lordship, and believe you would not be an improper person for that employment.'—'I perceive,' answered I, 'that I should acquit myself in it to a wonder; for I have read Aristotle's *Oeconomicks*; and as to keeping accounts, it is my chief excellence. But, child,' added I, 'there is one objection to my engaging in Arsenia's service.'—'What may that be?' said Laura.—'I have sworn,' I replied, 'never to serve a plebeian: nay, I have sworn by Styx; and if Jupiter himself durst not violate that oath, judge if a valet ought not to regard it.'—'Whom dost thou call plebeians?' said the chambermaid, with an air of disdain. 'Dost thou rank actresses with the wives of counsellors and attornies? Know, friend, that the ladies of the stage

'are not only noble, but arch-noble, by the alliances they contract with men of quality.'

'If that be the case, my princess,' said I, 'I may accept of the place for which you have destined me, without derogating from the dignity of my resolution.'—'Certainly,' she replied, 'to pass from the family of a beau into the service of a theatrical heroine, is still to maintain the same sphere of life; for we rank in all respects with the quality: we keep equipages like them; we live as well; and, at bottom, ought to hold the same esteem in civil life. Really,' added she, 'if we consider a marquis and a player, through the course of a day, we shall find them upon a pretty equal footing: for, granting that the marquis, during three parts of the day, is, by virtue of his blood, superior to the player; the actor, during the remaining part, is raised still more above the marquis, by the cue of an emperor or king whom he represents. This, in my opinion, invests us with such nobility and grandeur as at least equals us to the people at court.'—'O! truly,' I replied, 'you are, without contradiction, on a level with the courtiers. What the deuce! players, I find, are not such scums as I imagined; and you fire me with inclination to serve such honourable people.'—'Well, then,' said she, 'come back again in two days: I ask no more time to dispose my mistress for thy reception. I will speak to her in thy behalf; and as I have some interest with her, am persuaded that thou wilt be admitted into her service.'

I thanked Laura for her friendship, and assured her, that I was penetrated with gratitude, which I expressed with such transports, as left her no room to doubt my sincerity. We maintained a pretty long conversation together, and it would have lasted longer, had not a little page come to tell my princess that Arsenia wanted her; upon which we parted. I quitted the house of this actress, in the sweet hope of living in it at my ease in a very short time; and did not fail to return at the time appointed. 'I was just expecting thee,' said Laura, 'in order to assure thee, that thou art now one of the household: come, follow me, and I will

'I will present thee to my mistress.' So saying, she carried me into an apartment, composed of five or six rooms of a floor, each more richly furnished than the other,

Heavens! what luxury and magnificence! I believed myself in the palace of a vice-queen; or rather thought I saw all the riches in the world amassed together in one place: for there was a variety of things produced in different nations; and one might term this apartment the temple of some goddess, to whom every traveller presented an offering of the rarities of his country. I perceived the divinity seated on a large satin couch, charming to the eye, and sleek with the steams of sacrifice: she was in a genteel dishabille, and her fair hands were busy in preparing a new head-dress, in which she was to perform that night. 'Madam,' said her maid, 'here is the house-keeper I mentioned. I can assure you, that you will not find one more for your purpose.' Arsenia looked at me very attentively, and I had the good fortune to please her. 'Aha, Laura!' cried she, 'there's a pretty young fellow! I foresee that I shall be very well satisfied with him.' Then addressing herself to me, 'Child,' said she, 'I like your appearance, and am at a word: if you serve me well, you shall have no cause to complain.' I answered, that my whole study and endeavour should be to please her; and seeing that we were agreed, went to fetch my cloaths, and was installed in my new office.

CHAP. X.

WHICH IS AS SHORT AS THE FOREGOING.

IT being near play-time, my mistress bid Laura and me follow her to the theatre. We went accordingly to her tiring-room, where she put off her ordinary dress, and took another more magnificent for her appearance on the stage. The curtain being drawn, Laura conducted and sat down by me in a place where we could both see and hear the actors perfectly well. I was disgusted at the greatest part of them, doubtless, because Don Pompeio had prejudiced me against them. Several,

however, were very much applauded; and, among these, even some who put me in mind of the fable of the pig.

Laura told me the names of all the actors and actresses as they presented themselves; and, not contented with this, the satirical baggage described their characters nicely, as they appeared. 'This here,' said she, 'is a noodle. That fellow is a brute; and that minx whom you see with an air more lewd than engaging, is called Rosarda; a very bad acquisition for the company: she should be enrolled in the troop that is raising by order of the viceroy of new Spain, to be transported forthwith into America. Observe that luminous constellation advancing; that fair setting sun, known by the name of Castilda, if she had exacted a stone from each of her lovers, as a princess of Egypt is said to have done heretofore, she could have raised a pyramid which would have touched the third heaven.' In short, Laura gave no quarter: her malicious tongue did not even spare her own mistress.

Nevertheless, I will confess my weakness; I was charmed with my chambermaid, though her character was not morally good. She satirized so agreeably, that I was even in love with her malice. Between the acts she got up, to go and see if Arsenia wanted her; but instead of returning immediately to her place, she amused herself behind the scenes, in listening to the soft things that were said by the men who flattered her. I followed her, for once, to observe; and perceived that she had a great many acquaintances; having reckoned no less than three actors, who, one after another, stopped to speak with her, and seemed to treat her with great familiarity. This was not at all agreeable to me; who, feeling for the first time what it was to be jealous, returned to my seat so pensive and melancholy, that Laura observed it as soon as she came back. 'What is the matter with thee, Gil Blas?' said she, with surprise. 'What gloomy demon hath taken possession of thee since I went away? thou seemest sad and dejected.'—'I have too much reason to be so, my princess,' answered I; 'you have a little too much vivacity in your behaviour; I have observed you with the actors.'—

'A plea-

• A pleasant cause of melancholy, indeed !' said she, laughing. 'How ! does that give thee any uneasiness ? truly thou art a mere novice : but thou wilt see a great many other strange things among us, and must accustom thyself to our easy way of life. Harbour no jealousy, child ; for that, among comedians, is looked upon as ridiculous : therefore we have none of it. Fathers, husbands, brothers, uncles, and cousins, with us, are the most complaisant persons on earth, and generally make settlements for their own family.'

After having exhorted me to take umbrage at nothing, but look upon every thing with composure, she declared, that I was the happy mortal who had found the way to her heart ; and assured me, that her love should always rest on me alone. On this assurance, which, however, I might have distrusted without the imputation of being too suspicious, I promised never more to be alarmed, and kept my word ; for that very evening I saw her in close conversation, and heard her laugh heartily with several different men. When the play was over, we went home with our mistress, where Florimonda soon after arrived, with three old noblemen and an actor, to supper. Besides Laura and me, there were, of servants in the house, a cook-maid, a coachman, and a page, who all joined in preparing supper. The cook, who was no less dexterous than Dame Jacinta, was assisted by the coachman in dressing the victuals ; while the chamber-maid and page laid the cloth ; and I furnished the beaufet with the finest plate, and several cups of gold, which were offered to the goddess of the temple. I stored it likewise with bottles of the choicest wines ; serving in my own person as cup-bearer, to shew my mistress that I could turn my hand to every thing. The deportment of the actresses, during the repast, filled me with admiration : they assumed airs of consequence, and imagined themselves women of the first rank. Far from addressing the noblemen with the title of Your Excellence, they did not even give them that of Your Lordship : but called them simply by their names ; true, indeed, these very noblemen had spoiled, and made them so vain, by suffering them to be so familiar. As for

the actor, he, like a player, used to perform the hero, treated them without ceremony, drank to their health, and maintained, (as one may say) the upper-end of the table. ' Upon my soul,' said I to myself, ' when Laura demonstrated the equality of the marks and player in the day-time, she might have added, that they are still more so in the night, since they spend it thus in drinking together.'

Arsenia and Florimonda being naturally wanton, a thousand hardy expressions escaped them, mingled with small favours and toyings, which were exquisitely relished by these old sinners. While my mistress amused the one with a little innocent ribaldry, her friend, sitting between the other two, did not act the Susanna with them. While I was considering this picture, which had but too many charms for a young fellow like me, the desert was brought in : upon which I set wine and glasses on the table, and went to supper with Laura, who waited for me.

' Well, Gil Blas,' said she, ' what is thy opinion of those noblemen thou hast seen ?'—' They are, doubtless,' answered I ' adorers of Arsenia and Florimonda.'—' No, said she, ' they are old lechers, who visit coquettes without attaching themselves to them, and ask only small compliances, paying generously for trifling favours they receive. Thank Heaven ! Florimonda and my mistress are at present without lovers ; I mean, such lovers as assume the husband, and want to engross all the pleasures of the house, because they support the expence of it. As for my own part, I am very glad it is so ; and maintain, that a coquette of sense ought to fly these sorts of engagements. Why should she give up her liberty to a master ? It is better to acquire an equipage penny by penny, than have one at such a price.'

When Laura was in a speaking humour, (which was almost always the case) words cost her nothing. Heaven ! what a volubility of tongue was the mistress of ! she told me a thousand adventures which had happened to the actresses of the Prince's company ; and I concluded from her discourse, that I could not be in a better situation to become perfectly acquainted with vice. I was unhappily of an age when this

does

does not create much horror ; and besides, the chamber-maid painted these irregularities so artfully, that I beheld only the delicious side of them. She had no time to relate the tenth part of the exploits of the actresses ; for she had spoke but three hours, when the noblemen and player withdrew with Florimonda, whom they conducted to her own house.

After they were gone, my mistress giving me money, said, ' There, Gil Blas, are ten pistoles to go to market to-morrow morning : five or six of our gentlemen and ladies are to dine with me, so that you must take care and have every thing in plenty. '— ' Madam,' answered I, ' with this sum I'll engage to entertain the whole troop. '— ' Friend,' replied Arsenia, ' be so good as to correct your expressions : you must not call them the troop, but the company. We say, a troop of thieves, a troop of beggars, and a troop of authors ; but learn to say, a company of comedians. The corps of actors in Madrid especially, deserve to be called a company. ' I asked pardon for having used such a disrespectful term, and most humbly begged she would excuse my ignorance ; protesting, that for the future, whenever I should mention the gentlemen actors of Madrid in a collective capacity, I would always call them the company.

CHAP. XI.

HOW THE PLAYERS LIVED TOGETHER ; AND THEIR TREATMENT OF AUTHORS.

I Went to market next morning, in order to begin my office of butler ; and as it was a meagre day, bought by order of my mistress, some good fat pullets, rabbits, partridges and other wild fowl ; for as the gentlemen players were not altogether satisfied with the behaviour of the church towards them, they did not think proper to adhere scrupulously to it's commandments. I brought home more victuals than would have sufficed twelve honest gentlemen, during three days in carnival time ; so that the cook had work enough for the whole morning. While she prepared the dinner, Arsenia got

up, and remained at her toilet till noon ; when Signiors Rosimiro and Ricardo (two actors) arrived : Constantia and Celinaura (two actresses) came soon after ; and at last Florimonda appeared, accompanied by a man who had all the appearance of a finished coxcomb. His hair was tied behind in a very foppish manner, his hat adorned with a plume of green feathers, his breeches smooth and straight, and his shirt, which was very fine, was bordered with a handsome lace, displayed at the slashes of his doublet. His gloves and handkerchief were contained within the hilt of his sword, and he wore his cloak with a grace altogether peculiar.

Though he had a good mien, and was very well made, I no sooner saw him, than remarking in him something singular, I said to myself, ' This gentleman must certainly be an original. ' I was not mistaken ; for he was a man of a very extraordinary character. As soon as he entered Arsenia's apartment, he ran with open arms, and embraced the actresses and actors, one after another, with gestures still more extravagant than those of the beaus. My opinion was not changed when I heard him speak ; for he made affected pauses, and pronounced his words with great emphasis, accommodating his looks and gestures to the subject. Having asked Laura who that gentleman was, ' I don't wonder', said she, ' at thy curiosity : it is impossible to see and hear Signior Carlos Alonso de la Ventoleria, even for once, without feeling the same emotion. I will describe him to the life. In the first place, he has been a player ; but quitted the stage through whim, and now repents in earnest. His black hair which thou seest, is dyed, as well as his eye-brows and whiskers ; for he is older than Saturn : but as his parents, when he was born, neglected to have his name inserted in the parish-register, he takes the advantage of their omission, and calls himself younger than he is by twenty good years at least. He is, moreover, the most self-conceited man in Spain, though he spent the first sixty years of his life in the grossest ignorance ; but in order to become learned, he employed a preceptor, who has taught him to spell in Latin and Greek.

P

' Besides,

‘ Besides, he has got an infinite number of good stories by heart, which he has repeated and vouched so often, that at length he actually believes them to be true. These he brings into conversation, and one may say, that his wit shines at the expence of his memory. He has the character of being a great actor, and I piously believe it; but, nevertheless, I will own that he does not please me. I hear him repeat sometimes in company, and among other faults, think his pronunciation too much affected, and his voice so quavering, that it gives an antick and ridiculous air to his declamation.’

Such was the picture that my sweetheart drew of this honorary stage-player; who was really, in his deportment, the most haughty mortal I had ever seen. He played the orator too, and did not fail to produce from his budget two or three stories, which he uttered with a studied air of solemnity. On the other hand, the actresses and actors, who did not come there to hold their tongues, were not silent; but began to talk of their absent comrades, not in a very charitable manner indeed; but this must be pardoned in players as well as in authors. The conversation, therefore, kindling against their neighbours, ‘ You cannot guess, ladies,’ said Rosimiro, ‘ a new piece of finesse of our dear confederate Cesarino. He this morning purchased silk stockings, ribbands and lace, which he ordered a page to bring to the rehearsal, as if sent by a certain countess.’—‘ Such a piece of knavery!’ said Signior de Ventoleria, with a silly, vain simper; ‘ there was no such deceit in my time: we never dreamt of composing such stories; the ladies of quality, indeed, spared us the invention, by making the purchase themselves; it was their fancy.’—‘ Zooks!’ said Ricardo, ‘ they have that fancy still; and was I permitted to explain myself—but one must be silent on these sort of adventures, especially when persons of a certain rank are concerned.’

‘ Gentlemen,’ said Florimonda, interrupting him, ‘ truce with your intrigues, if you please; they are very well known to all the world, and let us talk of Imenia. They say, that nobleman who has spent so much

‘ money upon her, has left her at last.’—‘ Yes, truly,’ cried Constantia; ‘ and I’ll tell you more: she has lost a little citizen, whom she certainly would have ruined. I know the foundation of the whole affair: her Mercury committed a terrible blunder, by carrying to the nobleman a letter she had wrote to the citizen, and giving this last the billet intended for the lord.’—‘ These are great losses, my dear,’ replied Florimonda. ‘ O! as for the nobleman,’ said Constantia; ‘ there is no great matter; he had spent almost his whole estate: but the citizen had just began his career, and had never passed through good hands, which is a thousand pities.’

In this manner they discoursed before dinner, and their conversation turned on the same subjects while they were at table. But as I should never have done, if I undertook to repeat all the expressions full of malice and folly which I heard, I hope the reader will excuse me for suppressing them, in order to describe the reception of a poor devil of an author, who came in towards the end of the repast.

Our page came, and said aloud to his mistress, ‘ Madam, a man in marvellous foul linen, bedaggled all over, and who, so please you, looks very much like a poet, wants to speak with you.’—‘ Shew him up,’ answered Arsenia. ‘ Don’t stir, gentlemen; ’tis but an author.’ Sure enough, it was one whose tragedy had been received; and who brought a part for my mistress. He was called Pedro de Moya; and, as he entered, made five or six profound bows to the company, who neither got up nor returned his compliment. Arsenia only answered his profusion of civility by a slight inclination of her head. He advanced into the room, trembling and confused, and let his gloves and cloak fall; which having taken up, he approached my mistress, and presented to her a paper, with more respect than that of a counsellor, when he delivers a petition to a judge; saying, ‘ Be so good, Madam, as to accept of this part, which I take the liberty to offer.’ She received it in a cold and disdainful manner, without even deigning to answer his compliment.

This, however, did not discourage

our author; who, making use of the opportunity to distribute the different parts of his play, gave one to Rosimiro, and another to Florimonda, who did not treat him a whit more courteously than Arsenia had done. On the contrary, the players, naturally very obliging, as these gentlemen commonly are, insulted him with the most cutting raillery; which Pedro de Moya felt, but durst not retort, lest his piece should suffer for his imprudence. He retired, therefore, without speaking, but sensibly touched, as I perceived, with his reception; and I believe that, in the bitterness of his resentment, he did not fail to curse within himself the players, as they deserved; and they, when he was gone, began to speak of authors with great respect. 'Signior 'Pedro de Moya,' said Florimonda, 'did not seem to go away very well 'satisfied.'

'Phaw, Madam!' cried Rosimiro; 'don't disturb yourself about that; 'authors are not worth notice; if we 'should treat them on equal footing, it would spoil them: I know 'these sorry gentlemen; they would 'soon forget themselves. Let us, 'therefore, use them like slaves, and 'we need not fear that we shall tire 'their patience; for though their displeasure may detach them from us 'sometimes, the fury of writing will 'bring them back, and they will 'think themselves very happy, provided we deign to act their performances.'—'You are in the right,' said Arsenia; 'we only lose those authors 'whose fortunes we have made; for 'as soon as we have procured a good 'settlement for them, idleness takes 'possession of them, and they work no 'more. Luckily the company don't 'break their hearts, and the publick 'is no loser by their sloth.'

These fine observations were much applauded; and it was determined, that authors, notwithstanding the ill treatment they receive, owed their all to the players, who therefore claimed the superiority over them; and, certes, they could not despise them more.

CHAP. XII.

GIL BLAS ACQUIRES THE THEATRICAL TASTE; ABANDONS HIM-

SELF TO THE PLEASURES OF A COMICK LIFE, WITH WHICH, HOWEVER, HE IS DISGUSTED IN A LITTLE TIME.

THE company remained at table until the hour arrived of going to the theatre, whither they repaired in a body. I followed, and once more saw the play; which gave me such pleasure, that I resolved to take the same opportunity every day. In this I did not fail, and insensibly became reconciled to the actors; such is the force of custom: I was particularly charmed with those who ranted and distorted themselves most upon the stage, and was not at all singular in this way of thinking.

The beauty of the performance touched me no less than the beauty of representation; I was quite transported with some of them; and among the rest, was prodigiously fond of those, where all the cardinals or the twelve peers of France appeared. I remember that, in two days, I got by heart a whole comedy, entitled, *The Queen of Flowers*. The Rose, who was queen, had the Violet for a confidante, and the Jessamin for her usher. I thought nothing could be more ingenious than these works, which I imagined did a great deal of honour to the taste of our nation.

I not only adorned my memory with the brightest passages from these dramatick master-pieces; I set about bringing my taste to perfection, which to accomplish, I listened with a greedy attention to all that the players said. If they praised any performance, I esteemed it; and whatsoever met with their disapprobation, was immediately despised by me: I thought they were as skilful in plays, as jewellers are in diamonds. Nevertheless, Pedro de Moya's tragedy had great success, altho' they had prognosticated it's damnation. But even this could not make me suspect their judgment; and I chose rather to believe that the publick wanted common sense, than to doubt of the company's infallibility. I was assured, however, from all quarters, that those new pieces, of which the players had no good opinion, were, usually, very much applauded; and that, on the contrary, those which they received with approbation, were

commonly hissed by the audience. I was told, that it was a maxim with them to judge erroneously of the works that were presented to them, and was informed of a thousand instances where the success belied their determination; but all these proofs were scarce sufficient to disabuse my understanding.

I shall never forget what happened one day, in the first representation of a new comedy, which the players had pronounced cold and tedious, and actually thought unpassable. In these sentiments they performed the first act, which met with great applause, and quite astonished them. The second act was played, and still better received than the first; upon which the actors were confounded. 'How the devil!' said Rosimiro, 'is it possible that this comedy should take?' At last, they acted the third, which gave more pleasure than the two former. 'I can't comprehend the meaning of this!' said Ricardo. 'We imagined that this piece would not please, yet every body is charmed with it!'—'Gentlemen,' said one of them very plainly, 'the reason is, because there are a thousand strokes of wit in the performance which we have not observed.'

I no longer, therefore, looked upon the players as excellent judges, but became a just appraiser of their merit; and, indeed, they justified to a tittle all the ridicule they met with from the world; for some of the actors and actresses were giddy with applause, and considering themselves as objects of admiration, thought they bestowed a favour on the publick when they deigned to play. I was shocked at their faults, but unhappily too well pleased with their way of life; so that I plunged into debauchery. How could it be otherwise? Their conversation was pernicious to youth, and all I saw contributed to corrupt my morals. Had I been ignorant of what passed at the houses of Casilda, Constantia, and the other players, that of Arsenia alone was but too capable of undoing me: for, besides the old nobleman I mentioned, there came thither beaux; young heirs whom usurers enabled to spend money; and sometimes also farmers of the revenue were admitted, who, far from being gratified for their

presence, as they are in their own assemblies, were obliged to pay through the nose for their reception.

Florimonda, who lived hard by, dined and supped every day with my mistress; and people were surprized at the friendship that seemed to unite them. It afforded matter of astonishment to see coquettes live together in such good intelligence; and every body imagined that soon or late they would quarrel about some gallant. But the world was very much mistaken in these perfect friends, who were joined by the most solid affection. Instead of being jealous of one another, like other women, they lived in common; and chose rather to share the spoils, than foolishly dispute about the inclinations of the men.

Laura, by the example of these illustrious associates, made the best of her youth too; and it was not without reason she had told me, that I should see strange things: however, I affected to be quite easy; because I had promised to adopt the unconcern of a player on such occasions; and thus I dissembled for some days, contenting myself with asking the names of the men with whom I found her particularly engaged. She always answered, that it was an uncle or cousin. Heavens! what a crowd of relations she had! Sure her family was more numerous than that of King Priam; and the jade did not even confine herself to uncles and cousins, but also went abroad frequently in order to allure strangers, by acting the widow of quality, at the house of the old woman whom I mentioned before. In short, Laura (to give the reader a just and precise idea of her) was as young, as handsome, and as much a coquette, as her mistress, who had no other advantage over her, than that of diverting the town in publick. I was borne down by the torrent for three weeks, during which I gave myself up to all manner of debauchery: but, at the same time, I must observe, in the midst of my pleasures, I was frequently seized with sentiments of remorse, that proceeded from my education, and embittered all my enjoyments. Vice could not get the better of these warnings, which augmented in proportion as I became more debauched; and, by the effect of a happy disposition, I began

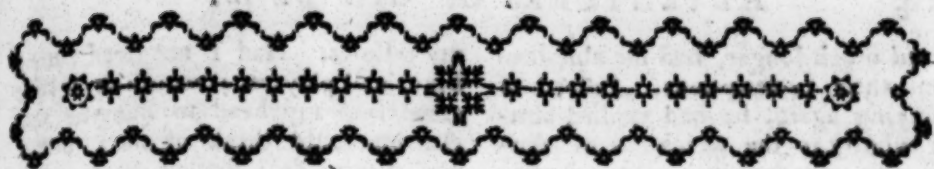
began to abhor the disorders of a theatrical life. 'Ah, wretch!' said I to myself; 'is it thus thou fulfillest the expectation of thy family! Was it not enough to cheat it, by chusing another employment than that of a tutor? Does thy servile condition hinder thee from living like an honest man? or does it become thee to

' live among such sinners? Some of whom are possessed by envy, rage, and avarice; whilst others have banished all sense of shame. These are abandoned to intemperance and sloth; and those indulge their pride even to an excess of insolence. I am resolved; and will no longer dwell with the seven deadly sins.'

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

STATE OF NEW YORK

In SENATE,
January 10, 1881.
REPORT
OF THE
COMMISSIONERS OF THE LAND OFFICE,
IN ANSWER TO A RESOLUTION
PASSED BY THE SENATE,
MAY 1, 1880.
ALBANY:
J. B. LEECH, STATE PRINTER,
1881.



THE
A D V E N T U R E S
O F
G I L B L A S
O F
S A N T I L L A N E.

VOLUME THE SECOND.

BOOK IV.

CHAP. I.

GIL BLAS, BEING DISGUSTED AT THE IRREGULARITIES OF THE ACTRESSES, QUITTS THE SERVICE OF ARSENIA, AND GETS INTO A MORE CREDITABLE FAMILY.



Remnant of honour and religion, which I did not fail to preserve amidst such corruption of morals, made me resolve, not only to leave Arsenia, but also to break off all correspondence with Laura; whom, however, I could not help loving, though I was sensible of her flagrant infidelity. Happy is he who can thus profit by those moments of reflection that interrupt the pleasures which engross his attention! Early one morning, I bundled up my cloaths; and, without clearing with Arsenia, who was, indeed, little or nothing in my debt, or taking leave of my dear Laura, I quitted the house, where I had breathed nothing but the air of debauchery; and I had no sooner performed such a good action, than Hen-

ven rewarded me for it, by throwing me in the way of the steward of Don Matthias, my late master. Having saluted him, he knew me, and stopped to enquire if I was in any service; to which I answered, that I had been about a minute or two out of place: for that, after having lived about a month with Arsenia, whose behaviour I did not like, I had left her of my own accord, in order to preserve my innocence. The steward, as if he had been scrupulously religious, approved of my delicacy; and told me, that since I was a young man of such honour, he would make it his business to settle me in an advantageous place. He performed his promise, and that very day introduced me into the service of Don Vincent de Guzman, whose manager was one of his acquaintance.

I could not have got into a better family, and therefore had no cause to be displeased with my situation in the sequel. Don Vincent was a very rich old nobleman, who had lived many years without law-suit or wife; the physicians having deprived him of his spouse, by endeavouring to free her of a cough, which she might have pre-
served

served much longer, had she abstained from their prescriptions. Instead of marrying again, he had applied himself wholly to the education of Aurora, his only daughter, who was then going in her six and twentieth year, and justly passed for an accomplished young lady; for, with an uncommon share of beauty, she had an excellent genius, perfectly well cultivated. Her father, though he was no conjuror, possessed the happiest talent of managing his affairs to the best advantage; but had one fault, which, however, is pardonable in old men: he delighted in talking, and above all things, of war and bloodshed. If any body was so unfortunate as to touch on that string in his presence, he instantly set the trumpet to his mouth; and the hearers were very happy, if they got off for the relation of two sieges and three battles. As he had spent two-thirds of his life in the army, his memory was an inexhaustible source of different actions, which were not always listened to with the same pleasure that he felt in recounting them. Besides, he stammered in his speech, and was very prolix, which rendered his manner of relating very disagreeable; otherwise, I never knew a nobleman of a better character. He had a great deal of equanimity, and was neither passionate nor whimsical; a circumstance which I admired very much in a man of quality. Though he was a good economist, he kept an honourable house; his domesticks consisting of several footmen, and three women who waited on Aurora. I soon perceived that the steward of Don Matthias had procured a good post for me, and bent all my endeavours to maintain myself in it: for this purpose, I began by reconnoitering the ground; that is, studying the different humours of every body in the family; then, regulating my conduct by the observations I made, it was not long before I acquired the good will of my master and all his servants.

When I had been about a month in Don Vincent's family, I thought I perceived that his daughter distinguished me from all the rest of the valets in the house. When her eyes were fixed upon me, I always remarked a sort of complacency in her countenance, which I could not observe when she looked at

my fellows. Had I not lived among beaux and players, it would never have come into my head to imagine that Aurora could think of me; but I was a good deal spoiled among these gentlemen, who are seldom extremely delicate in their sentiments of the most virtuous ladies. 'If,' said I to myself, 'we may believe those stage-players, they are sometimes benefited by the whims to which women of quality are subject: and how do I know that my mistress is free from such caprices? No,' added I, 'I cannot believe it. She is not one of those Messalinas, who, belying the pride of their birth, humble their affections so unworthily, even to the dust, and dishonour themselves without blushing; but rather, one of those virtuous, though tender, young ladies, who, satisfied with the bounds prescribed by honour to their inclinations, make no scruple of inspiring, as well as of entertaining, a delicate passion, which yields amusement without danger.'

These were my sentiments of my mistress, though I did not know precisely how to interpret her behaviour. In the mean time, as often as she saw me, she did not fail to smile and express her joy in her countenance; so that, without passing for a fool, any man might have been ensnared by such fair appearances: I therefore could resist them no longer; but concluded that Aurora was strongly captivated with my merit, and looked upon myself as one of those happy domesticks, whose servitude is sweetened by love. That I might appear in some measure less unworthy of the favour which my good fortune had procured for me, I began to take more care of my person than I had ever done before: I spent all the money I had in linen, essences, and pomatums: the first thing I did of a morning, was to dress and perfume myself, that I might not appear in dishabille before my mistress; and with this attention to my exterior, and other airs I assumed, in order to please, I flattered myself that my happiness was not far off.

Among Aurora's women, there was one called Ortiz, an old gentlewoman who had lived more than twenty years in the family, and nursed Don Vincent's daughter, whom she still served in

In quality of a duenna, though she no longer performed the disagreeable part of that function; but, on the contrary, instead of discovering, as formerly, the actions of Aurora, her sole business now was to conceal them. One evening, Dame Ortiz, having found an opportunity of speaking to me without being overheard, told me softly, that if I was wise and discreet, I would be in the garden at midnight, where I should be informed of things which I should not be sorry to hear; I answered, squeezing the duenna's hand, that I would not fail to be there; and we parted immediately, for fear of being surprized. Heavens! how did the time hang on my hands from that instant to supper (which in our family was always over in good time) and from thence to my master's going to bed! Every thing seemed to drag on with extraordinary slowness; and, to crown my chagrin, when Don Vincent retired to his bed-chamber, instead of going to rest, he began to fight over again all his campaigns in Portugal, with which he had so often stunned me before. But one thing, which he had never done hitherto, and reserved for this evening, was to tell me the names of all the officers who had distinguished themselves in his time, and even to recount their exploits. What did I suffer in hearing him to an end! He left off speaking, however, at last, and got into bed. Upon which I went into the little closet where I slept, from whence there was a passage, by a pair of back stairs, into the garden, and anointed my whole body with essence; I then put on a clean shirt, strongly perfumed; and having neglected nothing which I thought might flatter the passion of my mistress, went directly to the place of assignation.

Not finding Ortiz there, I concluded that, tired with waiting for me, she had returned to her apartment, and that the happy minute was past. I blamed Don Vincent for it; and, as I was cursing his campaigns, heard it strike ten. This made me believe that the clock went wrong, for I was persuaded that it was at least an hour past midnight, but I was so happily mistaken, that, a good quarter of an hour after this, I heard another clock strike ten again. 'Very well,' said I to myself; 'I have but two whole hours to

'dance attendance, and they shall have
'no cause to complain of my punctuality. What must we do till twelve?
'Let us take a turn in the garden,
'and consider the part I am to play,
'which is a pretty new one to me,
'who am but a novice in the whims
'of women of quality. I know well
'enough how to behave with Abigail's
'and actresses; these you accost with
'a familiar air, and come to the point
'without ceremony; but we must go
'another way to work with ladies of
'fashion. The gallant, I imagine,
'must be polite, complaisant, tender,
'and respectful, though not timorous:
'instead of endeavouring to hasten
'his own happiness, by the violence
'of his transports, he ought to lie in
'wait for the moment of frailty.'

These were my reflections, and this the conduct I proposed to observe with Aurora; representing to myself, that in a little time I should have the pleasure of seeing myself at her feet, and of saying a thousand passionate things to that amiable object. I even recollected all the passages of our theatrical pieces which might be of service to me, and do me honour during our interview; and by a seasonable application of these, I hoped (after the example of some players whom I knew) to pass for a wit, though I could only boast of a memory. Absorbed in these reflections, which amused my impatience more agreeably than the military stories of my master, I heard the clock strike eleven; upon which I plunged again into my reverie, sometimes walking, and sometimes sitting in an arbour at the farther end of the garden. The long-expected hour of twelve at last struck; and in a few minutes Ortiz, as punctual, though less impatient than I, appeared. 'Signior
'Gil Blas,' said she, accosting me,
'how long have you been here?' I replied, 'Two hours.'—'In good sooth,' said she, laughing, 'you are very exact: it is a pleasure to make an assignation with you. True, indeed,' continued she, with a serious air, 'you cannot pay too dear for the happy tidings I have to tell you. My
'mistress wants to have some private
'conversation with you. I will say
'no more. The rest is a secret you
'must learn from her own mouth.
'Follow me, and I will conduct you
Q into

'into her apartment.' So saying, the duenna took me by the hand, and led me, in a mysterious manner, through a little door of which she had the key, into the chamber of her mistress.

CHAP. II.

THE RECEPTION THAT GIL BLAS MET WITH FROM AURORA, AND THE CONVERSATION THAT PASSED BETWEEN THEM.

I Saluted 'Aurora, whom I found in dishabille, in the most respectful manner, and with the best grace I could put on; and she received me with a smiling air, forced me to sit down by her, and bade her ambassadresses retire into another room. After this prelude, with which I was not ill pleased, she addressed herself to me in these words. 'Gil Blas, you must have perceived that I look upon you in a favourable light, and distinguish you from the rest of my father's servants; and even though you may not have observed, by my looks, that I have a regard for you, the step I have taken this night will leave you no room to doubt it.'

I gave her no time to proceed, but believing that I ought, as a polite gentleman, to spare her modesty the pain of a more formal explanation, I started up in a transport, and throwing myself at her feet, like a stage hero, who falls on his knees before his princess, cried in a theatrical tone, 'Ah, Madam! can it be possible that Gil Blas, hitherto the foot-ball of fortune, and out-cast of nature, is so happy as to have inspired you with sentiments—' 'Don't speak so loud,' said my mistress, laughing, 'you will awaken my women who are asleep in the next room. Get up, take your seat again, and hear me to an end, without interrupting me. Yes, Gil Blas,' continued she, resuming her gravity, 'I am your well-wisher; and as a proof of my esteem, will impart to you a secret, on which the repose of my life depends: I am in love with a young gentleman of beauty, fortune, and illustrious birth; his name is Don Lewis Pacheco; and although I have seen him several times in the Prado, and at publick shews, I

have never spoke to him, am even ignorant of his character, and don't know but he may be a person of bad morals. This is what I want to be informed of; and having occasion for a man to enquire carefully about his reputation, and bring me a faithful account of it, I make choice of you, and believe I run no risque by intrusting you with this commission, in which, I hope, you will acquit yourself with so much discretion and address, that I shall never repent of having made you my confident.'

Here my mistress left off speaking, in order to know what answer I would make; and I, though at first disconcerted at being so disagreeably undeceived, quickly recollected myself, and surmounting the shame which is always the concomitant of unsuccessful rashness, expressed so much zeal for the lady's interests, and devoted myself with so much ardour to her service, that, though she might still continue to think that I had foolishly flattered myself with having made an impression on her heart, she saw very well that I knew how to make amends for my folly. I asked but two days to bring her an account of Don Lewis; after which, Dame Ortiz being called in by her mistress, conducted me back into the garden, and left me there, after having said, 'Good night, Gil Blas; I know your punctuality so well, that I need not recommend it to you to be early at the next assignation.'

I returned to my chamber, not without some vexation to find my expectations baulked: nevertheless, I was wise enough to reflect, that it became me better to be the confident than the lover of my mistress. I considered, too, that this might turn out to my advantage, as the messengers of love are usually well paid for their trouble; and I went to bed, in a full resolution to perform what Aurora desired. With this view, I went abroad next day, and found no difficulty in learning the place of abode of such a noted cavalier as Don Lewis. I enquired into his character in the neighbourhood; but those to whom I applied could not fully satisfy my curiosity. This made me repeat my enquiries the following day, when I was more successful. Meeting by accident, in the street, a young man of my acquaintance, we

stopt to chat a little; and, that very instant, a friend of his happening to pass, made up to us, and told his comrade, that he had been just turned away by Don Pacheco, the father of Don Lewis, on suspicion of having drank a cask of wine belonging to his master. I did not lose such a fair opportunity of being informed of every thing I wanted to know, and succeeded so well by the questions I asked, that I went home very well satisfied that I was able to keep my word with my mistress. I was to see her again the next night, at the same hour, and in the same manner as at first: but I did not suffer so much disquiet that night; and, far from hearing the conversation of my old master with impatience, I introduced the subject of his campaigns, waited for twelve with the utmost tranquillity, and it was not until I had heard the hour repeated by several clocks, that I went down into the garden, void of essence and perfumes, resolved, for the future, to retrench that extravagance.

I found the most trusty duenna at the rendezvous, and she upbraided me in a satirical manner, for having abated in my diligence. I made no answer, but let her conduct me into the apartment of Aurora; who, as soon as I appeared, asked if I had got good intelligence of Don Lewis. 'Yes, Madam,' said I; 'and you shall hear it in two words. In the first place, I must tell you, that he will set out very soon on his return to Salamanca, in order to finish his studies. He is a young cavalier of honour and probity; and, being a gentleman and Castilian, his courage is not to be doubted; he has, besides, a great deal of wit, and his behaviour is very agreeable: but that which perhaps you will least like in him, is a disposition too much a-kin to that of most of our young noblemen, extremely rakish. You must know that, young as he is, he has already had two actresses in keeping.'—'Is it possible!' cried Aurora; 'Heavens! what morals! But are you certain, Gil Blas, that he leads such a licentious life?'—'Oh! I don't at all doubt it, Madam,' I replied: 'I was informed by a valet, who was turned out of his service this morning; and

servants are commonly very sincere, when they talk of their master's faults. Besides, he keeps company with Don Alexo Segiar, Don Antonio Centelles, and Don Fernando de Gamboa; and that, alone, is a sufficient demonstration of his libertinism.'—'Enough, Gil Blas,' said my mistress, sighing; 'on the credit of your report, I will combat my unworthy passion, which, though it has already taken deep root in my heart, I don't despair to overcome. Go,' added she, giving me a little purse well replenished, 'there's something for your trouble: beware of disclosing my secret, and remember that I depend upon your silence.'

I assured my mistress, that she might make herself perfectly easy on that score, for I was the Harpocrates* of trusty valets. After this assurance, I withdrew, very impatient to know the contents of the purse, in which I found twenty pistoles. This made me believe, that Aurora would have certainly given me more, had I brought her agreeable tidings, since she paid me so handsomely for such a mortifying piece of news; and I repented that I had not imitated the lawyers, who sometimes put a gloss upon the truth in the practice of their profession. I was sorry for having nipt in the bud an intrigue, the consequence of which might have been very advantageous to me: however, I had the consolation to see myself indemnified for my unseasonable expence in essences and perfumes.

CHAP. III.

THE GREAT CHANGE THAT HAPPENED IN THE FAMILY OF DON VINCENT, AND THE STRANGE RESOLUTION WITH WHICH LOVE INSPIRED THE FAIR AURORA.

SOON after this adventure, Signior Don Vincent happened to fall sick; and though he had not been in such an advanced age, the symptoms of his disease were so violent, that we had reason to fear a fatal issue. When he was first seized, two of the most famous physicians of Madrid were sent for:

* Harpocrates, was the god of silence.

one of them was called Doctor Andros, and the other Doctor Oquetos; who having examined the patient with great attention, were of opinion that the humours of his body were in a state of fermentation; but in nothing else could they agree. 'We must make haste,' said Andros, 'and purge off the humours, though they be crude, while they continue in this violent agitation of flux and reflux, lest they settle upon some noble part.' Oquetos, on the contrary, maintained, that they ought to wait for the concoction of the humours, before they should employ a cathartick. 'But your method,' resumed the first, 'is directly opposite to that of the prince of medicine: Hippocrates orders catharticks in the very first days of the most ardent fever, and says, in express terms, that we must be ready to purge, when the humours are in the orgasm; that is to say, in a state of fermentation.'—'O! there you are mistaken,' replied Oquetos; 'Hippocrates, by the word orgasm, does not understand the fermentation, but the concoction of the humours.'

Upon this, the doctors grew passionate; one repeated the Greek text, and quoted all those authors who had explained it in his way: the other, relying on a Latin translation, pronounced it in a tone still more vociferous. 'Which of them was in the right?' Don Vincent was not the man to decide that question; but seeing himself obliged to chuse, bestowed his confidence on him who had dispatched the greatest number of patients; I mean, the eldest of the two. Andros, therefore, who was the younger, withdrew; not without darting some strokes of railery at his senior, on his interpretation of the word orgasm. Oquetos, who remained triumphant, being a man of Dr. Sangrado's principle, began, by ordering his patient to be copiously blooded, deferring his cathartick until the humours should be concocted; but death, who, without doubt, was afraid the purgation so sagely delayed would deprive him of his prey, prevented the concoction, and carried my master off. Such was the end of Signior Don Vincent; who lost his life, because his physician did not understand Greek!

Aurora having celebrated her father's funerals in a manner suitable to his birth, took possession of his estate; and

being now mistress of herself, dismissed some of the domesticks, with rewards proportioned to their several services; and, in a little time, retired to a castle, which she had on the banks of the Tagus, between Sacedon and Buendia. I was not only one of those whom she retained, and carried to the country with her, but also had the good fortune to become a necessary person. Notwithstanding the faithful report I had made to her of Don Lewis, she was still in love with that cavalier; or rather, finding herself unable to conquer her passion, she had abandoned herself entirely to it; and being no longer under a necessity of taking precautions to speak with me in private, 'Gil Blas,' said she, sighing, 'I cannot forget Don Lewis; in spite of all my efforts to banish him from my thoughts, he is still present in my imagination; not such as thou hast painted him, plunged in all sorts of debauchery; but such as I would have him to be, tender, amorous, and constant.' So saying, she began to melt, and could not help shedding some tears, which affected me so much, that I could scarce refrain from weeping also; and I could not make my court to her more effectually, than by sympathizing with her sorrow. 'I see thou hast a very tender disposition, my friend,' added she, after having dried her fair eyes; 'and I am so well satisfied with thy zeal, that thou mayest depend upon being well recompensed. Dear Gil Blas, I have more occasion now than ever for thy assistance. I will disclose to thee a design which at present engrosses me; and which thou wilt, no doubt, pronounce very capricious. Know, that I intend to set out immediately for Salamanca, where I will disguise myself like a cavalier, and, under the name of Don Felix, get acquainted with Pacheco, whose confidence and friendship I will endeavour to acquire: I will often speak to him of Aurora de Guzman, and call myself her cousin; by which means he will perhaps express a desire to see her; and then my expectation will be answered. We will have two different lodgings at Salamanca, in one of which I will pass for Don Felix, in the other for Aurora, and presenting myself to the eyes of Don Lewis,

sometimes

sometimes metamorphosed into a man, and sometimes in my own dress, I flatter myself that I shall, by degrees, accomplish my purpose. I grant," added she, "that this is an extravagant scheme; but I am hurried away by my passion, and the innocence of my intention makes me insensible of the risque I must run."

I was very much of Aurora's opinion, with regard to the nature of her design: nevertheless, how imprudent soever I judged it, I took care not to act the pedagogue; but, on the contrary, began to gild the pill, and undertook to prove, that this mad project was no more than an agreeable frolick, that could have no bad consequence. My mistress was pleased with this construction; for lovers are charmed with flattery, even in their most extravagant fancies. We now, therefore, looked upon this rash enterprize in no other light than that of a comedy, the skilful representation of which it was our business to concert. Having chosen our actors from the servants of the family, the parts were distributed without the least quarrel or disturbance; because we were not players by profession. It was resolved, that Dame Ortiz should act the part of Aurora's aunt, under the name of Donna Ximena de Guzman, attended by a valet and waiting-woman; and that Aurora, dressed like a cavalier, should entertain me as valet de chambre, together with one of her own maids in the disguise of a page, to be always about her person. The characters being thus regulated, we returned to Madrid, where we understood Don Lewis still was, but that it would not be long before he would set out for Salamanca; upon which we ordered the necessary dresses to be made with all diligence; and when they were finished, my mistress caused them to be conveniently packed up, until we should find a proper time and place for putting them on. Then leaving the care of her house to the steward, she set out in a coach drawn by four mules, and took the road to the kingdom of Leon, with all those of her servants who had parts to act in her performance.

We had already crossed Old Castile, when the axle-tree of the coach gave way, between Avila and Villafior, about three or four thousand paces from

a castle, which we perceived at the foot of a mountain. As night approached, we were not a little embarrassed; when a peasant, passing by accident, rid us of our anxiety, by telling us, that the castle which we saw belonged to Donna Elvira, widow of Don Pedro de Pinares; a lady, whose character he extolled so much, that my mistress sent me to the castle, to beg a lodging for one night. Elvira did not belye the countryman's report, but received me with great affability, and favoured Aurora's compliment with such an answer as she desired. We repaired immediately to the castle, whither our coach was dragged slowly by the mules, and at the gate met Don Pedro's widow, who came out to receive my mistress. I will pass over in silence the civil things that were said, on both sides, on this occasion; and only observe, that Elvira was a lady pretty much advanced in years, but very polite, and understood how to perform the duties of hospitality as well as any woman in the world. She conducted Aurora into a sumptuous apartment, where leaving her to repose a few moments, she came and employed her attention on the most minute things that concerned us. Afterwards, when supper was ready, she ordered the cloth to be laid in Aurora's chamber, where they sat down together at table. Don Pedro's widow was not one of those people who cloud the honour of their entertainments with a pensive and discontented air: she was of a gay disposition, and supported the conversation in an agreeable manner, expressing herself with great dignity and elegance. I admired her understanding, and the delicate turn of her thoughts, which seemed to charm Aurora as well as me. They conceived a friendship for one another, and promised to maintain a correspondence by letters. Our coach could not be refitted till the following day, and as we should run some risque by setting out late, it was determined that we should stay at the castle another night. We, in our turn, were served with a profusion of viands, and our beds were no less comfortable than our meal.

Next day, my mistress found new charms in the conversation of Elvira, with whom she dined in a large hall, adorned with several pictures; one of which

which was remarkable for the beauty and wonderful expression of the figures, though it presented a very tragical scene to the view. A dead cavalier appeared lying on his back, and drowned in his own blood; but seemed still to retain a menacing air even in death. Near him lay a young lady in another attitude, stretched also upon the ground; a sword was seen plunged in her bosom, and she breathed her last sighs, fixing her dying eyes upon a young man, who seemed mortally grieved at the loss of her. The painter had likewise drawn another figure, which did not escape my attention: this was, an old man of a good mien, who, strongly affected with the objects that struck his view, discovered as much sensibility as the youth. One would have thought that each of them felt the same pangs, at sight of these doleful images, but that each received the impression in a different manner. The old man seemed overwhelmed with the profound sorrow in which he was plunged: but there was fury mixed with the affliction of the youth. The painter had expressed the whole with such strength, that we could scarce withdraw our eyes from the performance. My mistress having asked what story the picture represented; 'Madam,' said Elvira, 'it is a faithful representation of the misfortunes of my family.' This answer excited the curiosity of Aurora, who expressed such an eager inclination to know more, that Don Pedro's widow could not dispense with promising her the satisfaction she desired. This promise, which was made before Ortiz, her two companions and me, detained us all four in the hall after dinner. My mistress would have sent us away, but Elvira perceiving that we longed fervently to hear the explanation of the picture, had the goodness to bid us stay; saying, that the story which she was going to relate, was none of those that required secrecy: and immediately began in these words.

CHAP. IV.

THE BALEFUL MARRIAGE: A NOVEL *.

ROGER, King of Sicily, had a brother and a sister: the first, called Mainfroy, revolted against him, and lighted up a dangerous and bloody war in the kingdom; but had the misfortune to lose two battles, and fall into the hands of the king, who contented himself with punishing his rebellion, by depriving him of his liberty. This clemency served only to make Roger pass for a barbarian, in the opinion of one part of his subjects, who said he had only saved his brother's life, in order to exercise upon him a slow and inhuman revenge. But all the rest, with better foundation, imputed the harsh treatment that Mainfroy suffered in prison, to his sister Mathilda alone: for she had, in effect, always hated the prince, and did not cease persecuting him as long as he lived; but she died soon after him, and her death was looked upon as a just punishment of her unnatural disposition.

Mainfroy having left two sons, as yet in their infancy, Roger wished to get rid of them; fearing that, when they should arrive at a more advanced age, the desire of revenging their father, would induce them to revive a faction which was not so much quelled, but that it might occasion new troubles in the state. He imparted his design to the senator Leontio Siffredi, his minister; who, to divert him from putting it in execution, undertook the education of Prince Henriquez, the eldest, and advised him to commit the youngest, who was called Don Pedro, to the care of the Constable of Sicily. Roger, persuaded that his nephews would be brought up by these men in that submission and duty which they owed to him, left the princes to their conduct; and took upon himself the care of his niece Constantia, who was of the same age with Henriquez, and only daughter of the Princess Mathilda; he furnished her with women and masters, and spared nothing in her education.

Leontio Siffredi had a castle two short leagues from Palermo, at a place called Belmont; and there that

* This novel is founded in truth, and is the ground-work of Thomson's tragedy of Tancred and Sigismunda.

minister

minister employed himself in rendering Henriquez worthy of mounting one day the throne of Sicily. He soon observed in that prince such amiable qualities, that he applied himself to the cultivation of them as closely as if he had had no children of his own. He was blessed, however, with two daughters; the eldest of whom, called Blanche, younger by a year than the prince, was adorned with the most perfect beauty: the other, named Porcia, whose birth occasioned her mother's death, was still in the cradle. Blanche and Prince Henriquez, as soon as they were capable of love, entertained a mutual passion; though they had not the liberty of conversing in private. The prince, however, did not fail to find opportunities sometimes, and knew so well how to profit by these precious moments, that he engaged the daughter of Siffredi to allow him to execute a project he had formed. Just about this time, it happened that Leontio was obliged, by the king's orders, to make a journey into one of the most remote provinces of the island; and during his absence, Henriquez caused an opening to be made in the wall of his apartment, that was contiguous to the chamber of Blanche; supplying it with a sliding partition of wood, that opened and shut, without being perceived; because it was so closely joined to the cieling, that the eye could not discover the artifice. A skilful architect, whom the prince had made his friend, performed the work with equal diligence and secrecy.

Through this passage the amorous Henriquez introduced himself sometimes into the chamber of his mistress; but he did not abuse her favour: for though she was imprudent enough to allow him a private entrance into her apartment, she did not condescend so far, until he had assured her, that he would never ask any thing that innocence could not grant. One night, he found her very uneasy, because she had heard that Roger was very ill, and had sent for Siffredi, as high chancellor of the kingdom, in order to intrust him with his last will. She represented to herself already, her dear Henri-

quez on the throne, and being afraid of losing him in that high station, was under the utmost anxiety; and the tears stood in her eyes when he appeared. "Heavens! you weep, Madam; what must I think of that sorrow with which I see you overwhelmed?"—"Sir," replied Blanche, "I cannot conceal my alarms: the king, your uncle, will soon cease to live, and you will succeed him. When I, therefore, foresee how far your new greatness will remove you from me, I own, I cannot be unconcerned. A monarch seldom beholds things with a lover's eye, and that which was his utmost ambition while he was a subject, affects him but slightly when he is on the throne. Whether it be an unhappy presage, or reason alone that inspires me, I feel my soul agitated with emotions that all my confidence in your goodness cannot assuage; and though I dare not doubt your generosity, I cannot help distrusting my own destiny."—"Adorable Blanche!" replied the prince, "your fears are obliging, and justify my attachment to your charms; but the excess of your doubts injures my love, and (if I may be allowed to say so) the esteem which you owe me. No! think not my destiny and yours can ever be separated: believe rather, that you will always be the object of my happiness and joy. Lay aside your fear, therefore, and let it not disturb such endearing moments."—"Ah, Sir!" answered the daughter of Leontio, "as soon as you are crowned, your subjects, perhaps, will demand for your queen a princess descended from a long race of kings, whose splendid alliance may add new realms to yours; and perhaps, alas! you will answer their expectation, even at the expence of your inclination."—"Ha! why," replied Henriquez, with some warmth, "why are you thus prone to torment yourself, by raising such an afflicting image of what will never happen? Should Heaven dispose of the king, my uncle, and make me master of Sicily, I swear that I will espouse you in Palermo, in presence of all my court; and I invoke all that is sacred to confirm my oath!"

‘ Siffredi’s

“ Siffredi’s daughter was cheered by the protestations of Henriquez, and the rest of their conversation turned on the king’s distemper : on which occasion, Henriquez discovered the goodness of his heart, in lamenting his uncle’s fate, with which he had no great reason to be affected : the force of blood making him regret a prince, by whose death he should acquire a crown. Blanche, as yet, did not know all the misfortunes that threatened her. The Constable of Sicily had met her coming out of her father’s apartment, one day when he was at the castle of Belmont, on some important affairs, was captivated with her beauty, and next day demanded her in marriage of Siffredi, who consented to the match ; but Roger’s distemper intervening, the nuptials were deferred, and Blanche knew nothing of the matter.

“ One morning, just as Henriquez had done dressing, he was surprized to see Leontio, followed by Blanche, come into his apartment. “ Sir,” said that minister to him, “ the news I bring are afflicting, but the consolation with which they are attended ought to moderate your grief. “ The king your uncle is dead, after having left you heir to his sceptre ; and Sicily is subject to your sway. “ The grandees of the realm, who attend your orders at Palermo, have commissioned me to receive them from your mouth : and I am come, Sir, with my daughter, the first of your new subjects, to offer you our early and sincere homage.” The prince, who knew very well that Roger had laboured two months under a disease that gradually consumed him, was not much surprized at this piece of news ; nevertheless, struck with the sudden change of his condition, he felt a thousand confused emotions rise within his breast ; and having mused some time, broke silence, by addressing himself to Leontio in these words ; “ Sage Siffredi, I shall always look upon you as my father, glory in regulating my conduct by your counsel, and you shall be as much a king in Sicily as I am.” So saying, he advanced to a table on which there was a standish, and taking a sheet of paper, wrote his name at the bottom of the page.

“ What are you about to do, Sir,” said Siffredi to him. “ I am going to manifest my gratitude and esteem,” answered Henriquez, presenting the sheet to Blanche, and saying, “ Receive, Madam, this pledge of my faith, and of the empire over my inclinations, which I now yield to you.” Blanche took it, blushing, and made this answer to the prince : “ I receive with respect the favours of my king ; but I depend upon a father ; and I hope your Majesty will not take it ill, that I deposit this paper in his hands, to be used as his prudence shall direct him.”

“ She accordingly gave the subscription of Henriquez to her father, who then observed what till that moment had escaped his penetration : he discerned the prince’s sentiments, and said to him ; “ Your Majesty shall have no cause to reproach me ; for I will not abuse your confidence.” — “ My dear Leontio,” cried Henriquez, interrupting him, “ don’t imagine you can abuse it. Whatever use you shall make of the paper, I will approve of your determination. “ But go,” added he, “ return to Palermo, order the preparations to be made for my coronation, and tell my subjects, that I will follow you immediately thither, in order to receive their oaths of allegiance, and assure them of my affection.” The minister obeyed his new master’s order ; and, with his daughter, set out for Palermo.

“ A few hours after their departure, the prince took the same road, more engrossed by his love, than by the high rank to which he was raised. As soon as he arrived in the city, he was saluted with innumerable shouts of joy ; and, amidst the acclamations of his people, entered the palace, where every thing was already prepared for the ceremony, and where he found the Princess Constantia in deep mourning, and to all appearance very much affected with Roger’s death. As they owed one another a mutual compliment of condolence on the event, they both acquitted themselves very handsomely ; but it was more cold on the side of Henriquez, than on that of Constance ; who, in spite of the enmity subsisting between their families, could not hate the prince.

“ He

He placed himself on the throne, and the princess sat on his right-hand, in an elbow-chair not quite so high. The grandees of the kingdom took their places, each according to his rank: the ceremony began, and Leontio, as high-chancellor of the state, and keeper of the late king's will, opened and read it with an audible voice. This deed contained in substance, that Roger seeing himself without issue, named the eldest son of Mainfroy for his successor, on condition that he should espouse the Princess Constance; which if he refused to perform, he should forfeit the crown of Sicily to the infant Don Pedro, his brother, who should enjoy it on the same terms.

Henriquez was confounded at these words; the restriction gave him incredible pain, which became still more violent, when Leontio, after having read the will, pronounced to the whole assembly, "My lords, having reported the last intentions of the late king to our new monarch, that generous prince consents to honour his cousin, the Princess Constance, with his hand." At these words, Henriquez interrupted the chancellor, saying, "Leontio, remember the writing which Blanche—" "Sir," said Siffredi with precipitation, before the prince had time to explain himself, "here it is. The grandees of the realm," added he, shewing the paper to the assembly, "will here see by your majesty's august signature, the esteem you have for the princess, and the deference you pay to the last will of the deceased king your uncle." Having spoke these words, he read the deed with which he himself had filled the paper, containing the most solemn engagement to marry Constance, conformable to the intention of Roger. The hall rung with repeated shouts of all present, who cried, "Long live our magnanimous King Henriquez!" for as nobody was ignorant of the aversion which that prince had always manifested for the princess, it was feared, not without reason, that he would revolt against the condition of the will, and by these means raise commotions in the kingdom. But the reading of this paper entirely composed the minds of the nobles

and people, and excited those general acclamations, which in secret tortured the monarch's soul.

Constance, who, both on account of her own glory, and her passion for Henriquez, enjoyed the publick satisfaction more than any body; chose this time to assure him of her gratitude. But the prince, in vain endeavouring to constrain himself, received her compliments with great affliction; and was, indeed, in such disorder, that he could not even perform what decency required. At last, yielding to the violence of his passion, he approached Siffredi, whom the duty of his office obliged to be pretty near his person, and with a low voice said, "What have you done, Leontio? The subscription, which I put into your daughter's hands, was not intended for this use. You have betrayed—" "Sir," said Siffredi, interrupting him in a resolute tone, "consider your own glory; if you refuse to follow the will of the king your uncle, you lose the crown of Sicily." He had no sooner spoke in this manner, than he removed at a greater distance from the king, that he might not have an opportunity to reply. Henriquez remained in the utmost perplexity, and felt himself agitated by contrary emotions. He was incensed against Siffredi; he could not resolve to abandon Blanche; but, distracted between her and the interest of his glory, it was some time before he could come to any resolution. However, he was determined at last, and thought he had fallen upon a method to preserve the daughter of Siffredi, without renouncing the throne. He feigned submission to the will of Roger, and purposed, while a dispensation for his marriage with his cousin should be soliciting at Rome, to gain the nobles of the realm by his bounty, and establish his power so well, that he should not be obliged to fulfil it's conditions.

As soon as he had formed this design, he became more tranquil; and turning to Constance, confirmed to her what the high-chancellor had read before the whole assembly. But in the very moment when he betrayed himself so far as to plight his troth to her, Blanche arrived in the council-hall. She came thither by her

father's command, to pay her respects to the princess, and her ears were struck with the words of Henriquez, at her first entrance. Besides, Leontio, being desirous that she should have no cause to doubt of her misfortune, said, while he presented her to Constance, "Daughter, do homage to your queen, and wish her all the sweets of a flourishing reign and happy marriage."—This terrible stroke overwhelmed the unfortunate Blanche: in vain she endeavoured to conceal her grief; she blushed, and grew pale, alternately, and shook through every limb. Nevertheless, the princess had not the least suspicion of the cause, but attributed the disorder in which she paid her compliment, to the perplexity of a young creature bred up in solitude, and altogether unaccustomed to the court. It was quite otherwise with the young king: the sight of Blanche abashed him; and the despair he observed in her eyes, transported him quite beside himself. He did not doubt that, judging by appearances, she believed him unfaithful. He would have been less uneasy, could he have spoke to her: but how could he find an opportunity, when all Sicily, as one may say, had its eyes upon him. Besides, the cruel Siffredi deprived him of that hope: for, reading the thoughts of these two lovers in their looks, and willing to prevent the mischief which the violence of their passion might create in the state, that minister, in an artful manner, carried his daughter out of the assembly, and set out with her on his return to Belmont; resolved, for more reasons than one, to have her married as soon as possible.

They were no sooner arrived, than he made her acquainted with all the horror of her fate, by declaring that he had promised her in marriage to the Constable. "Just Heaven!" cried she, in a transport of grief, which her father's presence could not repress; "for what direful punishment is the unfortunate Blanche reserved!" Her despair was even so violent, as to suspend all the faculties of her soul. She was seized with an universal chillness, and becoming

clay-cold and wan, swooned away in the arms of her father. He was affected with her condition; but, though he shared her affliction with all the tenderness of a parent, his resolution still remained unshaken. Blanche, at length, recovered her spirits, more through the exquisite sensation of her grief, than through the water which Siffredi sprinkled on her face; which perceiving, while she opened her languishing eyes, "Sir," said she, with a feeble voice, "I am ashamed that you have seen my weakness; but death, which must soon end my torments, will in a little time rid you of an unhappy daughter, who has dared to dispose of her heart without your consent."—"No, my dear Blanche," replied Leontio; "live, and let virtue resume its empire in your breast. The Constable's passion does you honour; he is the most considerable match in the kingdom."—"I esteem his person and his merit," said Blanche, interrupting him; "but, Sir, the king had made me hope—" "Daughter," said Siffredi, cutting her short in his turn, "I know all that you can say on that subject. I am not ignorant of your tenderness for the prince, which at another conjuncture I should not disapprove. You should even see me eager to ensure you of the hand of Henriquez, if the interest of his glory, and that of the state, did not oblige him to bestow it on Constance. It is on that condition only, that the late king designed him for his successor; and would you have him prefer you to the crown of Sicily? Believe me, I sympathize with you in the cruel stroke you suffer; but since we cannot withstand the decrees of destiny, make one generous effort. Your glory is concerned, in concealing from the kingdom the vain hope with which you flattered yourself. Your sensibility for the king may raise reports to your disadvantage; and the only means of preventing them, will be to marry the Constable. In short, Blanche, this is no time to deliberate. The king yields you for a throne, and marries Constance. The Constable has my promise, which I beg you will

per-

perform; and if I must use my authority to bring you to this resolution, I order you to comply."

So saying, he left her to reflect upon what she had heard, hoping, that after having maturely considered the arguments he had used, to support her virtue against her inclination, she would resolve, of herself, to give her hand to the Constable. In this he was not mistaken. But, what pangs did it cost the melancholy Blanche, before she came to that determination! she was in a condition, which, of all others, was most worthy of compassion! Grief for seeing her presages of the infidelity of Henriquez changed into certainty, and for being constrained, in losing him, to give herself away to another, whom she could not love, created in her such violent transports of affliction, that every moment was attended with new torture. "If my misfortune is certain," cried she, "how can I resist it without dying? Cruel destiny! why was I fed with the most delicious hope, when I was doomed to such an abyss of misery! And thou, perfidious lover! how durst thou betroth thyself to another, after thou hadst promised eternal fidelity to me? hast thou so soon forgot the faith which thou hadst sworn? As a punishment for having so cruelly deceived me, may Heaven make the nuptial bed, which thou art going to stain with perjury, not a scene of pleasure, but remorse! May the caresses of Constance convey poison to thy faithless heart! and may thy marriage be as baleful as mine! Yes, traitor! I will espouse the Constable, whom I cannot love, to revenge me upon myself, and punish me, for having made so indiscreet a choice of the object of my love! Since my religion forbids me to make an attempt upon my life, the days I have to live shall be nothing else than an unhappy series of trouble and disquiet. If thou still preservest any tenderness for me, thou wilt be mortified at seeing me throw myself into the arms of another; and if thou hast entirely forgot me, Sicily, at least, may boast of having produced a woman, who punished herself for having too simply disposed of her heart!"

In such a situation did this unhappy victim of love and duty pass the night that preceded her marriage with the Constable; and Siffredi, finding her next day ready to comply with his desire, made haste to take the advantage of that favourable disposition. He sent for the Constable to Belmont that same day, and married him privately to his daughter, in the chapel of the castle. It was not enough to renounce a crown, to lose for ever a person whom she loved, and bestow herself upon the object of her hatred; but she was also obliged to dissemble her sentiments before a husband who was inflamed with the most ardent passion for her, and naturally of a jealous disposition. Her spouse, charmed with the possession of what he held most dear, was continually in her company, and did not even allow her the sad consolation of bewailing her misfortune in secret. When night approached, the daughter of Leontio felt her affliction redouble: but what were her pangs, when her women, after having undressed, left her alone with the Constable! He asked, in a respectful manner, the cause of that sorrow with which she seemed to be depressed; and Blanche, perplexed by the question, feigned herself indisposed. This deceived her husband at first, but he did not long continue in his mistake: for, as he was really concerned at the condition in which he saw her, and pressed her to go to bed, his intreaties, which she misinterpreted, presented such a cruel image to her imagination, that, being unable to contain herself any longer, she gave free vent to her sighs and tears. What a sight was this for a man, who believed himself at the very summit of his happiness! He no longer doubted that the affliction of his wife portended something sinister to his love. Nevertheless, though the knowledge of it threw him into a situation almost as deplorable as that of Blanche, he had such command of himself, that he concealed his suspicions. He redoubled his intreaties, and continued to press his spouse to go to rest; assuring her, that he would not interrupt the repose which she seemed so much to want. He even offered to

call her women, if she thought their assistance could alleviate her indisposition. Blanche, encouraged by this promise, told him, that her present weakness only required a little sleep. He pretended to believe her; and going to bed together, they passed a night very different from those which Cupid and Hymen bestow on two lovers inspired by mutual passion.

While Siffredi's daughter indulged her sorrow, the Constable endeavoured, within himself, to divine the cause that rendered his marriage so unhappy. He concluded there was a rival in the case; but was bewildered in his own imagination, when he attempted to discover who that rival was; and the sole result of his conjectures was, that he was the most unhappy of all mankind. He had already spent two thirds of the night in these agitations, when his ears were struck with a hollow noise; and he was not a little surprized to hear somebody walking softly in the chamber. He believed himself mistaken; for he remembered that he himself had locked the door, after Blanche's women were gone, and drew back the curtain to discover, by the evidence of his eyes, the cause of the noise which he heard: but the light, which had been left in the chimney, was extinguished; and in a little time he heard the name of Blanche repeated several times, in a soft and languishing tone. Then his jealous suspicions were inflamed to fury, and his honour alarmed, obliging him to rise, in order to prevent an affront, or take vengeance for it, he seized his sword, and moved towards that side whence the voice seemed to come. Feeling a naked sword opposed to his own, he advanced, the other retired; he pursued, and the other vanished from his pursuit. In vain did he search for him, who seemed to fly, through all the corners of the room, as much as the darkness would allow; he could not find him; he stopped, listened, and heard nothing. All seemed to be enchantment! he went to the door, which he imagined had favoured the flight of the secret enemy of his honour, but he found it fast locked as before. Not being able to comprehend any thing of this ad-

venture, he called those of his people who were nearest, and as he opened the door for that purpose, stood in the passage, and kept himself on his guard, that the person whom he sought might not escape.

Some servants hearing his repeated cries, came running with lights; upon which, he took a candle, and made a new search in the chamber, sword in hand; but found nobody, nor the least mark of any person's having been there. He did not even perceive the private door, nor the opening, through which there was a passage. He could not, however, blindfold himself, with regard to the circumstances of his misfortune, but remained in a strange confusion of thoughts. Should he have recourse to Blanche, she was too much concerned in the truth, for him to expect an explanation from her. He therefore, resolved to go and open his heart to Leontio, after having dismissed his servants; telling them, that he thought he had heard a noise in his chamber, but was mistaken. He met his father-in-law coming out of his apartment, at the disturbance he had heard, and recounted to him what had happened, with all the marks of extreme agitation and profound grief.

Siffredi was surprized at the adventure, which, tho' it did not seem natural, he nevertheless believed; and thinking that the king's love was capable of any thing, was very much afflicted with that consideration. But far from flattering the jealous suspicions of his son-in-law, he represented to him, with an air of assurance, that the voice, which he thought he heard, and the sword that was opposed to his, could be no other than phantoms of an imagination, misled by jealousy; for it was impossible that any body could have gone into his daughter's chamber; that with regard to the melancholy which he had observed in his wife, it might be occasioned by some indisposition; that honour ought not to be answerable for the vicissitudes of temper; that the change of condition in a girl used to live in solitude, who sees herself in a sudden delivered to a man, whom she has not had time to know and to love, might

might be the cause of those tears, sighs, and that sharp affliction, of which she complained; that love was not to be kindled in maidens of a noble birth, by any other means than time and assiduity; for which reasons he exhorted him to calm his disquiet, redouble his tenderness and care, in order to dispose Blanche to become more sensible of his merit; and intreated him to return to his chamber, being persuaded that his uneasiness and distrust were injuries done to the virtue of his wife.

The Constable made no answer to the remonstrances of his father-in-law: whether he really began to think that he might have been imposed upon by the disorder of his mind, or judged it a wiser course to dissemble, than to undertake, in vain, to convince the old man of an event so void of all probability, he returned to his apartment, lay down by his wife, and tried to obtain, by sleep, some respite from his disquiet. Blanche, on her side, was no less uneasy than he; she had but too well heard that which alarmed her husband, and could not consider as an illusion, an adventure, the secret and motives of which she knew. Surprized that Henriquez should seek to introduce himself into her apartment, after having so solemnly pledged his faith to Constance, instead of approving or feeling the least glimpse of joy at this step, she looked upon it as a new outrage, and her heart was incensed against him.

While the daughter of Siffredi, prejudiced against the young king, believed him the most unfaithful of men, that unhappy prince, more in love than ever, wished for an interview with Blanche, in order to encourage her against the appearances that condemned him. He would have come sooner to Belmont for that purpose, had he been permitted by the multiplicity of business in which he was necessarily engaged; but he could not steal away from court before that night. He was too well acquainted with all the private corners of a place where he had been educated, to be under any difficulty of getting unseen into Siffredi's

castle; and he still kept the key of a private door that belonged to the garden, through which he got into his old apartment, from whence he passed into the chamber of Blanche. You may imagine the astonishment of that prince, when he found a man there, and felt a sword opposed to his own. He had well nigh discovered himself, and punished on the spot the audacious wretch, who durst lift his sacrilegious hand against his lawful king; but the respect he owed to Leontio's daughter suspended his resentment: he retired in the same manner he had entered; and, more afflicted than ever, took the road to Palermo; where, arriving some moments before day, he shut himself up in his apartment. But the agitation of his spirits depriving him of his rest, he resolved to return to Belmont; his safety, honour, and above all, his love, not permitting him to remain longer ignorant of the least circumstance of such a cruel adventure.

It was no sooner day than he commanded his hunting equipage to be got ready; and, under pretence of taking that diversion, rode far into the forest of Belmont, attended by his sportsmen and some courtiers. He followed the chase some time, the better to conceal his design; and when he saw every one eagerly engaged at the heels of the hounds, he separated himself from them, and, all alone, took his way to Leontio's castle. He was too well acquainted with the paths of the forest, to lose himself; and his impatience not permitting him to spare his horse, he in a little time over-run the distance that separated him from the object of his love. He was just inventing some plausible pretext to procure for himself a private interview with the daughter of Siffredi, when, crossing a small road that led by one of the park gates, he perceived, hard by, two women, sitting in close conversation at the root of a tree. As he did not doubt that these persons belonged to the castle, the sight of them raised within him some emotion; but he was much more transported, when the women, turning towards him, at the noise of his horse's

“horse’s feet, he knew one of them to be his dear Blanche, who had escaped from the castle with Nisa, one of her women, who enjoyed the greatest share of her confidence, to bewail her misfortune at full liberty.

“He flew; he threw himself headlong (if I may use the expression) at her feet; and perceiving in her eyes all the marks of the most profound affliction, was melted at the sight. “Fair Blanche,” said he, “suspend the emotions of your grief; appearances, I confess, represent me guilty to your eyes: but when you are made acquainted with the design which I have formed in your behalf, that which you now look upon as a crime, will appear to you a proof of my innocence and excess of love.” These words, which Henriquez thought capable of moderating, served only to redouble the affliction of Blanche, who would have answered him, had not her voice been choaked up with her sighs. The prince, astonished with her disorder, said, “How, Madam! can’t I, then, calm your disquiet? By what misfortune have I lost your confidence? I, who hazard my crown, and even my life, to keep myself yours!” It was then that the daughter of Siffredi, making an effort to explain herself, replied, “Sir, your promises are now unseASONABLE. Nothing henceforth can bind my destiny to yours.”—“Ah, Blanche!” said Henriquez, interrupting her with warmth, “what cruel words are these I hear! Who dares ravish you from my love? Who dares oppose the fury of a king, who would put all Sicily in flames, rather than suffer you to be torn from his hopes?”—“All your powers, Sir,” answered Siffredi’s daughter, in a languishing manner, “cannot remove the obstacles by which we are separated—I am the Constable’s wife!”—“The Constable’s wife!” cried the prince, staggering backward, and unable to go on. He was confounded and overwhelmed by this unexpected blow: his strength forsook him, and he dropped down at the root of a tree that grew behind him. Pale, trembling, and depressed, he had nothing free but his eyes, which he fixed up-

on Blanche, in such a manner as gave her to understand how deeply affected he was with the unhappy tidings she had declared. She, on the other hand, looked upon him with an air which convinced him that her emotions were little different from those he felt; and these two unfortunate lovers preserved, between them, a silence that had something terrible in it. At length, the prince, recollecting himself a little, by an effort of his courage, resumed the discourse, and said to Blanche, with a sigh, “What have you done, Madam! Your credulity has ruined me, and undone yourself!”

“Blanche, piqued at the prince’s seeming to upbraid her, when she thought she had much more cause to complain of him, replied, “What, Sir! do you add dissimulation to infidelity? Would you have me discredit my own eyes and ears, and believe you innocent, in spite of the evidence of my senses? No, Sir! I own myself incapable of such an effort of reason.”—“Nevertheless, Madam,” answered the king, “you are imposed upon by these very witnesses which seem so faithful; even they have assisted in betraying you; and that I am innocent and faithful, is no less true, than that you are the Constable’s wife.”—“How, Sir!” said she, “did I not hear you confirm to Constance the present of your hand and heart? Have you not assured the nobles of the kingdom, that you would fulfil the conditions of the late king’s will? and has not the prince received the homage of your new subjects, in quality of queen, and spouse of Henriquez? Were my eyes then bewitched? Say, say rather, unfaithful prince! that you did not think Blanche ought to balance in your heart the interest of a throne! and, without stooping to feign a passion that you no longer feel, and perhaps never felt, confess that the crown of Sicily appeared to you more fixed with Constance than with Leontio’s daughter! You are in the right, Sir; a shining throne was no more my due, than the heart of a prince such as you are. I was too vain, in pretending to either; but you ought not

“not to have indulged me in my error. You know the alarms I felt on account of losing you; a misfortune that then seemed to me almost inevitable. Why did you encourage me with hope? Would to Heaven my fears had not been dissipated! I should have accused fortune, not you; and you would have, at least, preserved my heart, though at the expence of a hand which no other should ever have obtained! It is now no time to justify yourself! I am the Constable's wife; and, that I may spare myself the consequence of a conversation that makes my glory blush, give me leave, Sir, without failing in that respect which I owe you, to quit the presence of a prince whom I am no longer at liberty to hear.”

“So saying, she left Henriquez with as much haste as her present weak condition would allow. “Stop, Madam!” cried he, “and do not drive to despair a prince, who will rather overturn that throne which you upbraid him with having preferred to you, than fulfil the expectation of his new subjects!”—“That sacrifice,” said Blanche, “is at present vain. While I am married to the Constable, these generous transports will not avail: since I am then no longer at liberty, it is of small importance to me that you reduce Sicily to ashes, or to whom you give your hand! If I have been weak enough to let my heart be surprised, I shall at least have fortitude enough to stifle its emotions, and let the new King of Sicily see, that the Constable's wife is no longer the lover of Prince Henriquez!” When she pronounced these words, being close to the park-gate, she entered it of a sudden with Nisa; and, locking it on the other side, left the prince overwhelmed with sorrow. He could not recover the blow which Blanche had given him, by the account of her marriage. “Unjust Blanche!” cried he, “you have lost all remembrance of our mutual engagement! In spite of our reciprocal vows, we are for ever parted; and the idea which I had cherished of possessing your charms, was no more than a vain illusion! Ah, cruel maid! how

dearly did I buy your approbation of my flame!”

“Then the image of his rival's happiness presented itself to his fancy, with all the horrors of jealousy; which took such full possession of his soul for some moments, that he was on the point of sacrificing the Constable, and even Siffredi himself, to his resentment. Reason, however, by degrees, allayed the violence of his transports: but the impossibility he perceived of banishing from Blanche the impressions she retained of his infidelity, threw him again into despair. He flattered himself with the hopes of effacing them, provided he could converse with her at liberty: for which purpose, judging it necessary to remove the Constable, he resolved to have him apprehended, as a person suspected of designs against the state. He accordingly charged with this office the captain of his guard; who, repairing to Belmont, secured his person in the twilight, and brought him prisoner to the castle of Palermo.

“This incident filled all Belmont with consternation. Siffredi set out immediately to offer himself to the king, as security for his son-in-law, and to represent the troublesome consequence of such an arrest. The prince, who expected this step of his minister, and who was resolved, at all events to obtain a free interview with Blanche, before the Constable should be released, had expressly ordered, that no person whatever should speak with him till next day. But Leontio, notwithstanding this order, finding means to get access to the king's chamber, presented himself before him, saying, “Sir, if a loyal and respectful subject may be allowed to complain of his master, I am come to complain of you to yourself. What crime has my son-in-law committed? Has your majesty duly reflected on the eternal reproach you have fixed upon my family? and on the consequences of an imprisonment, which may alienate from your service the hearts of those who fill the most important posts of the realm?”—“I have certain intelligence,” replied the king, “that the Constable carries on a criminal

"minal correspondence with the Infant Don Pedro."—"Criminal correspondence!" cried Leontio, with surprize; "do not believe it. Your majesty is imposed upon; treason never entered the family of Siffredi; and the Constable's being my son-in-law, is enough to screen him from all suspicion. The Constable is innocent; but other secret views have induced you to arrest him."

"Since you talk to me so freely," replied the king, "I will speak to you in the same manner. You complain of the Constable's being imprisoned. What! have I not more cause to complain of your cruelty? It is you, barbarous Siffredi! who have robbed me of my quiet, and reduced me, by your officious cares, to a condition that makes me envy the lowest of mankind! But do not flatter yourself that I will enter into your schemes: my marriage with Constance is resolved upon in vain!"—"How, Sir!" cried Leontio, trembling; "can you refuse to marry the princess, after having flattered her with that hope before your whole people?"—"If I deceive their expectation," replied the king, "ascribe it solely to yourself. Why did you lay me under a necessity of promising that which I could not perform? Who compelled you to fill a paper, which I gave your daughter, with the name of Constance? You was not ignorant of my intention; you tyrannized over the heart of Blanche, in making her marry a man whom she did not love! But what right had you to dispose of mine, in favour of a princess whom I hate? Have you forgot that she is the daughter of that cruel Mathilda, who, trampling under her feet all the ties of blood and humanity, made my father breathe his last, under all the rigours of captivity? And shall I espouse her? No, Siffredi! lay aside that hope. Before you see the torch of these direful nuptials lighted, you will see all Sicily in flames, and its ashes quenched in blood!"

"What do I hear!" cried Leontio. "Ah, Sir! what a prospect have you shewn me! what terrible threats! But I am unreasonably alarmed," added he, in another tone; "you

love your subjects too well, to entail upon them such misery. You will not allow yourself to be overcome by love! You will not tarnish your virtues with the weaknesses of ordinary men! If I have bestowed my daughter on the Constable, it was done, Sir, with a view of acquiring for your majesty a valiant subject, who can support with his arm, and the troops which are at his disposal, your interest against that of the Prince Don Pedro. I thought, that in attaching him to my family, by such intimate ties—" "Ha! these are the ties," cried the Prince Henriquez, "these are the fatal ties that have undone me! Cruel friend! why did you inflict such a heavy stroke upon me! Did I order you to manage my concerns at the expence of my heart? Why did you not leave me to support my rights by myself? Did I want courage to reduce those who should rebel against me, I should have known how to punish the Constable, had he disobeyed me. I know that kings ought not to be tyrants, and that the happiness of their people should be their chief aim; but must they therefore be the slaves of their subjects; and from the moment that Heaven chuses them to govern, lose the right that nature grants to all men, of disposing their affections as they please? Ah! if they must not enjoy the privilege of the lowest class of mortals, take back, Siffredi, that sovereign power, which you would confirm at the expence of my repose!"

"You know very well, Sir," replied the minister, "that your marriage with the princess was, by the late king, made the condition of your succession to the crown."—"And what right," answered Henriquez, "had he to establish that disposition? Had he received such an unworthy law, when he succeeded to his brother King Charles? And how came you to be so weak, as to submit to the unjust condition? For an high-chancellor, methinks you are very ill informed of our customs. In a word; though I have promised my hand to Constance, it was not a voluntary engagement, therefore I do not intend to keep my word; and if Don Pedro, from my refusal, con-

ceive

“ceives the hope of mounting my throne, without engaging the people in a quarrel, which might cost too much blood, let the sword decide, in single combat, which of us is most worthy to reign.” Leontio, not daring to urge him any farther, contented himself with asking, on his knees, the enlargement of his son-in-law, which he obtained. “Go,” said the king to him; “return to Belmont, whither the Constable will soon follow you.” The minister went away, and got back to Belmont, persuaded that his son-in-law would not be long behind him. But in this he was mistaken: Henriquez resolved to see Blanche that night, and therefore deferred the release of her husband till next day.

Meanwhile, the Constable was tortured with the most cruel reflections: his imprisonment had opened his eyes, with regard to the true cause of his misfortune; he therefore abandoned himself entirely to his jealousy, and renouncing the allegiance he had hitherto so commendably preserved, breathed nothing but vengeance. As he concluded that the king would not fail of being with Blanche that night, in order to surprise them together, he begged the governor of the castle of Palermo to let him go out; assuring him that he would return to prison next morning before day. The governor, who was entirely devoted to him, consented to this the more easily, as he knew that Siffredi had already obtained his liberty, and even furnished him with a horse to carry him to Belmont; where the Constable being arrived, he tied his horse to a tree, entered the park by a little door, of which he had the key, and was so lucky as to get into the castle unperceived. He went straight to the apartment of his wife, and concealing himself in an antichamber, behind a screen which he found there, purposed to observe from thence all that should pass, and to appear suddenly in Blanche’s chamber, at the least noise he should hear. While he was in this situation, he saw Nisa come out from her mistress, and retire to the closet where she lay.

Siffredi’s daughter, who had easily discerned the motive of her husband’s

imprisonment, concluded, that he would not return that night to Belmont, although her father had told her, the king assured him the Constable would set out soon after him. She did not doubt that Henriquez would take the advantage of that conjuncture to visit and converse with her at liberty; and, in this opinion, she waited for the prince, in order to reproach him with an action which might have terrible consequences in regard to her. Accordingly, in a little time after Nisa had withdrawn, the partition opened, and the king came and threw himself at Blanche’s feet, saying, “Madam, do not condemn before you have given me the hearing: if I have ordered the Constable to be imprisoned, consider that it was the only means I had left to justify myself; therefore impute that artifice to yourself alone. Why did you, this morning, refuse to hear me? Alas! to-morrow your husband will be enlarged, and I shall never have an opportunity of speaking to you again. Hear me then, for this last time: if the loss of you makes me the most forlorn of mankind, at least grant me the melancholy consolation of convincing you, that my infidelity is not the cause of my misfortune; for though I confirmed to Constance the offer of my hand, it was what I could not dispense with doing, in the situation to which your father had reduced me. There was a necessity for my deceiving the princess, for your interest as well as my own, in order to secure to you the crown as well as the person of your lover. This I flattered myself with accomplishing; and had already taken measures to break that fatal engagement: but you have destroyed my plan; and, by giving yourself away too inconsiderately, laid up a fund of eternal sorrow for two hearts, which might have been rendered happy by the most inviolable love!”

He ended this complaint with such visible marks of real despair, that Blanche was touched with his condition, and no longer doubted his innocence, which at first gave her some joy; but afterwards, stung with the consideration of her misfortune, “Ah, Sir!” said she to the prince,

S

“after

“ after the cruel determination of our
 “ fate, you increase my affliction, by
 “ letting me know that you were not
 “ guilty! What have I done? Unfor-
 “ tunate that I am! my resentment
 “ has betrayed me! I thought myself
 “ abandoned; and, in revenge, accept-
 “ ed of the Constable’s hand, which
 “ was presented by my father! I am
 “ guilty of the crime, and have been
 “ the cause of our mutual mishap!
 “ Alas! while I accused you of hav-
 “ ing deceived me, it was I, too cre-
 “ dulous lover! it was I who broke
 “ those bonds which I had sworn to
 “ keep for ever inviolate! Revenge
 “ yourself, Sir, in your turn. Hate
 “ the ungrateful Blanche! forget her!”
 —“ Ah, Madam!” said Henriquez,
 “ interrupting her with a melancholy
 “ air, “ how shall I find means to tear
 “ from my heart a passion, which even
 “ your injustice cannot extinguish!”
 —“ You must, however, Sir, make
 “ that effort,” replied Siffredi’s daugh-
 “ ter, sighing. “ What! are you ca-
 “ pable of that effort yourself?” said
 “ the king. “ I cannot promise to
 “ succeed,” answered she; but I will
 “ spare no pains in the endeavour.”—
 “ Ah, cruel Blanche!” said the prince;
 “ you will easily forget Henriquez,
 “ since you are able to form such a
 “ design!”—“ And what can you ex-
 “ pect!” replied she, in a more reso-
 “ lute tone: “ do you flatter yourself
 “ that I will allow you to continue
 “ your addresses? No, Sir; abandon
 “ that hope! Though I was not born
 “ to be a queen, Heaven never form-
 “ ed me to listen to dishonourable love.
 “ My husband, as well as you, Sir,
 “ is descended from the noble house
 “ of Anjou; and if my duty did not
 “ raise an insurmountable obstacle to
 “ your gallantry, my glory would hin-
 “ der me from enduring it: I conjure
 “ you, therefore, to retire. We must
 “ see one another no more!”—“ Hea-
 “ vens! what barbarity!” replied the
 “ king: “ Ah, Blanche! is it possible
 “ that you should treat me with such
 “ rigour? You do not think, then,
 “ that your being in the arms of the
 “ Constable, is enough to overwhelm
 “ me? you must also forbid me your
 “ sight, the only consolation I had
 “ left!” —“ Fly me, rather!” an-
 “ swered the daughter of Siffredi, shed-
 “ ding some tears; “ the sight of what

“ one tenderly loves, ceases to be pleas-
 “ ing, when the hope of possessing is
 “ is lost. Adieu, Sir! Fly from me!
 “ you owe that effort to your own
 “ glory, and my reputation! I ask it
 “ also for my quiet: for, in short,
 “ although my virtue should not be
 “ alarmed by the emotions of my
 “ heart, the remembrance of your ten-
 “ derness will entail upon me such
 “ cruel conflicts, that I shall scarce
 “ have strength enough to maintain
 “ them!”

“ She pronounced these words so pas-
 “ sionately, that she unwittingly over-
 “ turned a candlestick which stood on
 “ a table behind her; and the candle
 “ going out in falling, she took it up
 “ in order to light it again; for which
 “ purpose, she opened the door of the
 “ anti-chamber, and went to the closet
 “ of Nisa, who was not yet gone to bed.
 “ The king, who waited for her re-
 “ turn, no sooner saw her approach
 “ with the light, than he made pressing
 “ instances to her, that she would suf-
 “ fer his attachment. The Constable
 “ hearing the prince’s voice, rushed into
 “ the chamber sword in hand, almost
 “ at the same instant that his wife en-
 “ tered, and advancing towards Hen-
 “ riquez with all the resentment that
 “ his rage inspired, “ This is too much,
 “ tyrant!” cried he: “ think not that
 “ I am so base as to endure the af-
 “ front thou hast done my honour!”—
 “ Traitor!” replied the king, putting
 “ himself in a posture of defence, “ do
 “ not imagine that thou art able
 “ to execute thy designs with impu-
 “ nity!” With these words, they be-
 “ gan a combat which was too furious
 “ to last long: the Constable, fearing
 “ that Siffredi and his servants, alarm-
 “ ed at the cries of Blanche, would
 “ soon come and oppose his vengeance,
 “ fought without caution. His rage di-
 “ vested him of all judgment; he took
 “ his measures so ill, that he run upon
 “ his adversary’s sword, which entered
 “ his body to the hilt; and the moment
 “ he fell, the king checked his indig-
 “ nation.

“ Leontio’s daughter, touched with
 “ the condition in which she saw her
 “ husband, and surmounting the natu-
 “ ral reluctance she had for him, threw
 “ herself on the floor, and supported
 “ him with the most eager concern.
 “ But that unhappy spouse was too
 “ much

af-
is
el
wn
it
rt,
be
my
en-
uch
urce
tain

pas-
ver-
d on
ndle
t up
hich
the
loset
bed.

re-
oach
ssing
suf-
table
into
lmost
e en-

Hen-
that
much,
t that
e af-
"I"-
otting
"do

able
impu-
ey be-
arious
earing
larm-
would
eance,
age di-
e took
upon
ntered
oment
indig-

d with
aw her
e natu-
threw
ported
oncern.
as too
much





much prepossessed against her, to be affected with these expressions of her grief and compassion. Death, whose approaches he felt, could not suppress the transports of his jealousy: he saw nothing in his last moments, but the happiness of his rival; and the idea appeared so horrid, that collecting all the strength he had left, he lifted the sword which was still in his hand, and plunged it in the breast of Blanche. "Die!" said he, while he stabbed her; "die, faithless woman! since the ties of marriage have been too weak to preserve that faith which you swore to me at the altar!—And thou, Henriquez," added he; "boast not of thy fate. Thou canst not enjoy my misfortune, and therefore I die satisfied." Having spoke thus, he expired; and his countenance, covered as it was with the shades of death, still retained something fierce and terrible. That of Blanche presented quite a different spectacle. The blow she received was mortal; she fell upon the body of her dying spouse, and the blood of this innocent victim was mixed with that of her murderer, who had executed his cruel resolution so suddenly, that the king had not time to prevent its effects.

The unfortunate prince, seeing Blanche fall, uttered a loud cry; and, more confounded than she, with the blow that robbed her of life, hastened to give her the same succour that she had offered to the Constable. But she said, with a faltering voice, "Sir, you may spare yourself the trouble. I am the victim which un pitying fate demands: may it appease the wrath of Heaven, and secure the happiness of your reign!" As she pronounced these words, Leontio, brought thither by her cries, entered the chamber; and, struck with the objects that presented themselves to his eyes, became motionless where he stood; while Blanche, without perceiving him, continuing to speak to the king, said, "Adieu, prince; cherish my memory! My love and misfortunes claim that favour. Entertain no resentment against my father. Comfort his age and sorrow, and do justice to his zeal. Above all, make my innocence known."

"This is what I recommend to you, more than any thing. Adieu, my dear Henriquez! I die—receive my last breath!"

So saying, she expired; and the king, having kept a melancholy silence for some time, said to Siffredi, who was overwhelmed with woe, "Behold, Leontio! contemplate your own work; and, in this tragical event, consider the fruit of your officious care and zeal for me!" The old man was so penetrated with sorrow, that he made no reply. But why should I pretend to describe those things which no language can express! Let it suffice to say, that both uttered the most moving complaints, as soon as the greatness of their affliction allowed them the use of speech. The king all his life preserved the most tender remembrance of his mistress, and could never be prevailed upon to marry Constance; who, being joined by the Infant Don Pedro, they spared nothing to avail themselves of Roger's last will; but they were at last obliged to yield to Prince Henriquez, who subdued all his enemies. As for Siffredi, the grief he felt for having been the cause of so many misfortunes, detached him from the world, and rendered his native country insupportable to him: he therefore abandoned Sicily, and crossing over into Spain, with Portia, the only child he had left, purchased this castle, where he lived near fifteen years after Blanche's death, and had the comfort, before he died, of seeing Portia settled: she married Don Jerome de Silva, and I am the only fruit of that marriage. This, added the widow of Don Pedro de Pinares; is the history of my family, and a faithful account of the misfortunes represented in that picture, which my grandfather Leontio ordered to be drawn, as a monument of the fatal adventure to his posterity.

CHAP. V.

THE BEHAVIOUR OF AURORA DE GUZMAN AT SALAMANCA.

ORTIZ, her companions, and I, having heard this relation, withdrew, and left Aurora and Elvira in

the hall, where they spent the rest of the day in conversation. Far from being tired with one another, next day, when we set out, they were as much affected at parting, as two friends who have long lived agreeably together.

At last we arrived (without meeting any bad accident) at Salamanca*; where we immediately took a house ready furnished, and Dame Ortiz, as we had concerted it, assumed the name of Donna Ximena de Guzman. She had been too long a duenna, not to be a good actress; accordingly, going out one morning with Aurora, a waiting-maid, and valet, she repaired to a house where lodgings were let, and where we understood Pacheco usually lived. Having asked if they had an apartment to be let; they answered in the affirmative, and shewed her into one pretty handsomely furnished; which she hired immediately, giving earnest to the landlady, and telling her that it was designed for one of her nephews, who was coming from Toledo to study at Salamanca, and would arrive that very day.

The duenna and my mistress having secured this lodging, went home again; and the fair Aurora, without losing time, transformed herself into a cavalier, covering her black hair with a light-coloured tour, painting her eyebrows of the same complexion, and adjusting herself in such a manner as that she might very well pass for a young nobleman. Her carriage was free and easy; and, excepting her face, which was a little too handsome for a man, nothing could possibly betray her disguise: her maid, who was to serve in quality of a page, took the dress also; and we were under no apprehension of her ill-acting, for she had a good modest assurance in her air, which was very well adapted for the part she was to play. In the afternoon, these two actresses being in a condition to appear on the stage, (that is, in the lodging which had been taken) I accompanied them thither in a coach, with all the baggage we should have occasion for.

The landlady, whose name was Bernarda Ramirez, received us with great civility, and conducted us to our apart-

ment, where we began to enter into conversation, and agreed with her for our board by the month. Then asking if she had a good many boarders, she replied, 'I have none at present. I might have abundance, if I would take all sorts of people: but I receive none but young noblemen; and I expect one this evening, who comes from Madrid to finish his studies. His name is Don Lewis de Pacheco; perhaps you may have heard of him.'—'No,' said Aurora, 'I know nothing of him; and you will oblige me by letting me know what sort of a man he is, since I am to lodge in the same house with him.'—'Sir,' answered the landlady, looking at the false cavalier, 'he is quite a fine figure, and pretty much of your own make. Ah! how happy you will be in one another! By St. Jago, I may boast of having at my house, two of the most handsome noblemen in Spain!'—'This Don Lewis,' replied my mistress, 'has doubtless a thousand love-intrigues in Salamanca?'—'Yes, I'll assure you,' said the old woman, 'he is a brisk gallant, upon my word. He has no more to do, but to shew himself and conquer; and among others, he has quite captivated a lady of youth and beauty, whose name is Isabella, an old lawyer's daughter, who is fond of him to distraction.'—'And tell me, good mother,' cried Aurora, interrupting her with precipitation; 'is he as much in love with her?'—'He was,' replied Bernarda Ramirez, 'before his departure from Madrid; but I know not if he retains his passion for her still: for in these points he is not much to be depended upon; but skips from woman to woman, as all young gentlemen usually do.'

The good widow had scarce done speaking, when hearing a noise in the court-yard, we looked through the window, and perceived two men alighting from their horses: these were no other than Don Lewis de Pacheco himself, just arrived from Madrid, with his valet de chambre. Upon which, the old woman left us, in order to receive him; and my mistress prepared

* Salamanca, is one of the largest cities in Spain, situated on the banks of the river Tormes, in the kingdom of Leon, and famous for it's university.

herself, not without emotion, to play the part of Don Felix. Lewis, in a short time, entered our apartment in his boots, and saluted Aurora, saying, 'Understanding that a young nobleman of Toledo is a lodger here, I beg leave to express my joy in having him for a companion.' While my mistress returned this compliment, Pacheco seemed surprized to see such an amiable cavalier; and could not help telling her, that he had never before beheld any man so handsome and genteelly made. A great many civilities passed on both sides, after which Don Lewis retired to the apartment allotted for him.

While he was shifting and dressing, a sort of page, who wanted to deliver a letter to him, meeting Aurora on the stair-case by accident, mistook her for Don Lewis, and giving her the billet, said, 'Signior Cavalier, though I have never before seen Signior Pacheco, I believe I need not ask if you are he; being persuaded that I am not mistaken.'—'No, friend,' replied my mistress, with admirable presence of mind; 'you are assuredly not mistaken, and you acquit yourself of your commission surprizingly well. I am Don Lewis de Pacheco; you may return; and I will take care to send an answer very soon.' The page disappearing, Aurora shut herself up with her maid and me, and opening the letter, read these words.

WITH what joy did I receive the news of your arrival at Salamanca! My transport had well nigh got the better of my reason! But is Isabella still dear to you? Make haste, and assure her in person of your constancy; though she will scarce be able to support the pleasure of finding you unchanged!

'This billet,' said Aurora, 'proclaims the violence of the writer's passion; and the lady is a rival not to be contemned. I must spare nothing to detach Don Lewis from her, and even to hinder him from seeing her: the undertaking, I own, is difficult; but nevertheless, I don't despair of success.' Accordingly, my mistress having mused a minute or two, added, 'I'll engage there shall

be a breach between them in less than four and twenty hours.' Pacheco having taken a little repose in his own apartment, returned to ours, and renewed his conversation with Aurora, before supper. 'Signior Cavalier,' said he to her, with an air of pleasantry, 'I believe the husbands and lovers will have no cause to rejoice at your arrival in Salamanca, but rather have reason to be uneasy; as for my own part, I tremble for my conquests.'—'Hark'e,' answered my mistress, in the same tone, 'your fear is not ill-grounded. Don Felix de Mendoza is a formidable man, I assure you. I have been in this country before, and know that the women here are not insensible. About a month ago, in my way through this city, I stopped here eight days; and I will tell you in confidence, that I inflamed an old lawyer's daughter.'

I perceived Don Lewis disordered at these words. 'May one, without being thought impertinent,' said he, 'ask the lady's name?'—'How! without being thought impertinent!' cried the pretended Don Felix; 'why should I make a mystery of it to you? Do you think me more reserved than other noblemen of my age? You must not do me such injustice. Besides, between you and me, the object does not deserve such delicacy. She's only a pitiful citizen; and a man of quality, you know, is never seriously engrossed by such Abigails, but thinks he doth them an honour in debauching them. I will, therefore, without ceremony, acquaint you with the name of the lawyer's daughter, which is Isabella.'—'And the lawyer,' cried Pacheco, interrupting her with impatience; 'is not he called Signior Murcia de la Lianna?'—'The very same,' replied my mistress; 'here is a letter which I received from her just now: you may read it, and see whether or not the lady has a kindness for me.' Don Lewis, casting his eyes over the billet, knew the hand, and was struck dumb with confusion. 'What is the matter?' added Aurora, with an air of astonishment; 'you change colour! I believe, God forgive me! that you have some concern in this lady. Ah! how vexed am I for having spoke of her so freely!'

'I think

‘ I think myself obliged to you for your information ;’ said Don Lewis, in a transport of anger and disdain.— ‘ Perfidious, fickle creature!—Don Felix, I am bound to you for ever. You have extricated me out of an error, in which I might have remained a long time. I thought myself beloved—beloved, did I say? believed myself adored by that Isabella! I had, indeed, some regard for the creature; but now I see she is a coquette, who deserves nothing but contempt.’— ‘ I applaud your resentment,’ said Aurora, feigning indignation in her turn; ‘ a lawyer’s daughter ought to think herself very happy in having such an accomplished nobleman as you for her lover. Her inconstancy is inexcusable; and, far from accepting the sacrifice she makes of you, I intend to punish her by slighting her favours.’— ‘ For my part,’ replied Pacheco, ‘ the only vengeance that I shall take, is never to see her again.’— ‘ You are in the right,’ cried the false Mendoza; ‘ nevertheless, that she may know how much we both despise her, I think each of us should write to her an insulting letter, which I will inclose in one paper, and send as answer to this her billet. But before we proceed to this extremity, consult your heart. Perhaps, you will one day repent of having broke with Isabella.’— ‘ No, no!’ said Don Lewis; ‘ I shall never be so weak; and, in the mean time, consent to mortify the ungrateful creature as you have proposed.’

I was accordingly dispatched for paper, pen and ink; and both of them set about composing very obliging letters for the daughter of Doctor Murcia and Lianna. Pacheco, in particular, could not find terms strong enough to express his sentiments; and tore five or six half-finished billets, because he thought they were not sufficiently severe. One, however, he was satisfied with at last; and, no doubt, he had reason so to be, for it contained these words:

‘ **L** EARN to know yourself, my princefs, and be no longer so vain as to believe that I love you. If I be captivated, it must be with other kind of merit than yours;

‘ which is scarce sufficient to amuse me for a few moments, and only calculated for diverting the meanest scholars of the university.’

This courteous letter being written, and Aurora having finished her’s, which was not a whit milder, she sealed them both, and inclosing them together, gave me the packet, saying, ‘ There, Gil Blas; be sure to deliver this to Isabella, this evening.—You understand me?’ added she, tipping me the wink, the meaning of which I could easily comprehend. ‘ Yes, Sir,’ answered I; ‘ the thing shall be done to your wish.’

At the same time, I went out, and being in the street, said to myself, ‘ Oho, Gil Blas! then it seems you play the valet in this farce. Well, friend, shew that you have wit enough to perform such a fine part. Signior Don Felix, as you see, depends so much on your understanding, that he contents himself with giving you a sign only. Is he to blame for that? No. I conceive his meaning; he desires that I should deliver the billet of Don Lewis only. That is the interpretation of the sign, than which nothing could be more intelligible.’ I did not hesitate to open the packet, from which I took Pacheco’s letter, and carried it to the house of Doctor Murcia, having soon informed myself whereabout he lived. Finding the little page who had been at our lodgings, at the door; ‘ Brother,’ said I, ‘ don’t you serve the daughter of Mr. Doctor Murcia?’ When he answered in the affirmative, ‘ You have such an obliging physiognomy,’ I replied, ‘ that I take the liberty to desire you will deliver a love-letter to your mistress.’

The page asked from whom I brought it; and I no sooner told him that it came from Don Lewis de Pacheco, than he said, ‘ Since it is so, follow me. I have orders to bring you in. Isabella wants to talk with you.’ I allowed myself, therefore, to be introduced into a closet, where I did not stay long before the lady appeared; and I was struck with the beauty of her face, having never beheld more delicate features. Her air was affected and childish; but for all that, she had walked without leading-strings for thirty good years at least. ‘ Friend,’ said

said she to me, with a smiling air, 'do you belong to Don Lewis de Pacheco?' I answered, that I had been his valet de chambre these three weeks; and then delivered the fatal letter, which she read over twice or thrice, and seemed to distrust the evidence of her own senses. It is very certain, she expected nothing less than such an answer. She lifted up her eyes towards heaven, bit her lips, and for some time discovered by her countenance, the pangs which her heart endured. Then, all of a sudden, addressing herself to me, 'Friend,' said she, 'is Don Lewis run mad? Tell me, if you know, why he writes to me in this gallant style. What demon possesses him? If he had a mind to break with me, could he not have done it without affronting me with such abusive letters?'

'Madam,' said I, 'my master is certainly to blame; but he was in some measure forced to it. If you will promise to keep the secret, I will discover the whole mystery.'—'I do promise,' said she, interrupting me with precipitation; 'don't be afraid of my exposing you, but freely explain yourself.'—'Well, then,' I resumed, 'this is briefly the affair. Immediately after he had received your letter, a lady, covered with a very thick veil, came to our lodging, and asking for Signior de Pacheco, spoke with him in private a good while; and towards the close of the conversation, I overheard her say to him, "You swear to me, that you will never see her again: but that is not all. You must also, for my satisfaction, this instant, write to her a billet which I will dictate, and this I exact of you." Don Lewis did as she desired; then putting the letter into my hand, "Enquire," said he, "where Doctor Murcia de Lianna lives, and convey, with address, this paper to his daughter Isabella."

'So that you see, Madam,' added I, 'this disobliging letter is the work of a rival, and consequently my master is not so much to blame.'—'O Heaven!' cried she, 'he is more so than I imagined! His infidelity injures me more than the spiteful words which his hand wrote. Ah! the perfidious wretch! he has entered into other engagements!—But,' added

she, assuming a lofty air, 'let him abandon himself to his new flame without constraint: I don't intend to thwart him. Tell him, that he had no occasion to insult me, in order to make me leave the field free to my rival; and that I despise such a fickle lover too much to have the least desire of recalling him.' So saying, she dismissed me, and retired very much irritated against Don Lewis; while I went away very well satisfied with myself, and persuaded that if I should set up for a genius, I should soon become a most dexterous cheat. I returned to our lodgings, where I found Mendoza and Pacheco at supper, conversing together as if they had been old acquaintance. Aurora, perceiving by my cheerful countenance, that I had not acquitted myself ill of my commission; 'So, thou art returned, Gil Blas!' said she, 'give us an account of thy message.' Being obliged to trust to my own finesse again, I told them that I had delivered the packet with my own hand; and that Isabella, after having read the two billet-doux which it contained, instead of seeming disconcerted, fell a laughing, like one who had lost her senses; saying, 'Upon my conscience, young noblemen have an admirable style! It must be owned, that other people don't write half so agreeably.'—'A fine way of disembarassing herself!' cried my mistress; 'she must certainly be a finished coquette.'—'As for me,' said Don Lewis, 'I should never know Isabella by such behaviour: she must have entirely changed her character during my absence.'—'I could not have thought her such a person, indeed;' replied Aurora, 'but we must allow that there are women who can assume a great many different shapes: I was once in love with one of these, who made me her dupe a long time.—Gil Blas, you can tell that she had an air of virtue, which might have deceived the whole world.'—'Yes, truly,' said I, mingling in the conversation, 'she had a look that would have deceived the most wary. I myself might have been trepanned by it.'

The pretended Mendoza and Pacheco burst into a loud laugh, on hearing me talk thus: one, because I bore witness against an imaginary lady; and

and the other, on account of the expression I had used. We continued discoursing of women who have the art of dissembling; and the result of our conversation was, that Isabella was accused in due form, and convicted of being an arrant jilt.

Don Lewis protested anew, that he would never see her; and Don Felix, by his example, swore he would always have the most perfect contempt for her. After these protestations, they professed a mutual friendship, and promised to conceal nothing from one another. Supper being over, they proceeded to compliments; and at last, parted to go to bed, each in his own apartment. I followed Aurora to her's, where I gave an exact account of the conversation I had with the doctor's daughter, not forgetting the least circumstance. I thought she would have embraced me in the transport of her joy. 'Deat ' Gil Blas,' said she, ' I am charmed ' with thy understanding! when one ' is so unfortunate as to be engaged in ' a passion which compels us to have ' recourse to stratagems, it is a great ' advantage to have in our interests ' such a sensible young fellow as thee. ' Courage, my friend! we have re- ' moved a rival who might have given ' us a world of trouble. This is no ' bad prognostick; but as lovers are ' subject to strange relapses, I think ' we must make a strong push, and ' bring Aurora de Guzman on the ' stage to-morrow.' I approved of the scheme, and leaving Signior Don Felix with his page, retired to bed.

CHAP. VI.

THE STRATAGEMS PRACTISED BY
AURORA TO CAPTIVATE DON
LEWIS DE PACHECO.

THE two new friends meeting the next morning, began the day with embraces, which Aurora was obliged to give and receive, in order to act the part of Don Felix. They went out to walk, and I accompanied them with Chilindron, the valet of Don Lewis; when, stopping at the university to look at the titles of books that were pasted on the gate, which a good many people amused themselves in reading, I perceived a little man

among them, who gave his opinion of all the different works that were so published. I observed, that he was heard with great attention, which I fancied, at the same time, he believed was no more than his due; for he seemed vain and positive, as little men commonly are. 'That new translation of Horace,' said he, 'which ' you see advertized in such large characters, is a work in prose, composed by an old college-author; a ' book in great esteem among the students, who have already consumed ' four editions of it: and yet there is ' not one man of taste who has purchased so much as a single copy.' His judgment was not a whit more favourable for the other books, which he ridiculed without exception; so that, in all likelihood, he was an author himself. I should not have been tired of hearing him to an end; but was obliged to follow Don Lewis and Don Felix, who being as little pleased with his discourse, as interested in the books which he censured, left him to the enjoyment of his own criticism.

We came home at dinner-time, and my mistress sitting down at table with Pacheco, artfully turned the conversation on her own family. 'My father, said she, 'is a cadet of the house of ' Mendoza, and settled at Toledo; my ' mother is sister to Donna Ximena de ' Guzman, who came to Salamanca ' some days ago on an affair of importance, with her niece Aurora, ' the only daughter of Don Vincent ' de Guzman, whom, perhaps, you ' know.'—'No,' replied Don Lewis; 'but I have often heard of him, as ' well as of your cousin Aurora. Am ' I to believe what is reported of her? I ' have been assured that nothing equals ' her understanding but her beauty.'—'As for understanding,' resumed Don Felix, 'she has a pretty good ' share, and that well cultivated: but ' I don't think her so very handsome. ' People say, that she and I very much ' resemble one another.'—'If that be ' the case,' cried Pacheco, 'she deserves ' the reputation she has got: your features are regular; your cousin must ' be quite enchanting. I wish I had ' an opportunity of seeing and conversing with her.'—'I undertake to ' satisfy your curiosity,' replied the pretended Mendoza; 'and will carry ' you

you to my aunt's house this very afternoon.' My mistress, all of a sudden, changed the discourse, and talked on indifferent subjects. After dinner, while they were preparing to go and visit Donna Ximena, I was beforehand with them, and ran to advertise the duenna, that she might be ready to receive them; then returning instantly, accompanied Don Felix, who conducted Don Lewis to the house of his aunt. But they had scarce entered the house, when they met Dame Ximena, who desired them, by a sign, to make no noise. 'Hush, hush!' said she, with a low voice, 'you will awake my niece, who has been tormented since yesterday with a terrible head-ache, which has just left her, and the poor child has been asleep about a quarter of an hour.'—'I am sorry for this disappointment,' said Mendoza; 'I was in good hopes of seeing my cousin, and had promised that pleasure to my good friend Pacheco.'—'The affair is not very urgent,' replied Ortiz, smiling; 'you may defer it till to-morrow.' The cavaliers conversed a little while with the old gentlewoman, and then retired.

Don Lewis carried us to the house of one of his friends, a gentleman, whose name was Don Gabriel de Pedros, with whom we spent the rest of the day, supped, and did not think of coming home till two o'clock in the morning. We had got about half way, when we stumbled over two men lying stretched upon the ground. Thinking they were unfortunate people who had been assassinated, we stopped to give them assistance, provided it was not too late; and as we endeavoured to inform ourselves of their condition, as well as the darkness of the night would allow, the patrolle came up, and the commander taking us at first for the murderers, ordered his men to surround us; but he conceived a more favourable opinion of our morals, when he heard us speak, and, by the help of a dark lanthorn, saw the faces of Mendoza and Pacheco. His soldiers being ordered to examine the condition of the two men, who we fancied had been slain, found that it was a fat licentiate, with his man, both in liquor, or rather dead drunk. 'Gentlemen,' cried one of the guard, 'I know this Epicure; it is Signior the Licentiate

Guyomar, rector of our university; notwithstanding the pickle you see him in now, he is a great man, a wonderful genius! There is not a philosopher in Salamanca whom he cannot confute in an argument. He has an unparalleled flow of words: 'tis pity that he is a little addicted to law-suits, the bottle, and a wench. He was, no doubt, on his return from supping with his Isabella, where unluckily his man getting as drunk as himself, they both tumbled into the kennel. Before the good licentiate was rector, this misfortune frequently happened to him; and you see honours don't always change the man.' We left those drunkards in the hands of the patrolle, who undertook to carry them home, and returning to our lodgings, every one went to rest.

Don Felix and Don Lewis getting up about noon, Aurora was the first subject of their discourse; 'Gil Blas,' said my mistress to me, 'go to my aunt Donna Ximena, and ask if Signior Pacheco and I can have the pleasure of seeing my cousin to-day.' I went out to acquit myself of this commission, or rather to concert with the duenna what was to be done; and when we had taken our measures, I returned to the false Mendoza, saying, 'Signior, your cousin Aurora is surprisingly well, and charged me to assure you from her, that your visit will be very agreeable; and Donna Ximena bid me assure Signior Pacheco that he shall always be welcome at her house, on your account.'

I perceived that Don Lewis was mightily pleased with these last words; my mistress observed the same, and drew a happy presage from her remark. Immediately before dinner, Signora Ximena's valet appeared, and said to Don Felix, 'Signior, a man from Toledo has been inquiring for you at your aunt's house, and left this note.' The pretended Mendoza opened it, and read aloud these words: 'If you are desirous of hearing news of your father, and of being made acquainted with other things of consequence to you, fail not, on receipt of this, to repair to the Black Horse near the university.'—'I am,' said he, 'too curious to hear these things of consequence, not to

T satisfy

'satisfy my desire instantly, without taking leave of you.—Pacheco,' added he, 'if I don't return in two hours, you may go by yourself to my aunt's, and I will come to you there, after dinner. You know what Gil Blas has told you from Donna Ximena, and you have a right to make the visit.' So saying, he went out, and ordered me to follow him.

You may easily guess, that instead of going to the Black Horse, we took the road to the house where Ortiz lived, where, as soon as we arrived, Aurora took off her fair-coloured tour, washed and rubbed her eye-brows, dressed herself like a woman, and became a very handsome black-eyed lady, as she naturally was; for her disguise had changed her so much, that Aurora and Don Felix appeared to be two different people. She even seemed a great deal taller as a woman, than as a man; to which, indeed, her shoe-heels, that were excessively high, contributed not a little. When she had improved her charms with all the assistance that art could bestow, she expected Don Lewis with an agitation composed of hope and fear. Sometimes she confided in her beauty and wit, and sometimes was afraid that her attempt would be unsuccessful. Ortiz, on the other side, summoned all her finess to second my mistress; and I, that Pacheco might not see me in the house, like those players who appear only in the last act, concealed myself till toward the end of the visit, by going out as soon as I had dined.

In short, every thing was in order when Don Lewis arrived. He was received in a very agreeable manner by Lady Ximena, and enjoyed a conversation with Aurora two or three hours long; at the end of which, I came into the room where they were, and addressing myself to the cavalier, 'Signior,' said I, 'my master, Don Felix, cannot be here to-day: but begs you will excuse him, because he is in company with three men from Toledo, of whom he cannot disengage himself.'—'Ah! the little rascal' cried Donna Ximena, 'he is certainly set in to hard drinking.'—'No, Madam,' I replied; 'they are discoursing together of very serious affairs. He is heartily sorry that he cannot wait upon you, and ordered me to

'make his apology to you and Donna Aurora.'—'O, I'll have none of his apologies,' said my mistress; 'he knows I have been indisposed, and ought to shew a little more concern for his relation. In order to punish him for his indifference, he shan't see me these fifteen days.'—'Ah, Madam!' said Don Lewis, 'do not form such a cruel resolution; Don Felix is rather to be pitied for not being able to visit you.'

They diverted themselves for some time with this subject, and then Pacheco withdrew. The fair Aurora immediately transformed herself, and resuming the appearance of a cavalier, returned to the lodgings as soon as she could. 'I ask pardon, my dear friend,' said she to Don Lewis, 'for failing to meet you at my aunt's, but I could not get rid of the people in whose company I was: what consoles me for the disappointment is, that you have at least had leisure to satisfy your curiosity. Well, what do you think of my cousin?'—'I am charmed by her!' answered Pacheco; 'you had reason to say she resembled you. I never saw features more alike: the same turn of face, the same eyes, the same mouth, and tone of voice! There is, however, some difference between you. Aurora is a little taller than you; she is black, and you are fair; you are merry, and she is grave. These are what distinguish you the one from the other. As for understanding,' added he, 'I do not believe a celestial being can have more than your cousin. In a word, she is a lady of accomplished merit.'

Signior Pacheco pronounced these last words with so much vivacity, that Don Felix said, smiling, 'Friend, I advise you for the sake of your repose, to go no more to Donna Ximena's. Aurora de Guzman may make your heart ache, and inspire you with a passion.'—'There is no occasion for another sight of her to make me in love,' said he, interrupting him; 'that is done already.'—'I am sorry for it,' replied the pretended Mendoza; 'for you are not one of those who can attach themselves to one; and my cousin is no Isabella. I can assure you, before-hand, that she will never listen to a lover, except

‘cept on honourable terms.’—‘Honourable terms!’ replied Don Lewis; ‘sure nobody would offer any other to a young lady of her birth! Alas, I should think myself the happiest of men, if she would approve of my addresses, and consent to join her destiny to mine!’

‘Since you talk in that style,’ said Don Felix, ‘I am interested in your behalf. Yes, I list myself in your service;—offer you all my influence with Aurora; and will, to-morrow, bring over my aunt, who has a great sway over her.’ Pacheco returned a thousand thanks to the cavalier who made him such fair promises; and we perceived, with joy, that our stratagem could not succeed better. Next day, we increased the love of Don Lewis, by a new invention. My mistress, having been with Donna Ximena, on pretence to render her favourable to that cavalier, came back, and said to him, ‘I have spoke to my aunt; whom, with much difficulty, I have made your friend. She was furiously prejudiced against you; for somebody or other had made her believe that you was a downright libertine; but I undertook your defence with eagerness, and at last destroyed the bad impression she had received of your morals.’

‘This is not all,’ pursued Aurora; ‘you must talk with my aunt, in my presence, and then we shall make sure of her assistance.’ Pacheco expressed extreme impatience to discourse with Donna Ximena, and that satisfaction was granted to him next morning, when the false Mendoza conducted him to Madam Ortiz, and they three had a long conversation; in which Don Lewis shewed, that he had allowed himself to be very much captivated, in a very little time. The artful Ximena feigned to be moved with all the tenderness he expressed, and promised her utmost endeavour to engage her niece to marry him. Pacheco immediately threw himself at the feet of this so kind an aunt, and thanked her for her friendship; whereupon Don Felix asked if his cousin was up. ‘No,’ answered the duenna; ‘she is still a-bed, and you cannot see her at present; but return this afternoon, and you may converse with her at leisure.’ This answer of Madam Ximena redoubled;

as you may well believe, the joy of Don Lewis, who thought the rest of the forenoon extremely tedious, and went back to his lodgings with Mendoza, who was not a little pleased with observing in him all the marks of genuine love.

They talked of nothing but Aurora; and when they had dined, Don Felix said to Pacheco, ‘There is a thought come into my head: I am of opinion that I should go to my aunt’s some minutes before you, and have a little chat with my cousin, that I may, if possible, discover the disposition of her heart towards you.’ Don Lewis, approving this scheme, let his friend go before, and did not set out till an hour after. So my mistress made such good use of her time, that she was dressed like a lady, when her lover arrived. ‘I thought,’ said the cavalier, after having saluted Aurora and the duenna, ‘to have found Don Felix here.’—‘You will see him immediately,’ answered Don Ximena; ‘he is writing in my closet.’ Upon which Pacheco seemed to swallow the trick, and entered into conversation with the ladies: but, notwithstanding the presence of the beloved object, he perceived that the hours stole away without Mendoza’s appearing; and, as he could not help testifying some surprize at it, Aurora changing countenance all of a sudden, began to laugh, and said to Don Lewis, ‘Is it possible that you have no suspicion of the trick which has been played upon you? Do an artificial light-coloured tour, and painted eye-brows, make me so unlike myself, that you have been mistaken by them hitherto! Undeceive yourself, then, Pacheco,’ continued she, resuming an air of gravity; ‘and know that Don Felix de Mendoza, and Aurora de Guzman, are but one and the same person!’

She was not contented with extricating him out of his error, but also owned her passion for him, and informed him of all the steps she had taken towards it’s success. Don Lewis, no less charmed than surprized with what he heard, threw himself at her feet, exclaiming in a transport of joy, ‘Ah, beautiful Aurora! may I then believe myself the happy mortal whom you have favoured so much?’

How shall I recompence your goodness, which the most perfect love can never enough repay! These words were accompanied with a thousand more passionate and tender expressions; after which, the two lovers conferred upon the measures that were to be taken towards the accomplishment of their mutual desires; and it was resolved that we should set out immediately for Madrid, and bring our comedy to a conclusion by marriage. This design was no sooner formed than put in execution: in fifteen days Don Lewis espoused my mistress; and their nuptials gave rise to entertainments and infinite rejoicings.

CHAP. VII.

GIL BLAS QUILTS HIS PLACE, AND GOES INTO THE SERVICE OF DON GONZALES DE PACHECO.

THREE weeks after this marriage, my mistress being desirous of recompensing me for the service I had done her, made me a present of a hundred pistoles, saying, 'Gil Blas, my friend, far from turning you away, I leave it to your choice to stay with me as long as you please; but my husband's uncle, Don Gonzales de Pacheco, wants to have you for a valet de chambre. I spoke to him so advantageously of you, that he assured me, I would do him a favour in parting with you to him. He is an old nobleman,' added she, 'of an excellent character, and you will be quite happy in his service.'

I thanked Aurora for her generosity, and as she had no longer any occasion for me, accepted the post to which I was recommended; the more willingly, as I should still be in the family. One morning, therefore, I went with a message from my new-married mistress, to Signior Don Gonzales, who was still a-bed, although it was near twelve o'clock. When I entered his chamber, I found him taking some broth, which a page had brought in. The old gentleman's whiskers were in papers, his eyes almost quite extinguished, and his face pale and meagre. He was one of those old boys, who have been great rakes in their youth, and are not a whit more sedate

in their old age. He received me with great civility, and told me, that if I would serve him with as much zeal as I had manifested for his niece, I might depend upon living happily. I promised to have the same attachment to him which I had for her; and that moment he engaged me in his service.

Behold me, then, with a new master; and Heaven knows what sort of a man he was! When he got up, I fancied I saw the resurrection of Lazarus. Paint to your own imagination a tall body, so lean and withered, that when it was naked, an anatomist might have taught osteology upon it; with legs so small, that they looked like spindles, after he had put on three or four pair of stockings. This living mummy was besides troubled with an asthma, and coughed at every word he spoke. Having drank chocolate, he called for paper and ink, and wrote a letter, which he sealed and sent away, according to the direction, by the page who had brought the broth: then turning to me, 'Friend,' said he, 'thou art the person whom I intend henceforth to trust with my commissions, especially those which regard Donna Euphrasia, a young lady whom I love, and who is passionately fond of me.' — 'Good God!' said I to myself, 'how can young people help believing themselves beloved, when this old dotard thinks himself adored!' — 'Gil Blas,' added he, 'thou shalt go with me this very day to her house, where I sup almost every night, and thou wilt be charmed with her prudence and reserve: far from resembling those silly coquettes, who can relish nothing but youth, and are won by appearances only, she has an understanding already mature and judicious, that requires sentiment in a man, and prefers a lover of delicacy and taste, to one of the most shining exteriors.' Signior Don Gonzales did not here finish the elogium of his mistress, whom he represented as the epitome of all perfection. But he had a hearer not easily persuaded. After the conduct of the actresses, which I had seen, I did not look upon old noblemen as people very happy in their amours. I pretended, however, out of complaisance, to believe all that my master said. I did more; I extolled the discernment and taste of Euphrasia, and

and was even impudent enough to affirm, that she could not have a more amiable gallant.

The good old gentleman did not perceive that I had made game of him; but, on the contrary, applauded my good sense. So true it is, that a sycophant may run any risque with the great, who swallow all kinds of flattery, let it be ever so absurd. The old man having written his letter, pulled some hairs out of his beard with a pair of pincers, cleaned his eyes of a thick gum that filled them, washed his ears and hands, and after having performed his ablutions, painted his whiskers, eye-brows, and hair, of a black colour; continuing longer at his toilet than an old widow who studies to hide the outrages of time upon her. Just as he had done dressing, another gentleman in years, one of his friends, entered, whose name was the Count d'Asumar. But he, far from concealing his grey hairs, supported himself on a cane, and seemed to glory in his old age, rather than in appearing young. 'Signior Pacheco,' said he, as he came in, 'I am come to dine with you.'—'You are very welcome,' count, answered my master. Meanwhile, having embraced one another, they sat down, and entered into conversation, till such time as dinner was ready.

The discourse turned, at first, upon a bull-feast, which had been celebrated a few days before; and as they mentioned the cavaliers who had shewn the greatest vigour and address, the old count, like another Nestor, who, from talking of the present, always took occasion to praise the past, said, with a sigh, 'Alas! I see no men now—a-days comparable to those I have known heretofore; and the tournaments are not performed with half the magnificence that they were when I was a young man!' I laughed within myself at the prejudice of honest Signior d'Asumar, who did not confine it to tournaments only; but I remember, when the desert was set upon the table, seeing some fine peaches served up, he observed, 'In my time, the peaches were much larger than they are at present; nature degenerates every day.'—At that rate, said Don Gonzales, smiling, 'the

peaches of Adam's time must have been wonderfully large!'

Count d'Asumar staid almost the whole day with my master; who no sooner found himself disengaged, than he went out, bidding me follow him. He went to Euphrasia's, who lodged at the distance of an hundred paces from our house; and found her in a very handsome apartment. She was gaily dressed, and had such a youthful air, that I concluded she was under age, although she was good thirty years old at least. She was really handsome, and her understanding soon raised my admiration; for she was not one of those coquettes who have nothing to recommend them but idle ribaldry and loose behaviour; she was modest in her manners, as well as in her conversation, and talked with a great deal of wit, without the least affectation. 'O Heaven!' said I to myself, 'is it possible that a person of such delicacy can be a lady of pleasure!' I imagined that impudence was inseparable from all women of her profession, and was astonished to see one with the appearance of modesty; not reflecting, that these princesses know how to assume any shape, and accommodate themselves to the characters of the people of fortune and nobility that fall into their hands. When their gallants are pleased with fire and transport, they are brisk and petulant; and with those who love reserve, practise a prudent and virtuous behaviour. They are the true cameleons, who change colour according to the humour and disposition of the men whom they approach.

Don Gonzales was none of those noblemen who are taken with your bold beauties; he could not bear ladies of that class: on the contrary, could relish no woman, unless she had the appearance of a vestal. Euphrasia, therefore, modelled herself accordingly, and shewed that all the good actresses are not employed in the theatre. Leaving my master with his nymph, I went down stairs into a hall, where I found an old chamber-maid, whom I had known a waiting-woman to an actress. Recollecting me immediately, she said, 'What! is it you, Gil Blas? You have quitted Arsenia, it seems, as I did Constantia.'—'Yes, truly,'

truly, answered I; it is a long time since I left her, and went to serve a young lady of fashion. A player's life is not to my taste, and therefore dismissed myself, without deigning to come to the least explanation with Arsenia.—'You was in the right,' I replied the chamber-maid, whose name was Beatrice; 'I served Constantia pretty much in the same manner: one morning early I gave in my accounts very coldly, which she received without uttering one syllable, and so we parted cavalierly enough.'

'I am extremely glad,' said I, 'that we now meet in a more honourable house: Donna Euphrasia seems to be a sort of woman of fashion, and I believe her character is very good.'—'You are not at all mistaken,' said the old waiting-woman; 'she is of a very good family; and as for her temper, I can assure you, there never was one more equal and sweet. She is none of those passionate and difficult mistresses who find fault with every thing; scold incessantly; torment their domesticks; and, in one word, make a hell of their service. I never once heard her grumble; but when I happen to do any thing contrary to her inclination, she reproves me without rage, and never lets one of those epithets escape her, of which your violent dames are so liberal.'—'My master,' I resumed, 'is also very sweet-tempered: he is the best-natured mortal alive; and therefore you and I are much more happy than when we were in the service of actresses.'—'A thousand times more happy!' replied Beatrice; 'instead of leading a life of noise and tumult, I now live, as it were, in a retreat. No man enters these doors but Signior Don Gonzales. I shall see nobody but you in my solitude, for which I am not at all sorry; for I have had an affection for you a long time, and more than once envied the happiness of Laura, in having you for a gallant. But, in short, I hope to be as happy as she; for, though I have neither her youth nor her beauty, by way of amends, I hate coquetry, and am as faithful as a turtle.'

As honest Beatrice was one of those persons who are obliged to make a tender of their favours, because nobody

will ask them, I was not at all tempted to profit by her advances: I did not desire, however, that she should perceive my contempt, and was even polite enough to express myself in such a manner, as that she did not lose all hopes of engaging my heart. I imagined then that I had made a conquest of an old chamber-maid, but happened, on this occasion, to be deceived; she did not behave in this manner to me, for my own sake only; her design was to inspire me with love, that she might bring me over to the interest of her mistress, for whom she was so zealous, that she did not mind what it cost her, in promoting her advantage. I found my error next morning, when I carried a billet-doux from my master to Euphrasia. That lady gave me a most gracious reception, and said a thousand obliging things, in which she was joined by her maid: one admired my physiognomy, while the other observed in me an air of prudence and sagacity. According to them, Signior Don Gonzales possessed a treasure, in having such a valet. In a word, they praised me so much, that I suspected their applause, and even discerned the motives of it; but I received it, in appearance, with all the simplicity of a fool, and by this counterplot effectually deceived the sharpeners, who at last pulled off the mask.

'Hark'e, Gil Blas,' said Euphrasia to me, 'it depends upon thyself to make thy fortune. Let us act in concert, my friend. Don Gonzales is old, and his constitution so crazy, that the least touch of a fever, assisted by an able physician, will carry him off. Let us make the best of the little time he has left, and exert ourselves so, as that he may leave the best part of his estate to me. Thou shalt have a good share of the booty, and thou mayest depend upon my promise, as much as if I had made it before all the notaries of Madrid.'—'Madam,' answered I, 'you may command your humble servant. You have nothing to do, but to prescribe my conduct, and you shall be satisfied.'—'Very well,' she replied; 'thou must observe thy master, and give me an account of all his proceedings; when you talk to him in private, don't fail to turn the conversation upon women, and from thence artfully take occasion to speak well of

me. Ply him with Euphrasia as much as possible; and I again commend it to you, to be very attentive to what passes in the family of the Pachecos; if you perceive that any relation of Don Gonzales is extremely officious about him, and aims at the succession to his estate, acquaint me with it immediately; that is all I ask, and I warrant I shall send him a-drift in a very little time; for I know the different characters of his relations, and the ridiculous lights in which they may be represented to him; having already prejudiced him pretty successfully against all his nephews and cousins.

By these instructions, and others which Euphrasia added, I concluded that this lady was one of those who attached themselves to generous old men. She had lately prevailed upon Don Gonzales, to sell an estate, the price of which she had converted to her own use; she extorted from him valuable moveables every day; and, besides, had reason to hope that she would not be forgotten in his will. I pretended to engage willingly to do all that she desired; and, dissimulation apart, doubted within myself, on my return home, whether I should contribute to impose upon my master, or undertake to detach him from his mistress. The last of these resolutions seemed more honourable than the other, and I felt myself more inclined to fulfil than betray my duty: besides, Euphrasia had made me no positive promise, and that, perhaps, was the occasion of my fidelity's remaining uncorrupted. I resolved, therefore, to serve Don Gonzales with zeal, persuading myself, that if I should be lucky enough to divert his affection from his idol, I should be better rewarded for this good action, than for all the bad ones I could commit.

That I might the more easily accomplish what I proposed, I shewed myself entirely devoted to the service of Donna Euphrasia; I made her believe, that I spoke of her incessantly to my master; and accordingly invented fables, which she took for sterling truth. I insinuated myself so much into her good graces, that she thought me entirely in her interest; and still, the better to impose upon her, affected to appear in love with Beatrice; who, ravished to see,

at her age, a young lover at her beck, did not much mind being deceived, provided she was deceived agreeably. When my master and I were each with his own princess, we composed two very different pictures in the same taste. Don Gonzales, pale and withered as I have represented him, when he attempted to ogle, looked like a wretch in his last agonies; and my infanta, in proportion to the seeming increase of my passion, assumed still more and more childish airs, and practised all the artifice of an old coquette, which she had been learning these forty years at least; having been refined in the service of some of those heroines of gallantry, who can please even in their old age, and die loaded with the spoils of two or three generations.

I was not satisfied with following my master, every evening, to the house of Euphrasia; I sometimes went thither, alone, by day; but at what hour soever I went in, I never met with any man, or woman either, of a suspicious appearance; nor could I discover the least trace of infidelity; a circumstance that surprized me not a little: for I could not imagine that such a handsome lady could be exactly true to Don Gonzales. And in this, surely, my judgment was not too rash; for the fair Euphrasia (as you will presently see) that she might wait with the more patience for my master's estate, was provided with a lover more agreeable to a woman of her age.

One morning, when I carried, as usual, a letter to the princess, I perceived, while I was in her chamber, the feet of a man concealed behind the tapestry. I went away, without seeming to observe them; but although I ought not to have been surprized at this object, which was no business of mine, I did not fail to resent it. 'Ah, perfidious wretch!' said I to myself, in a passion; 'ah, wicked Euphrasia! thou art not satisfied with imposing upon a good old gentleman, by persuading him that he is beloved, but thou must also crown thy perfidy, by abandoning thyself to another!' What a fool was I (now I think on it) to moralize in this manner! I ought rather to have laughed at the adventure, and looked upon it as a compensation for the tiresome languid moments she underwent in her commerce

merce with my master: I should, at least, have done better in holding my tongue, than in seizing this occasion of acting the conscientious valet. But, instead of moderating my zeal, I entered warmly into the interest of Don Gonzales, to whom I made a faithful report of what I had seen: I even added, that Euphrasia wanted to seduce me; I concealed nothing of what she had said on that occasion; and it was his own fault if he was not perfectly acquainted with the character of his mistress. He was confounded at the information, and a small emotion of wrath that appeared in his countenance, seemed to preface that the lady should not be unfaithful to him with impunity. 'Enough, Gil Blas,' said he: 'I am extremely sensible of thy attachment, and pleased with thy fidelity; I will go instantly to Euphrasia, load her with reproaches, and break for ever with the ungrateful creature!' So saying, he went out accordingly; and dispensed with my attendance, that he might spare me the disagreeable part I had to play during their eclairsissement.

I waited for my master's return with a world of impatience; not doubting, that as he had so much cause to complain of his nymph, he would come back altogether detached from her allurements. On this supposition, I applauded myself for what I had done; I represented to myself the satisfaction which the natural heirs of Don Gonzales would have, when they learned that their kinsman was no longer the sport of a passion so contrary to their interests; I flattered myself, that they would consider me for it; and, in short, that I had distinguished myself from other valets, who are usually more apt to encourage their masters in debauchery than to reclaim them. I was in love with honour; and reflected, with pleasure, that I should pass for the Corypheus of all domesticks. But this idea, agreeable as it was, vanished in a few hours; when my patron arriving, said, 'Friend, I have had a very sharp conversation with Euphrasia, who affirms, that thou hast misrepresented her, and art, if she is to be believed, no other than an impostor, altogether devoted to my nephews; out of regard to whom, thou sparest nothing to make me

quarrel with her. I saw real tears trickle from her eyes, and she swore by all that was sacred, that she never made any proposal to thee, nor ever sees a man. Beatrice, who seems to be a good girl, protested the same thing, in such a manner, that my anger was appeased in spite of my teeth.'

'How, Sir,' said I, interrupting him in a sorrowful manner, 'do you doubt my sincerity? do you distrust—' 'No, child,' said he, interrupting me in his turn; 'I do thee all manner of justice: I don't believe thee in a confederacy with my nephews. I am persuaded that thou art concerned for my interest only, and I am obliged to thee; but appearances are deceitful. Perhaps, what thou sawest, existed only in thy own imagination; and, in that case, thou mayest guess how disagreeable thy accusation must be to Euphrasia. Be it as it may, she is a person whom I cannot help loving. I must even make the sacrifice to her which she demands, and that sacrifice is thy dismissal. I am sorry for it, my poor Gil Blas,' added he; 'and I assure thee, I consented to it with regret; but I could not do otherwise. What ought to console thee is, that I shall not send thee away unrecompensed; and I intend, moreover, to settle thee with a lady, a friend of mine, where thou wilt live very agreeably.'

I was very much mortified to see my zeal thus turned against myself: I cursed Euphrasia, and deplored the weakness of Don Gonzales, who allowed himself to be led by the nose. The good old man being very sensible, that in turning me away, merely to please his mistress, he did not behave in the most manly manner, made amends for his effeminacy, and gilded the pill I was to swallow, with a present of fifty ducats. Next day, carrying me to the Marchioness of Chaves, he told her, in my hearing, that I was a young man who possessed many good qualities; that he had a regard for me, but family reasons not permitting him to keep me in his service, he begged she would admit me into her family. She received me that instant into the number of her domesticks; so that I found myself translated, all of a sudden, into a new place.

C H A P. VIII.

THE CHARACTER OF THE MARCHIONESS OF CHAVES, AND OF THOSE PEOPLE WHO USUALLY VISITED HER.

THE Marchioness of Chaves was a widow of five and thirty, handsome, tall, and well-shaped, who enjoyed a yearly income of ten thousand ducats, without the care and incumbrance of children. I never saw a woman of more gravity, or one who spoke less; though this did not hinder her from being looked upon as the most witty lady in Madrid. The great concourse of people of quality, and men of learning, who daily frequented her house, contributed, perhaps, more than any thing she said, to give her this reputation. But this I will not undertake to decide; let it suffice to say, that her name imported the idea of a superior genius, and that her house was called, by way of excellence, *the court of criticism*.

There was actually some performance or other read here every day, sometimes new plays, and sometimes other pieces of poetry; but nothing except serious subjects were deemed worthy of attention, humorous pieces being despised; the best comedy, or the most ingenious and witty romance, was looked upon as a feeble production, that deserved no praise; whereas the least serious work, such as an ode, eclogue, or sonnet, passed for the greatest effort of human understanding. But it often happened, that the publick did not confirm the sentence of the court; on the contrary, was sometimes so impolite as to hiss those pieces which had been there very much applauded.

I was chamberlain in this house; that is, my office consisted in getting every thing ready in the apartment of my lady, for the reception of company, and to set the chairs for the men, and the cushions for the women; after which I stationed myself at the chamber-door, to announce and introduce the persons who arrived. While I was employed in this office, for the first time, the governor of the pages, who by accident

was then in the anti-chamber with me, described them all very pleasantly, as they came in. His name was Andrew Molina, naturally dry and satirical, with a good share of understanding. A bishop being the first who presented himself, I announced him; and when he was entered, the governor observed, 'That prelate is a man of a very pleasant character: having a little credit at court, he would fain make every one believe, that he has a great deal, and offers his interest to all the world, without serving any body. One day, meeting at court with a gentleman who saluted him, he stopped, loaded him with civilities, and, squeezing his hand, said, "I am wholly devoted to your service; pray, Sir, put me to the proof: I shall never die satisfied until I have an opportunity of obliging you!" The gentleman thanked him in a very grateful manner; they parted; and the prelate said to one of his followers, "I think I know that man; I have a confused idea of having seen him somewhere."

Immediately after the bishop, the son of a grandee appeared; and when I had introduced him into my lady's chamber, 'That nobleman,' said Molina, 'is another original. You must know, that he goes often to a house, in order to treat of some important affair with the gentleman who lives in it, and comes away without remembering to speak a syllable about the matter.—But,' added the governor, seeing two ladies advance, 'there comes Donna Angela de Pennafiel, and Donna Margarita de Montalvan, two ladies between whom there is not the least resemblance: Donna Margarita, who piques herself on being a philosopher, will undertake the most profound doctors of Salamanca in a dispute, without suffering their arguments to get the better of her argumentation. As for Donna Angela, she does not affect the virtuoso, although her understanding is perfectly well cultivated: her conversation is sensible, her sentiments refined, and her expression delicate, noble, and natural.'—'This last is an amiable character,' said I to Molina; 'but

* The announcer, from the Latin word *annunciare*, is a domestick, who stands in the hall on visiting days, and pronounces aloud the names of the company as they enter.

merce with my master: I should, at least, have done better in holding my tongue, than in seizing this occasion of acting the conscientious valet. But, instead of moderating my zeal, I entered warmly into the interest of Don Gonzales, to whom I made a faithful report of what I had seen: I even added, that Euphrasia wanted to seduce me; I concealed nothing of what she had said on that occasion; and it was his own fault if he was not perfectly acquainted with the character of his mistress. He was confounded at the information, and a small emotion of wrath that appeared in his countenance, seemed to preface that the lady should not be unfaithful to him with impunity. 'Enough, Gil Blas,' said he: 'I am extremely sensible of thy attachment, and pleased with thy fidelity; I will go instantly to Euphrasia, load her with reproaches, and break for ever with the ungrateful creature!' So saying, he went out accordingly; and dispensed with my attendance, that he might spare me the disagreeable part I had to play during their eclairsissement.

I waited for my master's return with a world of impatience; not doubting, that as he had so much cause to complain of his nymph, he would come back altogether detached from her allurements. On this supposition, I applauded myself for what I had done; I represented to myself the satisfaction which the natural heirs of Don Gonzales would have, when they learned that their kinsman was no longer the sport of a passion so contrary to their interests; I flattered myself, that they would consider me for it; and, in short, that I had distinguished myself from other valets, who are usually more apt to encourage their masters in debauchery than to reclaim them. I was in love with honour; and reflected, with pleasure, that I should pass for the Corypheus of all domesticks. But this idea, agreeable as it was, vanished in a few hours; when my patron arriving, said, 'Friend, I have had a very sharp conversation with Euphrasia, who affirms, that thou hast misrepresented her, and art, if she is to be believed, no other than an impostor, altogether devoted to my nephews; out of regard to whom, thou sparest nothing to make me

quarrel with her. I saw real tears trickle from her eyes, and she swore by all that was sacred, that she never made any proposal to thee, nor ever sees a man. Beatrice, who seems to be a good girl, protested the same thing, in such a manner, that my anger was appeased in spite of my teeth.' 'How, Sir,' said I, interrupting him in a sorrowful manner, 'do you doubt my sincerity? do you distrust—' 'No, child,' said he, interrupting me in his turn; 'I do thee all manner of justice: I don't believe thee in a confederacy with my nephews. I am persuaded that thou art concerned for my interest only, and I am obliged to thee; but appearances are deceitful. Perhaps, what thou sawest, existed only in thy own imagination; and, in that case, thou mayest guess how disagreeable thy accusation must be to Euphrasia. Be it as it may, she is a person whom I cannot help loving. I must even make the sacrifice to her which she demands, and that sacrifice is thy dismissal. I am sorry for it, my poor Gil Blas,' added he; 'and I assure thee, I consented to it with regret; but I could not do otherwise. What ought to console thee is, that I shall not send thee away unrecompensed; and I intend, moreover, to settle thee with a lady, a friend of mine, where thou wilt live very agreeably.'

I was very much mortified to see my zeal thus turned against myself: I cursed Euphrasia, and deplored the weakness of Don Gonzales, who allowed himself to be led by the nose. The good old man being very sensible, that in turning me away, merely to please his mistress, he did not behave in the most manly manner, made amends for his effeminacy, and gilded the pill I was to swallow, with a present of fifty ducats. Next day, carrying me to the Marchioness of Chaves, he told her, in my hearing, that I was a young man who possessed many good qualities; that he had a regard for me, but family reasons not permitting him to keep me in his service, he begged she would admit me into her family. She received me that instant into the number of her domesticks; so that I found myself translated, all of a sudden, into a new place.

C H A P. VIII.

THE CHARACTER OF THE MARCHIONESS OF CHAVES, AND OF THOSE PEOPLE WHO USUALLY VISITED HER.

THE Marchioness of Chaves was a widow of five and thirty, handsome, tall, and well-shaped, who enjoyed a yearly income of ten thousand ducats, without the care and incumbrance of children. I never saw a woman of more gravity, or one who spoke less; though this did not hinder her from being looked upon as the most witty lady in Madrid. The great concourse of people of quality, and men of learning, who daily frequented her house, contributed, perhaps, more than any thing she said, to give her this reputation. But this I will not undertake to decide; let it suffice to say, that her name imported the idea of a superior genius, and that her house was called, by way of excellence, *the court of criticism*.

There was actually some performance or other read here every day, sometimes new plays, and sometimes other pieces of poetry; but nothing except serious subjects were deemed worthy of attention, humorous pieces being despised; the best comedy, or the most ingenious and witty romance, was looked upon as a feeble production, that deserved no praise; whereas the least serious work, such as an ode, eclogue, or sonnet, passed for the greatest effort of human understanding. But it often happened, that the publick did not confirm the sentence of the court; on the contrary, was sometimes so impolite as to hiss those pieces which had been there very much applauded.

I was chamberlain in this house; that is, my office consisted in getting every thing ready in the apartment of my lady, for the reception of company, and to set the chairs for the men, and the cushions for the women; after which I stationed myself at the chamber-door, to announce* and introduce the persons who arrived. While I was employed in this office, for the first time, the governor of the pages, who by accident

was then in the anti-chamber with me, described them all very pleasantly, as they came in. His name was Andrew Molina, naturally dry and satirical, with a good share of understanding. A bishop being the first who presented himself, I announced him; and when he was entered, the governor observed, 'That prelate is a man of a very pleasant character: having a little credit at court, he would fain make every one believe, that he has a great deal, and offers his interest to all the world, without serving any body. One day, meeting at court with a gentleman who saluted him, he stopped, loaded him with civilities, and, squeezing his hand, said, "I am wholly devoted to your service; pray, Sir, put me to the proof: I shall never die satisfied until I have an opportunity of obliging you!" The gentleman thanked him in a very grateful manner; they parted; and the prelate said to one of his followers, "I think I know that man; I have a confused idea of having seen him somewhere."

Immediately after the bishop, the son of a grandee appeared; and when I had introduced him into my lady's chamber, 'That nobleman,' said Molina, 'is another original. You must know, that he goes often to a house, in order to treat of some important affair with the gentleman who lives in it, and comes away without remembering to speak a syllable about the matter.—But,' added the governor, seeing two ladies advance, 'there comes Donna Angela de Pennafiel, and Donna Margarita de Montalvan, two ladies between whom there is not the least resemblance: Donna Margarita, who piques herself on being a philosopher, will undertake the most profound doctors of Salamanca in a dispute, without suffering their arguments to get the better of her argumentation. As for Donna Angela, she does not affect the virtuoso, although her understanding is perfectly well cultivated: her conversation is sensible, her sentiments refined, and her expression delicate, noble, and natural.'—'This last is an amiable character,' said I to Molina; 'but

* The announcer, from the Latin word *annunciare*, is a domestick, who stands in the hall on visiting days, and pronounces aloud the names of the company as they enter.

‘the other, in my opinion, is inconsistent with the fair-sex.’—‘Not very consistent!’ he replied with a sneer: ‘and even a great many men are rendered ridiculous by such a disposition. Madam the marchioness, our lady,’ continued he, ‘is also a little tainted with philosophy. What wrangling will there be here to-day! God grant that religion may not be concerned in the dispute!’

As he spoke these words, we perceived a meagre man come in, with an air of reserve and a grim countenance. My governor did not spare him. ‘This here,’ said he, ‘is one of your serious wits, who would fain pass for great geniuses, by the favour of a few sentences learned from Seneca, and who are easily detected to be fools, if you examine them a little closely.’ The next that came in was a well-shaped cavalier, with a Grecian mien, that is, a very self-sufficient appearance: when I asked who he was, Molina answered, ‘He is a dramatick poet, who has composed, in his time, an hundred thousand verses, which never brought him in four-pence: but, in recompence for that, he has procured a considerable settlement, by six lines of prose.’

I was going to inform myself of the nature of a fortune got so easily, when I heard a great noise on the stair-case. ‘Good!’ cried the governor, ‘there comes the Licentiate Campanario, who gives notice of his approach before he appears; and, beginning to talk at the street-door, continues without intermission until he goes away.’ Sure enough, the whole house rang again with the voice of the thundering licentiate; who, at length, entered the anti-chamber with a batchelor of his acquaintance, and did not leave off speaking all the time his visit lasted. ‘Signior Campanario,’ said I to Molina, ‘seems to be a great genius.’—‘Yes,’ replied my governor; ‘he has some bright sallies, quaint expressions, and a good deal of humour; but, over and above his being an unconscionable talker, he does not fail to make repetitions; and, not to over-rate his talents, I believe the agreeable and comick air with which he seasons every thing he says, constitutes his chief merit: for the greatest part of his strokes would do no

‘great honour to a collection of witticisms.’

Abundance of other people came in, of whom Molina made very humorous pictures, among which he did not forget that of the marchioness. ‘I assure you,’ said he, ‘our patroness is a lady of a very even temper, in spite of all her philosophy. She is not at all difficult to please, and one is subjected to very few caprices in her service. She is one of the most reasonable women of quality I know, and is even without passion; she has as little taste for gallantry as for play, and loves conversation only: in short, most ladies would think her way of life insupportably tiresome.’ The governor, by this elogium, prepossessed me in the favour of my mistress; nevertheless, some days after, I could not help suspecting that she was not such an enemy to love: and I will relate on what foundation my suspicion was built.

One morning, while she was at her toilet, a little man presented himself to me, about forty years old, of a disagreeable figure, more dirty than the author Pedro de Noya, and very much hunch-backed into the bargain. When he told me he wanted to speak with the marchioness, I asked him, ‘From whom?’ to which he answered, with a haughty look, ‘From myself: tell her I am the gentleman of whom she spoke yesterday to Donna Anna de Velasco.’ I introduced him into my lady’s apartment, and signified his arrival: upon which she immediately exclaimed, in a transport of joy, ‘Shew him in!’ She not only gave him a favourable reception, but likewise ordered all her women out of the room; so that the little hunch-back, more happy than an honest man, remained alone with her; while the chambermaids and I made ourselves merry with this fine tête à tête that lasted near an hour; after which, my patroness dismissed the crook-back, loaded with civilities, that shewed how well she was satisfied with his conversation; which, in effect, captivated her so much, that she told me, one evening, in private, ‘Gil Blas, when the man with the hunch returns, bring him into my apartment as secretly as possible.’ I obeyed; and when the little man came back next morning,

morning, conducted him by a private stair-case to my lady's chamber. I performed the same office, most devoutly, two or three times, without suspecting that there could be any gallantry in the case; but the malignity which is so natural to mankind soon inspired me with strange ideas; and I concluded, that the inclination of the marchioness was either very whimsical, or that the hunch-back acted the part of a go-between.

Prepossessed with this opinion, I often said to myself, 'If my lady is in love with a handsome man, I forgive her; but if she is captivated with this baboon, truly I cannot excuse the depravity of her taste.' How much was I mistaken in my patroness! the little hunch-back dabbled in magic; and, as his skill had been extolled to the marchioness, who willingly listened to the delusions of such impostors, she honoured him with these private conversations, in which he shewed her things in a glass; taught her to turn the sieve; and, for money, revealed all the mysteries of the cabala; or rather, to speak truly, he was a sharper who subsisted at the expence of credulous people, and was said to have several women of quality under contribution.

CHAP. IX.

THE INCIDENT IN CONSEQUENCE OF WHICH GIL BLAS QUITTED THE MARCHIONESS DE CHAVES; AND THE COURSE HE FOLLOWED AFTERWARDS.

I Had already lived six months with the Marchioness de Chaves; and, I confess, was satisfied with my condition: but the destiny I had to fulfil would not permit me to live longer in that lady's house, nor even in Madrid; I will therefore recount the adventure that obliged me to remove from both.

Among my lady's maids, there was one called Portia; who, besides her youth and beauty, possessed such an amiable character, that I attached myself to her, without knowing that I must dispute her heart with a rival. The secretary of the marchioness, who was a proud man, and very much addicted to jealousy, being captivated

with my princess, no sooner perceived my passion, than, without endeavouring to find out my reception with Portia, he resolved to fight me in single combat, and for this purpose appointed me to meet him one morning in a private place. As he was a little man, whose head scarce reached my shoulders, and seemed at the same time very weak, I did not think him a very dangerous rival, but repaired with great confidence to the place appointed, in hopes of gaining an easy victory, and making a merit of it with Portia: but the event did not answer my expectation. The little secretary, who had been two or three years at the fencing-school, disarmed me like an infant, and holding the point of his sword to my throat, 'Prepare,' said he, 'for the mortal blow; or else give me thy word of honour that thou wilt this day quit the service of the Marchioness de Chaves, and never more think of Portia.' I made him that promise, and kept it without reluctance; being ashamed to appear before the rest of the servants, after my defeat, especially before the fair Helen who had been the cause of our duel. My sole intention in returning to the house, was to carry off my goods and money; which having done, I set out the same day for Toledo; my purse being pretty well furnished, and my back loaded with a bundle composed of my whole wearing-apparel: for though I had not engaged to quit Madrid, I thought proper to leave it, at least for some years; and formed the resolution of making the tour of Spain, and of halting at every town. 'The money I have,' said I to myself, 'will carry me a great way; for I don't intend to be extravagant; and when I have no more, I will betake myself again to service. A young man of my accomplishments will find places in abundance, whenever he pleases to go in quest of them.'

I longed, in particular, to see Toledo; whither I arrived at the end of three days, and took up my lodging at a good inn, where I passed for a gentleman of consequence, by the favour of my intriguing dress, which I did not fail to put on, and by the foppish airs which I affected. It was in my own option to establish a correspondence with some handsome

women who lived in the neighbourhood: but understanding that I must begin by spending a good deal of money upon them, I bridled my desires; and feeling still a strong inclination for travelling, after having seen every thing that was curious in Toledo, I left it one morning by break of day, and took the road to Cuenca, with an intention to go to Arragon. On the second day of my journey, I went into an inn on the road; and just as I sat down to refresh myself, a company of soldiers belonging to the Holy Brotherhood came in, and calling for wine, fell to drinking. While they were over their cups, I heard them describe a young man whom they had orders to apprehend. 'The gentleman,' said one of them, 'is not more than twenty years of age, has long black hair, a good shape, an aquiline nose, and is mounted on a bay horse.'

I listened without seeming to give attention to what they said, and truly I did not concern myself much about the matter. Leaving them in the inn, I set forward on my journey, and had not walked a quarter of a league, when I met a young gentleman of a good mien, mounted on a chesnut-coloured horse. 'Upon my faith,' said I to myself, 'this is the man whom the soldiers are in search of: he has long black hair, and an aquiline nose. I must do him a good office.—Sir,' said I to him, 'give me leave to ask, whether or not you have some affair of honour on your hands?' The young gentleman, without making any reply, looked earnestly at me, and seemed surprized at my question. Upon which I assured him, that it was not out of curiosity that I had addressed him in this manner; and he was very well convinced of it, when I told him what I had overheard at the inn. 'Generous stranger,' said he, 'I will not deny that I have reason to believe myself the person whom those soldiers want to apprehend; and therefore will take another road in order to avoid them.'—'It is my opinion,' I replied, 'that we should immediately seek some place where you may be secure, and

where we may be sheltered from that storm which I see brewing in the air, and which will burst very soon.' At that instant, we discovered and repaired to a tufted alley of trees, that conducted us to the foot of a mountain, where we found an hermitage.

It was a large deep grotto, that time had scooped in the rock, to which the art of man had added a kind of front, built of pebbles and shell-work, and quite covered with turf: the adjacent field was strewed with a thousand sorts of flowers, which perfumed the air; and hard by the grotto we perceived a little opening in the rock, from whence issued, with an agreeable noise, a spring of water that run winding along a meadow. At the entrance of this solitary habitation, appeared a holy hermit stooping under the weight of old age, supporting himself with a staff in one hand, and holding in the other a rosary of large beads, composed of twenty courses at least. His head was buried in a brown woollen cap, with long ears, and his beard, more white than snow, came down to his middle. When we approached him, 'Father,' said I, 'be so good as to favour us with shelter from the impending storm.'—'Enter, my children,' replied the anchorite, after having observed me attentively; 'this hermitage is at your service; and you may stay here as long as you please. As for your horse,' added he, pointing to the fore-part of his habitation, 'he will be very well accommodated in that place.' The gentleman who accompanied me, disposed of his beast accordingly, and then we followed the old man into the grotto, which as soon as we had entered, a great shower fell, mingled with flashes of lightning, and dreadful peals of thunder. The hermit fell on his knees before an image of St. Pacomo*, which was glued to the wall, and we followed his example. Meanwhile, the thunder ceased, and we got up; but as the rain continued, and the day was far spent, 'My children,' said the old man, 'I would not advise you to proceed on your journey in such weather, unless you have some pressing

* St. Pacomo, was an Egyptian, whose faith is said to have been so effectual, that he walked among serpents unhurt; and that when he had occasion to cross the river Nile, he was transported from one side to the other on the back of a crocodile.

CHAP. X.

THE STORY OF DON ALPHONSO
AND THE FAIR SERAPHINA.

'affair.' The young man and I replied, that we had none that hindered us from halting; and that, if we were not afraid of incommoding him, we would beg leave to pass the night in his hermitage. 'You won't incommode me in the least,' said the hermit; 'but will have reason to complain of your lodging; for you must lie hard, and I have nothing to offer you but anchorite's fare.'

So saying, the holy man made us sit down at a small table, and presenting us with a few onions, a crust of bread, and a pitcher of water, 'My sons,' said he, 'you see my usual repast; but to-day I will commit an excess, out of regard to you.' He then brought a little cheese, with two handfuls of filberts, and spread them upon the table. The young man, who had no great appetite, did not much honour to the feast: upon which the hermit observed to him, 'I perceive that you are accustomed to better tables than mine, or rather, that sensuality has corrupted your natural taste. I have been in the world, as you are now; the most delicate viands, the most exquisite ragouts, were not too good for my palate; but since I have lived in solitude, I have retrieved the former purity of my taste, and at present can relish nothing but roots, fruits, milk—in a word, that which composed the nourishment of our first parents.'

While he spoke in this manner, the young man sunk into a profound reverie; which the hermit perceiving, 'My son,' said he to him, 'you have an oppression on your spirits; may I not know the cause? unbosom yourself to me. It is not curiosity, but charity alone, that animates my request. I am of age to give advice; and perhaps your situation requires it.'—'Yes, father,' replied the cavalier, with a sigh; 'I have, doubtless, occasion for advice; and I will follow yours, since you are so good as to offer it. I believe I run no risque in discovering myself to a map of your character.'—'No, my son,' said the senior; 'you have nothing to fear on that score, and may safely trust me with any secret.' In this confident, the cavalier spoke as follows.

'I Will conceal nothing from you, father, nor from the other gentleman who hears me; for, after the generosity he shewed, I should be to blame to distrust him. Listen, therefore, to my misfortunes. I was born in Madrid, and my origin is this: an officer of the German guards, called the Baron de Steinbach, going home one evening, perceived a bundle of white linen at the foot of the stair-case. He took it up, and carried it to his wife's apartment, where he found it to be a new-born infant wrapped in very handsome swaddling-cloaths; with a billet, importing, that it belonged to persons of quality, who would one day make themselves known; and that it had been baptized by the name of Alphonso. I am that unhappy infant, and this is all that I know of my birth and parentage: sacrificed to honour or infidelity, I know not whether my mother exposed me, in order to conceal a dishonourable flame; or, seduced by a perjured lover, found herself under the cruel necessity of disowning the fruit of her womb.'

'Be that as it will, the baron and the lady were touched with my situation; and, as they had no children of their own, determined to educate me under the name of Don Alphonso. As I advanced in years, their attachment to me increased; my flattering and complaisant behaviour attracted their caresses every moment; in a word, I had the good fortune to make myself beloved: they gave me all kind of masters; my education became their only study; and, far from expecting impatiently that my parents would discover themselves, they seemed, on the contrary, to wish that my birth would always remain a secret. As soon as the baron found me able to carry arms, he entered me in the service; procured for me an ensign's commission; ordered my small equipage to be got ready; and, to animate me the more to seek occasions of acquiring glory,

glory, he represented to me that the career of honour was open to every body, and that in war I might obtain a name the more glorious, as I should owe it to myself alone. At the same time he revealed the secret of my birth, which he had hitherto concealed from my knowledge. As I passed for his son in Madrid, and effectually believed myself to be so, I own this piece of information gave me a good deal of pain: I could not then, nor cannot now, think of it without shame; for the more my sentiments seemed to argue me of a noble origin, the greater my confusion was, to see myself abandoned by those who gave me being.

I went to serve in the Low-Countries; but the peace being concluded soon after, and Spain rid of her enemies, though not of those who envied her prosperity, I returned to Madrid, where I received fresh marks of tenderness from the baron and his lady. About two months after my return, a little page came into my room one morning, and presented to me a billet, conceived pretty nearly in these words.

I Am neither ugly nor ill-shaped; and yet you see me frequently at the window, without paying homage with your eyes. This behaviour but ill answers your gallant appearance; and piques me so much, that I wish I could inspire you with love, to be revenged on your indifference."

Having read this billet, I did not doubt that it came from a widow called Leonora, who lived opposite to our house, and had the reputation of being very coquettish. I interrogated the page, who was on the reserve at first, but in consideration of a ducat, which I slipped into his hand, he satisfied my curiosity; and even undertook to carry an answer, by which I informed his mistress, that I acknowledged my crime, and was already sensible of her being more than half revenged.

I was not at all insensible of this kind of conquest: I kept the house all that day, and took great care to be always at the window, that I might observe the lady, who did not

forget to shew herself at her's. I made love to her in dumb shew; she answered my signals, and next morning let me know by her page, that if I would be in the street betwixt eleven and twelve at night, I might converse with her at a parlour window. Though I did not find myself very much in love with such a forward widow, I did not fail to return a very passionate answer, and to wait for night with as much impatience as if I had been violently smitten. In the evening, I went out to walk in the Prado till the hour of assignation; and was no sooner arrived at that place, than a man, mounted on a fine horse, alighted hard by me, and accosting me hastily, said, "Are not you the son of Baron Steinbach?" When I replied in the affirmative, "You are the person," said he, "who intend to converse with Leonora at her window. Her page has shewn me her letters and your answers, and I have followed you this evening, from your own house hither, to let you know that you have a rival, whose pride is very much mortified in being obliged to dispute a heart with such a one as you. I believe I need say no more; we are now in a private place. Let us draw, therefore, unless, to avoid the chastisement I prepare for you, you will promise to break off all correspondence with Leonora. You must either sacrifice to me the hopes you have conceived, or forfeit your life immediately."—"You ought then," said I to him, "to have requested, not demanded, that sacrifice; I might, perhaps, have granted it to your intreaty, but I refuse it to your threats."

"It is very well!" he replied, after having tied his horse to a tree; "draw then! It does not become a person of my quality, to stoop so low as to intreat a man of your station; most people of my rank, in the same case, would have revenged themselves in a less honourable way." I was shocked with these last words, and seeing his sword already unsheathed, drew mine also: we attacked one another with such fury, that the combat did not last long; whether he acted with too much heat,

or I had more skill, I know not ; but I gave him a mortal thrust, upon which I saw him stagger and fall. Whereupon, attending to my own safety only, I mounted his horse, and took the road to Toledo. I durst not return to the baron's house, being well assured that my adventure would very much afflict him ; and when I considered the danger in which I was, I thought I could not get out of Madrid too soon.

In the midst of the most melancholy reflections I rode the remaining part of the night, and all the morning ; but towards noon, was obliged to halt, in order to give my horse some rest, and avoid the heat of the day, which grew insupportable. I tarried, therefore, in a village, till sun-set, after which I continued my journey, resolving to make but one stage to Toledo. I had got two leagues beyond Illescas, when, towards midnight, I was surprized in the middle of a field, with just such another storm as fell to-day ; upon which I drew near the wall of a garden that I perceived at the distance of a few paces ; and not finding a more convenient shelter, stood with my horse as close as I could to the door of a summer-house, situated at the end of the wall, over which there was a balcony. As I leaned against the door, I perceived it open, which I ascribed to the negligence of servants ; and alighting, less out of curiosity than for the sake of being better screened from the rain, which did not cease to incommode me while I remained under the balcony, I entered the ground-floor of the summer-house, with my horse, which I led by the bridle.

I employed myself during the tempest, in observing the place ; and though I could distinguish nothing but by the lightning that flashed around, it was easy to perceive that the house could not belong to a vulgar owner. I expected still that the rain would cease, intending to proceed on my journey ; but a great light that I observed at a distance, made me change my resolution. Leaving my horse in the summer-house, the door of which I took care to secure, I advanced towards the light, persuaded that there was still some-

body in the house, not yet gone to bed, and resolved to request lodging for that night. Having crossed several walks, I arrived at a saloon, the door of which I found open also : I entered it, and when I had observed all the magnificence of the place, by the light of a fine chrystal branch, I no longer doubted that I was in the house of some rich nobleman. The pavement was of marble ; the wainscot very handsome, and curiously gilt ; the cornices of admirable workmanship ; and the ceiling painted by the most skilful masters : but what I took particular notice of, was an infinite number of busts of Spanish heroes, supported on pedestals of jasper, all around the saloon. I had leisure enough to consider all these things ; for though I listened attentively from time to time, I neither heard the least noise, nor saw a living creature appear.

There being on one side of the saloon a door unbolted, I half opened it, and perceived a range of rooms, the last of which only was lighted. "What shall I do ?" said I to myself ; "shall I return, or boldly penetrate to that room ?" I concluded that the most judicious step would be, to return as I came. But I could not resist my curiosity, or rather the force of destiny that dragged me along : I advanced from one room to another, until I arrived at that in which was the light ; that is, a taper burning on a marble table, in a silver candlestick gilt. I at first observed very handsome and gay summer furniture ; but in a little time, casting my eyes upon a bed, the curtains of which were half drawn, on account of the heat, I saw an object that attracted my whole attention. This was a young lady, who, notwithstanding the noise of the thunder, lay in a profound sleep. I approached her softly, and by the light of the taper, discovered a complexion and features that quite dazzled me. My heart took the alarm at the sight ! I felt my soul smitten and transported ; but whatever emotions agitated my breast, the opinion which I had of her high rank, hindered me from entertaining the least rash thought, and respect prevailed over inclination.

While I glugged myself with the pleasure

"pleasure of contemplating her beauty, she awoke; and you may guess what was her surprize, when she saw a man whom she did not know, in her bed-chamber at midnight. She trembled when she perceived me, and shrieked aloud; while I endeavoured to remove her fear, by kneeling before her, and saying, "Madam, be not afraid; I come not hither to do you the least injury." I was going on, but her consternation was such, that she did not hear me. She called her women several times, but nobody answering, she put on a thin night-gown which lay at the bed's feet, got up hastily, and went into the rooms that I had crossed, still calling her maids, and a younger sister who lived under her care. I expected to see all her servants appear, and had reason to apprehend that, without being heard, I should meet with very disagreeable treatment; but, luckily for me, she called to no purpose; nobody came but an old domestick, who could not have given her much assistance, had she had any thing to fear. Nevertheless, growing more resolute by his presence, she asked, with a haughty air, who I was, and how, and for what reason, I had the boldness to enter her house. I then began to justify myself; and had no sooner told her that I found the door of the summer-house open, than she exclaimed, "Just Heaven! what do I presage!"

"So saying, she seized the light, and searching all the rooms, one after another, could see neither her maids nor her sister, but even observed that they had carried off all their baggage. Her suspicions appearing now but too plain, she returned to me, and said, with a great deal of emotion, "Perfidious wretch! add not dissimulation to treachery. It was not chance that brought thee here. Thou art one of the followers of Don Fernando de Leyva, and an associate in his crime: but do not think to escape; I have still people enow to secure thee!"—"Madam," answered I, "do not confound me with your enemies. I know no such person as Don Fernando de Leyva, and am even ignorant of your name and quality. I am an unfortunate man, whom an affair of honour hath obli-

"ged to leave Madrid; and I swear by all that is sacred, I would not have entered your house, had it not been for the storm that surprized me! Judge, therefore, more favourably of me; and, instead of believing me an accomplice in the outrage you have suffered, think me rather disposed to revenge it." These last words, and the tone with which they were pronounced, appeased the lady, who seemed to look upon me no longer as her enemy: but if her indignation vanished, it was only to make room for her grief. She wept bitterly; I was melted by her tears, and no less afflicted than she, although I did not know the cause of her sorrow. I not only wept with her; but, impatient to revenge her wrongs, was seized with a transport of fury: "Madam," cried I, "what injury have you received? Speak; I espouse your resentment. Shall I pursue Don Fernando, and stab him to the heart? Name all those whom you would have sacrificed. Command my service. Whatever dangers, whatever misfortunes may be attached to your vengeance, that stranger whom you thought confederate with your enemies, will tempt them all for your sake!"

"This transport surprized the lady, and stopped the course of her tears: "Ah, Sir!" said she, "pardon my suspicion, on account of the cruel situation in which I am. These generous sentiments have undeceived Seraphina, and even freed me from the shame of seeing a stranger witness to the affront put upon my family. Yes, generous unknown! I acknowledge my error, and am far from rejecting your assistance; but I ask not the death of Don Fernando."—"Well, Madam," I replied; "what services can you expect of me?"—"Sir," answered Seraphina, "the cause of my complaint is this: Don Fernando de Leyva is in love with my sister Julia, whom he saw by accident at Toledo, where we usually live. Three months ago, he asked her in marriage of the Count de Polan, my father, who refused his consent, on account of an old enmity subsisting between our families. My sister, not yet fifteen years of age, must have been weak enough

to follow the advice of my women, whom Don Fernando has, doubtless, bribed to his interest; and he, informed of our being by ourselves in this country-house, has taken this opportunity of carrying her off. I want, therefore, to know what retreat he has chosen for her, that my father and brother, who have been at Madrid these two months, may take their measures accordingly. In the name of God!" added she, give yourself the trouble of traversing the neighbourhood of Toledo, and of making an exact enquiry about the ravisher; my family will be eternally indebted to you for the favour."

The lady did not consider, that the employment which she prescribed for me but ill agreed with the circumstances of a man who could not get out of Castile too soon. But how was it possible for her to make this reflection, which did not even occur to me! Charmed with the happiness of finding myself necessary to the most amiable person in the world, I accepted the commission with a transport of joy, and promised to acquit myself with equal diligence and zeal. In effect, I did not wait for day, in order to go and accomplish my promise; but quitted Seraphina on the instant, conjuring her to pardon me for the fright I had occasioned, and assuring her, that she should hear news of me in a very little time. I went out as I had come in, but so much ingrossed by the lady, that it was not difficult for me to perceive I was already captivated by her beauty: I was the more confirmed in this, by the eagerness I felt in serving her, and the amorous chimeras which my imagination produced. I fancied that Seraphina, although possessed by her sorrow, had observed my growing passion, and beheld it perhaps not without some pleasure: I even imagined, that if I could bring her any news of her sister, and the affair should turn out according to her wish, the whole would redound to my honour."

Don Alphonso, interrupting the thread of his story, in this place, said to the old hermit, "I beg pardon, father, if, too full of my passion; I

enlarge upon circumstances which are doubtless tedious to you."—No, my son," replied the anchorite; they are far from being tedious: I am even pleased to know how far you are smitten by this young lady of whom you talk, that I may regulate my advice accordingly."

My imagination heated with these flattering ideas, resumed the young man; "I searched two days for Julia's ravisher: but it was to no purpose for me to make all imaginable enquiry; I could not discover the least traces of him. Very much mortified at having reaped no fruit from my researches, I returned to Seraphina, whom I expected to find in the utmost anxiety: but she was much more tranquil than I imagined, and informed me that she had been more lucky than I; that she knew what was become of her sister, having received a letter from Don Fernando himself; importing, that being privately married to Julia, he had placed her in a convent at Toledo. "I have sent his letter to my father," added Seraphina; "I hope the affair will terminate in an amicable manner, and that a solemn marriage will, in a short time, extinguish the hatred which has so long divided our families."

When the lady had made me acquainted with her sister's fate, she made an apology for the trouble she had given me, and the danger to which she might have imprudently exposed me, by engaging me to pursue a ravisher, without remembering that I had told her I was obliged to fly on account of an affair of honour: she excused herself, therefore, in the most obliging terms; and, as I had need of rest, carried me into the saloon, where we sat down together. She wore a loose gown of white taffety, with black stripes, and a little hat of the same stuff with a black plume of feathers, which made me guess that she was a widow; though she appeared so young, that I did not know what to think of her condition.

If I longed for an explanation on this head, she was no less desirous of knowing who I was; and accordingly begged that I would tell her my name, not doubting (as she said)

“ that by my noble air, and still more,
 “ the generous pity that made me enter
 “ so warmly into her interests, I
 “ belonged to some considerable family.
 “ The question embarrassed me
 “ not a little; I blushed; was confounded;
 “ and own, that being less ashamed
 “ to lye than to tell the truth, I answered,
 “ I was the son of the Baron de Steinbach,
 “ an officer of the German guards. “ Tell me likewise,”
 “ replied the lady, “ for what reason
 “ you quitted Madrid? I offer you
 “ before-hand, all the credit of my father,
 “ as well as of my brother Don Gaspard;
 “ that is the least mark of gratitude I can shew,
 “ to a gentleman who neglected the care
 “ of his own life to serve me.” I made
 “ no difficulty of recounting to her all the
 “ circumstances of my duel: upon which she
 “ blamed the gentleman whom I had slain,
 “ and promised to interest her whole family
 “ in my favour.

“ When I had satisfied her curiosity, I begged
 “ her to gratify mine; and asked her whether
 “ her faith was free or plighted. “ Three years
 “ ago,” she replied, “ my father obliged me
 “ to marry Don Diego de Lara, and I have
 “ been a widow fifteen months.” — “ Madam,”
 “ said I, “ what misfortune has deprived you
 “ of your husband so soon?” — “ I will tell
 “ you, Sir,” resumed the lady, “ in return
 “ for the confidence you have reposed in me.

“ Don Diego de Lara was a very genteel
 “ cavalier, who entertained the most violent
 “ passion for me; and, in order to please me,
 “ put in practice, every day, all that the
 “ most tender and passionate lover could
 “ invent, to make himself agreeable to the
 “ object of his flame; but though he possessed
 “ a thousand good qualities, he could never
 “ touch my heart. Love is not always the
 “ effect of assiduities and distinguished merit.
 “ — “ Alas!” added she, “ an utter stranger
 “ often enchants us at first sight. Well,
 “ it was not in my power to love him: more
 “ confounded than charmed with the tokens
 “ of his tenderness, to which I was forced
 “ to make returns without inclination; though
 “ I, in secret, taxed myself with ingratitude,
 “ I likewise found my own situation

“ very unhappy. Unluckily for him, as well
 “ as me, his delicacy was still greater than his
 “ love. He discovered in my actions and
 “ discourse the most secret emotions of my
 “ breast, and dived to the very bottom of my
 “ soul. He complained incessantly of my
 “ indifference, and deemed himself the more
 “ unhappy in being unable to please me,
 “ because he very well knew that there was
 “ no rival in his way; for I was scarce
 “ sixteen years old, and before he offered
 “ me his hand, he had gained over all my
 “ women, who assured him that no man had
 “ as yet attracted my regard. “ Yes, Seraphina,”
 “ he would often say, “ I wish you had
 “ been prepossessed in favour of another,
 “ and that alone were the cause of your
 “ indifference to me: my assiduities, and your
 “ own virtue, would triumph over that
 “ prejudice; but I despair of making a
 “ conquest of your heart, since it remains
 “ untouched by all the love I have shewn.”
 “ Tired with hearing him repeat the same
 “ discourse, I told him, that instead of
 “ troubling his repose and mine by too much
 “ delicacy, he would do well to leave his
 “ grievances to time. And truly, one of my
 “ age was not capable of relishing the
 “ refinements of such a delicate passion;
 “ so that Don Diego ought to have taken
 “ my advice: but seeing a whole year
 “ elapsed, without his being farther
 “ advanced than the first day, he lost his
 “ patience, or rather his reason; and
 “ pretending to have an affair of consequence
 “ at court, departed to serve as a volunteer
 “ in the Low Countries, where he soon found
 “ in battle, that which he went to seek;
 “ I mean, the end of his torments and life.”

“ After the lady had favoured me with this
 “ relation, the singular character of her
 “ husband became the subject of our
 “ discourse; in which we were interrupted
 “ by the arrival of a courier, who delivered
 “ to Seraphina a letter from the Count de
 “ Polan. She asked my permission to read
 “ it; and I observed, that while she perused
 “ it, she grew pale and trembled. After
 “ having read it, she lifted up her eyes to
 “ heaven, heaved a profound sigh, and her
 “ face was in a moment covered with tears.
 “ I could

could not behold her grief with tranquillity: I was greatly disturbed; and, as if I had presaged the cruel stroke I was to suffer, felt myself chilled with a mortal fear. "Madam," said I, with a faltering voice, "may I ask what are the fatal contents of that letter?"— "There, Sir," replied Seraphina in a melancholy manner, giving me the paper; "read yourself what my father writes. Alas! you are but too much concerned."

I was confounded at her words: and, trembling while I took the letter, read—

YOUR brother Don Gaspard fought yesterday in the Prado*, where he received a mortal thrust, of which he died this day; having declared, in his last moments, that the person who killed him is the son of Baron de Steinbach, an officer of the German guards. What adds to the misfortune is, that the murderer has escaped me by flight: but wheresoever he conceals himself, I shall spare no pains to find him out; for which purpose I will write to some governors, who will not fail to apprehend him, if he passes through the towns of their jurisdiction; and by letters directed to other people, I will cause all the roads to be blocked up.

"The Count de POLAN."

"You may easily conceive how all my faculties were disordered by this billet. I remained for some moments without motion or power of speech; and even in the midst of this depression, perceiving what a fatal obstruction the death of Don Gaspard would be to my love, was seized with the most violent despair! I threw myself at the feet of Seraphina, and presenting my naked sword, "Madam," said I, "spare the Count de Polan the trouble of finding out a man, who might conceal himself from his resentment. Revenge your brother, by sacrificing his murderer with your own hand. Strike, Madam! and let the sword that deprived him of life, become fatal to his unfortunate ad-

versary."—"Sir," replied Seraphina, affected with my behaviour, "I loved Don Gaspard; therefore, although you killed him honourably, and he brought his misfortune upon himself, you may be assured I enter into the resentment of my father. Yes, Don Alphonso! I am your enemy, and will act against you every thing that the ties of blood and friendship can require: but I will not take the advantage of your bad fortune, which has put you in my power. The same honour that arms me against you, hinders me from taking a base revenge. The rights of hospitality ought to be inviolable, and therefore I will not repay the service you have done me, with the conduct of an assassin. Fly, then! elude, if you can, our pursuit, and the rigour of the laws, and save your life from the danger that threatens it!"

"How, Madam!" I replied, "when you can revenge yourself, do you leave it to the laws, which may perhaps baulk your resentment? Ah! rather pierce the heart of a miserable wretch who does not deserve your forbearance! No, Madam; do not honour me with such a noble and generous proceeding. You know not who I am: though I pass in Madrid for the son of the Baron de Steinbach, I am no other than an unfortunate foundling, whom he has brought up out of pure compassion; I do not even know the authors of my being."—"No matter," said Seraphina; interrupting me with precipitation, as if my last words had given her new pain; "were you the lowest of mankind, I will do what honour prescribes."—"Well, Madam," said I, "since the death of a brother cannot provoke you to shed my blood, I will incense you by a new crime; the audacity of which, I hope, you will not excuse.—I adore you.—I could not behold your charms without being dazzled with them; and, in spite of the obscurity of my fate, had entertained the hope of making you mine for ever. I was so much in love, or rather so vain, as to flatter myself that Heaven, which perhaps favours

* The publick walk at Madrid, as the Park is at London.

"me by keeping my origin concealed, would disclose it to me one day, when I should be able to tell you my name without a blush. After this confession, which injures you so much, do you still hesitate in punishing me?"—"This rash declaration," replied the lady, "would doubtless offend me at another time, but I pardon it, in consideration of your present agitation: besides, my own anxiety will not permit me to attend to such discourse. Once more, Don Alphonso," added she, shedding some tears, "leave this place; fly from a house you have filled with sorrow; for every moment you stay increases my affliction!"—"Madam, I will no longer resist," said I, rising; "I must banish myself from you; but think not that, studious of preserving a life which is odious to you, I will go and seek an asylum where I can be secure. No, no! I devote myself to your resentment. I will go to Toledo; wait with impatience for the fate you decree; and, exposing myself to your pursuit, advance willingly toward the end of my misfortunes."

"So saying, I withdrew: my horse was brought out for me, and I repaired to Toledo*, where I staid a whole week; and, truly, was at so little pains to conceal myself, that I don't know how I escaped being taken; for I cannot believe that the Count de Polan, whose chief care was to shut up all the passages against me, would imagine that I could not pass through Toledo. In fine, I yesterday left that city, where I seemed to be tired of liberty; and without keeping any certain road, am come to this hermitage, like a man who has nothing to fear. You see, father, what engrosses my thoughts, and I crave the assistance of your advice."

CHAP. XI.

THE OLD HERMIT DISCOVERS HIMSELF, AND GIL BLAS PERCEIVES THAT HE IS AMONG HIS ACQUAINTANCE.

ALPHONSO having ended the melancholy narration of his misfortunes, the old hermit said to him, "Son, you have been very imprudent in staying so long at Toledo. I look upon all you have recounted in a light very different from that in which you see it; and your passion for Seraphina is, in my opinion, pure madness. Believe me, you must forget that young lady, who cannot possibly be yours. Yield, therefore, with a good grace, to the obstacles which separate you from her; and follow your destiny, which in all likelihood will be productive of many other adventures. You will, questionless, find some other young lady, who will make the same impression upon your heart, and whose brother you have not slain."

He was going to add a great many other things, in order to induce Don Alphonso to have patience, when he saw another hermit, loaded with a wallet well stuffed, enter the hermitage. He was come from the town of Cuenca, where he had made a very successful gathering; seemed younger than his companion, and wore a red bushy beard. "Welcome, brother Antonio," said the old anchorite to him; "what news from town?"—"Bad enough," answered the red-haired brother, putting a letter in his hand; "that billet will inform you." The senior, having opened and read it with suitable attention, cried, "God be praised! since the plot is discovered, we must regulate our conduct accordingly. Let us change our style," added he. "Signior Don Alphonso, you see a

* Toledo is the capital of New Castile, and was anciently the royal seat of the Goths and Moors. It stands on a steep craggy rock, encompassed by the Tagus, over which are two noble bridges. It is an archiepiscopal see, and the revenue so considerable, that the late Queen of Spain obtained it from the pope for one of her sons, though a minor. The lands for the repairs of the church, are said to be of the annual value of 300,000 ducats, and for the dignitaries and canons 200,000 more. The archbishop is Great Chancellor of Castile, has a diocese of 802 parishes, to which belong seventeen towns, besides a great many villages.

‘man exposed, like yourself, to the caprice of fortune. I am informed from Cuenca, which is a town about a league from this, that somebody has done me an ill office with justice; all the agents of which are to set out to-morrow for this hermitage, in order to secure my person; but they shan’t find the hare in the gin. This is not the first time that I have been in such dilemmas. Thank God, I have almost always extricated myself in another shape! for such as you see me, I am neither an old man nor a hermit.’

So saying, he stripped himself of a long robe which he wore, and appeared in a doublet of black serge with slashed sleeves. Then he pulled off his cap, untied a string that supported his false beard, and all of a sudden, assumed the figure of a man between twenty and thirty years of age. Brother Anthony, by his example, quitted his hermit’s habit, rid himself of his red beard in the same manner as his companion had done, and took out of an old worm-eaten coffer a shabby short cassock, with which he clothed himself. But you may guess my surprize, when, in the person of the old anchorite, I recollected Signior Don Raphael; and in that of brother Anthony, my most dear and faithful valet, Ambrose de Lamela. ‘Good God!’ cried I, immediately; ‘I find I am among my acquaintance here.’—‘True, Signior Gil Blas,’ said Raphael, smiling, ‘you have found two of your friends when you least expected it. I confess, you have some reason to complain of us; but let us forget what is past, and thank Heaven for our meeting again. Ambrose and I make a tender of our services; and I can tell you they are not to be despised. You must not think us the worst of mankind; we neither assault nor assassinate: we seek only to live at the expence of our neighbours; and if theft be a crime, necessity excuses the injustice. Associate with us, and lead a rambling life, which is extremely agreeable, when conducted with prudence; not but, with all our sagacity, the chain of second causes is sometimes such, that we meet with unlucky adventures. What then! we enjoy the good with the better relish, on that very account.

‘We are hardened against inconstant weather, and accustomed to the vicissitudes of fortune.’

‘Signior Cavalier,’ added the false hermit, speaking to Don Alphonso, ‘we make the same proposal to you; which, considering your present situation, I think you ought not to reject; for, not to mention the affair that obliges you to conceal yourself, you must certainly be in want of money.’—‘Yes, truly,’ said Don Alphonso; ‘and that, I own, increases my chagrin.’—‘Well, then,’ replied Raphael, ‘don’t leave us; you cannot do better than to join your fortune to ours: you shall want nothing; and we will baffle all the search of your enemies. We know almost every inch of Spain, having travelled over it; and are acquainted with the woods, mountains, and every place proper for an asylum against the brutality of justice.’ Don Alphonso thanked them for their good will, and being actually without money or resource, resolved to bear them company. I came to the same determination, because I would not leave the young gentleman, for whom I felt a growing friendship.

Having agreed to go all together, we began to deliberate whether we should set out that instant, or first of all give some assaults to a full bottle of excellent wine, which brother Anthony, the day before, had brought from Cuenca: but Raphael, as a man of the greatest experience among us, represented that, before every thing else, we must think of our safety. He was of opinion, therefore, that we should march all night, in order to gain a very thick wood between Villardeña and Almodabar, in which we should halt, and, being perfectly secure, spend the day in taking our repose. This advice being approved, the false hermits made two bundles of their baggage and provisions, and laid them in equilibrio, on Don Alphonso’s horse. This was done with great expedition; after which we quitted the hermitage, leaving as a prey to justice the two hermit-ropes, with the white and red beards, two pallets, a table, a rotten chest, two old straw-bottomed chairs, and the image of St. Pacomo.

We walked all night, and began to feel ourselves very much fatigued, when

at

"me by keeping my origin concealed, would disclose it to me one day, when I should be able to tell you my name without a blush. After this confession, which injures you so much, do you still hesitate in punishing me?"—"This rash declaration," replied the lady, "would doubtless offend me at another time, but I pardon it, in consideration of your present agitation: besides, my own anxiety will not permit me to attend to such discourse. Once more, Don Alphonso," added she, shedding some tears, "leave this place; fly from a house you have filled with sorrow; for every moment you stay increases my affliction!"—"Madam, I will no longer resist," said I, rising; "I must banish myself from you; but think not that, studious of preserving a life which is odious to you, I will go and seek an asylum where I can be secure. No, no! I devote myself to your resentment. I will go to Toledo; wait with impatience for the fate you decree; and, exposing myself to your pursuit, advance willingly toward the end of my misfortunes."

"So saying, I withdrew: my horse was brought out for me, and I repaired to Toledo*, where I staid a whole week; and, truly, was at so little pains to conceal myself, that I don't know how I escaped being taken; for I cannot believe that the Count de Polan, whose chief care was to shut up all the passages against me, would imagine that I could not pass through Toledo. In fine, I yesterday left that city, where I seemed to be tired of liberty; and without keeping any certain road, am come to this hermitage, like a man who has nothing to fear. You see, father, what engrosses my thoughts, and I crave the assistance of your advice."

* Toledo is the capital of New Castile, and was anciently the royal seat of the Goths and Moors. It stands on a steep craggy rock, encompassed by the Tagus, over which are two noble bridges. It is an archiepiscopal see, and the revenue so considerable, that the late Queen of Spain obtained it from the pope for one of her sons, though a minor. The lands for the repairs of the church, are said to be of the annual value of 300,000 ducats, and for the dignitaries and canons 200,000 more. The archbishop is Great Chancellor of Castile, has a diocese of 802 parishes, to which belong seventeen towns, besides a great many villages.

CHAP. XI.

THE OLD HERMIT DISCOVERS HIMSELF, AND GIL BLAS PERCEIVES THAT HE IS AMONG HIS ACQUAINTANCE.

ALPHONSO having ended the melancholy narration of his misfortunes, the old hermit said to him, "Son, you have been very imprudent in staying so long at Toledo. I look upon all you have recounted in a light very different from that in which you see it; and your passion for Seraphina is, in my opinion, pure madness. Believe me, you must forget that young lady, who cannot possibly be yours. Yield, therefore, with a good grace, to the obstacles which separate you from her; and follow your destiny, which in all likelihood will be productive of many other adventures. You will, questionless, find some other young lady, who will make the same impression upon your heart, and whose brother you have not slain."

He was going to add a great many other things, in order to induce Don Alphonso to have patience, when he saw another hermit, loaded with a wallet well stuffed, enter the hermitage. He was come from the town of Cuenca, where he had made a very successful gathering; seemed younger than his companion, and wore a red bushy beard. "Welcome, brother Antonio," said the old anchorite to him; "what news from town?"—"Bad enough," answered the red-haired brother, putting a letter in his hand; "that billet will inform you." The senior, having opened and read it with suitable attention, cried, "God be praised! since the plot is discovered, we must regulate our conduct accordingly. Let us change our style," added he. "Signior Don Alphonso, you see a

‘man exposed, like yourself, to the caprice of fortune. I am informed from Cuenca, which is a town about a league from this, that somebody has done me an ill office with justice; all the agents of which are to set out to-morrow for this hermitage, in order to secure my person; but they shan’t find the hare in the gin. This is not the first time that I have been in such dilemmas. Thank God, I have almost always extricated myself in another shape! for such as you see me, I am neither an old man nor a hermit.’

So saying, he stripped himself of a long robe which he wore, and appeared in a doublet of black serge with slashed sleeves. Then he pulled off his cap, untied a string that supported his false beard, and all of a sudden, assumed the figure of a man between twenty and thirty years of age. Brother Anthony, by his example, quitted his hermit’s habit, rid himself of his red beard in the same manner as his companion had done, and took out of an old worm-eaten coffer a shabby short cassock, with which he clothed himself. But you may guess my surprize, when, in the person of the old anchorite, I recollected Signior Don Raphael; and in that of brother Anthony, my most dear and faithful valet, Ambrose de Lamela. ‘Good God!’ cried I, immediately; ‘I find I am among my acquaintance here.’—‘True, Signior Gil Blas,’ said Raphael, smiling, ‘you have found two of your friends when you least expected it. I confess, you have some reason to complain of us; but let us forget what is past, and thank Heaven for our meeting again. Ambrose and I make a tender of our services; and I can tell you they are not to be despised. You must not think us the worst of mankind; we neither assault nor assassinate: we seek only to live at the expence of our neighbours; and if theft be a crime, necessity excuses the injustice. Associate with us, and lead a rambling life, which is extremely agreeable, when conducted with prudence; not but, with all our sagacity, the chain of second causes is sometimes such, that we meet with unlucky adventures. What then! we enjoy the good with the better relish, on that very account.

‘We are hardened against inconstant weather, and accustomed to the vicissitudes of fortune.’

‘Signior Cavalier,’ added the false hermit, speaking to Don Alphonso, ‘we make the same proposal to you; which, considering your present situation, I think you ought not to reject; for, not to mention the affair that obliges you to conceal yourself, you must certainly be in want of money.’—‘Yes, truly,’ said Don Alphonso; ‘and that, I own, increases my chagrin.’—‘Well, then,’ replied Raphael, ‘don’t leave us; you cannot do better than to join your fortune to ours: you shall want nothing; and we will baffle all the search of your enemies. We know almost every inch of Spain, having travelled over it; and are acquainted with the woods, mountains, and every place proper for an asylum against the brutality of justice.’ Don Alphonso thanked them for their good will, and being actually without money or resource, resolved to bear them company. I came to the same determination, because I would not leave the young gentleman, for whom I felt a growing friendship.

Having agreed to go all together, we began to deliberate whether we should set out that instant, or first of all give some assaults to a full bottle of excellent wine, which brother Anthony, the day before, had brought from Cuenca: but Raphael, as a man of the greatest experience among us, represented that, before every thing else, we must think of our safety. He was of opinion, therefore, that we should march all night, in order to gain a very thick wood between Villardeña and Almodabar, in which we should halt, and, being perfectly secure, spend the day in taking our repose. This advice being approved, the false hermits made two bundles of their baggage and provisions, and laid them in equilibrio, on Don Alphonso’s horse. This was done with great expedition; after which we quitted the hermitage, leaving as a prey to justice the two hermit-robcs, with the white and red beards, two pallets, a table, a rotten chest, two old straw-bottomed chairs, and the image of St. Pacomo.

We walked all night, and began to feel ourselves very much fatigued, when

at

at day-break we perceived the wood to which we were bound. The sight of a port gives new vigour to sailors tired with a long voyage. We accordingly took courage, and at last arrived at the end of our journey before sun-rise. Penetrating into the thickest part of the wood, we stopped at a very agreeable spot upon a small glade, surrounded with a good many tall oaks; the branches of which meeting, formed an umbrageous arch, impervious to the heat of the day. Here we unbridled the horse to let him feed, (after we had unloaded him) and sitting down together, took out of brother Anthony's wallet some large pieces of bread, with a good many slices of roasted meat, and began to attack them as if for a wager. Nevertheless, in spite of our appetites, we often left off eating to embrace the bottle, which incessantly circulated, passing from the clasp of one into the embraces of another.

Towards the end of the repast, Don Raphael said to Don Alphonso, 'Signior Cavalier, after the confidence you have honoured me with, it is but just that I recount to you the history of my life with the same sincerity.'—'It will give me great pleasure,' replied the young man. 'And me in particular,' cried I; 'for I have an extreme curiosity to hear your adventures, which are doubtless well worth our attention.'

—'That I'll answer for,' replied Raphael; 'and I intend to commit them to writing one day. That shall be the amusement of my old age; for I am still young, and would have the volume enlarged. But at present we are fatigued. Let us refresh ourselves with a few hours of sleep; while we three enjoy our rest, Ambrose will watch against all surprize, and then sleep in his turn. Though I believe we are very safe in this place, it is always good to be upon our guard.' So saying, he stretched himself upon the grass, Don Alphonso did the same, I followed their example, and Lamela stood sentry.

Don Alphonso, instead of taking some repose, kept himself awake with reflecting upon his misfortunes; and I could not close an eye. As for Don Raphael, he soon fell asleep; but awaking an hour after, and seeing us disposed to listen, he said to Lamela, 'Friend Ambrose, thou mayest now take a comfortable nap.'—'No, no,' replied Lamela; 'I have no inclination to sleep; and though I am well acquainted with all the passages of your life, they are so instructive for people of our profession, that I shall be very well entertained in hearing them recounted once more.' Don Raphael immediately began the history of his life in these terms.

END OF THE FOURTH BOOK.

THE







THE
ADVENTURES
OF
GILLBLASS
OF
SANTILLANE.

BOOK V.

CHAP. I.

THE HISTORY OF DON RAPHAEL.

I Am the son of an actress
at Madrid, whose name
was Lucinda, famous
for her theatrical ta-
lents, and still more
for her gallantry. As for my father,
I cannot, without presumption, as-
sume any one in particular. It is
true, I might tell what man of qua-
lity was in love with my mother
when I came into the world; but
that epocha would by no means be
a convincing proof of his being the
author of my birth. A woman of
my mother's profession is so little
to be trusted, that even while she
appears the most attached to one
nobleman, she almost always sub-
stitutes in his place some other per-
son for his money.
There is nothing like putting one's
self above scandal: Lucinda, instead
of bringing me up in obscurity at
her own house, took me by the hand,
without ceremony, and carried me

to the theatre in a very honourable
manner, without giving herself any
trouble about the discourse that passed
at her expence, or the malicious
sneers that the sight of me never
failed to excite. In a word, I was
her darling, and caressed by all the
men that visited her, so much, that
it looked as if Nature pleaded with
them in my behalf.

I was allowed to pass the twelve
first years of my life in all sorts of
frivolous amusements: scarce was I
taught to read and write; and still
less pains were taken to initiate me
in the principles of my religion; I
learned only to dance, sing, and play
on the guittar. This was all I could
do, when the Marquis de Leganez
asked me as a companion to his only
son, who was pretty much of my
age. Lucinda willingly complied
with his request, and it was then I
began to think seriously. Young
Leganez was not farther advanced
than I: that little nobleman did not
seem qualified by Nature for the
sciences. He hardly knew one letter
of his alphabet, although he had been
under the instruction of a preceptor
fifteen

‘ fifteen months. His other masters
‘ succeeded no better: he exhausted
‘ their patience. They were not, in-
‘ deed, permitted to use rigour; but
‘ expressly ordered to instruct, without
‘ tormenting him; and that order,
‘ joined to his natural dulness, ren-
‘ dered all their lessons of little or no
‘ effect.

‘ But the preceptor invented an ex-
‘ cellent expedient to intimidate the
‘ young nobleman, without contra-
‘ dicting his father’s order: he resolved
‘ to flog me when his pupil deserved
‘ punishment; and he did not fail to
‘ put his resolution in practice. Not
‘ relishing this expedient, I ran away,
‘ and complained to my mother of
‘ such unjust treatment: but, in spite
‘ of all her tenderness for me, she had
‘ strength enough to resist my tears,
‘ and considering that it was a great
‘ advantage for her son to live with
‘ the Marquis de Leganez, sent me
‘ back immediately. I was now ab-
‘ bandoned to the preceptor; who,
‘ perceiving that his invention had
‘ produced a good effect, continued
‘ to flog me still, instead of the young
‘ nobleman; and, in order to make
‘ the deeper impression upon him, dis-
‘ ciplined me with great severity. I
‘ was sure to pay, every day, for
‘ young Leganez; and I may venture
‘ to affirm, that he did not learn one
‘ letter of his alphabet, which did not
‘ cost me an hundred lashes. Judge
‘ you what his rudiments stood me in.

‘ The birch was not the only dis-
‘ agreeable thing I suffered in this
‘ house: as every body knew me, the
‘ meanest servant, even the scullions,
‘ reproached me with my birth. This
‘ disgusted me so much, that I ran
‘ away one day, after having found
‘ means to seize the preceptor’s whole
‘ stock of ready-money, which might
‘ amount to an hundred and fifty du-
‘ cats. Such was the vengeance I
‘ took for the stripes he had so unjust-
‘ ly bestowed upon me. I performed
‘ this slight of hand with admirable
‘ dexterity, though it was my first
‘ essay; and having had the address
‘ to baffle the search that was made for
‘ me during two days, left Madrid,
‘ and repaired to Toledo, without be-
‘ ing pursued.

‘ I was then just going into my
‘ fifteenth year. What a pleasure it

‘ was to be independent at that age,
‘ and entirely master of my own
‘ actions! I soon contracted acquaint-
‘ tance with young people, who polish-
‘ ed me up, and assisted me to spend
‘ my ducats: I associated with knights
‘ of the post, who cultivated my hap-
‘ py disposition so well, that in a little
‘ time I became one of the most dex-
‘ terous of the order. At the end of
‘ five years, being seized with an in-
‘ clination to travel, I quitted my
‘ confederates, and beginning my pe-
‘ regrinations by Estremadura, went
‘ as far as Alcantara: but before I
‘ reached that place, finding an op-
‘ portunity of exerting my talents, I
‘ did not let it escape. Being a-foot,
‘ and moreover loaded with a pretty
‘ heavy knapsack, I frequently halted
‘ to repose myself under the trees,
‘ that offered me their shade, at a little
‘ distance from the highway. In one
‘ of those resting-places I found two
‘ lads very well dressed, talking mer-
‘ rily on the grass, while they enjoy-
‘ ed the coolness of the shade. I sa-
‘ luted them very courteously, and en-
‘ tered into conversation with them,
‘ at which they did not seem displeased.
‘ The eldest was not more than fifteen,
‘ and they seemed both to be extreme-
‘ ly raw. “Signior Cavalier,” said
‘ the youngest to me, “we are sons
‘ of two rich citizens of Placentia,
‘ who longing extremely to see the
‘ kingdom of Portugal, in order to
‘ satisfy our curiosity, have taken an
‘ hundred pistoles each from our pa-
‘ rents; and as we travel a-foot, hope
‘ to go a great way with that sum.
‘ What is your opinion of the mat-
‘ ter?”—“If I had so much,” I
‘ replied, “God knows where I
‘ should go: I would visit the four
‘ corners of the world. What the
‘ devil! two hundred pistoles! it is
‘ an immense sum, and you’ll never
‘ see the end of it. If it be agreeable
‘ to you, gentlemen,” added I, “I
‘ shall have the honour of accompa-
‘ nying you as far as the city of Al-
‘ meria, where I am going to take
‘ possession of the estate of an uncle,
‘ who has been settled in that place
‘ twenty years, or thereabouts.”

‘ The young citizens assured me
‘ they would be glad of my company.
‘ Whereupon, having rested ourselves
‘ a little, we set forwards, all toge-
‘ ther,

ther, towards Alcantara, where we arrived a good while before night, and went to lodge at a good inn. We asked for a room, and were shewn into one, where there was a press with a key in it. Having bespoken supper, I proposed to my comrades that we should go and see the town while it was getting ready. They accepted the proposal; we locked our knapsacks in the press, the key of which one of the citizens put in his pocket; and going out of the inn, went to view the churches. While we were in the cathedral, I pretended, all of a sudden, to have an affair of consequence in hand; and said to my companions, "Gentlemen, I have just recollected that a person of Toledo desired me to deliver a short message to a merchant who lives near this church. Pray wait for me here, and I'll be back in an instant." So saying, I left them, ran to the inn, flew to the press, forced the lock, and rummaging the knapsacks of my young citizens, found their pistoles. Poor children! I did not leave them so much as one to pay for their night's lodging. I carried all off, quitted the town as fast as possible, and took the road to Merida, without giving myself any farther concern about them.

That adventure put me in a condition to travel agreeably: though I was young, I found myself capable of conducting myself with prudence; and I may say, I was pretty old considering my years. Having resolved to buy a mule, I put my resolution in practice at the next village. I even converted my knapsack into a portmanteau, and began to assume a little more of the man of consequence. On the third day, I met a man singing vespers as loud as he could roar, on the highway. Judging, by his appearance, that he was a chanter, I accosted him with courage. "Signior Batchelor, you sing purely; your heart goes with your profession, I see!"—"Sir," answered he, "I am a chanter, at your service; and amuse myself with clearing my pipes, as you hear."

In this manner we entered into conversation; and I perceived that

"I had got into company with a most witty and agreeable fellow, about four or five and twenty years old. As he travelled on foot, I made my mule walk slowly, that I might have the pleasure of conversing with him; and, among other things, the discourse turned on Toledo. "I know that city perfectly well," said the chanter; "having lived a good while in it, and I believe have some friends there."—"In what place," answered I, interrupting him, "did you live at Toledo?" He replied, "In the New Street. I lived with Don Vincent de Buena Garra, Don Matthias de Cordel, and two or three more gentlemen of honour: we lodged, ate, and passed our time agreeably together." These words surprized me; for it must be observed, that those gentlemen, whose names he mentioned, were the very sharpers with whom I had kept company at Toledo. "Signior Chanter," cried I, "those gentlemen, whom you have named, are of my acquaintance, and I lived with them in the New Street."—"I understand you," he replied, smiling; "that is to say, you are entered into the company since I left it three years ago."—"I have," said I, "quitted these gentlemen, because I was seized with an inclination to travel. I intend to make the tour of Spain, knowing that I shall improve by experience."—"Without doubt," he replied, "one must travel before he can have a finished education: it was for this reason that I left Toledo, where I lived very agreeably. I thank Heaven," added he, "for having met, when I least expected it, a knight of my own order! Let us join, travel together, make attempts on our neighbours' purse, and lay hold of every occasion that presents itself of exerting our skill."

He made this proposal so frankly, and with such a good grace, that I accepted it. He won my confidence all of a sudden, in bestowing his upon me, and we unbosomed ourselves to one another. I recounted my history to him, and he made no mystery of his adventures to me; letting me know that he was just come from Portalegro, whence an unsuccessful trick

‘ fifteen months. His other masters succeeded no better: he exhausted their patience. They were not, indeed, permitted to use rigour; but expressly ordered to instruct, without tormenting him; and that order, joined to his natural dulness, rendered all their lessons of little or no effect.

‘ But the preceptor invented an excellent expedient to intimidate the young nobleman, without contradicting his father’s order: he resolved to flog me when his pupil deserved punishment; and he did not fail to put his resolution in practice. Not relishing this expedient, I ran away, and complained to my mother of such unjust treatment: but, in spite of all her tenderness for me, she had strength enough to resist my tears, and considering that it was a great advantage for her son to live with the Marquis de Leganez, sent me back immediately. I was now abandoned to the preceptor; who, perceiving that his invention had produced a good effect, continued to flog me still, instead of the young nobleman; and, in order to make the deeper impression upon him, disciplined me with great severity. I was sure to pay, every day, for young Leganez; and I may venture to affirm, that he did not learn one letter of his alphabet, which did not cost me an hundred lashes. Judge you what his rudiments stood me in.

‘ The birch was not the only disagreeable thing I suffered in this house: as every body knew me, the meanest servant, even the scullions, reproached me with my birth. This disgusted me so much, that I ran away one day, after having found means to seize the preceptor’s whole stock of ready-money, which might amount to an hundred and fifty ducats. Such was the vengeance I took for the stripes he had so unjustly bestowed upon me. I performed this slight of hand with admirable dexterity, though it was my first essay; and having had the address to baffle the search that was made for me during two days, left Madrid, and repaired to Toledo, without being pursued.

‘ I was then just going into my fifteenth year. What a pleasure it

‘ was to be independent at that age, and entirely master of my own actions! I soon contracted acquaintance with young people, who polished me up, and assisted me to spend my ducats: I associated with knights of the post, who cultivated my happy disposition so well, that in a little time I became one of the most dexterous of the order. At the end of five years, being seized with an inclination to travel, I quitted my confederates, and beginning my peregrinations by Estremadura, went as far as Alcantara: but before I reached that place, finding an opportunity of exerting my talents, I did not let it escape. Being a-foot, and moreover loaded with a pretty heavy knapsack, I frequently halted to repose myself under the trees, that offered me their shade, at a little distance from the highway. In one of those resting-places I found two lads very well dressed, talking merrily on the grass, while they enjoyed the coolness of the shade. I saluted them very courteously, and entered into conversation with them, at which they did not seem displeased. The eldest was not more than fifteen, and they seemed both to be extremely raw. “Signior Cavalier,” said the youngest to me, “we are sons of two rich citizens of Placentia, who longing extremely to see the kingdom of Portugal, in order to satisfy our curiosity, have taken an hundred pistoles each from our parents; and as we travel a-foot, hope to go a great way with that sum. What is your opinion of the matter?”—“If I had so much,” I replied, “God knows where I should go: I would visit the four corners of the world. What the devil! two hundred pistoles! it is an immense sum, and you’ll never see the end of it. If it be agreeable to you, gentlemen,” added I, “I shall have the honour of accompanying you as far as the city of Almeria, where I am going to take possession of the estate of an uncle, who has been settled in that place twenty years, or thereabouts.”

‘ The young citizens assured me they would be glad of my company. Whereupon, having rested ourselves a little, we set forwards, all together,

ther, towards Alcantara, where we arrived a good while before night, and went to lodge at a good inn. We asked for a room, and were shewn into one, where there was a press with a key in it. Having bel-spoke supper, I proposed to my comrades that we should go and see the town while it was getting ready. They accepted the proposal; we locked our knapsacks in the press, the key of which one of the citizens put in his pocket; and going out of the inn, went to view the churches. While we were in the cathedral, I pretended, all of a sudden, to have an affair of consequence in hand; and said to my companions, "Gentlemen; I have just recollected that a person of Toledo desired me to deliver a short message to a merchant who lives near this church. Pray wait for me here, and I'll be back in an instant." So saying, I left them, ran to the inn, flew to the press, forced the lock, and rummaging the knapsacks of my young cits, found their pistoles. Poor children! I did not leave them so much as one to pay for their night's lodging. I carried all off, quitted the town as fast as possible, and took the road to Merida, without giving myself any farther concern about them.

That adventure put me in a condition to travel agreeably: though I was young, I found myself capable of conducting myself with prudence; and I may say, I was pretty old considering my years. Having resolved to buy a mule, I put my resolution in practice at the next village. I even converted my knapsack into a portmanteau, and began to assume a little more of the man of consequence. On the third day, I met a man singing vespers as loud as he could roar, on the highway. Judging, by his appearance, that he was a chanter, I accolted him with courage. "Signior Batchelor, you sing purely; your heart goes with your profession, I see!"—"Sir," answered he, "I am a chanter, at your service; and amuse myself with clearing my pipes, as you hear."

In this manner we entered into conversation, and I perceived that

I had got into company with a most witty and agreeable fellow, about four or five and twenty years old. As he travelled on foot, I made my mule walk slowly, that I might have the pleasure of conversing with him; and, among other things, the discourse turned on Toledo. "I know that city perfectly well," said the chanter; "having lived a good while in it, and I believe have some friends there."—"In what place," answered I, interrupting him, "did you live at Toledo?" He replied, "In the New Street. I lived with Don Vincent de Buena Garra, Don Matthias de Cordel, and two or three more gentlemen of honour: we lodged, ate, and passed our time agreeably together." These words surprized me; for it must be observed, that those gentlemen, whose names he mentioned, were the very sharpers with whom I had kept company at Toledo. "Signior Chanter," cried I, "those gentlemen, whom you have named, are of my acquaintance, and I lived with them in the New Street."—"I understand you," he replied, smiling; "that is to say, you are entered into the company since I left it three years ago."—"I have," said I, "quitted these gentlemen, because I was seized with an inclination to travel. I intend to make the tour of Spain, knowing that I shall improve by experience."—"Without doubt," he replied, "one must travel before he can have a finished education: it was for this reason that I left Toledo, where I lived very agreeably. I thank Heaven," added he, "for having met, when I least expected it, a knight of my own order! Let us join, travel together, make attempts on our neighbours purse, and lay hold of every occasion that presents itself of exerting our skill."

He made this proposal so frankly, and with such a good grace, that I accepted it. He won my confidence all of a sudden, in bestowing his upon me, and we unbosomed ourselves to one another. I recounted my history to him, and he made no mystery of his adventures to me; letting me know that he was just come from Portalegro, whence an unsuccessful trick

had obliged him to escape with precipitation, in the dress he now wore. After he had communicated to me his whole affairs, we resolved to go to Merida together, in order to try our fortune, by striking some lucky stroke, if possible; and then, immediately decamping, to remove elsewhere. From that moment our stock became common betwixt us; indeed, Moralez (so my companion was called) was not in a very brilliant situation. His whole fortune consisted of five or six ducats, with some baggage that he carried in a wallet; but if I was richer than he in ready-money, he, on the other hand, was more consummate than I in the art of deceiving mankind.

We mounted my mule by turns; and in this manner arriving at Merida, halted at an inn of the suburbs, where my comrade took out of his wallet a dress, in which he was no sooner clothed, than he went to take a turn through the town, reconnoitre the ground, and look for an opportunity of going to work. We considered every object that presented itself with great attention; and, as Homer would have said, resembled two kites that cast their eyes abroad to look for birds on which to prey. In short, we waited, in hopes that chance would afford an occasion on which we might employ our industry, when we perceived in the street an old grey-haired gentleman fighting against three men, who pushed hard at him. I was shocked at the inequality of the combat; and, as I am naturally a tilter, flew to the assistance of the old man: Moralez following my example, we attacked the gentleman's three enemies, and obliged them to seek their safety in flight.

The senior was mighty thankful. "We are very glad," said I to him; "that we happened to be here so seasonably, to give you assistance: but let us know, at least, who we have had the good fortune to serve; and pray tell us, for what reason those three men would have assassinated you."—"Gentlemen," he replied; "I am too much obliged, to refuse the satisfaction you desire. My name is Jerome de Moyadas, and I live on my fortune in this city; one of those

assassins, from whom you have delivered me, made love to my daughter; asked her of me in marriage some days ago; and as he could not obtain my consent, attacked me, sword in hand, in order to be revenged."—"And may one ask," I replied, "your reason for refusing your consent to that gentleman?"—"I will tell you," said he: "I had a brother, a merchant in this city, whose name was Augustin; two months ago he was at Calatrava, and lodged at the house of Juan Velez de Menbrilla, his correspondent, with whom he was so intimate, that, in order to strengthen their friendship still more, he promised my only daughter Florentina in marriage to his son, not doubting that he had credit enough with me to perform his promise. Accordingly, my brother, upon his return to Merida, no sooner mentioned the affair, than I, out of love to him, consented to the marriage. He then sent Florentina's picture to Calatrava; but, alas! had not the satisfaction of finishing the work, for he died three weeks ago; conjuring me, on his death-bed, to dispose of my daughter to none but his correspondent's son. This I promised; and, on this account, refused Florentina to the gentleman who assaulted me, although he is a very advantageous match. I am a slave to my word, and every moment expect the son of Juan Velez de Menbrilla, on whom I will bestow my daughter in marriage, though I never saw either him or his father. I beg pardon," continued Jerome de Moyadas, "for troubling you with this relation; but you yourself exacted it of me." I listened to him with great attention, and resolving upon a trick that struck me in the head of a sudden, affected great astonishment, lifted up my eyes to heaven, and turning towards the old man, said, in a pathetic tone, "Ah, Signior Moyadas! is it possible, that on my first arrival at Merida, I should be so happy as to save the life of my father-in-law!" The old citizen was strangely surprized at these words, as well as Moralez, who shewed by his countenance, what a great rogue he took me to be. "What do I hear?" replied

plied the senior. "How! are you the son of my brother's correspondent?"—"Yes, Signior Jerome de Moyadas," answered I, with an audacious countenance, while I threw my arms about his neck; "I am that happy mortal, for whom the adorable Florentina is destined. But before I express my joy in entering into your family, allow me to shed into your bosom the tears which the remembrance of your brother Augustin renews! I should be the most ungrateful of all mankind, if I was not sensibly touched with the death of a person to whom I owe all the happiness of my life!" So saying, I again embraced honest Jerome, and covered my eyes with my hand, on pretence of wiping away my tears. Moralez, who, in a twinkling, perceived the advantage we might reap from a trick of this kind, did not fail to second the imposture, and passing for my valet, even topped me in the sorrow I had manifested for the death of Signior Augustin. "Signior Jerome," cried he, "what a loss you have suffered in your brother's death! he was such an honest man! the very phoenix of commerce! a disinterested merchant; a merchant of integrity; there are few of his fellows to be met with!"

"We had to do with a simple and credulous man, who, so far from suspecting the cheat, was himself an assistant in it. "And why," said he, "did you not come straight to my house? you should not have gone to lodge at an inn. Considering the terms on which we are, no ceremony ought to have been observed."—"Sir," answered Moralez, taking upon him to speak for me, "my master is, I grant you, a little ceremonious; not but that he is excusable in some shape, in being unwilling to appear before you in his present situation; for we have been robbed in our journey hither, and lost all our baggage."—"The young man," said I, interrupting him, "tells you nothing but the truth, Signior de Moyadas. This misfortune did not permit me to come to your house: I durst not present myself, in this garb, before the eyes of a mistress who has not as yet seen me; and, for that reason, I

waited the return of a valet whom I have sent to Calatrava."—"This accident," replied the old man, "ought not to have hindered you from coming to stay at my house, where I intend you shall immediately take up your lodging."

So saying, he carried me home with him; and, by the way, we talked of the pretended robbery that I had suffered; when I assured him, that what gave me the greatest concern, was my having lost, with my baggage, the picture of Florentina. Whereupon the citizen observed, with a smile, that I might console myself for that loss the more easily, as the original was better than the copy. In effect, as soon as we came to his house, he called his daughter, who was not above sixteen years of age, and might have been counted an accomplished young lady; saying to me, "You see the object which my late brother promised to you."

"Ah, Signior," cried I, with a passionate air, "you have no occasion to tell me that this is the amiable Florentina! these charming features are engraved on my memory, and still more upon my heart. If the picture which I lost, and which was only a slight sketch of such perfection, could inflame me with the most ardent passion, judge how I must be transported at this moment!"—"You flatter me too much," said Florentina; "for I am not vain enough to imagine that my qualifications justify your discourse."—"Go on with your compliments," said the father. At the same time, he left me alone with his daughter; and taking Moralez aside, "Friend," said he to him, "you have lost all your baggage, then; and, without doubt, your money too."—"Yes, Sir," answered my comrade, "a great number of banditti poured upon us, near Castel Blazo, and left us nothing but the cloaths on our backs; but we shall, in a very short time, receive bills of exchange, which will set all things to rights again."

"But until those bills arrive," replied the old man, taking a purse out of his pocket, "here are an hundred pistoles at your service."—"O, Sir!" said Moralez, "my master

Y 2

"would

"would not accept them for the world.
 "I find you don't know him. Zooks!
 "he is a man of great delicacy on
 "these occasions. He is none of those
 "fashionable youngsters who are apt
 "to take up from every body. He
 "does not love to be in debt, and
 "would rather beg his bread than
 "borrow one farthing."—"So much
 "the better," said the honest citizen;
 "I esteem him the more on that ac-
 "count. I cannot bear to see young
 "men contract debts: I pardon it, in-
 "deed, in people of quality, because
 "it is a privilege they have possessed
 "a long time. I won't," continued
 "he, "affront thy master; and since
 "it will only give him pain to offer
 "him money, we must say no more
 "about it." With these words, he was
 "going to put the purse in his pocket
 "again; but my companion held his
 "hand, saying, "Hold, Signior Moy-
 "adas, whatever aversion my master
 "has to borrowing, I don't despair of
 "prevailing upon him to accept your
 "hundred pistoles. It is only from
 "strangers he is shy of borrowing:
 "he is not so ceremonious with his
 "own family: he can even demand
 "of his father, with a good grace,
 "whatever money he has occasion for.
 "The young gentleman, you per-
 "ceive, knows how to distinguish per-
 "sons, and ought to look upon you,
 "Sir, as a second father."

"Moralez, by such discourse, se-
 "cured the purse of the old man, who
 "came and rejoined us; and finding
 "his daughter and me engaged in mu-
 "tual compliments, interrupted our
 "conversation, by telling Florentina
 "the obligation he lay under to me;
 "and, on that score, made me pro-
 "fessions which convinced me of his
 "gratitude. I laid hold of such a fa-
 "vourable disposition, and told the ci-
 "tizen, that the most sensible mark
 "of acknowledgment he could shew,
 "would be to hasten my marriage with
 "his daughter. He yielded, with a
 "good grace, to my impatience; as-
 "suring me, that in three days, at
 "farthest, I should be Florentina's
 "husband; and, that instead of six
 "thousand ducats, which he had pro-
 "mised for her dower, he would give
 "me ten, as a proof of his being deep-
 "ly affected with the service I had
 "done him.

"Moralez and I, therefore, lived
 "with the honest man Jerome de Moy-
 "adas, kindly treated, and in the a-
 "greeable expectation of ten thousand
 "ducats, with which we proposed to
 "make a sudden decampment from
 "Merida. Our joy, however, was
 "checked by fear: we were appren-
 "sive, that in less than three days the
 "true son of Juan Velez de Menbrilla
 "would arrive, and cross our good
 "fortune.

"This fear was by no means ill-
 "founded: for the very next day, a
 "kind of peasant, loaded with a port-
 "manteau, came to the house of Flo-
 "rentina's father, when I was not at
 "home, though my comrade was pre-
 "sent. "Sir!" said the peasant to the
 "old man, "I belong to a young gen-
 "tleman of Calatrava, called Signior
 "de la Menbrilla, who is to be your
 "son-in-law. We are just arrived,
 "and he will be here presently. I
 "came before, to give you notice of
 "his approach." He had scarce spoke
 "these words, when his master appear-
 "ed; a circumstance that surprized the
 "old man very much, and disconcert-
 "ed Moralez a little.

"Pedro, who was a very genteel
 "young fellow, addressed himself to
 "Florentina's father; but the honest
 "citizen did not give him time to fi-
 "nish his discourse, and turning to
 "my companion, asked the meaning
 "of all this. Then Moralez, who
 "was second to no man on earth in
 "impudence, assumed an air of assu-
 "rance, and said to the old man, "Sir,
 "these two men belong to the troop of
 "thieves who robbed us on the high-
 "way: I recollect them both very
 "well, particularly him who has the
 "audacity to call himself the son of
 "Signior Juan Velez de la Menbril-
 "la." The old citizen believed Mo-
 "razlez; and, persuaded that the stran-
 "gers were cheats, said to them, "Gen-
 "tlemen, you come too late; your
 "scheme is prevented: Pedro de la
 "Menbrilla has been in my house
 "since yesterday."—"Take care of
 "what you say," answered the young
 "man of Calatrava; "you have got
 "an impostor in your family; for you
 "must know that Juan Velez de Men-
 "brilla has no other son than me."—"I
 "know better," replied the old man;
 "and am not ignorant of your pro-
 "fession:

“ session : don’t you recollect this young man, and remember his master, whom you robbed ?”—“ If I was not in your house,” said Pedro, “ I would punish the insolence of that cheat, who has the presumption to call me a robber. Let him thank your presence, that restrains my indignation.—Sir,” added he, “ you are imposed upon. I am the young man to whom your brother Augustin promised his niece. If you desire it, I can shew all the letters which he wrote to my father, on the subject of the marriage. Will you not believe it, when you see the picture of Florentina, which he sent to me some time before his death ?”

“ No,” said the old citizen, interrupting him ; “ neither the picture nor the letters will convince me : I know very well in what manner they fell into your hands ; and I advise you as a friend, to be gone from Merida as soon as you can.”—“ This is too much,” cried the young gentleman, in his turn ; “ I will not suffer my name to be stolen with impunity, nor myself to be treated like a highwayman. I know some people in this place, whom I will find, and return to confound the impostor that has prejudiced you against me.” So saying, he retired with his valet, and Moralez remained master of the field : nay, this adventure made Jerome de Moyadas resolve to have the marriage celebrated that very day, and he went out instantly, to give the necessary orders for the occasion.

“ Though my comrade was very well pleased to see Florentina’s father in a disposition so favourable for us, he was far from being perfectly at ease : fearing the consequence of the measures which he concluded Pedro would certainly take, he waited for me with impatience, to communicate what had happened. Finding him, at my return, plunged in a profound reverie, “ What is the matter, friend ?” said I ; “ thou seemest in a brown study.” He replied, “ If I am, it is not without reason :” and informed me of the whole affair ; adding, “ Thou seest what cause I have to muse. It was thou alone, who rashly threw us in to this dilemma. It was a shining

“ enterprize, I own, and would have crowned thee with glory, had it succeeded : but, in all appearance, it will end ill ; and it is my advice, that, in order to prevent explanations, we immediately betake ourselves to our heels, with the feather which we have plucked from the honest man’s wing.”

“ Mr. Moralez,” answered I to this proposal, “ you yield to difficulties, I find, very soon ; and don’t do a great deal of honour to Don Matthias de Cordel, and the other cavaliers with whom you lived at Toledo : one who has served his apprenticeship under such able masters, ought not to be easily alarmed. As for me, who intend to walk in the steps of these heroes, and prove myself a worthy pupil, I will bear up against the obstacle that terrifies you, and make my utmost effort to surmount it.”—“ If you accomplish that,” said my companion, “ I will prefer you to all the great men in Plutarch.”

“ Just as Moralez had done speaking, Jerome de Moyadas coming in, said to me, “ You shall be my son-in-law this very evening : your servant, I suppose, has told you what happened. What do you think of the impudence of the rogue, who would have made me believe that he was the son of my brother’s correspondent ?”—“ Signior,” answered I, in a melancholy tone, and with the most ingenuous air I could affect, “ I find I am not qualified to carry on a deceit. I must sincerely own, that I am not the son of Juan Velez de Menbrilla.”—“ What do I hear ?” cried the old man, interrupting me with equal precipitation and surprise : “ how ! you not the young man to whom my brother—”

“ Pray, Sir,” said I, interrupting him in my turn, “ be so good as to hear me to an end. I have loved your daughter these eight days, during which my passion has detained me at Merida ; and yesterday, after having come to your assistance, I was about to demand her in marriage, when you stopped my mouth, by giving me to understand that she was destined for another. You told me that your brother, in his last moments, conjured you to bestow her

“ upon

“ upon Pedro de la Menbrilla ; that
 “ you promised to comply with his re-
 “ quest ; and, in short, that you was
 “ a slave to your word. This infor-
 “ mation, I confess, overwhelmed me ;
 “ and my love, reduced to despair, in-
 “ spired me with the stratagem I put
 “ in practice. I must tell you, how-
 “ ever, that I secretly upbraided my-
 “ self with the trick I had put upon
 “ you ; but I flattered myself that you
 “ would forgive it, when I should have
 “ discovered it, and convinced you
 “ that I am an Italian Prince, who
 “ travel incognito ; and that my fa-
 “ ther is sovereign of certain vallies
 “ situated between the Swifs, the Mi-
 “ lanese, and Savoy. I imagined that
 “ you would be agreeably surprized,
 “ when I should have revealed my
 “ birth ; and I felt all the pleasure of
 “ a delicate and passionate husband, in
 “ the hope of declaring it to Floren-
 “ tina after our marriage. Heaven,”
 “ added I, changing my tone, “ would
 “ not indulge me in so much joy !
 “ Pedro de la Menbrilla appears, and
 “ I must restore him his name, how
 “ much soever the restitution will cost
 “ me ! You are engaged, by your
 “ promise, to chuse him for a son-in-
 “ law ; and it is your duty to prefer
 “ him to me, without regard to my
 “ rank, or compassion for the cruel
 “ situation to which you are going to
 “ reduce me. I will not pretend to
 “ represent, that your brother was on-
 “ ly the uncle of your daughter, and
 “ that you being her father, it is more
 “ just to acquit yourself of the obliga-
 “ tion you owe me, than to make it a
 “ point of honour to keep a promise
 “ which is but slightly binding.”

“ Yes, doubtless, it is so !” cried
 “ Jerome de Moyadas ; “ therefore I
 “ do not intend to hesitate between
 “ you and Don Pedro de Menbrilla.
 “ If my brother Augustin was still
 “ alive, he would not blame me for
 “ giving the preference to a man who
 “ saved my life ; and who is, more-
 “ over, a prince, who does not dis-
 “ dain to ask my alliance. I must be
 “ an enemy to my own happiness, and
 “ entirely deprived of my understand-
 “ ing, if I did not give you my daugh-
 “ ter, and even press the celebration
 “ of the marriage.” — “ But, Signior,”
 “ I replied, “ do nothing impetuously ;
 “ consult your interest only ; and,

“ notwithstanding the nobility of my
 “ blood—” “ Sure you jest !” said
 “ he, interrupting me ; “ ought I to
 “ hesitate one moment ! No, my
 “ Prince, I most humbly beseech you
 “ to honour the happy Florentina
 “ with your hand this very even-
 “ ing.” — “ Well,” said I, “ be it so ;
 “ go carry the news yourself, and in-
 “ form her of her glorious fate.”

“ While the honest citizen flew ea-
 “ gerly to tell his daughter that she had
 “ made the conquest of a prince, Mo-
 “ ralez, who had heard the whole con-
 “ versation, threw himself on his knees
 “ before me, saying, “ Monsignior
 “ the Italian prince, son of a love-
 “ reign of the vallies situated between
 “ the Swifs, Milanese, and Savoy,
 “ give me leave to embrace the feet
 “ of your highness, and testify the ex-
 “ cessive joy I feel ! Upon the faith
 “ of a knave, I look upon you as a
 “ prodigy ! I thought myself the first
 “ man in the world, but truly I strike
 “ to you, although you have less ex-
 “ perience than I.” — “ What ! you
 “ are no longer uneasy, I hope ;” said
 “ I to him. “ O not at all !” an-
 “ swered he ; “ I am no longer afraid
 “ of Signior Pedro ; let him come a-
 “ gain as soon as he pleases.” Mo-
 “ ralez and I being now firm in the
 “ stirrups, began to regulate the course
 “ we should take with the dowry ; on
 “ which we depended so much, that
 “ we could not have thought ourselves
 “ more secure of it, had it been already
 “ in our pockets. We had not, as yet,
 “ got it, for all that ; and the cata-
 “ strophe of the adventure did not an-
 “ swer our expectation.”

“ In a little time the young man of
 “ Calatrava returned, accompanied by
 “ two citizens and an alguazil, as for-
 “ midable on account of his whiskers
 “ and swarthy complexion, as of his
 “ employment. Florentina’s father
 “ being present, “ Signior de Moya-
 “ das,” said Pedro to him, “ I have
 “ brought hither three creditable peo-
 “ ple, who know me, and can tell
 “ you who I am.” — “ Yes, sure,”
 “ cried the alguazil, “ I can tell you ;
 “ and I certify to all whom it may
 “ concern, that I know you. Your
 “ name is Pedro, and you are the only
 “ son of Juan Velez de la Menbrilla ;
 “ whoever maintains the contrary is
 “ an impostor.” — “ I believe you,
 “ Mr.

"Mr. Alguazil," said the honest man Jerome de Moyadas; "your evidence is sacred with me, as well as that of the gentlemen merchants who are along with you. I am fully convinced that the young cavalier, who conducted you hither, is the only son of my brother's correspondent: but that does not signify, I am no longer in the mind to give him my daughter."

"Oho! that's another affair," said the alguazil; "I came hither only to assure you, that I know this young man. You are master of your child, and nobody can compel you to part with her against your inclination."

"Nor do I intend," said Pedro, interrupting him, "to offer violence to the inclination of Signior de Moyadas; but he will give me leave to ask why he has changed his sentiments, or if he has any cause to complain of me? Let me be assured, at least, that I have not lost the sweet hope of being his son-in-law by my own misbehaviour."—"I have no cause to complain of you," replied the old man; "and will even own, that it is with regret I see myself under a necessity of breaking my word, for which I conjure you to forgive me. I am persuaded, that you are too generous to take it amiss, that I prefer to you a rival who has saved my life. Here he is," pursued he, shewing me to the company; "this is the person who rescued me from the most imminent danger; and that my excuse may have still more force, I must inform you he is no less than an Italian prince."

At these last words, Pedro became mute and confounded; the two merchants stared with the utmost surprise; but the alguazil, accustomed to look upon the worst side of every thing, suspected this wonderful adventure to be a trick that might turn out to his advantage: he eyed me very attentively, and his good-will being baffled by my features, which were utterly unknown to him, he examined my comrade with the same attention. Unluckily for my happiness, he recollected Moralez, and remembering to have seen him in the prison of Ciudad Real, "Ah, ha!" cried he, "here is one of our cul-

tomers; I remember this gentleman, who, I assure you, is one of the most perfect sharpers within the kingdoms and principalities of Spain."—"Softly, Mr. Alguazil," said Jerome de Moyadas; "the young man, whom you paint so disadvantageously, is the domestick of a prince."—"Very well," replied the alguazil; "I know enough to form my resolution accordingly, and judge of the master by the man. I don't doubt that these gallants are two cheats, who have agreed to impose upon you. I know how to manage in such cases; and to let you see that these wits are adventurers, I will carry them instantly to gaol. I intend to introduce them to a private conversation with Monsieur the Corregidor; after which they will feel that whipping is not yet out of fashion."—"Hold there, master officer," replied the old man; "don't let us push matters so far: people of your profession are not afraid of giving pain to a worthy man. May not this valet be a rogue, and his master a man of honour? Is it a new thing, to see sharpers in the service of princes?"—"You joke, with your princes," said the alguazil; "this young fellow is a knight of the post, you may depend upon it; and I arrest him and his comrade in the king's name. I have twenty soldiers at the door, who shall drag them to prison, if they refuse to go with a good grace.—Come, my prince," addressing himself to me, "let us march."

I was thunderstruck at these words, as well as Moralez, and our concern rendered us suspected to Jerome de Moyadas, or rather convinced him that we actually had a design to defraud him. On this occasion, however, he behaved like a gallant man; saying to the alguazil, "Master officer, perhaps your suspicions are false, and perhaps they are but too true. But be it as it will, let us dive no farther into the affair: let these two young cavaliers retire wheresoever they please to go, and I beg you will not oppose their retreat: it is a favour I ask, in order to acquit myself of the obligation I owe to them."—"Were I strictly to do my duty," answered the alguazil,

“guazil, “ I should imprison these gentlemen, without having any regard to your entreaty: but, for your sake, I will relax a little, provided that they quit the town this instant; for if I meet them to-morrow, egad! they shall see what will become of them.”

“ When Moralez and I understood that we were free, we recollected ourselves a little, endeavoured to talk boldly, and affirm that we were persons of honour; but the alguazil silenced us with a fierce look; and I don’t know how, these people have an ascendant over us. We were obliged, therefore, to abandon Florentina and her portion to Pedro de la Menbrilla, who doubtless became the son-in-law of Jeronimo Moyadas, and retire with all speed, taking the road to Truxillo, with the consolation of having, at least, got an hundred piffoles by the adventure. About an hour before night, passing by a little village, with a resolution of going farther before we should halt, we perceived an inn of a pretty good appearance for that place, and the landlord with his wife sitting on long stones at the door. The husband, a tall, meagre, old fellow, thrummed upon a wretched guittar, for the diversion of his wife, who seemed to listen with pleasure. “ Gentlemen,” cried the landlord, when he saw we did not stop, “ I advise you to halt at this place: you won’t find a village within three weary leagues of this; and even there, I assure you, you won’t be so well served as here; take my word for it, and walk into my house, where I will entertain you handsomely, at a reasonable rate.” We suffered ourselves to be persuaded, and approaching the man and his wife, bid them good even; and having seated ourselves by them, began all four to talk of indifferent subjects. The landlord said, he was an officer of the Holy Brotherhood; and his wife was a fat merry dame, who seemed to understand very well how to vend her commodities.

“ Our conversation was interrupted by the arrival of twelve or fifteen cavaliers, some mounted on mules, and some a horse-back, followed by thirty baggage moyls loaded with

bales. “ Ah! what a number of princes!” cried the landlord, at sight of so many people; “ where shall I find lodging for them all?” In a moment, the village was crowded with men and beasts. There was luckily, near the inn, a vast barn, in which the moyls and the baggage were disposed: the mules and horses belonging to the cavaliers were put in other places; and as for the men, they did not concern themselves so much about finding beds as in best speaking a good supper. The landlord, his wife, and a young maid-servant belonging to the house, were not idle; they slaughtered all the poultry in their yard, which, joined to some ragouts made of rabbits and cats, and a plentiful dish of soup, composed of cauliflowers and mutton, furnished entertainment enough for the whole company.

“ Moralez and I looked at the cavaliers, who from time to time eyed us also. At last we entered into conversation, and told them, that if it was agreeable we would sup in company. They assured us, that we could not do them a greater pleasure: so we sat down all together at table. There was one among them who seemed to be the chief, and for whom the rest, though otherwise very familiar, did not fail to shew some deference: it is true, indeed, he kept the upper end, talked in an elevated tone of voice, and even contradicted, sometimes, in a cavalier manner, the sentiments of the rest; who, far from replying in the same manner to him, seemed to respect his opinions. The discourse falling, by accident, on Andalusia, and Moralez taking it into his head to praise Seville, this man said to him, “ Signior cavalier, you are making the elogium of the city where I first drew breath; or, at least, I was born in it’s neighbourhood, since the town of Meyrena gave me to the world.”—“ I can say the same thing,” answered my companion; “ I was likewise born at Meyrena, and I must certainly know your parents: pray, whose son are you?”—“ I am,” said the cavalier, “ the son of an honest notary, called Martin Moralez.”—“ Upon my faith!” cried my comrade, with emotion, “ the

"the adventure is extremely singular :
 "you are then my eldest brother, Manuel Moralez."—"The very same,"
 said the other ; "and you are, I
 suppose, my young brother, Lewis,
 whom I left in the cradle, when I
 quitted my father's house?"—"That is my name, indeed!" replied
 my comrade. Upon which they both
 got up, and embraced one another
 with great affection. Then Signior
 Manuel said to the company, "Gentlemen, this event is altogether marvellous ! I have, by accident, met
 and discovered a brother, whom I
 have not seen these twenty years and
 more : allow me to present him to
 the company." All the cavaliers,
 who kept themselves standing out of
 complaisance, saluted the young Moralez, and loaded him with caresses.
 Afterwards, we sat down again at
 table, where we remained all night,
 without going to bed ; the two brothers sitting by one another, and conversing by themselves about their family, while the other guests drank
 and made merry.

Lewis, after a long conversation
 with Manuel, taking me aside, said,
 "All these cavaliers are domesticks
 of the Count de Montanos, whom
 the king has lately named for viceroy of Majorca. They are conducting their master's equipage to Alicante, where they are to embark.
 My brother, who is become steward to that nobleman, has proposed
 to carry me along with him ; and,
 on account of the reluctance I expressed in leaving you, told me,
 that if you would accompany us,
 he would procure for you a good
 employment. Dear friend," added
 he, "I advise thee not to disdain the
 offer ; let us go together to the
 island of Majorca : if we find it
 agreeable, we will stay there ; and
 if we shall be displeased with our
 situation, we will return to Spain."
 I willingly embraced the proposal ;
 young Moralez and I joined the
 count's officers, and set out with
 them from the inn before day. Having,
 by long marches, gained the
 city of Alicante, I bought a guitar,
 and took off a handsome suit of
 cloaths, before our embarkation,
 thinking of nothing but the island
 of Majorca ; and Lewis Moralez was

in the same disposition. We seemed
 to have renounced sharpening altogether. To tell you the truth, we
 had a mind to pass for persons of honour, among the cavaliers in whose
 company we were ; and that kept a
 check upon our geniuses. At last
 we went merrily on board, flattering
 ourselves with the hopes of being at
 Majorca in a very little time ; but
 scarce had we cleared the Gulph of
 Alicante, when a terrible tempest arose. I might, in this place of my
 relation, take an opportunity to make
 a fine description of the storm ; to
 paint the air all on fire, to make the
 thunder roar, the winds whistle, the
 mountain billows roll, &c. But all
 these flowers of rhetorick apart, I
 assure you the hurricane was violent,
 and obliged us to bear away for the
 point of the island of Cabrera, a desart isle, in which there is a little
 fort, at that time garrisoned by an
 officer and five or six soldiers, who
 gave us a very hospitable reception.
 As we were obliged to stay there
 several days, in order to repair our
 sails and tackle, we invented different kinds of amusements, to pass
 the time agreeably. Each followed
 his own inclination : some played at
 primero, others sought different diversions, and I went to walk through
 the island, accompanied by those
 who loved such exercise. We skipped
 from rock to rock ; for the ground
 was very uneven, full of stones, and
 very deficient in good soil. One day,
 while we considered these parched,
 withered places, and admired the caprice of Nature, that shews herself
 fruitful or barren as she pleases, our
 noses were invaded, all of a sudden,
 with a most agreeable smell. We
 immediately turned to the eastward,
 from whence that odour came, and
 perceived with astonishment, among
 the rocks, a large, round, green spot,
 surrounded with honey-suckles, even
 more beautiful and sweet-scented
 than those that grow in Andalusia.
 We approached, with pleasure, those
 charming shrubs, which perfumed
 the air all round, and found that
 they bordered upon the entry of a
 very deep cavern, which being large
 and light, we descended to the bottom of it, turning by steps of stone,
 the ends of which were adorned with
 flowers,

flowers, the whole forming a natural winding stair-case. When we had got down, we saw several little rills of water, which derived their sources from drops that incessantly distilled from the rocks within, creeping along sand more yellow than gold, and losing themselves in the earth. The water seemed so pure, that we were tempted to drink, and found it so fresh, that we resolved to return next day to the same place, with some bottles of wine, persuaded that we should empty them with vast pleasure.

It was with regret we quitted such an agreeable place; and when we went back to the fort, we did not fail to boast of our discovery: but the commandant cautioned us, as a friend, against returning to the cavern, with which we were so much charmed. "For what?" said I to him: "Is there any thing to fear?"—"Yes, without doubt," he replied; "the corsairs of Algiers and Tripoli sometimes land on this isle, to water at that spring; and one day surprised two soldiers of my garrison, whom they made slaves." It was in vain for the officer to tell us this with a very serious air; he could not persuade us, for we believed that he jested: and next day I returned to the cavern, with three more of my companions, without providing ourselves with fire-arms, to shew that we dreaded nothing. Young Moralez would not be of the party, chusing rather to stay with his brother, and play in the fort.

Having descended, as the day before, to the bottom of the cave, we cooled some bottles of wine that we had brought along with us, in the rivulets: and while we drank them deliciously, playing on the guittar, and conversing pleasantly together, we saw several men appear at the mouth of the cavern above, with large whiskers, turbans, and Turkish dress. We imagined that it was a part of the count's domesticks, with the commandant of the fort, who had thus disguised themselves, in order to frighten us; and, prepossessed with this fancy, began to laugh, letting no less than ten of them come down, without thinking of defending ourselves. We were, however, soon undeceived in a me-

lancholy manner, and convinced that it was a corsair, who came with his people to carry us off. "Surrender, you dogs," he cried, in the Castilian tongue, "or you shall all be put to the sword!" At the same time, his followers presented their carbines to us, and we should have undergone a fine discharge, had we made the least resistance. We preferred slavery to death, and gave our swords to the pirate; who ordered us to be loaded with chains, and conducted to his vessel, which was not far off: then setting sail, he steered with a fair wind towards Algiers.

In this manner were we punished for neglecting the caution of the officer of the garrison. The first thing that the corsair did, was to rifle us of all the money we had. What a fine windfal for him! the two hundred pistoles taken from the young citizens of Placentia, the hundred which Moralez had received from Jerome de Moyadas, and which unluckily I had about me, were all swept away without mercy. My companions had all their purses well furnished. In short, it was an excellent prize. The pirate was rejoiced at his good luck; and the rascal, not satisfied with the plunder, insulted us with his raillery, which we did not feel half so much as the necessity that compelled us to bear it. After a thousand jokes, he ordered the bottles of wine which we had cooled at the fountain, and which his people had taken care to seize, to be brought to him, and began to empty them with his crew, drinking to our health by way of derision.

During this conjuncture, the countenances of my comrades expressed the pain they felt; and their slavery mortified them the more, because they had formed the most delightful idea of their voyage to the island of Majorca, where they had laid their account with leading a most delicious life. As for me, I had fortitude enough to project a plan of conduct for myself; and, less afraid than my fellows, entered into conversation with the railler, and even returned his jokes with a good grace. Pleased with my behaviour, "Young man," said he, "I like thy disposition;

"sition; for, in the main, instead of sighing and groaning, it is better for one to arm himself with patience, and sail with the stream! Play to us a small air," added he, observing that I had a guittar; "let us see what thou canst do." I obeyed him as soon as he had ordered my arms to be unchained, and began to thrum upon my guittar in such a manner as acquired his applause. I had, indeed, learned under the best master in Madrid, and played on that instrument pretty well. I sung likewise, and my voice gave no less satisfaction. All the Turks in the vessel expressed the pleasure they felt in hearing me, by gestures of admiration: a circumstance from which I concluded, that their taste for musick was not extremely delicate. The pirate whispered to me, that I should not be an unhappy slave; and that one of my talents might depend upon an employment that would make my captivity very supportable.

I felt some joys at these words; but, flattering as they were, I had abundance of uneasiness on the score of this occupation, with the promise of which the corsair regaled me. When we arrived at the port of Algiers*, we saw a great number of people assembled to receive us; who, as soon as we were landed, shouted with joy: besides, the air resounded with the confused noise of trumpets, Morelco flutes, and other instruments used in that country, which formed a symphony more loud than agreeable. The cause of these rejoicings was, a false report which had spread through the city, importing, that the renegado Mehemet, (this was our pirate's name) had perished, in attacking a large Genoese vessel: so that all his friends, informed of his return, were eager in their expressions of joy.

We had no sooner set foot on shore, than I and my companions were conducted to the palace of Dey Solyman, where a Christian secretary, examining us one by one, asked our names, ages, country, religion, and qualifications. Then Mehemet, shew-

ing me to the dey, extolled my voice, and assured him, that I played ravishingly on the guittar. This was enough to determine Solyman to chuse me for his own service: accordingly, I was detained in his seraglio, while the other captives were led into a publick place, and sold, according to custom. What Mehemet had foretold to me in the vessel, came to pass. My condition was very happy; far from being abandoned to gaolers, or employed in laborious work, I was, by order of Solyman, disposed of in a particular place, with five or six slaves of quality, who expected every moment to be redeemed, and whose tasks were far from being painful. My business was to water the orange-trees and flowers in the garden, and I could not have been favoured with a more agreeable occupation.

Solyman was a man about forty years of age; well shaped; very polite; and, for a Turk, mighty gallant. His chief favourite was a Cachemirian woman†, who, by her understanding and beauty, had acquired an absolute dominion over him. He loved her even to adoration, and treated her every day with some entertainment or other; sometimes with a concert of vocal and instrumental musick, and sometimes with a comedy in the Turkish taste; that is to say, a dramatick poem, in which modesty and decorum were as little regarded as the rules of Aristotle. The favourite, whose name was Farrukhnaz, was passionately fond of these diversions, and even made her women sometimes represent Arabian pieces before the dey; wherein she herself played a part, and charmed all the spectators by the grace and vivacity of her action. I being one day among the musicians, at a representation of this kind, Solyman ordered me to play upon the guittar, and sing alone between the acts. I had the good fortune to please, was very much applauded, and the favourite seemed to look upon me with a favourable eye.

The very next day, while I was

* Algiers, the capital of the kingdom of the same name, is a city on the coast of Barbary, possessed by the Moors.

† Cachemire, is a country under the dominion of the Great Mogul, and remarkable for the beauty and wit of it's women.

“ busied in watering the orange-trees in the garden, an eunuch passing by me, without stopping or speaking one word, dropped a billet at my feet : I took it up in a confusion made up of fear and joy. I lay down upon the ground, that I might not be seen from the windows of the seraglio : and, concealing myself behind the boxes in which the orange-trees were planted, opened the letter, in which I found a pretty valuable diamond, and these words in good Castilian.

“ **Y**OUNG Christian, thank Heaven for thy captivity. Love and fortune will make thee happy : love, if thou art sensible to the charms of a beautiful woman ; and fortune, if thou hast courage to despise the greatest danger.”

“ I did not in the least doubt that the letter came from the favourite Sultana ; the style and diamond persuaded me that she must have been the author. Besides that I am not naturally very timorous, the vanity of being in the good graces of a grand signior's mistress ; and, more than that, the hope of getting from her four times as much money as would be necessary for my ransom, made me form the design of achieving that adventure, whatever dangers might attend it. I continued my work, musing upon the means of entering the apartment of Farrukhnaz, or rather expecting, that she would pave the way ; for I concluded that she would not stop here ; but at least be at more than half the trouble. I was not mistaken : the same eunuch that passed me before, repassed an hour after, and said, “ Christian, hast thou considered ; and wilt thou have the boldness to follow me ? ” I answered, “ Yes.” He replied, “ Very well : Heaven preserve thee ! Thou shalt see me again to-morrow morning.” So saying, he retired. Next day he appeared accordingly, about eight in the morning, and beckoned me to him. I obeyed the signal, and he conducted me into a hall, where there was a large piece of linen, which another eunuch and he had brought thither, and which they were to carry to the Sultana, for the decoration of an Arabian

piece, that she was preparing for the entertainment of the dey.

“ The two eunuchs, having spread out the cloth, laid me along within it ; and, at the hazard of my being suffocated, rolled it up again with me in the middle ; then, each taking one end of it, carried me thus, unquestioned, into the bed-chamber of the fair Cachemirian, who had nobody with her but an old slave devoted to her pleasure. When the two unrolled the cloth, Farrukhnaz, at sight of me, broke out into transports of joy, that well discovered the genius of women in that country. Bold as I naturally was, I could not see myself transported, all of a sudden, into the secret apartment of the women, without being seized with fear. The lady easily perceived it ; and, in order to dissipate my apprehension, said, “ Young man, fear nothing : Solyman is gone to his country-house, where he will remain all day ; so that we may converse together freely.”

“ Encouraged by these words, I assumed a look that redoubled the favourite's joy. “ I am pleased with your person,” said she ; “ and intend to soften the rigour of your slavery : I believe you worthy of the sentiments I have conceived for you ; for though you are in the dress of a slave, you have a noble and gallant air, that shews you are not of the vulgar. Speak freely, and tell me who you are. I know that captives of a noble birth disguise their rank, that they may be redeemed at an easier rate ; but you have no occasion to believe in that manner with me : I should even be affronted at such a precaution, since I promise to set you at liberty. Be sincere, therefore, and confess that you are a young man of a good family.” — “ Truly, Madam,” I replied, “ it would be ingratitude in me to repay your generosity with dissimulation ; and since you absolutely charge me to reveal my quality, you must be satisfied. I am the son of a Spanish grandee.” Perhaps I spoke truth ; at least, the sultana believed it ; and, pleased that she had thrown her eyes upon a gentleman of importance, assured me that it should not be her fault if we did

did not see one another often in private. We had a pretty long conversation, and I never saw a more engaging woman: she understood several languages, especially the Castilian, which she spoke pretty well. When she judged it time for us to part, I went, by her order, into an osier basket, covered with a flowered silk, the work of her own hand. Then the two slaves, who brought me in, were called, and carried me out as a present from the favourite to the dey: a thing sacred from all the men who are intrusted with the guard of the women.

Farrukhnaz and I found other means of seeing one another; and that amiable captive inspired me with almost as much love for her as she entertained for me. Our intelligence remained secret during two months; although it is very difficult in a seraglio to conceal the mysteries of love so long from the Argus's that watch it. But an unlucky accident disconcerted our small affairs, and my fortune was entirely changed. One day, when I had been introduced to the sultana, in the body of an artificial dragon, that was made for a show, and was conversing with her, Solyman, who I imagined was busy in the country, interrupted us, and entered so hastily into the apartment of his favourite, that the old slave scarce had time to advertise us of his arrival; consequently, I had no leisure to conceal myself, and therefore was the first object that presented itself to the view of the dey.

He seemed astonished at the sight of me, and his eyes kindled with fury. I looked upon myself as one that touched his last moments, and already imagined myself under the torture. As for Farrukhnaz, I perceived that she was terrified indeed; but instead of owning her crime, and asking pardon, she said to Solyman, "Signior, before you pronounce my sentence, deign to hear my defence: appearances, doubtless, condemn me, and I seem to have committed a piece of treason worthy of the most horrible chastisement. I have brought this young captive hither; and, in order to introduce him into

my apartment, have used the same artifice which I would have employed if I had entertained a violent passion for him. Nevertheless, I take our holy prophet to witness, that, notwithstanding this conduct, I am not unfaithful. I had a mind to converse with this Christian slave, in order to detach him from his sect, and engage him to follow that of the believers. I have found in him such a resistance as I expected; but, however, I have conquered his prejudice, and he has promised to embrace Mahometanism."

I own, I ought to have contradicted the favourite, without any regard to the dangerous conjuncture in which I was: but being in the utmost dejection of spirit, affected with the danger in which I saw a woman whom I loved, and trembling for myself, I remained speechless and confused: I could not utter one word; and the dey, persuaded by my silence that his mistress said nothing but the truth, was appeased. "Madam," said he, "I am willing to believe that you have not injured me, and that a desire of doing a thing agreeable to the prophet, has engaged you to hazard such a delicate action. I forgive your imprudence, therefore, provided that this captive takes the turbán immediately." He sent for a Marabou* that instant, I was clothed with a Turkish dress, and did all was that required, without having power to resist: or rather, I was ignorant of what I did, so much were my senses disordered. How many Christians are there, who would have been as base as I was, on such an occasion!

After the ceremony, I quitted the seraglio, under the name of Sidy Hali, to exercise a small employment bestowed upon me by Solyman. I never saw the Sultana again; but one of her eunuchs coming to me one day, brought from her a present of jewels worth two thousand sultanins of gold, with a billet, in which the lady assured me, that she would never forget my generous complaisance, in suffering myself to be made a Mahometan, in order to save her life. Truly, besides the presents I receiv-

* Marabous, are Mahometan priests.

ed from Farrukhnaz, I obtained, through her canal, an employment more considerable than the first, and in less than seven years, became one of the richest renegadoes in the city of Algiers.

You may well believe, that if I assisted at the prayers which the musfulmen put up in their mosques, and fulfilled the other duties of their religion, it was only out of pure grimace. I preserved a determined resolution to re-enter into the bosom of the church; and for that purpose, to withdraw one day into Spain or Italy, with the riches which I should amass. In the mean time, I lived very agreeably, was lodged in a fine house, had superb gardens, a great number of slaves, and very handsome women in my seraglio. Though the use of wine is forbid in that country to Mahometans, they don't fail, for the most part, to drink it in private. As for my own part, I drank it without ceremony, as almost all renegadoes do. I remember I had two companions with whom I often committed a debauch within the night. One was a Jew, the other an Arabian, and both, as I imagined, honest men; so that I lived with them in the greatest familiarity. One evening, I invited them to supper, and a dog, of which I was passionately fond, having died that day, we bathed his body, and buried it with all the ceremony that is observed at the funeral of the Mahometans. In so doing, we had no intention to ridicule the musfulman religion; but only to amuse ourselves, and gratify a foolish whim that seized us in the middle of our debauch, to render the last duties to my dog.

This action, however, had well nigh ruined me. Next day, a man came to my house, and said, "Signior Sidy Hali, I am come hither on an important affair. The cadi * wants to speak with you; take the trouble, if you please, to go to his house immediately: an Arabian merchant, who supped with you last night, has informed him of a certain impiety committed by you, with regard to a dog which you buried. For this reason I summon you to appear this

day before that judge, otherwise I give you notice that you will be proceeded against in a criminal manner." So saying, he went away, leaving me thunder-struck with this citation. The Arabian had no cause to complain of me, and I could not comprehend the traitor's reason for playing me this trick. Nevertheless, the thing was not to be neglected. I knew the cadi was a man severe in appearance, but not at all scrupulous at bottom; so I put two hundred sultanins of gold in my purse, and repaired to his house. He carried me into his closet, and said, with a stern look, "You are an impious, sacrilegious, and abominable man! you have interred a dog like a musfulman: what horrid profanation! Is it thus, then, you regard our most sacred ceremonies? and did you become a Mahometan only to make a jest of our worship?"—"Mr. Cadi," I replied, "the Arabian who has made such a malicious report of me, that false friend, is an accomplice of my crime—if it be a crime to grant the honours of burial to a faithful domestick; an animal that possessed a thousand good qualities. He loved people of merit and distinction so much, that even in his last moments, as a testimony of his regard, he has left them his whole fortune, by a will of which I am the sole executor. He bequeathes twenty crowns to one, thirty to another, and, Sir, he has not forgot you;" added I, taking out my purse: "here are two hundred sultanins of gold which he charged me to give you." The cadi, losing his gravity at this discourse, could not help laughing; and, as we were alone, took the purse without ceremony, saying, while he dismissed me, "Go, Signior Sidy Hali; you have done well, to inter with pomp and honour a dog who had so much consideration for persons of worth!"

By these means I extricated myself out of this affair; which, if it did not make me more wise, rendered me at least more circumspect for the future. I no longer drank with the Arabian, nor even with the Jew; but chose for a companion at my cups, a young

* The cadi, is the civil magistrate in every town in Turkey.

gentleman

gentleman of Leghorn called Azarini, who was my own slave. I was not like the rest of the renegadoes, who are more cruel to Christian slaves than the Turks themselves; all my captives waited very patiently for their redemption; and indeed I treated them so gently, that sometimes they told me, they were more afraid of changing their master than desirous of liberty, whatever charms it has for people in a state of bondage.

One day the dey's vessels returned with considerable prizes, bringing in more than a hundred slaves of both sexes, whom they had taken on the coasts of Spain. Solymán kept but a very small number, and the rest were exposed to sale: I arrived in the market-place, and bought a Spanish girl about ten or twelve years old, who wept bitterly, and seemed in despair. I was surprized to see one of her age so sensible of captivity; and bid her, in Castilian, moderate her affliction, assuring her that she had fallen into the hands of a master who did not want humanity, though he wore a turban. The young creature, whose mind was still ingrossed by her sorrow, did not hear what I said: she did nothing but sob, complain of her fate, and from time to time cry with a piteous accent, "O my mother! why are we separated? I should have patience were we together!" In pronouncing these words, she turned her eyes towards a woman between forty and fifty years of age, who stood a few paces from her, and with a downcast look waited in sullen silence until somebody should purchase her. I asked the young girl, if the person she looked at was her mother. "Yes," alas! Signior," she replied; "in the name of God do not part us!"—"Well, my child," said I, "if it is necessary for your consolation that you should be together, you shall soon be satisfied." At the same time, I approached the mother, in order to bid for her: but I no sooner beheld her face, than I recollected, with all the emotion you can imagine, the features, the individual countenance of Lucinda. "Just Heaven!" said I to myself; "it is my own mother! 'tis, doubtless,

she herself!" As for her, whether the deep affliction occasioned by her misfortunes made all the objects that surrounded her appear to her as enemies; or that my dress disguised me; or rather, that I was much altered in twelve years, during which she had not seen me, I know not, but she did not at all remember me.

Having bought her also, I carried them both to my house; where, designing to give them the pleasure of knowing who I was, "Madam," said I to Lucinda, "is it possible that my features do not strike you? Have my whiskers and turban disguised me so much, that you do not know your son Raphael?" My mother, starting at these words, considered my countenance, recollected me, and we embraced one another with great tenderness. I then embraced her daughter, who perhaps knew no more of having a brother, than I of having a sister. "Confess," said I to my mother, "that in all your theatrical pieces, you have not are cognition so original as this."—"Son," answered she sighing; "I was at first rejoiced to see you again, but now my joy is converted into grief! In what a situation, alas! do I find you! My slavery gives me a thousand times less pain than that odious dress!"—"In good faith! Madam," said I, interrupting her with a laugh, "I admire your delicacy, which, to be sure, is very commendable in an actress! Why, good God! mother, you must be greatly altered, if my metamorphosis offends you so much! instead of finding fault with my turban, look upon me rather as an actor who plays the part of a Turk upon the stage: though I am a renegado, I am no more a Mussulman now than when I was in Spain; and at bottom I feel myself still attached to my religion: when you shall know the adventures that have happened to me in this country, you will excuse my conduct. Love was my crime; and I sacrifice to that deity. I am somewhat of your disposition, I assure you! There is still another reason," added I, "which ought to moderate your displeasure in seeing me thus situated. You expected to suffer in Algiers a
"rigorous

“ rigorous captivity; and you find in
 “ your master, a son, tender, respect-
 “ ful, and rich enough to maintain
 “ you here in abundance, until we
 “ can lay hold of an occasion of re-
 “ turning certainly into Spain. So
 “ that you must allow that proverb to
 “ be true, which says, “ It is an ill
 “ wind that blows nobody good.”

“ Son,” said Lucinda to me, “ since
 “ you design to repass one day into
 “ your own country, and there ab-
 “ jure the religion of Mahomet, I am
 “ comforted. Thank Heaven!” con-
 “ tinued she, “ that I shall be able to
 “ carry back your sister Beatrice, safe
 “ and sound into Castile.”—“ Yes,
 “ Madam,” cried I, “ you shall have
 “ it in your power: we will go all
 “ three together as soon as possible,
 “ and rejoin the rest of our family;
 “ for I suppose you have more marks
 “ of your fruitfulness in Spain.”—
 “ No,” said my mother; “ I have
 “ no other children than you two,
 “ and you must know that Beatrice is
 “ the fruit of lawful wedlock.”—
 “ Why,” I resumed, “ did you give
 “ my little sister that advantage over
 “ me? How could you resolve to
 “ marry? I have heard you say an
 “ hundred times, during my child-
 “ hood, that you could not forgive
 “ a handsome woman for taking
 “ a husband.”—“ *Every season has*
 “ *its reason*, my son,” she replied;
 “ men of the most firm resolution are
 “ apt to change; and would you have
 “ a woman be more constant!—I will,”
 “ added she, “ recount my history
 “ after you left Madrid.” Then
 “ she made the following narration;
 “ which, as it is curious, I will favour
 “ you with.

“ If you remember it,” said my
 “ mother, “ you quitted young Le-
 “ ganez about thirty years ago: at
 “ that time the Duke of Medina
 “ Celi told me, that he would come
 “ and sup with me in private one even-
 “ ing: he appointed the day; when I
 “ waited for that nobleman, who came
 “ accordingly, and I had the good
 “ fortune to please him. He demand-
 “ ed the sacrifice of all the rivals he
 “ might have: I granted his request,
 “ in hopes of being well paid for my
 “ condescension; and my hopes were
 “ not disappointed; for, the very next
 “ day, I received from him consid-

“ rable presents, which were followed
 “ by many more, during the course of
 “ our correspondence. I was afraid
 “ that I should not be able to detain a
 “ man of such high rank a long time
 “ in my fetters; and this I dreaded
 “ the more, because I knew very well
 “ that he had escaped from celebrated
 “ beauties, whose chains he had broke
 “ almost as soon as he had bore them.
 “ Nevertheless, far from being every
 “ day less and less pleased with my
 “ favours, his raptures seemed rather
 “ to increase: in short, I had the art
 “ to amuse him, and hinder his heart,
 “ naturally inconstant, from giving
 “ way to its usual levity,

“ He had been attached to me al-
 “ ready three months, and I had room
 “ to flatter myself that his passion
 “ would be, of long duration; when
 “ one of my she-friends and I went
 “ to an assembly, where he happened
 “ to be with his dutchess, in order to
 “ hear a concert of vocal and instru-
 “ mental musick. We chanced to
 “ place ourselves pretty near the dut-
 “ chess, who was pleased to take it
 “ amiss that I should presume to ap-
 “ pear in a place where she was, and
 “ sent a message to me, by one of her
 “ women, desiring that I would im-
 “ mediately withdraw. I returned an
 “ insolent answer; which incensed the
 “ dutchess so much, that she com-
 “ plained of it to her husband, who came
 “ to me in person, and said, “ Retire,
 “ Lucinda; though noblemen of my
 “ rank attach themselves to such little
 “ creatures as you, they must not for-
 “ get themselves altogether: if we
 “ love you more than our wives, we
 “ honour our wives more than you;
 “ and as often as you have the info-
 “ lence to put yourselves in competi-
 “ tion with them, you will always
 “ have the mortification to be treated
 “ with indignity.”

“ Luckily for me, the duke spoke
 “ this in a tone of voice so low, that
 “ not one word was overheard by
 “ the people around us. I withdrew,
 “ covered with shame, and wept with
 “ vexation for the affront I had re-
 “ ceived. To crown my confusion,
 “ the actors and actresses got notice
 “ of the adventure that very evening:
 “ one would think these people enter-
 “ tain a demon, who delights in re-
 “ porting to one whatever happens to
 “ another,

“another. If an actor, for example,
 “is guilty of some extravagant action
 “in a debauch, or an actress enters
 “into articles with a rich gallant, the
 “company is immediately informed
 “of the circumstance. All my com-
 “rades, therefore, knew what hap-
 “pened at the concert; and God
 “knows how they rejoiced at my
 “expence! A spirit of charity, which
 “reigns among them, usually mani-
 “fests itself on these occasions. I
 “put myself, however, above their
 “tittle-tattle, and consoled myself for
 “the loss of the Duke de Medina
 “Celi; for he visited me no more,
 “and I learned a few days after, that
 “a Carthusian nun had made a con-
 “quest of him.

“When a lady belonging to the
 “theatre has the good fortune to be
 “in vogue, she cannot want lovers;
 “and the passion of a grandee, though
 “it does not last above three days,
 “greatly enhances her price. I found
 “myself besieged with adorers, as
 “soon as it was known in Madrid
 “that the duke had forsaken me.
 “Those rivals whom I had sacrificed
 “to him, more captivated by my
 “charms than ever, returned in
 “crowds, as candidates for my fa-
 “vour; I received homage from a
 “thousand other hearts, and was never
 “so much in fashion before. Of all
 “the men who courted my graces, a
 “fat German, gentleman to the Duke
 “d’Ossuna, seemed the most eager.
 “He had not a very amiable person,
 “but attracted my attention by a
 “thousand pistoles, which he had
 “amassed in the service of his master,
 “and which he squandered away, in
 “order to be deemed worthy of being
 “in the list of my happy gallants.
 “As long as this worthy admirer,
 “whose name was Brutandorf, had
 “money to spend, I gave him a fa-
 “vourable reception; but when he
 “was ruined, he found my door al-
 “ways shut against him. This pro-
 “ceeding of mine displeased him,
 “and he came to search for me at the
 “theatre, during the play. He found
 “me behind the scenes, and began to
 “reproach me for my ingratitude. I
 “laughed in his face; at which he
 “was enraged, and lent me a box on
 “the ear, like a rude German as he
 “was: I shrieked aloud, interrupted

“the representation, appeared upon the
 “stage, and addressing myself to the
 “Duke d’Ossuna, who was present
 “with the dutchess his lady, de-
 “manded justice for the German be-
 “haviour of his gentleman. The
 “duke ordered us to go on with the
 “play, and said he would hear the
 “parties when we had finished the
 “piece. As soon as it was over, I
 “presented myself, in a good deal of
 “emotion, before the duke, and sig-
 “nified my grievance in a pathetick
 “manner. As for the German, he
 “employed but two words in his de-
 “fence; he said, That far from re-
 “penting of what he had done, he
 “would do it again on the same pro-
 “vocation. Both parties being heard,
 “the Duke d’Ossuna said to my ad-
 “versary, “Brutandorf, I dismiss
 “you from my service; let me never
 “see your face again: not that I mind
 “your having struck an actress, but
 “am offended at your want of respect
 “to your master and mistress, by pre-
 “suming to disturb the entertainment
 “in their presence.”

“This sentence I could not digest;
 “I was mortally piqued because the
 “German had not been turned away
 “on account of his insolence to me;
 “I imagined that such an affront put
 “upon an actress ought to have been
 “as severely punished as petty trea-
 “son, and I had laid my account
 “with seeing the gentleman undergo
 “some terrible infliction. This dis-
 “agreeable event undeceived and con-
 “vinced me, that the world always
 “makes a distinction between the
 “players and the characters they re-
 “present. I was, for this reason,
 “disgusted with the stage, which I
 “resolved to abandon, and go to live
 “at a great distance from Madrid. I
 “accordingly chose the city of Va-
 “lencia for the place of my retreat,
 “and thither I repaired incognito,
 “with the value of twenty thousand
 “ducats in jewels and cash; a for-
 “tune, as I thought, sufficient to
 “maintain me during the rest of my
 “days; since I designed to lead a very
 “retired life. I took a small house
 “at Valencia, and had no other do-
 “mesticks than a maid-servant and a
 “page, to whom I was as little known
 “as to the whole city. I pretended
 “to be widow of an officer of the
 “king’s

A a

king's household; and said I came to settle at Valencia, because it had the reputation of being one of the most agreeable places in Spain. I saw but very little company, and observed such a regular conduct, that I was never suspected of having been an actress. In spite of my care, however, to keep myself concealed, I attracted the notice of a gentleman who had a country-house near Paterna. He was a very well-made cavalier, between thirty-five and forty years of age, but withal a nobleman very much in debt; which is no great rarity in the kingdom of Valencia more than in other countries.

This Signior Hidalgo*, finding my person to his liking, wanted to know if I could answer his purpose in other respects: for this end, he uncoupled his spies to make discoveries, and had the pleasure to learn from their report, that besides some share of beauty, I was a widow of a good fortune. He looked upon me, therefore, as a suitable match; and, in a little time, an honest old gentlewoman came to my house, and told me, from him, that being equally charmed with my beauty and virtue, he made a tender of his heart, and was ready to conduct me to the altar, as soon as I would favour him with my hand. I asked three days to deliberate upon his proposal, and inform myself of his character; which was so engaging, that, although I was not ignorant of his situation, I easily determined to marry him in a short time after.

Don Manuel de Xercia, so was my husband called, carried me immediately to his castle, that had a very antique air, of which he was not a little vain. He pretended that one of his ancestors had caused it to be built; and from thence concluded, that there was not a more ancient house in Spain than that of Xercia. But this title of nobility, fair as it was, had like to have been destroyed by time; for the castle, which they were obliged to prop up in several parts, threatened

immediate ruin. How happy, therefore, was Don Manuel in marrying me! more than half of my money was employed in reparations; and the rest served to put us in a condition of making a figure in the country. Behold me then (to use the expression) in a new world, changed into the nymph of a castle, and lady of a parish. Here was a metamorphosis! and I was too good an actress, not to support with dignity the splendour with which I was invested by my rank. I assumed lofty theatrical airs, which made the village conceive an high idea of my birth. How merry would they have been at my expence, had they known the truth of the matter! The nobility in the neighbourhood would have bestowed upon me a thousand taunts, and the peasants abated a great deal of the respect they shewed.

I had lived happily near six years with Don Manuel, when he died, leaving my affairs in great perplexity, with your sister Beatrice, then going in her fifth year. The castle, which was all the estate we had, was unluckily engaged to several creditors, the chief of whom was one Bernard Astuto*, whose name seemed very well adapted to his character: he practised at Valencia the business of an attorney, which he exercised with consummate skill, having studied the law in order to qualify himself for cheating with the greater dexterity. What a terrible creditor he was! a castle under the claws of such an attorney, is like a pigeon in the talons of a kite. Accordingly, Signior Astuto, as soon as he was apprized of the death of my husband, did not fail to besiege the castle, which he would undoubtedly have blown up, by the mines that chicanery began to prepare, had not my good genius interposed, and ordered it so as that my besieger became my slave. I had the good fortune to captivate him, during an interview we had on the subject of the law-suit. I spared nothing, I own, to inspire him with a passion for me; the desire of far-

* *Hidalgo*, is a Spanish word, signifying a gentleman.

† *Astuto*, in the Spanish language, signifies craft or cunning.

"ing my land made me practise upon
 "him all those languishing airs which
 "had often succeeded so well. Not-
 "withstanding all my art, I was a-
 "fraid of being baffled by the attor-
 "ney, who was so ingulphed in bu-
 "siness, that he did not seem suscep-
 "tible of an amorous impression. Ne-
 "vertheless, this sullen, awkward
 "scrawler, took more pleasure in look-
 "ing at me than I imagined. "Ma-
 "dam," said he, "I know not how
 "to make love: I have always ap-
 "plied to my profession so closely,
 "as to neglect the methods and cus-
 "toms of gallantry; but, however,
 "I am not ignorant of the essential
 "part; and, therefore, to come to the
 "point, I assure you, that if you will
 "give me your hand, we will burn
 "the whole proceedings; I will bub-
 "ble the other creditors who join in
 "the suit against you; you shall en-
 "joy the life-rent, and your daughter
 "the property of the land. My own
 "interest, and that of Beatrice, did
 "not permit me to hesitate; I accept-
 "ed the proposal, and the attorney
 "kept his promise. He turned his
 "arms against the rest of the credi-
 "tors, and secured me in the possession
 "of my castle; and this, perhaps,
 "was the first time of his having be-
 "friended the widow and the orphan.
 "I became, therefore, an attorney's
 "wife, without ceasing to be lady of
 "the parish. But this new marriage
 "cost me the esteem of the gentry in
 "Valencia. The women of fashion
 "looked upon me as one who had
 "degenerated, and therefore would
 "not visit me: so that I was obliged
 "to confine myself to an acquaintance
 "among citizens; a circumstance that
 "gave me some uneasiness at first, be-
 "cause I had been for six years ac-
 "customed to correspond with none
 "but ladies of distinction: but I
 "soon consoled myself, and became
 "acquainted with the wives of a scri-
 "vener and two attorneys, whose
 "characters were pleasant enough;
 "there was something ridiculous in
 "their behaviour, that diverted me
 "very much. These small gentry be-
 "lieved themselves ladies of some con-
 "sideration. "Alas!" said I some-
 "times to myself, when I saw them
 "forget themselves, "this is the way
 "of the world: every one thinks her-

"self better than her neighbour. I
 "imagined that actresses were the only
 "people that did not know them-
 "selves: but I find that citizens wives
 "are not a whit more reasonable. I
 "wish that, by way of punishment,
 "they were obliged to keep in their
 "houses the pictures of their grand-
 "fathers: in good faith, they would
 "not place them in the most frequent-
 "ed apartment."

"After having been married four
 "years, Signior Bernardo Astuto fell
 "sick, and died without children; so
 "that, with what he had settled upon
 "me at our marriage, and the money
 "I was left in possession of, I found
 "myself a rich widow, and had the
 "reputation of being so. On this re-
 "port, a Sicilian gentleman, whose
 "name was Colifichini, resolved to
 "attach himself to me, in order to
 "ruin or espouse me, for he left me
 "the choice. He had come from Pa-
 "lermo to see Spain, and after hav-
 "ing satisfied his curiosity, waited (as
 "he said) at Valencia, for an oppor-
 "tunity of repassing into Sicily. This
 "gentleman was not more than five
 "and twenty years of age, genteelly
 "shaped, though small; in short, I
 "liked his appearance. He found
 "means to speak with me in private,
 "and I will frankly own, that I be-
 "came madly fond of him, in our
 "first interview. On his side, the little
 "rogue seemed quite captivated by my
 "charms; and I believe (God for-
 "give me!) we should have married
 "one another immediately, had the
 "attorney's death, which was still re-
 "cent, permitted me to contract a
 "new engagement so soon: but ever
 "since I had fallen into the taste of
 "matrimony, I maintained the punc-
 "tilios of decorum.

"We agreed, therefore, to defer our
 "marriage for some time, out of de-
 "cency: in the mean time, Colifichi-
 "ni continued his addresses; and his
 "passion, far from abating, seemed to
 "increase daily. The poor young
 "man was not very well provided
 "with cash; I perceived it, and he
 "no longer wanted money: for, be-
 "sides that I was almost twice his age,
 "I remembered that I had laid the
 "men under contribution in my youth,
 "and I looked upon what I now did,
 "as a restitution that acquitted my

“conscience. We waited, as patiently as we could, for the expiration of the time prescribed by custom for women to remain in a state of widowhood; and then went to the altar, where we mutually bound ourselves in the indissoluble ties of wedlock: we afterwards retired to my castle; where, I may say, we lived two years, not so much like a husband and wife, as two tender lovers. But, alas! we were not destined to be long happy in one another; a fatal pleurisy robbed me of my dear Colifichini.”

“Here I interrupted my mother, crying, ‘How, Madam! your third husband dead too! you must certainly be a very dangerous tene-ment.’—‘What could I do, son?’—answered Lucinda; ‘was it in my power to prolong the days that Heaven had numbered? If I have lost three husbands, I could not help it. Two of them I regretted very much: he for whom I had the least regard was the attorney; as I married him out of interest, I easily consoled myself for his death. But,’ added she, ‘to return to Colifichini; I must tell you, that a few months after his decease, having a mind to go and see, with my own eyes, a country-house near Palermo, which he had assigned to me as a jointure in our contract of marriage, I embarked, with my daughter, for Sicily; but we were taken in our passage, by the vessels of the Dey of Algiers, and conducted into this city. Happily for us, you chanced to be on the spot where we were put up to sale, otherwise we might have fallen into the hands of some barbarous master, who would have maltreated us, and under whom we might have passed our whole life in bondage, without your knowing any thing of the matter.’”

“Such was my mother’s narration; after which, gentlemen, I gave her the best apartment of my house, with the liberty of living as she should think proper; a permission that she relished very much. She had contracted such a habit of being in love, from the repeated attacks of that passion, that she must absolutely have either an husband or a gallant. At first she cast her eyes on some of my slaves;

“but Haly Pegelin, a Greek renegado, who came frequently to the house, soon ingrossed her attention. She conceived a more violent passion for him than ever she felt for Colifichini, and she was so much mistress of the art of pleasing, that she found the secret of charming him also. I winked at their intelligence, and thought of nothing then but my return into Spain. The dey having already permitted me to fit out a vessel, to cruize and commit piracy, I was busied in making preparations; and eight days before they were finished, I said to Lucinda, ‘Madam, we shall depart from Algiers in a very little time, and lose sight of that place which you detest so much.’”

“My mother grew pale at these words, and remained speechless. At which being strangely surprized, ‘What do I see, Madam!’ said I; ‘what is the meaning of that consternation in your looks? you seem to be afflicted, rather than rejoiced, at what I tell you! I thought I should have made you happy with the news of every thing’s being ready for our departure. Have you no longer any desire, then, of re-passing into Spain?’—‘None at all,’ son,” answered my mother; “I have had so much affliction in that kingdom, that I renounce it for ever.”—“What do I hear!” cried I, in a transport of grief: “ah! say rather, that love detaches you from it. O Heavens! what a change is here! when you arrived in this city, every object that presented itself was odious to your eyes: but Haly Pegelin has altered your disposition.”—“I don’t deny it,” replied Lucinda; “I love that renegade, whom I design to take for my fourth husband.”—“What an abandoned project!” said I, interrupting her, with horror; “would you marry a Mussulman? You forget that you are a Christian; or rather, you never was one but in name. Ah, mother! what are you about to do? you have resolved upon your own perdition, by voluntarily embracing that which I was compelled to by necessity!”

“I used many more arguments to dissuade her from her design; but I harangued to no purpose: she had formed her resolution; and, not contented

contented with following her own wicked inclination, and quitting me to live with that renegade, she wanted to carry Beatrice along with her also: but this I opposed. "Ah, wretched Lucinda!" said I to her; "if nothing is able to restrain you, at least abandon yourself alone to the fury that possesses your imagination; don't drag a young innocent creature to the precipice from whence you intend to throw yourself." Lucinda went away, without making any reply, and I believed that a remaining ray of reason enlightened and hindered her from being obstinate in demanding her daughter. But how little was I acquainted with my mother! two days after, one of my slaves said to me, "Signior, take care of yourself; one of Pegelin's captives has imparted a thing to me, of which you cannot take the advantage too soon. Your mother has changed her religion; and to punish you for having refused to let her carry off Beatrice, is resolved to inform the dey of your intended flight." I did not doubt one moment, that Lucinda was capable of doing what my slave mentioned: I had opportunities of studying the lady, and perceived, that, by the habit of acting sanguinary parts in tragedies, she was so familiarized to guilt, that she could have caused me to be burnt alive; and, I believe, would have been no more affected with my death, than with the catastrophe of a dramatick performance.

Willing, therefore, not to neglect the advice of my slave, I hastened my embarkation, and hired Turks, according to the custom of the corsairs of Algiers, when they go on a cruise; but I hired no more than such as were necessary to keep me unsuspected, and set sail as soon as possible with all my slaves, and my sister Beatrice. You may well believe, that I did not forget to carry off, at the same time, all my jewels and money, which might amount to the value of six thousand ducats. When we got to sea, we began by securing the Turks, whom we easily chained, because my slaves were more numerous than they: and we

had such a favourable wind, that in a little time we made the coast of Italy; and arrived, without the least bad accident, in the harbour of Leghorn, where I believe the whole city crowded to see us come ashore. The father of my slave Azarini being among the spectators, by accident or curiosity, surveyed all the captives, with great attention, as they disembarked; but though he sought among them the features of his son, he little expected to see him again. What transports and embraces were the consequence of their meeting, when they recollected one another!

As soon as Azarini had told his father who I was, and what brought me to Leghorn, the old man obliged me as well as Beatrice to lodge at his house. I shall pass over in silence the detail of a thousand things which I was obliged to perform, in being re-admitted into the bosom of the church; and only observe, that I adjured Mahometanism much more heartily than I had embraced it. After having entirely purged myself of the gall of Algiers, I sold my vessel, and set all my slaves at liberty; as for the Turks, they were detained in prison at Leghorn, in order to be exchanged for Christians. I received the best of treatment from both the Azarini's, the younger of whom married my sister Beatrice, who was, indeed, no bad match for him; being a gentleman's daughter, and heiress of the castle of Xercia, which my mother had taken care to farm out to a rich peasant of Paterna, when she resolved upon her passage into Sicily.

Having staid some time at Leghorn, I set out for Florence, which I longed much to see, and whither I did not go without letters of recommendation. Azarini the father had friends at the Grand Duke's court, to whom he introduced me as a Spanish gentleman, his ally; and I prefixed Don to my name, imitating in that a great many Spanish plebeians, who, when they are out of their own country, assume that title of honour without ceremony. I boldly, therefore, called myself Don Raphael; and as I had brought from Algiers a sufficiency to support my dignity,

dignity, appeared at court in a splendid manner. The gentleman to whom Azarini had wrote in my favour, gave out that I was a person of quality; so that his testimony, together with the airs I assumed, made me easily pass for a man of importance. I soon got acquainted with the principal noblemen, who presented me to the Grand Duke, whom I had the good fortune to please: upon which I bent my whole endeavour to make my court to that prince, and study his disposition. I listened attentively to what the oldest courtiers said to him; and by their discourse discovered his inclinations. Among other things, I observed that he loved raillery, good stories, and fallies of wit. I modelled myself accordingly; and every morning marked in my pocket-book the stories I designed for the day. I had such a number of them in my memory, that my budget might be said to have been full; and yet, in spite of all my management, it was emptied apace in such a manner, that I should either have been obliged to use repetition, or shew that I was at the end of my apothegms; if my genius, fruitful in fiction, had not furnished me with abundance. But I composed tales of gallantry and humour, that were very entertaining to the Great Duke; and, as it often happens with professed wits, in the morning I invented bright expressions, which I uttered as unpremeditated fallies in the afternoon.

I even elevated myself into a poet, and consecrated my muse to the praise of the prince. I freely own, indeed, that my verse was none of the best, therefore not much criticised; but had it been better, I question if it would have been better received by the Grand Duke, who seemed very well satisfied with my talents; the matter, perhaps, hindered him from finding fault. Be that as it will, this prince insensibly took such a liking to me, as gave umbrage to the courtiers. They endeavoured to discover who I was, but did not succeed. Getting notice, however, that I had been a renegade, they did not fail to inform the prince of it, in hopes of injuring my character; but this they could not accomplish: on the contrary, the Grand Duke, one

day, obliged me to give him a faithful account of my voyage to Algiers. I obeyed; and my adventures, which I did not at all disguise, afforded him infinite pleasure.

"Don Raphael," said he, when I had finished the relation, "I have a regard for you; and will give you a mark of it, which will not permit you to doubt of my friendship. I will make you the depository of my secrets; and to begin with an instance of my confidence, I must tell you that I am in love with the wife of one of my ministers. She is the most amiable lady of my court, but at the same time the most virtuous: shut up amidst her family, and solely attached to a husband whom she adores, she seems ignorant of the noise her charms make in Florence. Judge you, if this must not be a difficult conquest. Nevertheless, this beauty, inaccessible as she is to lovers, has deigned sometimes to hear my sighs: I have found means to speak to her in private, and to acquaint her with the sentiments of my heart: but I don't flatter myself with the hope of having inspired her with mutual love; she has never given me cause to form such an agreeable idea; I don't, however, despair of pleasing her by my assiduity, and the mysterious conduct I shall take care to observe.

"My passion for that lady," added he, "is known to nobody but herself; for, instead of consulting my inclination without constraint, and acting the sovereign, I conceal the knowledge of my flame from all the world; a piece of delicacy which I think I owe to Mascarini, the husband of her I love: his zeal, attachment, services, and probity, oblige me to conduct myself with great secrecy and circumspection. I would not plunge a dagger into the bosom of that unhappy husband, by declaring myself the lover of his wife; but wish that he may always remain ignorant, if possible, of the flame that consumes me; for I am persuaded that he would die of grief, if he knew the confidence I now repose in you. I conceal my steps, therefore, and am resolved to make use of you, in expressing to Lucretia all the pangs I suffer, by the
"constraint

“ constraint which she imposes upon
 “ me: you shall be the interpreter of
 “ my sentiments, and I don’t at all
 “ doubt; that you will acquit your-
 “ self of the commission to a miracle.
 “ Contract an acquaintance with Mas-
 “ carini, endeavour to gain his friend-
 “ ship, insinuate yourself into his
 “ house, and procure the liberty of
 “ conversing with his wife. This is
 “ what I expect of you, and what I
 “ assure myself you will perform with
 “ all the discretion and address that
 “ such a delicate employment re-
 “ quires.”

“ I promised to do all that lay in my
 “ power to justify the confidence he ho-
 “ noured me with, and contribute to the
 “ success of his flame; and soon kept
 “ my word with him. I spared nothing
 “ to please Mascarini, and accomplished
 “ my end with ease. Charmed to find
 “ his friendship courted by a man who
 “ was beloved of his prince, he met
 “ my advances half-way; his house
 “ was open to me; I had free access
 “ to his lady; and, I dare say, be-
 “ haved myself so well, that he had
 “ not the least suspicion of the nego-
 “ ciation intrusted to my care. It is
 “ true, indeed, for an Italian, he was
 “ not much addicted to jealousy; he
 “ depended upon the virtue of Lucre-
 “ tia, and shutting himself up in his
 “ closet, left me frequently alone with
 “ her. I went roundly to work the
 “ very first opportunity; entertained
 “ the lady with the passion of the Grand
 “ Duke, and told her, that my sole
 “ design in coming to her house, was
 “ to talk to her of that prince. She
 “ did not seem captivated by him; and
 “ yet, I perceived that her vanity hin-
 “ dered her from rejecting his ad-
 “ dresses: she took pleasure in hear-
 “ ing them, without feeling any incli-
 “ nation to answer his desires. She
 “ did not want understanding; but she
 “ was a woman; and I observed that
 “ her virtue yielded insensibly to the
 “ superb idea of a sovereign in her
 “ chains. In short, the prince had
 “ reason to flatter himself, that, with-
 “ out employing the violence of a Tar-
 “ guin, he would see Lucretia sub-
 “ jected to his love. An accident,
 “ however, which he little expected,
 “ destroyed his hope, as you shall pre-
 “ sently hear.

“ I am naturally impudent among

“ women; having acquired that qua-
 “ lification, I know not whether it be
 “ good or bad, among the Turks:
 “ Lucretia was handsome, and I, for-
 “ getting that I was only to act the
 “ part of an ambassador, talked to her
 “ on my own score, offering my ser-
 “ vices with all the gallantry I was
 “ master of. Instead of being shocked
 “ at my audaciousness, and replying
 “ in a rage, she said with a smile,
 “ You must own, Don Raphael, that
 “ the Grand Duke has made choice of
 “ a very faithful and zealous mini-
 “ ster, who serves him with an inte-
 “ grity never enough to be commend-
 “ ed!”—“ Madam,” said I, with the
 “ same air, “ don’t let us examine
 “ things scrupulously; but lay aside
 “ those reflections, which I know very
 “ well are not at all favourable to me.
 “ I abandon myself to my passion;
 “ and after all, don’t believe myself
 “ the first confidant of a prince, who
 “ has betrayed his master in affairs of
 “ gallantry; for the great have often
 “ dangerous rivals in their messages
 “ of pleasure.”—“ That may be,”
 “ replied Lucretia; “ but, as for my
 “ part, I am so high-spirited, that no-
 “ body under the degree of a prince
 “ shall ever make an impression upon
 “ my heart. Conduct yourself ac-
 “ cordingly,” added she, growing se-
 “ rious; “ and let us change the dis-
 “ course. I am willing to forget what
 “ you have said, on condition that
 “ you shall never talk to me again in
 “ the same manner; otherwise you
 “ may chance to repent it.”

“ Although this was an advertise-
 “ ment to the reader, of which I ought
 “ to have taken the advantage, I did
 “ not leave off entertaining Masca-
 “ rini’s wife with my passion; I even
 “ pressed her with more ardour than
 “ ever to make suitable returns to my
 “ tenderness, and was rash enough to
 “ take liberties. Upon which the
 “ lady, being affronted with my dis-
 “ course and Mussulman behaviour,
 “ checked me abruptly, threatened to
 “ make the Grand Duke acquainted
 “ with my insolence, and assured me,
 “ that she would desire him to punish
 “ me as I deserved. I was piqued,
 “ in my turn, at these menaces; my
 “ love changed into hate; and, deter-
 “ mined to be revenged upon Lucretia
 “ for her contempt, I went in quest of
 “ her

her husband, whom, after that he had sworn that he would not expose me, I informed of the correspondence between his wife and the prince, not forgetting to paint her very amorous, in order to make the scene more interesting. The minister, to prevent all accidents, shut up his spouse, without any other form of process, in a secret apartment, where she was guarded by people on whom he could rely. While she was thus surrounded by spies, who hindered her from informing the Grand Duke of her situation, I told that prince, with a melancholy air, that he must no more think of Lucretia; that Mascarini had, doubtless, discovered the whole affair, since he had taken it into his head to watch his wife; that I could not imagine what had alarmed his suspicion of me, for I thought I had always behaved with a good deal of address; that the lady, perhaps, had confessed the whole to her husband, in concert with whom she had allowed herself to be locked up, in order to avoid those importunities which alarmed her virtue. The prince seemed very much afflicted at my report: I was touched with his grief, and repented more than once of what I had done; but it was too late: besides, I confess that I felt a malicious joy, when I represented to myself the condition to which I had reduced the proud woman who had disdained my passion.

I enjoyed, with impunity, the pleasure of revenge, which is so sweet to all the world, and in particular to Spaniards, when the Grand Duke being one day in company with five or six of his courtiers and me, said, "In what manner do you think a man ought to be punished, who has dared to abuse the confidence of his prince, and attempted to deprive him of his mistress?"—"He ought," said one, "to be tied to the tails of four horses, and torn to pieces." Another was of opinion that he should be mauled to death. The least cruel of those Italians, and he whose sentence was most favourable to the delinquent said, That he would be satisfied with causing him to be thrown from the top of a high tower. "And what is the opinion of Don Raphael?" resumed the Grand Duke; "I am

persuaded that the Spaniards are as severe as the Italians in such conjunctures."

I easily comprehended, as you may believe, that Mascarini had not kept his oath; or that his wife had found means to apprize the prince of what had passed between her and me; and my confusion appeared plain on my countenance. Nevertheless, disconcerted as I was, I answered with a resolute tone, "Sir, the Spaniards are more generous: they would pardon the confident on such an occasion; and, by their goodness, raise in his soul an eternal regret for having betrayed them."—"Well," said the prince; "I find myself capable of such generosity. I pardon the traitor: for I have none but myself to blame, for having bestowed my confidence upon a man whom I did not know, and whom I had reason to distrust, after what I had heard of his character." Don Raphael, added he, "this is the manner in which I will avenge myself: quit my dominions immediately, and let me never see your face again." I withdrew on the instant, not so much afflicted with my disgrace, as rejoiced at coming off so cheaply; and the very next day embarked in a vessel that sailed from Leghorn, on its return to Barcelona.

I interrupted Don Raphael in this part of his history, by saying, "For a man of understanding, methinks you committed a great blunder, in neglecting to leave Florence, immediately after the discovery you made to Mascarini, of the prince's passion for Lucretia; you should have concluded, that the Grand Duke would soon come to the knowledge of your infidelity."—"I grant it," replied the son of Lucinda; "and notwithstanding the assurance which the minister gave me, of not exposing me to the resentment of the prince, I proposed to disappear in a very short time."

"I arrived at Barcelona," continued he, "with the remainder of the wealth I brought from Algiers; the best part of which I had dissipated at Florence, in the character of the Spanish gentleman. I did not stay long in Catalonia; for, having a longing desire to revisit Madrid, the charming place

place of my nativity, I satisfied, as soon as possible, the desire that impelled me. When I arrived in that city, I took furnished lodgings, by accident, at a house where a lady lived, whose name was Camilla, and who, though no minor, was a very engaging creature. I take Signior Gil Blas to witness, who saw her, much about that time, at Valladolid. She had still more wit than beauty, and never had a she-adventurer better talents for decoying dupes: but she was none of those coquettes who hoard up the offerings of their gallants; when she had pillaged a man of business, she shared his spoils with the first sharper she found to her liking.

We loved one another at first sight, and the conformity of our manners joined us so closely, that we soon had every thing in common. Our fortunes, indeed, were not very considerable, and therefore we spent them in a very little time. Neither of us, unluckily, minded any thing but our pleasure, or made the least use of the talents we had, to live at our neighbours expence. But misery, at last, awakened our geniuses, which pleasure had benumbed; and Camilla said to me, "My dear Raphael, let us make a diversion, my friend, and renounce a fidelity that ruins us both; you may captivate a rich widow, and I may charm some nobleman; for if we continue faithful to one another, here will be two fortunes lost."— "Fair Camilla!" I replied, "you have anticipated me; I was going to make the same proposal to you. I assent to your scheme, my queen: yes, for the better support of our mutual flame, let us attempt advantageous conquests; the infidelities we shall commit, will turn to triumphs in the end."

This convention being made, we took the field, and made considerable motions at first, without being able to encounter what we sought: Camilla could light upon none but beaux; that is to say, gallants who had not a penny in their pockets; and I could meet with no women; but such as loved better to levy contributions than to pay them. As

our arts were useless in love, we had recourse to stratagems, and performed so many, that our fame reached the ears of the corregidor; and that severe judge for the devil ordered one of his alguazils to apprehend us; but this officer being as good-natured as the other was cruel, gave us time to quit Madrid, in consideration of a small sum which we bestowed upon him. We took the road to Valladolid, and fixed in that city; having hired a house, in which I lived with Camilla, who passed for my sister, to avoid scandal. At first, we kept our industry under the rein, and began to study the ground, before we should form any enterprize.

One day, a man accosting me in the street, saluted me very civilly, saying, "Signior Don Raphael, do you know me?" I answered, "No." Upon which he resumed, "But I recollect you: I have seen you at the court of Tuscany, where I then belonged to the Grand Duke's guards. I quitted the service of that prince some months ago, and am come to Spain with an Italian of great finesse: we have been three weeks at Valladolid, and lodge with a Castilian and Gallician, who are, without contradiction, two young fellows of honour. We live together by the work of our hands, make good cheer, and amuse ourselves like princes: if you will join us, you shall be agreeably received by my confederates; for you always seemed to me to be a gallant man, of a disposition not addicted to scruples, and a professed brother of our order."

The rogue's frankness excited mine. "Since you speak to me with so little reserve," said I to him, "it is but reasonable that I should explain myself in the same manner to you. Indeed, I am not a novice in your profession; and if my modesty would allow me to recount my exploits, you would see that you have not judged too advantageously of my talents; but I will forbear to launch out in my own praise, and content myself with assuring you, while I accept that place in your company which is offered, that I will neglect nothing to approve my-

“ self worthy of your choice.” As soon as I signified, to this ambidexter, my consent to augment the number of his comrades, he conducted me to the place where they were, and introduced me to their acquaintance. It was here that I saw, for the first time, the illustrious Ambrose de Lamela. Those gentlemen examined me touching my skill in the mystery of appropriating to one’s self, with address, the effects of another. They wanted to know if I understood the principles of their art; but I shewed them a great many stratagems which they did not know, and which excited their admiration of my ability. They were still more astonished, when despising the dexterity of my hand, as a thing too common, I told them that I excelled in tricks which required the assistance of genius. To convince them of this, I recounted the adventure of Jerome de Moyadas; and, upon the simple narration of that affair, they found me such a superior genius, that I was chosen their chief by unanimous consent. I soon justified their choice, by an infinite number of knavish designs, which we put in practice, and of which I was, as it were, the informing soul. When we had occasion for an actress to carry on our projects; we made use of Camilla, who performed all her parts to admiration.

“ About that time, our brother Ambrose, being tempted to revisit his native country, set out for Galicia, assuring us that we might depend upon his return. He satisfied his desire; and, on his way back again, going to Burgos, with an intention of striking some stroke, an innkeeper of his acquaintance introduced him to the service of Signior Gil Blas of Santillane, with whose affairs he did not fail to make him acquainted.—Signior Gil Blas,” he added, addressing himself to me, “ you know how we rid you of your portmanteau, in our furnished lodgings at Valladolid; and I don’t doubt that you suspected Ambrose of being the chief instrument of that theft. And you was in the right: for, at your arrival, he came and laid your situation before us; and we, the gen-

“ tlemen—undertakers, regulated ourselves accordingly. But you are ignorant of the consequences of that adventure, which I will, therefore, let you know. Ambrose and I carried off your portmanteau; and mounting your mules, took the road to Madrid, without incumbering ourselves with Camilla, or the rest of our comrades, who, without doubt, were as much surprized as you, at our non-appearance next day.

“ On the second day we changed our design; and, instead of going to Madrid, which I had not quitted without cause, we passed by Zeberos, and continued our route as far as Toledo. In this city, our first care was to dress ourselves like gentlemen; then giving ourselves out for two brothers of Galicia, who travelled out of curiosity, we soon became acquainted with persons of character. As I had been so much accustomed to act the man of quality, I was easily mistaken for such; and people being usually dazzled by expence, we imposed upon every body by the gallant treats we began to give to the ladies. Among the women whom I visited, there was one who touched my heart: I found her fairer than Camilla, and a good deal younger. I was desirous of knowing who she was, and learned that her name was Violante, and that her husband was a gentleman who, cloyed already with her charms, pursued those of a courtesan whom he loved. This piece of information was enough to determine me to establish Violante the sovereign lady of my affection.

“ It was not long before she perceived her conquest: I began to follow her every where, and commit a thousand impertinences, to persuade her that I wanted nothing more than to console her for the infidelity of her spouse. The fair one made her reflections on the matter, which were such, that at last I had the pleasure of knowing her approbation of my sentiments. I received from her a billet, in answer to several which I had sent to her, by one of those old matrons who are so serviceable in Spain and Italy. The lady gave me to understand, that her husband supped every evening with his mistress, and did not come home before

it was very late. That same night I went under the windows of Violante, and entered into a most tender conversation with her: after which we agreed, at parting, to enjoy the same opportunity every night, at the same hour, without prejudice to the other acts of gallantry which we should be permitted to exercise in the day.

Hitherto Don Balthazar, the husband of my princess, came off very cheaply; but I chose to love naturally, and repaired one evening under the lady's windows, with a design to tell her, that I could live no longer, if I did not enjoy a tête à tête with her in a place more suitable to the excess of my love; an indulgence which I had not, as yet, been able to obtain. But just as I got to the place, I saw a man come into the street, who seemed to observe me: in effect, it was the husband, who returned from the court earlier than usual, and who perceiving a cavalier near his house, instead of going in, walked to and fro in the street. I remained, for some time, unresolved; but at last determined to accost Don Balthazar, whom I did not know, and of whom I was also utterly unknown: "Signior Cavalier," said I to him, "pray leave the street free to me for one night; I will do as much for you another time."—"Signior," he replied, "I was going to make the same request to you: I am in love with a girl, whom her brother guards like a dragon, and who lives not above twenty paces from hence; so that I wish there was nobody in the street."—"There is one way," said I, "of satisfying us both, without incommoding either: for," added I, shewing him his own house, "the lady whom I serve, lodges there; and let us assist one another, if either of us should be attacked."—"With all my heart," he replied; "I will go to my rendezvous, and we will back one another should there be occasion." So saying, he left me; but it was in order to observe me the better; and this the darkness of the night permitted him to do with impunity.

As for my part, I approached, in

security, the balcony of Violante, who soon appeared, and we began to converse together. I did not fail to insist upon my queen's granting me a private interview in some particular place. She resisted my importunities a little, to enhance the value of the favour which I demanded; then dropping a letter, which she took out of her pocket, "Hold," said she; "you will find in this billet the promise of what you so earnestly desire." She afterwards withdrew, because the hour at which her husband usually returned was at hand; upon which I secured the billet, and advanced to the place where Don Balthazar said he was concerned: but he having very well perceived what I wanted with his wife, came to me, saying, "Well, Signior Cavalier, are you satisfied with your good fortune?"—"I have cause to be so," I replied: "and what have you done? has love favoured your addresses?"—"Ah, no!" said he; "the cursed brother of the beauty whom I love is returned from a country-house, where I imagined he would stay till to-morrow; and this mischance has balked me of the pleasure with which I flattered myself."

Don Balthazar and I made mutual protestations of friendship; and to tie the knot of it the faster, made an appointment to meet next day in the great square. After we parted, he went home, but mentioned not a word of what he knew to Violante. Next day, he repaired to the great square, where I arriving a moment after him, we saluted one another with demonstrations of friendship, as perfidious on one side, as sincere on the other. Then Don Balthazar made me the confident of a feigned intrigue with the lady whom he had mentioned the preceding night; recounting a long story that he had invented, in order to engage me in my turn to tell him in what manner I had become acquainted with Violante. I did not fail to fall into the snare, and confess all with the utmost frankness; I even shewed the letter which I had received from her, and read the contents in these words.

B b 2 "I Shall

"I shall dine to-morrow with Donna Inez; you know where she lives: it is in the house of that faithful friend that I intend to give you a private interview; for I can no longer refuse that favour which you seem to deserve."

"This," said Don Balthazar, "is a billet which promises you the accomplishment of your wish; I congratulate you before-hand, on the happiness that attends you." He could not help being a little disconcerted while he said this; but he easily concealed his trouble and confusion from me. I was so much engrossed by my hope, that I never thought of observing my confidant, who was obliged, however, to leave me, that I might not at last perceive his agitation. He ran to apprise his brother-in-law of this adventure; but I am ignorant of what passed between them: all I know of the matter is, that Don Balthazar came and knocked at the door while I was with Violante, at the house of Donna Inez; and as soon as we learned that it was he, I escaped at a back-door before he came in. As soon as I was gone, the ladies, whom the unforeseen arrival of the husband had disconcerted, recollected themselves, and received him with such effrontery, that he suspected I was either concealed, or had made my escape. I cannot tell what he said to Donna Inez and his wife, because it never came to my knowledge.

"Meanwhile, without suspecting that I was Don Balthazar's dupe, I went away, cursing him, and returned to the great square, where I had appointed to meet Lamela. I did not find him, however; he had little affairs of his own to manage; and the rogue was more fortunate than I. While I waited for him, I saw my perfidious confidant arrive, who came up to me with a gay air, and smiling, asked news of my interview with my nymph at the house of Donna Inez. "I don't know," said I, "what demon, jealous of my pleasures, delights in thwarting them; but while I was alone with my lady, pressing her to make me happy, her husband, whom the devil con-

door: so that being obliged to get off as fast as I could, I retired by a back-door, cursing to hell the troublesome cuckold who broke all my measures!"—"I am truly sorry for it," cried Don Balthazar, who felt a secret joy in seeing my vexation; "what an impertinent husband must he be! I advise you to give him no quarter."—"O! as for that," I replied, "I will take your advice; and I can assure you, that his honour shall make it's exit this night: his wife, when I left her, bid me not be discouraged at so small a matter; but be sure to come under her window earlier than usual, for she was resolved to admit me into her house; and desired me, at all events, to come attended with two or three friends, for fear of surprize."—"What a prudent lady she is!" said he. "I will, if you please, accompany you thither."—"Ah, my dear friend!" cried I, in a transport of joy, while I threw my arms around his neck; "I am infinitely obliged to you!"—"I will do more," he resumed; "I am acquainted with a young fellow who is another Cæsar; he shall be of the party, and then you may boldly confide in your escorte."

"I did not know what acknowledgments to make to this new friend, so much was I charmed with his zeal. In short, I accepted the favour which he offered, and appointing to meet in the twilight under Violante's balcony, we parted for that time. He went to find his brother-in-law, who was the Cæsar in question; and I took a turn till the evening with Lamela, who (though he was surprized at the ardour with which Don Balthazar espoused my interest) distrusted him no more than I: we fell nodding into the snare; which, I own, was unpardonable in people of our experience. When I thought it was time to present myself before Violante's window, Ambrose and I appeared upon the spot, armed with good rapiers; and there we found the lady's husband, with another man, waiting for us, without flinching. Don Balthazar, accosting me, and shewing his brother-in-law, said, "Signior, this is the valier whose bravery I extolled so much. Get into the house of your

"mistress,

“mistress, and let not any anxiety hinder you from enjoying the most perfect felicity.”

“After some mutual compliments, I knocked at my nymph’s door, which being opened by a kind of duenna, I entered; and, without taking notice of what passed behind me, advanced into a hall where Violante was. While I saluted the lady, the two traitors, who had followed me into the house, and shut the door so hastily after them that Ambrose was left in the street, discovered themselves. You may easily imagine that we then came to blows. Both of them charged me at once; but I found them work enough, and employed them in such a manner, that perhaps they repented they had not chose a surer conveyance for their revenge. I ran the husband through the body; and his brother-in-law, seeing him out of the question, got to the door, which the duenna and Violante had opened to make their escape while we were engaged. I pursued him into the street, where I rejoined Lamela, who not being able to extract one word from the women in their flight, did not precisely know what to think of the noise he had heard. We returned to the tavern where we lodged, secured our most valuable effects, and mounting our mules, rode out of the city, without waiting for day.

“Knowing very well that this affair might have bad consequences, and that a search would be made at Toledo, which we were in the right to anticipate, we went to bed at Villarubia, at an inn where, some time after, a merchant of Toledo arrived, in his way to Segorba. As we supped in his company, he recounted the tragical adventure of Violante’s husband; and was so far from suspecting us to be concerned, that we boldly asked of him all manner of questions about the affair. “Gentlemen,” said he, “just as I set out this morning, I heard of the melancholy accident. Search was made every where for Violante, and I was told that the corregidor, who is related to Don Balthazar, has resolved to spare nothing in discovering the murderers. This is all I know of the matter.”

“Though I was not much alarmed at the search of the corregidor, I resolved to quit New Castile immediately; reflecting, that when Violante should be found, she would confess all, and on her description of my person to the judge, people would be sent in pursuit of me. For this reason, the very next day, we avoided the highway, through precaution; Lamela being luckily acquainted with three-fourths of Spain, and particularly with the bye-ways, through which we could securely repair into Arragon. Instead of going straight to Cuenca, we kept among the mountains adjacent to that city; and through paths that were not unknown to my guide, arrived at a grotto which looked very much like an hermitage; and, indeed, it was the same to which you came last night for an asylum.

“While I was considering the country around, which presented to my view a charming rural prospect, my companion said to me, “I passed by this place six years ago, at which time that grotto served as a retreat to an old hermit, who gave me a very charitable reception, entertaining me with a share of his provisions. I remember, that he was a very holy man, and harangued me with a discourse that had almost detached me from the world: perhaps he is still alive; I will go and see.” So saying, the curious Ambrose alighted from his mule, and entered the hermitage; where having staid some minutes, he returned, calling to me, “Come hither, Don Raphael; come and see a very affecting scene.”

“I alighted immediately; and, tying our mules to a tree, followed Lamela into the grotto, where I perceived an old anchorite; pale and dying, stretched at his full length upon a truckle-bed. A white beard, very bushy, covered his whole breast; and in his hands, clasped together, appeared a large twisted rosary. At the noise we made in approaching him, he opened his eyes, which death had already began to close; and, after having looked at us for a moment, said, “Whosoever you are, my brethren, profit by the spectacle that now presents itself to your eyes:”

“I have

"I have lived forty years in the world, and sixty in this solitude. Ah! how long, at this moment, seems the time which I have bestowed on my pleasures: and, on the contrary, how short does that appear which I have consecrated to penitence and devotion! Alas, I am afraid that the austerities of brother John have not sufficiently expiated the sins of the Licentiate Don Juan de Solis!"

"He had no sooner spoke these words, than he expired, leaving us very much affected with his death. Objects of this sort always make some impression even on the greatest libertines: but we did not retain it long; we soon forgot what he had said to us, and began to take an inventory of every thing in the hermitage; an employment not very laborious, all his furniture consisting in what you may have observed in the grotto. Brother John was not only ill provided with furniture, but also kept a very bad larder; for all the provision we found was a few filberts, and some crusts of barley-bread, so hard as to be, in all appearance, proof against the gums of the holy man; I say, his gums, because we observed that he had lost all his teeth. All that this solitary habitation contained, and all that we beheld, made us regard the good anchorite as a perfect saint. We were shocked, indeed, at one thing; we opened a paper folded in the form of a letter, which he had laid upon the table, and in which he begged, that the person who should read it, would carry his rosary and sandals to the Bishop of Cuenca. We did not know with what intention this new father of the desert could desire to make such a present to his bishop; this seemed an outrage against humility, and the behaviour of a man who wanted to set up for canonization; and perhaps there was nothing in it but pure simplicity; for I don't pretend to decide the matter.

"While we discoursed together on this subject, a pleasant thought came into Lamela's head. "Let us stay," said he, "in this hermitage, and disguise ourselves like anchorites, having first buried brother John. You shall pass for him, and I, under the name of brother Anthony, will go

"a begging in the neighbouring towns and villages. Besides our being secure from the enquiries of the corregidor, for I don't believe he will think of searching for us here, I have some good acquaintance at Cuenca, which we may cultivate." I approved of this extravagant proposal, not so much from Ambrose's reasons, as out of pure whim, or a desire of acting a part in a play. About thirty or forty paces from the grotto, we dug a grave, in which we modestly interred the old anchorite, after having stripped him of his cloaths; that is, a simple robe tied about his middle with a leather girdle: we likewise cut off his beard, to make a false one for me; and, in short, after having performed his funeral, took possession of the hermitage.

"We fared poorly the first day, being obliged to live on the provisions of the defunct; but next morning, before day, Lamela set out in order to sell the two mules at Toralva, and returned in the evening loaded with victuals, and other things which he had purchased. He brought every thing that was necessary for our transformation: he made for himself a russet gown, and a little red beard of horse-hair, which he fixed so artificially to his ears, that one would have sworn it was the natural product of his chin. There is not a more dexterous young fellow in the world than he; who likewise weaved the beard of brother John, which he applied to my face, and my brown woollen cap served to cover the artifice; so that there was nothing wanting to our disguise. We found each other so pleasantly equipped, that we could not, without laughing, behold ourselves in this dress, which truly was not very suitable to our real characters. Together with brother John's robe, I wore his rosary and sandals, of which I made no scruple to deprive the Bishop of Cuenca.

"We had been already three days in the hermitage, without seeing a soul appear; but on the fourth, two peasants entered the grotto, bringing bread, cheese, and onions, to the defunct, whom they still thought alive. As soon as I perceived them, I threw myself on my bed; and it

“ was no difficult matter to deceive them ; for, besides that there was not light enough to enable them to distinguish my features, I imitated as well as I could the voice of brother John, whose last words I had heard ; and they had no suspicion of the cheat. They seemed only surprized to meet another hermit there ; which when Lamela perceived, he said, with an hypocritical air, “ My brethren, be not surprized to see me in this solitude ; I have quitted an hermitage I possessed in Arragon, to come hither and attend the venerable and sage brother John, who in his extreme old age has occasion for a comrade who can provide for his necessities.” The peasants gave infinite praise to the charity of Ambrose, and expressed great joy in being able to boast of having two holy personages in their country.

Lamela, with a large havresack, which he had not forgot to purchase, went a begging for the first time in the city of Cuenca, which is but a small league from the hermitage. With a devout appearance which he had received from Nature, and the art of making advantage of it, which he possessed in a supreme degree, he did not fail to extort alms from charitable people, with whose liberalities he filled his havresack. “ Mr. Ambrose,” said I to him at his return, “ I congratulate you upon your happy talent of melting the souls of Christians. Egad ! one would think you had been a begging brother among the Capuchins.” — “ I have done something else,” answered he, “ than filled my knapsack : you must know, I have discovered a certain nymph called Barba, whom I formerly loved, and whom I have found strangely altered ; she, like us, has turned devotee, and lives with two or three sisters of the same class, who edify the world in publick, and in private lead scandalous lives. As she did not know me at first, “ How ! Madam Barba,” said I, “ is it possible that you do not recollect one of your old friends, your admirer Ambrose ? ” — “ By my faith ! Signior de Lamela,” cried she, “ I should never have expected to see you again in the habit you wear ! By what adventure are you become

hermit ? ” — “ I cannot tell you at present,” I replied ; “ the detail is somewhat long ; but I will come back to-morrow to gratify your curiosity, and bring along with me my companion brother John ? ” — “ Brother John ! ” said she, interrupting me ; “ what, the good anchorite who lives in the hermitage near this city ! Sure you joke ; they say he is more than an hundred years old.” — “ It is true,” said I to her, “ that he was once of that age ; but he has grown a great deal younger within these few days, and is at present no older than I.” — “ Well, let him come along with you,” replied Barba ; “ I see there is some mystery in the case.”

We did not fail the next day, as soon as it was dark, to go to the house of those bigots, who had prepared a sumptuous entertainment for our reception. We immediately took off our beards and hermits dress, and, without ceremony, told them who we were. On their side, for fear of being indebted to us for our frankness, they shewed what false devotees are capable of, when they banish grimace. We spent almost all the night at table, and did not retire to our grotto till the dawn. We returned thither again in a very short time ; or rather, did the same thing (almost every day) during three months ; in which time we spent two-thirds of our money with these nymphs : but one being suspicious of our characters, discovered the whole, and has informed justice against us, which this day intended to visit the hermitage, and secure our persons. Yesterday Ambrose, while he was begging at Cuenca, met one of our sisters, who gave him a note, saying, “ One of my friends wrote this letter to me, which I was going to send to you by an express : shew it to brother John, and take your measures accordingly.” It was this billet, gentlemen, which Lamela delivered to me in your presence, and which has made us quit so suddenly our solitary habitation.”

C H A P. II.

THE COUNCIL WHICH DON RAPHAEL HELD WITH HIS HEARS,

ERS, AND THE ADVENTURE WHICH HAPPENED TO THEM WHEN THEY DESIGNED TO LEAVE THE WOOD.

WHEN Don Raphael had ended his narration, which I thought a little tedious, Don Alphonso was so polite as to say, it had diverted him very much. Then Signior Ambrose opened, and addressing himself to his fellow-adventurer, 'Don Raphael,' said he, 'consider that the sun is set; it will be proper, methinks, to deliberate upon what we are to do.'—'You are in the right,' replied his comrade; 'we must determine upon the place to which we go next.'—'It is my opinion,' resumed Lamela, 'that we should set forward without loss of time; reach Requena this night, and to-morrow enter the kingdom of Valencia, where we will give the rein to our industry; and, I foresee, perform some successful strokes.' His confederate, who, on that subject, believed his presage infallible, assented to his opinion: as for Don Alphonso and me, leaving ourselves to the conduct of these honest people, we waited in silence the result of the conference.

It being therefore resolved that we should take the road to Requena, we began to prepare ourselves for the journey; we made another meal like that in the morning; and loading the horse with the bottle and the remains of our provisions, the approach of night lent us that darkness which we needed for our more secure travelling, and we pushed forward to get out of the wood: but we had not gone an hundred yards, when we discovered among the trees a light that made us very uneasy. 'What is the meaning of that?' said Don Raphael; 'perhaps the ferrets of justice having pursued us from Cuenca, understand that we are in this forest, and are come hither to search.'—'I don't believe that,' said Ambrose; 'these are rather travellers, who being surprized by the night, have come in to this wood to wait for day. But,' added he, 'I may be mistaken. I will go and reconnoitre while you stay here, and I will be back in a moment.' So saying, he advanced towards the light, which was not far off, and approached it softly. Pushing gently by the leaves and boughs

that were in his way, and peeping with all the attention which the thing seemed to deserve, he saw on the grass, round a candle that stuck burning in a lump of clay, four men sitting, who had just dispatched a pye, and emptied a pretty large leathern bottle, which they embraced in their turns. He likewise perceived, at some distance from them, a lady and gentleman tied to trees; and a little farther, a chaise with two mules richly caparisoned. He guessed at once, that the men were robbers; and their discourse, which he overheard, assured him that he was not mistaken in his conjecture. The four banditti expressed an equal desire of possessing the lady who had fallen into their hands, and talked of casting lots for her. Lamela having fully informed himself of the matter, rejoined us, and made a faithful report of what he had seen and heard.

Upon which Alphonso said, 'Gentlemen, that lady and cavalier, whom the robbers have bound to trees, are perhaps persons of the first quality; and shall we suffer them to fall victims to the barbarity and brutality of thieves! Take my advice; let us attack these banditti, and put them all to death.'—'With all my heart,' said Don Raphael; 'I am as ready to do a good as a bad action.' Ambrose, on his part, signified his willingness to lend a hand to such a laudable enterprize; 'for which,' said he, 'I foresee we shall be well recompensed.' I dare likewise affirm, that on this occasion I was not at all afraid of the danger; and that no knight-errant ever shewed more readiness to succour damsels in distress. But, not to conceal the truth, the danger was not great: for Lamela having reported that the arms of the robbers were all in a heap at the distance of ten or twelve paces from them, it was no difficult matter for us to execute our design. We tied our horse to a tree, and approached, as gently as possible, the place where they were talking with great warmth; and making a noise that helped us to surprize them, we made ourselves masters of their arms, before we were discovered; then firing a volley upon them, stretched them all breathless on the spot.

During this execution, the light going out, we remained in darkness; but

but for all that, did not delay to untie the man and woman, who were so much engrossed by their fear, that they had not power to thank us for what we had done in their behalf. It is true, indeed, they did not as yet know whether to look upon us as their deliverers, or as a new troop of banditti, who had not rescued them from the others with any intention to use them better: but we encouraged them, by protesting that we would conduct them to an inn, which Ambrose affirmed was not more than half a league from thence; and that they might there take all necessary precautions for their security, in going whither their affairs called them. After this assurance, with which they seemed very well satisfied, we replaced them in their chaise, and brought them out of the wood, leading the mules by the bridle. Our anchorites afterwards examined the pockets of the vanquished, took care of Don Alphonso's horse, secured those that belonged to the thieves, which we found tied to trees near the field of battle; and carrying them all off, followed brother Anthony, who mounted one of the mules, in order to guide the chaise to the inn; at which, however, we did not arrive in less time than two hours, although he had assured us that it was not far from the wood.

Every body in the house being a-bed, we knocked loudly at the door; upon which the landlord and his wife got up in a hurry, and were not sorry to see their rest interrupted by the arrival of an equipage, which they thought would have spent more money than it did. The whole inn was lighted in a moment; Don Alphonso and the illustrious son of Lucinda offered their hands to help the cavalier and lady out of the chaise, and even served them as ushers to the chamber whither the land-

lord conducted them. There a great many compliments passed; and we were not a little astonished, when we understood it was the Count de Polan himself, and his daughter Seraphina, whom we had delivered. It is impossible to describe the surprize of that lady, as well as of Don Alphonso, when they recollected each other. The count took no notice of it, so much was he otherwise engrossed, in recounting to us in what manner the robbers had attacked him; and how they had seized his daughter and him, after having killed his postilion, page, and valet de chambre: he ended with telling us, that he had a deep sense of the obligation he lay under to us; and if we would come to him at Toledo, where he should be in a month, we should see whether or not he was ungrateful.

Nor did the daughter of this nobleman forget to thank us for her happy deliverance: and as Raphael and I imagined we should please Don Alphonso, by giving him an opportunity of talking a moment in private with that young widow, we gratified his desire, by amusing the Count de Polan. 'Fair Seraphina!' said Don Alphonso to the lady, in a low voice, 'I will no longer complain of the fate that compels me to live like a man banished from civil society, since I have been so happy as to contribute to the important service which you have received.'—'How!' answered she, sighing, 'is it you who have saved my life and honour? Is it to you that my father and I are so much indebted? Ah, Don Alphonso! why did you kill my brother?' She said no more: but he easily perceived by these words, and the tone in which they were pronounced, that if he was violently in love with Seraphina, she was no less enamoured of him.

END OF THE FIFTH BOOK.

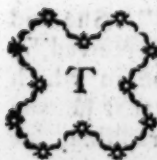


THE
ADVENTURES
OF
GIL BLAS
OF
SANTILLANE.

BOOK VI.

CHAP. I.

THE CONDUCT OF GIL BLAS AND HIS COMPANIONS, AFTER THEY QUITTED THE COUNT DE POLAN. THE IMPORTANT PROJECT WHICH AMBROSE FORMED; AND THE MANNER IN WHICH IT WAS EXECUTED.



HE Count de Polan having spent one half of the night in thanking and assuring us that we might depend upon his gratitude, called the landlord, in order to consult with him about the means of getting in safety to Turis, whither he designed to go. We left that nobleman to take his measures accordingly; and, departing from the inn, followed the road that Lamela was pleased to chuse.

After having travelled two hours, day surprized us near Campelio; upon

which we immediately betook ourselves to the mountains which are between that village and Requena, and there passed the day in reposing ourselves, and counting our finances, which were a good deal increased by the money of the robbers; for above three hundred pistoles were found in their pockets. As soon as it was dark, we set forward again, and next morning entered the Kingdom of Valencia. We retired to the first wood that presented itself to our view, and pushing a good way into it, arrived at a place through which a rivulet of crystalline water gently glided in it's way to join the streams of the Guadalaviar*. The shade projected by the trees, and the grass which the place afforded in abundance to our horses, would have determined us to halt here, even if we had not been resolved upon it before. We alighted, therefore, and prepared to pass the day very agreeably; but, when we went to breakfast, found very little provision left. We began to want

* The Guadalaviar, a river of Spain, rises on the confines of Arragon and New Castile; and, after a south-east course through Valencia, falls into the sea below the city of that name.

bread, and our bottle was become a body without a soul. 'Gentlemen,' said Ambrose, 'the most charming treats are but disagreeable without Bacchus and Ceres; our provision must be renewed; I will for that purpose go to Xelva, an handsome town not above two leagues from hence; so that the journey will soon be finished.' So saying, he fixed the bottle and havresack on one of the horses, and mounting a-top of them, went out of the wood with a dispatch that promised a speedy return.

He did not come back, however, so soon as we expected; more than half of the day elapsed, and night was ready to cover the trees with her sooty wings, when we beheld our purveyor, whose stay had begun to give us some uneasiness. He exceeded our expectation by the quantity of things with which he returned loaded: he brought not only the leathern bottle filled with excellent wine, and the knapsack crammed with bread and all sorts of roasted venison, but also a great bundle of cloth, which we observed with a great deal of attention. He perceived our admiration, and said with a smile, 'I defy Don Raphael, and all the world together, to guess why I have purchased these things.' Saying these words, he loosed the bundle, to shew the particulars of what we had observed in the gross. He displayed a cloak, and a very long black robe; two doublets with their hose; one of those inkhorns which are composed of two pieces tied together by a string, the horn of which is separated from the pen-case; a quire of fine white paper; and a padlock, with a large seal, and green wax; and when he had exhibited his whole purchase, Don Raphael said to him in a jocular way, 'Egad, Mr. Ambrose, it must be confessed you have made a fine bargain! What use, if you please, do you intend to make of it?' — 'An admirable one!' replied Lame-la: 'all these things have cost me but ten doubloons; and I am persuaded that they will bring us in more than five hundred; you may depend upon it, I am none of those who incumber themselves with useless effects; and to convince you that I did not buy all this like a fool, I will communicate the project I have formed.'

Having furnished myself with

bread,' added he, 'I went into a cook's shop, where I ordered six partridges, as many pullets and young rabbits, to be put to the fire; and while they were doing, a man came into the shop in a rage, and loudly complaining of the behaviour of a merchant in town, said to the cook, "By St. Jago! Samuel Simon is the most ridiculous merchant in Xelva; he has affronted me in the open shop: the covetous wretch would not give me credit for six ells of cloth, though he knows very well that I am a responsible tradesman, and that he can lose nothing by me. Is not he a strange animal? He sells willingly on credit to people of quality, and had rather venture with them, than oblige an honest citizen without any risque. Was there ever such madness? Damned Jew! would he were taken in! My wish will be one day accomplished. There are merchants enough of my opinion."

Hearing the tradesman speak in this manner, and say a great many other things of the same nature, I had a certain forewarning that I should cheat this Samuel Simon. "Friend," said I to the man who complained, "what is the character of this person whom you mention?" — "A very bad one," answered he hastily; "I assure you he is a rank usurer, though he affects the manners of a benevolent man. He was a Jew, and turned Catholick; but, in his heart, he is still as much a Jew as ever Pilate was; for they say he abjured for interest."

I lent an attentive ear to all the discourse of the tradesman, and did not fail, when I came out of the cook's shop, to enquire for Samuel Simon's house. A person shewed it to me: I surveyed his shop; examined every thing; and my imagination, ready at a call, sketched out a stratagem which I digested, and which appeared worthy of the valet of Signior Gil Blas. I went to a broker's, where I bought these cloaths; one suit for acting an inquisitor, another to represent a scrivener, and the third for playing the part of an alguazil.

'Ah, my dear Ambrose!' cried Don Raphael, interrupting him, in a transport of joy; 'what a wonderful

'idea! what a glorious plan! I am jealous of the invention; and would willingly give up the greatest strokes of my life, to be thought the author of such a happy scheme! Yes, Lamela,' added he, 'I see all the richness of thy design, the execution of which ought to give thee no uneasiness. Thou hast occasion for two good actors to second thee, and they are already found. Thou, who hast the air of a devotee, will act the inquisitor very well; I will represent the secretary; and Signior Gil Blas, if he pleases, shall play the part of an alguazil. Thus,' continued he, 'are the cues distributed: to-morrow we will act the piece, and I'll answer for it's success, unless some of those unlucky accidents happen, which confound the best-concerted designs.'

I conceived as yet but very confusedly the project which Don Raphael liked so much; but the whole was explained to me at supper, and the trick seemed ingenious. After having dispatched part of our venison, and made our leathern bottle undergo a copious evacuation, we stretched ourselves upon the grass, and were asleep in a very short time. 'Get up, get up!' cried Signior Ambrose, at day-break; 'people who have great enterprizes to execute, ought not to be lazy.'—'Deuce take you, Mr. Inquisitor!' said Don Raphael, waking; 'how alert you are! that bodes no good to Mr. Simon.'—'I grant it,' replied Lamela; 'and will moreover tell you, I dreamed this night, that I plucked the hairs from his beard: is not that a villainous dream for him, Mr. Secretary?' These jokes were followed by a thousand more, which put us all in good-humour: we made a chearful breakfast, and then prepared for acting our several parts. Ambrose put on the long gown and cloak, which gave him all the air of a commissary of the Holy Office: Don Raphael and I dressed ourselves likewise, so as to bear a pretty good resemblance to a secretary and alguazil. We employed a good deal of time in disguising ourselves; and it was past two o'clock in the afternoon when we quitted the wood, and set out for Xelva. It is true, indeed, we were in no hurry, as our comedy would not begin before

the twilight: we therefore went at a very slow pace, and stopping at the city-gate, waited there till night.

As soon as it was dark, we left our horses in this place to the care of Don Alphonso, who was very glad that he had no other part to perform. Don Raphael, Ambrose, and I, went immediately into a publican's in the neighbourhood; and Mr. Inquisitor going foremost, said to the landlord with great gravity, 'Master, I want to talk with you in private.' The landlord carried us into a parlour, where Lamela finding him alone with us, said, 'I am commissary of the Holy Office, come hither upon a very important affair.' At these words, the publican grew pale, and replied with a faltering voice, that he hoped he had given no cause of complaint to the Holy Inquisition: 'Therefore,' replied Ambrose, 'it has no intention to give you any trouble: God forbid that, too prompt to punish, it should confound innocence with guilt! it is severe, but always just: in a word, one must deserve it's chastisements before he feels them. It was not you who brought me to Xelva, but a certain merchant, called Samuel Simon, of whom we have received a very bad report: it is said that he is still a Jew, and embraced Christianity through motives purely carnal. I order you, therefore, in the name of the Holy Office, to tell me what you know of that man. Beware of excusing him, on account of his being your neighbour, and perhaps your friend; for I declare, if I perceive in your evadence the least reserve, you yourself are a lost man.—Come, secretary,' added he, turning to Raphael, 'do your duty.'

Mr. Secretary, who already had his paper and inkhorn in his hand, sat down at a table, and prepared, with the most serious air in the world, to write the deposition of the landlord; who, on his part, protested that he would not betray the truth. 'Well then,' said the commissary-inquisitor to him, 'let us begin: answer only to my questions; I ask no more. Do you see Samuel Simon frequent the church?'—'It is what I have not observed,' said the publican; 'I don't remember to have seen him at church.'—'Good!' cried the inquisitor. Write, that

‘that he is never seen at church.’—
 ‘I don’t say so, Mr. Commissary,’ replied the landlord; ‘I only say, that I never saw him there: he may be in the same church with me, though I don’t perceive him.’—‘Friend,’ said Lamela, ‘you forget that you must not, in your examination, excuse Samuel Simon: I have told you the consequences of it. You must mention only those things that are against him, and not one word in his favour.’—‘If that be the case, Signior Licentiate,’ resumed the landlord, ‘you can’t reap much from my deposition; I am not acquainted with the merchant in question, therefore can say neither good nor ill of him; but if you want to know how he lives in his own family, I will go and call Gaspard his prentice, whom you may interrogate: he comes here sometimes, to make merry with his friends; and such a tongue! he will discover the whole life and conversation of his master; and, I warrant it, find employment enough for your secretary.’

‘I like your frankness,’ said Ambrose; ‘and you shew your zeal for the Holy Office, by informing me of a man acquainted with the morals of Simon. I will report you to the inquisition. Make haste, then,’ continued he, ‘and bring hither that same Gaspard whom you mention. But do things discreetly, that his master may have no suspicion of what passes.’ The publican acquitted himself of his commission with great secrecy and diligence, and brought along with him the merchant’s prentice, who was just such a very talkative young fellow as we wanted. ‘Welcome, child,’ said Lamela to him; ‘you see, in me, an inquisitor nominated by the Holy Office to take information against Samuel Simon, who is accused of Judaism. You live with him, and of consequence are witness to the greatest part of his behaviour. I believe it is unnecessary to advertise you of the obligation you are under to declare all that you know of him, when I order you to do so in the name of the Holy Inquisition.’—‘Signior Licentiate,’ replied the young man, ‘I am very ready to satisfy you on that head, without being commanded in the name of the Holy Office. If

my master was to take me for his text, I am persuaded that he would not spare me; I will therefore deal as plainly with him, and tell you, in the first place, that he is a close hunk, whose true sentiments it is impossible to discover; one who affects all the exteriors of a holy man, but has not one scruple of virtue at bottom. He goes every evening to the house of a little Abigail.’—‘I am glad to hear that,’ said Ambrose, interrupting him; ‘and I see, by what you say, that he is a man of bad morals: but, answer precisely to the questions I am going to ask. I am particularly enjoined to learn what are his sentiments with respect to religion. Tell me, do you eat pork in your house?’—‘I don’t think,’ replied Gaspard, ‘that we have ate of it twice during the whole year that I have lived with him.’—‘Very well,’ resumed master-inquisitor: ‘write, secretary, that pork is never eaten in the house of Samuel Simon. But, to make amends for that,’ continued he, ‘you doubtless eat lamb sometimes.’—‘Yes, sometimes,’ replied the prentice, ‘we have some; for example, last Easter.’—‘A lucky epocha!’ cried the commissary. ‘Write, secretary, that Simon keeps the pass-over. This goes on excellently well! and, methinks we have received good intelligence.’

‘Besides, you must tell me, friend,’ added Lamela, ‘if you have never seen your master care for little children.’—‘A thousand times,’ replied Gaspard; ‘when he sees little boys pass by his shop, if they are at all handsome, he stops and fondles them.’—‘Write,’ Mr. Secretary, said the inquisitor, interrupting him, ‘that Samuel Simon is violently suspected of decoying Christian children into his house, in order to cut their throats. A fine proselyte, indeed!—Oh, ho! Mr. Simon, you shall have to do with the Holy Office, take my word for it! you must not imagine that you will be allowed to make your barbarous sacrifices with impunity.—Courage! zealous Gaspard,’ said he to the prentice; ‘declare all that you know of the matter; and give us to understand, that this false Catholick is more attached than ever to the Jewish customs and ceremonies. Does not

‘not he spend one day of the week in total inaction?’—‘No,’ answered Gaspard, ‘I have not observed that: I only perceive that on some days he shuts himself up in his closet, where he remains a long time.’—‘Ah, ha!’ cried the commissary; ‘he keeps the sabbath, as sure as I am an inquisitor.—Mark, secretary, mark that he religiously observes the fast of the sabbath. — Ah! the abominable wretch! I have only one thing more to ask. Does not he speak also of Jerusalem?’—‘Very often,’ replied the young man; ‘he relates to us the history of the Jews, and in what manner the temple of Jerusalem was destroyed.’—‘Right!’ said Ambrose. ‘Mr. Secretary, let not this piece of intelligence escape you: write, in large characters, that Samuel Simon breathes nothing but the restoration of the temple; and that he meditates night and day the re-establishment of his nation. I do not want to know any more; therefore, it is needless to ask any other questions: what the trusty Gaspard has deposed, is enough to bring a whole synagogue to the stake.’

Mr. Commissary of the Holy Office having interrogated the prentice in this manner, told him he might retire; but ordered him, in the name of the Holy Inquisition, to conceal from his master every tittle of what had passed. Gaspard having promised to obey, took his leave; and we did not tarry long after he went out, but leaving the publick-house as gravely as we had entered, went and knocked at the door of Samuel Simon, who opened it with his own hand; and if he was astonished to see three such figures as we were, he was much more so when Lamela, being spokesman, said to him, with an imperious tone, ‘Mr. Samuel, I command you, in the name of the Holy Inquisition, of which I have the honour to be commissary, to deliver into my hand, this instant, the key of your closet; I want to see if I cannot find something to justify the informations which have been presented to us against you.’

The merchant, confounded at these words, reeled two steps backward, as if he had received a blow on the stomach. Far from suspecting us of any trick, he believed implicitly that some

secret enemy wanted to subject him to the suspicion of the Holy Office; perhaps too, knowing himself to be no good Catholick, he had cause to be afraid of an information. Be that as it will, I never saw a man more disconcerted: he obeyed without resistance, and opened his closet, with all the respect that a man could shew, who is in terror of the inquisition. ‘At least,’ said Ambrose, while he went in, ‘at least, you receive the orders of the Holy Office without contumacy.’ But, added he, ‘retire into another room, and leave me at liberty to perform my function.’ Samuel was as obedient to this order as to the first: he remained in his shop, while we three entered his closet, and began to search for his cash, which we easily found; for it was in an open coffer, and in much greater quantity than we could carry off, consisting of a great number of bags piled upon one another; but the whole in silver. We should have liked gold better; but things being as they were, we were fain to accommodate ourselves to necessity, and fill our pockets with ducats. We stuffed our breeches with them, and crammed them into every other part which we judged proper to conceal them. In short, we were heavy laden, though our cargo did not appear; and this was owing to the address of Ambrose and Don Raphael; who, by their behaviour on this occasion, let me see that there is nothing like one’s being master of his trade.

After having done our business so successfully, we came out of the closet; and, for a reason that the reader will easily guess, Mr. Inquisitor took out his padlock, and fixed it to the door with his own hand; then applying the seal, said to Simon, ‘Mr. Samuel, I forbid you, in the name of the Holy Inquisition, to touch this padlock, as well as the seal, which you are bound to respect, since it is the true seal of the Holy Office. I will return at the same hour to-morrow, in order to take it off, and bring farther orders for you.’ So saying, he made him open the street-door, through which we joyfully passed, one after another. When we had gone about fifty yards, we began to walk with such speed and nimbleness, that we scarce touched the ground, not.

notwithstanding the burdens which we carried. We soon got out of town; and, remounting our horses, pushed towards Segorba, giving thanks to the god Mercury for such an happy event.

CHAP. II.

THE RESOLUTION WHICH DON ALPHONSO AND GIL BLAS FORMED AFTER THIS ADVENTURE.

WE travelled all night according to our laudable custom, and found ourselves, at break of day, near a little village two leagues from Segorba. As we were all fatigued, we willingly quitted the highway, to get among some willows, which we perceived at the bottom of a little hill, ten or twelve hundred paces from the village, in which we did not think proper to stop. We found that the willows yielded an agreeable shade, being watered by a small rivulet; and the place suiting our taste, we resolved to spend the day in it. Alighting, therefore, we unbridled our horses to let them feed, and lay down upon the grass, where we took a little repose. We then emptied our knapsack and leathern bottle, and having made a plentiful breakfast, counted all the money which we had taken from Samuel Simon, and which amounted to three thousand ducats; so that, with this sum, and what we had before, we might have boasted of having a pretty good stock.

As it was necessary for some of us to go and buy provision, Ambrose and Don Raphael having quitted their dress of inquisitor and secretary, said that they would take that charge upon themselves; that the adventure at Xelva had only whetted their appetite; that they longed to be at Segorba, to see if some occasion would not offer of striking a new stroke. 'You have nothing to do,' added the son of Lucinda, 'but wait for us under these willows; we will not tarry, but rejoin you in a very short time.'—'Signior Don Raphael,' cried I, laughing, 'bid us rather wait for you till doomsday; if you leave us now, I believe we need not expect to see you sooner.'—'We are affronted by your suspicion,' replied Signior Ambrose; 'but we deserve it at your hands: your distrust is ex-

cusable, after what we did at Valladolid; and we cannot blame you for thinking that we will make no more scruple of forsaking you, than of abandoning our comrades in that city: but, however, you are mistaken. The confederates from whose company we withdrew, were persons of very bad character, and their society began to grow insupportable. We must do justice to people of our profession, by affirming that there are no associates in civil life less divided by interest than they; but when there is not a conformity of inclinations among them, their good understanding may be broke, as well as that of the rest of mankind. Wherefore, Signior Gil Blas,' added Lamela, 'we beg that you and Don Alphonso will have a little more confidence in us; and let not the desire of Don Raphael and me to go to Segorba, give you the least uneasiness.'

'It is an easy matter,' said the son of Lucinda, 'to rid them of all cause of anxiety: let them remain masters of the cash, and then they will have, in their own hands, good security for our return.—You see, Signior Gil Blas,' added he, 'that we come to the point at once. You shall have pledges in your hands, and I can assure you that Ambrose and I will set out without the least apprehension of your giving us the slip. After such a certain mark of our fidelity, won't you trust entirely to our promise?'—'Yes, gentlemen,' said I; 'and you may now do what you please.' They departed immediately with the leathern bottle and knapsack, leaving me under the willows with Don Alphonso; who, after they were gone, said to me, 'Signior Gil Blas, I must disclose my sentiments to you. I upbraid myself with having had the complaisance to come so far with two sharpers: you cannot imagine how often I have repented of this my conduct. Yesterday, while I took care of the horses, I made a thousand mortifying reflections: I considered that it ill became a young man, who has principles of honour, to live with such wicked wretches as Don Raphael and Lamela; that if unluckily, one day, which may not be far off, a trick should miscarry, by which we shall fall into the hands of justice, I shall be

‘ be shamefully punished with them as
 ‘ a thief, and undergo the most in-
 ‘ famous chastisement. These images
 ‘ incessantly occur to my fancy; and
 ‘ I own I have resolved, that I may no
 ‘ longer be an accomplice of their mis-
 ‘ demeanors, to separate from them
 ‘ for ever. I don’t believe,’ continued
 he, ‘ that you will disapprove of my
 ‘ design.’—‘ No, I’ll assure you,’ an-
 swered I; ‘ though you have seen me
 ‘ act the part of an alguazil, in the
 ‘ comedy of Samuel Simon, don’t ima-
 ‘ gine that these sort of pieces are to
 ‘ my taste. I take Heaven to witness,
 ‘ that while I played such a fine part, I
 ‘ said within myself, “ In faith, Mr.
 “ Gil Blas, if Justice should come now
 “ and seize you by the collar, you
 “ would richly deserve the salary which
 “ she would bestow!” I feel myself,
 ‘ therefore, no more disposed than you,
 ‘ Signior Don Alphonso, to remain
 ‘ longer in such good company; and
 ‘ if you will give me leave, I will ac-
 ‘ company you. When the gentlemen
 ‘ return, we will demand our share of
 ‘ the finances, and to-morrow morn-
 ‘ ing, or this very night, bid them an
 ‘ eternal adieu.’

The beautiful Seraphina’s lover ap-
 proved of my proposal: ‘ Let us,’ said
 he, ‘ get into Valencia, and embark
 ‘ for Italy, where we may engage in
 ‘ the Venetian service. Is it not better
 ‘ to carry arms, than lead this base
 ‘ guilty life? we shall even be in a
 ‘ condition to make a pretty good fi-
 ‘ gure with the money which we have:
 ‘ not that I can use such ill-gotten
 ‘ wealth without remorse; but, be-
 ‘ sides that I am compelled by neces-
 ‘ sity, if ever I make the least fortune
 ‘ in war, I swear that I will indem-
 ‘ nify Samuel Simon.’ I assured Don
 Alphonso that I entertained the same
 sentiments; and, in short, we resolved
 to leave our comrades next morning
 before day. We had not the least
 temptation to profit by their absence,
 that is, to decamp immediately with
 the cash: the confidence they had
 shewn, in leaving us masters of the
 money, did not permit us to harbour
 such a thought.

Ambrosé and Don Raphael returned
 from Segorba in the evening; and the
 first thing they told us was, that their
 journey had been prosperous; that they
 had laid the foundation of a stratagem,

which in all likelihood would be more
 advantageous than the last. Accord-
 ingly the son of Lucinda was going to
 inform us of the particulars, when
 Don Alphonso declared his resolution
 to leave them; and let them know that
 I had the same intention. They used
 all their endeavours, in vain, to en-
 gage us to accompany them in their
 expedition; for we took leave of them
 next day, after having made an equal
 partition of the money, and proceeded
 on our way to Valencia.

CHAP. III.

AFTER WHAT DISAGREEABLE IN-
 CIDENT DON ALPHONSO FOUND
 HIS WISHES FULFILLED; ANDEY
 WHAT ADVENTURE GIL BLAS,
 OF A SUDDEN, SAW HIMSELF IN
 A HAPPY SITUATION.

WE pushed forward chearfully,
 as far as Bunol; where, un-
 fortunately being obliged to halt, Don
 Alphonso fell sick of a high fever, with
 violent paroxysms, which made me
 afraid of his life. Luckily there was
 no physician in the place, and I was
 quit for my fear: he was out of danger
 at the end of three days, and my care
 helped to re-establish his health. He
 shewed himself very sensible of what I
 had done for him; and as we felt a re-
 ciprocal kindness for one another, we
 swore an eternal friendship.

We betook ourselves again to the
 road, still resolved, when we should
 arrive at Valencia, to take the first op-
 portunity of a passage into Italy: but
 Heaven disposed of us otherwise. See-
 ing a number of peasants, of both sexes,
 dancing in a circle, and making merry,
 before the gate of a fine castle, we ap-
 proached to behold their mirth; and
 Don Alphonso expected nothing less
 than the surprize with which he was
 seized all of a sudden. He perceiv-
 ed the Baron de Steinbach; who no
 sooner knew him again, than he ran
 to him with open arms, saying, in a
 transport of joy, ‘ Ah, Don Alphon-
 ‘ so! is it you! what an agreeable
 ‘ rencounter is this! While enquiry is
 ‘ made after you all over the kingdom,
 ‘ chance presents you to my view.’

My companion, alighting immedi-
 ately, ran and embraced the baron,
 whose

whose joy seemed immoderate. 'Come, my son,' said the good old man to him; 'you will now know who you are, and enjoy the most perfect happiness.' So saying, he carried him into the castle, which I likewise entered along with them; for while they embraced one another, I had alighted, and tied our horses to a tree. The master of the castle was the first person whom we met. He was a man about fifty years of age, and of a very engaging aspect: 'Signior,' said the Baron de Steinbach, presenting Don Alphonso to him; 'behold your son!' At these words, Don Cæsar de Leyva (so was the master of the castle called) threw his arms about Don Alphonso's neck, and weeping with joy, 'My dear son,' said he, 'you see in me the author of your being; if I have let you remain so long in ignorance of your birth, believe me, I did in that a cruel violence to myself: I have a thousand times sighed with sorrow; but I could not do otherwise. I married your mother through inclination, though she was of a birth inferior to mine, and lived under the authority of a harsh father, who reduced me to the necessity of keeping secret a marriage contracted without his consent. The Baron de Steinbach alone was in my confidence, and it was in concert with me that he brought you up. In short, my father is no more, and I am now at liberty to declare you my sole heir. This is not all,' added he; 'you shall be married to a young lady, whose nobility equals mine.'—'Signior,' cried Don Alphonso, interrupting him, 'do not make me pay too dear for the happiness which you bestow. Cannot I know that I have the honour of being your son, without learning at the same time that you want to make me unhappy? Ah, Sir! be not more cruel than your own father; who, though he did not approve of your passion, was not so severe as to force you to marry.'—'Son,' replied Don Cæsar, 'I don't intend to tyrannize over your affections; but be so complaisant as to see the lady whom I destine for your bed; this is all I exact of your obedience. Though she is a charming creature, and a very advantage-

ous match for you, I promise not to constrain you to make her your wife. She is now in the castle; follow me, and you will own that there never was a more amiable object.' So saying, he conducted Don Alphonso into an apartment, whither I attended them, with the Baron de Steinbach.

There was the Count de Polan, with his two daughters, Seraphina and Julia, and Don Ferdinand, his son-in-law, who was nephew to Don Cæsar; there were other ladies and gentlemen present also. Don Ferdinand, as was already observed, had carried off Julia; and it was on the occasion of the marriage of these two lovers that the peasants of the neighbourhood were assembled to make merry. As soon as Don Alphonso appeared, and his father had presented him to the company, the Count de Polan got up, and, running to embrace him, said, 'Welcome, my deliverer! Don Alphonso,' added he, 'observe the power that virtue has on generous minds: if you killed my son, you have also saved my life. I sacrifice my resentment to you, and give you that Seraphina whose honour you have preserved. In this manner I acquit myself of my obligation.' The son of Don Cæsar did not fail to testify to the Count de Polan how much he was affected with his generosity; and I do not know whether he felt more joy in discovering his birth, or in learning that he was to be Seraphina's husband. In effect, that marriage was celebrated in a few days after, to the infinite satisfaction of the parties concerned.

As I was also one of the count's deliverers, that nobleman, who knew me again, assured me, he would take upon himself the care of making my fortune; but I thanked him for his generosity, and would not leave Don Alphonso, who made me steward of his house, and honoured me with his confidence. Scarce was he married, when the trick which had been played upon Samuel Simon lying on his conscience, he sent me to that merchant, with all the money which had been stolen from him. I went accordingly to make restitution; and began the business of a steward by doing that which ought to be the end of it.



ADVENTURES

GIL BLAS

SANTILLANA

VOLUME THE THIRD.

BOOK VII.

CHAP. I.

THE AMOURS OF GIL BLAS AND DAME LORENÇA SEPHERA.

IWent accordingly to Xelva, to make restitution of the three thousand ducats which we had stole from Samuel Simon; and will freely own, I was tempted on the road to convert the money to my own use, in order to begin my stewardship under happy auspices. This I might have done with impunity; for, had I travelled five or six days, and then returned, as if I had acquitted myself of my commission, Don Alphonso and his father would never have suspected my fidelity. I did not yield, however, to the temptation, but surmounted it like a lad of honour; a victory not a little commendable in a young fellow who had associated with great cheats. There are a great many who, though acquainted with honest people only, are not so scrupulous; those especially who are intrusted with sums which they may

keep without interesting their reputation.

Having made restitution to the merchant, who expected nothing less, I returned to the castle of Leyva, which the Count de Polan having left, had set out again for Toledo, with Jotta and Don Fernand. I found my new master more captivated than ever with Seraphina; his Seraphina enchanted by him; and Don Cesar charmed with the possession of them both. I endeavoured to gain the friendship of that tender father, and succeeded: I became steward of the family, regulated every thing in it, received money from the farmers, disbursed for the expenses of house-keeping, and had a despotick power over all the servants. But, contrary to the usual practice of stewards, I did not abuse my power. I did not turn away those domesticks who displeased me, nor expected that the rest should be entirely devoted to my will: if they addressed themselves directly to Don Cesar or his son, when they wanted any favour, far from thwarting their interest, I always spoke in their behalf; besides, the marks of affection which I every moment received

for my masters, inspired me with zeal for their service; and I had nothing but their interest in view. There was no legerdemain in my administration: and I was such a steward as is not every day to be met with. While I enjoyed the happiness of my condition, Love, as if he had been jealous of what Fortune had done for me, had a mind that I should owe some favours to him also; and produced in the heart of Dame Lorença Sephora, chief waiting-woman to Seraphina, a violent inclination for master steward. My conquest (to relate things like a faithful historian) glanced upon her fiftieth year; but a lively look, an agreeable countenance, and two fine eyes, which she knew how to use to the best advantage, might be said to make her still pass for the object of an intrigue. I could have wished only for a few roses in her complexion, for she was extremely pale; a circumstance which I did not fail to attribute to the austerity of celibacy.

The lady practised upon me a long time by looks, in which her passion was painted; but instead of answering her glances, I at first seemed not to perceive her design; by which behaviour I appeared to her as a novice in gallantry, a discovery that she did not dislike. Imagining, therefore, that she ought no longer to confine herself to the language of the eyes, with a young man whom she believed less knowing than he was, during the very first conversation we had together, she declared her sentiments in form, that I might not be ignorant of them for the future. This she performed like one who had been at school. She feigned to be disconcerted while she spoke to me; and, after having freely expressed all that she had to say, hid her face, to make me believe she was ashamed of letting me see her weakness. There was no resisting; and, though I was determined more by vanity than inclination, I shewed myself very sensible of her affection: I even affected to be urgent; and acted the passionate lover so well, that I attracted her reproaches. Lorença reproved me, but with so much gentleness, that while she recommended moderation to me, she seemed not at all sorry at my want of it. I should have pushed things still farther, if the beloved object had not been afraid of giving me a bad opinion

of her virtue, by granting me a victory too cheap. We therefore parted till another occasion: Sephora, persuaded that her false resistance made me look upon her as a vestal; and I, elevated with the sweet hope of bringing the adventure soon to a conclusion.

My affairs were in this situation, when one of Don Caesar's lacquies told me a piece of news which moderated my joy. This young fellow was one of those curious domesticks, who make it their business to discover what passes in the family. As he was very assiduous in paying his court to me, and regaled me every day with something new, he came one morning, and told me, that he had made a pleasant discovery, which he would communicate to me on condition that I should keep it secret; because it regarded Dame Lorença Sephora, whose resentment (he said) he was afraid of incurring. I was too eager to hear what he had to say, not to promise secrecy; but, without seeming to be the least concerned, I asked him, with all the indifference I could affect, what the discovery was with which he intended to entertain me. 'Lorença,' said he, 'every evening privately admits into her apartment the surgeon of the village, a very stout young fellow; and the rogue always remains with her a considerable time. I am willing to believe,' added he, with a satirical smile, 'that this behaviour may be very innocent; but you must allow, that a young man who slips so mysteriously into a maid's chamber gives a handle to scandal to be very free with her character.'

Although this report gave me as much pain as if I had been actually in love, I took care to conceal my vexation; I even constrained myself so much as to laugh at the news that pierced me to the very soul. But I indemnified myself for that constraint as soon as I saw myself alone. I cursed, I swore, and mused upon the resolution I should take. Sometimes, despising Lorença, I proposed to abandon her, without even deigning to come to an explanation with the coquette; and sometimes, imagining that I was bound in honour to banish the surgeon from the house, I formed the design of challenging him to single combat: this last resolution prevailed. I lay in ambush towards the



206A



the evening; and, sure enough, perceived my man enter with a mysterious air into the apartment of my duenna. This was necessary to support my fury. I went out of the castle, and posted myself on the road by which the gallant must return: here I waited for him without flinching, and every moment the desire of fighting with him increased. At length my enemy appeared, and I went forward some yards like a Drawcanfir; but I do not know how the devil it happened, I found myself all of a sudden seized, like one of Homer's heroes, with an emotion of fear that arrested my steps; and I stood as much confounded as Paris, when he presented himself to fight Menelaus. I began to consider my man, who seemed strong and vigorous; and his sword appeared to be of an excessive length. All this had it's effect upon me; nevertheless, out of a point of honour, or otherwise, though I saw the danger with magnifying eyes; and, in spite of nature, which made obstinate efforts to make me desist, I had the boldness to advance towards the surgeon, and unsheath my rapier.

Surprized at my action, he cried, 'What is the matter, Mr. Gil Blas? what is the meaning of these demonstrations? You are pleased to be merry, I suppose?'—'No, Mr. Barber,' I replied, 'you are mistaken; I am in a very serious humour, and want to know whether or not you are as brave as gallant. You must not expect that I will let you possess in tranquillity the favours of the lady whom you visit at the castle.'—'By St. Come!' said the surgeon, bursting into a loud laugh, 'here is a pleasant adventure. Egad! appearances are very deceitful.' From these words, imagining that he was as little inclined to fight as I, I became more insolent, and said, 'Friend, that won't pass; don't think that I will be satisfied with a simple denial.'—'I see, then,' answered he, 'that I shall be obliged to speak, in order to prevent the mischief which might happen to you or me; and I must reveal a secret, although people of our profession cannot be too discreet. If Dame Lorença admits me by stealth into her apartment, it is with a view of

'concealing her distemper from the servants: she has an inveterate cancer in her back, which I dress every evening. This is the cause of the visits which alarm you; so that you may henceforth keep your heart at ease. Though,' added he, 'if you are not satisfied with this declaration, but absolutely bent upon coming to points, speak the word; I am your man.' So saying, he drew his long rapier, which made me shiver; and put himself upon his guard, 'Enough,' said I to him, sheathing my sword; 'I am not a brute, to refuse to hear reason: after what you have told me, you are no longer my enemy; let us embrace.'

At this discourse, which shewed him that I was not such a devil as I at first appeared to be, he laughed, put up his rapier, gave me his hand; and, in short, we parted the best friends in the world.

From that moment, Séphora presented nothing but disagreeable ideas to my imagination: I avoided every opportunity she gave me of conversing with her in private; and that with such care and affectation, that she perceived my disgust. Astonished at such a change, she resolved to know the cause; and at length, finding an occasion to speak with me apart, 'Mr. Steward!' said she, 'pray tell me why you avoid the sight of me? It is true, I made some advances, but you made suitable returns. Recollect, if you please, the private conversation we had together: you was then all fire, but now you are all ice. What is the meaning of all this?' This was a very delicate question for a plain man; consequently, it embarrassed me not a little. I do not remember the answer which I made; but it displeased very much, and that was enough. Séphora, though, by her sweet modest air, one would have taken her for a lamb, was a very tygres when her wrath prevailed. 'I thought,' said she, darting at me a look full of spite and rage, 'that I did a great deal of honour to a little fellow like you, in discovering to him those sentiments which noble cavaliers would have gloried in exciting: but I am justly punished for having unworthily abased them to a wretch-

* St. Come, was a physician and martyr; therefore properly invoked by the surgeon.

‘ed adventurer.’ Had she stopped here, I should have thought myself cheaply quit. Her tongue, obedient to her fury, honoured me with an hundred epithets, every one more bitter than another. I ought to have heard them in cool blood, and reflected, that in disdaining the triumph of her virtue, which I had attempted, I committed a crime that no woman can forgive. But I was too passionate to bear reproaches, at which a sensible man, in my place, would have laughed; and my patience forsaking me, ‘Madam,’ said I, ‘we ought not to despise any body: if those noble cavaliers of whom you speak, had seen your back, I am sure their curiosity would have proceeded no farther.’ I had no sooner uttered this repartee, than the furious duenna gave me the rudest box on the ear that ever an affronted woman bestowed. I did not wait for a second; but, by a speedy flight, avoided a shower of blows, that would certainly have fallen upon my carcase.

I thanked Heaven, when I found myself extricated out of this troublesome affair; and imagined I had nothing more to fear, since the lady had revenged herself. I thought that, for her own honour, she would never mention the adventure; and, indeed, fifteen days elapsed before I heard any thing of the matter. I myself began to forget it, when I understood that Sephora was ill. I was humane enough to be afflicted at the news: I pitied the lady; and believing, that not being able to overcome a passion so ill requited, she had fallen a victim to her unhappy love, I reflected with sorrow that I was the cause of her indisposition, and at least lamented the duenna, if I could not love her. How much was I mistaken in my opinion! her tenderness changed into hate; and, at that time, her whole study was to do me mischief.

One morning, being alone with Don Alphonso, and observing that young gentleman pensive and sad, I begged, in a respectful manner, to know the cause. ‘I am chagrined,’ said he, ‘to find Seraphina weak, ungrateful, and unjust. You are astonished at this information,’ added he, perceiving that I listened with surprize; ‘and yet nothing is more true. I don’t know what cause you may have given Dame Lorença to hate you; but you are

‘assuredly become so odious to her, that if you don’t leave the castle with the utmost dispatch, her death, she says, will be inevitable. You ought not to doubt that Seraphina, who has a regard for you, at first revolted against a hate which she could not gratify without injustice and ingratitude. But in short, she is a woman: she has a tender affection for Sephora, who brought her up; and that governante is a sort of mother to her, whose death she would reproach herself with, if she was not weak enough to satisfy this her desire: as for my part, notwithstanding the love that attaches me to Seraphina, I shall never have the base complaisance to adhere to her sentiments on this subject. Perish all the duennas in Spain, before I consent to the removal of a young man whom I consider more as a brother than a domestick!’

Alphonso having spoke thus, I said to him, ‘Signior, I am born to be the sport of Fortune! I thought she would have ceased to persecute me in your house, where every thing flattered me with quiet and happy days; but how agreeable soever my situation may be, I find I must give it up.’—‘Not at all!’ cried the generous son of Don Caesar; ‘leave me to make Seraphina hear reason; it shall never be said, that you have been sacrificed to the caprice of a duenna, to whom too much deference has been paid in other respects.’

‘Sir,’ said I, ‘you will only provoke Seraphina, in resisting her will. I had much rather retire, than, by a longer stay in this place, run the risque of breeding any division between such a happy pair: that would be a misfortune for which I should never be consoled.’

Don Alphonso forbade me to take any such resolution; and I saw him so fixed in the design of supporting me, that Lorença would undoubtedly have met with a rebuff, if I had been minded to oppose her. At certain times, being piqued against the duenna, I was tempted to expose her; but when I came to consider, that in revealing her shame, I should stab the heart of a poor creature whose indisposition I was the occasion of; and that two incurable distempers visibly conducted her

to the grave, my resentment was changed into compassion; and I concluded, that since I was such a dangerous mortal, I ought in conscience to re-establish, by my retreat, the tranquillity of the castle. This resolution I executed the very next morning before day, without bidding adieu to my two masters; left, through friendship for me, they should oppose my departure. I contented myself with leaving in my chamber a writing, wherein was contained an exact account of my administration.

CHAP. II.

THE FATE OF GIL BLAS, AFTER HE QUITTED THE CASTLE OF LEYVA, AND THE HAPPY CONSEQUENCE THAT ATTENDED THE BAD SUCCESS OF HIS AMOURS.

I Was mounted on a good horse of my own, with two hundred pistoles in my portmanteau, the best part of which I had got by the banditti whom we slew, and the share of the three thousand ducats which had been stolen from Samuel Simon; for Don Alphonso, without making me restore what I had fingered, had made restitution of the whole sum out of his own pocket. Wherefore, considering my effects as wealth become lawful, I enjoyed it without scruple. I was in possession of a fund, therefore, which did not allow me to be much concerned for the future, over and above the confidence which one of my age always has in his own merit: besides, Toledo presented an agreeable asylum; for I did not at all doubt that the Count de Polan would be pleased with an opportunity of obliging one of his deliverers with a kind reception, and an apartment in his house. But this nobleman I looked upon as my last resource; and resolved, before I should apply to him, to spend part of my money in travelling through the kingdom of Murcia and Grenada, which I longed particularly to see. With this design I set out for Almanza, whence continuing my journey, I went from city to city, as far as Grenada*, without

meeting with any bad accident. Fortune, satisfied with having played me so many tricks, seemed willing at length to leave me in quiet: but for all that, she was then hatching a great many more, as will be seen in the sequel. One of the first persons I met in the streets of Grenada, was Signior Don Fernando de Leyva, who was, as well as Don Alphonso, son-in-law to the Count de Polan. We were equally surprized at seeing one another in that place. 'Gil Blas!' cried he, 'how came you to be in this city? What business brings you hither?'—'Signior,' said I, 'if you are astonished to see me in this country, you will be much more so when you hear the cause of my quitting the service of Signior Don Cesar and his son.' Then I recounted all that had passed between Sephora and me, without the least disguise. He laughed heartily at the adventure; then growing serious again, 'Friend,' said he, 'I offer you my mediation in this affair, and will write to my sister-in-law.'—'By no means, Signior,' said I, interrupting him; 'pray don't write; for I did not leave the castle of Leyva with any intention to return. Make, if you please, another use of the regard you have for me; and if any one of your friends has occasion for a secretary or steward, I beg you will speak to him in my favour. I dare assure you, that you shall have no cause to repent of your recommendation.'—'With all my heart,' he replied; 'I will do what you desire: I am come to Grenada to visit an old aunt who is sick, and I shall stay here three weeks longer; at the end of which, I shall set out on my return to my castle at Lorqui, where I have left Julia. I lodge here,' added he, shewing me a house about an hundred yards from us; 'come and call for me some hours hence; by which time, perhaps, I shall have discovered some suitable post for you.'

And, indeed, at our very next meeting, he said, 'The Archbishop of Grenada, my kinsman and friend, wants a young man of letters, possessed of a good hand, to make fair copies of his writings: for he is a great author, has composed a vast number of

* Grenada, the capital of the kingdom that bears the same name.

† homilies,

‘homilies, and studies more every day, which he pronounces with applause. As I believe you are such an one as he wants, I proposed you to him; and he has promised to take you into his service. Go and present yourself to him, in my name; and you may judge, by the reception which you shall receive, whether or not I have spoke in your behalf.’

This was such a place as I desired: wherefore, having dressed to the best advantage, in order to appear before that prelate, I repaired one morning to the archbishop’s palace. Here, was I to imitate the authors of romance, I should give a pompous description of this episcopal palace of Grenada: I would enlarge upon the structure of the building, extol the richness of the furniture, describe the statues and pictures, and not spare the readers the least tittle of the stories they represented: but I shall content myself with observing, that it equalled the royal palace in magnificence.

I found in the apartments a crowd of ecclesiasticks, and gentlemen of the sword, the greatest part whereof were the officers of his grace; his almoners, his gentlemen, his ushers, and valets de chambre. The laity were, almost all, so superbly dressed, that one would have taken them for noblemen rather than domesticks, by their haughty looks, and affectation of being men of consequence. While I beheld them, I could not help laughing, and ridiculing them within myself. ‘Egad!’ said I, ‘these people are very happy in bearing the yoke of servitude, without feeling it; for, in short, if they felt it, I imagine that their behaviour would be less assuming.’ Addressing myself to a grave jolly personage that stood at the door of the archbishop’s closet, in order to open and shut it when there was occasion, I asked civilly if I could not speak with his grace. ‘Wait,’ said he, dryly, ‘till his grace comes out to go to mass, and he will give you a moment’s audience in passing.’ I armed myself with patience, and endeavoured to enter into conversation with some of the officers; but they began to examine me from head to foot, without deigning to speak one syllable; and then looked at one another, smiling, with disdain, at the liberty which I had

taken to mingle in their discourse. I was, I own, quite disconcerted at seeing myself treated in this manner by valets; and had scarce recollected myself from the confusion in which I was, when the closet-door opened, and the archbishop appeared.

Immediately a profound silence prevailed among his officers; who, all of a sudden, laid aside their insolent carriage, and assumed a respectful look in presence of their master. This prelate was in his sixty and ninth year, pretty much of the make of my uncle Canon Gil Perez; that is, plump and short: he was very much bandy-legged into the bargain, and so bald, that he had only a small tuft of hair remaining on the back part of his head; for which reason, he was obliged to cover his head in a fine woollen cap with long ears. In spite of all that, I observed in him the air of a man of quality; doubtless, because I knew him to be one. We common people look upon all your great noblemen with a prepossession that often gives them the air of greatness which nature has refused.

The archbishop immediately advancing towards me, asked me what I wanted, with a voice full of sweetness: and I told him that I was the young man of whom Don Fernando de Leyva had spoke to him. He gave me no time to proceed; but cried, ‘O! you are the person, then, of whom he spoke so handsomely. I retain you in my service; you are a valuable acquisition. You may stay where you are.’ So saying, he went out, supported by two ushers; after having heard some clergymen, who had something to communicate. Scarce was he out of the room, when the same officers who disdained my conversation, courted it. They surrounded me, and with the utmost complaisance expressed their joy at seeing me become a comensal officer of the palace. Having heard what their master said to me, they had a longing desire to know on what footing I was retained; but I was so malicious as to baulk their curiosity, in revenge for their contempt.

His grace, returning in a little time, made me follow him into his closet, that he might talk with me in private. I concluded that his design in so doing was to try my understanding; and accordingly, kept myself on my guard, and

and was resolved to weigh every word before I should speak it. He first of all examined me on what is called humanity; and I did not answer amiss: he had occasion to see, that I was pretty well acquainted with the Greek and Latin authors. He then put me upon logick, where I expected him, and found me quite master of that subject. 'Your education,' said he to me, with some surprize, 'has not been neglected: let us now see your handwriting.' I thereupon took out of my pocket a sheet, which I had brought for the purpose; and the prelate seemed very well pleased with my performance. 'I am satisfied with your hand,' cried he, 'and still more with your understanding. I shall thank my nephew Don Fernando for having given me such an able young man, whom I look upon as a real present.'

Being interrupted by the arrival of some noblemen of Grenada, who came to dine with the archbishop, I left them together, and withdrew among the officers, who were quite profuse in their complaisance to me. I went to dinner at the usual time; and if they observed me at table, I did not fail to examine them also. What sagacity there is in the exteriors of churchmen! To me they appeared all saints; so much was my mind over-awed by the place where I was; and I did not so much as suspect that there could be any false coin in the case: as if no such thing was ever seen among the princes of the church!

Being seated by an old valet de chambre, whose name was Melchior de la Ronda, he took great care to help me to the choice bits; and this attention, which he expressed for me, inspiring me with a respect for him, he was charmed with my polite behaviour. 'Signior Cavalier,' said he softly to me, after dinner, 'I want to have some private conversation with you.' At the same time he carried me to a part of the palace, where nobody could overhear us; and there talked to me in this manner. 'Son, from the very first moment in which I saw you, I felt an inclination for you; of this I will give you a certain proof, by imparting something which may be of great advantage to you. You are here in a family, where true and false devotees live pell-mell; so that it will

'be an infinite time before you can, of yourself, be acquainted with the ground. But I will spare you such a tedious and disagreeable study, by discovering the characters of both; after which you may the more easily conduct yourself.'

'I will begin,' added he, 'with his grace, who is a very pious prelate, incessantly employed in edifying and reforming the people, by sermons of his own composition, full of excellent morals. He quitted the court above twenty years ago, in order to devote himself entirely to his zeal for his flock. He is a learned man, and a great orator, whose sole pleasure consists in preaching, and his hearers are ravished with admiration. Perhaps there is a little vanity in the case; but besides that it does not belong to man to penetrate the heart, it would be ungrateful in me to enquire into the faults of a person whose bread I eat. If I was permitted to disapprove of any thing in my master, I would blame his severity. Instead of making an allowance for ecclesiastical foibles, he punishes them with too much rigour: in particular, he prosecutes, without mercy, those who, relying on their innocence, attempt to justify themselves in a legal manner, in contempt of his authority. I observe another fault which is common to him with a great many people of quality: although he loves his domesticks, he makes no consideration for their services; but lets them grow old, without ever thinking of procuring for them some small settlement. If he gives them some gratifications sometimes, they owe them solely to the goodness of somebody who has spoken in their behalf; for it would never come into his head to provide for them otherwise.'

'This is what the old valet de chambre told me of his master; and he afterwards communicated his thoughts of the clergymen with whom he had dined; pictures which but ill agreed with their external deportment. Indeed he did not represent them as dishonest men, but only as bad priests; excepting some, however, whose virtue he very much extolled. I was no longer at a loss how to regulate my features among those gentlemen: that

very evening, at supper, I, like them, assumed a sage aspect—a task that costs nothing; so that we must not wonder that there are so many hypocrites in the world.

CH A P. III.

GIL BLAS BECOMES THE FAVOURITE OF THE ARCHBISHOP, AND THE CANAL OF HIS BOUNTY.

I Had been in the afternoon to fetch my baggage and horse from the inn where I had lodged; after which I returned to supper at the palace, where I found a very handsome chamber and a down bed prepared for me. His grace ordered me to be called early next morning, and gave me a homily to transcribe, enjoining me to copy it with all possible exactness. This I performed minutely, without having forgot either accent, point, or comma; so that the joy he expressed was mingled with surprize. ‘Good Heaven!’ cried he in a transport, when he had surveyed all the sheets of my copy, ‘was ever any thing seen so correct! You transcribe so well that you must certainly understand grammar. Tell me, ingenuously, my friend, have you found nothing that shocked you in writing it over? some neglect, perhaps, in style, or improper term?’—‘O, Sir,’ answered I, with an air of modesty, ‘I am not learned enough to make critical observations; and if I was, I am persuaded that the works of your grace would escape my censure.’ The prelate smiled at my reply; and, though he said nothing, discovered, through all his piety, that he was a downright author.

By this kind of flattery I entirely gained his good graces; became more and more dear to him every day; and at length understood from Don Fernando, who visited him very often, that I was so much beloved, I might look upon my fortune as already made. This my master himself confirmed to me a little time after, on the following occasion. One evening he repeated in his closet, when I was present, with great enthusiasm, an homily which he intended to pronounce the next day in the cathedral; and, not satisfied with asking my opinion of it in general,

obliged me to single out the particular passages which I most admired. I had the good luck to mention those that he himself looked upon to be the best, his own favourite morceaus; by which means I passed, in his judgment, for a man who had a delicate knowledge of the true beauties of a work. ‘This is,’ cried he, ‘what is called, having taste and sentiment: well, friend, I assure you, thou hast not got Boeotian ears.’ In a word, he was so well satisfied with me, that he pronounced with some vivacity, ‘Gil Blas, henceforth give thyself no uneasiness about thy fortune; I undertake to make it extremely agreeable: I love thee; and, as a proof of my affection, make thee my confidant.’

I no sooner heard these words, than I fell at his grace’s feet, quite penetrated with gratitude: I heartily embraced his bandy legs, and looked upon myself as a man on the highway to wealth and opulence. ‘Yes, my child,’ resumed the archbishop, whose discourse had been interrupted by my prostration; ‘thou shalt be the repository of my most secret thoughts. Listen with attention to what I am going to say: my chief pleasure consists in preaching; the Lord gives a blessing to my homilies; they touch the hearts of sinners, make them seriously reflect on their conduct, and have recourse to repentance. I have sometimes the satisfaction to see a miser, terrified by the images which I represent to his avarice, open his treasures, and squander them with a prodigal hand. I have also tore, as it were, the epicurean from his pleasures; filled hermitages with the sons of ambition, and confirmed in her duty the wife who has been shaken by the allurements of a seducing lover. These conversions, which are frequent, ought themselves to excite my study: nevertheless, I will confess my weakness, I propose to myself another reward, a reward which the delicacy of my virtue reproaches me with in vain! I mean, the esteem that the world shews for fine polished writing. The honour of being reckoned a perfect orator has charmed my imagination: my performances are thought equally nervous and delicate; but I would, of all things, avoid the fault of good authors,

‘authors, who write too long, and retire without forfeiting the least tittle of my reputation. Wherefore, my dear Gil Blas,’ continued the prelate, ‘one thing that I exact of thy zeal is, whenever thou shalt perceive my pen smack of old age, and my genius flag, don’t fail to advertise me of it: for I don’t trust to my own judgment, which may be seduced by self-love. That observation must proceed from a disinterested understanding; and I make choice of thine, which I know is good, resolved to stand to thy decision.’—‘Thank Heaven, Sir,’ said I, ‘that period is far off: besides, a genius like that of your grace will preserve it’s vigour much better than any other; or, to speak more justly, will be always the same. I look upon you as another Cardinal Ximenes, whose superior genius, instead of being weakened by age, seemed to receive new strength from it.’—‘No flattery, friend,’ said he, interrupting me; ‘I know I am liable to sink all at once: people at my age begin to feel infirmities; and the infirmities of the body often affect the understanding. I repeat it to thee again, Gil Blas; as soon as thou shalt judge mine in the least impaired, be sure to give me notice; and be not afraid of speaking freely and sincerely, for I shall receive thy advice as a mark of thy affection. Besides, thy interest is concerned; if, unhappily for thee, it should come to my ears that the publick says my discourses have no longer their wonted force, and that it is high time for me to repose myself, I frankly declare, that thou shalt lose my friendship, as well as the fortune I have promised. Such will be the fruit of thy foolish reserve.’

Here my patron left off speaking, in order to hear my reply; which was, a promise to behave according to his desire. From that moment he concealed nothing from me, I became his favourite; an event which none of his domesticks, except Melchior de la Ronda, could perceive without envy. It was a diverting scene, to behold the manner in which the gentlemen and squires then lived with the confidant of his grace: they were not ashamed to be guilty of grovelling meannesses, in order to captivate my good will. I could

scarce believe they were Spaniards; though I did them good offices, without being the dupe of their selfish complaisance. His grace the archbishop, at my request, exerted himself in their favour: to one he procured a company, and put him in a condition to make a figure in the army; another he sent to Mexico, to take possession of a considerable post which he had obtained for him; and my friend Melchior, through my means, enjoyed a handsome gratification. This condescension convinced me, that though the prelate did not anticipate people’s desires, he rarely refused any favour that was asked.

But what I did for a certain priest deserves, in my opinion, to be told: one day, a licentiate, whose name was Lewis Garcia, a young man of a very good appearance, was presented to me by our steward; who said, ‘Signior Gil Blas, this honest clergyman is one of my best friends; he was chaplain of a nunnery; and his virtue has not escaped scandal: some people have done him ill offices with his grace, who has suspended him, and is unhappily so much prejudiced against him, that he will listen to no solicitation in his behalf. We have employed, to no purpose, all the persons of rank in Grenada, to beg that he may be re-established; but our master is quite inflexible.’

‘Gentlemen,’ said I, ‘you have gone the wrong way to work; it would have been better for Mr. Licentiate if no solicitation had been made; for, in their endeavours to serve him, they have done him a manifest injury. I am well acquainted with his grace; entreaties and recommendations serve only to aggravate, in his opinion, the fault of an ecclesiastick. It was but t’other day I heard him say to himself, “The more people a priest, who has been guilty of irregularity, engages to speak to me in his behalf, the more is the scandal augmented, and the more severity do I exercise.”—That is unfortunate,’ replied the steward; ‘and my friend would be very much embarrassed, if he was not blessed with a good hand: happily for him, he writes to admiration; and, by the help of that talent, keeps himself out of difficulties.’ I was curious to see if this writing, so much

extolled, was much better than my own: and the licentiate, who had a specimen in his pocket, shewed me a page that I admired very much; for it looked like a writing-master's copy. While I considered this beautiful performance, a thought coming into my head, I desired Garcias to leave the paper, telling him that I might possibly make some use of it that would turn out to his advantage; that I could not explain myself at that time, but would next day tell him more of the matter. The licentiate, to whom, in all probability, the steward had made an eulogium of my genius, withdrew, as much satisfied as if he had been already re-instated in his office. I was truly desirous that he might be so; and that same day laboured for him in the following manner. Being alone with the archbishop, I shewed him the writing of Garcias, with which my patron seemed quite charmed: then laying hold of the opportunity, 'Sir,' said I to him, 'since you won't cause your homilies to be printed, I wish they were at least written in this hand.'—'I am satisfied with thine,' answered the prelate; 'but I own, I should not be sorry to have a copy of my works in that hand.'—'Your grace,' I replied, 'has nothing to do but to speak: the man who paints so well is a licentiate of my acquaintance, who will be ravished to do that service for you; the more, because by these means he may interest your goodness, in extricating him from the melancholy situation in which he has the misfortune to be at present.'

The prelate did not fail to ask the name of the licentiate: upon which I said, 'He is called Lewis Garcias, and is in despair on account of having incurred your displeasure.'—'That Garcias,' said he, interrupting me, 'was, if I am not mistaken, chaplain to a convent of nuns, and lies under the censure of the church: I remember some informations that I received against him; his morals are but indifferent.'—'Sir,' said I, interrupting him in my turn, 'I will not undertake to justify him; but I know he has enemies; and pretends, that the authors of those informations which you have seen, were more bent upon doing him ill offices, than on telling the truth.'—'That may

be,' replied the archbishop; 'there are abundance of very dangerous dispositions in this world. Besides, granting that his conduct has not been always irreproachable, he may have repented of his misbehaviour; and, in short, there is mercy for every transgression. Bring the licentiate hither; I take off his suspension.'

Thus it is, that the most severe men abate of their severity, when more dear self-interest is concerned. The archbishop granted, without difficulty, to the vain pleasure of having his works well writ, that which he had refused to the most powerful solicitations. I carried the news immediately to the steward, who imparted them to his friend Garcias, who the very next day, coming to make an acknowledgment of thanks suitable to the favour obtained, I presented him to my master, who contented himself with reprimanding him slightly, and gave him the homilies to transcribe. Garcias acquitted himself so well, that he was re-established in his ministry, and even obtained the living of Gabia, a large market-town in the neighbourhood of Grenada.

CHAP. IV.

THE ARCHBISHOP IS SEIZED WITH A FIT OF THE APOPLEXY. THE DILEMMA IN WHICH GIL BLAS FOUND HIMSELF, AND THE METHOD HE TOOK TO BE EXTRICATED.

WHILE I thus bestowed my services on different people, Don Fernando being about to leave Grenada, I visited that nobleman before his departure, in order to thank him anew for the excellent post which he had procured for me. I appeared to him so well satisfied with my condition, that he said, 'My dear Gil Blas, I am ravished to find thee so well pleased with my uncle the archbishop.'—'I am charmed with him,' I replied; 'and shall never be able to shew myself grateful enough for his generosity to me. Nothing less could have consoled me for the loss of Don Caesar and his son.'—'I am persuaded,' answered he, 'that they are both extremely mortified at your absence; but,

‘but, perhaps, you are not separated for ever: Fortune may one day bring you together again.’ Melted by these words, I sighed; and found at that instant my love for Don Alphonso so great, that I would have willingly abandoned the archbishop, with all the agreeable hopes he had given me, to return to the castle of Leyva, if the obstacle that banished me from it had been removed. Don Fernando perceived the emotions of my soul, which pleased him so much, that he embraced me with affection, and assured me that his whole family would always bear a part in my destiny.

Two months after this gentleman’s departure, in the very zenith of my favour, we had a hot alarm in the episcopal palace: the archbishop was seized with a fit of the apoplexy; he was, however, succoured immediately, and such salutary medicines administered, that in a few days his health was re-established: but his understanding had received a rude shock, which I plainly perceived in the very next discourse which he composed. I did not, however, find the difference between this and the rest so sensible, as to make me conclude that the orator began to flag; and waited for another homily to fix my resolution. This, indeed, was quite decisive. Sometimes the good old prelate repeated the same thing over and over; sometimes rose too high, or sunk too low: it was a vague discourse, the rhetoric of an old professor, a mere capucinade*.

I was not the only person who took notice of this: the greatest part of the audience, when he pronounced it, as if they had been also hired to examine it, said softly to one another, ‘This sermon smells strongly of the apoplexy.’—‘Come, Master Homily-critick,’ said I then to myself, ‘prepare to do your office; you see that his grace begins to fail; it is your duty to give him notice of it; not only as the depositary of his thoughts, but likewise, lest some one of his friends should be free enough with him to prevent you: in that case, you know what would happen; your name

would be erased from his last will, in which there is, doubtless, a better legacy provided for you than the library of the Licentiate Sedillo.’

After these reflections, I made others of a quite contrary nature. To give the notice in question, seemed a delicate point: I imagined that it might be ill received by an author like him, conceited of his own works; but, rejecting this suggestion, I represented to myself, that he could not possibly take it amiss, after having exacted it of me in so pressing a manner. Add to this, that I depended upon my being able to mention it with address, and make him swallow the pill without reluctance. In a word, finding that I ran a greater risque in keeping silence than breaking it, I determined to speak.

The only thing that embarrassed me now was, how to break the ice. Luckily, the orator himself extricated me from that difficulty, by asking what people said of him, and if they were satisfied with his last discourse. I answered, that his homilies were always admired; but, in my opinion, the last had not succeeded so well as the rest, in affecting the audience. ‘How,’ friend! replied he, with astonishment; ‘has it met with any Aristarchus*?’—‘No, Sir,’ said I; ‘by no means: such works as yours are not to be criticised; every body is charmed with them. Nevertheless, since you have laid your injunctions upon me to be free and sincere, I will take the liberty to tell you, that your last discourse, in my judgment, has not altogether the energy of your other performances. Are not you of the same opinion?’

My master grew pale at these words; and said, with a forced smile, ‘So then, Mr. Gil Blas, this piece is not to your taste!’—‘I don’t say so, Sir,’ cried I, quite disconcerted: ‘I think it excellent, although a little inferior to your other works.’—‘I understand you,’ he replied; ‘you think I flag, don’t you? Come, be plain: you believe it is time for me to think of retiring.’—‘I should not have been so bold,’ said I, ‘as to speak so free-

* Capucinade; a sarcasm on the sermons of the Capuchins, not remarkable for correctness.

† Aristarchus, was a great critick.

‘ly, if your grace had not commanded me: I do no more, therefore, than obey you; and I most humbly beg that you will not be offended at my freedom.’—‘God forbid!’ cried he, with precipitation; ‘God forbid that I should find fault with it. In so doing, I should be very unjust. I don’t at all take it ill that you speak your sentiment; it is your sentiment only that I find bad. I have been most egregiously deceived in your narrow understanding.’

Though I was disconcerted, I endeavoured to find some mitigation, in order to set things to rights again; but how is it possible to appease an incensed author, one especially who has been accustomed to hear himself praised! ‘Say no more, my child,’ said he; ‘you are yet too raw to make proper distinctions. Know, that I never composed a better homily than that which you disapprove; for my genius, (thank Heaven!) hath, as yet, lost nothing of it’s vigour. Henceforth I will make a better choice of a confidant, and keep one of greater ability than you. Go,’ added he, pushing me by the shoulders out of his closet; ‘go, tell my treasurer to give you an hundred ducats, and may Heaven conduct you with that sum! Adieu, Mr. Gil Blas; I wish you all manner of prosperity, with a little more taste!’

CHAP. V.

THE STEP THAT GIL BLAS TOOK AFTER THE ARCHBISHOP HAD DISMISSED HIM. HIS ACCIDENTAL MEETING WITH THE LICENTIATE WHO HAD BEEN SO MUCH OBLIGED TO HIM; WITH THE GRATITUDE OF THAT PRIEST.

I Went out of the closet, cursing the caprice, or rather weakness, of the archbishop; and more enraged against him than afflicted at the loss of his favour. I even doubted some time, if I should go and touch my hundred ducats; but, after mature deliberation, I was not fool enough to refuse them. I considered, that this money would not deprive me of the right of ridiculing the prelate; in which I was resolved not to be wanting, as often as his ho-

milies should be brought upon the carpet in my presence.

I went, therefore, and demanded the hundred ducats of the treasurer, without mentioning a single word of what had happened between his master and me; and went afterwards in quest of Melchior de la Ronda, to bid him an eternal adieu. He loved me too much to be insensible of my misfortune, which while I recounted, I perceived that grief was painted in his countenance. In spite of all the respect he owed the archbishop, he could not help blaming his behaviour. But as I swore, in my rage, that the prelate should pay for it, and that I would make the whole town merry at his expence, the sage Melchior said to me—

‘Believe me, my dear Gil Blas, you had better suppress your resentment. People of an inferior rank ought always to respect persons of quality, whatever cause they may have given them to complain. There are, I own, some very mean noblemen, who scarce deserve the least consideration; but, as they have the power of doing mischief, they are to be feared.’

I thanked the old valet de chambre for his good advice, which I promised to observe. ‘If you go,’ said he, ‘to Madrid, you shall visit Joseph Navarro, my nephew, who is clerk of the kitchen to Signior Don Balthazar de Zuniga, and (I dare say) a young man worthy of your friendship; frank, brisk, obliging, and forward to serve his friends: I wish he and you may become acquainted.’ I answered, that I would not fail to wait on this Joseph Navarro, on my first arrival at Madrid, whither I was determined to go. I then quitted the archbishop’s palace, with an intent never to set foot in it again. If I had still been in possession of my horse, I should have, perhaps, set out immediately for Toledo; but I had sold him while I was in favour, believing that I should have no farther occasion for his service. I hired a furnished room, resolving to stay a month at Grenada, and then repair to the Count de Polan.

As dinner-time approached, I asked of my landlady, if there was not an eating-house in the neighbourhood; and she answered that there was an excellent one a few steps from her house, where there was very good accommodation,

dation; and a great deal of good company. I made her shew me the place; and going thither a little after, was directed into a large hall, which bore some resemblance to a refectory. Ten or twelve people sat at a large table, covered with a dirty cloth, conversing with one another, while every one eat his own little portion. My mess was likewise brought, which, at another time, would doubtless have made me regret the table I had lost; but I was then so much piqued against the archbishop, that the scanty allowance of my eating-house seemed preferable to the good cheer I had enjoyed in his palace. I condemned a variety of dishes, and arguing like the doctor of Valladolid, 'Unhappy are those,' said I to myself, 'who frequent such pernicious tables, where one must continually be on his guard against sensuality, for fear of overloading his stomach! Can one eat too little?' In my ill-humour, I praised those very aphorisms I had hitherto very much neglected.

While I dispatched my commons, without fear of exceeding the bounds of temperance, the Licentiate Lewis Garcias, now become vicar of Gabia in the manner already related, came into the hall. He no sooner perceived me, than he came running to salute me with the utmost eagerness, or rather with all the expressions of excessive joy. He hugged me close, and I was obliged to undergo a very long compliment on the service I had done him. He fatigued me with his demonstrations of gratitude. 'Fore gad, my dear patron! since I have had the good fortune to meet you here, we shan't part without a glass; but as there is no good wine in this eating-house, I will carry you, if you please, after our scanty repast, to a place where I will treat you with a bottle of fine dry Lucena, and a glass of fine Muscadine of Foncarrel. We must certainly commit that debauch. I wish I had the happiness of enjoying you a few days only at my parsonage of Gabia. There you should be received like a generous Mæcenas, to whom I owe the quiet and easy life I lead.'

While he talked to me in this manner, his allowance was served, and he went to work; not without ceasing, however, to entertain me, at intervals,

with something which he thought would flatter my vanity. I had laid hold of this opportunity to speak in my turn; and as he did not forget to enquire about his friend the steward, I made no mystery of my leaving the archbishop's service. I even related to him the most minute circumstances of my disgrace, to which he listened with great attention. After what he had said to me, who would not have expected to hear him, penetrated with the most grateful sorrow, exclaim against the archbishop? But this was the farthest thing from his thoughts. He grew indifferent, and pensive; finished his dinner without speaking a word; then rising suddenly from table, bid me good b'w'ye, in a cool manner, and disappeared. The ungrateful wretch, seeing me no longer in a condition to serve him, spared himself even the trouble of concealing his sentiments. I laughed at his ingratitude, and looking at him with all the contempt he deserved, called to him aloud, that I might be heard, 'Holloa! you sage chaplain of nuns, go and give orders to cool that delicious wine of Lucena, with which you have promised to regale me.'

C H A P. VI.

GIL BLAS GOES TO SEE A PLAY AT GRENADA. HIS ASTONISHMENT AT THE SIGHT OF ONE OF THE ACTRESSES; AND THE CONSEQUENCES OF THAT EVENT.

GARCIAS was no sooner out of the hall, than two well-dressed cavaliers came in and sat down by me: they began to talk of the players of the Grenada company, and of a new comedy which was then on the stage. This piece, according to their discourse, made a great noise in the city; and I resolved to go to see it that very day; for I had not been at a play since my arrival at Grenada. As I had almost all that time lived in the archbishop's palace, where that diversion was anathematized, I had taken care not to indulge that pleasure, but amuse myself entirely with my master's homilies.

I repaired, therefore, at the proper time, to the play-house, where I found a nume-

a numerous assembly; overheard, all round me, dissertations on the piece, before it began; and observed, that every body undertook to criticise it. One person declared himself for, another against the performance. 'Was there ever a work better composed?' said one on my right. 'What a pitiful style!' cried one on my left. Truly, if there are a good many bad authors, it must be allowed there are still a greater number of wretched critics; and when I consider the mortifications that dramatick poets must undergo, I am astonished that there are any so bold as to brave the ignorance of the multitude, and the dangerous censure of witlings, who sometimes corrupt the judgment of the publick.

At length, the Gracioso* presented himself to open the scene. He was saluted, on his first appearance, with a general clap; by which I perceived that he was one of those spoiled actors, in whom the pit pardons every thing. And, indeed, this player did not speak one word, nor perform one gesture, without attracting applause. The audience made him too sensible of the pleasure they had in seeing him on the stage; and he abused their favour accordingly. I perceived that he sometimes forgot himself in the middle of a scene, and put their prepossession in his behalf to too severe a proof; for they would often have done him justice, had they hissed instead of extolling him to the skies.

There was likewise a clapping of hands at the appearance of some other actors; and, in particular, of an actress, who performed the part of a waiting-woman, whom having considered with attention, no terms can express my surprize, when I recollected in her the person of Laura, my dear Laura! whom I still believed to be in the service of Arsenia at Madrid. I could not doubt that it was she; her shape, her features, the sound of her voice, every thing assured me that I was not mistaken. Nevertheless, as if I had mistrusted the evidence of my eyes and ears, I asked her name of a cavalier who sat by me. 'Hey!' said he, 'from whence came you? It seems you are just arrived, since you don't know the fair Estella!'

The resemblance was too perfect for me to be deceived by this disguise; I could easily conceive, that Laura, when she changed her condition, had also altered her name; and curious to know her situation, for the publick is generally pretty well acquainted with the affairs of persons in her sphere, I begged to know of the same man, if this Estella had not some gallant of importance. He answered, that a Portuguese nobleman, called the Marquis de Marialva, who had been about two months at Grenada, was at a considerable expence on her account. He might have told me a great deal more, if I had not been afraid of fatiguing him with questions. I was more engrossed by the news which this cavalier had told me, than by the representation of the play; and if any body had asked the subject of the piece, when I came out, he would have embarrassed me not a little: I did nothing but muse upon Laura, (or Estella) and firmly resolved to go and visit her next day; though I was not without anxiety about the reception I should meet with. I had reason to believe, that the sight of me would not yield her much pleasure in this brilliant situation of her affairs; nay, I imagined that such a good actress, in order to revenge herself upon one with whom she had certainly cause to be dissatisfied, would probably disclaim his acquaintance. All this did not dissuade me from my design of going. After a slight repast (for such only my eating-house afforded) I went home to my lodging, where I waited impatiently for the next day.

I slept little that night, and got up before the sun; but, as I concluded that a nobleman's mistress would not be visible so early, I spent three or four hours in dressing, shaving, powdering, and perfuming; resolving to present myself before her in such a condition as would give her no cause to blush at seeing me again. I sallied out about ten o'clock, and repaired to her lodging, to which I received a direction at the house where the players lived. She possessed the chief apartment of a large house; the door of which being opened to me by a chambermaid, I told her that I wanted to speak with Dame Estella. The maid went in to signify my desire,

† A favourite actor.

And I immediately heard her mistress pronounce, with a loud voice, "Who is the young man? what does he want? Let him come in." By this I concluded that I had chosen an unreasonable time for my visit; that her Portuguese lover was at her toilet; and that her reason for speaking so loud, was to persuade him that she never received suspected messages. My conjecture was true; the Marquis de Marialva commonly passed the morning in her company; and I expected a very disagreeable compliment, when this truly original actress, seeing me appear, ran to me with open arms, crying, "Ah! my dear brother, is it you?" and with these words, embraced me several times. Then turning to her gallant, "My lord," said she, "pardon me for yielding to the force of blood in your presence. After an absence of three years, I cannot behold a brother, whom I tenderly love, without giving him some marks of my affection." Well, my dear Gil Blas, continued she, addressing me anew, tell me some news of my family: in what condition did you leave it?

This question embarrassed me at first; but I soon discovered Laura's intention, and seconding her artifice, answered with an air suited to the scene we had to act. "Thank Heaven, sister, our parents are in good health. I don't doubt," she replied, "that you are astonished to find me an actress at Grenada; but do not condemn me unheard. Three years ago, as you remember, my father thought he had settled me to advantage, by giving me in marriage to Captain Don Antonio Celo, who carried me from the Asturias to Madrid, where he was born. Six months after our arrival in that city, having had an affair of honour brought upon him by his own violent humour, he killed a cavalier who had taken it in his head to favour me with some attention. This gentleman being related to persons of great quality and credit, my husband, who had no interest, fled into Catalonia, with all the money and jewels he could find in the house; embarked at Barcelona, crossed into Italy, engaged in the service of the Venetians, and at last lost his life in the Moors, fighting

against the Turks. In the mean time, our landed estate was confiscated, and I had but a very small jointure left. What could I do in such a troublesome extremity? I could not return into the Asturias: for what purpose go thither? all the consolation I should have received from my family, would have been no more than sympathy and condolence. On the other hand, I had been too well educated to be capable of embracing a life of libertinism. Upon what determination then could I fix? I have turned actress to preserve my character."

The Marquis de Marialva, who lost not a word of the whole discourse, implicitly believed every syllable of what Don Antonio's widow was pleased to utter. He even joined in the conversation, and asked if I was in any business at Grenada or elsewhere. I was in some doubt, at that instant, whether or no I should tell a lye; but thinking that unnecessary, I spoke truth, recounting every circumstance of my entering into and quitting the archbishop's service; which afforded infinite diversion to the Portuguese nobleman. It is true, that notwithstanding my promise to Melchior, I made myself a little merry at the expense of his grace. But the most diverting part of the scene was, that Laura, who thought I had invented a story in imitation of her, burst out into loud fits of laughter, which she would have probably spared, had she known that I did not dissemble.

Having ended my narration, which I finished with the lodging I had hired, word was brought that dinner was on the table. Upon which I would have retired, in order to go and dine at my eating-house; but Laura, stopping me, said, "What do you mean, brother? you shall dine with me: and I won't even suffer you to live any longer in a hired room; for I intend you shall both eat and lodge in my house. Order your baggage to be brought hither this evening; I have a bed to spare."

The Portuguese nobleman, who perhaps was not very well pleased with this hospitality, addressing himself to Laura, said, "No, Erella; you have not convenience for him in these lodgings. Your brother seems to be a

F f pretty

'pretty young fellow; and [the advantage he has in being so near to you, interests me in his favour. I will take him into my service: he shall be my favourite secretary, and chief confident. Let him not fail to come and sleep at my house this very night; for I will order an apartment to be prepared for the purpose. I will allow him a salary of four hundred ducats; and if in the sequel, I have cause, as I hope I shall, to be satisfied with his behaviour, I will put him in a condition to console himself for being too sincere with the archbishop.'

The acknowledgments which I made to the marquis at this juncture were followed by those of Laura, who improved upon mine. So saying, he saluted his theatrical princess, and went away. She led me immediately into a closet, where seeing herself alone with me, 'I should burst,' cried she, 'if I was obliged to resist any longer the inclination I have to laugh.' Then throwing herself into an easy chair, and holding her sides, she laughed immoderately, as if she had lost her senses. I found it impossible not to follow her example; and when we had indulged ourselves sufficiently, 'Confess, Gil Blas,' said she, 'that we have acted a pleasant farce: but I did not expect such a catastrophe; my design being no other than to provide for you a table and lodging in my house; which that I might offer with decency, I made thee pass for my brother. I am ravished that such a good post has occurred to thee by accident. The Marquis de Marialva is a generous nobleman, who will even exceed his promise in thy favour. Another,' added she, 'might not, perhaps, have given such a gracious reception to one who quits his friends without bidding them farewell; but I am one of those good creatures, who cannot help seeing again, with pleasure, a rogue whom they have once loved.' I candidly acknowledged my impolite behaviour, for which I asked pardon. She then conducted me into a very handsome dining-room, where we sat down at table; and, as a waiting-woman and lacquey were present, behaved to one another like brother and sister.

Having dined, we went back to the

same closet where we had conversed together before. There my incomparable Laura, giving a loose to all her natural gaiety, demanded an account of all my adventures since our separation. I made a faithful recital of the whole, and when I had gratified her curiosity, she gave me the same satisfaction, in recounting the following history of herself.

CHAP. VII.

THE HISTORY OF LAURA.

I Am going to relate, as succinctly as I can, by what accident I embraced the profession of a player. Great events happened, after you left me in such an honourable manner. My mistress Arsenia, rather tired than disgusted with the world, renounced the stage, and carried me with her to a fine estate which she had bought near Zamora, with the price of her favours. In this city we soon contracted an acquaintance; and going thither frequently, to pass a day or two, came back again, and shut ourselves up in our castle. In one of these small journies, Don Felix Maldonado, the corregidor's only son, saw me by accident, and happening to be pleased with my appearance, sought an opportunity of speaking with me in private; which, that I may conceal nothing from thee, I own, was facilitated by myself. He was a cavalier not yet twenty years old, fair as Love himself, a perfect model in shape, and still more engaging by his gallant and generous behaviour than by his person; for he made me an offer of a large brilliant, which he had on his finger, with such a good grace, and pressing intreaties, that I could not, for my soul, refuse it. I did not possess such an amiable gallant with indifference. But what madness is it in Abigails to attach themselves to the young heirs of persons in authority! his father, the most severe of all corregidores, informed of our correspondence, made haste to prevent the consequences of it, and ordered me to be apprehended by a troop of alguazils, who carried me, regardless of my cries, to the Hospital

‘pital of Compassion’. There, without any other form of process, the superior ordered me to be stripped of my ring and dress, and cloathed with a long gown of grey serge, girded about me with a strap of black leather, from whence a rosary of large beads hung down to my heels. This being performed, I was conducted into a hall, where I found an old monk, of an order that I did not know, who fell a-preaching penitence to me, much in the same manner as Dame Leonardo exhorted thee to patience in the cavern. He told me that I was very much obliged to those who caused me to be shut up in that place, for they had done me infinite service in rescuing me from the snares of the devil. I will frankly own my ingratitude: far from thinking myself beholden to those who had done me that good office, I loaded them with imprecations.

Eight days I passed in afflicting myself; but on the ninth (for I counted the very minutes) my fate seemed to bear another aspect. Crossing a small court, I met the steward of our house, a person who ruled with unlimited sway; the superior herself was under his command: and he rendered an account of his stewardship to none but the corregidor, on whom alone he depended, and whose entire confidence he enjoyed. His name was Pedro Zendonno; he was born in the town of Sellesdon in Biscay, being a tall, pale, meagre man, whose figure would have served as an excellent pattern for the picture of a rank rogue. He scarce seemed to look at the sisters; and, in short, thou never sawest such an hypocritical face, although thou hast lived in an archbishop’s palace.

‘Well then,’ said she, ‘I met this Signior Zendonno, who stopped me, saying, “Daughter, be comforted, I am touched with your misfortune.” He said no more, but went about his business, leaving me to make what commentaries I pleased on such a laconick text. As I believed him to be a good man, I innocently concluded, that he had taken the trouble of examining into the cause of my confinement, and finding me not

‘guilty enough to deserve such unworthy treatment, was resolved to do me a good office with the corregidor. I was little acquainted with the Biscayan, who had quite other intentions. He then resolved in his mind the scheme of a journey, which he imparted to me a few days after. “My dear Laura,” said he, “I am so much affected with your sufferings, that I am resolved to put an end to them immediately. In so doing, I know I shall embrace my own ruin: but I am no longer master of myself. I intend to take you out of prison to-morrow, and conduct you in person to Madrid; being resolved to sacrifice every thing to the pleasure of being your deliverer.”

I was ready to swoon with joy at these words of Zendonno, who judging, by my acknowledgments, that I longed for nothing so much as liberty, had the impudence to carry me off next day, in sight of every body, by the following stratagem. He told the superior, that he had orders to bring me to the corregidor, who was at a pleasure-house two leagues from town; and, with the utmost assurance, made me get into a post-chaise with him, drawn by two good mules, which he had bought for that purpose; and, attended by no other servants than a valet, who conducted the chaise, and was entirely devoted to the steward, we set out, not for Madrid, as I imagined, but towards the frontiers of Portugal, where we arrived before the Corregidor of Zamora could get notice of our flight, and send the beagles of justice in pursuit of us.

‘Before we entered Braganza, the Biscayan made me put on a suit of men’s cloaths, which he had the precaution to provide; and now looking upon me as fairly embarked with him, said to me, at the inn where we lodged, “Fair Laura, be not offended with me for bringing you into Portugal; for the Corregidor of Zamora will make search for us in our native country, as two criminals to whom Spain ought not to afford a retreat. But,” added he, “we can shelter ourselves from his resentment in this foreign kingdom,

" although it be, at present, under
 " the dominion of the Spanish monar-
 " chy. Here we shall at least be
 " more secure than in our own coun-
 " try. Follow, therefore, a man who
 " adores you; and let us settle at
 " Coimbra, where I will become a
 " spy for the Holy Office; and, un-
 " der the shade of that formidable tri-
 " bunal, our days will smoothly glide
 " in ease and pleasure."
 " Such a forward proposal gave me
 " to understand that I had to do with a
 " cavalier who did not chuse to redress
 " the grievances of damsels, merely for
 " the glory of knight-errantry. I per-
 " ceived that he depended a good deal
 " upon my gratitude, and still more up-
 " on my distress. Nevertheless, though
 " these two considerations spoke to me
 " in his behalf, I rejected his proposal
 " with disdain. 'Tis true, indeed, I
 " had two strong reasons for shewing
 " myself so reserved: I disliked his per-
 " son, and distrusted his circumstances.
 " But when, returning to the charge,
 " he offered to wed me, as a prelimi-
 " nary, and shewed me that his stew-
 " ards had put him in a condition
 " to enjoy himself for a long time, I
 " won't deny that I began to listen to
 " his addresses. I was dazzled by the
 " gold and jewels which he spread be-
 " fore me; and found, by experience,
 " that as many metamorphoses are
 " made by interest as by love. My
 " Biscayan became, gradually, quite
 " another man in my eyes: his tall
 " withered carcass assumed the form of
 " a fine shape; his pale complexion
 " seemed agreeably fair; and I gave a
 " favourable appellation to his hypo-
 " critical look. I then accepted his
 " hand, without reluctance, in the face
 " of Heaven, which he called to wit-
 " ness our engagement. After this he
 " suffered no contradiction on my part;
 " we set out again on our travels; and
 " in a short time, Coimbra beheld a
 " new family within its walls.
 " My husband purchased for me
 " some handsome cloaths, adapted to
 " my own sex, and presented me with
 " several diamonds, among which I
 " recollected that of Don Felix Mal-
 " donada. This discovery was suffi-
 " cient to make me conceive how all
 " the jewels I had seen were acquired,
 " and to persuade me that I had not
 " married a scrupulous observer of the
 " seventh article of the decalogue. But,
 " considering myself as the first cause of
 " his dexterity, I forgave him in my
 " heart: for a woman will excuse even
 " the bad actions which her beauty
 " prompts the men to commit; other-
 " wise, I should have thought him an
 " execrable villain.
 " I was pretty well satisfied with
 " him for two or three months, during
 " which he behaved in a gallant man-
 " ner, and seemed to love me with
 " great tenderness; nevertheless, these
 " marks of affection were false ap-
 " pearances; for the rogue cheated me
 " at last. One morning, on my return
 " from mass, I found nothing at home
 " but bare walls; the whole furni-
 " ture, with all my baggage, was car-
 " ried off. Zendo, and his faithful
 " valet, had taken their measures so
 " well, that, in less than an hour, the
 " general pillage of the house had
 " been begun and finished, in such a
 " manner, that with the cloaths only
 " which I had on my back, and the
 " ring of Don Felix, which was luck-
 " ily on my finger, I saw myself aban-
 " doned by an ungrateful wretch,
 " like another Ariadne. But, I assure
 " thee, I did not amuse myself with
 " making elegies on my misfortunes;
 " I rather thanked Heaven for having
 " delivered me from such a wretch,
 " who could not fail, sooner or late, to
 " fall into the hands of justice; and
 " looked upon the days we had spent
 " together as so much lost time, for
 " which I would soon make myself ac-
 " quainted. Had I been desirous of stay-
 " ing in Portugal, and attaching myself
 " to some lady of fashion, I should not
 " have wanted a place: but, whether
 " I loved my own country, or was in-
 " fluenced by the force of destiny, which
 " prepared a better fortune for me here,
 " I resolved to return to Spain; and
 " applying to a jeweller, who gave me
 " ready-money for my ring, set out
 " with an old Spanish lady, who was
 " going in a chaise to Seville.
 " This person, whose name was Do-
 " rothea, had been to visit one of her
 " relations settled at Coimbra, and was
 " on her return to Seville, where she
 " lived. There was such a sympathy
 " between her disposition and mine that
 " we became friends the very first day
 " of our journey; and our mutual af-
 " fection grew so strong on the road,
 " that,

that, on our arrival, the lady would suffer me to lodge no where but in her house. I had no cause to repent of my acquaintance, for I never knew a woman of a better character; and (one might still perceive, by her features, and the sparkling of her eyes, that in her youth many a guitar had been thrummed on her account; indeed, she was the widow of several noble husbands, and lived in an honourable manner on the jointures which she enjoyed.

Among other excellent qualities, she had that of being very compassionate to unfortunate young women. When I imparted to her my own story, she entered warmly into my interests, and bestowed a thousand curses on Zendo. "What dogs these men are!" said she, in a tone that made me guess she had met with some steward in her way; "perfidious wretches! I know there are such villains in the world, who divert themselves in deceiving women. What I am pleased at, my dear child," added she, "is, that, according to your relation, you are no longer bound to that perjured Biscayan: if your marriage with him was good enough to secure your reputation, by way of recompence, it is also bad enough to permit you to contract a better, whenever you can find an opportunity." "I went abroad every day with Dorothea, either to church, or to visit; and this being the way to meet with some adventure soon, I attracted the notice of several cavaliers, who, in order to found the business, made interest with my old landlady; but some had not wherewithal to make a good settlement; and others were still minors; so that I had not the least desire of listening to any of them. One day, Dorothea and I took a whim of going to see a play at Seville; and, upon consulting the

bill, we found that the players intended to act *La famosa comedia, el embaxador de Si mismo*, composed by Lope de Vega Carpio.

Among the actresses who appeared on the stage, I discovered my old friend Phenicia, that jolly merry wench whom thou hast seen when she was waiting-maid to Florimonda, and with whom thou hast sometimes supped at Arsenia's house. I knew that she had not been in Madrid for two years before, but was ignorant of her being an actress. Having an eager desire of embracing her, I found the piece very tedious; but this might be the fault of the actors, who played either too ill or too well to yield me amusement; for as to me, who am a merry creature, I own myself as much diverted by a player who is perfectly ridiculous, as by one who is excellent in his way.

At length, the moment I waited for being arrived, that is, the end of *La famosa comedia*; my widow and I went behind the scenes, where we perceived Phenicia acting the coquette, and listening with affectation to the soft warbling of a young bird, which it seems had allowed itself to be ensnared by her declamation. She no sooner observed me, than quitting her admirer with a courteous air, she came towards me with open arms, and loaded me with caresses. We expressed our mutual joy in seeing one another again; but the time and place not permitting us to launch out into a long conversation, we deferred it till next day, when we might discourse together more fully at her lodgings.

The itch of talking is one of the most eager passions of women: I could not close an eye the whole night, so much did I long to engage Phenicia, and worry her with questions upon questions. God knows,

Seville, the capital of Andalusia, in Spain, is situated in a fertile country on the river Guadalquivir, over which it has a stout bridge of seventeen boats, which joins the city to a large suburb on the other side. The compass of the city, including this suburb, is supposed to be near fourteen miles, but the wall is only eight. It is very strong, and adorned with fifteen gates and a hundred and sixty-six towers. The number of inhabitants is reckoned to amount to three hundred thousand. It has also an university, and a great number of students. Among the manufactures carried on in this city, those of the silk and silver stuffs are the most considerable. Seville is an archbishoprick of great antiquity and dignity. Its revenue amounts to a hundred and twenty thousand ducats per annum.

I was

"I was not lazy in getting up, to repair to her lodging, according to the direction she had given me! She lived with the whole company in a large hired house; which, when I entered, I met a maid-servant, who, when I desired her to conduct me to Phenicia's apartment, shewed me up to a gallery, on one side of which were ten or twelve small chambers, divided from one another by partitions of deal boards only, and possessed by the joyous band. My guide knocked at a door, which Phenicia, whose tongue itched as well as mine, came and opened. Scarce did we allow ourselves time to sit, before we began to chatter. We had a severe brush, and uttered in our turns so many interrogations, that the questions and replies succeeded one another with amazing volubility.

"After having recounted our mutual adventures, and reciprocally informed ourselves of the state of our affairs, Phenicia asked what I intended to do: I answered, that I was resolved, until something better should cast up, to enter into the service of some young lady of quality. "O fyel" cried my friend, "you joke sure! Is it possible, my dear, that thou art not yet disgusted with servitude? Art thou not tired with seeing thyself subjected to another's will; with humouring the caprices of a mistress; with hearing thyself reproached; and, in one word, with being a slave? Why wilt thou not, by my example, embrace a theatrical life? nothing can be more convenient for people of spirit, who have neither birth nor fortune; it is a situation that holds the middle place between the nobility and citizens; an unrestricted condition, free of that decorum which is so troublesome to society. Our revenues are paid in ready cash by the publick, which is our bank; we live in continual mirth, and spend our money as we get it.

"The stage," added she, "is particularly favourable to women: while I lived with Florimonda, (I blush at the remembrance of it!) I was reduced to the necessity of listening to the candle-snuffers of the prince's company; not one man of fashion paid the least attention to

"my figure. What was the cause of this unimportance? I was not seen; the finest picture has not its effect, except in a particular light; but since I have been placed on my proper pedestal, (that is, on the stage) Heavens, what a change has happened! I see at my heels the gayest youths of all those towns through which we pass. An actress, therefore, enjoys a great deal of pleasure in her occupation: if she is prudent, I mean, if she favours one gallant only at a time, she has all the honour imaginable paid to her; her chastity is applauded, and when she changes her lover, she is looked upon as a real widow who marries a second husband: nay, if a widow takes a third, she is spoken of with contempt, and said to have infringed the delicacy of her sex; whereas the actress seems to be more and more regarded, in proportion to the increase of her admirers. After she has gone through an hundred intrigues, she is still a morsel for a lord."

"To whom do you talk in this manner?" said I, interrupting her. "Do you think I am ignorant of these advantages? I have often reflected on them; and they but too much flatter the imagination of such a girl as me: I even feel an inclination for the stage; but that alone is not sufficient; talent is absolutely necessary; and I have none; for when I sometimes attempted to repeat passages of plays before Arsenia, she always found fault with my performance, so that I was disgusted at the profession." "Thou art easily discouraged," replied Phenicia; "dost thou not know that these great actresses are commonly jealous? They are afraid, in spite of all their vanity, of being eclipsed. In short, I won't take Arsenia's word for thy incapacity; for she was certainly insincere: nay, I assure thee, without flattery, that thou art born for the stage; thou hast genius, a free and graceful carriage, a sweet voice, a good chest, and withal a face! Ah, baggage, how many cavaliers wilt thou charm, if thou turnest actress!"

"She plied me with more such seducing discourse, and made me pronounce some verses, that I myself might

might judge of my capacity for acting; but when she heard me, it was quite another case; she overwhelmed me with applause, and preferred me to all the actresses in Madrid. After this, I should have been inexcusable, had I doubted my own merit. Arsenia stood impeached and convicted of envy and insincerity; and I could not help allowing that I was an admirable subject. Two actors, who happened to come in at that instant, and before whom Phenicia obliged me to repeat the verses which I had already recited to her, were seized with a kind of extasy; from which they no sooner recollected themselves, than they loaded me with praise. In good earnest, had the three wagered with one another which of them should applaud me most, they could not have employed more hyperbolical expressions. My modesty was not proof against such elogiums: I began to believe myself of some value; and thus my thoughts were turned towards the stage.

"Come on then, my dear," said I to Phenicia; "the affair is determined: I will follow thy advice, and enter into the company, provided they think well of it." My friend, transported with joy at these words, hugged me in her arms; and her two comrades seemed no less delighted to find me in these sentiments. We agreed that next day I should repair to the theatre in the morning, and before the whole company assembled, shew the same sample of my talent that I had exhibited to them. If I had acquired the good opinion of those who were at Phenicia's lodgings, all the actors judged of me still more favourably when I had pronounced about twenty verses in their presence. They received me very willingly into their company; and then I was wholly engrossed by my first appearance, which, that I might render as gay as possible, I employed upon it all the money that remained from the sale of my ring; and though I had not enough to make a superb figure, I at least found means to supply the want of magnificence by a genteel taste in my dress.

At length I appeared on the stage for the first time; and then, what thundering applause, what elogi-

ums was I favoured with! It is downright modesty, my friend, to say simply that I ravished the audience; one must have been witness of the noise I made at Seville to believe it. I became the discourse of the whole city; which, during three weeks, came in crowds to the play-house, in such a manner, that the company, by this novelty, recalled the publick, which had begun to desert them. I began, then, in a manner that charmed every body; and this was the same thing as if I had advertised myself to be let to the highest bidder. Twenty cavaliers, of all ages, outvied one another in their proffers to me; and if I had followed my own inclination, I would have chosen him who was young and handsome: but people of our stamp ought to consult nothing but their interest and ambition, when a settlement is depending. For this reason, Don Ambrosio de Nisana, a man already old and ugly, but rich and generous, and one of the most powerful noblemen of Andalusia, had the preference. True, indeed, I made him purchase my favours at a good price; he hired for me a grand house, which he furnished in a very magnificent manner, gave me an expert cook, two lacquies, a chamber-maid, and a thousand ducats for my monthly expence, over and above rich cloaths, and a pretty large quantity of jewels.

What a change was this in my fortune! My reason could not support it: I appeared to myself, all of a sudden, quite another person; and I am not surprized that there are girls who forget in a little time the meanness and misery from which they are rescued by the caprice of a man of quality. I will make a sincere confession; the applause of the publick, the flattering discourse that I heard from all quarters, and the passion of Don Ambrosio, inspired me with sentiments of vanity that amounted to mere extravagance. I considered my talent as a noble title; I assumed the airs of a woman of quality; and becoming as covetous as I had before been prodigal of my smiles, resolved to limit my prospect to dukes, counts, and marquisses, only.

Signior de Nisana came to sup at my

my house every evening with some of his friends; and I, on my side, took care to invite the most engaging of our actresses; so that we commonly spent the best part of the night in drinking and making merry. I accommodated myself mighty well to such an agreeable life, which, however, lasted but six months. Noblemen are apt to change, otherwise they would be too amiable. Don Ambrosio forsook me, for a conquest he had made of a young creature from Grenada, who had arrived at Seville, with some charms, and the talent of disposing them to the best advantage. My affliction at his inconstancy did not last, however, longer than four and twenty hours. I chose in his room a cavalier of two and twenty, called Don Lewis de Alcacer; to whom, in point of person, few Spaniards could be compared. Thou wilt, doubtless, ask, and thou hast reason so to do, why I took such a young nobleman for my gallant, when I knew the consequences of such a choice. But, besides that Don Lewis had neither father nor mother, and already enjoyed his estate, I must tell thee, that these consequences are not to be dreaded but by girls of a servile condition, or unhappy she-adventurers. Women of our profession are privileged persons, and not at all answerable for the effects that our charms produce. So much the worse for those families whose heirs we pillage!

Alcacer and I attached ourselves so strongly to one another, that no mutual passion, I believe, ever equalled that with which we were inflamed. We loved with so much fury, that one would have thought we were both enchanted: and those who were acquainted with our correspondence, believed us the most happy lovers in the world; though we were, in reality, the most miserable. If Don Lewis had a person, altogether amiable, he was at the same time so jealous, that he afflicted me incessantly with unjust suspicions. It was in vain for me to accommodate myself to this weakness, to constrain myself so far as not to look upon a man. His distrust, ingenious in finding out crimes to lay to my charge, rendered my caution altogether useless. Our

most tender moments were always disturbed by quarrels, which it was impossible to endure. Both of us lost our patience, and we broke in a friendly manner. Wouldst thou believe it? we looked upon the last day as the most charming of our commerce. Equally fatigued with the troubles we had undergone, we expressed the utmost joy in our mutual adieu. We were like two miserable captives, who, after a rude slavery, at last recover their freedom.

Since that adventure, I am always on my guard against love. I will no more contract attachments that may disturb my repose: it does not become those of our profession to fight like other people; and we ought not to entertain in private a passion, the ridicule of which we represent in public.

About this time I afforded some employment to Fame, which reported every where that I was an inimitable actress. On the assurance of this goddess, the players of Grenada wrote to me, proposing that I should enter into their company; and, to let me know that the proposal was not to be rejected, sent me an account of their daily expence, and the terms of their offer, from which I concluded, that it would be for my interest to comply. I accepted it, therefore; though, at bottom, I was grieved at parting from Phenicia and Dorothea, whom I loved as much as one woman is capable of loving others of her sex. I left the first busy in melting the plate of a little merchant-goldsmith, who, out of vanity, would have an actress for his mistress. I forgot to tell thee that, when I devoted myself to the stage, I changed, through whim, my name from Laura into that of Estella, under which appellation I set out for Grenada.

Here my first appearance was no less lucky than at Seville, and I saw myself at once surrounded by admirers; but being resolved to favour none except in an honourable way, I behaved to them with so much reserve, that they were blinded by my affected modesty. Nevertheless, that I might not be the dupe of a conduct that would be of no service, and which indeed was not natural to me, I was going

going to listen to a young judge, of the citizen race, who assumed the nobleman by virtue of his office, a sumptuous table, and rich equipage, when I saw, for the first time, the Marquis de Marialva. This Portuguese lord, who travels through Spain out of curiosity, stopped on his way at Grenada; and coming to the play one night, when I did not act, considered with great attention the actresses who presented themselves, and found one to his liking. He made an acquaintance with her the very next day, and was ready to conclude the bargain, when I appeared on the stage. My figure, and the air I gave myself, turned the weathercock all on a sudden, and my Portuguese attached himself to me only. To confess the truth, as I was not ignorant that my comrade had pleased that nobleman, I spared nothing to deprive her of her conquest; and I had the good fortune to accomplish it. I know that she bears me a grudge for my success, but I could not help doing it; and she ought to consider it as a thing so natural to women, that the best friends make no scruple of practising it on one another.

CHAP. VIII.

THE RECEPTION WHICH GIL BLAS MET WITH FROM THE PLAYERS OF GRENADA, AND HIS FINDING AN OLD ACQUAINTANCE BEHIND THE SCENES.

LAURA had no sooner finished her story, than an old actress, who lived in the neighbourhood, came to take her up in her way to the play-house. This venerable stage-heroine would have been very proper for playing the part of the goddess Cotys. My sister did not fail to present her brother to this superannuated figure; upon which a great many compliments passed on both sides.

I left them together, telling the steward's widow, that I would rejoin her at the theatre, as soon as I ordered my baggage to be carried to the Marquis de Marialva's house, to which he gave me a direction. I went immediately to my own room; from whence, after

having satisfied my landlady, I repaired, with a man who carried my portmanteau, to a large furnished house where my new master lodged. I met at the door his steward, who asked me if I was not Dame Estella's brother; and, upon my answering in the affirmative, said, 'Signior Cavalier, you are very welcome: the Marquis de Marialva, whose steward I have the honour to be, has ordered me to give you a handsome reception. There is a chamber prepared for you, to which, if you please, I shall shew you the way.' So saying, he carried me to the top of the house, and shewed me into a chamber so small, that a very narrow bed, a chest, and two chairs, quite filled it. This was my apartment. 'You won't be very much at large in this place,' said my guide; 'but, to make you amends, you shall be lodged in a superb manner at Lisbon.' I locked my portmanteau in my chest, put the key in my pocket, and asked at what hour they supped. It was answered, that the Portuguese nobleman kept no table at home, but gave a certain monthly sum to each domestick for his board. I put other questions to him, and learned, that the people belonging to the marquis were a parcel of happy sluggards. After a short conversation, I left the steward, to go in quest of Laura, agreeably engrossed with the preface I had conceived of my new place.

As soon as I arrived at the play-house door, and told that I was Estella's brother, I was immediately admitted. You might have seen the guards as eager in making a passage for me, as if I had been one of the most considerable noblemen of Grenada. All the servants and door-keepers whom I met made me profound bows. But what I wish I could paint to the reader, was my serio-comical reception behind the scenes, where I found the company all dressed, and ready to begin. The actors and actresses, to whom Laura presented me, poured upon me in shoals. The men overwhelmed me with embraces; and the women, in their turns, applying their painted faces to mine, covered it with white and red. Each desirous of being the first to make their compliment, they spoke all together: it was impossible for me alone to answer; but my sister came to my assist-

G g

ance,

ance, and her indefatigable tongue did not leave me in debt to any one.

The embraces of the actors and actresses did not suffice; for I was also obliged to undergo the civilities of the scene-painter, the musick, prompter, candle-snuffer and his deputy; in short, of all the servants of the theatre, who, on the report of my arrival, came running to behold me. One would have thought that all these people were foundlings, who had never seen a brother before.

Meanwhile the performance begun; and some gentlemen, who were behind the scenes, ran to their places; while I, like a child of the house, continued to converse with those of the actors who were not on the stage. Among these, I heard one called Melchior: I was struck with the name; I considered with attention the person who bore it, and imagined I had seen him somewhere. I at length recollected him to be Melchior Zapata, that poor stroller, who, as I observed in the first volume of my history, soaked crusts of bread in a spring.

Taking him aside accordingly, 'I am mistaken,' said I, 'if you are not that Signior Melchior with whom I had the honour to breakfast one day at the side of a clear spring between Valladolid and Segovia. I was in company with a journeyman barber; we had some provisions in a knapsack, which, being joined to yours, made up a pretty little repast, which was seasoned with a thousand agreeable sallies.' Zapata having mused some minutes, answered, 'You mention a circumstance which I recollect without difficulty: I was then returning to Zamora, from having made an unsuccessful attempt on the stage at Madrid: I remember too, that I was in very bad circumstances.'—'I remember the same thing,' said I, 'by this token, that you wore a jacket lined with play-bills. You see I have not forgot it, no more than that you complained at that time of having too chaste a wife.'—'Oh, I have no cause to complain of that at present!' said Zapata, with precipitation; 'egad! my gossip is very much reformed in that particular, and therefore my jacket is better lined than formerly.'

I was going to congratulate him on

his wife's reformation, when he was obliged to leave me, in order to appear upon the stage. Curious to know his spouse, I made up to an actor, and desired he would shew her to me. This he did, saying, 'There she is; that is Narcissa, the handsomest of our ladies, your sister excepted.' Immediately concluded, that this actress must be she in favour of whom the Marquis de Marialva had declared himself, before he had seen Estella; and my conjecture was but too true. When the play was over, I conducted Laura to her lodging, where I perceived several cooks preparing a great entertainment. 'Thou mayest sup here,' said she. 'I won't indeed,' said I; 'the marquis, perhaps, will chuse to be alone with you.'—'O, not at all!' she replied; 'he is to be here with two of his friends and one of our gentlemen; and it is in thy own option to make a sixth. Thou knowest that, in the houses of actresses, secretaries have the privilege of eating with their masters.'—'True,' said I; 'but it would be a little too early for me to put myself on the footing of a favourite secretary: I must first enjoy his confidence, before I can merit that honourable privilege.' So saying, I left her; and repaired to my eating-house, which I intended to frequent every day, since my master kept no table at home.

CHAP. IX.

HE SUPPED THAT EVENING WITH AN EXTRAORDINARY MAN: AN ACCOUNT OF WHAT HAPPENED BETWEEN THEM.

I observed in the hall a kind of old monk, cloathed in coarse grey cloth, who was at supper all alone in a corner. Sitting down, out of curiosity, just opposite to him, I saluted him very civilly, and he shewed himself no less polite. My pittance being brought, I began to dispatch it with a good deal of appetite; and while I eat in silence, I frequently looked at this person, whose eyes I always found fixed on mine. Fatigued with his stubborn perseverance in looking at me, I addressed him in these words: 'Father, have we ever
seen

‘seen one another before? You observe me as if I was not altogether unknown to you.’

He answered, with great gravity, ‘My reason for fixing my eyes upon you, is to admire the prodigious variety of adventures which are marked in the features of your face.’—‘I see,’ said I, with an air of raillery, ‘that your reverence deals in metempsychosis.’—‘I may boast of possessing that art,’ replied the monk; ‘and of having made presages which have been verified by the event. I am also skilled in chiromancy, and will venture to say, that my oracles are infallible, when I have compared the inspection of the hand with that of the face.’

Although this old man had all the appearance of a wise person, I thought him so foolish, that I could not help laughing in his face. Instead of being offended, he smiled at my unpoliteness, and continued speaking in these words, after having cast his eyes around the hall, to be assured that nobody listened, ‘I am not surprized to see you so prejudiced against two sciences which are looked upon as frivolous in this age. The long and painful study which they demand discourages all the learned men, who renounce and decry them, out of despair of acquiring them. For my own part, I am not discouraged by the obscurity in which they are shrouded, no more than by the difficulties which incessantly occur in the search of chymical secrets, and in the wonderful art of transmuting metals into gold.’

‘But I don’t consider,’ added he, recollecting himself, ‘that I speak to a young cavalier, to whom my discourse must in effect appear quite chimerical. A sample of my skill will dispose you much better than all I can say to judge more favourably of my art.’ With these words, he took out of his pocket a phial full of red liquor; and then said, ‘Here is an elixir which I composed this morning of the juice of certain plants distilled in an alembick; for I have employed almost all my life, like Democritus, in finding out the properties of minerals and simples. You shall see it’s virtue put to the proof. The wine which we now drink to

supper, though it is execrable, shall become excellent.’ So saying, he put into my bottle two drops of his elixir, which rendered my wine more delicious than the best that is drank in Spain.

The marvellous strikes the imagination; and when once that is gained, the judgment is no longer used. Charmed with such a fine secret, and persuaded that he must be more than the devil who could find it out, I cried, in a transport of admiration, ‘Oh, father! pray pardon me, if I took you at first for an old fool; I now do justice to your capacity, and need no more than I have seen to be assured, that you could, if you pleased, convert, in an instant, a bar of iron into an ingot of gold. How happy should I be could I possess such an admirable science!’—‘Heaven preserve you from such an acquisition,’ said the old man, interrupting me with a profound sigh: ‘You don’t know, my son, what a secret you wish for. Instead of envying, rather pity me, for having bestowed so much pains to make myself unhappy. I live in continual disquiet. I am afraid of being discovered, and that my labours will be rewarded by perpetual imprisonment. In this apprehension, I lead a wandering life, disguised sometimes like a priest or monk, and sometimes like a peasant or cavalier. Is it then an advantage to know how to make gold at that price? and are not riches a real punishment for those persons who cannot enjoy them in tranquillity?’

This discourse seeming to me very sensible, I said to the sage, ‘There is nothing like a quiet life: you give me a disgust at the philosopher’s stone; and I will be contented with learning of you the future events of my life.’—‘With all my heart, child,’ answered he; ‘I have already made my remarks on your features; let us now see your hand.’ I presented it to him with a confidence that will not do me much honour in the opinion of some readers; and he having examined it with great attention, exclaimed, in a fit of enthusiasm, ‘Ah! what transitions from grief to joy, and from joy to grief! What capricious successions of misfortune and prosperity! But you have already experienced

‘ a great deal of these vicissitudes. You have not a great many more afflictions to undergo; and a nobleman will confer upon you an agreeable destiny, not subject to change.’ After having assured me, that I might depend on this prediction, he bade me farewell, and went out of the eating-house, leaving me quite engrossed with the things which I had heard. I did not at all doubt that the Marquis de Marialva was the nobleman in question; and, of consequence, nothing seemed more possible than the accomplishment of the oracle. But though I had not seen the least appearance of probability, I could not have helped reposing an entire belief in the pretended monk, so much authority had he acquired in my opinion by his elixir. On my side, that I might hasten the happiness that was predicted to me, I resolved to attach myself to the marquis more than I had done to any of my masters; and having formed this resolution, I retired to our house in a transport of joy that I cannot express. Never did a woman leave a fortune-teller with more satisfaction.

CHAP. X.

THE COMMISSION THAT THE MARQUIS DE MARIALVA GAVE TO GIL BLAS, AND THE MANNER IN WHICH THAT FAITHFUL SECRETARY ACQUITTED HIMSELF OF IT.

THE marquis was not yet come home from the lodgings of his actresses; and I found his valets de chambre playing at primero in his apartment, expecting his return; I made up to them, and we amused ourselves in making merriness till two o’clock in the morning, when our master arrived. He was a little surprized to see me, and said with a gracious air, which made me guess that he returned very well satisfied with his evening’s pleasure, ‘ How, Gil Blas! not yet a-bed?’ I answered, that I was first willing to know what orders he had for me. ‘ I shall, perhaps,’ he resumed, ‘ give you a commission to-morrow morning; but it will be time enough then to tell you the particulars. Meanwhile, you may go to rest; and henceforth

remember, that I dispense with your attendance in the evening, having occasion for nobody but my valets de chambre.’

After this explanation, which at bottom gave me a good deal of pleasure, since it spared me a piece of subjection which I should have sometimes felt in a very disagreeable manner, I left the marquis in his apartment, and retiring to my garret, went to bed; but having no inclination to sleep, it came into my head that I should follow the advice which Pythagoras gives us, of recollecting at night all that we have done in the day, in order to applaud our good, and condemn our bad actions.

I did not find my conscience clear enough to be satisfied with my conduct; but reproached myself with having supported the imposture of Laura. In vain did I suggest as an excuse, that I could not in honour give the lye to a girl, who had nothing in view but to do me a pleasure; and that, in some shape, I found myself under a necessity of being an accomplice in the cheat. Little satisfied with this apology, I answered, that I ought not then to have pushed things so far; and that I must have a great deal of impudence to live with a nobleman, whose confidence I so ill repaid. In short, after a severe examination, I concluded, that if I was not a rogue, I was next kin to one.

From thence passing to the consequences, I represented to myself that I played a very high game, in deceiving a man of quality; who, for my sins, would perhaps soon discover the trick. A reflection so judicious, terrified me not a little; but the ideas of pleasure and interest soon dissipated my fear: besides, the prophecy of the man with the elixir would have been sufficient to remove my doubts. I gave myself up, therefore, to the most agreeable fancies: I formed new rules of arithmetick, to reckon within myself the sum to which my wages would amount at the end of ten years service. To this I added the gratifications which I should receive from my master; and measuring them by his liberal disposition, or rather by my own desires, I had an intemperance of imagination, (if I may be allowed the expression) which set no bounds to my fortune;

I was

I was gradually lulled by so much wealth, and fell asleep in the very act of building castles in Spain.

Next day I got up at eight o'clock in the morning, to go and receive my patron's orders; but as I opened the door to go out, I was very much surprized to see him appear before me all alone, in his night-cap and morning-gown. 'Gil Blas,' said he, 'last night, when I left your sister, I promised to be with her this morning; but an affair of consequence hinders me from keeping my word. Go, and assure her from me, that I am very much mortified at the disappointment; and tell her, I shall certainly sup with her in the evening. This is not all,' added he, putting into my hand a purse with a little shagreen box enriched with diamonds; 'carry this my picture to her, and keep this purse, of fifty pistoles, which I give as a mark of the friendship I have already conceived for you.' I took the picture with one hand, and the purse I so little deserved with the other; and running instantly to Laura, cried, in the excess of joy with which I was transported, 'Good! the prediction is visibly accomplishing. What a happiness is it to be the brother of such a handsome and gallant girl! What a pity it is that there is not as much honour as profit and pleasure in it!'

Laura, contrary to the custom of people of her profession, being used to rise early, I surprized her at her toilette; where, in expectation of the Portuguese, she joined to her natural beauty all the auxiliary charms that the art of coquetry could bestow. 'Amiable Estella!' said I to her when I entered, 'the loadstone of strangers! I may now sit at table with my master, since he has honoured me with a commission which gives me that prerogative, and of which I come to acquit myself. He cannot have the pleasure of your company this morning, as he proposed; but, for your consolation, will sup with you at night; and he sends you his picture, which to me seems a matter of still greater consolation.'

I accordingly gave her the box, which, by the bright sparkling of the diamonds that adorned it, infinitely rejoiced her eye-sight. She opened it, and shutting it again, after having con-

sidered the painting superficially, returned to the stones, whose beauty she extolled, saying with a smile, 'These are copies which we women of the stage value more than originals.'

I then told her that the generous Portuguese, when he entrusted me with the picture, had gratified me with a purse of fifty pistoles. 'I congratulate thee upon thy good fortune;' said she to me: 'this nobleman begins where others even rarely end.'—'To you, my dear creature,' I replied, 'I owe this present: the marquis bestowed it upon me solely on account of my being your brother.'—'I wish,' said she, 'that he would give you as much every day; for I cannot express how dear thou art to me. The very first moment I saw thee, I attached myself to thee by a tie too strong for time to break. When I lost thee at Madrid, I did not despair of finding thee again; and yesterday, when I saw thee, received thee as a man whom Fate brought back to my arms. In a word, my friend, Heaven has destined us for one another: thou shalt be my husband; but we must first enrich ourselves: I want to have two or three more intrigues to make thee easy for life.'

I thanked her in a polite manner for the trouble she intended to take on my account; and we insensibly engaged in a conversation that lasted till noon. Then I retired, to give an account to my master of the manner in which his present was received; and though Laura had given me no instructions on that subject, I did not fail to compose by the way a fine compliment, which I intended to repeat in her name. But when I went home, I was told that the marquis had gone out; and it was decreed that I should see him no more, as may be perceived in reading the following chapter.

CHAP. XI.

GIL BLAS RECEIVES A PIECE OF NEWS WHICH IS LIKE A THUNDERBOLT TO HIM.

I Repaired to my eating-house, where, meeting two men of a very agreeable conversation, I dined and sate at table with them till it was time to go

to

to the play. Then we parted; they went about their own affairs, and I took the road to the theatre. I must observe, by the bye, that I had all the reason in the world to be in good humour; mirth had reigned in my conversation with these two gentlemen; my fortune wore a most smiling face: nevertheless my spirits sunk, without my knowing the reason, and without my being able to keep them up. It was, doubtless, a presage of the misfortune with which I was threatened.

As I entered the green-room, Melchior Zapata came to me, and telling me softly to follow him, carried me into a private place, and addressed me in this manner: 'Signior Cavalier, I think it my duty to give you a very important piece of intelligence. You know that the Marquis de Marialva had, at first, a passion for Narcissa, my wife; and had already appointed a day to come and take a slice of my rib, when the artful Estella found means to break the bargain, and allure the Portuguese nobleman to her own charms. You may well believe that an actress does not lose such a good prey without vexation. My spouse has this affair at heart, and is capable of undertaking any thing to be revenged: she has now a fair occasion. Yesterday, if you remember, all our servants crowded to see you; when the under-candle-snuffer told some of the company, that he knew you very well, and that you was nothing less than Estella's brother.

'This report,' added Melchior, 'reached the ears of Narcissa; who did not fail to interrogate the author, and he has confirmed his assertion, by telling her, that he knew you Arsenia's valet, at the same time that Estella, under the name of Laura, served that actress at Madrid. My wife, charmed with that discovery, will impart it to the Marquis de Marialva, who is to be at the play this evening. Take your measures accordingly; if you are not actually Estella's brother, I advise you, as a friend, and on account of our old acquaintance, to provide for your safety. Narcissa, who demands but one victim, has allowed me to give you this notice, that you may

'prevent any sinister accident by immediate flight.'

It would have been superfluous in him to say more of the matter. I thanked the stage-player for his information; and he easily perceived, by my terrified look, that I was not the man to give the candle-snuffer the lye. I did not feel the least inclination to depend upon my effrontery: I was not even tempted to bid Laura farewell, lest she should have insisted upon my facing it out. I could very well conceive that she was an actress of such skill, as to be able to extricate herself out of the dilemma; but I saw nothing except an infallible chastisement for me, and I was not so much in love as to brave it. My sole study being, therefore, to escape with my household gods, (I mean, my baggage) I disappeared from the play-house in a twinkling, and with the utmost dispatch caused my portmanteau to be transported to the house of a carrier, who was to set out for Toledo at three o'clock next morning. I could have wished to be with the Count de Polan, whose house seemed my only asylum; but I was not yet there; and I could not, without the utmost uneasiness, think on the time I had to stay in a city where I was afraid they would search for me even in the night.

I did not, for all that, omit going to supper at my eating-house, although I was as much disturbed as a debtor who knows that there are bailiffs at his heels. What I eat that evening did not, I believe, produce excellent chyle in my stomach. Being the miserable sport of fear, I examined every body that came into the hall; and when, unluckily, any ill-looking fellow entered, (a common case in these places) I shivered with dread. Having supped in the midst of continual alarms, I rose from table, and returned to the carrier's house, where I threw myself on a truss of fresh straw, and lay till the hour of our departure.

Meanwhile, my patience was sufficiently exercised. I was attacked with a thousand disagreeable reflections: when I chanced to slumber, I beheld the furious marquis mangling the fair face of Laura with blows, and demolishing every thing in her house; or heard him order his servants to make
me

me perish under the bastinado. Then starting, I awoke; and though to wake is usually a great comfort after such a terrible dream, waking was to me more dreadful than the dream itself. Happily for me, the carrier delivered me from my affliction, by giving me notice that his mules were ready. I was immediately a-foot, and, thank Heaven! set out radically cured of chiro-mancy and Laura. In proportion as we moved from Grenada, my mind resumed it's tranquillity; and I began to enter into conversation with the carrier. I laughed at some pleasant stories he recounted, and lost, insensibly, all my fear. I enjoyed a sound sleep at Ubeda, where we lay the first night, and on the fourth arrived at Toledo.

My first care was to ask a direction for the Count de Polan's house, whither I repaired, very well persuaded that he would not suffer me to lodge in any other place; but I reckoned without my host: for I found nobody at home but the house-keeper, who told me that his master had set out in the evening for the castle of Leyva, having received a message that Seraphina was dangerously ill.

I did not expect the absence of the count, which diminished the joy I felt at being in Toledo, and induced me to take another resolution. Finding myself so near Madrid, I resolved to go thither, reflecting that I might push myself forward at court, where a superior genius, I had heard, was not absolutely necessary to make a fortune. The very next day I took the advantage of a return horse for that capital of Spain; and Fortune conducted me thither, in order to make me act higher parts than those which I had hitherto performed.

CHAP. XII.

GIL BLAS TAKES LODGINGS IN A HOUSE WHERE HE CONTRACTS AN ACQUAINTANCE WITH CAPTAIN CHINCHILLA. THE CHARACTER OF THAT OFFICER; WITH AN ACCOUNT OF THE AFFAIR THAT BROUGHT HIM TO MADRID.

ON my first arrival at Madrid, I fixed my habitation in a house that was let into lodgings, where lived,

among other people, an old captain, who had come from the farther end of New Castile, to solicit at court for a pension, which he thought he had but too well deserved. His name was Don Hannibal de Chinchilla. It was not without astonishment that I beheld him for the first time; being a man turned of sixty, of a gigantick stature, and extremely meagre. He wore a pair of thick whiskers, that curled up to his temples on each side. Over and above his want of a leg and arm, a large plaister of green silk supplied the place of one eye, and the scars of many wounds appeared on his face. These things excepted, he was pretty much like another man. Besides, he had a good deal of understanding, and still more gravity; was scrupulous in his morals; and, in particular, piqued himself on his delicacy in point of honour.

After having conversed with him two or three times, he honoured me with his confidence. I soon became acquainted with all his affairs. He recounted to me on what occasion he had lost an eye at Naples, an arm in Lombardy, and a leg in the Low-Countries. What I admired in his narration of battles and sieges was, that not one gasconade escaped him, nor even a word in his own praise; though I could have willingly pardoned him for boasting of the half of himself that remained, as an indemnification for the other half that he had lost. Those officers who return from the wars safe and sound are seldom so modest.

But he told me, the thing that gave him the most concern was, that he had spent a considerable estate in his campaigns, so that now his whole fortune was reduced to about an hundred ducats a-year, which was scarce sufficient to maintain his whiskers, clear his lodgings, and pay for writing his memorials; 'For in short, Signior Cavalier,' added he, shrugging up his shoulders; 'I present one, thank God, every day, without being favoured with the least notice. One would say, that there is a wager between the prime-minister and me, which of us shall first fail, I in giving, or he in receiving them. I have also had the honour to present several to his majesty; but the curate sings no better than his clerk; and, in the mean time,

to the play. Then we parted; they went about their own affairs, and I took the road to the theatre. I must observe, by the bye, that I had all the reason in the world to be in good humour; mirth had reigned in my conversation with these two gentlemen; my fortune wore a most smiling face: nevertheless my spirits sunk, without my knowing the reason, and without my being able to keep them up. It was, doubtless, a presage of the misfortune with which I was threatened.

As I entered the green-room, Melchior Zapata came to me, and telling me softly to follow him, carried me into a private place, and addressed me in this manner: 'Signior Cavalier, I think it my duty to give you a very important piece of intelligence. You know that the Marquis de Marialva had, at first, a passion for Narcissa, my wife; and had already appointed a day to come and take a slice of my rib, when the artful Estella found means to break the bargain, and allure the Portuguese nobleman to her own charms. You may well believe that an actress does not lose such a good prey without vexation. My spouse has this affair at heart, and is capable of undertaking any thing to be revenged: she has now a fair occasion. Yesterday, if you remember, all our servants crowded to see you; when the under-candle-snuffer told some of the company, that he knew you very well, and that you was nothing less than Estella's brother.

'This report,' added Melchior, 'reached the ears of Narcissa; who did not fail to interrogate the author, and he has confirmed his assertion, by telling her, that he knew you Arsenia's valet, at the same time that Estella, under the name of Laura, served that actress at Madrid. My wife, charmed with that discovery, will impart it to the Marquis de Marialva, who is to be at the play this evening. Take your measures accordingly; if you are not actually Estella's brother, I advise you, as a friend, and on account of our old acquaintance, to provide for your safety. Narcissa, who demands but one victim, has allowed me to give you this notice, that you may

'prevent any sinister accident by immediate flight.'

It would have been superfluous in him to say more of the matter. I thanked the stage-player for his information; and he easily perceived, by my terrified look, that I was not the man to give the candle-snuffer the lye. I did not feel the least inclination to depend upon my effrontery: I was not even tempted to bid Laura farewell, lest she should have insisted upon my facing it out. I could very well conceive that she was an actress of such skill, as to be able to extricate herself out of the dilemma; but I saw nothing except an infallible chastisement for me, and I was not so much in love as to brave it. My sole study being, therefore, to escape with my household gods, (I mean, my baggage) I disappeared from the play-house in a twinkling, and with the utmost dispatch caused my portmanteau to be transported to the house of a carrier, who was to set out for Toledo at three o'clock next morning. I could have wished to be with the Count de Polan, whose house seemed my only asylum; but I was not yet there; and I could not, without the utmost uneasiness, think on the time I had to stay in a city where I was afraid they would search for me even in the night.

I did not, for all that, omit going to supper at my eating-house, although I was as much disturbed as a debtor who knows that there are bailiffs at his heels. What I eat that evening did not, I believe, produce excellent chyle in my stomach. Being the miserable sport of fear, I examined every body that came into the hall; and when, unluckily, any ill-looking fellow entered, (a common case in these places) I shivered with dread. Having supped in the midst of continual alarms, I rose from table, and returned to the carrier's house, where I threw myself on a truss of fresh straw, and lay till the hour of our departure.

Meanwhile, my patience was sufficiently exercised. I was attacked with a thousand disagreeable reflections: when I chanced to slumber, I beheld the furious marquis mangling the fair face of Laura with blows, and demolishing every thing in her house; or heard him order his servants to make
me

me perish under the bastinado. Then starting, I awoke; and though to wake is usually a great comfort after such a terrible dream, waking was to me more dreadful than the dream itself. Happily for me, the carrier delivered me from my affliction, by giving me notice that his mules were ready. I was immediately a-foot, and, thank Heaven! set out radically cured of chiromancy and Laura. In proportion as we moved from Grenada, my mind resumed it's tranquillity; and I began to enter into conversation with the carrier. I laughed at some pleasant stories he recounted, and lost, insensibly, all my fear. I enjoyed a sound sleep at Ubeda, where we lay the first night, and on the fourth arrived at Toledo.

My first care was to ask a direction for the Count de Polan's house, whither I repaired, very well persuaded that he would not suffer me to lodge in any other place; but I reckoned without my host: for I found nobody at home but the house-keeper, who told me that his master had set out in the evening for the castle of Leyva, having received a message that Seraphina was dangerously ill.

I did not expect the absence of the count, which diminished the joy I felt at being in Toledo, and induced me to take another resolution. Finding myself so near Madrid, I resolved to go thither, reflecting that I might push myself forward at court, where a superior genius, I had heard, was not absolutely necessary to make a fortune. The very next day I took the advantage of a return horse for that capital of Spain; and Fortune conducted me thither, in order to make me act higher parts than those which I had hitherto performed.

CHAP. XII.

GIL BLAS TAKES LODGINGS IN A HOUSE WHERE HE CONTRACTS AN ACQUAINTANCE WITH CAPTAIN CHINCHILLA. THE CHARACTER OF THAT OFFICER; WITH AN ACCOUNT OF THE AFFAIR THAT BROUGHT HIM TO MADRID.

ON my first arrival at Madrid, I fixed my habitation in a house that was let into lodgings, where lived,

among other people, an old captain, who had come from the farther end of New Castile, to solicit at court for a pension, which he thought he had but too well deserved. His name was Don Hannibal de Chinchilla. It was not without astonishment that I beheld him for the first time; being a man turned of sixty, of a gigantick stature, and extremely meagre. He wore a pair of thick whiskers, that curled up to his temples on each side. Over and above his want of a leg and arm, a large plaister of green silk supplied the place of one eye, and the scars of many wounds appeared on his face. These things excepted, he was pretty much like another man. Besides, he had a good deal of understanding, and still more gravity; was scrupulous in his morals; and, in particular, piqued himself on his delicacy in point of honour.

After having conversed with him two or three times, he honoured me with his confidence. I soon became acquainted with all his affairs. He recounted to me on what occasion he had lost an eye at Naples, an arm in Lombardy, and a leg in the Low-Countries. What I admired in his narration of battles and sieges was, that not one gasconade escaped him, nor even a word in his own praise; though I could have willingly pardoned him for boasting of the half of himself that remained, as an indemnification for the other half that he had lost. Those officers who return from the wars safe and sound are seldom so modest.

But he told me, the thing that gave him the most concern was, that he had spent a considerable estate in his campaigns, so that now his whole fortune was reduced to about an hundred ducats a-year, which was scarce sufficient to maintain his whiskers, clear his lodgings, and pay for writing his memorials; 'For in short, Signior Cavalier,' added he, shrugging up his shoulders; 'I present one, thank God, every day, without being favoured with the least notice. One would say, that there is a wager between the prime-minister and me, which of us shall first fail, I in giving, or he in receiving them. I have also had the honour to present several to his majesty; but the curate sings no better than his clerk; and, in the mean time,

time, my castle of Chinchilla sinks into ruins for want of reparation.'

'We must despair of nothing,' said I to the captain; 'you are now perhaps on the eve of seeing all your toils and troubles repaid with interest.' — 'I ought not to flatter myself with that hope,' replied Don Hannibal; 'three days are not yet elapsed since I spoke to one of the minister's secretaries; and if I may believe what he said, I may make myself very easy.' — 'And pray, what did he say?' I replied: 'Did he pretend that you was not worthy of a recompence?' — 'You shall judge,' resumed Chinchilla. 'The secretary told me very plainly, "Master What-d'ye-call-um, don't brag so much of your zeal and fidelity. You have done no more than your duty, in exposing yourself to danger in behalf of your country. The glory alone which attends brave actions is a sufficient recompence, and ought to satisfy a Spaniard in particular. You must deceive yourself, therefore, if you look on the gratification you solicit, as a debt due to your valour. Provided it be granted to you, you will owe it entirely to the favour and generosity of the king, who is pleased to think himself indebted to those of his subjects who have distinguished themselves in the service of the state." You see by this,' pursued the captain, 'that I am still in his debt; and that, in all likelihood, I shall return as rich as I came.'

One naturally interests himself for a brave man in adversity. I encouraged him to persevere, and offered to write his memorials gratis. I went even so far as to offer him my purse, and to conjure him to take out of it what money he wanted. But he was none of those who never wait for a second invitation on these occasions; on the contrary, he shewed himself very delicate on this point, and thanked me in a lofty manner, for my good-will. He afterwards told me, that rather than be a burden to any body, he had accustomed himself, by degrees, to live so frugally, that the least nourishment was sufficient for his subsistence. This was but too true; and, therefore, he was nothing but skin and bone. That he might have no witness of his wretched repast,

he used to lock himself up in his chamber at meals. I obtained of him, however, by dint of entreaty, that we should dine and sup together; and deceiving his pride by an ingenious compassion, ordered more viands and liquor than I had occasion for to be brought, and urged him to eat and drink. At first, he stood upon ceremony, but at length he yielded to my entreaties. After which, becoming insensibly more bold, he, of himself, assisted me in clearing my plate, and emptying my bottle.

When we had drank four or five draughts, and reconciled his stomach to good nourishment; 'Truly,' said he, with an air of gaiety, 'you are very bewitching, Signior Gil Blas; you make me do what you please; your behaviour divests me of all fear of abusing your beneficent disposition.' My captain, at that time, seemed so well rid of shame, that if I had laid hold of the opportunity of pressing him again to accept my purse, I believe he would not have refused it: but I did not put him to the trial; contenting myself with having made him my messmate, and with taking the trouble not only of writing his memorials, but also of helping him to compose them. By means of having copied homilies, I had learned to turn a period, and was become a kind of author. The old officer, on his part, piqued himself on his knowledge in composition; so that, exerting ourselves together, through emulation, we produced morsels of eloquence, worthy of the most celebrated masters of Salamanca. But in vain did each of us exhaust his genius, in sowing flowers of rhetorick in those memorials; it was no better, as the saying is, than sowing them on sand. Whatever expedient we fell upon to enhance the services of Don Hannibal, the court paid no regard to it; a circumstance that did not at all engage the old invalid to make the elogium of those officers who ruin themselves in the field. In his bad humour he cursed his fate, and wished Naples, Lombardy, and the Low-Countries, at the devil.

To compleat his mortification, it happened one day that, under his very nose, a poet, introduced by the Duke d'Alva, having rehearsed, in the presence, an ode on the birth of an infant, was gratified with a pension of

five hundred ducats. I believe the maimed captain would have run mad on this occasion, had I not been at great pains to recompose him. "What is the matter?" said I, seeing him quite beside himself; "there is nothing in this that ought to give you uneasiness. Has it not been the privilege of poets, time immemorial, to make princes pay tribute to the Muse? There is not a crowned head in the world that does not gratify one of these gentlemen with a pension; and, between you and me, these sort of rewards being generally transmitted to the knowledge of posterity, immortalize the liberality of kings; whereas the other recompences which they bestow are often but so much loss to their reputation." How many rewards did Augustus dispense, how many pensions did he grant, of which we have not the least intimation! But the most remote posterity will always know, as we do, that Virgil received near two hundred thousand crowns from the bounty of that emperor.

Notwithstanding all I could say to Don Hannibal, the fruits of the ode stuck in his stomach like lead; and as he could not digest it, he resolved to abandon the whole of his pursuit. But first being willing, as his last effort, to present one other memorial to the Duke of Lerma, we went together to the house of that prime-minister, where we met a young man, who having saluted the captain, said to him, with an affectionate air, "My dear old master, is it you? what affair has brought you hither? If you have occasion for a person of interest with his highness, pray command me; I offer you my good offices." "How, Pedrillo!" replied the captain; "to hear you talk, one would imagine you enjoy some important post in this family." "I have, at least," answered the young man, "power enough to be of service to an honest country gentleman like you." "If that be the case," said the officer with a smile, "I have recourse to your protection." "Tis granted," resumed Pedrillo; "let me know what is the business, and I promise you shall get some snips out of the minister."

We had no sooner communicated the affair to this benevolent young fellow, than he asked where Don Hannibal

lodged; in which being satisfied, he assured us that we should hear of him next day; and then disappeared, without giving us the least hint of what he intended to do, or even telling us whether or not he belonged to the Duke of Lerma. I was curious to know who this Pedrillo was, that seemed so sprightly. "He is a young fellow," said the captain, "who served me some years ago; and who, seeing me in want, left me to go in quest of a better place. I don't blame him for that; it is very natural for one to change for the better. He is a wag who does not want understanding, and is as intriguing as the devil; but in spite of all his art, I don't depend a great deal upon the zeal which he has expressed in my behalf." "Who knows," said I, "but he may be of some use? If he belongs, for example, to some one of the duke's principal officers, he may have it in his power to do you service. You are not ignorant that every thing is carried, among the great, by cabal and intrigue; that they have favourite domesticks, who lead them by the nose; and that these again, in their turn, are governed by their own valets."

Next morning, Pedrillo coming to our lodgings, "Gentlemen," said he, "if I did not explain myself yesterday, on the means I have of serving Captain Chinchilla, it was because we were not in a place proper for such an explanation. Besides, I was willing to sound the business, before I disclosed it to you. You must know, then, that I am the lacquey and confident of Signior Rodrigo de Calderona, the Duke of Lerma's first secretary. My master, who is very much addicted to gallantry, sups every evening with an Arragonian nightingale, that he keeps engaged near the court. She is a very handsome girl, from Albarazin, of good understanding, and sings to admiration; therefore she is called Signora Sirena. As I carry a billet-doux to her every morning, I have just now seen her; I have proposed that she shall make Don Hannibal pass for her uncle, and, on that supposition, engage her gallant to protect him. She is willing to undertake the affair; for, besides the small

H h

advan-

‘ advantage she foresees in it for herself, she will be extremely glad to be thought the niece of a brave gentleman.’

Signior de Chinchilla made wry faces at this proposal, and expressed a reluctance in making himself an accomplice of such a prank; and still more, in suffering a she-adventurer to dishonour his family, by saying she belonged to it. He was disgusted at it, not only on account of himself, but also perceived in it (if I may be allowed the expression) a retrospective ignominy upon all his ancestors. This delicacy seemed very unseasonable to Pedrillo; who, being shocked at it, exclaimed, ‘ You jest sure, to take it in that view! You are such a set of people, you cottage squires, your vanity is quite ridiculous!—Signior Cavalier, he pursued, addressing himself to me, ‘ are you not surprized at the scruples he makes? Egad! it is a fine thing, indeed, to stand on such punctilios at court! Fortune is never neglected there, whatever shape it assumes.’

I approved of what Pedrillo said, and we harangued the captain so successfully, that we prevailed upon him, in spite of himself, to become Sirena’s uncle. When we had gained the victory over his pride, we laid all our three heads together, in order to compose a new memorial for the minister, and it was revised, augmented, and corrected accordingly. I then wrote it out fair, and Pedrillo carried it to the Arragonian lady, who, that very evening, put it into the hands of Signior Don Rodrigo, to whom she spoke in such a manner, that the secretary believing her really the captain’s niece, promised to exert himself in his behalf. A few days after, we saw the effects of this our work. Pedrillo came to our lodging with an air of triumph: ‘ Good news!’ said he to Chinchilla; ‘ the king is going to make a distribution of governments, benefices, and pensions, in which you shall not be forgot. But I am ordered to ask what present you intend to make to Sirena. As for my own part, I declare I’ll have nothing at all. I prefer the pleasure of having contributed towards bettering my old master’s fortune, to all the gold in the world. But this is not

‘ the case with our nymph of Albarzin; she is a little Jewishly inclined; when the business is to oblige her neighbour, she would take money of her own father; so you may judge if she will refuse it from a pretended uncle.’

‘ Let her mention her demand,’ replied Don Hannibal, ‘ she shall, if she pleases, have yearly one-third of the pension I obtain; and that ought to satisfy her, if the whole revenues of his Catholick Majesty were concerned in the bargain.’—‘ For my own part,’ replied Don Rodrigo’s Mercury, ‘ I would cheerfully rely upon your word, because I know the value of it; but you have to do with a little creature who is naturally distrustful. Besides, she would much rather have, once for all, two-thirds of the product advanced in ready money.’—‘ Where the devil does she think I shall find it?’ cried the officer, hastily interrupting him; ‘ does she think I am a money-broker? It seems you have not made her acquainted with my situation.’—‘ Pardon me,’ replied Pedrillo; ‘ she knows very well that you are as poor as Job: after what I have told her, she cannot be ignorant of your circumstances. But don’t give yourself any trouble about the matter; I am a man fertile in expedients. I know an old rogue of a lawyer who takes pleasure in lending his money at ten per cent. You shall make an assignment, with security to him, before a notary, of the first year of your pension, for the like sum, which you shall acknowledge to have received from him, and which you will touch in effect, the interest included. With regard to the security, the lender will be contented with your castle of Chinchilla, such as it is; so that we shall have no dispute upon that score.’

The captain protested that he would accept of the conditions, if he should be lucky enough to have any share in the favours which were to be distributed next day. And he was not disappointed; being gratified with a pension of three hundred pistoles on a certain government. As soon as he understood this piece of news, he gave all the security that was demanded, transacted his little affairs, and returned to

New Castile with some pistoles in his pocket.

CHAP. XIII.

GIL BLAS MEETS HIS DEAR FRIEND FABRICIUS AT COURT; THEIR MUTUAL JOY: THEY REPAIR TO A CERTAIN PLACE, WHERE A CURIOUS CONVERSATION HAPPENS BETWEEN THEM.

I contracted a custom of going every morning to court, where I commonly spent two or three hours, in seeing the grandees pass and repass, though they appeared there without that splendour which surrounds them in other places.

One day, as I walked to and fro, and strutted through the apartments, making like many others, a foolish figure enough, I perceived Fabricius, whom I had left at Valladolid in the service of an hospital director. What astonished me was, that he talked familiarly to the Duke of Medina Sidonia, and the Marquis of Santa-Cruz. Nay, these two noblemen seemed to listen to him with pleasure, and he was as well dressed as a man of quality. 'Am I not mistaken?' said I to myself. 'Can this be the son of barber Nunez? Perhaps it is some young courtier who resembles him.' I did not long remain in doubt: the noblemen went away, and I accosted Fabricius. He knew me at first sight; and after having made me squeeze through the crowd with him, to get out of the apartments, 'My dear Gil Blas,' said he, embracing me, 'I am rejoiced to see you again! How art thou employed at Madrid? art thou still in service, or hast thou some post at court? Give me an account of all that has happened to thee, since thy precipitate retreat from Valladolid?'—'You ask me a great many questions at once,' said I; 'and we are not now in a proper place to relate adventures.'—'Thou art in the right,' he replied; 'we shall be more at liberty in my lodgings. Come; I will shew you the way; it is not far from hence. I am quite my own master, agreeably lodged, perfectly easy in my circumstances, I am contented with my situation,

and happy because I think myself so.'

I accepted the proposal, and followed Fabricius, who stopped before a very fine house, where he told me he lodged. We crossed a court, where, on one side, there was a great staircase that led to very superb apartments, and, on the other, a small flight, equally dark and narrow, by which we ascended to the lodging he had so much extolled. It consisted of one room only, which my ingenious friend had divided into four, by thin deal boards. The first served as an anti-chamber to the second, where he lay; he had made a closet of the third, and a kitchen of the last. The chamber and anti-chamber were lined with maps, and theses of philosophy; and the furniture was suitable to this kind of hanging; consisting of a large brocade bed, very much worn, old chairs covered with yellow serge, garnished with a fringe of Grenada silk of the same colour; a table with gilt feet, covered with leather that seemed to be once red, and bordered with a tinsel fringe become black by the lapse of time; with an ebony cupboard, adorned with figures coarsely carved. He had, instead of a bureau, in his closet, a little table; and his library was composed of some books, with several bundles of paper lying on shelves, placed above one another, along the wall. His kitchen, which was conformable to the rest, contained some earthen ware, and other necessary utensils.

Fabricius, after having given me time to consider his apartment, said, 'What dost thou think of my lodging and oeconomy? an't thou enchanted with them?'—'Yes, faith,' I replied, smiling; 'I am so. Thou must have certainly played thy cards well at Madrid, to be so well furnished. Thou, doubtless, enjoyest some post.'—'Heaven forbid!' replied he; 'the business I follow is above all employments whatever. A man of fashion, to whom this house belongs, gave me a room, which I have divided into four, and furnished, as thou seest. I meddle with nothing but what gives me pleasure, and feel not the cravings of necessity.'—'Pray be more explicit,' said I, interrupting him; 'you irritate the desire I have of knowing what you do.'—

H h 2

'Well,'

Well, said he; thou shalt be satisfied. I am turned author, and have commenced wit; I write in verse as well as in prose, and am equally good at every thing.

Thou a favourite of Apollo! cried I, laughing. This is what I never could have divined. I should have been much less surprized to have found thee in a quite contrary situation. What charms couldst thou find in the condition of a poet? methinks these people are commonly despised in civil life; and are far from having an established ordinary.—O fy! cried he, in his turn; thou talkest of those miserable authors, whose works are the refuse of libraries and players. Is it to be wondered at, that such writers are not esteemed? But good authors, my friend, are on a better footing in the world; and I may say, without vanity, that I am one of that number.—I don't at all doubt it, said I; thou art a young fellow of excellent genius: that which is composed by thee cannot be bad. All that I am at a loss to know is, how thou wast first seized with the rage of rhyme.

Thy surprize is just, replied Nunnez; I was so well satisfied with my situation while in the service of Don Manuel Ordonnez, that I did not so much as wish for any other. But my genius rising by degrees, like that of Plautus, above servitude, I composed a comedy, which was acted by the company at Valladolid. Although it was not worth a fig, it met with great success; from whence I concluded, that the publick was a good milch cow, which easily parted with it's store. This reflection, joined to the furious desire of composing new pieces, detached me from the hospital. The love of poetry banished my passion for riches; and resolving to repair to Madrid, as the centre of wit, in order to form my taste, I demanded my dismissal from the director: who did not grant it without regret, so much affection had he conceived for me. "Fabricius,"

said he, "hast thou any cause to be dissatisfied?"—"No, Sir," I replied; "you are the best of masters, and I am penetrated with your generosity. But, you know, one must follow his destiny. I find I am born to eternize my name by works of genius."—"What folly possesses thee!" resumed the good citizen; "thou hast already taken root in the hospital, and art of that kind of wood of which stewards and even directors are made. Thou art going to leave what is solid, in order to employ thyself in trifles; and thou wilt soon repent of thy imprudence, my child."

The director, seeing that he opposed my design to no purpose, paid my wages, and over and above, made me a present of fifty ducats, as a recompence for my faithful services: so that with this, and what I found means to glean in the little commissions that were entrusted to my integrity, I was in a condition, on my arrival at Madrid, to appear in a very handsome manner. This I failed not to do; though the writers of our nation don't much pique themselves on their neat appearance. I soon became acquainted with Lope de Vega*, Miguel Cervantes de Saavedra†, and other famous authors; but, in preference to these great men, I chose for my preceptor a young batchelor of Cordova, the incomparable Don Lewis de Gongora, the finest genius that ever Spain produced. He will not allow his works to be printed in his life-time, but contents himself with reading them to his friends; and, what is very remarkable, Nature has endued him with the rare talent of succeeding in all kinds of poetry. He chiefly excels in satire, which, indeed, is his main strength. He is not (like Lucilius) a muddy river that sweeps along with it abundance of slime; but rather the Tagus, that rolls over golden sands it's limpid stream.—Thou drawest, said I to Fabricius, an agreeable picture of this same batchelor; and I don't doubt that a

* A celebrated dramatick poet, as much admired by the Spaniards as Shakespear is by the English. He is said to have composed eighteen hundred pieces for the stage, in verse, besides many other works.

† The renowned author of Don Quixote.

‘person of such merit, has a great number of envious enemies.’—‘All our authors,’ he replied, ‘good as well as bad, inveigh bitterly against him. He delights,’ says one, ‘in bombast, points, metaphors, and transposition.’—‘His verses,’ saith another, ‘are as obscure as those which the Salian priests sang in their processions, and which nobody understood.’ Others again find fault with his composing sometimes sonnets or romances, sometimes comedies, stanzas, and acrosticks; as if he had foolishly undertaken to eclipse all the great masters in their own different ways. But all these efforts of jealousy are baffled by a muse that is cherished by all ranks of people, from the highest to the lowest.

‘It was under this skilful master that I served my apprenticeship; and I dare say it has appeared; for I have so happily imbibed his genius, that I have already composed some detached pieces which he would not blush to father. I opened my ware (according to his example) in the houses of the great, where I am wonderfully well received, and have to do with people who are not difficult to please. ‘Tis true, indeed, my successful beginning has been of no disservice to my later compositions. In short, I am beloved by several noblemen, and in particular, live with the Duke de Medina Sidonia, as Horace once lived with Mæcenas. You see,’ added Fabricius, ‘in what manner I was metamorphosed into an author. I have nothing else to relate; so that it is now thy turn, Gil Blas, to rehearse thy exploits.’

I opened accordingly; and suppressing every trivial circumstance, gave him the detail he desired: after which, it being dinner-time, he took out of his ebony cupboard, a couple of napkins, some bread, the remains of a shoulder of roast mutton, a bottle of excellent wine, and we sat down at the table with all the gaiety of two friends who meet after a long separation. ‘Thou seest,’ said he, ‘my free and independent life; I might, if I would, go and dine every day with the people of quality; but, besides that the poetick inclination keeps me oftentimes at home, I am a sort of an Ari-

stippus; and can equally accommodate myself to company and solitude, to affluence and frugality.’ We liked the wine so well, that there was a necessity of taking another bottle from the store; and, towards the end of the repast, I expressed a desire of seeing some of his productions. He immediately searched among his papers for a sonnet, which he read aloud with great emphasis. Nevertheless, in spite of the charms of his reading, I found the performance so obscure, that I could not comprehend the meaning of one syllable. Perceiving my ignorance, ‘This sonnet,’ said he, ‘does not seem very clear to thy apprehension; is it not so?’ I owned to him that I could have wished it had been more plain. Upon which he fell a laughing at my expence. ‘If this sonnet,’ he resumed, ‘is not intelligible, so much the better. The natural and simple won’t do for sonnets, odes, and other works that require the sublime. The sole merit of these is in their obscurity; and it is sufficient if the poet himself thinks he understands them.’—‘You joke, friend!’ said I, interrupting him; ‘good sense and perspicuity ought to be ingredients in poetry of all kinds whatever; and if thy incomparable Gongora writes not more plainly than thou dost, I confess my opinion of him sinks apace. He must be a poet who can never deceive any other age than his own. Let us now have a specimen of thy prose.’ Hereupon, Nunnez produced a preface, which (he said) he intended to prefix to a collection of comedies that he had then in the press; and, having read it, asked my opinion. ‘I am,’ said I, ‘no better pleased with thy prose than with thy poetry. Thy sonnet is a piece of verbose fustian; and thy preface is composed of far-fetched expressions, words that have not the publick stamp, perplexed phrases; in a word, thy style is quite peculiar to thyself; and the books of our best authors, ancient as well as modern, are written in a quite different manner.’—‘Poor ignoramus!’ cried Fabricius; ‘thou dost not know, then, that every prosaick writer who now aspires at the reputation of a delicate pen, affects that singularity of style, and those odd expressions, which shock thee so much. There are of

“us five or six bold innovators, who have undertaken to make a thorough change in the language; and we will accomplish it (please God!) in spite of Lope de Vega, Cervantes, and all the fine geniuses who cavil at our new modes of speech. We are seconded by a number of partizans of distinction, and have even some theologicians in our cabal.

“After all,” added he, “our design is commendable; and, prejudice apart, we are more valuable than those natural writers who speak like the common run of mankind. I don’t know for what reason they are esteemed by so many persons of honour. Their manner was proper enough at Athens or Rome, where there was no distinction in point of speaking; so that Socrates said to Alcibiades, the people was an excellent school-master: but at Madrid, we have both a good and a bad language, and our courtiers express themselves quite otherwise than our citizens, believe me. In short, our new style overtops that of our antagonists. I will, by one example, make thee perceive the difference between the gentility of our diction, and the flatness of theirs. They would say, quite plainly, for instance, “Interludes embellish a comedy:” while we, with more spirit, would pronounce, “Interludes create beauty in a comedy.” Take notice of that; *create beauty*. Dost thou perceive all the brilliancy, all the delicacy, all the prettiness, of the expression?”

I interrupted my innovator with a loud laugh. “Go, Fabricius,” said I, “thou art quite an original with this thy precious language.—And thou, answered he, ‘art no better than a beast, with thy natural style. “Go,” said he, repeating the words of the Archbishop of Grenada; “go and

“tell my treasurer to give you an hundred ducats; and Heaven direct you with that sum! Adieu, Mr. Gil Blas; I wish you a great deal of good fortune, with a little more taste!”

I redoubled my mirth at this sally; and Fabricius, forgiving me for having spoke so irreverently of his writings, lost nothing of his good humour. We finished our second bottle; and, getting up from table in a pretty good trim, went out with a design to walk in the Prado; but, passing by the door of a tavern, we took it in our heads to go in.

This place was usually frequented by good company; and I observed in two separate halls, a great many cavaliers amusing themselves in different diversions. In one, they played at drafts and primero; and, in the other, ten or twelve persons were listening very attentively to a dispute between two professed wits. We had no occasion to go near them, in order to learn that a metaphysical proposition was the subject of their dispute; for they talked with such warmth and transport, that they looked like people possessed. I imagine, if Eleazar’s ring* had been put under their noses, we should have seen devils issue with their breath. “Good God!” said I to my companion, “what passion! what lungs! These disputants were certainly born to be publick criers. The greatest part of mankind are misplaced.”—“Yes, truly,” he replied; “these people seem to be of the race of Novius†, that Roman banker, whose voice exceeded the noise of carmen. But,” added he, “what gives me the greatest disgust at their discourse is, that our ears are stunned to no purpose.” We removed at a distance from those vociferous metaphysicians, and by that expedient I prevented a

* Eleazar was a famous magician, who cast out devils, by affixing to the nose of the possessed a certain mystical ring, which the demon no sooner smelled, than he abandoned the patient. In performing before the Emperor Vespasian, he commanded the devil to overset a pitcher of water, which the demon immediately complied with, to the astonishment of the spectators.

† Novius, from being a slave, came to be a rich citizen of Rome, and turned usurer: which infamy Horace has perpetuated, and has also immortalized the loudness of his voice, in the sixth Satire of his first book.

—*At hic si plaustra ducenta
Concurrantque foro tria funera magna sonabit,
Cornua quod, vincatque iuba.*

violent head-ache which had begun to seize me. We went and sat down in the corner of the other hall, whence, while we drank refreshing liquors, we examined the cavaliers as they came in and went out. As Nunnez knew almost all of them, 'Egad!' cried he, 'the dispute of our philosophers won't be soon over: here are fresh reinforcements arriving: these three men will engage in the fray. But seest thou these two originals going out? That little, swarthy, withered creature, whose lank straight hair falls down in equal portions before and behind, is called Don Julien de Velanunno, and is a young judge who affects the beau: one of my friends and I going to dine with him to other day, surprized him in a pretty singular occupation. He was diverting himself in his closet, by throwing away the writings of a process of which he is to make a report, and making a greyhound bring them back again to him, while the dog tore them to pieces very handsomely. The name of that licentiate with the copper nose, who accompanies him, is Don Cherubin Tonto, a canon of the church of Toledo, the weakest mortal in the world; though by his sprightly smiling air, you would imagine he had a great deal of wit. He has bright sparkling eyes, with an arch malicious sneer: so that one would be apt to think him a wag. When he hears a delicate performance read, he listens with such attention as seems full of understanding, and all the while comprehends nothing at all of the matter. He dined with us at the judge's house, where an infinite number of witty things were said; but he spoke never a word, though he applauded them with grimaces and gestures that seemed even superior to the sallies that were uttered.'

'Dost thou know,' said I to Nunnez, 'these two shabby fellows who, with their elbows on the table, sit in a corner, and converse together in whispers?'—'No!' said he, 'their faces are quite unknown to me; but in all likelihood they are coffee-house politicians who censure the government. Mark that genteel cavalier, who whistles as he walks through the hall, and supports himself sometimes

on one foot, sometimes on another; that is Don Augustin Moreto, a young poet, who was born with some genius, but flatterers and ignorant people have almost turned his brain. The man whom he accosts is one of his confederates, who is also moon-struck, and rhymes in prose. More authors still!' cried he, shewing me two well-dressed men coming in; 'one would think they had made a rendezvous here, to pass in review before thee. These are, Don Bernard Desfenguado, and Don Sebastian de Villa Viciosa. The first is a genius full of gall, an author born under the planet of Saturn, a malicious mortal, whose pleasure consists in hating all the world, and is himself beloved by nobody. As for Don Sebastian, he is a young fellow of candour, who will let nothing lie upon his conscience; he lately brought a performance on the stage, which had an extraordinary run; and now he has printed it, that he may no longer abuse the esteem of the publick.'

The charitable pupil of Gongora was going on in explaining the figures of this picture, which shifted so often to the view, when a gentleman belonging to the Duke de Medina Sidonia came and interrupted him, saying, 'Signior Don Fabricio, I was looking for you, in order to let you know that his grace would speak with you immediately at his own house.' Nunnez, who knew that a grandee's wishes cannot be too soon satisfied, quitted me in a trice, to go and wait upon his Mæcenas; while I remained very much astonished to hear him honoured with the appellation of Don, and see him thus become noble in despite of his fire, Master Chrysostom the barber.

C H A P. XIV.

FABRICIUS INTRODUCES GIL BLAS TO THE SERVICE OF COUNT GALIANO, A SICILIAN NOBLEMAN.

I Was so desirous of seeing Fabricius again, that I visited him early next morning, 'Good-morrow!' said I, when I entered, 'Signior Don Fabricio, the flower, or rather glow-worm,

of

of the Asturian nobility !' At these words he laughed heartily. 'Thou hast observed, then,' cried he, 'that I am dubbed a don ?'—'Yes, Mr. Gentleman,' I replied; 'and give me leave to tell you, that when you recounted your metamorphosis yesterday, you forgot the best part of it.'—'I did so,' answered he; 'but truly, if I have assumed that honourable title, it was not so much with a view to gratify my own vanity, as to accommodate myself to that of others. Thou knowest the humour of the Spaniards: they make no account of an honest man, if he has the misfortune to be both poor and mean born. I must tell thee too, that I see so many people call themselves Don Francisco, Don Pedro, or Don What-you-will; that if there is no cheat in the case, thou wilt allow nobility to be a very common thing; and agree, that a plebeian of merit honours it by his association. But let us change the subject,' added he. 'Last night I supped at the Duke de Medina Sidonia's; where, among other guests, was Count Galiano, a Sicilian nobleman of the first rank; and the conversation turning on the ridiculous effects of self-love, I, charmed that I had it in my power to entertain the company on that subject, regaled them with the story of the homilies. Thou mayest well imagine they laughed heartily, and censured the archbishop as he deserved. This produced no bad effect for thee; for thou wast pitied by every body; and Count Galiano, after having asked a good many questions concerning thee, to which thou mayest believe I made suitable answers, desired me to bring thee to his house. I was just now going in quest of thee, to conduct thee thither. I suppose he intends to offer thee the place of one of his secretaries; and I advise thee to accept of it.' The count is rich, and spends like an ambassador at Madrid: he is come to court, it is said, to confer with the Duke of Lerma, about the crown demesnes which that minister designs to alienate in Sicily. In short, Count Galiano, though a Sicilian, seems to be generous, just, and open; and thou canst not do

better than attach thyself to him; he is the man, in all probability, who is destined to enrich thee, according to what was foretold in thy behalf at Grenada.' 'I had resolved,' said I to Nunnez, 'to live at large a little, and enjoy myself a good while, before I should go to service again; but thou speakest to me of this Sicilian count in such a manner, as induces me to change my resolution, and even to wish I was already in his family.'—'Thou mayest soon be there,' he replied, 'or I am much mistaken.' At the same time we went out together to the count, who lodged in the house of his friend Don Sancho d'Avila, then in the country.

We found in the court a great number of pages and footmen, clothed in a livery equally rich and gay, and in the anti-chamber several ushers, gentlemen, and other officers, all magnificently dressed; but withal so ugly, that they looked like a company of apes in Spanish garb. There are figures, both of men and women, on which all art is thrown away.

Don Fabricius having sent in his name, was immediately introduced into a room, whither I followed him, and found the count in his morning-gown, sitting on a sofa, and drinking chocolate. We saluted him with all the demonstrations of the most profound respect; and he honoured us with an inclination of the head, accompanied by such a gracious smile, as at once gained my heart. A wonderful effect, though an ordinary one, which a favourable reception from the great produces in our breasts! They must receive us very ill indeed, before we be disgusted at their behaviour.

Having drank his chocolate, he amused himself some time in playing with a large baboon that sat by him, and was called Cupid. I don't know for what reason the name of that god was bestowed on this animal; unless it was because it had all his malice; for it resembled him in nothing else. Such as it was; however, it did not fail to give vast delight to its master, who was so much charmed with its merry tricks, that he hugged it incessantly in his arms. Though Nunnez and I were not much diverted with the gam-

bols

bols of this beast, we feigned ourselves enchanted with its performances; which pleased the Sicilian so much, that he suspended the pleasure he enjoyed in this pastime, to tell me, 'Friend, you have it in your option to be one of my secretaries: if you like the place, I will give you two hundred pistoles a year, without any other recommendation than that of Don Fabricio.'—'My lord,' cried Nunnez, 'I am bolder than Plato, who had not courage enough to answer for one of his friends, whom he sent to the tyrant Dionysius. I am not afraid of bringing reproaches upon myself, by vouching for my friend.'

I thanked the Asturian poet, with a low bow, for his obliging confidence; then addressing myself to my patron, assured him of my zeal and fidelity. This nobleman no sooner perceived that I relished his proposal, than he ordered his steward to be called; to whom, having communicated something in a whisper, he said, 'Gil Blas, I will tell you presently what is to be the nature of your employment. Meanwhile, you may follow my steward, who has received orders concerning you.' I accordingly obeyed, leaving Fabricio with the count and Cupid.

The steward, who was a most subtle Messineze, conducted me to his apartment, where he loaded me with civilities; and sending for the taylor who had equipped the whole family, ordered him to make for me, with all dispatch, a suit of cloaths of the same magnificence as those of the principal officers. The taylor having taken measure of me, and retired, 'As for your lodging,' said the Messineze, 'I know a chamber that will exactly fit you. But have you breakfasted?' added he. When I answered in the negative, 'Ah, poor lad!' said he, 'why did not you speak? Come, I will shew you to a place where, thank Heaven, you may have what you will for the asking.'

So saying, he carried me down to the buttery, where we found the butler, a true Neapolitan, every whit as cunning as the Messenian. It might be said of him and the steward, 'these two make a pair.' This honest butler, with five or six of his friends, were

cramming themselves with ham, cold tongue, and other relishing bits, which obliged them to redouble their draughts. We joined these hearty cocks, and assisted them in their attacks upon the count's best wines. While this scene passed in the buttery, another such was acted in the kitchen: the cook also treated three or four tradesmen of his acquaintance, who filled their bellies with rabbit and partridge pies: the very scullions enjoyed themselves on what they could pilfer; so that I thought myself in a house abandoned to pillage. Yet these were but trifles, in comparison to what I did not see.

CHAP. XV.

COUNT GALIANO INVESTS GIL BLAS WITH AN EMPLOYMENT IN HIS HOUSE.

I Went to fetch my baggage to my new habitation; and when I returned, the count was at dinner with several noblemen and the poet Nunnez, who called for what he wanted with an easy air, and mingled in the conversation. Nay, I observed that every word he spoke afforded pleasure to the company. What a fine thing is genius! a man of wit can easily turn himself into all shapes.

I dined with the officers, who were treated pretty much in the same manner as our patron; and in the afternoon retired to my chamber, where I began to reflect on my condition.

'Well, Gil Blas,' said I to myself; 'thou art now in the service of a Sicilian count, with whose real character thou art utterly unacquainted. If we may judge by appearance, thou wilt be in this family like a fish in the water: but we must swear to nothing; and thou oughtest to distrust thy fate, the malignity of which thou hast but too often experienced. Besides, thou dost not know for what employment thou art retained: he has already two secretaries and a steward; what service then does he expect from thee? It looks as if he intended to make thee his Mercury. In good time! one cannot be on a better footing with a nobleman, in order to make his way to a good post. He who li-

I r mits

mits himself to honourable services only, moves slowly, step by step, and seldom gains his point at last.'

While I was engrossed by these fine reflections, a lacquey came to tell me, that all the company who had dined at our house were gone home, and that the count wanted to speak with me. I flew instantly to his apartment, where I found him lying on his couch, ready to take his afternoon's nap, with his baboon, which always bore him company.

'Come hither, Gil Blas,' said he; 'take a chair, and listen to what I am going to say.' I obeyed his orders, and he spoke to me in these terms: 'Don Fabricio has told me, that, among other good qualities, you possess that of attaching yourself to your masters; and that you are a young man of incorruptible integrity. These two qualifications determined me to take you into my service; for I have great occasion for an affectionate domestick, who will espouse my interest, and employ his whole attention in husbanding my estate. I am rich, it is true; but my yearly expence greatly exceeds my income. The reason is plain; I am plundered by my servants, and live in my own house as if I was in a forest among robbers. I suspect my butler and steward of having a fellow-feeling the one with the other; and this is more than enough to ruin me from top to bottom. You will say, if I have reason to think them rogues, why don't I turn them away? But where shall I find others made of a different kind of stuff? I will be satisfied with having them both observed by a man who shall have a right to inspect their conduct: and you are the person whom I have chosen for that commission; of which if you acquit yourself well, be assured that you shall not serve an ungrateful master, for I will take care to procure for you a very advantageous settlement in Sicily.'

Having spoke thus, he dismissed me; and that very evening, in presence of all his domesticks, I was proclaimed superintendant of the family. This did not give the Messineze and Neapolitan great mortification at first, because they looked upon me as a jolly companion, of a good composition; and

concluded, that by giving me a share of the spoil, they should be allowed to go on in their old course. But they looked very silly next day, when I declared to them, that I was an enemy to all misdemeanour. I demanded of the butler an account of the provisions; I visited the cellar, and took an inventory of every thing he had in his charge; I mean, table-linen and plate. I then exhorted them to be saving of our patron's wealth; to lay out with œconomy; and ended my advice, by protesting to them, that I would inform that nobleman of every thing that I should observe amiss in his house. I did not stop here: resolving to have a spy, who might discover if there was any sinister intelligence between them, I cast my eyes on a scullion; who being won by my promises, assured me that I could not have applied to a more proper person, to get notice of every thing that happened in the house; that the butler and steward were in a confederacy, and burnt the candle at both ends; that they daily secreted one half of the provision that was bought for the family; that the Neapolitan took care of a lady who lived opposite to the college of St. Thomas; and that the Messenian entertained another at the Sun-gate; that these two gentlemen sent all sorts of provision to their nymphs every morning; and that the cook also dispatched savoury messes to a widow of his acquaintance in the neighbourhood; and that, in consideration of his services to the other two, to whom he was entirely devoted, he disposed, as they did, of the wines in the cellar: in short, that these three domesticks occasioned a most horrible expence in the count's house. 'If you doubt my report,' added the scullion, 'take the trouble of going to-morrow morning, about seven o'clock, to the college of St. Thomas, and you shall see me loaded with a basket, which will change your doubts into certainty.' — 'So,' said I to him, 'thou art agent to these gallant purveyors?' — 'I am,' he replied, 'employed by the butler, and one of my comrades acts for the steward.'

I had the curiosity to repair next morning, at the appointed hour, to the college of St. Thomas, where I did not wait long for my spy, whom I saw coming along with a huge basket filled

filled with butchers meat, poultry, and venison. I took an inventory of the particulars, of which I formed in my pocket-book a short verbal process, that I went and shewed to my master, after having told the trencher-scraper that he might execute his commission as usual.

The Sicilian nobleman, who was naturally passionate, resolved in his first transport to turn away the Neapolitan and Messenian; but after having reflected more coolly, contented himself with dismissing the last, to whose place I succeeded; so that my office of superintendant was suppressed soon after it's creation: and truly I was not sorry for it; for it was, properly speaking, no other than the honourable employment of a spy, and a post which had nothing substantial in it; whereas, by being made steward, I became master of the strong box, and that is every thing. The steward always possesses the first rank among the domesticks of a great family; and there are so many small perquisites attached to his administration, that he may grow rich, even though he be an honest man.

My Neapolitan, whose budget was not yet exhausted, observing my brutal zeal, that I got up every morning to see and keep an account of what victuals were bought, no longer secreted a part; but the rascal continued to purchase the same quantity as before. By this stratagem, increasing the profit he drew from the refuse of the table, which was his perquisite, he found himself in a condition to treat his charmer at least with dressed victuals, if he could not furnish her with raw provision. In short, the devil lost nothing by this reformation, and the count was not a whit the better for having the phoenix of stewards in his service. The superabundance that I then perceived at every meal made me guess this new trick, which I immediately defeated, by retrenching what was superfluous in every course. This I did, however, with such prudence, that the alteration could not be perceived: one would have thought that there was still the same profusion; and yet, by this oeconomy, I considerably diminished the expence. This was what my patron required; he wanted to retrench, without appearing less magnificent; for his avarice was subordinate to his ostentation.

There was yet another abuse to be reformed: I found the wine ran out apace; if, for example, twelve cavaliers happened to dine with my master, they would exhaust fifty, and sometimes five dozen of bottles. I was astonished at this waste; and not doubting that there must be some roguery in the case, consulted my oracle, that is, my drudge, with whom I very often had private conferences, and who made a faithful report of every thing that was said or done in the kitchen, where he was not in the least suspected. He told me, that the waste of which I complained proceeded from a new league between the butler, cook, and those lacquies who filled the wine, and who carried off all the bottles half emptied, which were afterwards shared among the confederates. I spoke to the footmen on this subject, and threatened to turn them out of doors, if ever they should think proper to repeat this practice: upon which they were reclaimed. My master, whom I took care to advertise of the most minute things which I performed for his advantage, loaded me with praises, and grew every day more and more fond of me; and I, in order to reward the good services of the scullion, created him cook's assistant.

The Neapolitan was enraged to find me always on the catch with him; and was cruelly mortified with the checks which he underwent, whenever he presented his accounts to me; for, that I might pair his nails the closer, I took the trouble of going to market, to learn the price of meat, just before he went thither; and, as he attempted to impose upon me afterwards, gave him a vigorous repulse. I was very well persuaded, that he cursed me an hundred times a day; but the subject of his maledictions hindered me from dreading their force. I cannot imagine how he could bear my persecutions, and remain in the service of the Sicilian nobleman. Doubtless, in spite of all my endeavours, he found his account in perseverance.

Fabricio, whom I frequently saw, and to whom I recounted all my hitherto unheard exploits, in quality of steward, was more disposed to blame than applaud my conduct. 'God grant,' said he, one day, 'that thou mayest be recompensed for all this disinterestedness; but, between thee

‘and me, I believe it would not fare the worse with thee, if thou wait not quite so rough with the butler.’—‘How!’ answered I; ‘shall that robber charge in his bill ten pistoles for a fish that did not cost four, and I pass over that article?’—‘Why not?’ he replied, coldly; ‘let him give thee the half of the superplus, according to custom. In good faith, my friend!’ continued he, shaking his head, ‘you are a mere ninny; and, in all appearance, will grow grey in servitude, since you neglect to slay the eel while it is in your hand. Take my word for it, Fortune resembles those brisk airy coquettes who despise the gallant who stands upon ceremony.’

I only laughed at the discourse of Nunnez; who laughed again in his turn, and would have persuaded me that he had only spoke in jest, being ashamed of having given me bad counsel in vain. I continued firm in the resolution of being always zealous and faithful: I felt no inclination to be otherwise; and I dare say, that in four months I saved to my master, by my œconomy, three thousand ducats at least.

CHAP. XVI.

AN ACCIDENT HAPPENS TO COUNT GALIANO'S BABOON, WHICH IS THE CAUSE OF GREAT AFFLICTION TO THAT NOBLEMAN. GIL BLAS FALLS SICK; THE CONSEQUENCE OF HIS DISTEMPER.

ABOUT this time, the repose of the family was strangely disturbed by an accident which will seem trifling to the reader, though it turned out a very serious matter to the servants, and especially to me: Cupid, that baboon of which I have made mention, that animal so beloved by our master, attempting one day to leap from one window to another, acquitted himself so ill in the performance, that he fell down into the court, and dislocated his leg. The count no sooner understood this misfortune, than he uttered such piercing cries, that they were heard all over the neighbourhood; and in the excess of his grief, attacking all his servants without exception, he had well

nigh made a clean house. His fury, however, was limited to curling our negligences, and abusing us, without sparing terms of reproach. He sent immediately for those surgeons who were most expert in fractures and dislocated bones; and who, having visited the patient's leg, reduced it, and applied bandages accordingly. But though all of them assured him there was no danger, my master retained one of them in the house, to be always near the animal, until it was perfectly cured.

I should be to blame if I passed over in silence the grief and anxiety which preyed upon the heart of the Sicilian nobleman during the whole time of the cure. Will it be believed, that all the day he did not stir from his dear Cupid! He was always present when it was dressed, and got out of bed to visit him two or three times every night. But the most troublesome circumstance of all was, that every domestick in the family, and I in particular, were always up, that we might be at hand to be sent wheresoever it should be thought proper for the service of this ape. In a word, we had no rest in the house, till such time as this plaguy beast, having recovered of his fall, betook himself again to his usual caperings and tumblings. After this, can we refuse to credit the report of Suetonius, when he says, Caligula loved his horse to such a degree, that he bestowed upon him a house richly furnished, with officers to serve him, and even designed to make him consul? My patron was no less charmed with his baboon, which he would willingly have created a corregidor, had it been in his power.

An unlucky circumstance for me was, that I had surpassed all the valets in demonstrations of concern, that I might, in so doing, make my court to my master; and underwent such fatigue in behalf of Cupid, that I fell sick upon it, and was seized with such a violent fever that I lost my senses, and know not how I was managed for fifteen days, during which I was in a manner between life and death. This only I know, that my youth struggled so successfully against the fever, and perhaps against the remedies that were administered, that at length I recovered my understanding. The first use I made of it was to perceive that I was not in my own chamber; and wanting

to know the reason, I asked it of an old woman who attended me; but she replied, that I must not speak, for the physician had expressly forbid it. When we are in good health, we commonly laugh at the doctor; but when we are sick, we calmly submit to his prescription.

I thought proper, therefore, to hold my tongue, how much soever I longed to converse with my nurse; and was engaged in reflections on this subject, when two spruce beaux entered, dressed in velvet, with very fine ruffled linen. I imagined they were two noblemen, friends of my master, who, out of consideration for him, came to see me. On this supposition, I made an effort to sit up, and shewed my respect by taking off my cap; but my nurse laid me all along again, and told me that these gentlemen were my physician and apothecary.

The doctor coming to my bed-side, felt my pulse, considered my countenance, and observing all the symptoms of an immediate cure, assumed an air of triumph, as if he had greatly contributed to it; saying, that there was nothing wanting to finish the work but a purge, after which he might boast of having performed a fine cure. When he had spoke thus, he made the apothecary write a prescription; which while he dictated, he viewed himself in a glass, adjusted his perwig, and made such grimaces, that I could not help laughing, in spite of my weakly condition. He then made me a solemn bow, and went away, much more engrossed by his own figure than by the medicines he had prescribed.

After his departure, the apothecary, who had not come hither for nothing, prepared himself for doing something which may be easily guessed; whether he was afraid that the old woman could not acquit herself with dexterity enough, or wanted to operate himself, in order to enhance the value of his ware; but, with all his address, I do not know how it happened, the operation was scarce performed, when I restored to the operator all that he had given me, and left his velvet suit in a fine pickle. He looked upon this accident as a misfortune annexed to pharmacy, and wiping himself with a towel

in silence, went away, resolving to make me pay the scowerer, to whom he was certainly obliged to send his cloaths.

He returned next morning more plainly dressed, though he had no risque to run that day, in bringing the physick which the doctor had prescribed the night before; for I not only felt myself mending every moment, but had such an aversion, since the preceding day, to physicians and apothecaries, that I even cursed the universities where those gentlemen receive the power of slaying men with impunity.

In this disposition, I swore that I would take no more medicine, and wished Hippocrates at the devil, with all his gang. The apothecary, who did not mind what became of his composition, provided he was paid for it, left it on the table, and retired, without speaking a word. I ordered the villainous medicine to be thrown out at a window immediately, being so much prepossessed against it, that I should have thought myself poisoned had I swallowed it. To this stroke of disobedience I added another. I broke silence; and told my nurse, in a peremptory tone, that I absolutely insisted on knowing what was become of my master. The old woman, who was apprehensive of exciting in me a dangerous emotion, should she gratify my curiosity; or resolving perhaps to irritate my distemper by her obstinacy, made no answer; but I persisted with so much passion, that she replied, at length, 'Signior Cavalier, you are now your own master; Count Galiano is gone back to Sicily.'

I could not believe what I heard, and yet there was nothing more true. That nobleman, the very second day of my distemper, fearing that I would die at his house, had the generosity to order me to be transported, with my little effects, to a hired room, where he had abandoned me, without ceremony, to Providence and the care of a nurse. In the interim, having received an order from court, obliging him to repass into Sicily, he set out with such precipitation, that I was not so much as thought of; whether he already numbered me with the dead, or that people of quality are troubled with short memories.

My

My nurse informed me of all this; and likewise assured me, it was she who had called the physician and apothecary, that I might not perish for want of assistance. These comfortable news threw me into a profound reverie. Adieu, my advantageous settlement in Sicily! my sanguine hopes, farewell! 'When any great misfortune happens to you,' says a certain pope, 'examine yourself well; and you will always perceive that it was, in some measure, owing to your own fault.' No disparagement to this holy father, I cannot see how I contributed to my own mischance on this occasion.

When I found the flattering chimeras with which I had stuffed my imagination vanished, the next thing that I concerned myself about was my portmanteau, which I ordered her to bring to my bed-side, that I might examine it. I sighed, when I perceived it open, crying, 'Ah, my dear portmanteau! my only consolation! you have been, I see, at the mercy of strangers.'—'No, no, Signior Gil Blas,' said the old woman; 'don't be uneasy; nothing is stolen from you; I have protected your box, as if it had been my own honour.'

I found in it the suit of cloaths which I had when I came into the count's service, but I looked in vain for that which the Messenian had ordered to be made for me. My master had not thought proper to leave it with me, or else somebody had made free with it during my delirium. All my other baggage remained, and even a great leathern purse that contained my money, which I reckoned twice, as I could not, at first, believe that there were but fifty pistoles remaining of two hundred and sixty that were in it before I fell sick. 'What is the meaning of this, my good mother!' said I to the nurse; 'my finances are terribly diminished.'—'And yet nobody, except myself, hath touched them,' said the old woman; 'and I have been as frugal as possible: but sickness is very expensive; one is always laying out. Here,' added the good mother, taking a packet of paper out of her pocket; 'here is an account of the expence as just as the current coin, which will shew that I have not employed a maravedi amiss.'

I glanced over the bill, which contained fifteen or twenty pages. Mercy upon me! what a quantity of poultry had been bought, while I was out of my senses. There was in broths only to the amount of twelve pistoles at least. The other articles were answerable to this. It cannot be imagined how much was laid out for wood, candles, water, and brooms. Nevertheless, swelled as this account was, the sum total did not exceed thirty pistoles, consequently there ought to be a remainder of one hundred and eighty. This I represented to her; but the bel-dame, with an air of devotion, began to take all the saints to witness, that there were but fourscore pistoles in the purse when the count's butler gave her the charge of my portmanteau. 'What is that you say, goody?' cried I, with precipitation; 'was it the butler who put my things into your hands?'—'Without doubt it was he,' she replied; 'by this token, that when he gave me them, he said, "Good mother, when Signior Gil Blas is stiff, don't fail to treat him with a good funeral, for there is money enough in the portmanteau to answer the expence."'

'Ah, damned Neapolitan!' cried I, 'I am no longer at a loss to know how my money is gone: you have swept it away, to make yourself some amends for the thefts I hindered you to commit.' After this apostrophe, I thanked Heaven that the knave had not carried off the whole. Whatever reason I had, however, to accuse the butler of having robbed me, I could not help thinking that the nurse might, possibly, have done the deed. My suspicion fell sometimes on one, sometimes on the other; but it was still the same thing to me.

I said nothing to the old woman: I did not even cavil at the articles of her conscionable bill; for I should have got nothing by wrangling; and every one must understand his trade: my resentment, therefore, was contented with paying and dismissing her three days after.

I believe, when she went from me, she advertised the apothecary that she had been dismissed, and that I was well enough to decamp without taking my leave of him; for, in a moment after, he came to me, quite out of breath,
and

and presented his bill; in which, under names that were utterly unknown to me, although I had been a physician, he had set down all the pretended medicines with which he had furnished me while I was out of my senses. This bill might be justly said to have been written in the true spirit of an apothecary; and accordingly we disputed about the payment of it. I insisted on his abating one half of the sum he demanded; he swore he would not abate one maravedi. Considering, however, that he had to do with a young man who might give him the slip, by quitting Madrid that very day, he chose rather to be contented with what I offered, that is, three times the value of his drugs, than to run the risque of losing the whole. I gave him the money with infinite regret, and he retired fully revenged for the small disgrace he had suffered on the day of the clyster.

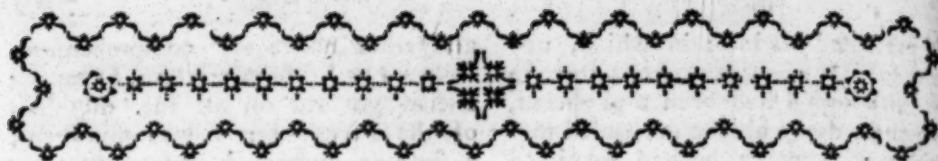
The physician appeared almost at the same time; for those animals are always at the tail of one another. I paid him for his visits, which had been very numerous, and sent him away very well satisfied: but before he would leave me, in order to prove that he had earned his fees, he related all the mortal symptoms, which he had prevented, in my distemper; a task he performed in very learned terms, and with an agreeable air, though it was

altogether above my comprehension. When I had dispatched him, I thought I had got rid of all the ministers of the Fates; but I was mistaken; a surgeon, whom I had never seen, entered my apartment, and having saluted me very respectfully, expressed great joy in seeing me out of danger; a deliverance which, he said, he attributed to two copious bleedings that he had performed, and some cupping-glasses which he had the honour to apply. This was another feather to be plucked from my wing: I was fain to pay tribute to the surgeon also. After so many evacuations, my purse became so feeble, that it was little better than a lifeless corpse, so little of the radical moisture remained.

I began to lose courage, when I saw myself relapsing into a state of misery. I had, while I served my last masters, conceived too great affection for the conveniences of life, and could no longer, as formerly, look upon indigence with the eye of a Cynick philosopher. I will own, however, that I was very much in the wrong, to let myself fall a prey to melancholy. After having so often experienced that Fortune no sooner overthrew me than she raised me up again, I ought to have regarded the troublesome situation in which I was, as another introduction to prosperity.

END OF THE SEVENTH BOOK.

THE



THE
A D V E N T U R E S
O F
G I L B L A S
O F
S A N T I L L A N E.
B O O K V I I I.

C H A P. I.

GIL BLAS CONTRACTS A GOOD ACQUAINTANCE, AND OBTAINS A POST THAT CONSOLES HIM FOR COUNT GALIANO'S INGRATITUDE. THE HISTORY OF DON VALERIO DE LUNA.

 Y not having heard of Nunnez all this time surprized me so much, that I concluded he must be in the country; and, as soon as I could walk, I went to his lodgings, where I understood that he had actually gone to Andalusia, three weeks before, with the Duke de Medina Sidonia. One morning, at waking, Don Melchior de la Ronda came into my head; and remembering that I had promised to him, while I was at Grenada, to visit his nephew, if ever I should return to Madrid, I resolved to keep my promise that very day. Having got a direction to the house of Don Balthazar de Zuniga, I repaired thither, and asked for Signior Joseph Navarro, who

soon appeared. When I saluted him, he received me politely, but coldly, although I had signified my name. I did not know how to reconcile this frozen reception with the character I had heard of this clerk of the kitchen; and was going away, with a resolution to save myself the trouble of a second visit, when, all of a sudden, assuming an open smiling air, he cried, with a good deal of emotion, 'Ah, Signior Gil Blas de Santillane! pray pardon the reception I have given you. My memory had betrayed my inclination: I had forgot your name, and little thought that you was the cavalier of whom mention is made in a letter which I received from Grenada about four months ago.'

'How rejoiced am I to see you!' added he, throwing his arms about my neck, with transport; 'my uncle Melchior, whom I love and honour as a father, conjures me, if perchance I should have the honour of seeing you, to treat you in the same manner as if you was his son, and to employ, if there should be occasion, my own credit, and that of my friends, in your behalf. He has praised the

qualities

qualities of your head and heart, in such terms as would have interested me in your favour, even if I had not been engaged thereto by his recommendation. I beg, therefore, that you will look upon me as a man to whom my uncle has imparted, by letter, all his sentiments with regard to you. I offer you my friendship, and I hope you will not refuse me yours.

I answered with that gratitude which I owed to the polite behaviour of Joseph; and, like people of warmth and sincerity, we contracted an intimacy on the spot: and I did not scruple to disclose the situation of my affairs; which he no sooner heard, than he said, 'I undertake to procure a place for you; and, in the mean time, don't fail to come and dine with me every day. You will fare better here than at your eating-house.' The offer was too agreeable to a poor creature just come out of a fit of illness, who had been used to good living, to be rejected. I accepted the invitation, therefore, and recruited so well in that family, that in fifteen days I had the face of a Barnardine monk. Melchior's nephew seemed to make up his pack rarely; but how could it be otherwise! He had three strings to his bow; was, at the same time, butler, steward, and clerk of the kitchen; besides, (our friendship apart) I believe the comptroller of the house and he had a very good understanding together.

I was perfectly recovered when my friend Joseph, seeing me come in one day to dine as usual, made up to me with a gay air, and said, 'Signior Gil Blas, I have a pretty good place in view for you. You must know that the Duke of Lerma, prime-minister of the Spanish crown, in order to devote himself entirely to affairs of state, intrusts two persons with his own concerns. Don Diego de Montefier has the care of gathering his rents; and the household expence is managed by Don Rodrigo de Calderona. These two men, in whom he can confide, exercise their employments with absolute authority, without the least dependance on one another. Don Diego usually keeps in his service two stewards to receive his cash; and as I understood this morning that he had dismissed one of them, I have

been to ask the place for you. Signior de Montefier, who knows me, and of whose friendship I may boast, has granted it without any difficulty, on my recommendation of your morals and capacity. We will go to his house this afternoon.'

We went thither accordingly. I was very graciously received, and installed in the employment of the steward who had been dismissed. His office consisted in visiting the farms, keeping them in repair, and receiving the rents: in a word, I was concerned in the country estate, and every month gave in my accounts to Don Diego, who examined them with great attention. This was what I wished. Although my integrity had been so ill repaid by my last master, I was resolved to continue always in the same path.

One day, having got notice that a fire had happened in the castle of Lerma, and that more than half of it had been reduced to ashes, I went thither immediately, to take an account of the damage; and having informed myself exactly, upon the spot, of all the circumstances of the fire, I composed an ample relation of it, which Montefier shewed to the Duke of Lerma. This minister, notwithstanding the affliction he was in to hear such bad news, was struck with the relation, and could not help asking who was the author: Don Diego not only satisfied him in that particular, but also spoke so much in my favour, that his excellency remembered me six months after, on the occasion of a story which I am going to recount, and without which, perhaps, I should never have been employed at court. Here it is.

At that time, there lived in the street of the Infantas, an old lady called Inesilla de Cantarilla, whose birth was not certainly known. Some said that she was the daughter of a lute-maker; and others, that her father was a commander of the order of St. Jago. Be that as it will, she was a prodigy. Nature had bestowed upon her the singular privilege of charming the male sex during the whole course of her life, which exceeded seventy-five years. She had been idolized by the noblemen of the old court, and saw herself adored by those of the new. Time, that spares not even beauty, had exerted itself upon her in vain; though he had wither-

ed it, he could not deprive her of the power to please: a noble air, an enchanting wit, and graces that were peculiar to her, made her inspire the men with passion, even in her old age.

One of the Duke of Lerma's secretaries, called Don Valerio de Luna, a cavalier of five and twenty, saw Inesilla, and fell in love with her. He declared himself in the most passionate terms, and pursued his prey with all the fury that love and youth can inspire. The lady, who had her reasons for not complying with his wishes, did not know how to moderate his flame. One day, however, thinking she had found the means, she carried the young man into her closet, and pointing to a clock that stood upon the table, 'You see,' said she, 'what hour it is—on the same day and hour did I come into the world, seventy-five years ago; and do you really think it becomes one of my age to be engaged in love-intrigues? Recal your reason, my child; and stifle those sentiments which are so unsuitable both to you and me.' At this sensible advice, the cavalier, who no longer acknowledged the authority of reason, answered the lady with all the impetuosity of a man possessed by the most violent emotions, 'Cruel Inesilla! why have you recourse to such frivolous remonstrances? Do you imagine that they can change you in my eyes? Don't flatter yourself with such a vain hope. While you are such as I behold you, or while my view is fascinated by the charm, I cannot cease to love you.'—'Well then,' said she, 'since you are so obstinate as to persist in the resolution of fascinating me with your addresses, my house shall be no longer open to you. I forbid you to come near it, and desire to see you no more.'

You will, perhaps, believe, after this, that Don Valerio, disconcerted at what he had heard, made an honourable retreat. On the contrary, he became still more importunate. Love produces the same effects in its votaries, as wine does in drunkards. The cavalier begged, sighed, and, making a sudden transition from entreaties to rage, attempted to enjoy by force, what he could not otherwise obtain. But the lady, resisting with courage, cried, with an air of indignation, 'Hold,

' rash wretch! I will soon bridle your impious ardour. Know that you are my son.' Don Valerio was confounded at these words, which suspended the violence of his passion. But, imagining that Inesilla spoke thus only to be rid of his solicitations, he answered, 'You have invented that fable to elude my desires.'—'No, no,' said she, interrupting him; 'I reveal a mystery, which I should always have concealed, had not you reduced me to the necessity of disclosing it. Six and twenty years ago, I was in love with Don Pedro de Luna, your father, who was then governor of Segovia; and you became the fruit of our mutual passion. He owned you for his son, gave you good education; and although he had not been without other children, your good qualities would have determined him to leave you a fortune. I, for my part, did not forsake you. As soon as you began to appear in the world, I allured you to my house, in order to inspire you with that polite behaviour which is so necessary to a gallant man, and which women only can bestow. I did more; I employed all my credit to introduce you into the prime-minister's service. In short, I have interested myself for you, as I ought to do for a son. After this declaration, take your own measures. If you can purify your sentiments, and look upon me only as a mother, I do not banish you from my sight, but will treat you with all the tenderness I have hitherto preserved; but if you are incapable of that effort, which both nature and reason demand, fly this moment, and deliver me from the horror of your presence.'

While Inesilla spoke in this manner, Don Valerio remained in a profound silence. He seemed to recal his virtue, and endeavour to vanquish himself; but he meditated another design, and prepared a quite different spectacle for his mother. Being unable to console himself for the unsurmountable obstacle that opposed his wishes, he basely yielded to his despair: he drew his sword, and plunged it in his own bosom; punishing himself like another Oedipus, with this difference, that the Theban plucked out his own eyes, out of

of grief for having committed the crime; whereas the Castilian stabbed himself, because he could not commit it.

The unhappy Don Valerio did not die immediately of the blow he had given himself; but had time to repent, and ask pardon of Heaven, for having taken away his own life. As he left, by his death, a vacancy in the post of secretary to the Duke of Lerma, that minister, who had not forgot my account of the fire, nor the good character he had heard of me, chose me to fill the place of this young gentleman.

CHAP. II.

GIL BLAS IS PRESENTED TO THE DUKE OF LERMA, WHO RECEIVES HIM INTO THE NUMBER OF HIS SECRETARIES; SETS HIM TO WORK, AND IS SATISFIED WITH HIS PERFORMANCES.

MONTESER was the person who informed me of this agreeable news, and said, 'Friend Gil Blas, though I feel some regret in losing you, I love you too well not to be overjoyed at your succeeding Don Valerio. You will not fail to make a fine fortune, provided you follow two pieces of advice which I have to give you. The first is, to appear so much attached to his excellency, that he shall never doubt of your being entirely devoted to his will. And the second is, to make your court to Signior Don Rodrigo de Calderona; for that man moulds the mind of his master like wax. If you have the good fortune to acquire the goodwill of that favourite secretary, you will go a great way in a very little time.'

'Signior,' said I to Don Diego, after having thanked him for his good advice, 'tell me, if you please, Don Rodrigo's character. I have often heard him spoke of, and represented bad enough; but I have not much confidence in the pictures which people draw of those who have posts at court; though sometimes, I believe, they do not judge amiss. Pray, tell me then, what do you think of Signior Calderona?'—'You ask me a

'very delicate question,' replied the overseer, with a satirical smile. 'I would tell any body but you, without hesitation, that he is a very honourable gentleman, of an unblemished character; but I will deal more frankly with you; for, besides that I believe you a young man of discretion, I think it my duty to talk openly to you of Don Rodrigo, since I have advised you to cultivate him with care; otherwise, I should only oblige you by halves.'

'You must know then, that from a simple domestick of his excellency, when he was only Don Francis de Sandoval, this man has arrived, by degrees, at the post of his first secretary. There never was a prouder man; he looks upon himself as the Duke of Lerma's colleague; and, at bottom, he may be said to share with him the authority of prime-minister; since he bestows posts and governments on whom he pleases to oblige. This the publick often murmurs at; but he gives himself no trouble about the matter: provided an affair yields him a handsome present, he bids defiance to censure. You will easily conceive, from what I have said,' added Don Diego, 'how you are to behave to such a haughty mortal.'—'O yes!' said I; 'leave that to me: it will be very unlucky, indeed, if I cannot gain his favour. When one knows the foible of a person whom he wishes to please, he must be no conjuror if he fails of success.'—'Well then,' replied Monteser; 'I will now present you to the Duke of Lerma.'

We went immediately to the house of that minister, whom we found giving audience in a great hall, where there was more company than at court. Here I saw commanders, and knights of Calatrava and St. Jago, soliciting for governments and vice-royalties; bishops, who, being sickly at their own dioceses, desired to be made archbishops, only for the change of air; and some holy fathers, of the order of St. Dominick and St. Francis, who laid claim to the mitre with great humility. I likewise observed some half-pay officers, who acted the same part that Captain Chinchilla had formerly done; that is, spent all they had in dancing attendance for a pension. If the duke did not gratify all

their desires, he at least received their petitions with great affability; and I perceived that he answered very politely to those who spoke to him.

We waited patiently until he had dispatched all these suppliants; then Don Diego said to him, 'My lord, here is Gil Blas de Santillane, that young man whom your excellency has chosen to supply the place of Don Valerio.' At these words the duke, casting his eyes upon me, said, in a very obliging manner, 'That I had already merited it by the services I had done him. He afterwards carried me into his closet, to discourse with me in private, or rather to judge of my understanding by my conversation. He desired to know who I was, and the life I had hitherto led, exacting of me a sincere narration of the whole. What a detail was this for me to give! there was no thinking of telling lies before a prime-minister of Spain. On the other hand, I had so many things to tell at the expence of my vanity, that I could not resolve on a general confession. How should I extricate myself from this embarrassment! I took the resolution of embellishing the truth in those parts where it would have offended in its nakedness; but he did not fail to discover it in spite of all my skill. 'Monsieur de Santillane,' said he, with a smile, when I had finished my story, 'I see you have been in your time a little upon the picare*.' I answered with a blush, 'Your excellency ordered me to be sincere, and I have obeyed.'—'I am obliged to thee for it,' he replied: 'go, my child; thou hast come off very cheaply. I am astonished that thou wast not undone by ill example. There are many honest people who would have turned great rogues, had Fortune put them to the same trials.'

'Friend Santillane,' continued the minister, 'forget thy past life, and remember that thou now belongest to the king, in whose service thou wilt be employed for the future. Follow me, and I will make thee acquainted with the nature of thy office.' He carried me into a little closet adjoining to his own, where I saw, upon shelves, twenty thick registers in folio. 'It is

here,' said he, 'where thou must work. These registers compose a dictionary of all the noble families within the kingdoms and principalities of the Spanish monarch. Every book contains, in alphabetical order, the abridged history of every gentleman; in which are recounted the services which he and his ancestors have performed to the state, as well as the affairs of honour in which they have been engaged. There is also mention made of their fortune, morals, and, in a word, of all their bad qualities; so that when they come to solicit favours at court, I see, with one glance of my eye, whether or not they deserve them. That I may have an exact information of all these things, I have pensionaries every where, who take care to get good intelligence, which they transmit to me in writing: but, as their memorials are often diffuse, and stuffed with provincial modes of expression, they must be rendered more concise, and the diction polished; because his majesty sometimes orders these registers to be read to him. In this work, which requires a perspicuous style, I will employ thee this very moment.'

So saying, he took out of a portfolio full of papers, a memorial, which he put into my hand; and went out of the closet, leaving me at liberty to perform my *coup d'essai*. I read the piece, which seemed not only stuffed with barbarous terms, but even filled with indecent passion, though it had been composed by a monk in the town of Solsona. He there tore to pieces, without mercy, a good Catalonian family; and God knows if he spoke truth: it looked so much like a scandalous libel, that I at first made some scruple of working upon it, being afraid of making myself an accomplice in the calumny. Nevertheless, novice as I was at court, I went on, at the hazard of his reverence's soul; and placing all the iniquity, if there was any in the case, to his account, began to dishonour, in good Castilian phrases, two or three generations of honest men perhaps.

I had already finished four or five pages, when the duke, impatient to

* A Spanish word, signifying rogue.

know how I performed, returned, and said, 'Santillane, shew me what thou hast done; for I long to see it.' At the same time, throwing his eyes upon my work, he read the beginning with great attention; and seemed so well satisfied, that I was surprized at his commendations. 'Prepossessed as I was in thy favour,' said he, 'I confess thou hast surpassed my expectation: thou writest not only with all the clearness and distinction that I desired, but thy style is also spirited and easy; thou justifiest the choice I have made of thy pen, and consolest me for the loss of thy predecessor.' He would not have confined my eulogium to this, had he not been interrupted by the arrival of his nephew the Count de Lemos, whom his excellency embraced several times, and received in such a manner as gave me to understand that he loved him with a tender affection. They shut themselves up together, to talk in private of a family affair, which I shall have occasion to mention in the sequel, and with which the minister, at that time, seemed to be more engrossed than with the business of the king.

While they were engaged together, I heard the clock strike twelve; and as I knew that the secretaries and clerks quitted their offices at that hour, to go and dine somewhere, I left my performance, and went out, not with a view of going to Montefier's house, for he had already paid my appointments, and I had taken my leave of him, but to the most famous ordinary at the court-end of the town: a common eating-house would not now serve my turn. *Remember that thou now belongest to the king.* These words, which the duke had pronounced, were seeds of ambition that every instant sprung up in my soul.

CHAP. III.

HE LEARNS THAT HIS POST IS NOT ALTOGETHER WITHOUT MORTIFICATIONS. HIS UNEASINESS AT THIS PIECE OF NEWS, WHICH OBLIGES HIM TO ALTER HIS CONDUCT.

I Was at great pains, when I entered, to let the landlord know that I was secretary to the prime-minister; and,

in that quality, I did not know what to order for my dinner: I was afraid of bespeaking something that might savour of parsimony, and therefore bade him dress what he himself should think proper. Accordingly, he regaled me in a sumptuous manner, and I was served with marks of respect which gave me still more pleasure than the good cheer. When the bill was brought, I threw a pistole upon the table, leaving to the waiters one fourth of it at least; for so much remained over and above the reckoning. After which I strutted away with such gestures as shewed that I was mighty well pleased with my own person.

About twenty yards from hence, there was a large house, in which noblemen that were strangers commonly lodged. Here I hired an apartment, consisting of five or six rooms handsomely furnished, as if I already enjoyed two or three thousand ducats a year; and even paid the first month per advance. Afterwards, returning to work, I spent the whole afternoon in continuing what I had begun in the morning. There were two more secretaries in a closet next to mine; but they only transcribed what the duke gave them to copy. With these I contracted an acquaintance that very evening, when we went out together; and, in order to gain their friendship the sooner, carried them to my tavern, where I ordered for supper the best dishes in season, with the most delicate wines.

We sat down together, and began to converse with more gaiety than wit; for to do justice to my guests, I soon perceived that they did not owe to their genius the places which they possessed. They were connoisseurs, indeed, in the different kinds of hand-writing; but they had not the least tincture of university education.

To make amends for this, they understood their own little interests to admiration; and were not so much intoxicated with the honour of serving the prime-minister, but that they complained of their situation. 'We have,' said one of them, 'already exercised our employment five months at our own expence, without touching one farthing; and, which is worse, our appointments are not regulated, nor do we know upon what footing we are.'

— 'As for my part,' said the other, 'I would, with all my heart, put up with twenty stripes, instead of appointments, to be allowed the liberty of engaging myself elsewhere; for I dare not retire of my own accord, nor demand my dismissal, after the secrets with which I have been intrusted; else I might chance to visit the tower of Segovia, or castle of Alicant.'

'How do you make shift to live then?' said I to them: 'I suppose you have fortunes of your own.' They answered, they had very little money; but, luckily for them, they lodged at the house of an honest widow, who gave them credit for their board, at the rate of one hundred pistoles a year from each. All this discourse, of which I did not lose one word, dissipated in an instant the fumes of my pride: I concluded, that no more consideration would be paid to me than to others; consequently, I had no cause to be so much charmed with my post, which was not quite so substantial as I had imagined; and that, in short, I could not be too frugal of my purse. These reflections cured me of my extravagance. I began to repent of having invited my fellow-secretaries; wished the repast at an end; and, when the bill was brought, disputed with the landlord on every article.

My friends and I parted at midnight; because I did not press them to stay longer. They went home to their widow, and I to my superb apartment, which I now was mad with myself for having hired, and which I firmly resolved to leave at the month's end. It was to no purpose to me to lie down on a good bed: my anxiety banished all repose; and I passed the night in contriving means of being paid by his majesty for my work. I stuck, on this occasion, to Montefier's advice, and rose with a resolution of going to pay my respects to Don Rodrigo de Calderona: I was in a very proper disposition to appear before such a proud man, because I found I had occasion for his protection.

I repaired then to the secretary, whose lodging communicated with that of the Duke of Lerma, and even equalled it in magnificence: by the furniture, it would have been a difficult matter to distinguish the master from the man. I sent in my name, as the

successor of Don Valerio; but, for all that, I waited in the anti-chamber upwards of an hour, 'Mr. New Secretary,' said I to myself at this juncture, 'have a little patience, if you please: I find you must dance attendance yourself, before you make other people do so.' The chamber-door being opened at length, I entered, and advanced towards Don Rodrigo, who, having just finished a billet-doux to his charming Sirena, was putting it into Pedrillo's hands. I had never appeared before the Archbishop of Grenada, the Count Galiano, nor even the prime-minister, so respectfully as I presented myself to the eyes of Signior de Calderona, whom I saluted with a bow to the very ground, begging his protection in such submissive terms, that I cannot remember them without a blush. My meanness would have turned to my prejudice in the opinion of a real gentleman; but he was pleased with my groveling behaviour, and assured me, obligingly enough, that he would let slip no opportunity of doing me service.

I thanked him with great demonstrations of zeal for his favourable sentiments of me; and having vowed an eternal attachment to him, took my leave, for fear of incommoding him, and begged he would excuse me, if I had interrupted him in his important affairs. As soon as I had acted this mean part, I went to my office, where I finished the task which had been imposed. The duke, who did not fail to come thither in the morning, was no less pleased with the end than he had been with the beginning of my work, and said, 'This is extremely well: write as well as thou canst this abridged history in the register of Catalonia; after which thou shalt take another information out of the port-folio, and manage it in the same manner.' I had a pretty long conversation with his excellency, and was charmed with his sweetness and familiarity of behaviour. What a difference was there between him and Calderona! They were two figures strongly contrasted.

I dined that day in an eating-house for a moderate expence; and resolved to go thither incognito every evening, until I should see the effect of my complaisance and servility. I had money sufficient

sufficient to maintain me three months, during which I resolved to work at a venture; purposing, as the shortest follies are the least prejudicial, to abandon the court, and all its tinsel, if I should receive no salary before the expiration of that term. This, therefore, was my plan: I spared nothing, during two months, to please Calderona; but he took so little notice of my endeavours, that, despairing of success, I changed my conduct towards him, and exerted myself wholly in profiting by those moments of conversation which I had with the duke.

CHAP. IV.

GIL BLAS GAINS THE FAVOUR OF THE DUKE OF LERMA, WHO ENTRUSTS HIM WITH A SECRET OF GREAT IMPORTANCE.

ALTHOUGH his grace, to use the expression, only just appeared before me, and vanished again, every day, I insensibly rendered myself so agreeable to his excellency, that he said to me one afternoon, 'Hark'e, Gil Blas; I like thy disposition and understanding, and have a regard for thee accordingly. Thou art a zealous faithful young fellow, extremely intelligent and discreet; so that I don't think I shall misplace my confidence, if I bestow it upon thee.' I threw myself on my knees, when I heard these words; and, after having respectfully kissed one of his hands, which he held out to raise me up, answered, 'Is it possible, then, that your excellency can deign to honour me with such extraordinary favour? What secret enemies will your goodness raise up against me! But there is only one man whose hatred I dread, and that is Don Rodrigo de Calderona.'

'Thou hast nothing to apprehend from that quarter,' replied the duke. 'I know Calderona; he has been attached to me from his infancy; and, I may venture to say, his sentiments are so conformable to mine, that he caresses those whom I love, and hates those who disoblige me: instead of dreading his aversion, thou mayest, on the contrary, depend upon his friendship.' By this, I could plainly perceive, that Signior Don Rodrigo was

a cunning rogue, who had got possession of his excellency's soul; and that I could not be too cautious with him. 'To begin,' added the duke, 'with putting thee in possession of my confidence, I will disclose to thee a design which I have projected; for it is necessary that thou shouldst be informed of it, that thou mayest acquit thyself the better of the commissions in which I intend to employ thee. I have a long time beheld my authority in general respected, my decisions blindly followed, and commissions, employments, governments, vice-royalties, and benefices, disposed of according to my wish. I may be said to reign in Spain; and it is impossible to push my fortune farther; but I would secure it against the storms that begin to threaten me; and, for that effect, want to have my nephew, the Count de Lemos, for my successor in the ministry.'

Here the duke, observing that I was extremely surprized at what I heard, said, 'I see your surprize, Santillane; you think it very strange that I should prefer my nephew to my own son the Duke d'Uzeda; but you must know that this last has too narrow a genius to fill my place: besides, I am his enemy; he has found the secret of being agreeable to the king, who wants to make him his favourite; and this is what I cannot bear. The favour of a sovereign is like the possession of a woman whom we adore; a piece of happiness, of which we are so jealous, that we cannot resolve to share it with a rival, however connected to us by the ties of blood and friendship.'

'I now disclose to thee,' continued his grace, 'the very bottom of my soul. I have already attempted to ruin the Duke d'Uzeda with his majesty; and, as I could not succeed, I have changed my battery. I design that the Count de Lemos shall insinuate himself into the good graces of the Prince of Spain. Being gentleman of his bed-chamber, he has an opportunity of talking with him every moment; and, besides that he does not want wit, I know a sure method for him to succeed in that enterprize. By this stratagem, I will oppose my nephew to my son, and breed a division between the two cousins,

‘fms, which will oblige them both to court my support, the awe of which will keep them submissive to my will. This,’ added he, ‘is my scheme; and thy assistance will be very serviceable to me; for I will always send thee to the Count de Lemos, and thou shalt report from him whatever he shall have occasion to impart.’

After this confidence, which I regarded as ready-money, I no longer felt any disquiet. ‘At length,’ said I to myself, ‘I am under the spout; a shower of gold will certainly rain upon me; for it is impossible but that the confident of a man, who, by way of excellence, is called the great pillar of the Spanish monarchy, should be, in a very short time, loaded with wealth!’ Full of such agreeable hope, I saw with indifference my poor purse giving up the ghost.

CHAP. V.

GIL BLAS IS OVERWHELMED WITH JOY, HONOUR, AND DISTRESS.

THE minister’s affection for me was soon perceived; for he affected to give marks of it in publick, giving me the charge of his port-folio, which he used to carry in his own hand to council. This novelty, making people look upon me as a small favourite, excited the envy of several persons, and was the occasion of my receiving a great deal of court holy-water. My two neighbours, the secretaries, were not the last in complimenting me upon my approaching greatness; and they invited me to sup at their widow’s, not so much in return for my treat, as with a view to engage me in their behalf for the future. I was welcomed every where; even the haughty Don Rodrigo changed his behaviour to me, and now called me nothing but Signior de Santillane; though, before that, he only favoured me with *you*, always omitting the term *Signior*. He loaded me with civilities, especially when he thought our patron might observe him: but I assure you he had no fool to deal with; I answered all his kindness with equal politeness; and the more so, the more I hated him in my heart: an old courtier could not have excelled me in this particular.

I likewise accompanied my lord duke to court, whither he commonly went three times a day. In the morning, he entered his majesty’s bed-chamber as soon as he was awake; and, kneeling by the bed-side, discoursed of those things that were to be done in the day; having also dictated to his master what was to be said, he retired, and returned immediately after dinner, not to talk on state affairs, but to converse on entertaining subjects, and regale the king with all the merry adventures which happened in Madrid, and of which he was always very early informed. Last of all, he visited him, for the third time, in the evening, when he gave such an account as he thought proper of what he had done through the day, and in a careless manner asked his majesty’s orders for to-morrow. While he was with the king, I remained in the anti-chamber, where I saw people of quality, devoted to the idol Faveur, court my conversation, and think themselves happy if I entered into discourse with them. How, after this, could I help thinking myself a man of consequence! There are a great many at court who have the same opinion of themselves, upon a much more slender foundation.

One day, I had still more food for my vanity: the king, to whom the duke had spoke very advantageously of my style, was very curious to see a specimen of it. Upon which his excellency made me take up the Catalonian register, and, carrying me into the presence, ordered me to read the first story which I had abridged. If I was at first disturbed by the presence of the prince, I was soon composed by that of the minister; and read my performance, which his majesty heard with pleasure. He expressed his satisfaction, and even recommended me to the minister’s protection. This did not at all diminish the pride of my heart; and the conversation which I had, a few days after, with the Count de Lemos, quite filled my head with the ideas of ambition. I went to this nobleman from his uncle; and, finding him at the prince’s court, presented to him a letter of credentials; in which the duke told him, that he might open himself to me, as to one who was perfectly well acquainted with their design, and chosen by him as their com-

mon

mon messenger. The count having read this billet, conducted me into a room; and, having locked the door, spoke in this manner: 'Since you enjoy the confidence of the Duke of Lerma, I don't doubt that you deserve it, and I ought to make no difficulty in giving you mine also. You must know, then, that matters go on swimmingly. The Prince of Spain distinguishes me from all the noblemen who are personally attached to him, and who study to please him. I had this morning a private conversation with him, in which he seemed chagrined at seeing himself, through the king's avarice, unable to follow the dictates of his generous heart, or even to spend like a prince. On this occasion, I did not fail to lament his situation; and, profiting by the opportunity, promised to bring a thousand pistoles to him at his levee to-morrow, as an earnest of greater sums, which I have undertaken to furnish him with in a very little time. He was charmed with my promise; and I am certain of captivating his favour, if I keep my word. Go, and tell these circumstances to my uncle, and return in the evening to inform me of his sentiments of the matter.'

I quitted the Count de Lemos immediately, and went back to the Duke of Lerma; who, on my report, sent to Calderona for a thousand pistoles, which he gave me to carry in the evening to the count. This I performed, saying to myself, 'Oho! I now see plainly what the infallible method is which the minister takes to succeed in his enterprize: upon my soul, he is in the right! and, to all appearance, these prodigalities will not ruin his fortune: I can easily guess from whose coffers these pistoles are taken; but, after all, it is but reasonable that the father should maintain the son.' The Count de Lemos, when we parted, said softly, 'Farewel, dear confident! the Prince of Spain is a little amorous; you and I must have a conference on that subject one of these days. I foresee that I shall have occasion for your dexterity very soon.' I came home musing on these words, which were not at all ambiguous, and which filled me with joy. 'The devil!' said I; 'I am just on the eve

of becoming Mercury to the heir of the kingdom.' I did not examine into the goodness or badness of the office; the quality of the gallant laid my virtue asleep. What glory was it for me to be made minister of pleasure to a great prince! 'Softly, Mr. Gil Blas,' some folks will say; 'the business was only to make you deputy-minister.' I own it; but at bottom the honour of both these posts is equal; the difference lies in the profits only.

While I executed these noble commissions, advancing every day farther and farther in the good graces of the prime-minister, with such enchanting hopes, how happy should I have been, if ambition had secured me from the cravings of hunger! More than two months had elapsed since I had quitted my magnificent apartment, and hired a small chamber very frugally furnished. Although this gave me some pain, yet, as I came out early in the morning, and did not go home to bed before night, I bore my fortune patiently. The whole day I appeared upon my theatre, that is, in the duke's house, and played the part of a man of consequence; but, when I crept up into my garret, my importance vanished, and nothing remained but poor Gil Blas without money, and, which is worse, without any thing that could fetch it. Though I had not been too proud to discover my necessity to any body, I did not know one person that could assist me, except Navarro, whom I had neglected so much, since I turned courtier, that I had not assurance enough to make application to his friendship. I had been obliged to sell all my cloaths piece-meal, except those for which I had absolute occasion. I went no more to the eating-house, because I had not wherewithal to pay my ordinary. How did I make shift then to subsist? Every morning, a little bread and wine was brought into our offices for breakfast: this was all that the minister allowed; this was all that I eat through the day; and I generally went supperless to bed.

Such was the situation of a man who shone at court, and who was more properly an object of compassion than envy. Nevertheless, I could no longer sustain the weight of my misery; and at length determined to disclose it, with address, to the Duke of Lerma, as

soon as an opportunity should offer. Happily for me, I found an occasion at the Escorial*, whither the king and the prince repaired, some days after I had come to this resolution.

CHAP. VI.

THE MANNER IN WHICH GIL BLAS INFORMS THE DUKE OF LERMA OF HIS NECESSITY, AND THAT MINISTER'S BEHAVIOUR ON THE OCCASION.

WHILE the king was at the Escorial, he defrayed the expence of every body; so that there I did not feel where the shoe pinched: I lay in a wardrobe, just by the bed-chamber of the duke; who one morning, rising as usual at break of day, made me take some papers and a standish, and follow him into the palace garden. We went and sat down under a tuft of trees, where I put myself, by his order, in the posture of a man writing on the crown of his hat; while he held in his hand a paper, which he pretended to read: so that, at a distance, we seemed busy in very serious affairs, though all the while we talked of nothing but trifles.

For the space of an hour, I had diverted his excellency with all the sallies that my good humour could afford, when two magpies perching on the trees under which we sat, began to chatter in such a noisy manner, as attracted our attention, 'These birds,' said the duke, 'seem to scold one another: I should be very glad to know the cause of their quarrel.'—'My lord,' said I, 'your curiosity puts me in mind of an Indian fable, which I have read in Pilpay, or some

other author of that kind.' The minister desired to hear it, and I recounted it in these words:

'Heretofore a good monarch reigned in Persia, whose genius being not quite extensive enough to govern his kingdom of himself, he left that care to his Grand Vizir Atalmuc; a man of superior capacity, who supported the weight of that vast monarchy without stooping, and maintained it in profound peace. He had even the art of making the royal authority loved, as well as feared; and the subjects enjoyed an affectionate father in a vizir who was faithful to his prince. Atalmuc had, among his secretaries, a young Cachemirian called Zeangir, whom he loved more than all the others. He took pleasure in his conversation, carried him in his company to the chase, and even disclosed to him his most secret thoughts. One day, while they hunted together in a wood, the vizir seeing two ravens creaking on a tree, said to his secretary, "I wish I knew what these birds are talking of in their language."—"Signior," answered the Cachemirian, "your wish may be accomplished."—"How can that be?" replied Atalmuc. "A cabalistical device," said Zeangir, "taught me the language of birds. If you please, I will listen to these, and repeat to you verbatim every thing that I shall hear." The vizir consented; and the Cachemirian approaching the ravens, seemed to lend an attentive ear to their discourse: after which, returning to his master, "Signior," said he, "would you believe it? we are the subject of their conversation."—"Impossible!" cried the Persian minister, "what can they say of

* Escorial, a royal palace of the King of Spain in New Castile, about twenty-two miles from Madrid. It was begun in 1557, by Philip II. son of the Emperor Charles V. after the victory which his army obtained over the French at St. Quintin, and finished in twenty-two years, at an immense expence. It stands in a dry barren country, almost surrounded with mountains, but wants nothing to render it a compleat town, having fifteen thousand windows, twenty-two courts, and seventeen cloysters or piazzas, besides a church, college, monastery, dwelling-houses, shops, artificers, &c. It has forty chapels; the high altar in one of which, from the ground to the roof, consists of the most beautiful jasper. This chapel is said to have cost upwards of five millions. The pantheon, where the royal family of Spain are interred, is in the above-mentioned chapel, and is a very curious and rich structure; it was begun by Charles V. carried on by Kings Philip II. and III. and compleated by Philip IV. From the Escorial is an elegant prospect of Madrid.

"us!"



Published as the Act directs, by Harris & Co. Jan. 13, 1781.

2609

BRITISH
4 AP 1914
MUSEUM

"us?"—"One of them," replied the secretary, said, "Behold the Grand Vizir Atalmuc in person, that tutelary eagle, who covers Persia like a nest with his wings, and incessantly watches for its preservation. As a relaxation from his painful toils, he hunts in this wood with his faithful Zeangir. How happy is that secretary in serving a master who has so much affection for him!"—"Softly," said the other raven, "softly! don't too much extol the happiness of that Cachemirian: Atalmuc, it is true, converses familiarly with him, honours him with his confidence, and, I don't doubt, intends to give him a considerable post: but, before that happens, Zeangir will die of hunger. That poor devil lodges in a small poultry room, where he is in want of the common necessities of life. In a word, he lives in a miserable manner, though nobody at court perceives it. The grand vizir never thinks of enquiring into his circumstances; but, content with entertaining favourable sentiments in his behalf, leaves him, in the mean time, a prey to poverty."

Here I left off speaking, in order to observe the duke; who asked with a smile, what impression the apologue made on the mind of Atalmuc, and if the grand vizir was not offended at the presumption of his secretary. "No, my lord," said I, in great confusion at his question; "the fable says, that, on the contrary, he loaded him with favours."—"That was lucky," replied the duke, with a serious air; "some ministers would not like to be so schooled. But," added he, breaking off the discourse, and getting up, "I believe the king will soon be awake, and my duty obliges me to be near him." So saying, he walked hastily towards the palace, without speaking another word, and very ill pleased, as I imagined, with the Indian fable.

I followed him to the very door of his majesty's bed-chamber; after which, I went and put the papers into the place from whence I had taken them, and then entered the closet where our two copying secretaries were at work; for they were also along with the court. "What is the matter with you, Signior de Santillane?" said they, when

they saw me; "you seem very much disturbed! Has any disagreeable accident happened to you?"

I was too much affected with the bad success of my apologue to conceal my grief: I recounted to them what I had said to the duke; and they expressed their sympathy in the sharp affliction with which I was seized. "You have great reason to be grieved," said one of them; "I wish you may be better treated than the secretary of Cardinal Spinola; who, tired with having received nothing during fifteen months, in which he was employed by his eminence, took the liberty, one day, of representing his necessity, and craving some money for his subsistence. "It is but just," said the minister, "that you should be paid. Here," added he, giving him an order for a thousand ducats; "go and receive that sum from the royal treasury; but remember, at the same time, that I have no farther occasion for your service." The secretary would have consoled himself for his dismissal, had he touched his thousand ducats, and been allowed to seek for business elsewhere; but, just as he went out of the cardinal's house, he was arrested by an alguazil, and conducted to the tower of Segovia, where he has been prisoner a long time."

This touch of history redoubled my fear; I believed myself undone; and, becoming inconsolable, began to reproach my own impatience, as if I had not suffered enough. "Alas!" said I, "why did I risk that unlucky fable which has displeased the minister? perhaps he was just on the point of extricating me out of my miserable situation; nay, perhaps I was on the eve of making one of those sudden fortunes which astonish mankind. What riches! what honours have I lost by my own folly! I ought to have considered that great men don't chuse to be anticipated, but desire that the least gratifications they are obliged to give should be received as their own free grace and favour. It would have been better for me to continue my slender regimen, without complaining to the duke, and even to let myself die of hunger, by which means the blame would have laid on his side."

If I had even preserved some sparks of hopes, my master, whom I saw in the afternoon, would have banished them entirely; he was very serious with me, contrary to custom, and scarce spoke at all; a circumstance that threw me into mortal disquiet for the rest of the day: neither did I pass the night in more tranquillity; my sorrow for seeing all my agreeable illusions vanish, and the dread of increasing the number of state-prisoners, made me groan and lament my condition till morning.

The next day was the crisis of my fate. The duke ordered me to be called in the morning, and I entered his chamber, trembling like a criminal who is going to receive sentence. 'Santillane,' said he, shewing a paper which he held in his hand, 'take this order.' I quaked at the word *order*, saying to myself, 'O Heaven! behold Cardinal Spinola! the carriage is ready for Segovia!' The terror which seized me was such, that I interrupted the minister, and throwing myself at his feet, 'My lord,' said I, all in tears, 'I most humbly beg that your excellency will pardon my presumption: it was necessity alone that compelled me to disclose my situation!'

The duke, who could not help laughing at my disorder, answered, 'Be comforted, Gil Blas, and listen to what I am going to say: although the discovering thy necessities was a reproach to me for not having prevented them, I am not at all displeased, my friend; I am rather angry with myself for having omitted to ask how thou livest. But, to begin with making amends for this inattention, I give thee this order for fifteen hundred ducats, which will be paid, upon sight, out of the royal treasury. This is not all: I promise thee the same sum annually; and besides, when people of wealth and generosity solicit thy interest, I do not forbid thee to speak in their behalf.'

In the extasy occasioned by these words, I kissed the feet of the minister, who having commanded me to rise, continued to discourse with me in a familiar manner. I attempted to recal my good-humour, but I could not make such a sudden transition from grief to joy. I was as much con-

founded as a wretch who is informed of his pardon, in the very minute when he expected his execution. My master ascribed all this agitation to the fear of having incurred his displeasure, though the dread of perpetual imprisonment had no less a share in my discomposure. He confessed, that he had affected coolness towards me, to see whether or not I should be afflicted at the change; that from this he was convinced of my sincere attachment to his person, for which he loved me the more.

CHAP. VII.

THE GOOD USE TO WHICH HE PUT HIS FIFTEEN HUNDRED DUCATS; THE FIRST AFFAIR IN WHICH HE INTERMEDDLED, AND THE PROFIT FROM THENCE ACCRUING.

THE king, as if he had intended to gratify my impatience, returned the very next day to Madrid; upon which I flew instantly to the royal treasury, where I immediately touched the sum contained in my order. I now listened to nothing but my vanity and ambition: I abandoned my miserable room to those secretaries who are still ignorant of the language of birds, and once more hired my fine apartment, which was luckily untenanted. I sent for a famous taylor, who worked for almost all the beaux; he took my measure, and carried me to a shop where he took off five ells of cloth, which, he said, was barely sufficient to make a suit for me. Five ells for a suit in the Spanish taste! just Heaven! but let us spare our censure; tailors of reputation always use more than others. I then bought some linen, which I wanted very much, silk stockings, and a beaver laced with *point d'Espagne*. This being done, I thought it would not look well for me to be without a lacquey, and desired Vincent Forero, my landlord, to accommodate me with one of his own recommendation. Most of the strangers who lodged with him used, on their arrival at Madrid, to take Spanish valets into their service, by which means his house was the rendezvous of all the lacqueys out of place. The first that presented him-

self was a young fellow of such a soft, devout appearance, that I would have nothing to do with him; he looked too much like Ambrose de Lamela. 'I don't want,' said I to Forero, 'a valet of such a religious deportment; I have been already bit by such another.' Scarce had I dismissed this lacquey, when another came in of a very sprightly appearance, as impudent as a court page, with something roguish in his looks. Pleased with his outside, I put some questions to him, which he answered with spirit. I observed that he was of an intriguing disposition, and looking upon him as a subject pat for my purpose, engaged him immediately. I had no cause to repent of my choice; nay, I perceived, in a very little time, that I had made an admirable acquisition. As the duke had permitted me to speak to him in favour of people whom I wanted to serve, (and I was resolved not to neglect this permission) I had occasion for a jackall to discover the game; that is, an industrious pleasant fellow, proper to find out and allure those who had favours to ask of the prime-minister. This office was quite the master-piece of Scipio, (such was my lacquey's name) who had been in the service of Donna Anna de Guevara, nurse to the Prince of Spain, where he had exercised that talent to some purpose.

As soon as he understood my credit, and that I should be glad to use it to the best advantage, he went to work, and that very day said to me, 'Signior, I have made a pretty good discovery; a young gentleman of Grenada, called Don Roger de Rada, is come to Madrid on an affair of honour, which obliges him to solicit the Duke of Lerma's protection, and he is willing to pay well for the favour he shall obtain; I have already spoke with him, and found him desirous of applying to Don Rodrigo de Calderona, whose power he had heard greatly extolled; but I have changed his intention, by assuring him that Calderona sells his good offices at an extravagant rate; whereas you content yourself with a moderate gratification for yours, and that you would even employ them gratis, were you in a situation that permitted you to follow your generous and disinterested inclination; in short, I spoke

to him in such a manner, as that you will see the gentleman at your levee to-morrow morning.'—'How!' said I, 'Mr. Scipio, you have already done a great deal of work. I perceive that you are no novice in matters of intrigue; and am surprized that you have not made your fortune.'—'That ought not to surprize you,' he replied; 'I love to make money circulate, and never hoard up what I get.'

Don Roger de Rada actually came to my lodgings, and I received him with politeness mixed with pride. 'Signior Cavalier,' said I, 'before I engage to serve you, I must know the affair of honour that brings you to court; for it may be of such a nature, that I dare not speak to the prime-minister in your behalf; make, therefore, if you please, a faithful report of it, and be assured that I will enter warmly into your interests, provided a man of honour may espouse them.'—'With all my heart,' replied the young Grenadine; 'I will sincerely recount my story.' At the same time he related it as follows.

C H A P. VIII.

THE HISTORY OF DON ROGER DE RADA.

DON Anastasio de Rada, a Grenadine gentleman, lived happily in the town of Antequera, with Donna Estephania his wife, who, together with unblemished virtue, possessed a gentle disposition and a great share of beauty. If she had a tender affection for her husband, he was also distractedly fond of her, and being naturally addicted to jealousy, (though he had not the least cause to suspect her fidelity) was not without disquiet. He was afraid that some secret enemy of his repose made attempts upon his honour; he distrusted all his friends, except Don Huberto de Horadales, who had free access to his house, in quality of Estephania's cousin, and who, indeed, was the only man he ought to have suspected.

Don Huberto actually fell in love with his kinswoman, and had presumption enough to declare his passion,

“sion, without regard to ties of blood, or the particular friendship subsisting between him and Anastasio. The lady being a woman of discretion, instead of making a discovery which might have been attended with melancholy consequences, reprimanded her relation with gentleness, represented to him how much he was to blame, in attempting to seduce her, and dishonour her husband; and told him very seriously, that he must not flatter himself with the hope of success.

“This moderation served only to inflame the cavalier the more; and imagining that he must push things to extremity with a woman of her character, he began to behave very disrespectfully to her, and one day had the audacity to press her to satisfy his desire. She repulsed him with an air of severity, and threatened to make Don Anastasio punish his rashness. The gallant, terrified at this menace, promised to speak no more of his passion; and, on the faith of that promise, Estephania pardoned what was past.

“Don Huberto, who was naturally a very wicked man, could not behold his love so ill repaid, without conceiving a base desire of being revenged. He knew the jealous temper of Anastasio to be susceptible of any impression which he had a mind to give: and he needed no more than this intelligence to form the blackest design that ever entered into the heart of a villain. One evening, while he and this weak husband were talking together by themselves, he said to him, with a melancholy air, “My dear friend, I can no longer live without revealing to you a secret, which I would have kept for ever from your knowledge, were not your honour dearer to you than your repose; but your delicacy and mine in point of injuries permits me not to conceal what passes at your house; prepare to hear a piece of news, which will give you as much sorrow as surprize; for I must touch you in the tenderest part.”

“I understand you,” said Don Anastasio, already discomposed; “your cousin is unfaithful.”—“I no longer own her for my cousin,” replied

“Hordales, with an air of indignation: “I renounce her; for she is unworthy of such a husband.”—“It is too much to make me languish in this manner,” cried Don Anastasio: “speak: what has Estephania done?”—“She has betrayed you,” answered Huberto: “you have a rival, whom she entertains in private; but I know not his name: for the adulterer, by the favour of a dark night, concealed his person from those who observed his retreat. All I know is, that you are deceived; that I am certain of. The concern which I ought to have in this affair but too well verifies my report. Since I declare myself against Estephania, I must be well convinced of her infidelity.

“It is in vain,” added he, observing that his discourse had the desired effect, “it is in vain for me to tell you more. I perceive that you don’t deserve the ingratitude with which your love is repaid; and that you meditate just vengeance on the guilty. I will not oppose your design. Never examine who the victim is that you intend to strike; but shew to the whole city, that there is nothing which you cannot sacrifice to your honour.”

“The traitor thus animated a too credulous husband against an innocent wife, and painted, in such lively colours, the infamy with which he would be covered, if he should leave the injury unpunished, that he grew mad with revenge. Don Anastasio, having lost his judgment, seemed actuated by the furies, and went home with a resolution to stab his unhappy wife, who was just going to bed when he came in. He constrained himself at first, and waited until the servants were withdrawn; then, unrestricted by the fear of Heaven’s wrath, by the dishonour he was going to reflect upon his family, and even by the natural pity which he ought to have felt for an infant which his wife had already carried six months in her womb, he approached the victim, saying, in a furious tone, “Thou must die, wretch! thou hast but a moment to live, and that my generosity allows thee, to spend in a prayer to Heaven, to pardon the outrage thou hast committed against me.”

"me; for I would not have thee lose thy soul, as thou hast lost thy honour." So saying, he unsheathed his poniard. His action and discourse terrified Estephania, who falling at his feet, and clasping her hands, said to him, in the utmost astonishment, "What is the matter, Signior! what cause of discontent have I been so unhappy as to give you? why would you take away the life of your spouse? If you suspect her of infidelity, indeed you are mistaken!"

"No, no!" the jealous husband hastily replied; "I am but too well assured of your falsehood: those who informed me are credible persons. Don Huberto—" "Ah, Signior!" said she, interrupting him with precipitation, "you have reason to distrust Don Huberto. He is less your friend than you imagine; if he has said any thing to the prejudice of my virtue, do not believe him."—"Peace, infamous woman!" answered Don Anastasio; "by endeavouring to prejudice me against Hordales, you justify, instead of dissipating, my suspicions. You endeavour to render that relation suspected, because he is informed of your misconduct: you want to invalidate his testimony; but that artifice is in vain, and redoubles my desire of punishing your guilt."—"My dear husband!" resumed the innocent Estephania, weeping bitterly, "distrust your own blind rage: if you follow it's emotions, you will commit an action which it will not be in your power to atone, when once you are convinced of your injustice. In the name of God, quiet your transports! at least, give yourself time to clear up your suspicions, and do justice to a wife, who has no crime to reproach herself with."

Any other than Anastasio would have been moved with these words, and still more with the affliction of her who pronounced them; but he, cruel man! far from being melted at her distress, once more bade the lady recommend herself quickly to God, and even lifted up his arm to strike. "Hold, barbarian!" cried she, "if thy love for me is entirely extinguished; if the marks of tenderness, which I have lavished upon thee,

are effaced from thy remembrance; if my tears cannot divert thee from thy execrable design; at least, have some regard to thy own blood. Arm not thy frantick hand against an innocent who has not yet seen the light: thou canst not be it's executioner without offending Heaven and earth. As for my part, I forgive thee my death; but be assured, the blood of the babe will cry for vengeance upon such a horrible deed!"

Howsoever determined Don Anastasio was to pay no attention to what Estephania might say, he could not help being moved by these dreadful images which her last words presented to his thought. Wherefore, as if he had been afraid that his emotion would betray his resentment, he hastened to take advantage of the fury that remained in his heart, and plunged his poniard into the right side of his wife, quitted his house immediately, and fled from Antequera.

Meanwhile, the unfortunate lady was so stunned with the blow which she had received, that she lay some minutes on the floor, without any signs of life; afterwards, recovering her spirits, she uttered such plaints and lamentations as brought an old maid-servant into the room. As soon as this good woman saw her mistress in such a piteous condition, she awakened the rest of the domesticks, and even the neighbours, with her cries. The chamber was soon filled with people; surgeons were called; they examined the wound, and had good hopes of her recovery. They were not mistaken in their conjectures; for, in a little time, they cured Estephania, who was happily delivered, three months after this cruel adventure, of a son, (Signior Gil Blas) whom you now see. I am the fruit of that melancholy pregnancy.

Although scandal seldom spares a woman's virtue, it respected that of my mother; and this bloody scene was looked upon in town as the groundless transport of a jealous husband. My father, it is true, was known to be a violent man, very apt to take umbrage without cause. Hordales concluded, that his kind woman suspected him of having disturbed

' turbed the mind of Don Anastasio
 ' with false stories; and satisfied with
 ' being, at least, half revenged, left
 ' off visiting her. Not to tire you,
 ' Sir, I will not enlarge upon the par-
 ' ticulars of my education; but only
 ' observe, that my mother's principal
 ' care was to have me taught to fence;
 ' and I accordingly learned that exer-
 ' cise, a long time, in the most cele-
 ' brated schools of Grenada and Se-
 ' ville. She waited, with impatience,
 ' until I was old enough to measure
 ' my sword with that of Don Huberto,
 ' before she informed me of the cause
 ' she had to complain of him: then, I
 ' being in my eighteenth year, she im-
 ' parted to me the whole story; not
 ' without shedding tears in abundance,
 ' and appearing affected with the most
 ' violent sorrow. What impression
 ' must a mother, in that condition,
 ' make on a son, who neither wanted
 ' courage nor sentiment! I went in-
 ' stantly and challenged Hordales to
 ' a private place, where, after a pretty
 ' obstinate combat, I run him through
 ' the body in three places, and left him
 ' breathless on the spot.

' Don Huberto, finding himself mor-
 ' tally wounded, fixed his last looks
 ' upon me, and said, he received the
 ' death I had given him as a just pu-
 ' nishment for the crime he had com-
 ' mitted against the honour of my mo-
 ' ther. He confessed, that he had re-
 ' solved upon her destruction, to be
 ' revenged of her scorn; and expired;
 ' asking pardon of Heaven, Don Ana-
 ' stasio, Estephania, and me. I did
 ' not think proper to return, in order to
 ' inform my mother of what had hap-
 ' pened; I left that to Fame; and
 ' passing the mountains, repaired to
 ' Malaga, where I embarked with the
 ' captain of a privateer, just ready to
 ' sail on a cruize. He thought I did
 ' not look like one who wanted cou-
 ' rage, and gladly consented that I
 ' should join his volunteers.

' We soon found an opportunity of
 ' signaling ourselves. Near the island
 ' of Albouran*, we met a corsair of
 ' Mellila, on her return to the coast of
 ' Africa, with a Spanish ship richly

' laden, which she had taken off Car-
 ' thagena†. We vigorously attacked
 ' the African; and made ourselves ma-
 ' sters of both ships, in which we found
 ' fourscore Christians, whom they
 ' were carrying as slaves to Barbary.
 ' Then, taking advantage of a favour-
 ' able wind that sprung up for the
 ' coast of Grenada, we arrived, in a
 ' little time, at Punta de Helena.

' While we asked the slaves, whom
 ' we had delivered, the places of their
 ' nativity, I put that question to a
 ' man of good mien, who seemed to
 ' be about fifty years of age. He an-
 ' swered, with a sigh, that he was
 ' from Antequera. I felt a strong
 ' emotion at his reply, without know-
 ' ing wherefore; and he perceiving it,
 ' was remarkably disturbed in his
 ' turn. "I am," said I, "your
 ' townsman: may I ask the name of
 ' your family?"—"Alas!" he re-
 ' plied, "you renew my grief, by de-
 ' siring me to gratify your curiosity.
 ' Eighteen years ago I quitted Ante-
 ' quera, where I cannot be remem-
 ' bered without horror: you yourself
 ' may, perhaps, have heard of me but
 ' too often: my name is Don Ana-
 ' stasio de Rada."—"Just Heaven!"
 ' cried I, "can I believe my senses?
 ' What! is this Don Anastasio, my
 ' own father, whom I see!"—"What
 ' is that you say, young man?" cried
 ' he in his turn, looking at me with
 ' surprize; "is it possible that you
 ' are the unhappy infant which was
 ' in it's mother's womb when I sa-
 ' crificed her to my fury?"—"Yes,
 ' my father," said I; "I am he whom
 ' the virtuous Estephania brought in-
 ' to the world, three months after that
 ' fatal night on which you left her
 ' weltering in her blood."

' Don Anastasio, before I had finish-
 ' ed these words, fell upon my neck,
 ' clasped me in his arms, and, for a
 ' whole quarter of an hour, we did
 ' nothing but mingle our sighs and
 ' tears. After having yielded to those
 ' tender emotions that such a meeting
 ' could not fail to raise, my father
 ' lifted up his eyes, and thanked Hea-
 ' ven for having preserved the life of

* Albouran, a small island in the Mediterranean, on the coast of the kingdom of Fez. Mellila is a little city in the same part of Barbary.

† Carthagena, or New Carthage, an ancient city in the kingdom of Murcia, situated on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea.

Estephania. But a moment after, as if he had been afraid of giving thanks unseasonably, he asked in what manner the innocence of his wife had been proved? "Signior," said I, "nobody but you ever doubted it; her conduct was always irreproachable. I will disabuse you: you must know that you was imposed upon by Don Huberto." I then recounted the whole of that relation's perfidy, the vengeance I had taken, and the confession he made at his death. My father was not so much pleased with the recovery of his freedom, as with the news I told. In the excess of his joy he began to embrace me again with tenderness and transport; and could not help expressing his satisfaction with regard to my conduct. "Come, my son," said he, "let us hasten to Antequera. I burn with impatience to throw myself at the feet of a wife whom I have so unworthily treated. Since you have made me acquainted with my own injustice, my heart is torn with remorse!"

I was too eager to bring together persons who were so dear to me, to retard the happy moment: I quitted the privateer; and, with my share of the prize we had taken, bought two mules at Adra, my father being unwilling to expose himself again to the dangers of the sea. He had leisure enough on the road to relate his adventures, which I heard with as greedy attention as that which the Prince of Ithaca paid to those of the king his father. In short, after having travelled several days, we gained the foot of a mountain, in the neighbourhood of Antequera, where we halted; and, resolving to go home privately, did not enter the town till midnight.

I leave you to guess the surprize of my mother at the return of a husband whom she thought for ever lost: and the miraculous manner (if I may be allowed the expression) in which he was restored, became another cause for her astonishment. He asked pardon for his barbarity, with such genuine marks of repentance, that she could not help being affected with them; and, instead of regarding him as an assassin, looked upon him as a man whom Heaven

had subjected to her will; so sacred is the name of husband to a virtuous woman!

Estephania had been so anxious on my account, that she was overjoyed at my return. But her pleasure was not without alloy: the sister of Horadales had begun a criminal process against the murderer of her brother, and caused me to be searched for every where in such a manner, that my mother, knowing how insecure I was at home, suffered great uneasiness, which obliged me to set out that very night for court; where I come, Signior, to solicit my pardon, which I hope to obtain, since you design to speak to the prime-minister in my behalf, and to support me with your whole credit.

The valiant son of Don Anastasio here finished his narration; upon which I said to him, with an air of importance: "Enough, Signior Don Roger; the case seems pardonable: I undertake to communicate your affair to his excellency, and I will venture to promise you his protection." The Grenadine, upon this assurance, launched out into a world of thanks, which would have entered at one ear and gone out at the other, had he not assured me, that whatever service I should do him, would be close followed by his acknowledgment. As soon as he touched on that string, I put myself in motion, and that very day recounted his story to the duke; who, having permitted me to introduce the cavalier, said to him, "Don Roger, I am informed of the affair that brought you to court: Santillane has told me every circumstance; make yourself easy; you have done nothing that is not excusable; and it is particularly to those gentlemen who revenge their injured honour that his majesty loves to shew favour. For the sake of form, you must go to prison; but be assured, you shall not continue in it long. Your friend Santillane will take care of the rest, and soon procure your enlargement."

Don Roger made a profound bow to the minister, on whose word he surrendered himself. His pardon, by my care, was expedited in a very little time; for, in less than ten days, I sent this new Telemachus home to his Ulysses and Penelope; whereas, had he

M m

been

been without a protector, he would not, perhaps, have been quit for a whole year's imprisonment. I touched no more than an hundred pistoles for my good offices; so that it was not a great catch. But I was not yet a Calderona, to despise small matters.

CHAP. IX.

GIL BLAS FINDS MEANS TO MAKE A CONSIDERABLE FORTUNE IN A SHORT TIME, AND GIVES HIMSELF GREAT AIRS ACCORDINGLY.

THIS affair quickened my appetite; and ten pistoles which I gave to Scipio, for his right of brokerage, encouraged him to go upon the scent again. I have already extolled his talents in this way: he might have been justly entitled the Great Scipio. The second customer he brought was a printer, who, in despite of common sense, had enriched himself by books of knight-errantry. This honest tradesman had pirated a work belonging to another printer, and his edition was seized. For three hundred ducats he obtained, through my means, a replevy, and escaped a large fine. Though the minister, properly speaking, had no business with this affair, his excellency, at my request, was so good as to interpose his authority. After the printer, a merchant passed through my hands, on the following occasion. A Portugueze ship had been taken by a corsair of Barbary, and afterwards retaken by a privateer of Cadiz. Two thirds of the loading belonged to a merchant of Lisbon, who having reclaimed it in vain, came to court in quest of a patron who had credit enough to cause restitution to be made. I interested myself in his behalf, and he got possession of his effects, in consideration of a present which he made me, of four hundred pistoles, for my protection.

Methinks, I hear the reader cry in this place, 'Bravo, Monsieur de Santillane, put hay into your boots; you are in a fine road; push your fortune!' Oh! that I will, I warrant you! I

see, if I am not mistaken, my valet coming with a new prize which he has grappled. Right: it is Scipio—let us hear him. 'Signior,' said he, 'allow me to introduce this famous operator to you. He wants a patent to sell his medicines, exclusive of all others, during the space of ten years, in all the cities under the dominion of Spain; that is, all persons of his profession shall be prohibited from settling in the place or places where he resides; and he will pay, as an acknowledgment, two hundred pistoles to any person who will procure for him the said privilege.' I said to the mountebank, assuming the patron, 'Well, friend, your business shall be done.' Sure enough, in a very few days, I dispatched him with patents, which entitled him to cheat the people exclusively, through all the kingdom of Spain.

Though my wealth increased, I had obtained of his excellency the four favours I had asked so easily, that I never hesitated in requesting a fifth; which was the government of the city of Vera, on the confines of Grenada, for a knight of Calatrava*, who promised me a thousand pistoles for the place. The minister laughed to see me so hot on the game: 'Egad, Gil Blas,' said he; 'you go on at a rare rate: you must be furiously inclined to oblige your neighbours. Hark'e, I shall not stand upon trifles with you: but when you demand governments, and other considerable favours, you shall, if you please, be contented with one half of the profit, and be accountable for the other to me. You can't imagine,' added he, 'what expence I am obliged to be at, or how many resources I must have to support the dignity of my post: for, notwithstanding the disinterested appearance I assume, I confess I am not imprudent enough to disorder my domestick affairs. Take your measures accordingly.'

My master, by this discourse, banishing all fear of being importunate, or rather encouraging me to return frequently to the charge, I became more greedy of riches than ever; and would have willingly advertised, that

* A military order of knighthood in Spain, instituted in the year 1158, during the reign of Sancho III. King of Castile. The habit of the order is a large white mantle, with a red cross on the left side, powdered with fleurs de luce.

all those who wanted favours at court should apply to me. I went upon one course, Scipio upon another, in quest of people whom we might serve for money. My knight of Calatrava had his government of Vera, for his thousand pistoles; and I soon obtained another, at the same price, for a knight of St. Jago*. I was not contented with making governors only; I conferred orders of knighthood, and converted some good plebeians into bad gentlemen, by virtue of excellent letters-patent. I was also willing that the clergy should feel my benevolence: I bestowed small benefices, canonships, and some ecclesiastical dignities. As for the bishopricks and archbishopricks, they were all in the gift of Don Rodrigo de Calderona, who likewise appointed magistrates, commanders, and viceroys. A plain proof that the great places were no better filled than the small ones; for the people we chose to occupy the posts, of which we made such an honourable traffick, were not always the best qualified, or most regular. We know very well, that the wits of Madrid made themselves merry at our expence; but we resembled those misers, who console themselves for the publick scorn with a sight of their gold.

Isocrates had reason to call intemperance and folly the inseparable companions of wealth. When I found myself master of thirty thousand ducats, and in a condition to get, perhaps, ten times as much, I thought I must then make a figure worthy of the prime-minister's confident. I hired a whole house, which I furnished in a handsome manner; bought the coach of a notary, who had set it up through ostentation, and now wanted to get rid of it by the advice of his baker. I engaged a coachman; and, as it was but just to advance old servants, raised Scipio to the triple honour of my valet de chambre, secretary, and steward: but what put the finishing stroke to my pride was, the minister's allowing my people to wear his livery. This banished all the judgment that remained; and I became as mad as the disciples

of Porcius Latro, who, when they had made themselves as pale as their master, by drinking decoctions of cumin, imagined themselves as learned; and well nigh believed myself the Duke of Lerma's relation. I really took it in my head, that I should pass for such, or, perhaps, for one of his bastards: a reflection that gave me infinite pleasure.

Add to this, that, in imitation of his excellency, who kept open table, I resolved to entertain also. For this purpose, I ordered Scipio to look out for a skilful cook; and he found one, who was, perhaps, comparable to that of Nomentanos†, of dainty memory. I furnished my cellar with delicious wines; and, after having laid in all other kinds of provision, began to receive company. Every evening, some of the principal clerks of the minister's office, who proudly assume the quality of secretaries of state, came to sup with me. I gave them good cheer, and always sent them home well watered. Scipio, on his side, (for it was like master like man) kept table also in the buttery, where he regaled his acquaintances at my expence: but, exclusive of my regard for that young fellow, I thought, as he contributed to my getting money, he had a right to assist me in spending it. Besides, I looked upon this profusion like a young man, and did not perceive the consequence. I had another reason also for overlooking it. Benefices and employments never ceased bringing grist to the mill; and seeing my finances daily increase, I thought I had for once, drove a nail into the wheel of Fortune.

There was nothing now wanting to gratify my vanity, but to make Fabricius an eye-witness of my pomp. I did not doubt that he was returned from Andalusia; and, that I might have the pleasure of surprizing him, sent him an anonymous billet, importing, that a Sicilian nobleman of his acquaintance expected him to supper, at such a day, hour, and place. Nunnez came at the time appointed, and was amazed to find that I was the foreign nobleman who had invited him

* St. Jago, or St. James. This is the highest order of knighthood in Spain, instituted in the twelfth century. They bear for arms a sword gules, the handle is in form of a cross powdered with fleurs de luce; and their motto is, *Sanguine Arabum*.

† An epicure, that lived in the Augustan age, and eat up a vast fortune.

to supper. 'Yes, friend,' said I to him, 'this is my house; I have a handsome equipage, a good table, and a strong box besides.'—'Is it possible,' cried he, with great vivacity, 'that I find thee again in such opulence! how happy am I in having recommended thee to Count Galiano! I told thee that he was a generous nobleman, who would soon make thee easy for life. Thou hast, doubtless,' added he, 'followed the wise advice I gave thee, and given the butler a little more rein. I congratulate thee upon thy conduct; for it is by such prudent measures only that the stewards in great families become so rich.'

I let Fabricius applaud himself as much as he pleased for having introduced me to the service of Count Galiano; after which, in order to moderate the joy which he felt for having procured me such a good post, I related the marks of gratitude with which that nobleman had repaid my service; but, perceiving that my poet, while I made the detail, sung his recantation within himself, I said to him, 'I forgive the Sicilian: between you and me, I have more cause to rejoice than be sorry at his behaviour towards me. If the count had not used me ill, I should have followed him to Sicily, where I should now have been a servant, in expectation of an uncertain establishment. In a word, I should not be confident to the Duke of Lerma.' Nunnez was so struck with these last words, that he continued some minutes incapable of uttering one syllable. Then breaking silence all of a sudden, 'Did I understand you aright?' said he: 'what! have you the confidence of the prime-minister?'—'I share it,' I replied, 'with Don Rodrigo de Calderona; and, in all appearance, I shall make great progress.'—'Truly, Signior de Santilane,' said he, 'I look upon you with admiration! you are capable of filling all sorts of employments. What talents you are master of! you have (to use the expression of our tennis-court) the universal tool; that is to say, you are qualified for every thing. Finally, Signior,' added he,

'I am overjoyed at your worship's prosperity.'—'O the devil!' said I, interrupting him; 'Mr. Nunnez, truce with Signior and your worship: let us banish these terms, and live familiarly together.'—'Thou art in the right,' he replied; 'I ought not to look upon thee otherwise than as usual, although thou art become rich. I will confess my weakness; I was dazzled when I understood thy happy fate: but that prejudice is over, and I now behold thee again as my old friend Gil Blas.'

Our conversation was interrupted by the arrival of four or five clerks. 'Gentlemen,' said I to them, presenting Nunnez, 'you shall sup with Signior Don Fabricio, who composes verses worthy of King Numa*, and writes in prose like a prodigy.' Unluckily I spoke to people who regarded poetry so little, that our author suffered on account of his profession. Scarce would they deign to favour him with a look. It was to no purpose that he said witty things, in order to attract their attention: they did not perceive the beauty of his sallies; and he was so much piqued at their want of taste, that he made use of his poetical licence, and cunningly withdrawing from the company, disappeared. Our clerks did not perceive his retreat, and sat down to table without so much as asking what was become of him.

Just as I had done dressing, next morning, and was going abroad, the poet of Asturias entered my chamber, saying, 'I ask pardon, my friend, for having so abruptly left thy clerks last night; but truly, I was so much out of my element among them, that I could no longer endure my situation. A parcel of insolent fellows, with their self-sufficient starched airs! I can't comprehend how thou, who hast an acuteness of understanding, can'st accommodate thyself to such stupid guests! This very day,' added he, 'I will bring hither fellows of wit and spirit.'—'I shall be obliged to thee,' answered I; 'and will entirely depend upon thy taste in the choice of them.'—'Thou art in the right,' said he; 'I promise thee superior geniuses, of the most enter-

* The obscure verses sung by the Salian priests, in their processions, were composed by Numa.

taining characters. I will go this instant to a coffee-house where they meet, and bespeak them before they engage themselves elsewhere; for, happy is the man who can have their company at dinner or supper, so much are they admired for their agreeable humour.'

So saying, he left me, and at supper-time returned with six authors only, whom he introduced to me one after another, characterizing each as he presented him. To hear him, one would have thought that these wits surpassed those of ancient Greece and Italy; and their works, as he said, deserved to be engraven in letters of gold. I received these gentlemen very politely, and even affected to load them with civility; for the nation of authors is a little vain-glorious. Though I had not laid my injunctions on Scipio to take care that our table should be sumptuously furnished, as he knew what sort of people I was to treat that day, he had reinforced our services of his own accord. In short, we went to supper in high glee; my poets began to talk of themselves, and were not silent in their own praise. One with a lofty air, mentioned grandees and ladies of quality who were delighted with his muse; another, finding fault with the choice which a learned academy had made of two members, modestly observed that they ought to have chosen him. The discourse of the rest was not a tittle less arrogant. In the middle of supper they worried me with verse and prose; each, in his turn, repeating a specimen of his own writing: one regaled me with a sonnet; another rehearsed a scene of a tragedy; a third read a criticism upon a comedy; and a fourth, endeavouring in his turn to give us an ode of Anacreon translated into wretched Spanish verse, was interrupted by one of his brethren, who told him that he had used an improper term. The author of the translation denied his assertion; and a dispute arose, in which all the wits espoused one side or other; the votes were equal, the disputants grew hot, and proceeded to invectives: the debate still continued; until, becoming quite furious, they got up, and went by the ears together. Fabricio, Scipio, my coachman, lacqueys, and myself, had all sufficient work in parting them; which

when we had accomplished, they went away, as if from a publick-house, without making the least apology for their unpolite behaviour.

Nunnez, upon whose promise I had formed an agreeable idea of this entertainment, remained very much out of countenance at this adventure. 'Well, friend,' said I to him; 'will you still extol your fellow-guests? Upon my conscience, you have brought hither a villainous set! I will henceforth keep to my clerks: don't talk to me of authors.'—'I will bring no more such,' answered he; 'thou hast seen the best of the whole tribe.'

CHAP. X.

THE MORALS OF GIL BLAS ARE ENTIRELY CORRUPTED AT COURT. HE IS CHARGED WITH A COMMISSION BY THE COUNT DE LEMOS, AND ENGAGES IN AN INTRIGUE WITH THAT NOBLEMAN.

AS soon as I was known to be in favour with the Duke of Lerma, I had a court of my own. Every morning my anti-chamber was full of people, and I gave audience at my levee. Two kinds of company came thither; one to buy my interest with the minister for favours; and the other to move me by supplications to obtain for them what they wanted, gratis. The first were sure of being heard and assisted; but, with regard to the last, I got rid of them immediately by evasive excuses, or amused them so long, that their patience forsook them. Before I belonged to court, I was naturally compassionate and charitable; but I no longer felt that humane weakness, and became as hard as flint: of consequence, I cured myself of my friendships also, and stripped myself of all social affection, as will appear by my behaviour to Joseph Navarro, in an affair I am going to relate.

This Navarro, to whom I owed so many obligations, and who, in one word, was the first cause of my fortune, came one day to my house; and, after having expressed a great deal of friendship for me, as he always did when we met, desired me to ask of the Duke of Lerma a certain employment for

for one of his friends; telling me, that the cavalier in whose behalf he solicited was a very amiable young gentleman of great merit, but that he wanted a post for his subsistence. 'I don't at all doubt,' added Joseph, 'that, kind and obliging as you are, you will be overjoyed at an opportunity of serving a man of honour in distress; and I am sure that you will think yourself beholden to me for giving you this occasion of exerting your generosity.' This was plainly telling me that he expected it for nothing; and, though I did not much relish the proposal, I appeared very much disposed to do what he desired. 'I am charmed,' answered I to Navarro, 'that I have it in my power to shew my lively gratitude for all the favours which I have received at your hands. Your interesting yourself for any one is a sufficient inducement for me to serve him; your friend shall have that place you have pitched upon for him, depend upon it: the affair is now no longer yours, but mine.'

On this assurance, Joseph went away very well satisfied. Nevertheless, the person whom he recommended did not obtain the post in question. I procured it for another man, in consideration of a thousand ducats, which I put into my strong box, and which I preferred to any acknowledgment I might have expected from the clerk of the kitchen, to whom I said, with an air of mortification, when next we met, 'Ah, my dear Navarro! you was too late in speaking to me; I was prevented by Calderona, who has given away that same post; and I am quite in despair that I have no better news to entertain you with.'

Joseph implicitly believed what I said, and we parted more friends than ever; but I believe he soon discovered the truth, for he never after came to my house; and I was charmed at his absence. For, besides my being burdened by the services he had done me, I thought it did not look well for people of my rank at court to keep company with butlers.

I have not mentioned the Count de Lemos a good while. Let us now return to that nobleman, whom I sometimes visited. I had carried to him the thousand pistoles, as I formerly observed, and afterwards gave him a

thousand more, by order of the duke his uncle, out of the money I had be-
logning to his excellency. The Count de Lemos had a long conversation with me that day. He told me that he had at last gained his end, and entirely possessed the good graces of the Prince of Spain, whose sole confident he was. He then gave me charge of a very honourable commission which he had already prepared for me. 'Friend Santillane,' said he, 'now is the time to be doing; spare nothing to discover some young beauty, who should be worthy to amuse that gallant prince. You don't want wit, and I need say no more; go, run, search, and when you have made a lucky discovery, come and impart it to me.' I promised to neglect nothing in acquitting myself handsomely of this employment, which must not be very difficult to exercise, since so many people live by the same profession.

I had not been much used to these kinds of inquiry; but not doubting that Scipio was an adept in the art, I called for him when I came home, and said to him in private, 'Child, I am going to intrust thee with a great secret. Dost thou know, that in the midst of Fortune's favours I find I want something?'—'I can easily guess what that is,' said he, interrupting me before I could proceed; 'you want an agreeable nymph to unbend and exhilarate your spirits; and truly it is astonishing that you should be without one in the prime of your age, when grave grey-beards cannot dispense with such recreation.'—'I admire thy penetration!' answered I with a smile. 'Yes; a mistress I want, and desire to have one of thy recommending. But I must warn thee before-hand, that I am very delicate in these matters. I expect a lady of beauty and good morals.'—'What you require,' replied Scipio, 'is not easily found; but, however, we live, thank God, in a city that affords some of all sorts, and I hope I shall soon be able to fit you to a hair.'

Sure enough, in three days he said, 'I have discovered a treasure; a young lady, whose name is Catalina, of a good family, and ravishing beauty; she lives under the tuition of her aunt, in a little house, where they subsist in an honourable manner on their fortune, which is but small; they

they are served by a chamber-maid of my acquaintance, who has assured me, that though their door is shut to every body at present, it would be opened to a rich and liberal gallant, provided he were willing to avoid scandal, by going in at night, without any shew. Whereupon I described you as a cavalier who desired to find the door unlatched; and desired the maid to propose you to the ladies. She has promised to do so, and inform me of their answer to-morrow morning, at a certain place.—‘That’s well;’ I replied; ‘but I am afraid the chamber-maid imposes upon thee.’—‘No, no,’ said he; ‘I am not so easily persuaded; I have already interrogated the neighbours, and conclude from what they say, that Signiora Catalina is a Danae, on whom you may descend, like another Jupiter, in a shower of gold.’ Prejudiced as I was against intrigues of this kind, I engaged in it for once; and as the chamber-maid came next day, and told Scipio, that, if I pleased, I might be introduced that very evening to her mistress, I stole thither between eleven and twelve. The maid received me in the dark, took me by the hand, and led me into a pretty handsome hall, where I found the ladies richly dressed, and seated on satin couches. As soon as they perceived me, they got up, and saluted me in such a noble manner, that I took them for persons of quality. The aunt (whose name was Signiora Mencia) though still agreeable, did not attract my attention, which was entirely engrossed by the niece, who seemed a goddess. To examine her minutely, however, she could not be called a perfect beauty; but she had such graces, together with a tempting luscious air, as hindered the eye to perceive her defects.

Accordingly, I was disturbed at sight of her. I forgot that I came thither to perform the office of procurer; spoke in my own favour, and expressed myself like a man inspired by the most violent passion. The young lady, in whom I found three times more wit than she really had, (so courteous did she seem) quite enchanted me by her answers; and I began to lose the government of myself, when her aunt, in order to moderate my transports,

addressed me in this manner: ‘Signior de Santillane, I must be free with you. On account of the character which I have heard of your worship, I have permitted you to visit me, without enhancing the price of the favour by standing on ceremony; but don’t imagine yourself the nearer your point for that reason. I have hitherto brought up my niece in retirement, and you are (as I may say) the first cavalier to whose eyes she has been exposed. If you deem her worthy to be your wife, I shall be overjoyed at her good fortune. Consider, therefore, if she will suit you at that price; for you cannot have her at a cheaper rate.’

This well-aimed shot frightened away Cupid, who was just going to let fly an arrow at me. To speak without metaphor, a marriage so bluntly proposed, made me recollect myself. I became again all of a sudden the faithful agent of the Count de Lemos, and, changing my tone, replied to Signiora Mencia, ‘Madam, I am pleased with your frankness, which I intend to imitate. Whatever figure I make at court, I am not worthy of the incomparable Catalina, but have in view for her a much more splendid fate; in short, I design her for the Prince of Spain.’—‘Your refusal of my niece,’ replied the aunt coldly, ‘was disobliging enough; there was no occasion to accompany it with a piece of raillery.’—‘I don’t rally, indeed, Madam,’ cried I; ‘nothing is more serious; I have orders to find out a lady who deserves to be honoured with the private visits of the Prince of Spain: I find such a one in your house, and mark it for the scene accordingly.’

Signiora Mencia was astonished at these words, which I perceived did not much displease her: nevertheless, believing that she ought to affect reserve, she answered in this manner. ‘If I was disposed to credit literally what you say, you must know that I am not of such a character as to rejoice in the infamous honour of seeing my niece mistress to a prince. My virtue disapproves—’ ‘What a saint you are, with your virtue!’ said I, interrupting her; ‘you talk like one bred among silly citizens. Sure you
joke,

‘joke, in pretending to consider things
 ‘in a moral point of view! that would
 ‘be stripping them of all their beauty;
 ‘they must be surveyed with a carnal
 ‘eye. Behold the heir-apparent of
 ‘Spain at the feet of the happy Cata-
 ‘lina, adoring and loading her with
 ‘presents; and remember, that from
 ‘her perhaps will spring a hero who
 ‘will render his mother’s name im-
 ‘mortal as his own.’

Although the aunt would have gladly embraced my proposal, she feigned herself irresolute about the matter; and Catalina, who wished the prince already in her chains, affected great indifference; so that I was obliged to invest the place a new, until at length, Signiora Mencia, seeing me repulsed, and ready to raise siege, beat the chamade, and we agreed upon a capitulation, which contained the two following articles. Imprimis, If the prince of Spain, on the report that I shall make of Catalina’s charms, shall be inflamed, and determine to honour her with a nocturnal visit, I shall take care to apprize the ladies of the night that shall be chosen for that purpose. Item, The prince shall not visit the said ladies but as an ordinary gallant, with no other attendants than me and his Mercury in chief.

After this convention, the aunt and niece shewed me all manner of friendship, and assumed a familiarity of behaviour in consequence of which I ventured some hugs, which were not very ill received; and when we parted, they embraced me of their own accord, and loaded me with caresses. It is really wonderful to see with what facility an intimacy is contracted between the couriers of gallantry and the women who want their service. Had people observed me to leave this house with such marks of favour, they might have said, with some appearance of justice, that I was much happier than I actually found myself. The Count de Lemos was overjoyed when I let him know that I had made such a discovery as he desired. I spoke of Catalina in such a manner as made him long to see her. I carried him to her lodgings next night, and he owned that I had been very successful. He told the ladies, he did not at all doubt that the prince would be perfectly well satisfied with the mistress whom I had chosen for him, and that she on her part would

have cause to be contented with such a lover; that the young prince was full of generosity and sweetness of temper: in short, he assured them, that he would bring him to their house in a few days, as they desired he should come, that is, without noise or attendance. This nobleman afterwards took his leave of them, and I withdrew in his company. We got back to his equipage, in which we had come thither, and which waited for us at the end of the street: he set me down at my own house, charging me to inform his uncle next day of this new-started adventure, and to desire he would send him a thousand pistoles to ensure it’s success.

I did not fail to give the Duke of Lerma an exact account of what had passed, concealing only one circumstance. I did not speak a syllable of Scipio, but took to myself the honour of the discovery, according to the practice of those who live among the great.

By these means I acquired a great many compliments. ‘Mr. Gil Blas,’ said the minister to me with an air of raillery, ‘I am ravished to find, that, with your other talents, you likewise possess that of discovering obliging beauties: when I have occasion for one of that class, you will give me leave to apply to you.’—‘My lord,’ I replied in the same tone, ‘I thank your grace for intending me the preference; but give me leave to say, that I should be scrupulous in serving your excellency in that manner. Signior Rodrigo has been so long in possession of that employment, that it would be unjust in me to deprive him of it.’ The duke smiled at my answer; then changing the discourse, asked, if his nephew did not want money for this adventure. ‘Pardon me,’ said I; ‘he begs you will send him a thousand pistoles.’—‘Very well,’ replied the minister; ‘carry them to him, bid him spare nothing, but approve of whatever expence the prince shall propose.’

CHAP. XI.

THE PRIVATE VISIT AND PRESENTS WHICH THE PRINCE OF SPAIN MADE TO CATALINA.

I Went that instant with five hundred double pistoles to the Count de Lemos, who told me, ‘You could not

not come in better season. I have spoke to the prince: he has bit at the hook, and burns with impatience to see Catalina. This very night he intends to slip privately out of the palace, in order to visit her. It is a thing determined, and our measures are taken accordingly. Inform the ladies of his resolution, and give them that money which you have brought; for it is right to let them see that he is no ordinary lover whom they are to receive: besides, the bounty of princes ought to precede their intrigues. As you will accompany him, together with me,' added he, 'be sure of being at his couchée this evening. Your coach also (for I think it is proper we should use it) must wait for us near the palace about midnight.'

I immediately repaired to the house, but did not see Catalina, who, they told me, was a-bed; so that I could only speak with Signiora Mencia, to whom I said, 'Madam, pray excuse me for appearing in your house by day; but it is not in my power to do otherwise, for I must give you notice that the Prince of Spain will be here this night; and here,' added I, putting the bag of money in her hand, 'is an offering which he sends to the temple of Cytherea, to render the divinities of the place propitious. You see I have not engaged you in a bad affair.'—'I am very much obliged to you,' she replied; 'but tell me, Signior de Santillane, does the prince love musick?'—'He loves it,' answered I, 'to distraction; nothing can entertain him so much as a fine voice, accompanied by a lute delicately touched.'—'So much the better!' cried she, in a transport of joy; 'you give me infinite pleasure in telling me this; for my niece has the pipe of a nightingale, and plays upon the lute to admiration; she likewise dances perfectly well.'—'Heavens!' cried I, in my turn; 'what perfections, my good aunt! so many are not necessary to make a girl's fortune: one of these talents is sufficient for the purpose.'

Having thus paved the way, I waited for the hour of the prince's couchée; then giving orders to my coachman, I rejoined the Count de Lemos, who told me, that the prince, in order to get rid of his company the sooner, would

feign a slight indisposition, and even go to bed; the better to persuade them of his being sick; but that he would rise again in an hour, and, by a back-door, gain a private stair that led into the court-yard.

When he had informed me of what they had concerted together, he posted me in a place through which he assured me they would pass; and there I danced attendance so long, that I began to think our gallant had taken another road, or lost his desire of seeing Catalina, as if princes usually dropped these sort of whims before they had satisfied them. In short, I imagined they had forgot me altogether, when two men accosted me, whom having discerned to be those I expected, I conducted them to my coach, in which they seated themselves, while I got upon the coach-box to direct the driver, whom I ordered to stop about fifty yards from the house. I then handed the prince and his companion out of the coach, and we walked towards the place for which we were bound. The gate opened at our approach, and shut again as soon as we got in.

At first we found ourselves in the same darkness in which I had been introduced; though, by way of distinction, there was a small lamp fixed to the wall, the light of which was so dim, that we could only perceive it, without being lighted by it's rays. All this served only to make the adventure more agreeable to our hero, who was sensibly struck at the sight of the ladies, who received him in a hall, where the lustre of a great number of candles made amends for the darkness that reigned in the court. The aunt and niece were in a gay dishabille, so artfully disposed that nobody could look upon them with impunity. Our prince would have been very well satisfied with Signiora Mencia, if there had been no other for him to chuse; but the charms of young Catalina, as they deserved, had the preference. 'Well, my prince,' said the Count de Lemos; 'was it possible for us to procure your highness the pleasure of seeing two ladies more handsome than these?'—'I am ravished with them both,' replied the prince; 'and I shall never carry off my heart; for the aunt could not miss of it, if it was possible for the niece to fail.'

N n

'After

After this compliment, so agreeable to an aunt, he said a thousand fond things to Catalina, who answered with great wit and spirit. As those honourable people who perform the part that I acted on this occasion, are permitted to join in the conversation of lovers, provided it be with an intention of adding fuel to the fire, I told the gallant, that his nymph sung and played upon the lute to admiration. He was overjoyed to hear that she was mistress of these talents, and entreated her to entertain him with a specimen. She complied with a good grace, took up a lute ready tuned, played some tender airs, and sung in such an affecting manner, that the prince dropped down at her feet, in a transport of love and pleasure. But let us finish this picture; and only observe that, during this sweet intoxication, in which the heir of the Spanish monarchy was plunged, the hours stole away like minutes, and we were obliged to tear him from that dangerous house, because of the day's approach. We the gentlemen-undertakers carried him back to his apartment with great dispatch, and then went to our different homes, as well satisfied in having fitted him with a she-adventurer, as if we had transacted his marriage with a princess.

Next morning I recounted this adventure to the Duke of Lerma, who desired to be informed of every particular; and just as I had finished my narration, the Count de Lemos came in, and said, 'The prince of Spain is so much engrossed by Catalina, and has conceived such a passion for her, that he purposes to visit her often, and attach himself to her alone. He wanted to send her this day jewels to the amount of two thousand pistoles, but not having a penny in his purse, he applied to me.'—'My dear Lemos,' said he, 'you must find me that sum immediately. I know very well that I incommode, nay, exhaust you; but my heart retains the obligation, and if ever I find myself in a condition to exert my gratitude, otherwise than in thought, for all your friendship, you shall not repent having laid me under an obligation.'—'My prince,' said I, leaving him that instant, 'I have friends and credit, and will

'employ them both to accommodate you with what you want.'

'It is not difficult to satisfy his demand,' said the duke to his nephew. 'Santillane, go fetch the money; or, if you please, he will purchase the jewels; for he is a perfect connoisseur in stones, especially rubies!—Is not this true, Gil Blas?' added he, looking at me with a satirical smile. 'Your grace is very severe,' I replied; 'I see that you want to make Monsieur the Count merry at my expence.' This happened accordingly. The nephew asked what mystery there was in these words. 'Nothing,' answered the duke, laughing; 'only Santillane one day thought proper to exchange a diamond for a ruby, and afterwards found that he had gained neither honour nor profit by the bargain.'

I should have thought myself easily quit, if the minister had said no more of the matter; but he took the trouble to relate the trick that Camilla and Don Raphael played upon me in the hired lodging, and to enlarge particularly on those circumstances which chagrined me most. His excellency, after having enjoyed his joke, ordered me to accompany the Count de Lemos, who carried me to a jeweller's house, where we chose jewels, which we shewed to the prince for his approbation; and which being afterwards entrusted to me, in order to be presented to Catalina, I went home for two thousand pistoles of the duke's money, with which I paid the merchant.

It is a question not to be asked, if I was kindly received next night by the ladies, when I exhibited the presents of my embassy, consisting of an handsome ring designed for the aunt, and a pair of ear-rings for the niece. Charmed with these marks of the prince's love and generosity, they began to prattle like two gossips, and thanked me for having procured for them such a valuable acquaintance. They forgot themselves in the excess of their joy, and some words escaped them, which made me suspect that I had introduced a mere gipsy to our great monarch's son; but that I might know precisely whether or not I had performed this fine master-piece, I went home, resolved to come to an explanation with Scipio.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

CATALINA'S REAL CHARACTER.
THE PERPLEXITY AND UNEASINESS OF GIL BLAS. THE PRECAUTION HE WAS OBLIGED TO TAKE FOR HIS OWN QUIET.

JUST as I entered my own house, I heard a great noise; and enquiring into the cause, was told, Scipio that evening treated half a dozen of his friends, who sung full throat, and frequently broke out in loud fits of laughter; so that assuredly this repast could not be properly styled the banquet of the Seven Wise Men.

The master of the feast, advertised of my arrival, said to the company, 'Gentlemen, 'tis only my master come home: be not disturbed, but continue your mirth; I will go and speak two words to him, and rejoin you in a twinkling.' So saying, he came to my apartment. 'What a hubbub is this?' said I; 'what sort of people are those you entertain below? are they poets?'—'No, indeed, Sir, if you please,' he replied; 'it were pity to bestow your wine on such company. I make a better use of it. There is among my guests a very rich young fellow, who wants for his money an employment by your interest; and for him alone I give this entertainment: at every draught he drinks I raise the gratification you are to receive ten pistoles, and will make him drink till day.'—'If that be the case,' I replied, 'go back to thy friends, and don't spare the wine in my cellar.'

I did not think this a proper season to talk with him about Catalina; but next morning, when I got up, I spoke to him in this manner: 'Friend Scipio, thou knowest how we live together; I treat thee more like a comrade than a domestick; and of consequence thou wilt be to blame in deceiving me as a master. Let us then lay aside all reserve with one another. I will tell thee something that will surprize thee, and thou shalt disclose to me thy real sentiments of those two women with whom thou hast made me acquainted. Between thee and me, I suspect them to be

two artful pusses, cunning in proportion to the simplicity which they affect. If my opinion does them justice, the Prince of Spain has no great cause to be well pleased with me; for I confess it was for him that I wanted a mistress. I accordingly carried him to Catalina's house, and he is become passionately fond of her.'—'Signior,' answered Scipio, 'I am too well used by you, to be wanting in sincerity with my master. I had yesterday a private conversation with the maid of these two princesses, and she related their history, which to me seemed very diverting. You shall hear it in two words.

Catalina is daughter to a poor gentleman of Arragon, and finding herself, at the age of fifteen, an orphan, as handsome as poor, listened to an old commander, who conducted her to Toledo, where he died in six months, after having served as a parent rather than a husband to her. She secured his fortune, consisting of some moveables and three hundred pistoles in ready-money, then joined herself to Signiora Mencia, who was still in fashion, though already in the wane. These two good friends lived together, and began to behave so as to attract the notice of justice; at which the ladies being disgusted, hastily abandoned Toledo through vexation, and settled in Madrid, where they have lived about two years, without visiting any person in the neighbourhood. But the best circumstance of the story is this; they have hired two small houses, separated only by a wall, having in the cellar a stair of communication from the one to the other. Signiora Mencia lives with a young maid-servant in one of these houses, and the commander's widow possesses the other, with an old duenna, who passes for her grandmother; so that our Arragonian is sometimes a niece brought up by her aunt, and sometimes a pupil under the wings of her grandame. When she acts the niece, she is called Catalina; and when she plays the grandchild, her name is Sirena.

At the name of Sirena, I grew pale; and interrupting Scipio, said, 'What do I hear! alas! I am afraid that this cursed Arragonian is no other

'than the mistress of Calderona.'—
'Truly,' he replied, 'it is the same;
'I thought this piece of news would
'have given you pleasure.'—'Thou
'art very much mistaken,' answered I;
'I have more cause to be sorry than
'rejoiced at it: dost thou not see the
'consequences?'—'No, in faith,' re-
sumed Scipio; 'what mischief can it
'produce? you are not sure that Don
'Rodrigo will discover what passes;
'and if you are afraid of his getting
'information, you have nothing to do
'but prepossess the minister in your
'favour, by telling him candidly the
'whole affair. He will see your sin-
'cerity; and if, after this, Calderona
'should attempt to do you an ill office
'with his excellency, he will perceive
'that his sole design is to injure you
'out of a spirit of revenge.'

Scipio by this discourse banished my fear; and, resolving to follow his advice, I informed the Duke of Lerma of the discovery I had made. I even affected to tell it with a melancholy air, in order to persuade him of my being mortified for having innocently introduced Don Rodrigo's mistress to the prince. But the minister, far from pitying his favourite, laughed at the adventure, and bid me go on in my old way; saying, that after all, it was glorious for Calderona to love the same lady who had captivated the Prince of Spain, and to be as well received by her as his highness. I imparted it also to the Count de Lemos, who assured me of his protection, in case the first secretary should discover the intrigue, and attempt to ruin me with his grace.

Imagining that, by this precaution, I had delivered the bark of my fortune from the dangerous shelves that environed it, my fear vanished. I still accompanied the prince to the house of Catalina, (alias, the fair Sirena) who was artful enough to invent stratagems to keep Don Rodrigo from her embraces, and to defraud him of those nights which she was obliged to bestow on his illustrious rival.

CHAP. XIII.

GIL BLAS CONTINUES TO ACT THE
MAN OF CONSEQUENCE. HEARS
NEWS OF HIS FAMILY, WHICH

MAKE BUT SMALL IMPRESSION
UPON HIM, AND QUARRELS WITH
FABRICIUS.

I Have already observed, that in the morning my anti-chamber was usually crowded with people who came to make proposals; but I would not receive them *viva voce*; and, according to the custom at court, or rather with a view of exhibiting my own importance, I said to each solicitor, 'Give in a memorial.' I was so much used to this, that one day I answered in these words to my landlord, who came to put me in mind of a year's rent being due. As for my butcher and baker, they saved me the trouble of asking their memorials, which were always punctually delivered every month. Scipio, who imitated me so closely, that the copy might be said to come very near the original, behaved in the same manner to those who applied for his interest with me. I was guilty of another ridiculous piece of vanity, which I don't intend to excuse. I was foolish enough to talk of the grandees as if I had been a man in their sphere. If (for example) I had occasion to mention the Duke of Alva, or the Duke of Medina Sidonia, I called them, without ceremony, Alva, and Medina Sidonia. In a word, I became so vain and haughty, that I was no longer my father's son. Alas! poor duenna and usher, I did not so much as enquire whether you were happy or miserable in the Asturias! I did not even think of you! The court is like the river Lethe, in making us forget our parents and friends, when they are under misfortunes.

I no longer, therefore, remembered my family; when one morning a young man came to my house, and desiring to speak with me in private, I carried him into my closet, where, without offering him a chair, because he seemed to be a plebeian, I asked what he wanted with me. 'How! Signior Gil Blas!' said he, 'don't you remember me?' In vain did I consider him attentively: I was obliged to answer, that his features were entirely unknown. 'I am,' he replied, 'one of your old school-fellows, a native of Oviedo, and son of Bertrand Muscada the grocer, your uncle the canon's neigh-

neighbour. I remember you very well; we have played together a thousand times at Ciega Gallina *.

'I have,' said I, 'but a confused idea of the amusements of my infancy: the business in which I have been engaged since that time, has effaced them from my memory.'—'I am come,' he resumed, 'to Madrid, to settle accounts with my father's correspondent; and I heard it said, that you was on a good footing at court, and already as rich as a Jew. I congratulate you on your good fortune; and will, at my return into the country, overwhelm your family with joy, by telling them such an agreeable piece of news.'

I could not, in common decency, forbear asking in what situation he had left my father, mother, and uncle; but this piece of duty I performed so coldly, that the grocer had no great reason to admire the force of blood. He seemed shocked at my indifference for those who ought to have been so dear to me; and being a plain vulgar young fellow, said bluntly, 'I thought you had more tenderness and sensibility for your relations. How coldly do you enquire into their circumstances! I know, that your father and mother are still at service; and the good canon Gil Perez, burdened with old age and infirmities, draws near his end. People ought to have some natural affection; and since you are in a condition to assist your parents, I advise you, as a friend, to send two hundred pistoles yearly for their support; by which means you will make their life easy and happy, without any inconvenience to yourself.' Instead of being moved by the picture which he drew of my family, I was disgusted at the liberty which he took in advising me, without being desired so to do. With a little more address, perhaps, he might have persuaded me; but his freedom had a contrary effect. He perceived my displeasure by my silence; and continuing his exhortation with more malice than charity, made me lose my patience entirely. 'Oh, this is too much!' cried I in a passion; 'Go, Mr. Muscada, and meddle with your own concerns: it becomes you well indeed to prescribe

to me! I know my duty, on this occasion, better than you can teach me.' So saying, I pushed the grocer out of my closet, and sent him back to sell pepper and cloves at Oviedo. What he said, however, did not fail of having some effect: I reproached myself with being an unnatural son, and was melted accordingly. I recalled the care they had taken of my infancy and education; I considered the duty I owed to my parents; and my reflections were attended with some transports of acknowledgment, which, however, came to nothing: they were soon stifled by my ingratitude, and succeeded by profound oblivion. There are many parents who have children of the same stamp.

The avarice and ambition with which I was possessed, entirely changed my disposition. I lost all my gaiety, became absent and thoughtful; in a word, a miserable animal. Fabricio, seeing me altogether bent on sacrificing to Fortune, and very much detached from him, came but seldom to my house, where one day he could not help saying, 'Truly, Gil Blas, thou art growing out of my knowledge: before thy coming to court, thou wast always easy and tranquil; at present, thou art incessantly agitated with project after project to enrich thyself; and the more wealth thou hast got, the more wouldst thou amass. Besides, let me tell thee, thou no longer treatest me with that effusion of the heart, and freedom of behaviour, which are the soul of friendship; on the contrary, thou wrappest thyself up, and concealest from me thy secret views; nay, I can perceive constraint in all thy civilities towards me: in short, Gil Blas is no longer the same Gil Blas whom I formerly knew.'

'You joke, sure!' said I, with an air of indifference; 'I can't perceive any change in myself.'—'Thy own eyes are no judges,' answered he; 'they are bewitched: believe me, thy metamorphosis is but too true. Speak sincerely, my friend: Do thou and I live together as formerly? When I used to knock at thy door in the morning, thou camest in person to open it, very often half-asleep; and I en-

* Blind-man's Buff.

'tered thy chamber without ceremony.
 ' Now, behold the difference: thou art
 ' attended by half a score of lacqueys;
 ' I am obliged to wait in thy anti-
 ' chamber, and send in my name be-
 ' fore I can speak with thee: then,
 ' how am I received! with a forced
 ' politeness, and air of importance; so
 ' that my visits seem tedious and tire-
 ' some. Dost thou think such a recep-
 ' tion can be agreeable to one who has
 ' lived with thee on the footing of a
 ' comrade? No, Santillane, no; I
 ' can't put up with it. Farewell! Let
 ' us part friends, and get rid of one
 ' another: thou of one who censures
 ' thy behaviour, and I of a rich up-
 ' start who has forgot himself.'

I found myself more irritated than
 reclaimed by his reproaches, and let
 him go without making the least effort
 to detain him. In my opinion, at that
 time, the friendship of a poet was not

of such value as that I should be afflict-
 ed at the loss of it: I found abun-
 dant consolation in the acquaint-
 ance of some small officers of the
 king, to whom of late I was strictly
 connected by a similitude of disposi-
 tion. The greatest part of these new
 companions were people who sprung
 I knew not whence, and arrived at
 their posts merely by the happy influ-
 ence of their stars. They had already
 made their fortunes; and the wretches,
 ascribing to their own merit the wealth
 which had been heaped upon them by
 the bounty of the king, forgot them-
 selves as well as I did. We looked
 upon ourselves as very respectable per-
 sonages. O Fortune! how are thy
 favours usually dispensed! The Stoick
 Epictetus was certainly in the right,
 when he compared thee to a young
 lady of fashion who prostitutes herself
 to the embraces of footmen.

END OF THE EIGHTH BOOK.



THE
A D V E N T U R E S
O F
G I L B L A S
O F
S A N T I L L A N E.

BOOK IX.

CHAP. I.

SCIPIO ADVISES GIL BLAS TO MARRY. PROPOSES THE DAUGHTER OF A RICH AND NOTED GOLDSMITH FOR HIS WIFE: THE STEPS WHICH WERE TAKEN IN CONSEQUENCE OF THIS ADVICE.



ONE evening, after the company which had supped with me was gone, seeing myself alone with Scipio, I asked what he had done that day. 'A master-piece!' he replied: 'I intend to have you married to the only daughter of a goldsmith of my acquaintance.'—'The daughter of a goldsmith!' cried I, with an air of disdain; 'hast thou lost thy senses? how canst thou propose a wife from the city? One who has certainly merit, and is on a sure footing at court, ought to entertain more elevated views, methinks.'—'How, Sir!' replied Scipio; 'sure you are not in earnest: consider that the male alone canobles; and be not more delicate

'than a thousand noblemen, whose names I can mention. Do you know that the heiress in question is worth an hundred thousand ducats? Is not this a fine morsel of plate?' When I heard him talk of such a round sum, I became more tractable. 'I yield,' said I to my secretary; 'the dowry determines me: when shall I touch it?'—'Softly, Sir,' he replied; 'a little patience: I must first communicate the proposal to her father, and obtain his consent.'—'Good!' said I, laughing heartily: 'are you still thereabouts? I find the marriage is far advanced.'—'Farther than you imagine,' answered he; 'I want only an hour's conversation with the goldsmith, and will answer for his consent. But before we proceed, let us come to a composition, if you please. Suppose I procure for you those hundred thousand ducats, how many will fall to my share?'—'Twenty thousand,' I replied. 'Heaven be praised!' said he; 'I limit the acknowledgment to ten thousand: for once, you are more generous than I. To-morrow I will set this negotiation on foot; and you may depend

'depend upon it's success; otherwise 'I am but an ass.' In effect, two days after, he said, 'I have spoke to Signior Gabriel Salero the goldsmith, and have extolled your credit and your merit so much, that he listened to the proposal I made, of accepting you for a son-in-law; and you shall have his daughter, with an hundred thousand ducats, provided you can make it plainly appear that you are in favour with the minister.'—'If that be the case,' answered I to Scipio; 'I shall be married very soon: but, a-propos, hast thou seen the girl? is she handsome?'—'Not so handsome as the dowry,' said he: 'between you and me, this rich heiress is not a very beautiful creature; but, luckily, that you don't mind.'—'No, faith, my child,' said I; 'we courtiers only marry for the sake of marrying, and look for beauty no where but in the wives of our friends. If it happens to centre in our own, we take so little notice of it, that it is but just in them to punish us for our neglect.'

'This is not all,' resumed Scipio; 'Signior Gabriel invites you to supper to-night; and we have agreed, that you shall not talk of marriage. There will be several merchants of his acquaintance present at the entertainment, where you shall appear only as a simple guest; and to-morrow he will sup with you in the same manner. By this you may see that he wants to study your temper, before he proceeds; so that you must be upon your guard before him.'—'Zooks!' said I, with an air of confidence; 'let him examine me as narrowly as he pleases; I will lose nothing by his scrutiny.'

All this was punctually executed: I repaired to the house of the goldsmith, who received me as familiarly as if we had already visited one another several times. He was an honest citizen, polite *hasta porfiar**, as the saying is. He introduced me to Signiora Eugenia his wife, and young Gabriela his daughter, to whom I paid abundance of compliments, without infringing the treaty. I said a great many nothings, in very specious words, according to the custom of courtiers.

Gabriela (no disparagement to my secretary) appeared not at all disagreeable; whether on account of her being richly dressed, or that I looked upon her through the dowry, I know not. What a fine house did Signior Gabriel possess! I believe there was more silver in it than in all the mines of Peru; that metal presented itself to the view, in all corners, under a thousand different shapes. Every room, and that in particular where we supped, was a perfect treasure. What a noble spectacle was this for the eyes of a son-in-law! The old man, that he might do the greater honour to his entertainment, had assembled five or six merchants, persons equally grave and tedious: they spoke of nothing but commerce; and their discourse might have been called a conference of factors, rather than the conversation of friends at supper.

Next night I treated my goldsmith in my turn; and as it was not in my power to dazzle him with plate, had recourse to an illusion of a different kind. I invited to supper those of my friends who made the best figure at court, and whom I knew to be ambitious fellows, who set no bounds to their desires. These people talked of nothing but pomp, of splendid and lucrative posts to which they aspired; and this had it's effect: the citizen Gabriel, confounded by their grand ideas, found himself, in spite of his wealth, a mean mortal in comparison of these gentlemen. As for my own part, affecting the man of moderation, I said I would be contented with a middling fortune; twenty thousand ducats a year, or so. Upon which, these greedy hunters of honour and riches cried, I was in the wrong: and that a man who (like me) was beloved by the prime-minister, ought not to restrict himself to such a trifle. The father-in-law lost not a syllable of what was said, and I thought I observed him very well satisfied when he retired.

Scipio did not fail to visit him next morning, and ask if he was pleased with my behaviour: 'I am charmed with it!' replied the citizen; 'the young man has won my heart. But, Signior Scipio,' added he, 'I conjure you, by our old acquaintance,

* Even to obstinacy.

to speak sincerely. We have all our different foibles, as you know; tell me that of Signior Santillane: is he a gamester? is he a rake? What is his vicious inclination? Pray, don't conceal it.'—'You affront me, Signior Gabriel, by asking such a question,' replied the mediator: 'I am not so much in my master's interests as in yours. If he had any bad quality, capable of making your daughter unhappy, do you think I would have proposed him to you for a son-in-law? No, faith! I am too much your humble servant. But, between you and me, I know no other fault in him, but that of having no fault. He is too modest for a young man.'—'So much the better,' cried the goldsmith; 'I am glad of it. Go, friend; assure him that he shall have my daughter, whom I would bestow upon him, even if he was not beloved by the minister.'

My secretary had no sooner informed me of this conversation, than I hastened to Salero's house, to thank him for his condescension. He had already declared his pleasure to his wife and daughter, who gave me to understand, by their behaviour towards me, that they submitted to his will without reluctance. I carried my father-in-law, and presented him to the Duke of Lerma, to whom I had imparted the affair the preceding evening. His excellency received him very courteously, and assured him, that he was very glad he had chosen, for his son-in-law, a man for whom he had so much regard, and whom he intended to advance. He then enlarged upon my good qualities; and, in short, spoke so well of me, that honest Gabriel thought he had met in my worship one of the best matches in Spain. He was so overjoyed, that the tear stood in his eye: he clasped me in his arms at parting, and said, 'My son, I am so impatient to see you Gabriela's husband, that you shall be married in eight days at farthest.'

CHAP. II.

GIL BLAS, BY ACCIDENT, REMEMBERS DON ALPHONSO DE LEYVA, AND DOES HIM A PIECE OF SERVICE OUT OF VANITY.

THE order of my history requires, that I should leave my marriage for a moment, to recount the service which I did to Don Alphonso, my old master, whom I had entirely forgotten till now that I remembered him on this occasion. The government of the city of Valencia became vacant; and when I heard this piece of news, I thought of Don Alphonso de Leyva. I reflected, that this employment would suit him admirably well; and, not so much through friendship as ostentation, resolved to ask it for him; representing to myself, that if I should obtain the place, it would do me infinite honour. Addressing myself, therefore, to the Duke of Lerma, I told him that I had been steward to Don Caesar de Leyva and his son; and that having all the reason in the world to love them, I took the liberty to beg the government of Valencia for either the one or the other. The minister answered, 'With all my heart, Gil Blas; I love to see thee grateful and generous. Besides, I esteem the family thou speakest of; the Leyva's have been always good servants to the king, and well deserve that place. Thou mayest dispose of it at thy own pleasure: I give it thee for a nuptial present.'

Ravished with my success, I went, without loss of time, and desired Calderona to make out letters-patent for Don Alphonso. There I found a great number of people attending, in respectful silence, until Rodrigo should give them audience; and pressing through the crowd, I presented myself at the door of his closet, which was immediately opened, and displayed a multitude of knights, commanders, and other people of consequence, whom Calderona heard in their turns. His different behaviour to different people was very remarkable: he received some with a slight inclination of his head only; others he honoured with a bow, and conducted them to his closet-door. He put (to use the expression) different shades of consideration in the civilities he shewed. On one hand, I perceived some cavaliers, who, shocked at the little regard he paid to them, cursed in their hearts the necessity that compelled them to cringe to such a fellow. On the contrary, I observed others, who laughed within themselves

at his ridiculous and self-sufficient deportment. Though I made all these fine observations, I was not capable of profiting by them; for I behaved at home just in the same manner, and little minded whether my haughty carriage was blamed or approved, provided it commanded respect.

Don Rodrigo having, by chance, cast his eyes upon me, hastily quitted a gentleman to whom he was speaking, and coming up, embraced me with demonstrations of friendship that surprised me not a little. 'Ah, my dear colleague!' cried he; 'what affair procures me the pleasure of seeing you here? Is there any thing in which I can serve you?' I told him the cause of my visit; and he assured me in the most obliging terms, that what I wanted should be done by the same hour next day. He did not limit his politeness to this, but conducted me as far as the door of his antichamber, whither he never used to go except with grandees, and there embraced me anew.

'What is the meaning of all this civility?' said I to myself, going out; 'what can it forebode? Sure Calderona meditates my ruin. Perhaps he is desirous of gaining my friendship; or, feeling his favour on the decline, cultivates me with a view of engaging my intercession with our patron in his behalf.' I did not know which of these conjectures I should adopt. Next day, when I returned, he treated me in the same manner, loading me with civility and caresses. True, indeed, he bated a great deal of that politeness in his reception of other people who came to speak with him. He was blunt with some, cold with others, and disobliging to every body: but all of them were sufficiently revenged by an adventure which happened, and which I ought not to pass over in silence. This will be an advice to the reader, for those clerks and secretaries who shall read it.

A man in a very plain dress, and who did not at all appear what he was, approached Calderona, and spoke to him of a certain memorial, which he said he had presented to the Duke of Lerma. Don Rodrigo, who did not even look at the cavalier, said to him, in a surly tone, 'What is your name, friend?'—'I was called Francillo in my infancy,' replied the cavalier, very coolly; 'since that time I have had the appellation of Don Francisco de Zuniga*'; and, at present, my name is the Count de Pedroso.' Calderona, astonished at these words, and finding that he had to do with a man of the first quality, endeavoured to excuse himself. 'Signior,' said he to the count, 'I beg pardon, if not knowing you—' 'I want none of thy excuses,' said Francillo, with disdain; 'I despise thy apologies as much as thy incivility. Know, that a minister's secretary ought to receive all sorts of people with good manners. Thou mayest, if thou wilt, be vain enough to look upon thyself as thy master's deputy; but don't forget that thou art only his valet.'

Though the haughty Don Rodrigo was very much mortified at this incident, he did not become a whit more affable. As for my part, I marked this stroke, and resolved to take care how I behaved to people in giving audience, and never to be insolent but with mutes. As Don Alphonso's patent was expedited, I carried it away, and sent it by an express to that young nobleman, with a letter from the Duke of Lerma, in which his excellency informed him, that the king had named him to the government of Valencia†. I took no notice of the share I had in this nomination; I would not even write; pleasing myself with the hope of telling him by word of mouth, and of surprizing him agreeably, when he should come to court, to take the oaths for his employment.

* Zuniga, one of the most ancient families of Castile.

† Valencia, the capital of the kingdom of the same name, on the River Turio. It is the see of an archbishop, and has an university. Trade and manufactures flourish here; the principal of the latter is that of silk, which the women and children spin before their houses. They export large quantities of wine, oil, and fruit; and the inhabitants have an easy and agreeable conversation, without any of that stiffness observable in the rest of Spain; and, on the whole, the place is so agreeable as to have obtained the name of *Valencia la hermosa*; Valencia the beautiful.

C H A P. III.

THE PREPARATIONS FOR THE MARRIAGE OF GIL BLAS, AND THE GREAT EVENT THAT RENDERED THEM USELESS.

LET us return to my fair Gabriela, whom I was to marry in eight days. Both parties prepared for the ceremony; Salero took off rich cloaths for the bride; and I hired a chambermaid, a page, and an old squire, for her attendants. All this was ordered by Scipio, who waited even more impatiently than I for the day on which the dowry was to be paid.

On the evening preceding that day so much desired, I supped at the house of my father-in-law, with uncles, aunts, male and female cousins, and played the part of an hypocritical son-in-law to great perfection. I shewed great respect to the goldsmith and his wife, acted the passionate lover to Gabriela, and behaved very courteously to the whole family, to whose flat discourse and cit-like observations I patiently listened. Accordingly, at the price of my patience, I had the good fortune to please all the relations. There was not one among them who did not seem glad of my alliance.

The repast being ended, the company removed into a great hall, where we were regaled with a concert of vocal and instrumental musick, which was not ill executed, although they had not chosen the best hands in Madrid. Several gay airs, with which our ears were agreeably entertained, put us all in such good-humour, that we began to form country-dances. God knows how we performed, since I was taken for a disciple of Terpsichore; though I had no other principles of that art than two or three lessons which I received from a coxcomb of a dancing-master, who came to teach the pages when I lived with the Marchioness of Chaves. After we had sufficiently diverted ourselves, it being time for each to think of retiring, I was very prodigal of my hugs and

bows. 'Adieu, my son!' said Salero, embracing me; 'I will wait on you to-morrow morning with the dowry in good gold.'—'My dear father!' I replied, 'you shall be very welcome.' Then wishing the family good night, I got into the coach that waited for me at the gate, and drove homewards.

I was scarce two hundred paces from Signior Gabriel's house, when fifteen or twenty men, some a horseback, others a-foot, armed with swords and carbines, surrounded the coach, and stopped it, crying, 'In the king's name!' They made me come out in a hurry, and threw me into a post-chaise, where the chief of these cavaliers mounting along with me, bid the driver proceed for Segovia. I soon guessed that my fellow-traveller was an honest alguazil, whom I questioned about the cause of my imprisonment. But he answered in the usual tone of those gentlemen, that is, in a brutal manner, that he was not obliged to tell me any thing of the matter. I observed, that perhaps he might be mistaken in his man. 'No,' said he; 'I know my business better. You are Signior de Santilane; and you I have orders to conduct to the place for which we are bound.' Having nothing to reply, I resolved to hold my tongue. We travelled all the rest of the night, along Mançanarez, in profound silence, changed horses at Colmenar, and arrived in the evening at Segovia*, where I was locked up in the tower.

C H A P. IV.

THE TREATMENT OF GIL BLAS IN THE TOWER OF SEGOVIA, AND THE MANNER IN WHICH HE LEARNED THE CAUSE OF HIS IMPRISONMENT.

THEY began with putting me into a dungeon, where I was left upon straw, like a malefactor worthy of death. Here I passed the night, not in deploring my condition, for as yet I had not perceived the whole of my mis-

* Segovia, a city of Old Castile in Spain, situated on the River Tago, over which is a noble aqueduct built by Trajan. The principal mint of Spain is fixed in this city; and the woollen-manufacture here is the best in all Spain. It is encompassed with strong walls, adorned with lofty towers. Here is also a famous university and bishoprick. It lies thirty-five miles north of Madrid.

fortune, but in talking my remembrance to find out the cause of my imprisonment. I did not doubt that it was the work of Calderona; nevertheless, though I suspected that he had discovered the whole, I could not conceive how he had prevailed upon the Duke of Lerma to treat me so cruelly. Sometimes I imagined that I had been arrested without the knowledge of his excellency; and sometimes I thought that he himself was the cause of my misfortune, for some political reasons that often induce ministers to use their favourites in this manner.

I was strongly agitated by these different conjectures, when the light of day, penetrating through a little grate, presented to my view the horror of the place in which I was. I then grieved without moderation, and my eyes became two sources of tears, which the remembrance of my prosperity rendered inexhaustible. While I abandoned myself to my sorrow, a turnkey came into my dungeon, with a loaf and a pitcher of water, for the day's allowance. He looked at me, and observing that my face was bathed in tears, gaoler as he was, felt an emotion of pity. 'Signior Prisoner,' said he, 'don't despair: you must not be so sensible of the vicissitudes of life; you are young, and will see better days. Meanwhile, eat the king's allowance with a good grace.'

My comforter went out when he had pronounced these words, to which I made no answer but by groans and lamentations. I spent the whole day in cursing my fate, without thinking of doing honour to my provision, which, to me, in my present situation, seemed not so much a present of the king's bounty, as the effect of his rage; since it served rather to prolong than assuage the pains of the unhappy.

Night, in the mean time, arrived, and immediately a great noise of keys attracted my attention. The door of my dungeon opened; and a moment after, a man entering with a candle in his hand, approached me, saying, 'Signior Gil Blas, behold one of your old friends. I am that Don Andrea de Tordefillas who lived with you at Granada, and was gentleman to the archbishop, while you was in favour with that prelate. You desired him, if you may remember, to employ his credit in my behalf, and by his in-

terest I was named for an employment in Mexico: but, instead of embarking for the Indies, I stopped in the city of Alicant, where I married the daughter of him who commanded the castle, and by a train of adventures which I shall recount to you by and by, I am now become keeper of the tower of Segovia. I have expressed orders to keep you from the speech of every living soul, to make you lie upon straw, and live upon bread and water only. But I have too much humanity not to pity your misfortune: besides, you have done me service; and my gratitude prevails over the orders which I have received. Far from being the instrument of that cruelty which they would exercise upon you, I intend to soften the rigour of your fate. Get up, and follow me.'

Although Mr. Keeper well deserved my thanks, my understanding was so much disturbed, that I could not answer one word. I did not fail, however, to follow him, through a court, and up a narrow stair, to a small room, quite a-top of the tower. I was not a little surprized, when I entered this chamber, to see two lights burning in brazen candlesticks, and two handsome covers on a table. 'The victuals will be presently brought,' said Tordefillas; 'and we will sup here together. I have destined this retreat for your lodging, where you will live much more comfortably than in your dungeon. You will see from your window the flowery banks of the Erema, and the delightful valley which extends from the feet of the mountains that separate the two Castiles, as far as Coca. I know that at first you will not be very sensible of such a fine prospect; but when the violence of your grief shall be mellowed by time into a soft melancholy, you will take pleasure in making an excursion with your eyes over such agreeable objects. Besides, you may be assured of being well provided in linen, and other necessaries befitting a gentleman of delicacy and taste. Moreover, you shall have a good bed, comfortable diet, and be furnished with as many books as you chuse to read. In a word, you shall be as well treated as a prisoner can be.'

Finding myself a little eased by such obliging

obliging offers, I took courage, gave my gaoler a thousand thanks, told him that he recalled me to life by his generous behaviour, and that I wished I might ever again have an opportunity of shewing my gratitude. 'And why not have an opportunity?' he replied. 'Do you think you have lost your liberty for ever? You are mistaken; and I dare assure you, that you will be quit for a few months imprisonment.'—'What say you, Signior Don Andrea!' cried I; 'it seems then you know the cause of my misfortune.'—'I confess,' said he, 'I am not ignorant of the affair. The alguazil, who brought you hither, imparted the secret to me; and I shall now reveal it.'

'He told me, that the king, being informed of your having, in concert with the Count de Lemos, carried the Prince of Spain to the house of a suspected lady, had, to punish you both, exiled the count, and sent you to the tower of Segovia, to be treated with all the rigour which you have experienced since your arrival.'—'And how,' said I, 'did this affair come to the knowledge of the king? it is that circumstance in particular of which I want to be informed.'—'And that circumstance,' he replied, 'is what I could not learn from the alguazil, who in all likelihood is himself ignorant of the matter.'

Here our conversation was interrupted by the entrance of several valets, who brought up supper. They put upon the table some bread, two cups, two bottles, and three large dishes, in one of which there was a ragout of hare, with plenty of onions, oil, and saffron; an olla podrida* in another; and the third contained a turkey-powt on a marmalade of berengena†. When Tordesillas saw that we had every thing we wanted, he sent away his servants, not caring that they should overhear our discourse; and having locked the door, we sat down at table opposite to one another. 'Let us begin,' said he, 'with what is most needful. You must have a good appetite, after a fast of two days.' So saying, he loaded my plate with vic-

tuals, imagining that he served one half starved; and really he had reason to think I would stuff myself with his ragouts. Nevertheless, I baulked his expectation; and how much soever my condition required food, I could not swallow a morsel; so much did I take to heart my present situation. To dispel the cruel images which incessantly afflicted me, my keeper in vain exhorted me to drink, by extolling the excellency of his wine. Had he given me nectar, I should have drank it without pleasure at that time. He perceived my chagrin, and changing his battery, began to recount, in a pleasant manner, the history of his own marriage. But I heard his narration with such absence of thought, that, when it was ended, I could not have repeated one word of what he said. He concluded, that he undertook too much, in attempting to divert my sorrow that evening; and when supper was over, got up, saying, 'Signior de Santillane, I will leave you to your repose, or rather, to muse at leisure upon your misfortune. But, I repeat it again, it will not be of long duration: the king is naturally good; when his wrath subsides, and he shall reflect upon the deplorable situation in which he believes you to be, he will think you sufficiently punished.' So saying, Mr. Keeper went down stairs, and sent up his servants to uncover the table. They carried off every thing, even to the candles, and I went to bed by the melancholy light of a lamp that was fixed to the wall.

CHAP. V.

HIS REFLECTIONS BEFORE HE WENT TO SLEEP, AND AN ACCOUNT OF THE NOISE THAT WAKED HIM.

I Spent two hours at least in reflecting upon what Tordesillas had told me. 'I am confined here then,' said I to myself, 'for having contributed to the pleasures of the heir-apparent. How imprudent was I, in doing ser-

* Olla podrida, a dish composed of all sorts of food.

† Berengena, a fruit growing like a cucumber, and used like French beans, with mutton, &c.

vices of that kind to so young a prince; for his tender years alone make me guilty! Had he been in a more advanced age, the king would, perhaps, have laughed at that which now incenses him so much. But who can have given such a piece of information to that monarch, without fearing the resentment of the prince, or that of the Duke of Lerma, who will, doubtless, revenge his nephew the Count de Lemos? How then has the king discovered it? that I cannot comprehend.'

Hither my doubts always returned. The idea, however, that afflicted me most, that drove me to despair, and from which my mind could not detach itself, was the pillage to which I concluded my effects had been abandoned. 'My strong box!' cried I; 'my dear riches, what is become of you! into whose hands are you fallen? Alas! I have lost you, even in less time than that in which you were amassed!' I painted to myself the disorder that must then reign in my house; and, on that subject, made reflections, every one more melancholy than another. The confusion of so many different thoughts threw me into an oppression that became favourable; and sleep, which had avoided me the preceding night, shed his influence over my senses. To this the goodness of the bed, the fatigue which I had undergone, as well as the vapours of the victuals and wine, contributed. I enjoyed a profound sleep; and, probably, the day would have surprized me in this condition, had I not been waked all of a sudden by a noise pretty extraordinary for a prison. I heard the sound of a guitar, accompanied with a man's voice. I listened with attention, and, hearing no more, believed it was a dream: but, in a moment, my ear was struck again with the sound of the instrument, and the same voice, which sung the following verses:

*Ay de mi! un año felice
Parece un soplo ligero;
Pero fin dicba un instante
Es un siglo te-tormento*.*

Alas! a year of pleasure passes like a fleeting breeze; but a moment of misfortune seems an age of pain.

My sorrow was encreased by this couplet, which seemed to have been made on purpose for me. 'I have but too well experienced the truth of these words,' said I: 'methinks the season of my prosperity passed away very soon, and that I have been already a whole age in prison.' I relapsed into a terrible reverie, and began again to deplore my fate, as if I had taken pleasure in the task. My lamentations, however, ended with the night; and the first rays of the sun, with which my chamber was enlightened, a little calmed my disquiet. I got up to air my room, by opening the window, and surveyed the country, of which I remembered Mr. Keeper had given such a fine description. But I could find nothing to justify what he had said; the Erema, which I imagined was at least equal to the Tagus, appeared to be no more than a rivulet, its flowery banks were bedecked with the nettle and thistle only, and the pretended delightful valley presented nothing to my view but lands for the most part barren and uncultivated. Probably, I was not yet arrived at that sweet melancholy, which made things appear otherwise than I beheld them at that time.

I began to put on my cloaths, and was already half dressed, when Tordeillas came in, followed by an old woman servant, who brought shirts and towels for my use. 'Signior Gil Blas,' said he, 'here is linen: don't be frugal of it; for I shall take care to let you have as much as you can use. Well,' added he; 'how did you pass the night? were your sorrows spent for a few moments by sleep?' — 'I should have slept, perhaps, till now,' answered I, 'had I not been awaked by a voice accompanied by a guitar.' — 'The cavalier who has disturbed your repose,' said he, 'is a state-prisoner, whose chamber is contiguous to yours. He is a knight of the military order of Calatrava, and has a very amiable character: his name is Don Gaston de Cogollos. You may, if you please, visit and eat with one another. You will find a mutual consolation in each

* other's

other's acquaintance, which will be very agreeable to both.'

I assured Don Andrea that I was extremely sensible of his kindness in permitting me to unite my grief with that of the cavalier; and as I expressed some impatience to be acquainted with that companion in misfortune, our obliging keeper procured me the pleasure that very day; and carried me to dinner with Don Gaston, who surprised me with his beauty and fine shape. You may judge what he must be, to make such a strong impression upon eyes accustomed to behold the most shining youth at court. Imagine to yourself a man made for love, one of those heroes of romance, who, by shewing themselves only, could rob princesses of their rest. Add to this, that Nature, which usually deals out her gifts sparingly, had endued Cogollos with a great deal of understanding and valour; so that he was a perfect cavalier.

If I was charmed by this knight, I had also the good fortune to be agreeable to him. He no more sung in the night, for fear of incommoding me, notwithstanding my entreaties that he would not contrain himself on my account. An intimacy is soon contracted between two persons oppressed by misfortune. A tender friendship was the immediate consequence of our acquaintance, and became stronger and stronger every day. The liberty we enjoyed of conversing together when we pleased, was very useful to us both; since, by our discourse, we aided one another, reciprocally, to bear our misfortunes with patience.

One afternoon, entering his room, just as he was going to play on his guitar, that I might hear him the more conveniently, I sat down on a stool, which was all the seat he had; and he placing himself on his bed's feet, played a very moving air, and sung words to it, which expressed the despair to which the cruelty of a lady reduced her lover. When he had done, I said to him, with a smile, 'Signior Knight, these are words which you was never obliged to employ in your amours: you are too accomplished to find the women cruel.'—'You have too good an opinion of me,' he replied; 'I composed, in my own behalf, the verses which you have

heard, to soften a heart which I believed harder than diamond, and move to compassion a lady who treated me with extreme rigour. I must entertain you with that story, by which you will also learn the cause of my misfortune.'

CHAP. VI.

THE HISTORY OF DON GASTON DE COGOLLOS, AND DONNA HELENA DE GALISTEO.

NOT much less than four years ago, I set out from Madrid for Coria, to visit Donna Eleonora de Laxarilla, my aunt, one of the richest widows in Old Castile, whose heir I am. I was no sooner arrived at her house, than love began to invade my repose. The windows of my apartment faced the lattices of a lady who lived opposite to my aunt's house; and I could easily perceive her, by the assistance of the width of her grates, and the narrowness of the street. I did not neglect the opportunity; and found my neighbour so handsome, that I was enchanted at once. I expressed my passion so plainly, by my eyes, that she could not be mistaken. She perceived it accordingly; but was not at all disposed to pride herself in the discovery, and still less to answer my coquetries.

I made enquiries about this dangerous person who captivated hearts so suddenly; and learned that her name was Donna Helena; that she was the only daughter of Don George de Galisteo, who possessed a rich manor a few leagues from Coria; that many matches had been in her offer; but her father rejected them all, because he was resolved to give her in marriage to his nephew Don Augustine de Olighera, who, in the mean time, had the privilege of seeing and conversing with his cousin every day. I was not discouraged by this piece of information; on the contrary, it inflamed my passion; and the proud pleasure of supplanting a beloved rival excited me, perhaps, even more than my love, to pursue my point. I continued, then, to address Helena with the most passionate looks: I

sup-

"suppllicated her maid Felicia in the same language, in order to implore her assistance. I even talked on my fingers: but these gallantries were of no use. I made as little impression on the maid as on her mistress; they seemed equally cruel and inaccessible.

"Since they refused to answer the language of my eyes, I had recourse to other interpreters; and set people to work, to discover what acquaintances Felicia had in town. They got notice, that an old gentlewoman, called Theodora, was her best friend, and that they often visited one another. Overjoyed at this discovery, I went to Theodora in person, and, by presents, engaged her in my interest. She espoused my cause, promised to procure for me a private conversation with her friend at her house, and kept her promise the very next day. "I am no longer unhappy," said I to Felicia; "since my misfortunes have excited your compassion. How much am I indebted to your friend, for having prevailed upon you to grant me the satisfaction of an interview!"—"Signior," answered she, "Theodora can do any thing with me: she has engaged me in your behalf; and if it be in my power to make you happy, you shall soon enjoy your wish; but, with all my good will, I don't know that I can give you much assistance: for, not to flatter you, you have never formed a more difficult enterprise. You are in love with a lady who is prepossessed in favour of another cavalier: and what sort of a lady! one so full of pride and dissimulation, that if, by dint of perseverance and assiduity, you should succeed so far as to cost her some sighs, don't imagine that her pride will give you the pleasure of hearing them."—"Ah! my dear Felicia!" cried I, in a transport of grief; "why do you describe the obstacles which I have to surmount! I am assassinated by your information! deceive me rather than drive me to despair!" So saying, I took one of her hands, and pressing it in mine, put upon her finger a diamond worth three hundred pistoles, accompanied by such moving expressions as brought the tears into her eyes.

"She was too much affected by my discourse, and too well satisfied with my behaviour, to leave me altogether without consolation. She began to smooth the difficulties a little; saying, "Signior, what I have represented ought not to deprive you of hope. Your rival, 'tis true, is not hated; he is at liberty to come and visit his cousin, and talk to her whenever he pleases; and this is a circumstance favourable for you. Their being accustomed to see one another every day, renders their conversation a little languid: they seem to part without pain, and meet again without pleasure; one would think they were already married. In a word, I don't perceive that my mistress has a violent passion for Don Augustine: besides, as to personal qualifications, there is a difference between you and him that must turn to your account in the eyes of such a delicate young lady as Donna Helena. Be not discouraged, therefore: continue your gallantry, which I will second; and I will not let slip one opportunity of making every thing you do to please her tend to your advantage with my mistress. In vain shall she attempt to disguise her sentiments; I will soon discover them, in spite of her dissimulation."

"After this conversation, Felicia and I parted, very well satisfied with one another. I prepared anew to ogle Don George's daughter, whom I treated with a serenade, in which the verses you have heard were sung by a fine voice, which I had provided for the purpose. After the concert, the maid, in order to sound her mistress, asked how she had been entertained. "The voice," said Donna Helena, "gave me pleasure."—"And were not the words which were sung very moving?" replied the maid. "I paid no attention to them," said the lady; "I listened to the tune only; I took no notice of the verses, neither do I desire to know who gave the serenade."—"If that be the case," cried the waiting woman, "poor Don Gaston de Cogollos is far out in his reckoning, and not very wise in spending his time in looking at our lattices."—"Perhaps it may not be he," said the mistress, coldly,

coldly, "but some other cavalier, who has declared his passion for me by this concert."—"Pardon me, Madam," replied Felicia; "it is no other than Don Gaston; by this token, that he accosted me this morning, in the street, and begged me to tell you, that he adores you, in spite of the rigour with which you repay his love; and that, in short, he should think himself the happiest of mankind, if you would allow him to manifest his passion in the usual course of gallantry. This discourse," added she, "sufficiently proves that I am not mistaken."

Don George's daughter changed countenance all of a sudden, and darting a severe look at her maid; "You might have dispensed," said she, "with repeating that impertinent conversation to me. Let me have no such reports for the future, if you please; and if that rash youth shall have the presumption to speak to you again, tell him to make his addresses to one who will regard his gallantry more than I do, and to chuse a more honourable pastime than that of being all day long at his windows, to observe what I do in my apartment."

All this was faithfully reported to me, in a second interview with Felicia, who, pretending that I must not take the words of her mistress in a literal sense, would have persuaded me that the affair went on swimmingly; but I, who was ignorant of finesse, and did not believe that the text could be explained in my favour, distrusted the commentary she made. She laughed at my diffidence, called for paper and ink, and said, Signior Knight, write immediately to Donna Helena in the style of a desponding lover. Paint your sufferings in the most passionate colours; and, in particular, complain of her prohibiting you to appear at your windows. Promise to obey her; but at the same time assure her, that it will cost you your life. Put this into such expressions as you gentlemen are so well skilled in, and leave the rest to me. I hope the event will do more honour to my penetration than you imagine."

Had I neglected this, I should have been the first lover who did not take

the advantage of such an opportunity to write to his mistress. I composed a most pathetic letter; and, before I sealed it, shewed it to Felicia, who having read it, said, with a smile, That if women have the art of captivating the men, these last, in return, know very well how to cajole the women. The waiting-maid took my letter, then laying strong injunctions on me to keep my windows shut for a few days, returned to the house of Don George.

"Madam," said she to Donna Helena, when she went home, "I met Don Gaston, who did not fail to make up to me, and endeavoured to soothe me with flattering expressions. He asked, with a faltering voice, like a criminal who expects his sentence, if I had delivered his message to you. Then I, faithful and ready to execute your orders, cut him short with a vengeance; inveighed against him, loaded him with reproaches, and left him in the street confounded at my petulance."—"I am overjoyed," replied Donna Helena, that you have rid me of that unfortunate young fellow; but there was no occasion to speak rudely to him. A young woman ought always to be gentle in her behaviour."—"Madam," said the maid, "a passionate lover is not to be banished by words pronounced with a gentle air. Nay, this is seldom accomplished even by indignation and rage. Don Gaston, for example, was not repulsed. After having loaded him with reproaches, (as I have said) I went to the house of your relation, whither you sent me; and that lady, unfortunately detained me too long; I say, too long, because, on my return, I found my man again, who, I assure you, I did not expect to see. I was so much disturbed at sight of him, that my tongue, which never failed me before, could not furnish me with one syllable. In the meantime, what does he? he slips a paper into my hand, which I kept, without knowing what I did, and then disappeared in an instant."

So saying, she pulled my letter out of her bosom, and gave it by way of joke to her mistress; who taking it as for diversion, read it over, and then affecting reserve, "Truly, Fe-

"supplanted her maid Felicia in the same language, in order to implore her assistance. I even talked on my fingers: but these gallantries were of no use. I made as little impression on the maid as on her mistress; they seemed equally cruel and inaccessible.

"Since they refused to answer the language of my eyes, I had recourse to other interpreters; and set people to work, to discover what acquaintances Felicia had in town. They got notice, that an old gentlewoman, called Theodora, was her best friend, and that they often visited one another. Overjoyed at this discovery, I went to Theodora in person, and, by presents, engaged her in my interest. She espoused my cause, promised to procure for me a private conversation with her friend at her house, and kept her promise the very next day. "I am no longer unhappy," said I to Felicia; "since my misfortunes have excited your compassion. How much am I indebted to your friend, for having prevailed upon you to grant me the satisfaction of an interview!"—"Signior," answered she, "Theodora can do any thing with me: she has engaged me in your behalf; and if it be in my power to make you happy, you shall soon enjoy your wish; but, with all my good will, I don't know that I can give you much assistance: for, not to flatter you, you have never formed a more difficult enterprise. You are in love with a lady who is prepossessed in favour of another cavalier: and what sort of a lady! one so full of pride and dissimulation, that if, by dint of perseverance and assiduity, you should succeed so far as to cost her some sighs, don't imagine that her pride will give you the pleasure of hearing them."—"Ah! my dear Felicia!" cried I, in a transport of grief; "why do you describe the obstacles which I have to surmount! I am assassinated by your information! deceive me rather than drive me to despair!" So saying, I took one of her hands, and pressing it in mine, put upon her finger a diamond worth three hundred pistoles, accompanied by such moving expressions as brought the tears into her eyes.

"She was too much affected by my discourse, and too well satisfied with my behaviour, to leave me altogether without consolation. She began to smooth the difficulties a little; saying, "Signior, what I have represented ought not to deprive you of hope. Your rival, 'tis true, is not hated; he is at liberty to come and visit his cousin, and talk to her whenever he pleases; and this is a circumstance favourable for you. Their being accustomed to see one another every day, renders their conversation a little languid: they seem to part without pain, and meet again without pleasure; one would think they were already married. In a word, I don't perceive that my mistress has a violent passion for Don Augustine: besides, as to personal qualifications, there is a difference between you and him that must turn to your account in the eyes of such a delicate young lady as Donna Helena. Be not discouraged, therefore: continue your gallantry, which I will second; and I will not let slip one opportunity of making every thing you do to please her tend to your advantage with my mistress. In vain shall she attempt to disguise her sentiments; I will soon discover them, in spite of her dissimulation."

"After this conversation, Felicia and I parted, very well satisfied with one another. I prepared anew to ogle Don George's daughter, whom I treated with a serenade, in which the verses you have heard were sung by a fine voice, which I had provided for the purpose. After the concert, the maid, in order to sound her mistress, asked how she had been entertained. "The voice," said Donna Helena, "gave me pleasure."—"And were not the words which were sung very moving?" replied the maid. "I paid no attention to them," said the lady; "I listened to the tune only; I took no notice of the verses, neither do I desire to know who gave the serenade."—"If that be the case," cried the waiting woman, "poor Don Gaston de Cogollos is far out in his reckoning, and not very wise in spending his time in looking at our lattices."—"Perhaps it may not be he," said the mistress, coldly,

coldly, "but some other cavalier, who has declared his passion for me by this concert."—"Pardon me, Madam," replied Felicia; "it is no other than Don Gaston; by this token, that he accosted me this morning, in the street, and begged me to tell you, that he adores you, in spite of the rigour with which you repay his love; and that, in short, he should think himself the happiest of mankind, if you would allow him to manifest his passion in the usual course of gallantry. This discourse," added she, "sufficiently proves that I am not mistaken."

Don George's daughter changed countenance all of a sudden, and darting a severe look at her maid; "You might have dispensed," said she, "with repeating that impertinent conversation to me. Let me have no such reports for the future, if you please; and if that rash youth shall have the presumption to speak to you again, tell him to make his addresses to one who will regard his gallantry more than I do, and to chuse a more honourable pastime than that of being all day long at his windows, to observe what I do in my apartment."

All this was faithfully reported to me, in a second interview with Felicia, who, pretending that I must not take the words of her mistress in a literal sense, would have persuaded me that the affair went on swimmingly; but I, who was ignorant of finesse, and did not believe that the text could be explained in my favour, distrusted the commentary she made. She laughed at my diffidence, called for paper and ink, and said, Signior Knight, write immediately to Donna Helena in the style of a desponding lover. Paint your sufferings in the most passionate colours; and, in particular, complain of her prohibiting you to appear at your windows. Promise to obey her; but at the same time assure her, that it will cost you your life. Put this into such expressions as you gentlemen are so well skilled in, and leave the rest to me. I hope the event will do more honour to my penetration than you imagine."

"Had I neglected this, I should have been the first lover who did not take

the advantage of such an opportunity to write to his mistress. I composed a most pathetick letter; and, before I sealed it, shewed it to Felicia, who having read it, said, with a smile, That if women have the art of captivating the men, these last, in return, know very well how to cajole the women. The waiting-maid took my letter, then laying strong injunctions on me to keep my windows shut for a few days, returned to the house of Don George.

"Madam," said she to Donna Helena, when she went home, "I met Don Gaston, who did not fail to make up to me, and endeavoured to soothe me with flattering expressions. He asked, with a faltering voice, like a criminal who expects his sentence, if I had delivered his message to you. Then I, faithful and ready to execute your orders, cut him short with a vengeance; inveighed against him, loaded him with reproaches, and left him in the street confounded at my petulance."—"I am overjoyed," replied Donna Helena, that you have rid me of that importunate young fellow; but there was no occasion to speak rudely to him. A young woman ought always to be gentle in her behaviour."—"Madam," said the maid, "a passionate lover is not to be banished by words pronounced with a gentle air. Nay, this is seldom accomplished even by indignation and rage. Don Gaston, for example, was not repulsed. After having loaded him with reproaches, (as I have said), I went to the house of your relation, whither you sent me; and that lady unfortunately detained me too long; I say, too long, because, on my return, I found my man again, who, I assure you, I did not expect to see. I was so much disturbed at sight of him, that my tongue, which never failed me before, could not furnish me with one syllable. In the meantime, what does he? he slipped a paper into my hand, which I kept, without knowing what I did, and then disappeared in an instant."

So saying, she pulled my letter out of her bosom, and gave it by way of joke to her mistress; who taking it as for diversion, read it over, and then affecting reserve, "Truly, Fe-

"licia," said she, with a serious air,
 "you are a fool and a mad creature
 to receive this billet. What will
 Don Gaston think of it? and what
 must I believe? Your conduct gives
 me cause to distrust your fidelity,
 and may make him suspect that I
 am pleased with his passion. Alas!
 perhaps he imagines, at this instant,
 that I peruse with pleasure the cha-
 racters which he has wrote. You
 see to what shame you have exposed
 my pride."—"O, not at all, Ma-
 dam!" replied the maid; "he can
 entertain no such thoughts; and
 suppose he did, he shall not preserve
 them long. I will tell him, when
 next I see him, that I have shown
 his letter to you; that you looked at
 it with indifference; and, in short,
 without reading it, tore it with the
 most mortifying contempt."—"You
 may safely swear that I have not
 read it," said Donna Helena. "I
 should be at a loss, if obliged, to
 repeat two single words of it." Don
 George's daughter was not contented
 with talking in this manner; she tore
 my billet, and forbid her woman to
 talk to me for the future.

As I promised to play the gallant
 no more at my windows, since the
 sight of me gave offence, I kept them
 shut several days, to render my obe-
 dience more affecting; but to supply
 those looks of which I was abridged,
 I prepared new serenades for my cruel
 Helen. One night I repaired under
 her balcony with musicians; and the
 guittars were already struck up, when
 a cavalier came sword in hand, and
 disturbed the concert, laying about
 him at a furious rate among the per-
 formers, who immediately betook
 themselves to flight. The rage which
 animated that bold intruder awaked
 mine: I advanced to punish him, and
 an obstinate combat began. Donna
 Helena and her attendant hearing the
 noise of swords, looked through the
 lattice, and seeing two men engaged,
 waked Don George and his valets
 with their cries; these, as well as
 several people in the neighbourhood,
 came running to part the combatants;
 but they arrived too late, and found
 nobody on the field of battle, but a
 cavalier almost without life, welter-
 ing in his own blood; and I was
 soon known to be that unfortunate

person. I was carried to the house
 of my aunt, whither the most expert
 surgeons in town were called to my
 assistance. Every body pitied my
 fate, and Donna Helena in particu-
 lar, who then discovered the bottom
 of her soul. Her dissimulation gave
 way to her sentiment, and she was
 no longer that disdainful creature
 who piqued herself upon appearing
 insensible to my passion. She was
 now a tender lover, that abandoned
 herself to sorrow without reserve. She
 spent the rest of the night in mourn-
 ing with her maid, and in cursing her
 cousin Don Augustine de Olighera,
 who they concluded must have been
 the author of their tears; as in effect
 it was he who had so disagreeably
 interrupted the serenade. Being as
 great a dissembler as his cousin, he
 had perceived my intentions, with-
 out seeming to take any notice of
 them; and imagining that she fa-
 voured my flame, had committed
 this action, to shew that he was not
 quite so passive as she believed him
 to be. Nevertheless, this melancholy
 accident was soon forgotten, by rea-
 son of the joy that followed it.
 Though I was dangerously wounded,
 the skill of the surgeons saved my
 life; but I still kept my chamber,
 when my aunt Donna Eleonora went
 to Don George, and demanded his
 daughter for me in marriage. The
 father consented to this: the more
 willingly, because he at that time
 looked upon Don Augustine as a
 man whom, perhaps, he should ne-
 ver see again. The good old gen-
 tleman was afraid that his daughter
 would not bestow herself on me with-
 out reluctance, because her cousin
 Olighera had enjoyed the liberty of
 visiting her when he would, and of
 acquiring her affection at leisure;
 but she seemed so well disposed to
 obey her father in this affair, that
 we may conclude it is an advantage
 among the ladies, to be a new comer,
 in Spain, as well as elsewhere.

As soon as I could have a private
 conversation with Felicia, I under-
 stood how much afflicted her mistress
 had been at the bad success of my
 duel; so that having no longer any
 reason to doubt that I was the Paris
 of this Helen, I blessed my wound,
 since it turned out so propitious to my

my love; and obtained of Signior Don George the permission of speaking to his daughter in presence of her maid. What a delightful conversation this was! I intreated, I pressed the lady in such a manner, to tell me if her father, in yielding her to my tenderness, had done any violence to her inclination, that she owed I was not beholden to her obedience alone. After this charming confession, my whole study was to please her, and contrive entertainments, until the day of our nuptials, which were to be celebrated by a magnificent cavalcade, in which all the nobility of Coria and the neighbourhood intended to appear.

I gave a grand entertainment to Don George and his daughter, with all their relations and friends, at a superb country-house which my aunt had without the town, on the side of Manroi. Here a concert of vocal and instrumental musick was prepared by my order, together with a company of strollers to represent a comedy. In the middle of the feast, one came and whispered to me, that there was a man in the hall who wanted to speak with me. I got up from table to see who it was, and found a stranger, who looked like a valet de chambre, and who presented to me a letter, which I opened, and read these words.

"If you have a regard for your honour, as every knight of your order ought to have, you will not fail to be to-morrow morning in the plain of Manroi, where you will find a cavalier ready to give satisfaction for the injury you received from him, and to put you, if he can, out of a condition to espouse Donna Helena."

"Don AUG. de OLIGHERA."

"If love has great influence over the Spaniards, revenge has still more. I could not read this billet in tranquillity. The very name of Don Augustine kindled a fire in my veins, which had almost made me forget the indispensable duty which I had that day to perform. I was tempted to steal away from the company, and go in search of my enemy on the instant. I constrained myself, however, for fear of disturbing the feast,

and said to the man who brought the letter, "Friend, tell the cavalier who sent you, that I am too desirous of re-engaging him, to fail of meeting him to-morrow morning before sun-rise, at the appointed place."

Having sent away the messenger with this answer, I rejoined my guests, and resumed my place at table, where I composed my countenance so well; that nobody had the least suspicion of what passed within me. I appeared, during the rest of the day, as much entertained as any of them with the pleasures of the feast, which ended about midnight, when the assembly broke up, and every one returned to the town, in the same manner as he had come out. As for my part, I staid in the country-house, on pretence of taking the air next morning; but the true reason was, that I might be the sooner at the rendezvous. Instead of going to bed, I waited with impatience for day, which as soon as I perceived, I mounted my best horse, and set out alone, as if I intended to take a ride in the country. I advanced towards Manroi, and discovered in the plain a man on horseback, coming towards me with full speed; upon which I put spurs to my horse, to save him one half of the way. We soon met, and I found it was my rival. "Knight," said he, in an insolent tone, "it is with regret that I come to blows with you a second time; but it is your own fault. After the adventure of the serenade, you ought to have renounced Don George's daughter with a good grace, or at least have concluded that you would not be so easily quit, if you persisted in your addresses to her."—"You are too proud," answered I, "of an advantage which perhaps you owed more to the darkness of the night, than to your superior skill. You don't consider that the success of these rencounters depends often on accident."—"It is never accidental with me," said he, with an arrogant air; "and I will now shew you, that, by day as well as night, I know how to punish those audacious knights who interfere with me."

I made no reply to this haughty speech, but alighted instantly. Don Augustine did the same; we tied our
P p 2 horse

horses to a tree, and began to fight
 with equal vigour. I will frankly
 own, that I had to do with an ene-
 my who pushed much better than I,
 although I had been two years at
 schools. He was a compleat fencer;
 I could not possibly have exposed my
 life to greater danger. Neverthe-
 less, as it often happens, that the
 strongest is vanquished by the weak-
 est, my rival, in spite of all his skill,
 received a thrust that went through
 his heart, and fell stone-dead in an
 instant.

I returned immediately to the
 country-house, where I informed a
 valet de chambre, whom I could
 trust, of what had happened, and said
 to him, "Dear Ramira, before Jus-
 tice can take cognizance of this
 event, take a good horse, and give
 my aunt notice of the adventure.
 Ask of her some money and jewels,
 and bring them to me at Placentia,
 where thou wilt find me in the first
 inn you come to as you enter the
 city."

Ramira acquitted himself of his
 commission with such diligence, that
 he arrived at Placentia three hours
 after me. He told me, that Donna
 Eleonora was more pleased than af-
 flicted at the news of a duel that re-
 venged the affront that I had received
 in the first; and that she had sent
 me all her ready-money and jewels,
 to enable me to travel agreeably in
 foreign countries, until she should
 get the affair accommodated.

To pass over superfluous circum-
 stances, I will only inform you, that
 I crossed New Castile to the king-
 dom of Valencia, in order to embark
 at Denia, from whence I took passage
 for Italy, where I put myself in a
 condition to visit different courts,
 and appear in a suitable character.

While, far from my Helen, I en-
 deavoured, as much as in me lay,
 to beguile my love and sorrows, she
 mourned my absence in secret at Co-
 ria. Instead of approving of the
 prosecution that her family set on
 foot against me on account of Oli-
 ghiera's death, she wished that all
 enmity might cease, and my return
 be hastened by a speedy accommoda-
 tion. Six months had already elapsed
 since she had lost me, and I believe her
 constancy would have still triumphed

over time, had she had nothing else
 but time to combat: but she had still
 more powerful enemies. Don Blas
 de Combados, a gentleman from the
 western side of Galicia, came to Co-
 ria, to take possession of a rich estate,
 which had been in vain disputed by
 his cousin Don Miguel de Capara;
 and he settled in that country, find-
 ing it more agreeable than his own.
 Combados was well made, had an
 agreeable polite behaviour, and was
 one of the most insinuating men in
 the world; so that he soon became
 acquainted with all the people of
 fashion in the town, and was no
 stranger to their private affairs.

It was not long before he learned
 that Don George had a daughter,
 whose dangerous beauty seemed to
 inflame the men only for their ruin.
 This piqued his curiosity; he longed
 to see such a formidable lady; for
 this purpose he sought the friendship
 of her father, and succeeded so well,
 that the old man already looked upon
 him as his son-in-law, gave him ad-
 mittance to his house, and the liberty
 of speaking in his presence to Donna
 Helena. The Galician soon fell in
 love with her: that was inevitable.
 He opened his heart to Don George,
 who consented to his proposal, but
 told him, that, resolving not to con-
 strain his daughter, he left her mistress
 of her own hand. Upon this, Don Blas
 put in practice all the gallantries which
 he could devise, to please the lady,
 who seemed insensible to them all, so
 much was her heart engrossed by me.
 Felicia however was in the interests
 of the cavalier, who engaged her by
 presents to espouse his cause. She
 therefore employed all her address
 in behalf of his passion; on the other
 hand, her father seconded the cham-
 ber-maid by his remonstrances: and
 nevertheless, all their efforts, during
 a whole year, could only torment
 Donna Helena, without shaking her
 constancy in the least.

Combados seeing that Don George
 and Felicia interested themselves for
 him in vain, proposed an expedient
 to overcome the obstinacy of a lover
 so prepossessed as she was. "This,"
 said he, "is what I have contrived:
 we will suppose that a merchant of
 Coria has received a letter from an
 Italian factor, in which, after a de-
 tail

"tail of things concerning commerce,
"are the following words:

"A Spanish cavalier, whose name
"is Don Gaston de Cogollos,
"has lately arrived at the court of Par-
"ma. He calls himself nephew and
"sole heir of a rich widow who lives
"at Coria, under the name of Donna
"Eleonora de Laxarilla. He has de-
"manded the daughter of a powerful
"nobleman in marriage, but will not
"succeed until the truth is known. I
"am desired to apply to you for this
"purpose: pray let me know then if
"you are acquainted with this Don
"Gaston, and in what the riches of his
"aunt consist; for your answer will
"decide the marriage. Parma, &c."

"The old man looked upon this
"trick as a piece of wit or stratagem
"pardonable in love; and the waiting-
"woman, still less scrupulous than her
"master, approved of it very much.
"The invention seemed to them the
"more ingenious, as they knew He-
"lena to be a proud girl, capable of
"taking an instantaneous resolution,
"provided she should have no suspicion
"of the cheat. Don George under-
"took to inform her of my change;
"and, to make the thing seem more
"natural, carried along with him the
"merchant who had received the pre-
"tended letter from Parma. The
"scheme was executed accordingly.
"The father, in an affected passion of
"rage and vexation, said to Helena,
"Daughter, I will no longer observe
"to you, that my relations daily re-
"quest that I will not admit the mur-
"derer of Don Augustine into my fa-
"mily. I have a stronger reason to
"give you to-day, in order to detach
"you from Don Gaston. You ought
"to be ashamed of your fidelity to
"him. He is a fickle perfidious
"wretch. Here is a certain proof
"of his infidelity. Read this letter
"which a merchant of Coria has
"received from Italy." Helena,
"trembling, took the fictitious letter,
"read it over, considered every ex-
"pression, and was thunderstruck at
"the news of my inconstancy. A
"sentiment of tenderness made her
"shed some tears; but soon recalling
"all her pride, she dried them up, and
"said to her father, with a resolute

tone, "Signior, you have been with-
"ness of my weakness; bear witness
"also of the victory I gain over myself.
"'Tis done. I now despise Don Gas-
"ton, and look upon him as the lowest
"of mankind. But let us talk no
"more about him. Come; I am ready
"to follow Don Blas to the altar;
"let my marriage precede that of the
"perfidious man who has so ill repaid
"my love." Don George, transport-
"ed with joy at these words, embraced
"his daughter; applauded her vigorous
"resolution; and, glad of the happy
"success of his stratagem, made haste
"to complete the wishes of my rival.

"Donna Helena was thus ravished
"from me. She yielded herself sud-
"denly to Combados, without listen-
"ing to love, which, at the bottom of
"her heart, spoke in my behalf, or
"even doubting a moment of a piece
"of news which might have been sus-
"pected in a lover of less credulity.
"The haughty maid listened to no-
"thing but her pride; and the resent-
"ment of the injury, which she thought
"her beauty had received, prevailed
"over the interest of her tenderness.
"A few days after her marriage, how-
"ever, she felt some remorse for having
"been so precipitate. She reflected
"that the merchant's letter might have
"been feigned, and that suspicion gave
"her some uneasiness; but the amo-
"rous Don Blas gave his wife no time
"to cherish thoughts prejudicial to
"her repose. His sole study was to
"amuse her; and in this he succeeded
"by a continual succession of various
"pleasures, which he had art enough
"to invent.

"She seemed very well satisfied with
"such a gallant husband, and they
"lived together in perfect harmony,
"when my aunt accommodated my
"affair with the relations of Don Au-
"gustine, and wrote immediately to
"Italy, to advertise me of her success.
"Being then at Regio, in the farther-
"most part of Calabria, I went over
"into Sicily, from thence to Spain,
"and at length repaired to Coria, on
"the wings of love. Donna Eleonora,
"who had not in her letter mentioned
"the marriage of Don George's daugh-
"ter, informed me of it on my arrival,
"and observed that I was afflicted at
"the news: "You are in the wrong,"
"nephew," said she, "to be so much
"grieved

"grieved at the loss of an unfaithful woman. Take my advice, and banish from your memory a person unworthy of possessing a place in it."

"As my aunt was ignorant of the deceit which had been practised on Donna Helena, she was in the right to talk in this manner, and could not have given me a more prudent advice; which, therefore, I promised to follow, or at least to affect an air of indifference, if I should find myself incapable of vanquishing my passion. I could not, however, resist my curiosity, to know how this marriage had been made; and, to be informed of the particulars, I resolved to apply to Felicia's friend, Dame Theodora, whom I have mentioned before. I went to her house, and there, by accident, found Felicia; who, expecting nothing less than to see me, was confounded, and endeavoured to go away, that she might avoid an explanation, which she concluded I would demand. I stopped her, saying, "Why do you fly me? Is not the perjured Helena satisfied with having made a sacrifice of my happiness? has she forbid you to hear my complaints? or do you only want to escape me, that you may make a merit with the ungrateful woman, of having refused me the hearing?"

"Signior," answered the waiting-woman, "I freely own myself confounded at your presence. I cannot behold you again, without feeling my heart torn with remorse. My mistress has been deceived, and I have been an unfortunate accomplice in seducing her."—"O Heaven!" cried I, "have you the presumption to tell me so! Explain yourself immediately." Then she gave me an account of the stratagem which Comrados had practised to rob me of Donna Helena; and, perceiving that her detail pierced me to the very soul, strove to give me some consolation: she offered me her good offices with her mistress, promised to disabuse her, to paint my despair; in a word, to spare nothing to soften the rigour of my destiny: in fine, she gave me hopes that assuaged my sorrows a little.

"I pass over the infinite contradictions she underwent before she could

prevail upon Donna Helena to see me. This, however, she accomplished; and it was concerted between them, that I should be privately admitted into the house of Don Blas, the first time he should go to an estate where he usually spent a day or two in hunting. This design was soon put in execution: the husband set out for the country; I was informed of the occasion, and one night introduced into his wife's apartment.

"I would have begun the conversation with reproaches; but my mouth was stopped. "It is in vain to recal what is past," said the lady; "the business here is not a fond reconciliation; and you are mistaken if you believe me disposed to flatter your inclination. I declare to you, Don Gaston, that my only motive for giving my consent to this private interview, in consequence of the pressing instances which have been made, is to tell you from my own mouth, that henceforth you must study to forget me altogether. Perhaps I might have been better satisfied with my fate, had it been joined to yours; but since Heaven hath ordained it otherwise, I cheerfully submit to it's decrees!"

"How, Madam!" answered I; "is it not enough that I have lost you, and see the happy Don Blas in quiet possession of the only person I am capable of loving! must I also banish you from my thoughts! You would deprive me of my love, and rob me of the only blessing that now remains! Ah, cruel woman! do you think it possible for any man whom you have once charmed, to retrieve his heart? Know yourself better; and cease exhorting me in vain to chace your idea from my remembrance."—"Well then," she replied, with precipitation; "do you also cease to hope that I will favour your love with any return. I have but one word to say: the wife of Don Blas shall never be the lover of Don Gaston. Take your measures accordingly: fly from this place; and let us put a speedy end to a conversation with which I upbraid myself, in spite of the purity of my intentions, and which I shall think myself guilty in prolonging."

"At

“ At these words, which deprived me of the least glimpse of hope, I fell at her feet; I addressed her in the most pathetick manner; I even employed tears to melt her; but all this served only to excite, perhaps, some sentiments of pity, which she was careful of concealing, and which were sacrificed to her duty. After having, to no purpose, exhausted all my moving expressions, by prayers and tears, my tenderness changed of a sudden into rage. I unsheathed my sword, to stab myself before the eyes of the inexorable Helena; who no sooner perceived my intention, than she threw herself upon me, to prevent the consequence. “ Hold, Cogollos !” said she, “ is it thus you consult my reputation ! In depriving yourself of life, you are going to load me with dishonour, and make my husband pass for an assassin.”

“ I was so possessed with despair, that, far from yielding to these words the attention which they deserved, my whole endeavour was to baffle the efforts of the mistress and her maid to save me from my own fatal design; and, without doubt, I should have succeeded but too soon, if Don Blas, (who having been apprized of our interview, instead of going to the country, had concealed himself behind the tapestry, to overhear our conversation) had not come, and joined us with all expedition. “ Don Gaston,” cried he, holding my arms, “ recal your scattered reason; and do not basely yield to the fury that transports you.”

“ Is it your business,” said I, interrupting Don Blas, “ to dissuade me from my design? You ought rather, with your own hand, to plunge a poniard into my bosom. You are injured by my passion, unfortunate as it is. Is it not enough that you surprize me at night, in your wife’s apartment? Is there more required to rouse your revenge? Stab me at once, and rid yourself of a man who cannot cease adoring Donna Helena until he ceases to live.”—“ In vain,” answered Don Blas, “ you endeavour to interest my honour so far, as to give you death: you are sufficiently punished by your rashness; and I

“ am so well pleased with the virtuous sentiments of my wife, that I pardon the occasion which she took to shew them. Take my advice, “ Cogollos,” added he; “ do not despair, like a weak lover, but submit to necessity with courage.”

“ The prudent Galician, by such discourse, calmed my rage a little, and waked my virtue: I retired, with a design of removing far from Helena, and the place that she inhabited; and in two days returned to Madrid; where, resolving to employ myself wholly in making my fortune, I appeared at court, and there began to make friends; but I was so unlucky as to attach myself in particular to the Marquis of Villareal, a Portugueze nobleman; who, being suspected of a design to deliver Portugal from the dominion of Spain, was imprisoned in the castle of Alicante, where he now remains. As the Duke of Lerma knew that an intimacy subsisted between that nobleman and me, he caused me to be arrested also, and conducted to this place. That minister believes that I am capable of being an accomplice in such a scheme; and he could not have committed a greater outrage upon a noble Castilian.”

Here Don Gaston left off speaking; and I, to console him, said, “ Signior Cavalier, your honour can receive no stain from his disgrace, which will, doubtless, in the end, turn to your advantage. When the Duke of Lerma shall be convinced of your innocence, he will certainly bestow upon you a considerable employment, in order to re-establish the reputation of a gentleman unjustly accused of treason.”

CH A P. VII.

SCIPIO FINDS GIL BLAS IN THE TOWER OF SEGOVIA, AND TELLS HIM A GREAT DEAL OF NEWS.

OUR conversation was interrupted by Tordesillas, who, coming into the chamber, addressed himself to me in these terms: “ Signior Gil Blas, I have been speaking to a young man who presented himself at the prison-gate, and asked if you was not

not in confinement here. When I refused to satisfy his curiosity, he seemed very much mortified. "Noble Captain," said he, with tears in his eyes, "don't reject the humble request I make, to know if Signior de Santillane is in this place. I am his chief domestick, and you will do a charitable action in allowing me to see him. You are looked upon in Segovia as a gentleman of great humanity; and I hope you will not refuse me the favour of conversing a moment with my dear master, who is not so guilty as unfortunate." In short, continued Don Andrea, "the young man expressed such a desire of seeing you, that I have promised to give him that satisfaction at night."

I assured Tordeillas, that he could not do me a greater pleasure than to admit that young man, who, probably, had something to communicate which it imported me very much to know. I waited with impatience for the moment that was to offer my faithful Scipio to my eyes; for I did not doubt that it was he; and I was not mistaken. He was introduced into the tower in the evening; and his joy, which mine alone could equal, broke forth in extraordinary transports, when he saw me. For my part, I was so much overjoyed at the sight of him, that I held out my arms, and he hugged me in his, without ceremony: the distinction between the master and secretary was lost in this embrace; so glad were they to see one another.

When we were a little disengaged, I interrogated Scipio about the condition in which he left my house. "You have no house," he replied; "and, to spare you the trouble of asking unnecessary questions, I will tell you, in two words, what passed at home. Your effects were pillaged, as well by the soldiers as by your own servants; who, looking upon you as a lost man, paid themselves their own wages with what they could carry off. Luckily for you, I had the address to save from their talons two large bags of double pistoles, which I took out of your strong-box, and secured, by putting them into the custody of Salero, who will redeliver them as soon as you shall be released from this tower, where I believe you

will not be long boarded at his majesty's expence, because you was apprehended without the knowledge of the Duke of Lerma."

I asked how he came to know that his excellency had no hand in my misfortune. "Oh! as for that," said he, "I took care to be well informed: a friend of mine, who enjoys the confidence of the Duke d'Uzeda, told me all the particulars of your imprisonment. "Calderona," said he, "having discovered, by the officiousness of a valet, that Signiora Sirena, under another name, received the Prince of Spain in the night-time; and that this intrigue was conducted by the Count de Lemos, with the assistance of Signior de Santillane, resolved to be revenged upon them, as well as upon his mistress. With this view, he went privately to the Duke d'Uzeda, and discovered the whole affair. The duke, ravished at having in his hand such a fair opportunity of ruining his enemy, did not fail to use it: he informed the king of what he had heard; and represented to him, with great zeal, the perils to which the prince had been exposed. This piece of news roused the indignation of his majesty, who immediately ordered Sirena to be shut up in the house of correction, banished the Count de Lemos, and condemned Gil Blas to perpetual imprisonment." This, added Scipio, "is what my friend told me; by which you see that your misfortune is the work of the Duke d'Uzeda, or rather of Calderona."

From this information, I imagined that my affairs might be retrieved in time; that the Duke of Lerma, piqued at his nephew's exile, would exert himself to have that nobleman recalled to court; and I flattered myself, that I should not be forgotten by his excellency. What a fine thing hope is! it consoled me all of a sudden for the loss of my effects, which had been stolen; and made me as merry as if I had cause to be so. Far from regarding my prison as an unhappy abode, where I should perhaps end my days, it appeared rather as the means that Fortune had used to raise me to some great post; for I reasoned with myself in this manner: "The partizans for the prime-

prime-minister are, Don Fernando Borgia, Father Jerome of Florence, and, in particular, Brother Lewis d'Alaga, who owes to his interest the place he at present possesses at court. With the assistance of these powerful friends, his excellency will demolish all his foes; or perhaps the state will soon alter its appearance; his majesty is very sickly; and as soon as he shall be no more, the prince his son will begin his reign by recalling the Count de Lemos, who will immediately release me from this place, and present me to the new monarch, who will load me with favours.' Thus, already devoted with future pleasures, I scarce felt my present misfortune; but I believe the two bags of doubloons, which my secretary told me he had deposited with the goldsmith, contributed, as much as this hope, to the sudden change of my disposition.

I was too well satisfied with the zeal and integrity of Scipio, to be silent on that subject: I offered him the half of the money which he had preserved from the pillage; but this he refused. 'I expect,' said he, 'another mark of acknowledgment.' As much surprised at his discourse as at his refusal, I asked what I could do for him. 'Don't let us part,' answered he; 'allow me to attach my fortune to yours: I have a friendship for you which I never felt for any other matter.'—'And I can assure thee, child,' said I, 'there is no love-lost; the very first moment thou comest to offer thy service, I was pleased with thy appearance: we must have been born under the Balance, or Gemini, which are said to be the two constellations that unite the friendship of men. I willingly accept the society thou hast proposed; and will begin it, by intreating the keeper to shut thee up with me in this tower.'—'Nothing can give me more pleasure,' cried he; 'you anticipate my desire. I was just going to conjure you to ask that favour of him: your company is dearer to me than liberty itself; I will only sometimes go to Madrid on the scout, and see if some change may not have happened at court which can be favourable to you: so that in me you will enjoy at once a confident, courier, and spy.'

These advantages were too conside-

rable to be rejected: I therefore kept along with me a person so useful, with the permission of the obliging keeper, who could not refuse me such an agreeable consolation.

CHAP. VIII.

THE MOTIVES AND SUCCESS OF SCIPIO'S FIRST JOURNEY TO MADRID. GIL BLAS FALLS SICK: THE CONSEQUENCE OF HIS DIS- TEMPER.

IF it be usually observed, that we have no greater enemies than our domesticks, it must likewise be owned, that, when they happen to be faithful and affectionate, they are our best friends. After the zeal that Scipio had manifested, I could not look upon him but as another self. There was, therefore, no more subordination between Gil Blas and his secretary; no more ceremony; they lodged together in the same room, using the same table and bed.

There was a great deal of gaiety in Scipio's conversation; he might have been justly surnamed the Good-humoured Lad: besides, he had a good head, and I profited by his advice. 'Friend,' said I to him one day, 'methinks it would be no bad scheme for me to write to the Duke of Lerma: this could produce no bad effect; what is thy opinion of the matter?'—'Yes; but,' answered he, 'the great are so different from themselves, at different times, that I don't know how your letter will be received: nevertheless, I am of opinion that you should write in the mean time. Although the minister loves you, you must not trust to his friendship for being remembered by him: these kind of patrons easily forget those who are out of sight or hearing.'

Although this was but too true, I replied, 'I judge more favourable of my patron, to whose kindness for me I am no stranger: I am persuaded that he pities my affliction, which incessantly presents itself to his mind: he probably waits until the king's wrath shall subside, before he takes me out of prison.'—'In good time!' he resumed; 'I wish your opinion of his excellency may be right: implore his assistance then by a very moving

‘ letter, which I will carry to him; and I promise to deliver it into his own hand.’

I immediately called for paper and ink, and composed a morsel of eloquence which Scipio thought very pathetic, and Tordeillas preferred even to the homilies of the Archbishop of Grenada.

I flattered myself, that the Duke of Lerma would be moved with compassion, in reading the melancholy account which I gave him of the miserable condition in which I was not; and in that confidence dispatched my courier; who no sooner arrived at Madrid, than he went to the minister’s house, and met a valet de chambre of my acquaintance, who procured for him an opportunity of speaking to the duke. ‘ My lord,’ said Scipio, presenting to his excellency the packet with which he was entrusted, ‘ one of your most faithful servants, stretched upon straw, in a dismal dungeon of the tower of Segovia, most humbly entreats your grace to read this letter, which a turnkey, out of pity, gave him liberty and means to write.’ The minister opened and perused the letter; but although he beheld in it a picture capable of melting the most obdurate soul, far from seeming affected at my distress, he raised his voice, and, in the hearing of several persons present, said to the courier, with a furious air, ‘ Friend, tell Santillane, that he has a great deal of assurance to address himself to me after the unworthy action he has committed, and for which he is so justly chastized. He is a wretch who must not depend upon my protection; for I abandon him to the resentment of the king.’

Scipio, in spite of all his effrontery, was disconcerted at this discourse; but, notwithstanding his confusion, endeavoured to intercede for me. ‘ My lord,’ he resumed, ‘ the poor prisoner will die of grief when he hears the answer of your excellency.’ The duke made no reply to my mediator but by a stern look, and turned his back upon him. It was thus the minister treated me, the better to conceal the part he had in the amorous intrigue of the Prince of Spain; and this ought to be a warning to all little agents,

whom noblemen use in their secret and dangerous negotiations.

When my secretary returned to Segovia, and made me acquainted with the success of his commission, I was plunged into the dire abyss of despondency in which I found myself the first day of my imprisonment. I thought myself even still more unhappy, since I had now no reason to expect the protection of the Duke of Lerma. My courage sunk apace; and, notwithstanding all that they could say to raise it again, I became a prey to the most keen sorrow, which threw me by degrees into a most violent fever.

Mr. Keeper, who interested himself in my preservation, imagining that he could not do better than call physicians to my assistance, brought two to visit me, who, by their appearance, seemed zealous ministers of the goddess Libitina*. ‘ Signior Gil Blas,’ said he, presenting them to me, ‘ here are two Hippocrates’s come to see you; they will set you a-foot again in a little time.’ I was so much prejudiced against all manner of physicians, that I should have certainly given them a very bad reception, had I been in the least desirous of living; but at that time I felt myself so much tired of life, that I was glad Tordeillas had put me into their hands.

‘ Signior Cavalier,’ said one of these doctors to me, ‘ in the first place, you must repose an entire confidence in our skill.’—‘ I have a most perfect dependence on it,’ answered I: ‘ with your assistance, I am very sure that, in a few days, I shall be cured of all my distempers.’—‘ Yes,’ he replied; ‘ with God’s help, you shall: at least, we will do our endeavour for that purpose.’ These gentlemen actually performed to a miracle, and put me into such a good way, that I was visibly posting to the other world. Don Andrea, despairing of my recovery, had already sent for a Franciscan friar to prepare me for my end. The good father, having done his duty, had already retired; and I myself believing that my last hour approached, beckoned Scipio to the bed-side. ‘ My dear friend,’ said I to him, with a faint voice; so much was I enfeebled by the medicines I had taken, and the bleed-

* The goddess who presides over funerals.

ings I had undergone; 'I leave to thee one of the bags which are at Gabriel's house, and conjure thee to carry the other into the Asturias, to my father and mother, who must have great occasion for it, if they be still alive. But, alas! I fear they could not bear up against my ingratitude: the report which, doubtless, Muscada made to them of my hard-heartedness, has, perhaps, occasioned their death. If Heaven hath preserved them, in spite of the indifference with which I requited their affection, give them the bag of doubloons, and beg them, from me, to pardon my unnatural behaviour. If they are no more, I charge thee to employ the money in causing prayers to be put up for the repose of their souls and mine.' So saying, I stretched out my hand, which he bathed with his tears, without being able to answer one word; so much was the poor young man afflicted at the prospect of losing me. This proves, that the tears of an heir are not always the tears of joy disguised.

I lay thus, in expectation of my exit; but I was balked. My doctors, having abandoned me, left the field free to nature. I was saved by their desertion. The fever, which, according to their prognostick, was to carry me off, quitted me immediately, as if it intended to give them the lye. I recovered gradually; and, by the greatest good luck in the world, a perfect tranquillity of mind was the fruit of my disease. I then had no need of consolation; I entertained for riches and honour all the contempt which the opinion of approaching death had made me conceive; and now restored, as it were, to myself, blessed my misfortune. I thanked Heaven for it, as for a particular favour, and firmly resolved never to return to court, even if the Duke of Lerma should recal me. I proposed rather, if ever I should be released, to purchase a cottage, and live in it like a philosopher.

My confidant approved of my design; and told me, that, in order to hasten the execution of it, he intended to go and solicit my enlargement at Madrid. 'There is a thing come into my head,' added he: 'I know a person who can serve you. She is the favourite waiting-woman of the prince's nurse, and a girl of under-

standing. I will make her apply to her mistress in your behalf; and will attempt every thing to get you out of this tower, which is still a prison, notwithstanding the good treatment you receive in it.'—'Thou art in the right,' answered I; 'go, my friend, and begin this negotiation without loss of time. Would to Heaven we were already in our retreat!'

CHAP. IX.

SCIPIO RETURNS TO MADRID, AND PROCURES THE ENLARGEMENT OF GIL BLAS, ON CERTAIN CONDITIONS. WHAT COURSE THEY STEER TOGETHER, WHEN THEY LEAVE THE TOWER OF SEGOVIA, AND THE CONVERSATION THAT PASSES BETWEEN THEM.

SCIPIO set out once more for Madrid; and I, in expectation of his return, applied myself to reading, being furnished with more books than I wanted by Tordefillas, who borrowed them from an old commander that could not read, though he had a fine library, to maintain the appearance of a literati. I loved, in particular, good books of morality, because I found in them every moment passages that flattered my aversion for the court, and my inclination for solitude.

I spent three weeks without hearing a syllable of my agent, who at length returned, and said to me, with a gay air, 'This time, Signior de Santillane, I bring good news; Madam the nurse interests herself in your behalf. Her maid, at my entreaty, in consideration of an hundred pistoles that I have consigned to her, has been so generous as to engage her to beg your release of the Prince of Spain; and that prince, who, as I have already observed, can refuse her nothing, has promised to ask it of the king his father. I am come hither in a hurry to apprize you of it, and shall return immediately to put the finishing stroke to the work.' So saying, he left me, and went back to court.

His third trip was not of long duration. In eight days my man returned, and told me, that the prince had, not without difficulty, obtained my release.

leave. This piece of information was confirmed the same day by Mr. Keeper, who embraced me, saying, 'My dear Gil Blas! thank Heaven, you are free! the gates of the prison are open to you; but upon two conditions, which perhaps will give you a great deal of pain, and which I am obliged to inform you of, though not without regret. His majesty forbids you to appear at court, and orders you to quit the kingdom of Castile in a month. I am very much mortified that you are prohibited from going to court.'—'And I am overjoyed at it,' I replied: 'God knows what my opinion of it is. I expected but one favour from the king, and I have received two.'

Being assured that I was no longer prisoner, I hired two mules, which my confidant and I mounted next day, after having bid adieu to Cogollos, and returned a thousand thanks to Tordeillas, for all the marks of friendship I had received at his hands. We set out merrily for Madrid, to retrieve, from the hands of Signior Gabriel, our two bags, in each of which were five hundred doubloons. My associate said to me by the way, 'If we are not rich enough to buy a magnificent estate, we can at least purchase a commodious one.'—'So we had but a hut,' answered I, 'I should be satisfied with my condition; for, though I am scarce in the middle of my career, I feel myself quite detached from the world, and intend for the future to live for myself only. Besides, I must tell thee, I have formed an enchanting idea of a country life, the pleasures of which I enjoy by anticipation. Methinks I already behold the enamelled meads, hear the nightingales sing, and the brooks murmur. Sometimes I divert myself in hunting, and sometimes in fishing. Imagine to thyself, my friend, all the different pleasures that await us in solitude, and thou wilt be as much charmed with it as I am. With regard to eating, the most simple nourishment is best. A morsel of bread may satisfy us when we are hungry, and the appetite with which we eat it, will make us think it excellent food. The pleasure does not consist in the quality of exquisite dishes, but centers wholly in ourselves; and

this is so true, that the most delicious of my meals are not those in which the greatest delicacy and abundance reign. Frugality is a source of delights, and wonderfully conducive to health.'

'By your leave, Signior Gil Blas,' said my secretary, interrupting me; 'I am not altogether of your opinion with regard to the pretended frugality you praise so much. Why should we live like Diogenes? If we indulge our appetites a little, we shall not find ourselves a bit the worse for it. Take my advice; and since we have, thank God, wherewithal to render our retreat agreeable, let us not make it the habitation of hunger and poverty. As soon as we shall have got possession of our land, we shall fortify our house with good wines, and all other provisions suitable to people of taste, who did not quit the commerce of mankind with a view of renouncing the conveniences of life, but rather to enjoy them with more tranquillity. "That which a man has in his house," says Hesiod, "never hurts him: whereas that which he has not may. It is better," adds the same author, "for a man to have all things necessary in his possession, than in his wish only."

'How the devil, Mr. Scipio!' cried I, 'come you to know the Greek poets? Ha! where did you pick up acquaintance with Hesiod?'—'In the house of a learned man,' he replied; 'I served a pedant of Salamanca some time. He was a great commentator, and would toss you up a large volume in a twinkling, composed of Hebrew, Greek, and Latin quotations, taken from books in his library, and translated into the Castilian tongue. As I was his amanuensis, I retained in my memory a great number of sentences as remarkable as that which I repeated.'—'If that be the case,' said I, 'your memory is well garnished. But, to return to our scheme; in what kingdom of Spain do you think we should establish our philosophical residence?'—'I vote for Arragon,' replied my confidant; 'we will there find charming spots, where we may lead a delicious life.'—'Well,' said I; 'be it so. Let us fix in Arragon. I consent to the proposal; and I wish we may
there

there find a place of abode that will afford all those pleasures with which I feast my imagination.

CHAP. X.

THEIR BEHAVIOUR AT MADRID.
GIL BLAS MEETS A CERTAIN
PERSON IN THE STREET. THE
CONSEQUENCE OF THAT MEET-
ING.

WHEN we arrived at Madrid, we alighted at a small house, where Scipio had lodged in his expeditions; and the first thing we did was to repair to Salero, in order to retrieve our doubloons. He gave us a very civil reception, and expressed a good deal of joy in seeing me at liberty. 'I protest to you,' said he, 'I was so much affected with your misfortune, that I conceived a disgust at all alliances with courtiers, their fortunes are so uncertain; and therefore gave my daughter Gabriela in marriage to a wealthy merchant.'—'You were in the right,' answered I: 'for, besides that this match is more solid, a citizen who marries his daughter to a man of quality, has not always reason to be satisfied with Monsieur his son-in-law.'

Then mistaking the subject, and coming to the purpose, 'Signior Gabriel,' added I, 'be so good, if you please, as to deliver the two thousand pistoles, which—' 'Your money is ready for you,' said the goldsmith, interrupting me; and conducting us into his closet, shewed us the two bags, with notes upon them, containing these words: 'These bags of doubloons belong to Signior Gil Blas de Santillane.'—'There they are,' said he, 'just as they were committed to my care.'

I thanked Salero for the service he had done me; and, very well consoled for the loss of his daughter, carried the bags home, where we began to examine our double pistoles. The tale was just, after having deducted about fifty which had been employed to procure my enlargement. Our sole study now was, to put ourselves in a condition to depart for Arragon. My secretary undertook to buy a chaise and two mules, and I provided ourselves

with cloaths and linen. While I was going from one place to another in the streets, bargaining for what I wanted, I met Baron Steinbach, that officer of the German guards in whose house Don Alphonso had been brought up.

I saluted that cavalier, who, knowing me also, came and embraced me with great affection. 'I am extremely glad,' said I to him, 'to see your lordship in such good health, and to find at the same time an opportunity of hearing of Don Cesar and Don Alphonso de Leyva.'—'I can give you a certain account of them both,' answered he; 'for they are now actually at Madrid, and lodge in my house. About three months ago they came to town to thank his majesty for a post which Don Alphonso has received, in consideration of the services which his ancestors had done the state. He is made governor of the city of Valencia, without having asked the place, or even desired any body to solicit for him. Nothing can be more generous; and this shews that our monarch delights in recompensing valour.'

Though I knew much better than the Baron de Steinbach what the true motive was, I did not seem to know any thing of the matter; but expressed such a vehement desire to salute my old masters, that, in order to satisfy me, he carried me home with him immediately. I was curious to try Don Alphonso, and judge, by the reception I should meet with from him, whether or no he had any remains of affection for me. I found him in a hall, playing at chess with the baroness; and as soon as he perceived me, he quitted the game, got up, and advancing towards me with transport, pressed my head with his arms, saying, with marks of real joy, 'Santillane, have I found you again! I am overjoyed at meeting with you! It was not my fault that ever we parted; for I desired you, if you remember, not to leave the castle of Leyva. You had no regard to my request; but I am far from being angry with you on that account. I am even beholden to you, for the motive of your retreat: but since that time, you ought to have let me hear from you, and spared me the trouble of sending in vain to find you'

' you at Grenada, where Don Fernando, my brother-in-law, wrote me ' you was.

After this gentle reproach, he continued, ' Tell me what your business ' is at Madrid. You have, I suppose, ' some employment here ! Be assured, ' that I share as much as ever in what ' concerns you. — ' Signior,' answered I, ' something less than four months ' ago, I filled a pretty considerable ' post at court, having had the honour ' to be secretary and confidant to the ' Duke of Lerma. — ' Is it possible ! ' cried Don Alphonso, with extreme astonishment ; ' what ! was you in the ' confidence of the prime-minister ? — ' I gained his favour,' said I, ' and ' lost it in the manner you shall hear. ' I then recounted the whole story, and ended my narration with the resolution I had taken to buy, with the slender remains of my past prosperity, a cottage, in which I proposed to lead a retired life. The son of Don Cæsar having listened very attentively, replied ; ' My dear Gil Blas, you know ' I always loved you. You shall be ' the sport of Fortune no more. I ' will deliver you from her power, by ' making you master of an estate, ' which she cannot deprive you of. ' Since you design to live in the country, I bestow upon you a small farm ' which we have hard by Lirias, about ' four leagues from Valencia. You ' know the place ; and it is a present ' which we are in a condition of making, without incommoding ourselves ' in the least. I dare answer for my ' father's consent, and know that it ' will give great pleasure to Seraphina. ' na.

I threw myself at the feet of Don Alphonso, who immediately raised me up. I kissed his hand, and more charmed with the goodness of his heart, than with the value of his favour, ' Signior,' said I, ' your behaviour enchants me. The present which you ' make is the more agreeable, as it ' precedes the knowledge of a piece of ' service which I did you ; and I would ' rather owe it to your generosity than ' to your acknowledgment. ' My governor was a little surprized at my discourse, and did not fail to ask what this pretended service was. I told him ; and the information redoubled his surprize. He, as well as the Baron de

Steinbach, was far from thinking that the government of the city of Valencia had been bestowed upon him by my interest. Nevertheless, as he could not doubt my veracity, ' Gil Blas,' said he, ' since I owe my post to you, ' I don't intend to confine my gratitude to the little farm of Lirias ; I ' will give you along with it two ' thousand ducats yearly. ' ' Halt there, Signior Alphonso,' said I, interrupting him ; ' don't awake ' my avarice. I have too well experienced, that riches serve only to ' corrupt my morals. I accept, with ' all my heart, your farm of Lirias, ' where I will live comfortably with ' the money which I have already in ' my possession. But that is sufficient ; ' and, far from desiring more, I would ' rather consent to lose the superfluity ' of what I possess. Riches are a burden to one in retirement, who seeks ' only to enjoy quiet. ' ' While we conversed in this manner,

Don Cæsar coming in, expressed as much joy at seeing me as his son had done before ; and when he understood the obligation which his family lay under to me, he pressed me to accept the annuity, which I again refused. In short, the father and son carried me instantly to a notary's house, where they caused a deed of gift to be made out, and signed it with more pleasure than they would have felt in signing a deed to their own advantage. When it was executed, they put it into my hand, saying the farm of Lirias was no longer theirs, and that I might go and take possession of it when I would. They then went back to the house of Baron de Steinbach, and I flew to our lodgings, where my secretary was ravished with admiration, when I informed him that we had an estate in Valencia, and recounted in what manner I had made this acquisition. ' How much,' said he, ' may ' this small dominion be worth ? — ' Five hundred ducats per annum,' I replied : ' and I can assure thee, it is ' a lovely solitude, which I know perfectly well ; having been there several times in quality of steward to ' the Lords of Leyva. It is a small ' house on the borders of the Guadalarivar, in a hamlet of five or six ' houses, and in the midst of a charming country. ' ' What

‘What pleases me still more in it,’ cried Scipio, ‘is, that we shall have fine venison, with wine of Benicarlo, and excellent Muscadine. Come, master, let us make haste to quit the world, and gain our hermitage.’— ‘I long as much as thou dost to be there,’ I replied; ‘but I must first make a tour to the Asturias. My parents are there in no very agreeable situation; and I intend to conduct them to Lirias, where they will pass the remainder of their days in quiet. Heaven, perhaps, has granted me this asylum on purpose to receive them, and would punish me if I failed in my duty.’ Scipio approved very much of my design, and

even excited me to put it in execution. ‘Let us lose no time,’ said he; ‘I have already secured a chaise, let us buy mules immediately, and set out for Oviedo.’— ‘Yes, my friend,’ I replied; ‘let us depart as soon as we can. I think it my indispensable duty to share the sweets of my retirement with the authors of my being. Our journey will not be long. We shall soon see ourselves settled in our hamlet; where, when I arrive, I will write over the door of my house these two Latin verses in letters of gold:

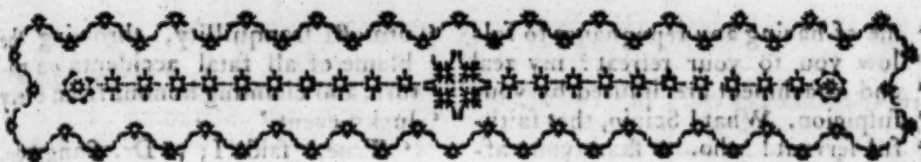
*‘Inveni portum! Spes et fortuna valet!'
‘Sat me lussis, ludite nunc alios.’*

END OF THE THIRD VOLUME.

[illegible]

"What please me still more in
 education, is, that we find
 the various, with wine of 18 months,
 and excellent. I have found
 that let us make half a dozen
 will, and give our servants
 I hope as much as those that
 there, I repeat; that I must
 make a date to the 12th of
 parents are there in no way
 satisfaction; and I intend to
 but want to know where I shall
 get the remainder of them, says
 that I shall be able to do so
 and the price of the whole
 some more, and would be
 I shall be my duty, I shall
 not a few more of the same kind

in
in
to
the
K
at
ac
th
th
g



THE
ADVENTURES
OF
GIL BLAS
OF
SANTILLANE.

VOLUME THE FOURTH.

BOOK XII.

CHAP. I.

GIL BLAS SETS OUT FOR THE
ASTURIAS; PASSES THROUGH
VALLADOLID, WHERE HE VISITS
HIS OLD MASTER, DOCTOR SAN-
GRADO; AND MEETS BY ACCI-
DENT WITH SIGNIOR MANUEL
ORDONNEZ, DIRECTOR OF THE
HOSPITAL.



WHILE I was getting ready for my departure from Madrid, with Scipio, on my journey to the Asturias, Pope Paul the Fifth named the Duke of Lerma to the cardinalship. This pope being desirous of establishing the Inquisition in the kingdom of Naples, invested that minister with the purple, that he might engage him to make King Philip consent to such a laudable design. All those who were well acquainted with this new member of the Sacred College thought, like me, that the church had made a fine acquisition.

Scipio, who would rather have seen

me in a brilliant post at court, than buried in solitude, advised me to present myself before the cardinal: 'Perhaps,' said he, 'his eminence, seeing you out of prison by the king's order, will think it unnecessary to appear any longer irritated against you, and take you into his service again.'—'Mr. Scipio,' answered I, 'you seem to have forgot that I obtained my liberty on condition that I should quit the Two Castiles immediately. Besides, do you think me already disgusted with my cattle of Lirias? I have told you once, and now repeat it, that if the Duke of Lerma would restore me to his good graces, and even offer me the place of Don Rodrigo de Calderona, I would refuse it. My resolution is taken. I will go in quest of my parents at Oviedo, and retire with them to Valencia. As for thee, my friend, if thou repentest of having joined thy fortune to mine, speak; I am ready to give thee one half of my money, and thou mayest stay at Madrid, and push thy fortune as far as it will go.'

'How!' replied my secretary, nettled at my words; 'can you suspect

R r

me

me of having any repugnance to follow you to your retreat? my zeal and attachment are injured by your suspicion. What! Scipio, that faithful servant! who, to share your affliction, would have willingly passed the remainder of his days with you in the tower of Segovia! shall he feel any regret in accompanying you to an abode that promises him a thousand pleasures! No, no; I have no desire of dissuading you from your resolution. I must own, I was a little mischievous, when I advised you to shew yourself to the Duke of Lerma: I wanted to sound you, that I might know if some seeds of ambition did not still remain in your breast. Well then; since you are so much detached from pomp and grandeur, let us abandon the court immediately, and go and enjoy those innocent and delicious pleasures, of which we have formed such charming ideas. We actually set out in a few days, mounted together in a chaise drawn by two good mules, and conducted by a young man, with whom I thought proper to augment my train. We lay the first night at Alcala de Henares, and the second at Segovia; from whence, (without staying to visit the generous Keeper Tordecillas) we got to Penafiel on the Duero; and next day to Valladolid*. At sight of this last place, I could not help heaving a profound sigh; and my companion, who perceived it, asking the cause, Child, said I, I practised physick a long time in this city; and my conscience upbraids me with it this moment! methinks all the sick people whom I killed come out of their tombs, and seem ready to tear me in pieces.—What a fancy is this! said my secretary: truly Signior de Santillane, you are too good. Why should you repent of having laboured in your vocation? Observe the oldest physicians; do they feel any such remorse? No, sure: they still go on in their old course, with the

utmost tranquillity, throwing the blame of all fatal accidents on nature, and claiming honour from every lucky event.

True, said I; Dr. Sangrado, whose method I faithfully followed, was a man of that character. Though he saw twenty people die daily upon his hands, he was so well convinced of the excellence of bleeding in the arm, and plentiful draughts of warm water, which he called his two specifics in all kinds of distempers, that, instead of suspecting his remedies, he believed that his patients died because they had not drank and been blooded enough.—Egad! cried Scipio, bursting into a loud laugh; this must be an incomparable person!—If thou hast any curiosity to see and hear him, said I, thou mayest satisfy it to-morrow morning, provided Sangrado be still alive, and at Valladolid; which I can scarce believe, for he was very old when I left him, and that happened a good many years ago.

Our first care, when we arrived at our inn, was to enquire about that doctor, whom we learned was not yet dead; but being too old to visit patients, or move about, he had given place to three or four doctors, who had acquired reputation by a new method of practice, which did not succeed a whit better than his. We resolved to stay all next day at Valladolid, as well to rest our horses, as to visit Signior Sangrado; to whose house we repaired about ten o'clock in the morning, and found him sitting in an easy-chair, with a book in his hand. As soon as he perceived us, he got up, and coming towards me, with a firm step, considering his age, which was seventy, asked our business with him. Mr. Doctor, said I to him, don't you recollect me? I have the honour to be one of your disciples. Don't you remember a young man called Gil Blas, who formerly lived in your house, and was your deputy?—

* Valladolid, an ancient city of Old Castile, in Spain, on the banks of the Pisuerga, in a most delightful situation, on a fertile plain. The inhabitants make up about four thousand families, among whom is a great number of nobility and gentry: it is the see of a bishop, has an university, and a considerable trade. Among other stately buildings, the great piazza is one of the noblest, being the model of that of Madrid, consisting of five hundred arches with gilded balconies. This city is walled, but not a place of strength. Here are about seventy convents of both sexes.

‘What! is it you, Santillane!’ answered he, embracing me; ‘I should not have known you again. I am very glad to see you. What have you been doing since you left me? You have, doubtless, practised physick all along?’—‘I was, indeed,’ said I, ‘sufficiently inclined to that profession, which, however, some strong reasons have hindered me from exercising.’

‘So much the worse,’ replied Sangrado. ‘With the principles which you imbibed from me, you would have become an expert physician, provided Heaven had given you grace to preserve yourself from the dangerous love of chymistry. Ah, my son!’ continued he, with an air of sorrow; ‘what a change has happened in physick within these few years! That art is robbed of all its honour and dignity: that art, which in all times hath regarded the life of a man, is now a prey to rashness, presumption, and empiricks; for their actions speak; and, in a little time, the very stones will cry aloud against the cabals of these new practitioners. *Lapides clamabunt!* There are in this city physicians (or such as call themselves so) who are yoked to the triumphal car of antimony. *Currus triumphalis antimonii.* Truants from the school of Paracelsus; adorers of kermes, accidental curers, who make the whole science of medicine consist in knowing how to prepare chymical drugs. What shall I tell you! every thing is turned topsy-turvy in their method. Bleeding at the foot, for example, hitherto so seldom practised, is now almost the only evacuation in use. Those purgatives which were formerly gentle and benign, are now changed for emeticks and kermes. The whole is a mere chaos, where each does what he thinks proper; transgressing those bounds of order and sagacity which our ancient masters had so wisely prescribed.’

Whatever inclination I had to laugh at such a comical declamation, I had power to resist it. I did more; I exclaimed against kermes, without knowing what it was, and at a venture wished those who invented it at the devil. Scipio, observing that I made myself merry with this scene, had a mind to act in it also. ‘Mr. Doctor,’ said he to

Sangrado, ‘as I am grand-nephew to a physician of the old school, give me leave to revolt with you against chymical medicines. My late grand-uncle (rest his soul!) was such a warm partizan of Hippocrates, that he often battled with quacks who spoke disrespectfully of that prince of physick. True blood will always shew itself; I would willingly perform the office of executioner to those ignorant innovators of whom you complain with such eloquence and justice. What disorder must these wretches create in civil society!’

‘That disorder,’ replied the doctor, ‘is more extensive than you imagine. My having published a book against the robbers of medicine, was of no use: on the contrary, the mischief daily increases. The surgeons, mad with the ambition of acting as physicians, think themselves sufficiently qualified, when there is nothing to be done but to give kermes and emeticks, to which they add bleeding at the foot, according to their own fancy. They even proceed so far, as to mix kermes in apozems and cordial potions; and so they are on a par with your celebrated prescribers. This contagion has spread also among the cloysters. There are some monks who act both as apothecaries and surgeons. Those apes of medicine apply themselves to chymistry, and compose pernicious drugs, with which they abridge the lives of their reverend fathers. In fine, there are more than sixty monasteries of men and women in Valladolid; so you may judge what ravage is made in them, by kermes united with emeticks, and bleeding in the foot.’—‘Signior Sangrado,’ said I, ‘you have reason to be incensed against these poisoners. I groan in concert with you, and share your alarms for the lives of mankind, which are so manifestly threatened by a method so different from yours. I am very much afraid that chymistry will one day occasion the total ruin of physick; in the same manner as false money proves destructive to kingdoms. Heaven grant that the fatal day be not too near!’

At this part of our conversation, an old maid-servant brought in for the doctor a little light bread on a silver;

and a glass, with two bottles, one of which was filled with water, and the other with wine. After he had eaten a morsel of the bread, he took a draught of liquor, in which indeed there were two-thirds of water; but that did not save him from the reproach which he gave me a handle to vent against him. 'Ah, ha!' said I, 'Mr. Doctor, have I caught you in the fact? you drink wine then! you who have always declared against that liquor; you who, during three-fourths of your life, have drunk nothing but water! How long have you acted so inconsistent with yourself? You can't excuse yourself on account of your age; since, in one part of your writings, you define old age a natural decay that withers and consumes us; and, in consequence of that definition, deplore the ignorance of those people who style wine the milk of old men. What, therefore, can you say in your own justification?'

'You declare war against me very unjustly,' replied the old physician. 'Had I drank pure wine, you would have had some reason to look upon me as an unfaithful observer of my own method; but you see that my wine is very much diluted.'—'Another inconsistency, my dear master,' said I: 'don't you remember that you blamed the Canon Sedillo for drinking wine, although it was mixed with a great deal of water? Confess freely, that you are sensible of your error; and that wine is, not a fatal liquor, as you advanced in your works, provided it be drank with moderation.'

These words perplexed the doctor, who could not deny that he had forbid the use of wine in his books; but shame and vanity hindered him from owning that my reproach was just, and he did not know what answer to make. To extricate him out of this dilemma, I shifted the discourse; and in a moment after took leave of him, exhorting him to keep his ground still against the new practitioners. 'Courage, Signior Sangrado!' said I to him; 'be indefatigable in decrying kermes, and combat against bleeding in the foot without ceasing. If, in spite of your zeal and physical orthodoxy, that empirical race should succeed in ruining true discipline, you will at least

enjoy the consolation of having done your utmost to maintain it.'

As my secretary and I returned to the inn, conversing together about the diverting and original character of the doctor, a man of about five and fifty or sixty years of age passed us in the street, walking with his eyes fixed upon the ground, and a large rosary in his hand. I viewed him attentively, and easily recollected him to be Signior Manuel Ordonez, that pious director of the hospital, of whom such honourable mention is made in the first volume of my memoirs. I accosted him with great demonstrations of respect, saying, 'Health to the venerable and discreet Signior Manuel Ordonez! the most proper man in the world to manage the poor's money.'

At these words he eyed me narrowly, and answered, that he remembered my features, but could not recollect the place where he had seen me. 'I was often at your house,' said I, 'while you had in your service a friend of mine called Fabricio Nunnez.'—'Ah! I remember you now,' answered the director, with a satirical smile, 'by this token, that you were both arch lads, and played together many tricks of youth. Well! what is become of poor Fabricio? every time I think of him, I am uneasy about his circumstances.'

'My motive,' said I, 'for taking the liberty of stopping you in the street, was to give you an account of him. Fabricio is, at Madrid, employed in composing miscellanies.'—'What do you call miscellanies?' answered he. 'That is,' said I, 'he writes in prose and verse. He composes comedies and romances; in a word, he is a young fellow of genius, and is very well received in the best families.'—'But,' said the director, 'how stands he with his baker?'—'Not quite so well,' answered I, 'as with people of fashion: between you and me, I believe he is as poor as Job.'—'Oh! I don't at all doubt it,' cried Ordonez. 'Let him make his court to noblemen as much as he pleases; his complaisance, flattery, and cringing, will bring still less into his pocket than his works. Remember I prophesy, that you will one day see him in the hospital.'

'That may very well be,' I replied. Poetry

Poetry, has brought many a one to that catastrophe. My friend Fabricio would have done much better had he remained with your worship. He would by this time have rolled upon gold.—At least, he would have been in very easy circumstances,’ said Manuel. ‘I had a regard for him; and would have, by raising him from post to post, procured a solid settlement for him in the hospital, had he not been whimsical enough to set up for a wit. He composed a comedy, which was acted by the players of this city: the piece succeeded, and from that moment his head turned. He believed himself another Lope de Vega; and preferring the smoke of publick applause to the real advantages which my friendship prepared for him, demanded his dismissal. I remonstrated in vain, that he was going to quit the substance, and run after the shadow. I could not detain this madman, who was actuated with the fury of writing. He did not know his own interest,’ added he. ‘The young man who succeeded him in my service is a living proof of this. Having more judgment, and less understanding than Fabricio, he applied himself wholly to the execution of his commission, and studied to please me. Accordingly, I have promoted him as he deserved, and he now actually enjoys two employments at the hospital, the least of which is more than sufficient to maintain an honest man encumbered with a large family.’

CHAP. II.

GIL BLAS CONTINUES HIS JOURNEY, AND ARRIVES SAFELY AT OVIEDO. THE CONDITION IN WHICH HE FOUND HIS PARENTS. THE DEATH OF HIS FATHER, AND THE CONSEQUENCES THEREOF.

FROM Valladolid we got in four days to Oviedo, without meeting with any bad accident on the road, notwithstanding the proverb, which says, ‘That robbers smell the money of travellers afar off.’ We should have been,

however, a pretty good booty; and two inhabitants of the cavern would have been sufficient to carry off our doubloons with ease; for I had not learned to grow valiant at court; and Bertrand, my *mago de mulas**, did not seem of a humour to die in defence of his master’s purse: Scipio was the only Hector among us.

It being night when we arrived in town, we went to lodge at an inn hard by the house of my uncle the Canon Gil Perez. I was willing to understand the situation of my parents, before I should appear as their son; and, for this piece of information, I could not apply to a more proper person than my landlord or his wife, who I knew to be people who were very well acquainted with the affairs of their neighbours. In effect, the landlord, after having eyed me with attention, recollecting my face, cried, ‘By St. Antonio de Padua! this is the son of honest Usher Blas of Santillane.’—‘Yes, truly,’ said his wife, ‘it is he indeed! he is very little altered: it is the same little brisk Gil Blas, who had always more spirit in his heart than beef on his bones. I think I see him still coming to this house, with his bottle, for wine to his uncle’s supper.’

‘Madam,’ said I, ‘you have a very happy memory: but, pray, tell me news of my family; my father and mother are doubtless in no very agreeable situation.’—‘That is but too true,’ replied the landlady: ‘how bad soever you may think their condition is, you cannot conceive them more distressed than they are. Gil Perez, honest man, has lost the use of one half of his body by the palsy, and in all appearance cannot last long: your father, who has lived of late with the canon, has got a defluxion in his breast, or rather is at this moment in the agonies of death; and your mother, though far from being well, is obliged to serve as a nurse to both.’

On this report, which made me feel that I was a son, I left Bertrand with my equipage at the inn; and, attended by my secretary, who would not quit me, repaired to my uncle’s house. As soon as I appeared before my mother, an emotion which I caused in her, sig-

* A mule-driver.

nified my presence before her eyes had distinguished my features. 'Son,' said she, with a melancholy air, after she had embraced me, 'come and see your father breathe his last: you are come time enough to be struck with that cruel spectacle.' So saying, she carried me into a chamber where the unfortunate Blas of Santillane, lying on a bed that too well denoted the poverty of an usher, drew near his exit. Though he was environed by the shades of death, his senses had not quite forsaken him. 'My dear friend,' said my mother to him, 'here is your son Gil Blas, who begs your forgiveness for the sorrows he has occasioned, and asks your blessing.' At these words, my father opening his eyes, which death had begun to close, fixed them upon me; and observing, in spite of his own lamentable condition, that I was very much affected with the loss of him, seemed moved at my grief, and attempted to speak, but had not strength enough to utter one word. I took hold of one of his hands; and while I bathed it with my tears, unable to pronounce a syllable, he expired, as if he had waited for my arrival before he would breathe his last.

My mother was too well prepared for his death to be immoderately afflicted at it, and I was perhaps more grieved than she, although my father had never given me the least mark of friendship in his life. My being his son was a sufficient cause for me to lament him; besides, I upbraided myself for not having assisted him in his distress; and when I reflected on my hard-heartedness, looked upon myself as a monster of ingratitude, or rather as a downright parricide. My uncle, whom I afterwards beheld stretched on a truckle-bed, and in a miserable condition, made me feel fresh remorse. 'Unnatural son!' said I to myself, 'contemplate, for thy punishment, the misery of thy parents. If thou hadst given them a small share of the superfluity which was in thy possession before thou wast imprisoned, they would have enjoyed conveniences which the revenue of the prebend could not afford; and, perhaps, thou wouldst have prolonged the life of thy father!'

The unfortunate Gil Perez was become a child again, having lost both

his memory and judgment. In vain did I press him in my arms, with marks of real affection; he seemed insensible of what I did. When my mother told him that I was his nephew Gil Blas, he looked at me with an unmeaning eye, and made no answer. Though blood and gratitude had not obliged me to lament an uncle to whom I owed so much, I could not have beheld him in a condition so worthy of pity without feeling the emotions of compassion.

All this time Scipio remained in a melancholy silence, partook of my affliction, and, through friendship, mingled his sighs with mine. As I concluded that my mother, after such a long absence, wanted to converse with me, and that she might be uneasy at the presence of a man whom she did not know, I took him aside, and said, 'Go, my child; go, and repose thyself at the inn; and leave me here with my mother, who perhaps will think thee one too many in a conversation that will wholly turn on family-affairs.' Scipio, rather than put us under any restraint, retired; and I actually discoursed with my mother the best part of the night. We gave one another a faithful account of what had happened to us since my departure from Oviedo: she was minute in the detail of those mortifications she had suffered in the families where she had been duenna, and told me an infinite number of things on that subject which I was glad my secretary did not hear, though he was entrusted with all my secrets. With all the respect that I owe to the memory of a mother, I must own that the good lady was a little prolix in her narrations; and she would have spared me three-fourths of her history had she suppressed all the trivial circumstances of it: she concluded 'at length, and I began mine. I passed lightly over all my adventures; but when I came to the visit which I received at Madrid from the son of Bertrand Muscada, the grocer of Oviedo, I enlarged upon that article. 'I own,' said I to my mother, 'I gave that young man a very bad reception; who, to be revenged, has doubtless drawn a very frightful picture of me.'—'In that he did not fail,' answered she; 'he told us that he found you so proud of the favour of the prime-minister, that you scarce deigned

deigned to recollect him; and, when he described our distress, heard him with the utmost indifference. As parents,' added she, 'always endeavour to find excuses for the behaviour of their children, we would not believe that you had such a bad heart. Your arrival at Oviedo justifies our good opinion of you, and your present sorrow confirms your apology.'

'You judge too favourably of me,' I replied: 'there is a great deal of truth in young Muscada's report. When he visited me, I was wholly engrossed by the care of making my fortune; and the ambition that possessed me would not permit me to think of my parents. It must not therefore be wondered at, if, in this disposition, I gave an unwelcome reception to a man who, accosting me rudely, told me in a brutal manner, that, hearing I was richer than a Jew, he came to advise me to send you some money, of which you stood in great need: he even reproached my indifference for my family in very indecent terms. I was shocked at his freedom; and, losing patience, pushed him by the shoulders out of my closet. I own I was to blame in this rencounter: I ought to have reflected, that it was not your fault if the grocer wanted manners, and that his advice was never the worse for it's being brutally delivered.'

'This was what I represented to myself immediately after I had sent Muscada about his business. My blood spoke in your behalf; I recalled all my duty to my parents; and, blushing for shame for having performed it so ill, felt remorse, which nevertheless can do me no honour with you, because it was soon stifled by avarice and ambition: but having been afterwards imprisoned, by the king's order, in the tower of Segovia, I fell dangerously ill, and that happy distemper hath restored your son to you: yes, it was my disease and imprisonment that made nature resume all her rights, and entirely detached me from court. I now thirst after solitude; and my sole motive for coming to the Asturias was to entreat you to share with me the sweets of a retired life. If you don't refuse my request, I will conduct you to an estate which I have in the kingdom of

Valencia, where we shall live at our ease. You may believe I intended to carry my father thither also; but since Heaven hath ordained it otherwise, let me have the satisfaction of enjoying my mother's company, and of making amends to her for my past neglect by all imaginable care.'—'I am very much obliged to your laudable intention,' said my mother; 'and would go without hesitation, if I saw no objections in the case; but I will not leave my brother, (your uncle) in this deplorable condition; and I am so much used to this country, that I cannot now quit it. However, as the thing deserves due consideration, I will think of it at leisure: let us at present take care of your father's funeral.'—'That,' said I, 'shall be ordered by the young man whom you saw along with me; he is my secretary, and has such zeal and understanding, that we may depend upon his care.'

Scarce had I pronounced these words, when Scipio returned, it being already day; and asking if we had any occasion for his service in our perplexity, I told him that he came very seasonably to receive an important order which I had to give. When he knew what the business was, 'Enough,' said he; 'I have already contrived the whole ceremony, and you may trust to my discretion.'—'Beware,' said my mother, 'of making a pompous burial: it cannot be too modest for my husband, whom all the town knew to be a very indigent usher.'—'Madam,' replied Scipio, 'had he been still more needy than he was, I would not abate two farthings of the expence: for in this I regard my master only; he has been the Duke of Lerma's favourite, and his father ought to be nobly interred.'

I approved of my secretary's design, and even desired him to spare no cost: the remains of vanity which I still preserved, broke out on this occasion: I flattered myself, that in being at a great expence upon a father, who left me no inheritance, I should make the world admire my generous behaviour. My mother, for her part, whatever modesty she affected, was not ill pleased to see her husband buried in splendour. We therefore gave a *charte blanche* to Scipio; who, without loss of time, took all

all necessary measures for a superb funeral.

He succeeded but too well; and performed such magnificent obsequies, that he brought the whole city and suburbs on my back; all the inhabitants of Oviedo, from the highest to the lowest, being shocked at my ostentation. 'This minister,' said one, 'is in a great hurry to lay out money on his father's interment; but he was in none to maintain him.'— 'He would have done better,' said another, 'had he succoured his father while he was alive, than to honour him so much, now that he is dead.' In short, reproaches were not spared; every one had a fling at me: but they did not stop here; they insulted Scipio, Bertrand, and me, as we came out of the church, loaded us with revilings, and hooted us as we walked along, and conducted Bertrand to the inn with a shower of stones.

To disperse the mob that was gathered before my uncle's house, there was a necessity for my mother's shewing herself, and declaring, that she was perfectly well satisfied with my conduct. Some ran to the publick-house, in order to demolish my chaise; and this they certainly would have done, if the landlord and his wife had not found means to appease their fury, and dissuade them from their design.

All these affronts, which were the effects of the young grocer's report of me through the city, inspired me with such aversion for my townsmen, that I determined speedily to leave Oviedo, where, otherwise, I should perhaps have staid a good while. This I plainly told my mother, who being very much mortified at the reception with which the people had regaled me, did not oppose my departure. What remained now, was to know how I should dispose of her. 'Mother,' said I, 'since my uncle wants your assistance, I will not press you to go along with me at present; but as, in all appearance, he has not long to live, you must promise to come to my estate immediately after his decease.'

'I will make no such promise,' answered my mother; 'being resolved to pass the rest of my days in the Asturias, in perfect independence.'— 'Will not you always,' said I, 'be mistress in my house?'— 'I don't

know that,' she resumed: 'you may fall in love with some young girl, and marry her; then I shall be her mother-in-law; consequently we cannot live together.'— 'You foresee misfortune,' said I, 'at too great a distance: I have no intention to marry; but if the fancy should strike me, depend upon it, I will oblige my wife to be implicitly submissive to your will.'— 'That is promising too much,' resumed my mother: 'I should want security for my bondsmen; and would not even swear, that, in our disputes, you would not take the part of your wife rather than mine, how far soever she might be in the wrong.'

'You talk reasonably, Madam,' cried my secretary, joining in the conversation; 'I am of your opinion, that submissive daughters-in-law are very rare. In the mean time, to accommodate matters between you and my master, since you are absolutely resolved to live in the Asturias, and he in the kingdom of Valencia, he must grant you an allowance of one hundred pistoles, which I shall bring hither every year. By these means, the mother and son will live very happy at the distance of two hundred leagues from one another.' The parties concerned approved of the proposal: I paid the first year's annuity per advance, and quitted Oviedo next morning before break of day, that I might not be treated by the populace like another St. Stephen. Such was the reception I met with in my own country. An excellent lesson for those people of the common rank, who, after having got a fortune abroad, return to the place of their nativity, and affect the gentleman of importance.

CHAP. III.

GIL BLAS DEPARTS FOR THE KINGDOM OF VALENCIA, AND AT LENGTH ARRIVES AT LIRIAS. A DESCRIPTION OF HIS HOUSE. HIS RECEPTION; WITH AN ACCOUNT OF THE PEOPLE HE FOUND THERE.

WE took the road to Leon, then to Valencia; and, continuing our journey, by short stages, in ten days

days arrived at the city of Segorba; from whence, next morning, we repaired to my estate, which is but three leagues distant from it. As we drew near this place, my secretary observed, with great attention, all the country-seats that presented themselves to his view, on the right and left; and when he perceived one of a grand appearance, he always pointed to it with his finger, and said, 'I wish that was our retreat.' — 'I don't know, friend,' said I to him, 'what idea thou hast formed of our habitation; but if you imagine that it is a magnificent house, like that on some great nobleman's estate, I tell you beforehand, that you are furiously mistaken. If thou hast not a mind to be the dupe of thy own imagination, represent to thyself the small house which Horace enjoyed in the country of the Sabines, near the Tyber, and which he received in a present from Mæcenas.' — 'Then I must expect to see a cottage!' cried Scipio. 'Remember,' I replied, 'that I have always given you a very modest description of it; and this moment thou mayest thyself judge whether or not I am a faithful painter. Cast thy eyes towards the Guadalaviar, and observe on it's banks, hard by that small hamlet, the house consisting of four little pavilions; that is my castle.' — 'How the devil!' said my secretary, with surprise: 'that house is a perfect jewel! Besides, the noble air that these pavilions give it, it is extremely well built, and surrounded by a more charming country than even the neighbourhood of Seville, which is called, by way of excellence, The terrestrial paradise. Had we chosen our abode, it could not have been more to my taste; a river waters it with it's stream, and a thick wood lends it's shade, when we are inclined to walk in the middle of the day. What an amiable solitude this is! Ah, my dear master! in all appearance, we shall not quit this place in a hurry.' — 'I am overjoyed,' answered I, 'that thou art so well satisfied with our asylum, which is more agreeable still than you imagine.' Conversing in this manner, we approached the house; the gate of which was thrown open, as soon as Scipio signified that it was Signior Gil Blas de Santillane, who came

to take possession of his castle. At that name, so respected by those who heard it pronounced, my chaise was admitted into a large court, where I alighted: then leaning on Scipio, and taking state upon myself, I went into a hall, where I was scarce arrived, when seven or eight servants appeared. They said they came to present their homage to their new master; that Don Cæsar and Don Alphonso de Leyva had chosen them for my service; one in quality of cook, another as cook's assistant, a third as scullion, a fourth as porter, and the rest as lacquies; with orders to receive no money from me; these two noblemen intending to defray all the expences of my house-keeping. Master Joachin, the cook, who was the principal, and spokesman of these domesticks, gave me to understand, that he had laid in a large stock of the best wines in Spain; and told me, that as to eating, he hoped a young fellow, like him, who had been cook six years to the Archbishop of Valencia, must know how to compose ragouts that would tickle my palate. 'I will,' added he, 'fall presently to work, and produce a sample of my skill. Take a walk, Signior, while dinner is getting ready; visit your castle, and see if it be in an habitable condition.'

I leave the reader to judge whether or not I neglected this visit; and Scipio, still more curious than I, dragged me from room to room. We surveyed the whole house from top to bottom; the least corner, (as we imagined) did not escape our interested curiosity; and I had every where occasion to admire the bounty of Don Cæsar and his son. Among other things, I was struck with the appearance of two apartments, which were as well furnished as they possibly could be without magnificence; one of them was hung with Arras tapestry, and had in it a bed and chairs of velvet, still very handsome, though made while the Moors possessed the kingdom of Valencia. The furniture of the other was in the same taste, consisting of hangings made of old yellow Genoa damask, with a bed and elbow-chairs of the same stuff, adorned with fringes of blue silk. All these effects, which would have been little valued in an inventory, appeared there very considerable. After having thoroughly examined every thing, my secretary and

I returned to the hall, where the cloth was laid with two covers. We sat down at-table, and in a moment was brought in an *olla podrida*, so delicious, that we pitied the Archbishop of Valencia for having lost the cook that composed it. At every morsel we eat, my new lacquies presented to us large glasses filled to the brims with wine of a most exquisite relish. Scipio, not daring to shew before them the inward satisfaction that he felt, expressed himself to me by eloquent looks; and I gave him to understand, by the same language, that I was as well satisfied as he. A dish of roast meat, composed of two fat quails, which flanked a leveret of an admirable *funet*, made us quit the olio, and finish our repast. When we had eaten like two gormandizers, and drank in proportion, we got up from table, and walked into the garden, to enjoy a voluptuous *siesta**, in some cool agreeable place.

If my secretary seemed hitherto satisfied with what he had seen, he was still more so, when he beheld the garden, which he thought comparable even to that of the Escorial. It is true, Don César, who came frequently to Lirias, took pleasure in having it cultivated and embellished: the walks well gravelled and bordered with orange-trees, a great basin of white marble, in the middle of which a brazen lion vomited out great gushes of water; the beauty of the flowers, the variety of fruits; all these objects ravished Scipio; but he was in a particular manner enchanted with a long walk that led by a gentle descent all the way to a farmer's house, and was shaded by the interwoven boughs of the trees planted on each side. Here we stopped to make the elogium of a place so proper for an asylum against the heat of the day; and sitting down at the root of a young elm, sleep easily surprized two merry boys, who had just made such a good dinner.

Two hours after, we started up, awakened by the noise of several shot, which seemed so near that we were frightened. We got up in a hurry, and repaired to the farmer's house, where we found eight or ten peasants,

all inhabitants of the hamlet, who had scoured and fired their fusils to celebrate my arrival, of which they had got notice. The greatest part of them knew me, having seen me more than once at the castle, in the exercise of my stewardship. They no sooner perceived me, than they cried all together, 'Long life to our new master, who is welcome to Lirias!' Then they loaded their pieces, and regaled me with a general discharge. I received them as courteously as I could; preserving my gravity, however; thinking it improper to be too familiar with them. I assured them of my protection, left twenty pistoles among them; and this, I believe, they did not look upon as the most disagreeable part of my behaviour. I afterwards left them at liberty to spend more powder, and retired with my secretary into the wood, where we strolled about till night, without being tired with beholding the groves; so charming is the first view of a new possession.

The cook, his assistant, and scullion, were not idle in the mean time; they were busy in preparing a repast, even superior to that which we had eaten; and we were actually astonished, when, returning into the same hall where we had dined, we saw them place upon the table a dish of roasted partridges, with a *cive*† of rabbit on one side, and on the other a capon in ragout. The next course of dainties consisted of pig's ears, pickled chicks, and cream-chocolate. We drank plentifully of Lucena, and several sorts of excellent wine; and when we found we could drink no more, without exposing our healths, we thought of going to bed. Then my lacquies, taking lights, conducted me to the best apartment, where they were very officious in undressing me; but when they gave me my gown and night-cap, I dismissed them; saying, with a magisterial air, 'Leave me, gentlemen; I have no farther occasion for you to-night.'

I sent them all away; and keeping Scipio for a little conversation, asked what he thought of the treatment I received by order of the noblemen of

* *Siesta*, literally signifies the heat of the day, from noon forwards; but is here used to express the afternoon's nap, enjoyed every day by the inhabitants of hot climates.

† A *cive*, is a sauce made of the entrails of a hare or rabbit.

Leyva, 'In faith!' answered he, 'I think you can't be treated better: I only wish that this may last.'—'I entertain no such wish,' I replied. 'It ill becomes me to let my benefactors be at such an expence on my account; this were to abuse their generosity: besides, I can't put up with servants who are paid by another; I should not believe myself in my own house. Neither am I come hither to live in a bustle; we have no occasion for such a great number of domesticks; we want no more than Bertrand, a cook, a scullion, and lacquey.' Although my secretary would not have been sorry to live always at the expence of the governor of Valencia, he did not oppose my delicacy in this affair; but conforming himself to my sentiments, approved of the reform I intended to make. This being determined, he left me, and retired into his own apartment.

C H A P. IV.

HE DEPARTS FOR VALENCIA, TO VISIT THE NOBLEMEN OF LEYVA. HIS CONVERSATION WITH THEM, AND THE KIND RECEPTION HE MET WITH FROM SERAPHINA.

I Undressed, and went to bed; where feeling no inclination to sleep, I abandoned myself to reflection. I represented to myself the friendship with which the noblemen of Leyva repaid my attachment to them; and, penetrated with those new marks of their affection, resolved to go the very next day, and satisfy the longing impatience I had of seeing and thanking them for their favours. I likewise enjoyed, by anticipation, the pleasure of seeing Seraphina again; but that pleasure was not pure; I could not, without uneasiness, consider, that I must, at the same time, support the looks of Dame Lorença Sephora, who, perhaps, remembering the adventure of the box on the ear, would not be overjoyed at sight of me. Fatigued with all these different ideas, I at length fell asleep, and did not wake till after sun-rise.

I was soon a-foot; and, wholly engrossed by my intended journey, dressed myself in a hurry. Just as I had

done adjusting myself, my secretary coming into my chamber, 'Scipio,' said I, 'you see me ready to set out for Valencia; I cannot make too much haste in going to salute the noblemen to whom I owe my small fortune: every moment that I delay to acquit myself of this duty, seems to accuse me of ingratitude. As for thee, my friend, I dispense with thy attendance; stay here in my absence, and I will come back to thee in eight days.'—'Go, Sir,' he replied; 'pay your respects to Don Alphonso and his father, who seem so sensible of your zeal, and grateful for the services you have done them: persons of quality, of that character, are so rare, that they cannot be too much esteemed.' I ordered Bertrand to get ready for our departure; and while he yoked the mules, I drank my chocolate; then I got into my chaise, after having laid injunctions upon my people to regard my secretary as my other self, and to follow his orders as if they were my own.

I arrived at Valencia in less than four hours; and going straight to the governor's stables, there alighted, left my equipage, and was conducted to the apartment of that nobleman, who was then with his father Don Cesar. I opened the door, and entering without ceremony, accosted him in these words: 'It does not become valets to send in their names to their masters: here is one of your old servants come to pay his respects.' So saying, I would have kneeled before them; but they hindered me from so doing, and embraced me, one after another, with all the expressions of genuine affection. 'Well, my dear Santillane,' said Don Alphonso; 'have you been at Lirias to take possession of your estate?'—'Yes, Signior,' replied I; 'and I hope you will give me leave to restore it.'—'For what reason?' said he: 'is there any thing disagreeable about it, that gives you disgust?'—'Not in itself,' I resumed; 'on the contrary, I am enchanted with it. All that displeases me in it, is, to see cooks of an archbishop, with three times more servants than I want; which only serve to put you to an expence equally useless and considerable.'

'If,' said Don Cesar, 'you had
S f 2 accepted

‘accepted the annuity of two thousand ducats which we offered at Madrid, we should have been contented with giving you the house furnished as it is; but you know you refused the pension; and we thought we could do no less than make you some other recompence.’—‘This is too much,’ I replied: ‘your generosity ought to have been confined to the present of the estate, which is enough to crown my wishes. But exclusive of your cost in maintaining so many people, at a great expence, I declare, that these people incommode and plague me: in a word, my lords, take back your estate, or allow me to enjoy it according to my own desire.’ I pronounced these last words with such a determined air, that the father and son, who did not at all intend to lay me under any constraint, promised, at length, that I should live as I pleased in my own house.

I thanked them for having granted me that liberty, without which I could not be happy; when Don Alphonso interrupted me, saying, ‘My dear Gil Blas, I will introduce you to a lady, who will be overjoyed to see you.’ With these words he took me by the hand, and led me into the apartment of Seraphina, who screamed with joy when she saw me. ‘Madam,’ said the governor, ‘I believe the arrival of our friend Santillane at Valencia is as agreeable to you as to me.’—‘That is what he ought to be convinced of,’ answered she: ‘time has not made me lose the remembrance of the service he did me; and to the gratitude I myself owe him, I add that which I ought to have on your account.’ I told the Lady Governess, that I was but too well requited for the danger I had shared with her deliverers, in exposing my life for her sake. After many mutual compliments, Don Alphonso brought me back from Seraphina’s apartment, and we rejoined Don Cæsar, whom we found in a hall with several persons of quality, who came there to dinner.

All these gentlemen saluted me with great politeness; and were the more civil to me, because Don Cæsar had told them, that I was once one of the Duke of Lerma’s principal secretaries. Perhaps, likewise, the greatest part of them knew, it was by my credit that

Don Alphonso had obtained the government of Valencia; for every thing is known. Be that as it will, when we were at table, the new cardinal was the whole subject of the discourse. Some gave, or affected to give him great commendations, while others seasoned their praise with some severe sneers.

From hence I concluded, that they wanted I should enlarge upon his eminence, and make them merry at his expence. I had some inclination to disclose my sentiments of him; but I restrained my tongue: and this silence made me pass, in the opinion of the company, for a man of great discretion.

After dinner, the guests retired to take their siestas at their own homes: Don Cæsar and his son, seized with the same desire, shut themselves up in their apartments; and I, impatient to see a city, the beauty of which I had heard so much extolled, went out of the governor’s palace with a design to stroll through the streets. At the gate, I met a man, who accosted me in these words: ‘Signior de Santillane, give me leave to salute you.’ When I asked who he was, ‘I am now,’ said he, ‘Don Cæsar’s valet de chambre; but was one of his lacquies while you was his steward: I made my court to you every morning, because you was very kind to me; and I informed you of every thing that happened in the house. Don’t you remember, that I one day gave you notice, that the surgeon of the village of Leyva was privately admitted into the chamber of Dame Lorença Sephora?’—‘I have not forgot it,’ I replied: ‘but, a-propos, what is become of that duenna?’—‘Alas!’ said he, ‘after your departure, the poor creature pined away, and died, more regretted by Seraphina than by Don Alphonso, who seemed very little afflicted at her death.’

Don Cæsar’s valet de chambre having thus informed me of Sephora’s melancholy end, made an apology for having stopped me; and I continued my walk, sighing at the remembrance of that unfortunate duenna, and lamenting her fate, which I imputed to myself; without considering that it was more owing to her own cancer than to my cruelty.

I observed with pleasure all that was worth

worth seeing in this city; the marble palace of the archbishop agreeably entertained my view, as well as the fine porticos of the exchange; but a large house which I discerned at a distance, and which I saw a great number of people enter, attracted my attention. I approached it, in order to know the reason of such a great concourse of men and women; and was soon satisfied, when I read these words, written in gold letters, on a stone of black marble placed over the gate, *La posada des los representes* * : and the players advertised in their bill, that they would that day, for the first time, act a new tragedy composed by Don Gabriel Triaquero.

CHAP. V.

GIL BLAS GOES TO THE PLAY, WHERE HE SEES A NEW TRAGEDY ACTED. THE SUCCESS OF THAT PERFORMANCE, WITH THE PUBLIC TASTE OF VALENCIA.

I Stopped some minutes at the door, to view the people who went in; and observed, that they consisted of all ranks. I saw cavaliers of a genteel mien, and richly dressed, and some figures as ordinary as the cloaths they wore. I perceived ladies of quality alight from their coaches, and go to the boxes, which they had ordered to be bespoke; and female adventurers go in with a view of alluring cullies. This concourse of all sorts of spectators made me desirous of encreasing the number. Just as I was going to take a ticket, the governor and his lady arriving, discerned me in the crowd; and ordering me to be called, carried me into their box, where I placed myself behind them, so as to be able to speak to both with ease. I found the house full of people from top to bottom, the pit very much thronged, and the stage loaded with knights of the three military orders. 'Here is,' said I to Don Alphonso, 'a very numerous assembly!'—'You must not be surprized at that,' answered he: 'the tragedy to be represented is the composition of Don Gabriel Triaquero, surnamed, the *modish poet*. As soon as

' the play-bills advertised a new thing written by that author, the whole city of Valencia was in a flutter: the men as well as the women talk of nothing but this piece; all the boxes are bespoke; and it being the first day of it's representation, people are squeezed to death, endeavouring to enter; although every place is double filled except the pit, which they dare not disoblige.'—'Such madness!' said I to the governor: 'that eager curiosity of the publick, that furious impatience to see every new production of Gabriel, gives me an high idea of the poet's genius.'

In this part of our conversation the actors appeared; and we left off speaking immediately, in order to listen with attention. The applauses began with the prologue; every verse was attended with a *brouhaha* †! and at the end of each act there was such a clapping of hands, that one would have thought the house was falling. After the performance they shewed me the author, who went from box to box, modestly presenting his head for the laurels with which the gentlemen and ladies prepared to crown him.

We returned to the governor's palace, where three or four knights arrived in a little time: thither also came two old authors, esteemed in their way, with a gentleman from Madrid of understanding and taste. As they had all been at the play, the whole conversation at supper turned upon the new piece. 'Gentlemen,' said a knight of St. Jago, 'what is your opinion of this tragedy? Is it not what you call a finished work? sublime thoughts, tender sentiments, manly versification, deficient in nothing! in a word, it is a poem adapted to people of taste!'—'I believe nobody can be of a contrary opinion,' said the knight of Alcantara; 'the piece is full of strokes that Apollo seems to have dictated, and of situations conceived with infinite art.—I appeal to this gentleman,' added he, addressing himself to the Castilian; 'he seems to be a connoisseur; and I'll wager he is of my sentiment.'—'Don't wager,' cavalier, answered the gentleman, with a sarcastick smile; 'we do not decide so hastily at Madrid: far from

* The Theatre.

† A note of applause.

' judging

judging a piece at it's first representation, we distrust it's beauties while they are in the mouths of the actors; and how well soever we may be affected to the author, suspend our judgment until we have read it; and truly it does not always give us the same pleasure upon paper that we received from it on the stage. We scrupulously examine a poem before we esteem it, without being dazzled by the author's reputation, how great soever it may be. When Lope de Vega himself, and Calderona*, produced new pieces, they found in their admirers severe judges, who would not raise them to the highest point of glory, until they judged them worthy of that elevation.

'Zooks!' cried the knight of St. Jago; 'we are not so fearful as you; we don't wait until a piece is printed, but in the first representation fix it's value: there is not even occasion for our listening to it with great attention; if we know it to be a production of Don Gabriel, that is enough to convince us that it is without blemish. The works of that poet ought to serve as an epocha for the birth of taste: your Lope's and Calderona's were but apprentices in comparison of this great master of the stage! The gentleman, who looked upon Lope and Calderona as the Spanish Sophocles and Euripides, was shocked at this rash assertion.

'Such dramatick sacrilege!' cried he, 'Since you oblige me, gentlemen, to judge, like you, from a first representation, I must tell you, that I am not at all satisfied with this new tragedy of your Don Gabriel: it is stuffed with strokes more shining than solid; three parts in four of the verse are bad, or mis-rhymed; the characters ill conceived, and ill supported; and the sentiments are often very obscure.'

The two authors who were at table, and who, through a reserve as commendable as rare, had said nothing, for fear of being suspected of jealousy, could not help applauding the gentleman's sentiments with their eyes; which made me guess, that their silence was not so much owing to the perfection of the work, as to other pruden-

tial reasons. As for the knights, they began again to praise Don Gabriel, whom they even placed among the gods. This extravagant apotheosis, and blind idolatry, made the Castilian lose all patience: he lifted up his hands to heaven, and all of a sudden exclaimed, in a fit of enthusiasm, 'O divine Lope de Vega! rare and sublime genius! who hast left an immense space between thee and all the Gabriels who attempt to reach thy excellence!—and you, energetic Calderona! whose elegant softness, purged of epick stiffness, is inimitable; do not fear that your altars will be demolished by this new pupil of the muses, who will be very lucky if posterity, which you will delight, as you delight the present age, shall hear his name mentioned.'

This pleasing apostrophe, which nobody expected, raised the laugh of the whole company, which got up from table, and parted. I was conducted, by Don Alphonso's order, into an apartment prepared for me: there I found a good bed, in which my worship went to sleep, deploring (like the Castilian gentleman) the injustice which ignorant people did to Lope and Calderona.

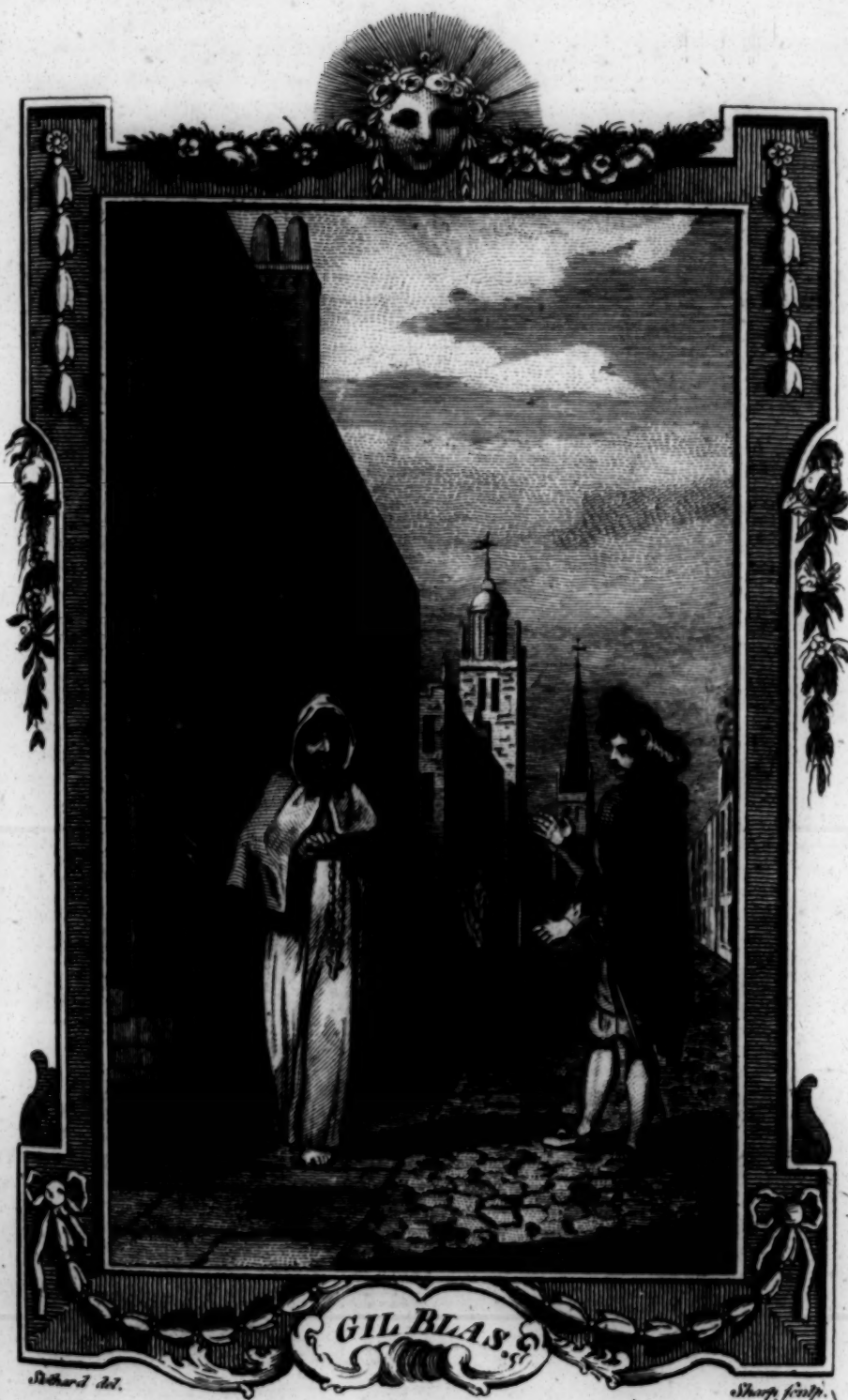
CHAP. VI.

GIL BLAS, WALKING THROUGH THE STREETS OF VALENCIA, MEETS A FRIAR WHOM HE THINKS HE KNOWS. AN ACCOUNT OF THAT FRIAR.

AS I had not seen the whole city in my first excursion, I went out next day, with an intention to take another walk; and perceived in the street a Carthusian friar, who, doubtless, was going to transact the affairs of his community. He walked with downcast eyes, and so devout an air, that he attracted the notice of every body. As he passed close by me, I looked at him with attention, and thought I saw in him the very person of Don Raphael, that adventurer who maintains such an honourable place in the two first volumes of my Memoirs.

I was so much astonished, so struck

* Don Pedro Calderona de la Barea, famous for the excellent comedies he has written.



Richard del.

Sharp sculp.

Plate VII.

Published as the Act directs by Harrison & Co. Feb. 9. 1781.

yon



with this meeting, that, instead of accosting the monk, I stood immovable some minutes; during which he was gone a good way from me. 'Just Heaven!' said I; 'were ever two faces more alike! What must I think of this affair? Can it be Raphael indeed? or can I doubt that it is he?' I was too curious to know the truth, to remain long where I was. I asked the way to the monastery of the Carthusians, whither I instantly repaired, in hopes of seeing my man again when he should return, and firmly resolved to stop and speak with him. I had no occasion to wait for this: when I came to the gate of the convent, another face of my acquaintance turned my doubts into certainty; I recollected in the porter my old valet Ambrose de Lamela.

We were equally surprized to find one another in that place. 'Don't I dream!' said I, saluting him; 'is it actually one of my friends whom I behold!' He could not recal me at first, or feigned himself ignorant of my features; but, considering that this feint was useless, he affected the air of a person who remembers a thing all of a sudden: 'Ah, Signior Gil Blas!' cried he; 'forgive my want of memory. Since I have lived in this holy place, and applied myself to fulfil the duties prescribed by our rules, I lose insensibly the remembrance of what I have seen in the world.'

'I am sincerely rejoiced,' said I, 'to see you, after an absence of ten years, in such a reverend dress.—' And I, he replied, 'am ashamed to appear in it before a person who has been witness of the wicked life I led. This dress incessantly upbraids me. Alas!' added he, sighing profound, 'to be worthy of wearing it, I ought to have lived always in innocence.—' By this discourse, with which I am charmed, I resumed, my dear brother, one may see that you have been touched by the finger of the Lord. I repeat the assurance of my joy at the occasion; and long earnestly to hear in what miraculous manner you and Don Raphael have entered into the right way; for I am persuaded that it was he whom I just now met in the Carthusian habit. I am sorry that I did not stop him in the street, and speak to him;

and I wait here for his return, in order to repair my neglect.'

'You are not mistaken,' said Lamela to me; 'it was Don Raphael himself whom you saw; and as to the detail you desire, here it is. After we parted from you, near Segorba, the son of Lucinda and I took the road to Valencia, with a design of playing some new trick of our profession in that city. One day, by accident, we went into the church of the Carthusians, while the monks were singing psalms in the choir. We considered them attentively, and experienced that even the wicked cannot help honouring virtue. We admired the fervour with which they prayed to God, their mortified air, their minds detached from the pleasures of the age, as well as the serenity that reigned in their countenances, and so well expressed the repose of their consciences.'

'While we made these observations, we fell into a reverie that became very salutary unto us. We compared our morals with those of the good monks, and the difference which we found, filled us with sorrow and disquiet. "Lamela," said Don Raphael to me, when we came out of the church, "how art thou affected with what we have seen? For my part, I cannot conceal from thee the anxiety of my mind. I am agitated by emotions hitherto unknown to me; and, for the first time of my life, my conscience upbraids me with my iniquity."—"I am in the self-same disposition," answered I; "the evil actions which I have committed, at this instant rise up against me; and my heart, which was before hardened against repentance, is now torn with remorse."—"Ah, dear Ambrose!" resumed my comrade, "we are two strayed sheep, whom the Heavenly Father, through pity, intends to bring back into the fold. It is he, my child! it is he who calls us! Let us not be deaf to his voice; let us renounce cheating, quit the libertinism in which we live; and begin from this very day to labour seriously in the great work of our salvation. We must spend the rest of our days in this convent, and consecrate them to piety and penitence."

'I ap-

‘ I applauded Raphael’s sentiment,’ continued Brother Ambrose; ‘ and we formed the generous resolution of becoming Carthusians. To put this in execution, we addressed ourselves to the father prior, who no sooner understood our design, than, in order to prove our vocation, he accommodated us with cells, and we were treated like monks during a whole year. We followed the rules with such exactness and constancy, that we were received among the novices. We were so well satisfied with our situation, and so full of ardour, that we courageously underwent the toils of the noviciate; we then professed; after which, Don Raphaël appearing endued with a genius for business, was chosen assistant to an old father who was at that time solicitor. The son of Lucinda would have rather spent his whole time in prayer, but he was obliged to sacrifice his inclination to the good of the convent. He acquired such a perfect knowledge of the interests of the house, that he was deemed capable of filling the place of the old solicitor, who died three years after. Don Raphaël actually exercises that employment at present, and acquits himself in it to the great satisfaction of all our fathers, who praise his conduct very much in the administration of our temporalities. What is very surprising is, that, in spite of the care of collecting our revenues, with which he is invested, he seems engrossed by eternity alone; and when his business leaves him a moment to himself, he employs it in the most profound meditation. In a word, he is one of the holiest monks in our monastery.’

In this place I interrupted Lamela with a transport of joy, that I expressed at the sight of Raphael, who arrived. ‘ There,’ cried I, ‘ there is the holy solicitor for whom I waited so impatiently!’ At the same time I ran up, and embraced him. He received my salutation with a good grace; and, without discovering the least surprise at meeting, said to me with a voice full of sweetness, ‘ God be praised, Signior de Santillane! God be praised for the pleasure I have in seeing you!’— ‘ Truly,’ I replied, ‘ my dear Ra-

phael, I share as much as possible in your happiness. Brother Ambrose has recounted to me the history of your conversion, and I was charmed with the narration. What advantage have you both, my friends, in being able to flatter yourselves, that you are of the small number of the elect, who will one day enjoy eternal felicity!’

‘ Two wretches, such as we are,’ resumed the son of Lucinda, with an air of great humility, ‘ ought not to conceive such hopes; but the repentance of sinners makes them find favour with the Father of Mercy. And you, Signior Gil Blas,’ added he, ‘ don’t you also think of deserving pardon for the crimes you have committed? What business brings you to Valencia? Don’t you unhappily fill some dangerous employment in this place?’— ‘ No, thank God!’ I replied; ‘ since I quitted the court, I have led the life of an honest man. Sometimes, at an estate I have some leagues from hence, I enjoy the pleasures of the country; and sometimes I come to make merry with the Governor of Valencia, who is my friend; and one who you both know perfectly well.’

Then I recounted the history of Don Alphonso de Leyva, to which they listened with attention; and when I told them that I had carried from that nobleman to Samuel Simon the three thousand ducats which we had stole from him, Lamela interrupted me, and addressing himself to Raphael, ‘ Father Hilary,’ said he, ‘ at that rate, the merchant has no cause to complain of a robbery, for which he has received restitution with usury; and we ought to have quiet consciences on that article.’— ‘ Really,’ said the solicitor, ‘ Brother Ambrose and I, before we entered this convent, sent privately fifteen hundred ducats to Samuel Simon by a worthy clergyman, who took the trouble of going to Xelva, in order to make that restitution: so much the worse for Samuel, if he was capable of touching that sum, after having been reimbursed of the whole by Signior de Santillane.’— ‘ But,’ said I to them, ‘ are you sure that your fifteen hundred ducats were faithfully remitted

‘to him?’—‘Questionless,’ cried Don Raphael; ‘I will answer for the clergyman’s integrity, as much as for my own.’—‘And I will join in the security,’ said Lamela; ‘he is a holy priest, used to these sorts of commissions, and has had, for things deposited in his hands, two or three law-suits, which he gained with costs.’

Our conversation lasted some time longer; then we parted, they exhorting me to have always the fear of the Lord before my eyes; and I recommending myself to their devout prayers. Going straight to Don Alphonso, ‘You can’t guess,’ said I to him, ‘with whom I have had a long conversation! I have just parted with two venerable Carthusians of your acquaintance, one called Father Hilary, and the other Brother Ambrose.’—‘You are mistaken,’ answered Don Alphonso; ‘I know not one Carthusian.’—‘Pardon me,’ I replied; ‘you saw at Xelva Brother Ambrose commissary, and Father Hilary secretary to the Inquisition.’—‘Good Heaven!’ cried the governor with surprize; ‘is it possible that Raphael and Lamela are become Carthusians?’—‘Yes, indeed,’ said I; ‘they have been professed monks some years. The first is solicitor, and the other porter of the convent.’

Don Cæsar’s son mused some minutes, then shaking his head, ‘Mr. Commissary of the Inquisition and his secretary,’ said he, ‘are, in my opinion, bent upon playing some new farce here.’—‘You are prejudiced against them,’ answered I. ‘For my own part, having conversed with them, I judge more favourably of their intentions. It is true, we cannot dive into the heart; but, in all appearance, they are two converted sinners.’—‘That may be,’ resumed Don Alphonso; ‘there have been many libertines, who, after having scandalized the world by their irregularities, shut themselves up in cloysters, to perform a rigorous penance, and I wish our two monks may be of that sort.’—‘Why should they not?’ said I: ‘they have voluntarily embraced a monastick life, and have already lived a long time like good friars.’—‘You may say

‘what you please,’ replied the governor; ‘I don’t like that the convent’s cash should be in the hands of that same Father Hilary, whose integrity I cannot help distrusting. When I remember that fine detail he gave us of his adventures, I tremble for the Carthusians. I would willingly believe with you, that he has taken the habit from a very pious motive, but the sight of the cash may awaken his cupidity. A reformed drunkard should never be left in a cellar.’

The suspicion of Don Alphonso was fully justified in a few days. Father Solicitor and Brother Porter disappeared with the cash. This piece of news, which was immediately spread all over the city, afforded great mirth to the wits, who always rejoice at the misfortunes which happen to endowed monks. As for the governor and me, we pitied the Carthusians, without boasting of our acquaintance with the two apostles.

C H A P. VII.

GIL BLAS RETURNS TO HIS CASTLE OF LIRIAS; HEARS AN AGREEABLE PIECE OF NEWS FROM SCIPIO; AND MAKES A REFORM IN HIS HOUSEKEEPING.

I Spent eight days at Valencia in high taste, living among counts and marquisses. Shews, balls, concerts, entertainments, conversations with the ladies, and other amusements, I enjoyed by the favour of the governor and his lady, to whom I paid my court so successfully, that, when I set out for Liria, they were sorry to part with me. They even obliged me to promise, that I would divide my time between them and my solitude; and it was agreed, that I should live at Valencia in the winter, and spend the summer at my own house. This convention being made, my benefactors gave me liberty to go and enjoy their favours.

Scipio, who impatiently expected my return, was overjoyed at seeing me; and I redoubled his pleasure by a faithful report of my journey. ‘Well,’ my friend, said I to him afterwards, ‘how didst thou spend the day in my absence? didst thou divert thyself

T t agree-

‘agreeably?’ — ‘As well,’ answered he, ‘as a servant could, to whom nothing is so dear as the presence of his master. I have walked all over our small territories. Sometimes seated on the brink of that fountain which is in our wood, I took pleasure in contemplating the beauty of its waters, which are as pure as those of the sacred fountain, that makes the vast forest of Albuna echo with its noise; and sometimes, stretched at the root of a tree, heard the linnets sing, and the nightingales tune their song. In short, I have hunted, I have fished; and what gave me more satisfaction than all other amusements, I have read several books as useful as entertaining.’

I interrupted my secretary with precipitation, to ask where he found these books. ‘I found them,’ said he, ‘in a handsome library, which Master Joachim shewed me in this castle.’ — ‘Hal in what part,’ said I, ‘can this pretended library be? Did we not visit the whole house on the first day of our arrival?’ — ‘So you imagined,’ answered he; ‘but you must know we surveyed three pavilions only, and forgot the fourth, where Don Cæsar, when he came to Lirias, usually employed a part of his time in reading. There are in this library exceeding good books left for you, as an assured entertainment, when our gardens, stripped of their flowers, and our woods of their leaves, shall have nothing left to amuse us. The noblemen of Leyva have not done things by halves, but provided food for the mind, as well as for the body.’

Truly rejoiced at this piece of news, I followed him into the fourth pavilion, which presented a very agreeable scene to my view. I beheld a chamber, which from that hour I destined to be my apartment, as it had been Don Cæsar’s. The bed of that nobleman was still there, together with all the rest of the furniture; that is, a tapestry with figures representing the rape of the Sabine women. From this room I went into a closet, surrounded with low presses filled with books, over which appeared the portraits of all our kings. There was also hard by a window, from whence we had a view of a most delightful country, and an

ebony bureau standing before a large sofa, covered with black moroquin. But I bestowed my chief attention upon the library, which was composed of philosophy, poetry, history, and a great number of romances on the subject of knight-errantry. I concluded that Don Cæsar loved this last kind of writing, since he had made such plentiful provision of it. I must confess, to my shame, that I was no less pleased with these productions, notwithstanding all the extravagancies with which they are interwoven; whether it was owing to my being at that time no very considerate reader, or that Spaniards in general are too much captivated by the marvellous. I will say, nevertheless, that I took more pleasure in sprightly books of morality; and that Lucian, Horace, and Erasmus, became my favourite authors.

‘Friend,’ said I to Scipio, when I had surveyed my library, ‘here is amusement indeed; but our present business is to retrench our house-keeping.’ — ‘I will spare you that task,’ answered he. ‘During your absence, I have studied your people, and now may boast of knowing them perfectly well. Let us begin with Master Joachim, who, I believe, is a compleat rogue, and I don’t doubt that he was turned out of the archbishop’s service for having committed arithmetical blunders in his accounts. Nevertheless, we must keep him for two reasons; the first is, because he is a good cook; and the second, because I shall always have an eye over him: I will be a spy upon his actions; and he must be as cunning as the devil if he be able to deceive me. I have already told him, that you intend to dismiss three-fourths of your servants; a piece of news that gave him some pain; and he assured me, that, feeling an inclination to serve you, he would, rather than leave the house, be contented with the half of his present wages; a circumstance which makes me suspect that there is some girl in the village from whom he would not willingly remove. As for the cook’s assistant,’ added he, ‘he is a drunkard; and the porter an insolent fellow, for whom we have not the least occasion, any more than for the fowler; I can easily fill up the place of this

‘ this last, as I will shew you to-morrow, since we have plenty of fusils, powder, and shot. With regard to the lacquies, there is one of them from Arragon, seemingly a good lad, him we will keep; the rest are such rogues, that I would not advise you to retain them, even if you wanted an hundred valets.’

Having maturely deliberated on this affair, we resolved to keep the cook, scullion, Arragonian footman, and rid ourselves honourably of the rest. This was executed that very day, by means of some pistoles, which Scipio took from the strong-box, and divided among them by my order. When he had made this reformation, we established a certain order in the house, regulated the office of each domestick, and began to live at our own expence. I would have been contented with a frugal ordinary; but my secretary, who loved ragouts and dainties, was not the man to leave Master Joachim’s skill unemployed. He kept him so well at work, that our dinners and suppers might have served a company of Bernardine monks.

CHAP. VIII.

THE AMOURS OF GIL BLAS AND THE FAIR ANTONIA.

TWO days after my return from Valencia to Lirias, Basil the labourer, my farmer, came in the morning to ask leave to present Antonia his daughter, who, he said, wanted to have the honour of saluting her new master. I told him, that it would give me great pleasure; upon which he went out, and returned soon after with the fair Antonia: I think I may give that epithet to a maid of sixteen or eighteen years, who, with the most regular features, possessed the fairest complexion and finest eyes in the world. Though she was clad in a stuff gown, her rich air, majestick port and graces, that do not always accompany youth, dignified the simplicity of her dress. She wore no cap on her head, her hair being tied up behind with a knot of flowers, in the manner of the Lacedæmonian women. When she entered my chamber, I was as much struck with her beauty as the knights of Charle-

maign’s court with the charms of Angelica. Instead of receiving Antonia with ease, and saying kind things to her; instead of congratulating the father on his happiness in having such a charming daughter, I stood confounded, astonished, and mute. Scipio, who perceived my disorder, spoke in my room, and was at the expence of those praises which I owed to that lovely creature. As for her part, not at all dazzled by my figure, in my morning gown and cap, she saluted me without any concern, and made me a compliment, which, though uncommon, enchanted my affection. In the meantime, while my secretary, Basil and his daughter, were employed in mutual civilities, I recollected myself; and, to make amends for the stupid silence I had hitherto kept, passed from one extremity to another, launched out into gallant discourse, and spoke with so much vivacity, that I alarmed Basil, who, looking upon me already as a man who would put every thing in practice to seduce Antonia, went out of my apartment with her in a hurry, resolved, perhaps, to withdraw her from my eyes for ever.

Scipio, seeing himself alone with me, said, with a smile, ‘ Here is another resource against the tedious hours. I did not know that your farmer had such a handsome daughter, having never before seen her, though I have been twice at her father’s house: he must be at great pains to conceal her; and I commend his care. Egad, she’s a delicate morsel! But,’ added he, ‘ I believe I need not say so to you, who were dazzled by her at first sight.’—‘ I don’t deny it,’ answered I. ‘ Ah! my child, I thought I saw a celestial substance. She inflamed me all of a sudden, and pierced my heart with an arrow swift as lightning.’

‘ I am ravished,’ replied my secretary, ‘ to learn, that you are at last in love. You wanted a mistress to make you enjoy perfect happiness in your solitude. Thank Heaven! you have now all sorts of conveniences! I know,’ continued he, ‘ that we shall have some difficulty in deceiving the vigilance of Basil; but leave that to me: I undertake, in three days, to procure for you a private interview with Antonia.’—‘ Mr. Scipio,’ said

I, 'perhaps you might not be able to keep your promise; but that is not what I am curious to try. I have no intention to tempt the virtue of that girl, who seems to deserve that I should entertain other sentiments of her. Wherefore, far from exacting of your zeal that you should assist me in dishonouring her, I am resolved, by your mediation, to espouse her, provided her heart is not engaged to another.'—'I did not expect,' said he, 'to see you take such a sudden resolution to marry. Many country gentlemen in your place would not deal so honourably; they would never entertain legitimate views with regard to Antonia, until they had tried others to no purpose. But, however,' added he, 'don't imagine that I condemn your love, and seek to dissuade you from your design. Your farmer's daughter deserves the honour you intend for her, if she can bestow upon you a heart unengaged, and sensible of your generosity. This I must inform myself of to-day, in a conversation with the father, and perhaps with herself.'

My confidant, who was a punctual man in performing his promises, went privately to visit Basil; and in the evening came to me in my closet, where I waited with impatience mingled with fear. Drawing a good omen from his cheerful look, 'If I may believe,' said I, 'that smile on thy face, thou comest to signify, that I shall soon enjoy my wish.'—'Yes, my dear master,' he replied; 'every thing is propitious to you. I have had a conversation with Basil and his daughter, to whom I declared your intention. The father is overjoyed to hear your design to be his son-in-law; and I can assure you, that you are very much to Antonia's taste.'—'O Heaven!' cried I, in a transport of joy; 'what! am I so happy as to be agreeable to that lovely creature!'—'Doubtless,' he resumed, 'She already loves you. I have not, indeed, drawn that confession from her mouth; but I am convinced of her passion, by the gaiety she discovered when she understood your design. Nevertheless,' added he, 'you have a rival.'—'A rival!' cried I, changing colour. 'You need not be much alarmed,' said he; 'that rival will not rob you of the

heart of your mistress; he is no other than Master Joachim your cook.'—'Ah! the hang-dog!' said I, bursting into a fit of laughter; 'this was his reason for shewing such reluctance to quit my service.'—'The very same,' answered Scipio. 'He some days ago demanded Antonia in marriage, and met with a polite refusal.'—'With deference to thy better advice,' I resumed, 'methinks it will be proper to rid ourselves of the rogue, before he can get notice that I intend to marry Basil's daughter; a cook, thou knowest, is a dangerous rival.'—'You are in the right,' replied my confidant: 'we must clear the house of him. I will give him his leave to-morrow morning before he begins to work, and then you shall have nothing to fear either from his sauciness or his love. I am sorry, however, to lose such an excellent cook; but I sacrifice my palate to your safety.'—'Thou needest not regret him so much,' said I; 'the loss is not irreparable: I will send to Valencia for a cook as good as he.' And indeed I wrote immediately to Don Alphonso, that I had occasion for a cook; and the very next day he sent one who consoled Scipio at once.

Although the zealous secretary had told me, that he perceived Antonia was pleased in her heart with the conquest which she had made of her master, I durst not depend upon his report, being apprehensive that he might have been deceived by false appearances. To be more sure of the matter, I resolved to speak in person to the fair Antonia; and, repairing to Basil's house, confirmed what my ambassador had told him. That honest peasant, a man of frankness and simplicity, having heard my design, assured me, that he would bestow his daughter upon me with the utmost satisfaction: 'But,' added he, 'don't think that it is on account of your being lord of the manor. Were you still no more than the steward of Don Cæsar and Don Alphonso, I would prefer you to all the other suitors who present themselves. I have always had a regard for you; and what gives me the most concern is, that Antonia cannot bring you a large fortune.'—'I ask nothing with her,' said I; 'her person is all the wealth

‘wealth to which I aspire.’—‘Your most humble servant!’ cried he; ‘that is not my intention: I am not such a beggar, as to marry my daughter in that manner. Basíl de Buenotrigó is in a condition, thank God, to give her a dowry; and, for every dinner you bestow upon her, she shall afford a supper to you. In a word, the rent of your estate, which is but five hundred ducats, shall amount to a thousand by virtue of this marriage.’

‘You shall do in that as you please, my dear Basíl,’ I replied; ‘we shall have no disputes about interest: and now that we are agreed, the sole business is to obtain the consent of your daughter.’—‘You have mine,’ said he; ‘and that is enough.’—‘Not altogether,’ answered I; ‘if yours is necessary, her’s is so too.’—‘Her’s depends upon me,’ said he: ‘I would fain see her refuse!’—‘Antonia,’ I resumed, ‘submissive to paternal authority, is ready, without doubt, to obey you implicitly; but I don’t know if she can do it upon this occasion without reluctance; and if she can’t, I should never be consoled for having made her unhappy; in short, it is not enough for me to obtain her hand of you, unless her heart goes to the bargain.’—‘By'r lady!’ said Basíl; ‘I don’t understand all this philosophy: speak yourself to Antonia, and you shall see, if I am not mistaken, that she desires no better than to be your wife.’ So saying, he called his daughter, and left me alone with her for a minute or two.

That I might enjoy the precious opportunity, I came to the point at once. ‘Fair Antonia,’ said I, ‘determine my fate. Although I have your father’s consent, don’t think that I intend to avail myself of it, in doing violence to your inclination. Charming as it is, I renounce the possession of you, if you say that I must owe it to your obedience only.’—‘That is what I will not say,’ answered she: ‘your addresses are too agreeable to give me pain; and, instead of murmuring, I approve of my father’s choice. I don’t know,’ continued she, ‘whether I do well or ill in talking thus: but if you was disagreeable to me, I should be frank

enough to own it; why then may I not say the contrary with the same freedom?’

At these words, which I could not hear without being charmed, I knelt before Antonia; and, in the excess of my joy, seizing one of her fair hands, kissed it with the utmost tenderness and passion. ‘My dear Antonia,’ said I, ‘I am enchanted with your frankness: continue the same unconstrained behaviour; and, as you speak to your husband, disclose your whole soul to his view. May I then flatter myself, that you will be pleased to see your fortune joined to mine?’ Basíl coming in at that instant, hindered me from proceeding. Impatient to know his daughter’s answer, and ready to grumble had she shewn the least aversion for me, ‘Well,’ said he, ‘are you satisfied with Antonia?’—‘I am so well satisfied with her,’ answered I, ‘that I will, this very moment, go and make preparations for my marriage.’ So saying, I took my leave of the father and daughter, to go and consult with my secretary on that subject.

CHAP. IX.

THE MANNER IN WHICH THE NUP-
TIALS OF GIL BLAS AND THE
FAIR ANTONIA WERE CELE-
BRATED; AND THE REJOICINGS
WITH WHICH THEY WERE AT-
TENDED.

ALTHOUGH I was under no necessity of obtaining the permission of the noblemen of Leyva, Scipio and I concluded, that we could not, in honour, omit imparting to them my design of marrying Basíl’s daughter, and of asking their consent, out of good manners.

I set out immediately for Valencia, where they were as much surprized to see me as to hear the cause of my journey. Don Cæsar and his son having seen Antonia more than once, congratulated me on my choice. Don Cæsar, especially, complimented me upon it with such vivacity, that if I had not believed him to be a man quite weaned from certain amusements, I should have suspected that he had gone sometimes to Lirias to see his farmer’s daughter, rather

rather than to visit his own house. Seraphina, after having assured me that she would always bear a large part in what should concern me, said she had heard a very good character of Antonia: 'But,' added she with a satirical look, as if she reproached me for the indifference with which I repaid Sephora's passion, 'if I had not heard her beauty extolled, I should depend upon your taste, the delicacy of which I know.'

Don Cæsar and his son not only approved of my marriage, but declared that they would defray the whole expence of it. 'Go back to Lirias,' said they, 'and make yourself easy, until you hear from us. Make no preparation for your nuptials, but leave that to our care.' In compliance with their desire, I returned to my house, and making Basil and his daughter acquainted with the intention of our patrons, we waited their orders as patiently as we could. During eight days, however, we received none: but, to make amends, on the ninth, a coach and four arrived full of mantua-makers, and rich stuffs for the bride's cloaths, and escorted by several men in livery mounted on mules. One of them brought a letter for me, from Don Alphonso, importing, that he would be at Lirias next day, with his father and spouse, and that the ceremony of my marriage should be celebrated on the day following by the Grand Vicar of Valencia. Accordingly Don Cæsar, his son, and Seraphina, did not fail to come with that clergyman, all four together, in a coach and six, preceded by another drawn by four, in which were Seraphina's women, attended by the governor's guards.

My lady governess was scarce arrived, when she expressed the utmost impatience to see Antonia, who on her part, no sooner understood that Seraphina was alighted, than she ran to salute her, and kissed her hand with such a good grace, that all the company admired her politeness. 'Well, Madam,' said Don Cæsar to his daughter-in-law, 'what do you think of Antonia? Could Santillane have made a better choice?'—'No, indeed,' replied Seraphina; 'they are worthy of each other; and I don't doubt that their union will be perfectly happy.' In

short, every one praised the bride; and if she was much applauded in her country garb, every body was charmed with her when she appeared in a richer dress. Her air was so noble, and her deportment so easy, that one would have thought she had never wore any other.

The moment being arrived in which propitious Hymen was to join my fate to her's, Don Alphonso taking me by the hand, led me to the altar, while Seraphina did the same honour to the bride. In this order we repaired to the village-chapel, where the vicar attended to marry us; and that ceremony was performed amidst the acclamations of the inhabitants of Lirias, and all the rich farmers in the neighbourhood, whom Basil had invited to Antonia's wedding, with their daughters, dressed in ribbands and flowers, holding tabors in their hands. We then returned to my house; where, by the care of Scipio, who was contriver of the feast, we found three tables covered, one for the noblemen, another for their attendants, and the third, which was the largest, for the rest of the guests. Antonia sat at the first, by desire of the lady governess; I did the honours of the second; and Basil took care of the third. As for Scipio, he did not sit, but went from one table to another, employing himself in serving and satisfying every individual.

As the entertainment was prepared by the governor's cooks, it could not fail of being compleat in all it's parts. The good wines, of which Master Joachim had made ample provision, were drank with profusion; the guests began to wax warm, and mirth and jollity reigned, when we were, all of a sudden, interrupted by an incident that alarmed me. My secretary being in the hall, where I sat at table with the principal officers of Don Alphonso, and Seraphina's women, fell down upon the floor, without sense or motion. I ran to his assistance, and while I was busied in bringing him to himself again, one of the women fainted away. All the company concluded, that there must be some mystery in this double swooning, as it actually concealed one, which, in a little time, was explained; for soon after Scipio recovered his spirits, and said softly to me, 'Why should the happiest of your days be the

the most disagreeable of mine! It is impossible for one to shun his destiny,' added he; 'I have found my wife in the person of one of Seraphina's maids.'

'What do I hear!' cried I; 'that is not possible! what, art thou the husband of the lady who was taken ill at the same time with thee?'—

—'Yes, Sir,' he replied, 'I am her husband; and Fortune, I swear, could not play me a more villainous trick than that of bringing her to my view.'—'I don't know, my friend,' said I, 'what reason thou hast to complain of thy wife; but, whatever cause she may have given thee, pray constrain thyself; if thou lovest me, do not disturb this entertainment by shewing thy resentment.'—'You shall be satisfied with my behaviour,' replied Scipio, 'and see whether or not I can dissemble.'

So saying, he went up to his wife, who, by the assistance of her companions, was also recovered, and embracing her with the appearance of as much passion as if he had been ravished to see her again; 'Ah, my dear Beatrice!' said he, 'Heaven unites us again, after ten years of separation: O happy moment for me!'—'I don't know,' answered his wife, 'whether or not you feel any joy in meeting me here; but this I am certain of, I gave you no just cause to leave me. What! you found me one night with Signior Don Fernando de Leyva, who was in love with my mistress Julia, and whose passion I assisted; and you took it in your head, that I listened to him, at the expence of your and my honour; thereupon jealousy turned your brain, you quitted Toledo, and fled from me as from a monster, without deigning to come to an explanation! Which of us two, if you please, has the most reason to complain?'—'You, to be sure,' replied Scipio. 'Yes, doubtless,' said she. 'Don Fernando, soon after your departure from Toledo, married Julia, with whom I stayed as long as she lived; and since we are robbed of her, by an untimely death, I have been in the service of my lady her sister, who, as well as her women, can answer for the purity of my morals.'

My secretary, at this discourse, the falsity of which he could not prove,

behaved as became him. 'Once more,' said he to his wife, 'I own my fault, and ask pardon before this honourable assembly.' Then I, interceding for him, begged that Beatrice would forget what was past; assuring her, that, for the future, her husband's sole study should be to give her satisfaction. She yielded to my entreaty, and the whole company applauded their re-union; for the better celebration of which they were made to sit by one another, their health was toasted, every body complimented them, and the feast seemed to have been made rather on account of their reconciliation than of my nuptials.

The third table was the first forsaken. The young peasants got up to dance with the country maids; who, by the noise of their tabors, soon brought the company from the other rooms, and inspired them with the desire of following their example. Every body was now in motion; the governor's officers began to dance with the attendants of my lady governess; the noblemen themselves mingled in the diversion. Don Alphonso danced a saraband with Seraphina. Don Caesar performed with Antonia, who came afterwards and took me out, acquitting herself very well, considering that she had only received a few lessons in the house of a relation, who was the wife of a citizen of Albarazin. As for me, who had learned in the house of the Marchioness of Chaves, the assembly looked upon me as a great dancer. With regard to Beatrice and Scipio, they preferred a private conversation to dancing, and gave each other an account of what had happened to them since their parting; but they were interrupted by Seraphina, who, being informed of their meeting, sent for them to express her joy at their reconciliation. 'My children,' said she, 'on this day of rejoicing, it is an addition to my satisfaction, to see you restored to each other. Friend Scipio, I give you back your spouse, and protest to you, that her conduct has always been irreproachable: you may live here happily together; and you, Beatrice, attach yourself to Antonia, and be as much devoted to her, as your husband is to Signior de Santillane.' Scipio, after this, could not help looking upon his wife

as another Penelope, and promised to treat her with all imaginable affection.

The young peasants and their partners having danced all day, retired to their houses; but the festival was continued at the castle, where a magnificent supper was prepared; and when it was time to go to rest, the grand vicar blessed the nuptial bed: Seraphina undressed the bride, and the noblemen of Leyva did me the same honour. What was merry enough, the officers of Don Alphonso, and the ladies of the governess, took in their heads to perform the same ceremony to Beatrice and Scipio; who, to make the scene more comical, very gravely allowed themselves to be stripped and put to bed.

CHAP. X.

WHAT FOLLOWED THE MARRIAGE OF GIL BLAS AND THE FAIR ANTONIA. THE BEGINNING OF SCIPIO'S HISTORY.

ON the very next day after my marriage, the lords of Leyva returned to Valencia, after having given me a thousand new marks of friendship; so that my secretary and I remained in the house, with our wives and servants only.

The care which both of us took to please the ladies was not ineffectual: in a little time, I inspired my wife with as much love for me as I had for her; and Scipio made his spouse forget the sorrows which he had made her suffer. Beatrice, who had a pliant obliging temper, easily insinuated herself into the favour, and gained the confidence of her mistress. In short, we agreed, all four, to admiration, and began to enjoy a situation worthy of envy. All our days glided away in the most agreeable amusements. Antonia was naturally grave, but Beatrice and I were very gay; and had we been otherwise, Scipio's presence was enough to keep off melancholy. He was an incomparable fellow for society, one of those comical creatures whose appearance alone can make a company merry.

One day, that we took a whim after dinner to go and take a siesta in the most agreeable place of the wood, my secretary was in such good-humour, that he banished all desire of sleeping by his merry discourse. 'Hold thy tongue, friend,' said I; 'or if thou art resolved to keep us from taking our nap, entertain us with some story worthy our attention.'

'With all my heart, Sir,' answered he; 'shall I recount the history of King Pelagius*?'—'I would rather hear thy own,' I replied; 'but that is a pleasure thou hast not thought proper to give me, since we lived together, nor ever will, I suppose.'—'And what is the reason?' said he. 'If I have not recounted my own history, it was because you never expressed the least desire to hear it: it is not, therefore, my fault that you are ignorant of my adventures; and if you are in the least curious to know them, I am ready to satisfy your curiosity.' Antonia, Beatrice, and I, took him at his word, and disposed ourselves in order to hear his narration, which could not miss of having a good effect, either in diverting, or lulling us asleep.

'Had it depended upon me,' said Scipio, 'I should have been the son of some grandee, or knight of Alcantara at least; but as one does not chuse his own father, you must know that mine was an honest soldier of the Holy Brotherhood, Torribio Scipio by name. While he was travelling to and fro on the highway, where his profession obliged him almost always to be, he met by accident one day, between Cuenca and Toledo, a young gypsy whom he thought very handsome. She was alone on foot, and carried her whole fortune in a kind of knapsack on her back. "Which way do you go, my dear?" said he to her, softening his voice, which was naturally rough. "Signior Cavalier," answered she, "I am going to Toledo, where I hope to gain an honest livelihood, in some shape or other."—"That is a laudable intention," he

* Pelagius reigned in the eighth century, and was some time in subjection to the Saracens; but putting himself at the head of the Christians, and being declared king, took arms against the Infidels, whom he vanquished, and laid the foundation of the kingdom of Leon, in which he reigned twenty years.

resumed, "and I don't doubt that you have more strings than one to your bow."—"Yes, thank God," said she; "I have more talents than one; I can compose pomatums and essences for the ladies; I tell fortunes; turn the sieve to find things that are lost; and shew all that people want to see in a glass or mirror."

Torribio, concluding that such a girl would be a very advantageous match for him, who could scarce live by his employment, though he was very dexterous at it, offered to marry her: she accepted the proposal, and they repaired with all diligence to Toledo, where they were wedded; and you see in me the worthy fruit of these noble nuptials. They settled in the suburbs, where my mother began to sell pomatums and essences; but that trade not answering, she became fortune-teller. It was then that she saw the crowns and pistoles shower upon her! a thousand dupes of both sexes soon raised the reputation of Coscolina, which was the gipsy's name. Somebody came every day, to beg she would employ her ministry for him: sometimes a needy nephew, who wanted to know when his uncle, whose sole heir he was, would set out for the other world; and sometimes a girl, wishing to know if a certain cavalier, to whom she had granted the favour on promise of marriage, would keep his word.

Please to observe, that my mother's predictions were always favourable to those who solicited them: if they proved true, good and well; but when they came back to reproach her, because the contrary of what she had prophesied came to pass, she answered coldly, that they must attribute it to the demon; who, notwithstanding the force of the conjurations that she employed to make him reveal what would happen, was sometimes so malicious as to deceive her.

When my mother, for the honour of her profession, thought she must make the devil appear in her operations, Torribio Scipio always acted that part, which he performed per-

fectly well; the roughness of his voice, and ugliness of his face, giving him an appearance suitable to the character which he represented. Those that were in the least timorous, were always terrified by my father's figure. But one day, unfortunately, there came a brutal fellow of a captain to see the devil, whom he ran through the body. The Holy Office, informed of the devil's death, sent its officers to the house of Coscolina, whom they seized with all her effects; and I, who was then but seven years old, was put into the hospital of *Los Niños*. There were in that house charitable clergymen; who, being well paid for the education of poor orphans, were at the trouble of teaching them to read and write. They looked upon me as a promising child, and on that account distinguished me from the rest, by chusing me to run on their errands. They sent me into the city with letters and messages; and I made the responses at mass. By way of recompence, they undertook to teach me the Latin tongue; but they behaved so rudely, and treated me with such rigour, notwithstanding the small services I did them, that, being no longer able to bear it, I ran away one morning early when I was sent out on an errand; and, far from returning to the hospital, quitted Toledo by the suburbs that lie on the Seville side of the city. Though I was scarce yet nine years old, I felt a sensible pleasure in being free, and master of my own actions. I was without money, and without food; but what did that signify? I had no lessons to study, nor themes to compose. After having walked about two hours, my little legs began to refuse their service: I had never before made such a long journey; and I found myself obliged to halt, and give them some rest. I sat down under a tree, by the side of the road; and there, for my amusement, took my rudiments out of my pocket, and read it in sport; then remembering the stripes and floggings which it had made me receive, I tore out the leaves, saying in great wrath, "Ah, dog of a book!

* Orphans, or rather boys.

as another Penelope, and promised to treat her with all imaginable affection.

The young peasants and their partners having danced all day, retired to their houses; but the festival was continued at the castle, where a magnificent supper was prepared; and when it was time to go to rest, the grand vicar blessed the nuptial bed: Seraphina undressed the bride, and the noblemen of Leyva did me the same honour. What was merry enough, the officers of Don Alphonso, and the ladies of the governess, took in their heads to perform the same ceremony to Beatrice and Scipio; who, to make the scene more comical, very gravely allowed themselves to be stripped and put to bed.

CHAP. X.

WHAT FOLLOWED THE MARRIAGE OF GIL BLAS AND THE FAIR ANTONIA. THE BEGINNING OF SCIPIO'S HISTORY.

ON the very next day after my marriage, the lords of Leyva returned to Valencia, after having given me a thousand new marks of friendship; so that my secretary and I remained in the house, with our wives and servants only.

The care which both of us took to please the ladies was not ineffectual: in a little time, I inspired my wife with as much love for me as I had for her; and Scipio made his spouse forget the sorrows which he had made her suffer. Beatrice, who had a pliant obliging temper, easily insinuated herself into the favour, and gained the confidence of her mistress. In short, we agreed, all four, to admiration, and began to enjoy a situation worthy of envy. All our days glided away in the most agreeable amusements. Antonia was naturally grave, but Beatrice and I were very gay; and had we been otherwise, Scipio's presence was enough to keep off melancholy. He was an incomparable fellow for society, one of those comical creatures whose appearance alone can make a company merry.

One day, that we took a whim after dinner to go and take a siesta in the most agreeable place of the wood, my secretary was in such good-humour, that he banished all desire of sleeping by his merry discourse. 'Hold thy tongue, friend,' said I; 'or if thou art resolved to keep us from taking our nap, entertain us with some story worthy our attention.'

'With all my heart, Sir,' answered he; 'shall I recount the history of King Pelagius*?'—'I would rather hear thy own,' I replied; 'but that is a pleasure thou hast not thought proper to give me, since we lived together, nor ever will, I suppose.'—'And what is the reason?' said he. 'If I have not recounted my own history, it was because you never expressed the least desire to hear it: it is not, therefore, my fault that you are ignorant of my adventures; and if you are in the least curious to know them, I am ready to satisfy your curiosity.' Antonia, Beatrice, and I, took him at his word, and disposed ourselves in order to hear his narration, which could not miss of having a good effect, either in diverting, or lulling us asleep.

'Had it depended upon me,' said Scipio, 'I should have been the son of some grandee, or knight of Alcantara at least; but as one does not chuse his own father, you must know that mine was an honest soldier of the Holy Brotherhood, Torribio Scipio by name. While he was travelling to and fro on the highway, where his profession obliged him almost always to be, he met by accident one day, between Cuenca and Toledo, a young gypsy whom he thought very handsome. She was alone on foot, and carried her whole fortune in a kind of knapsack on her back. "Which way do you go, my dear?" said he to her, softening his voice, which was naturally rough. "Signior Cavalier," answered she, "I am going to Toledo, where I hope to gain an honest livelihood, in some shape or other."—"That is a laudable intention," he

* Pelagius reigned in the eighth century, and was some time in subjection to the Saracens; but putting himself at the head of the Christians, and being declared king, took arms against the Infidels, whom he vanquished, and laid the foundation of the kingdom of Leon, in which he reigned twenty years.

resumed, "and I don't doubt that you have more strings than one to your bow."—"Yes, thank God," said she; "I have more talents than one; I can compose pomatums and essences for the ladies; I tell fortunes; turn the sieve to find things that are lost; and shew all that people want to see in a glass or mirror."

Torribio, concluding that such a girl would be a very advantageous match for him, who could scarce live by his employment, though he was very dexterous at it, offered to marry her: she accepted the proposal, and they repaired with all diligence to Toledo, where they were wedded; and you see in me the worthy fruit of these noble nuptials. They settled in the suburbs, where my mother began to sell pomatums and essences; but that trade not answering, she became fortune-teller. It was then that she saw the crowns and pistoles shower upon her! a thousand dupes of both sexes soon raised the reputation of Coscolina, which was the gipsy's name. Somebody came every day, to beg she would employ her ministry for him: sometimes a needy nephew, who wanted to know when his uncle, whose sole heir he was, would set out for the other world; and sometimes a girl, wishing to know if a certain cavalier, to whom she had granted the favour on promise of marriage, would keep his word.

Please to observe, that my mother's predictions were always favourable to those who solicited them: if they proved true, good and well; but when they came back to reproach her, because the contrary of what she had prophesied came to pass, she answered coldly, that they must attribute it to the demon; who, notwithstanding the force of the conjurations that she employed to make him reveal what would happen, was sometimes so malicious as to deceive her.

When my mother, for the honour of her profession, thought she must make the devil appear in her operations, Torribio Scipio always acted that part, which he performed per-

fectly well; the roughness of his voice, and ugliness of his face, giving him an appearance suitable to the character which he represented. Those that were in the least timorous, were always terrified by my father's figure. But one day, unfortunately, there came a brutal fellow of a captain to see the devil, whom he ran through the body. The Holy Office, informed of the devil's death, sent its officers to the house of Coscolina, whom they seized with all her effects; and I, who was then but seven years old, was put into the hospital of *Los Niños* *. There were in that house charitable clergymen; who, being well paid for the education of poor orphans, were at the trouble of teaching them to read and write. They looked upon me as a promising child, and on that account distinguished me from the rest, by chusing me to run on their errands. They sent me into the city with letters and messages; and I made the responses at mass. By way of recompence, they undertook to teach me the Latin tongue; but they behaved so rudely, and treated me with such rigour, notwithstanding the small services I did them, that, being no longer able to bear it, I ran away one morning early when I was sent out on an errand; and, far from returning to the hospital, quitted Toledo by the suburbs that lie on the Seville side of the city. Though I was scarce yet nine years old, I felt a sensible pleasure in being free, and master of my own actions. I was without money, and without food; but what did that signify? I had no lessons to study, nor themes to compose. After having walked about two hours, my little legs began to refuse their service: I had never before made such a long journey; and I found myself obliged to halt, and give them some rest. I sat down under a tree, by the side of the road; and there, for my amusement, took my rudiments out of my pocket, and read it in sport; then remembering the stripes and floggings which it had made me receive, I tore out the leaves, saying in great wrath, "Ah, dog of a book!

* Orphans, or rather boys.

“thou shalt never make me shed tears again.” While I thus glutted my revenge, strewing the ground about me with declensions and conjugations, a hermit passed by, with a white beard, large spectacles, and a venerable air. He came up to me, and we examined each other with great eagerness. “My little gentleman,” said he smiling, “we seem to look at one another with great attention: I believe it would not be a bad scheme for us to live together in my hermitage, which is not two hundred yards from hence.”—“I am your humble servant!” answered I hastily; “I have no ambition to be an hermit.” The good old man laughed at this reply; and embracing me, said, “Don’t be frightened at my dress, my son; though it is not agreeable, it is useful; it makes me lord of a charming retreat, and of the neighbouring villages; the inhabitants of which love, or rather idolize me. Come along with me,” added he, “and I will give you a jacket like this that I wear. If you chuse it, you shall share with me the sweets of my retired life; and if you don’t like it upon trial, you shall not only be at liberty to leave me, but you may be also assured, that I will not fail of giving you a gratification at parting.” I suffered myself to be persuaded, and followed the old hermit, who asked me several questions; to which I answered with an ingenuity which I have not always preserved in the sequel. When we came to the hermitage, he presented to me some fruit, which I devoured, having eaten nothing the whole day but a morsel of dry bread, on which I had breakfasted in the morning at the hospital. The anchorite, seeing me make such good use of my jaws, said, “Courage, my child; don’t spare the fruit; I have ample provision of it, thank God, and I did not bring thee hither to let thee starve.” This was indeed very true; for in less than an hour after our arrival, he lighted a fire, spitted a leg of mutton; and, while I turned the spit, covered a small table with a very dirty napkin; upon which he laid two plates, one for himself, and the other for me.

When the mutton was ready, he

took it off the spit, and cut some slices for our supper, which was not a dry meal; for we drank excellent wine, of which also he had got store. “Well, my chicken,” said he, when we had done eating, “art thou satisfied with my ordinary! This is the manner in which thou shalt be treated every day, if thou livest with me. Besides, thou shalt do what thou pleatest in this hermitage. All that I exact of thee is, to accompany me when I go a begging through the neighbouring villages, and lead an ass with two panniers, which the charitable peasants usually fill with eggs, bread, flesh, and fish. This is all I require of thee.”—“I will do every thing you desire,” I replied, “provided you don’t oblige me to learn Latin.” Brother Chrysoftom, (that was the old hermit’s name) could not help laughing at my simplicity; and assured me anew, that he did not intend to force my inclination.

We went a begging the very next day with the ass, which I led by the halter, and reaped a plentiful harvest; every peasant being glad of an opportunity to put something in our panniers: one threw in a whole loaf; another, a large piece of bacon; a third, a partridge; in short, we brought home victuals enough for eight days; a circumstance that denotes the great friendship and esteem that the country people had for the hermit. It is true, he was of great use to them, in giving them his advice when they came to consult him, in re-establishing peace in families where discord reigned, in marrying their daughters, in furnishing them with remedies for a thousand sorts of diseases, and in teaching prayers proper for barren women who wished to have children.

By what I have said, you see that I was well fed in my hermitage; I was as well accommodated in point of sleeping: stretched upon good fresh straw, with a cushion of coarse cloth under my head, and a covering of the same stuff over my body, I made but one nap, which lasted all night long. Brother Chrysoftom, who had promised to give me a hermit’s garb, made one for me from an old robe that he used to wear, and called me

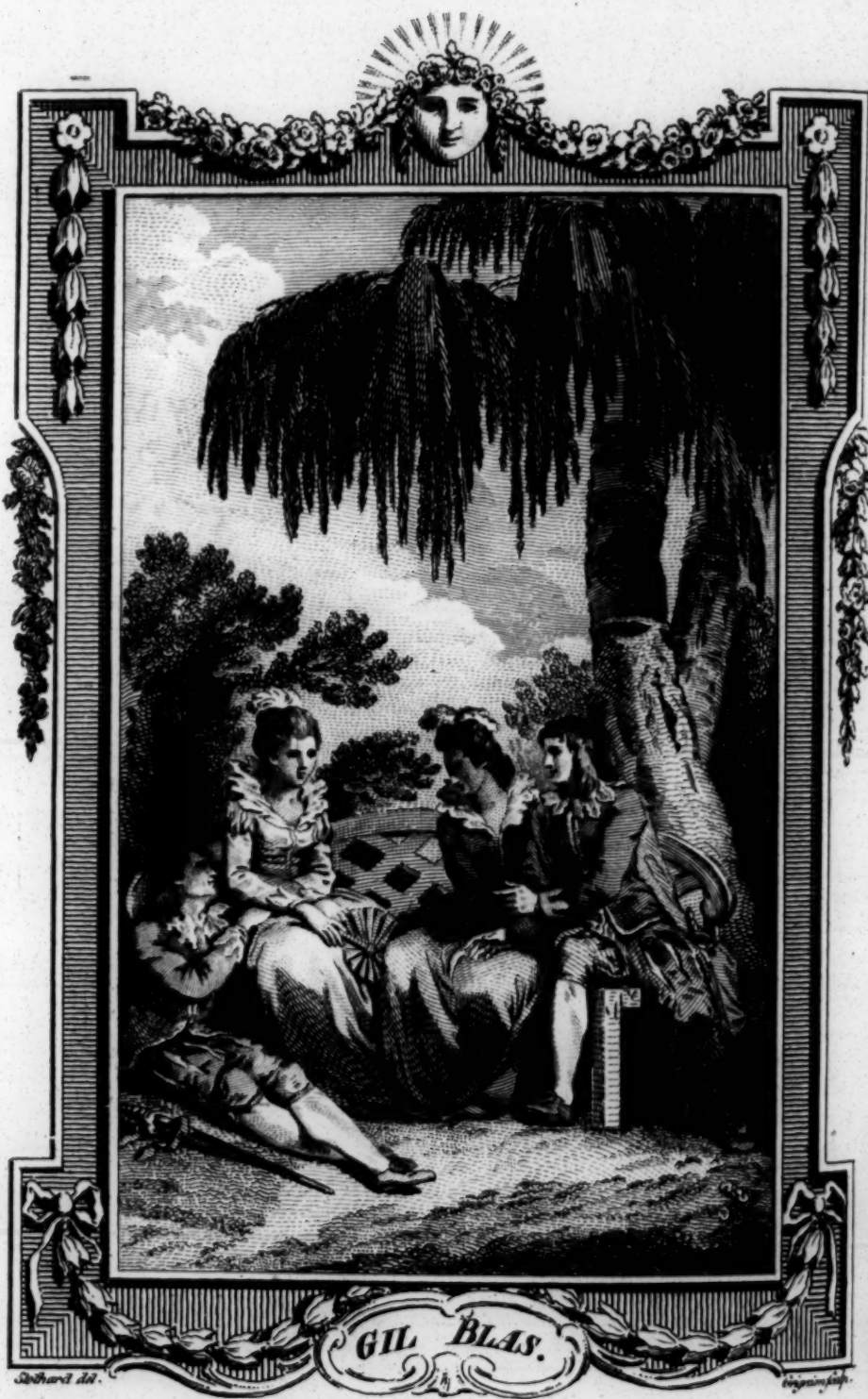
• little

me
not
ent
re.
nen
fa-
s is
be
with
hat
All
pa-
ugh
ead
the
with
his
will
pli-
me
sof-
it's
at
ew,
my

next
the
bar-
f an
our
oaf;
; a
we
for
de-
teen
the
great
ad-
hini,
ilies
ying
them
forts
yers
with-

that
e; I
point
fresh
cloth
g of
made
night
had
garb,
robe
d me
little





little Brother Scipio. As soon as I appeared in the villages, in that regular habit, I was thought so handsome, that the ass was better loaded than formerly: the business was, who should give most to the little brother, with whose figure they were so well pleased.

The easy idle life which I led with the old hermit, could not be disagreeable to a boy of my age: accordingly, I liked it so well, that I should have continued there still, if the Fates had not spun for me days of a very different kind; but the destiny which I was bound to fulfil, soon detached me from idleness, and made me quit Brother Chrysofom, as you shall hear. I frequently perceived the old man at work upon the cushion that served him for a pillow; he did nothing but sew and unsew it; and I observed, one day, that he put money into it. This remark was attended by a curiosity which I proposed to gratify the very first journey he should take to Toledo, whither he was wont to go once a week. I waited impatiently for the day, without having as yet any other design than of satisfying my curiosity. At length the old man set out, and I ripped up his pillow, where I found among the wool with which it was filled, the value of about fifty crowns in different sorts of coin.

This treasure, in all probability, was the gratitude of the country people, whom the hermit had cured by his remedies, and of the women who had been blessed with children, by virtue of his prayers. Be this as it will, I no sooner saw that it was money which I could appropriate to myself with impunity, than my Egyptian disposition prevailed. I was seized with a desire of stealing it, which can be attributed to nothing but the force of that blood which circulated in my veins. I yielded to the temptation without resistance, secured the money in a kind of bag where we kept our combs and night-caps; then quitting my hermit's habit, and resuming that of an orphan, I ran away from the hermitage, believing that I carried off in my bag the whole riches of the Indies.

'You have heard my beginning,' continued Scipio; 'and I don't doubt that you expect a train of facts of the same nature: your expectation will not be deceived; I have many other such exploits to recount before I come to my laudable actions; but I will come to them at last; and you will see, by my narration, that a rogue may very well turn an honest man.'

'Child as I was, I was not fool enough to return to Toledo; that would have been exposing me to the chance of meeting Brother Chrysofom, who would have made me restore my treasure in a very disagreeable manner: I followed another road, which conducted me to the village of Galves, where I stopped at an inn, the landlady of which was a widow of forty, who had all the qualities requisite for turning the penny. This woman no sooner cast her eyes upon me, than judging, by my dress, that I was a fugitive from the Orphan Hospital, she asked who I was, and whither I went. I answered, that having lost both father and mother, I wanted to go to service. "Child," said she, "canst thou read?" I assured her, that I both read and wrote to admiration. Indeed, I could form my letters, and join them in such a manner as somewhat resembled writing; and that is enough for the occasions of a village-tavern. "I take thee into my service," said the landlady; "thou shalt not be altogether useless, but shalt keep an account of all my debts active and passive. I will give thee no wages," added she; "because the good company that come here, never forget the servants; so that thou mayest depend upon receiving good perquisites."

I accepted the proposal, reserving to myself, as you may well believe, the right of changing the air, as soon as my stay at Galves should become disagreeable. When I found myself engaged in the service of this inn, I became very uneasy in my mind: I did not desire to be thought a monied-man; and was very anxious to know where I should conceal my hoard, so that it should be secure from every stranger's hand. I did not as yet know the house well

U u 2 'enough

enough to trust to those places which
 seemed most proper to secure it.
 With what perplexity are riches at-
 tended! I determined, however, to
 put my bag in a corner of our corn-
 loft where there was straw; and be-
 lieving it more safe there than in any
 other place, made myself as easy as
 possible. There were three servants
 in this house; a fat hostler, a young
 maid of Galicia, and myself: each
 of us drew as much as we could
 from the travellers that halted, whe-
 ther they came on horse-back or a-
 foot. I commonly caught some half-
 pence of these gentlemen, when I
 brought in the bill: they gave some-
 thing also to the hostler, for taking
 care of their beasts; but as for the
 Galician, who was the idol of all
 the carriers that passed, she got as
 many crowns as we did farthings.
 Every penny that I received, I car-
 ried to increase my treasure in the
 corn-loft; and the more I saw my
 wealth increase, the more did I feel
 my little heart attached to it: I
 sometimes kissed the specie, and con-
 templated the different pieces with a
 degree of rapture which none but
 misers can conceive.

This affection for my treasure ob-
 liged me to go and visit it thirty
 times a day: I frequently met the
 landlady upon the stair; and she be-
 ing naturally distrustful, was cu-
 rious, one day, to know what it
 was that could bring me every mo-
 ment to the corn-loft. Thither there-
 fore she went, and searched every
 corner, imagining that I, perhaps,
 concealed in that place some things
 which I had stole in the house. She
 did not forget to remove the straw
 that covered my bag, which having
 found, she opened it; and seeing
 crowns and pistoles appear, believed,
 or pretended to believe, that I had
 stole them from her. She seized the
 sum total accordingly: then, call-
 ing me little wretch, and little
 rascal, ordered the hostler, who was
 entirely devoted to her will, to give
 me fifty good lashes, which, when
 I had received, she turned me out
 of doors, saying, that she would
 suffer no knave to live in her house.
 In vain did I protest that I had not
 robbed the landlady: she maintain-

ed the contrary; and of course her
 word was believed rather than mine.
 Thus Brother Chrysoftom's money
 passed from one thief to another.

I lamented the loss of my money
 as a man mourns the death of an
 only child; and though my tears did
 not retrieve what I had lost, at least
 they excited the compassion of some
 people who saw them shed; and,
 among others, of the Curate of Gal-
 ves, who was passing by chance. He
 seemed moved at my melancholy
 condition, and carried me along with
 him to the parsonage; where, in
 order to gain my confidence, or ra-
 ther to pump me, he began by pity-
 ing my situation. "How much,"
 said he, "does this poor child deserve
 compassion! It is not surprising if,
 abandoned to himself in such a ten-
 der age, he has committed a bad
 action. Most men find it difficult
 to live honest through the whole
 course of their lives." Then address-
 ing himself to me, "My son," add-
 ed he, "from what part of Spain do
 you come, and who are your pa-
 rents? You seem to be of some
 good family. Tell me ingenuously,
 and be assured that I will not aban-
 don you."

The curate, by this politick and
 charitable discourse, engaged me in-
 sensibly to discover all my affairs with
 great sincerity. I made a general
 confession. After which he said,
 "Friend, though it does not become
 hermits to hoard up money, that
 does not lessen your crime; in rob-
 bing Brother Chrysoftom, you have
 transgressed that article of the de-
 calogue which forbids theft: but
 I'll oblige the landlady to restore the
 money, which I will send to the
 hermit; so that your conscience
 may be easy on that score." But
 this, I swear, was the least of my
 uneasiness. The curate, who had a
 design of his own, did not stop there:
 "My child," said he, "I interest
 myself in your behalf, and will pro-
 cure a good place for you. I will
 to-morrow send you by a carrier to
 my nephew, who is a canon of the
 cathedral of Toledo; he will not re-
 fuse, at my request, to receive you
 into the number of his lacquies, who
 live plentifully, like so many incum-
 bents,"

“bents, on the revenue of his pre-
“bend: you will be perfectly well
“situated, I can assure you.”

“I was so much consoled by this
“assurance, that I no longer thought
“of the bag nor the stripes which I
“had received, my mind being wholly
“possessed with the pleasure of living
“like an incumbent. Next day, while
“I was at breakfast, a carrier came to
“the parsonage, according to the cu-
“rate’s orders, with two mules bridled
“and saddled. I was helped up on
“the one, the carrier mounted on the
“other, and we set out for Toledo.
“My fellow-traveller was a fellow of
“humour, who liked nothing better
“than to make himself merry at ano-
“ther’s expence. “My little junior,”
“said he, “you have a good friend
“in the Curate of Galves; he could
“not give you a better proof of his
“affection than that of recommending
“you to the service of his nephew the
“canon, whom I have the honour to
“know, and who is, without contra-
“diction, the pearl of the whole chap-
“ter. He is none of those devotees
“whose pale and meagre faces preach
“up mortification. He has a capa-
“cious countenance, a rosy complex-
“ion, a merry look, is a jovial soul
“who enjoys the present hour, and
“in particular loves good cheer.
“You will live in his house like a
“prince.”

“The rogue of a carrier, perceiving
“that I listened with great satisfaction,
“continued to extol the happiness I
“should enjoy in the canon’s service;
“and did not leave off speaking until
“we arrived at the village of Obisa,
“where we stopped a little to bait our
“mules. The carrier, while he walk-
“ed about in the inn, let fall by ac-
“cident, out of his pocket, a paper
“which I was cunning enough to pick
“up without being observed, and
“which I found means to read while
“he was in the stable. It was a letter
“directed to the priests of the Orphan
“Hospital, and conceived in these
“terms.

“GENTLEMEN,

“I Thought I was bound in charity
“to send back to you a little
“knave, who is a runaway from your
“hospital. He does not seem to want

“capacity, but deserves to be careful-
“ly mewed up; and I hope that, by
“proper correction, he will in time
“do well. That God may preserve
“your pious and charitable worships,
“is the prayer of

“The CURATE of GALVES.”

“When I had read this letter, which
“informed me of the curate’s good in-
“tention, I did not long hesitate. To
“leave the inn, and gain the banks of
“the Tagus, which was more than a
“league from thence, was the work of
“a moment. Fear lent me wings to
“fly from the priests of the Orphan
“Hospital, to whom I would by no
“means return, so much was I disgust-
“ed with their manner of teaching the
“Latin tongue. I entered Toledo as
“gayly as if I had known where to
“board. True, it is a city of bene-
“diction, in which a man of genius,
“reduced to the necessity of living at
“his neighbour’s expence, cannot die
“of hunger. Scarce had I arrived in
“the market-place, when a well-dress-
“ed cavalier, whom I passed, laid hold
“of my arm, and said, “Hark’e, my
“boy, will you serve me? I should
“be glad to have such a lacquey as
“you.”—“And I should be glad,”
“answered I, “to have such a master
“as you.”—“If that be the case,”
“he resumed, “thou art mine from
“this moment. Follow me.” This
“I did, without making any farther
“reply.

“This cavalier, who might be a-
“bout thirty years of age, and was
“called Don Abel, lodged in a house
“where he possessed a very handsome
“apartment. He was by profession a
“gamester, and we lived together in
“this manner: in the morning, I cut
“as much tobacco for him as would
“fill five or six pipes, brushed his
“cloaths, and went for the barber to
“shave him and dress his whiskers.
“After which he went out, and made
“a tour among the tennis-courts,
“from whence he returned about
“eleven or twelve o’clock at night.
“But each morning before he went
“out, he gave me three royals for my
“day’s expence, leaving me at liberty
“to do what I pleased until ten o’clock
“at night. He was very well satisfied
“with me, provided he found me at
“home

home when he returned. He ordered a doublet and hose of livery to be made for me, so that I looked like the page of a lady of the town. I was very well satisfied with my place, and certainly I could not have found one more agreeable to my humour.

"I had led this happy life almost a whole month, when my master asked if I was pleased with his behaviour. I answered, that I could not be more so. "Well then," he resumed, "we shall set out to-morrow for Seville, whither my affairs call me. Thou wilt not be sorry to see that capital of Andalusia:

"He that hath not Seville seen,

"(saith the proverb)

"Is no traveller, I ween."

"I assured him, that I was ready to follow him whithersoever he should go. That very day, the Seville carrier came to his lodging, to fetch a large coffer that contained all his moveables; and in the morning we set out for Andalusia.

"Signior Don Abel was so lucky at play, that he never lost, except when he chose to lose. This talent often obliged him to change his place of habitation, that he might avoid the resentment of dupes; and this was the cause of our present journey. Being arrived at Seville, we took lodgings near the gate of Cordova, and began to live as we had lived at Toledo: but my master found a difference between these two cities. In the tennis-courts of Seville he met with gamesters who played as successfully as he; so that he came home sometimes very much out of humour. One morning, being chagrined at the loss of one hundred pistoles, which he ventured the preceding day, he asked why I had not carried his dirty linen to a woman whom he employed to wash and perfume it. I answered, that I had forgot. Upon which, falling into a passion, he gave me half a dozen boxes on the face, so rudely, that he made me see more candles than ever burnt in Solomon's temple. "There, little wretch," said he; "there is something to make you mind your business. Must I be always at your

"tail, to tell you what you have to do? why are you not as ready to work as to eat? are you such a beast as to be incapable of anticipating my orders and occasions!" So saying, he went out of his apartment, leaving me very much mortified at the blows I had received for such a slight fault. I don't know what adventure happened to him soon after in the tennis-court, but one evening he came home very much heated, and said, "Scipio, I am resolved to go to Italy, and must embark the day after to-morrow, in a ship bound for Genoa. I have my own reasons for making that voyage: wilt thou not accompany me, and lay hold of such a fair occasion to see the most delightful country in the world?" I said I would; but at the same time purposed to disappear just when he intended to embark. I thought I would revenge myself of him in this manner; and was very well pleased with the scheme, which I could not help imparting to a professed bravo whom I met in the streets for, since my arrival at Seville, I had contracted some bad acquaintances, and this in particular. I told him in what manner and for what I had been buffeted, then communicated my design of leaving Don Abel when he should be just ready to go on board, and asked his opinion of my resolution.

"The bravo frowned while he listened to me, and twirled the curls of his mustachio; then, blaming my master with an air of gravity, "Little gentleman," said he, "you are dishonoured for ever, if you restrict yourself to that frivolous revenge which you have hated. It is not enough to let Don Abel depart by himself; that would not be punishment sufficient. The chastisement must be proportioned to the injury. Let us therefore carry off his goods and money, which we will share like brothers after he is gone." Although I was naturally inclined to thieving, I was frightened at the proposal of such an important robbery. Nevertheless, the arch rogue who made it, did not fail to persuade me to it; and you shall hear the success of our enterprize. The bravo, who was a big strong fellow, came to our lodg-

lodging next day in the twilight, when I shewed him the coffer in which my master had already secured his effects, and asked if he could carry such a weight. "Such a weight!" said he; "know, that when the business is to carry off the goods of another, I can lift Noah's ark." So saying, he slung the coffer on his shoulders with ease, and went down stairs with it upon tip-toes. I followed him with some caution, and we were just going out at the street-door when Don Abel, brought thither so seasonably by his good genius, appeared all of a sudden.

"Where art thou going with the coffer?" said he. I was so confounded, that I stood silent; and the bravo, seeing the affair misgive, threw down his load, and betook himself to flight, in order to avoid explanations. "Where art thou going with the coffer!" said my master a second time. "Sir," answered I, more dead than alive, "I am going to carry it on board the ship in which you are to embark to-morrow for Italy."—"Hal!" he replied, "dost thou know in what ship I intend to sail?"—"No, Sir," said I; "but I have a tongue in my head; and I should have enquired at the harbour, where somebody would have certainly told me." At this my answer, which he suspected, he darted such a furious look at me, that I was afraid of a second beating. "Who ordered you," cried he, "to bring my coffer out of the house?"—"You yourself," said I. "Don't you remember how you upbraided me some days ago? Did not you say, while you beat me, that you expected I would prevent your orders, and do what was proper for your service of my own accord? Now it was in consequence of this direction that I employed one to carry your coffer to the ship." The gamester observing that I was more mischievous than he imagined, dismissed me immediately; saying, with an air of indifference, "Go, Mr. Scipio; and Heaven be your guide. I don't chuse to play with people that have sometimes a card too many, sometimes one too few. Get out of my sight," added he, in another tone, "lest I make you sing without your

gamut." I saved him the trouble of repeating his command, and got off in a twinkling; being woundily afraid that he would strip me of my cloaths, which however he luckily spared. I walked along the street, considering where I could lie, with my two royals, which constituted my whole stock. I arrived at the gate of the archbishop's palace; and, as his grace's supper was then dressing, an agreeable favour issued from the kitchen, and diffused itself a whole league around. "Zooks!" said I to myself, "I should like to dispatch one of those ragouts which salute my nose. I should even be contented with an opportunity of dipping my four fingers and thumb in it. What, can't I fall upon some method of tasting these dainties that smell so agreeably! the thing does not seem impossible." I whetted my imagination accordingly; and, by dint of musing, hatched a trick, which I immediately put in practice, and which succeeded to my wish. I entered the court of the palace, and running towards the kitchen, cried as loud as I could, "Help! help!" as if I had been pursued by some assassin.

At my repeated cries, Mr. Diego, the archbishop's cook, with two or three scullions, came running out to know the cause; and, seeing nobody but me, asked why I made such a noise. "Ah, Sir!" said I, pretending to be frightened almost out of my wits, "for the love of St. Polycarp! pray, save me from the fury of a bravo that wants to kill me!"—"Where is this bravo?" cried Diego; "you are quite alone, without so much as a cat at your heels. Go, my child, lay aside your fear. It was probably somebody that wanted to terrify you for his diversion, and who did well not to follow you into this palace; for, if he had, we should have cut off his ears."—"No, no," said I to the cook; "he did not pursue me for his diversion. He is a big ill-looking fellow, who intends to strip me, and waits hard by in the street to catch me as I go out."—"He shall wait a long time then," he replied: "for you shall stay here till to-morrow, and want for neither supper nor bed."

I was

‘ I was transported with joy when I heard these words; and it was a ravishing sight to me, when, being conducted into the kitchen by Mr. Diego, I beheld the preparation for his grace’s supper. I reckoned fifteen persons at work, but I could not number the dishes that I saw, so careful Providence had been in behalf of the archbishop. It was then that, feasting upon the steams of the ragouts which I had only smelted afar off before, I became acquainted with sensuality. I had the honour to sup and sleep with the scullions, whose friendship I gained to that degree, that, next day, when I went to thank Mr. Diego for the asylum he had so generously afforded, he said, “ Our kitchen lads tell me, they would be glad to have you for a comrade, they like your humour so well; would you chuse to be their companion ? ” I answered, that if I enjoyed that piece of good fortune, I should think myself perfectly happy. “ If that be the case, my friend,” said he, “ look upon yourself from this moment as an officer of the palace.” So saying, he went and presented me to the major-domo, who, on account of my sprightly look, judged me worthy to be received among the turnspits.

‘ I was no sooner in possession of this honourable employment, than Mr. Diego, according to the custom of cooks in great families, who privately send victuals to their mistresses, chose me to carry to a certain lady in the neighbourhood sometimes loins of veal, and sometimes fowl or venison. This good lady was a widow scarce turned of thirty, very handsome, very smart, and, to all appearance, not over faithful to her cook, who not only furnished her with victuals, bread, sugar, and oil, but also provided her in good wine, all at the expence of the archbishop.

‘ I was effectually improved in the palace of his grace, where I played a very pleasant prank, which is still spoken of at Seville. The pages and some other domesticks, in order to celebrate their master’s birth-day, took it in their heads to represent a comedy. They chose that of the *Benarides**; and as they had occa-

sion for a boy of my age, to play the part of the young King of Leon, they cast their eyes upon me. The major-domo, who piqued himself upon his talent of declamation, undertook to instruct me; and, after he had given me a few lessons, assured them, that I would not be the worst actor in the play. As our master was at the expence of the entertainment, no cost was spared to render it magnificent. A theatre was built in the largest hall in the palace, and decorated with great taste. There was a bed of turf made in the back scene, on which I was to appear asleep, and the Moors fall upon me to make me prisoner. When the actors were perfect in their parts, the archbishop fixed the day for the representation, and did not fail to invite the most considerable noblemen and ladies of the city to come and see it. The day being come, each actor was busied with his dress. As for mine, it was brought to me by a taylor, accompanied by our major-domo, who, having been at the trouble of teaching me my part, was also pleased to superintend my dress. The taylor clothed me with a rich velvet robe, trimmed with gold lace and buttons, and hanging sleeves adorned with fringe of the same metal; and the major-domo himself placed upon my head a crown of paper, powdered with a quantity of fine pearls, intermixed with false stones. Besides, they girded me with a sash of pink-coloured silk, wrought with silk flowers; and every thing they said to me seemed to lend me wings to run away with the plunder. At length, the play began about twilight. I opened the scene, by pronouncing some verses, importing, that, being unable to keep myself awake, I was going to abandon myself to slumber; at the same time I withdrew, and lay down on the bed of turf which had been prepared for me; but, instead of falling asleep, I began to consider how I could get into the street, and escape with my royal robes. A little private stair, that led down under the theatre into the hall, seemed proper for the execution of my design. I accordingly got up nimbly, and seeing that nobody took notice of

* A noble family in Spain, descended from Alonso, the ninth King of Castile.

me, slipped down that stair, which conducted me into the hall, the door of which I gained, crying, "Room, room! I am going to change my dress." Every one made way for me; so that, in less than two minutes, I got out of the palace with impunity, and, by favour of the night, repaired to the house of a bravo of my acquaintance.

He was perfectly astonished to see me in that garb; and, when I imparted the affair, he laughed until he was ready to burst; then embracing me with so much the more joy as he flattered himself with the hopes of sharing the spoils of the King of Leon, he congratulated me on having performed such a fine stroke; and told me, that, if I went on at that rate, my genius would one day make a great noise in the world. After we had sufficiently made ourselves merry, "What shall we do with this rich dress?" said I to the bravo; who answered, "Give yourself no trouble on that score. I know an honest broker, who, without expressing the least curiosity, buys every thing that is brought to him, provided he likes the bargain; to-morrow morning I will go and bring him hither." In effect, the bravo went out next day early, leaving me a-bed in his room, and in two hours returned with the broker, who carried a yellow bag under his arm. "Friend," said he to me, "this is Signior Ybagnez de Segovia, who, in spite of the bad example shewn by his brethren of the trade, deals with the most scrupulous integrity. He will tell you to a farthing the value of this dress that you want to part with, and you may depend upon his estimation."—"Yes, certainly," said the broker. "I must be a wretch indeed, if I prized a thing under the true value. That is a crime with which I was never taxed, thank God; and no man shall ever lay it to the charge of Ybagnez de Segovia. Let us see the goods you want to sell, and I will conscientiously tell you what they are worth."—"Here they are," said the bravo, shewing them; "and you must allow that nothing can be more magnificent: observe the beauty of that Genoa velvet, and the richness of the trimming."—"I

am quite charmed with it," replied the broker, after he had viewed it attentively; "nothing can be finer."—"And what do you think of the pearls of this crown?" resumed my friend. "If they were more round," said Ybagnez, "they would be inestimable: however, such as they are, I think them very pretty, and like them as well as the rest of the dress. I sincerely own it," continued he, "another rogue of a broker in my place would pretend to despise the merchandize, that he might have it cheap, and would not be ashamed of offering twenty pistoles for it; but I, who have some conscience, will give forty."

If Ybagnez had said a hundred, he would not then have been a just appraiser; since the pearls alone were well worth two hundred crowns. The bravo, who had a fellow-feeling with him, said to me, "You see how fortunate you are in falling into the hands of an honest man. Signior Ybagnez prizes every thing as if he was upon his death-bed."—"That's true," said the broker; "and therefore I never rise or fall a farthing in my price. Well," added he, "is it a bargain? Shall I count out the money to you?"—"Stay," replied the bravo; "my friend must try on this suit of cloaths, which I desired you to bring him. I am mistaken if they won't fit him exactly." Then the broker, untying his bundle, shewed me a doublet and hose, of a very good dark-coloured cloth, with silver buttons; the whole seemingly half worn. I got up to try this dress; which, though both too long and too wide, appeared to those gentlemen to have been made on purpose for me. Ybagnez rated it at ten pistoles; and, as he never abated one farthing of what he asked, we were obliged to comply with his valuation. So he took thirty pistoles out of his purse, and spread them upon the table; after which he made another bundle of my crown and royal robes, which he carried off accordingly.

When he was gone, the bravo said, "I am very well satisfied with this broker." And good reason he had to be so; for, I am sure, he gave him one hundred pistoles, at least,

by way of gratification. But he was not contented with that sum: he took, without ceremony, the half of the money that lay on the table, leaving the other half to me, and saying, "My dear Scipio, with these fifteen pistoles that remain, I advise you to quit this city forthwith; for you may be assured that the archbishop will give orders to search for you every where. I should be extremely mortified if, after having signalized yourself by an action which will do honour to your history, you should foolishly suffer yourself to be apprehended." I answered, that I was fully resolved to leave Seville; and, in effect, after having bought a hat and some shirts, I gained the vast and delightful plain that stretches, among vines and olives, to the ancient city of Cármona, and three days after arrived at Cordova.

I lodged at an inn as you enter the great square where the merchants live; and gave myself out for the son of a good family at Toledo, who travelled for my pleasure. I was well enough clothed to make people believe this story; and the landlord was finally convinced by the sight of some pistoles, which I let him see as if by chance. It is probable, indeed, that my tender years made him believe I was some little libertine who had run away from his parents, after having robbed them. Be this as it will, he did not seem curious to know more than what I told him of the matter; being, in all likelihood, afraid that his curiosity might make me change my lodging. For six royals a-day I lived very well in this inn, which was frequented by a good deal of company, there being at supper in the evening no less than twelve people at one table. It was very diverting to see every one eating without speaking a syllable, except one man, who, talking incessantly, at random, compensated for the si-

lence of the rest by his impertinent prating. He affected the wit, told stories, and endeavoured, by quaint sayings, to entertain the company; who, from time to time, laughed heartily, though not so much at the brightness of his sallies as at his ridiculous behaviour.

As for my part, I paid so little attention to the discourse of this original, that I should have risen from supper without being able to give any account of what he said, had he not found means to interest me in his conversation. "Gentlemen," said he, towards the end of our meal, "I have kept for the desert a most diverting story: an adventure that befel, a few days ago, at the palace of the Archbishop of Seville. I had it from a bachelor, of my acquaintance, who told me, that he was present when it happened." These words discomposed me a good deal; I did not doubt that it was my adventure which he intended to recount; and I was not mistaken. This person gave a faithful detail of it, and even informed me of what I did not know, that is, what happened in the hall after my departure: and this you shall hear.

Scarce had I betook myself to flight, when the Moors, who, according to the performance which was represented, were to carry me off, appeared upon the stage, with a design of surprizing me on the bed of turf, where they thought I was asleep; but when they went to seize the King of Leon, they were very much astonished to find neither king nor knave. The play was immediately interrupted: all the actors were perplexed; some called me, others searched for me; one hallooed, and another cursed me. The archbishop, perceiving the trouble and confusion that reigned behind the scenes, asked what was the matter. A page, who acted the Gracioso of the piece,

* Cordua, anciently Corduba, Colonia Patricia, a royal, large, and fine city of Spain, the capital of a little kingdom of it's own name in Andalusia. It is situated on the Guadalquivir, at the foot of a high mountain, a branch of the Sierra Morena: it is the see of a bishop, under the Archbishop of Toledo; the roof of the cathedral is supported by three hundred and sixty-five pillars of different species of marble, and was a Turkish mosque in the time of the Saracens. It contains about fourteen thousand families, has an university, and a good trade in wine, silk, and Cordovan leather. It lies seventy-four miles north-east of Seville.

• bearing

hearing the prelate's voice, came out, and said to his grace, "My lord, you need not fear that the Moors will take the King of Leon prisoner; he has escaped with his royal robes."—"Heaven be praised!" cried the archbishop; "he was very much in the right to fly from the enemies of our religion, and escape the chains which they had prepared for him. He has, doubtless, returned towards Leon, the capital of his kingdom; and I wish he may get home without meeting with any bad accident. Let no man go in pursuit of him, for I should be sorry if his majesty received any mortification from me." The prelate, having spoke in this manner, ordered my part to be read, and the play to go on.

CHAP. XI.

THE SEQUEL OF SCIPIO'S HISTORY.

As long as my money lasted, the landlord treated me with great respect; but no sooner did he perceive that my finances were exhausted, than he looked cool upon me; picked a quarrel, and one morning early desired me to leave his house. I quitted it with disdain, and went into a church belonging to the Dominicans, where, while I heard mass, an old mendicant came, and asked alms of me. I took two or three maravedis out of my pocket, and giving them to him said, "Friend, pray to God to send me some good place: if your prayer is heard, you shall not repent of your devotion, and may depend upon my gratitude."

At these words the beggar viewed me very attentively, and answered with a serious air, "What post would you have?"—"I could wish," said I, "to be a lacquey in some good family." He then asked if my occasions were pressing. "They cannot be more so," I resumed: "for, if I have not the good fortune of being settled very soon, there is no medium; I must either die of hunger, or betake myself to your trade."—"If you are reduced to such necessity," said he, "you, who are

not at all calculated for our business, must be in a very disagreeable situation: but, were you in the least accustomed to our way of life, you would prefer it to servitude, which is, without contradiction, inferior to beggary. Nevertheless, since you chuse to be a servant, rather than to live a free and independent life, as I do, you shall have a master immediately. Notwithstanding my appearance, I can be of use to you: therefore come hither to-morrow at the same hour."

Resolved to be punctual, I returned next day to the same place; where I had not been long, before the mendicant, coming up to me, bid me take the trouble to follow him. I did so. He conducted me to a cellar not far from the church; and this was the place of his residence. We entered his habitation; and, sitting down upon a bench, which was at least an hundred years old, he spoke to me in this manner: "A good action, as the proverb says, always finds its recompence; you gave me charity yesterday, and that determines me to procure a place for you; and this, please God, I will soon perform. I am acquainted with an old Dominican, called Father Alexis, who is an holy ecclesiastic, and great confessor. I have the honour to run his errands, and acquit myself in that employment with so much fidelity and discretion, that he never refuses to use his interest for me and my friends. I have spoke to him of you in such a manner, that he is disposed to do you service; and I will present you to his reverence whenever you please."—"There is not a moment to lose," said I to the old beggar; "let us go instantly to the good friar." The mendicant consented, and carried me forthwith to Father Alexis, whom we found in his room, busy in writing spiritual letters. He interrupted his work to speak to me, and told me that, at the request of the mendicant, he would interest himself in my behalf. "Having been informed," added he, "that Signior Balthazar Velasquez wanted a lacquey, I wrote this morning in your favour; and he has answered, that he will receive you implicitly

“ on my recommendation. You may, this very day, go to him from me ; he is my penitent and friend.” The monk, on this occasion, exhorted me, during three quarters of an hour, to do my duty with fidelity and diligence. He enlarged particularly on the obligation I was under to serve Velasquez with zeal : after which he assured me, that he would take care to maintain me in my post, provided my master should be pleased with my behaviour. Having thanked the monk for his generosity, I came out of the convent with the beggar ; who told me, that Signior Balthazar Velasquez was an old rich woollen-draper of great meekness and simplicity. “ I dare say,” added he, “ that you will be perfectly happy in his family.” I enquired whereabouts the citizen lived, and went immediately to his house, after having promised to make an acknowledgment to the beggar, as soon as I should take root in my place. I entered a large shop, where two well-dressed apprentices were walking to and fro, in expectation of customers ; and, asking if their master was at home, told them, I had a message to him from Father Alexis. At the mention of that venerable name, I was shewn into the back shop, where the merchant sat at a bureau, turning over the leaves of a large day-book. I saluted him with great respect, saying, while I advanced, “ Signior, I am the young man whom the reverend Father Alexis recommended to you for a lacquey.” — “ Ha ! welcome, my child,” said he ; “ that holy man’s recommendation is sufficient. I receive thee into my service, in preference to three or four lacquies that were sent by other people. It is agreed : thy wages run up from this day forward.”

“ I had not been long in the service of this citizen, before I perceived him to be just such a man as the beggar had described. His simplicity seemed even so great, that I could not help thinking I should find some difficulty in abstaining from playing him some trick or other. He had been a widower four years, and had two children, a son turned of five and twenty, and a daughter going in her fifteenth year ; who being brought

up by a severe duenna, and directed by Father Alexis, walked in the path of virtue : but Gaspard Velasquez, her brother, though nothing had been spared in his education, had all the vices of a young spendthrift. He sometimes lay two or three nights abroad ; and if, at his return, his father took it into his head to reprimand him, Gaspard imposed silence upon him in a tone still higher than that of the old man.

“ Scipio,” said the draper to me one day, “ I have a son who is the sole plague of my life ; he is plunged in all manner of debauchery : a circumstance that surprizes me very much ; for his education was by no means neglected. I gave him good masters, and my friend Alexis hath done his utmost endeavour to put him in the right road ; but he could not succeed : Gaspard is fallen into a state of libertinism. Thou wilt say, perhaps, that I treated him too gently in the beginning of his youth ; and that he was undone by my indulgence ; but that was not the case ; he was always chastised when I thought he deserved to be used with rigour : for, good-natured as I am, I have resolution enough, when there is occasion for it. I have even ordered him to be confined ; and the consequence was, he became more wicked than ever. In a word, he has one of those bad dispositions which cannot be improved by good example, remonstrances, or chastisement. Heaven alone can work that miracle !”

“ If I was not much moved at the sorrow of this unhappy father, at least I pretended to be so. “ How much are you to be pitied, Sir !” said I ; “ a good man, like you, deserves to have a much better son.” — “ Heaven, my child,” answered he, “ is pleased to deprive me of that consolation. Among other causes which Gaspard gives me to complain of him,” added he, “ I will tell thee in confidence, there is one that makes me very uneasy ; that is, the inclination which he has to rob me, and which he but too often finds means to satisfy, in spite of all my vigilance. The lacquey, whom you succeed, was in concert with him, and for that reason turned away. As for

"for thee, I hope thou wilt not suffer thyself to be corrupted by my son; but espouse my interest, as Father Alexis has doubtless exhorted thee." — "That I'll answer for," said I; "his reverence exhorted me a whole hour to have nothing in view but your advantage; but I can assure you, I had no need of being exhorted to that; I feel myself disposed to serve you faithfully, and my zeal will prove itself on all occasions."

"He who hears one side only, hears nothing. Young Velasquez, who was a devilish beau, judging by my physiognomy, that I would be as easily seduced as my predecessor, took me aside, into a private place, and spoke to me in these terms. "Hark'e, my dear, I am persuaded that my father has charged thee to be a spy upon my actions: take care of thyself; I give thee notice beforehand, that the employment is none of the most agreeable. If ever I perceive that thou makest thy remarks upon me, I will cudgel thee to death: whereas, if thou wilt assist me in cheating my father, thou mayest depend upon my gratitude. Must I be more plain with thee! thou shalt have a share of the purchase. Make thy choice therefore, and declare this instant either for the father or son, for I will admit of no neutrality."

"Sir," answered I, "you are very short with me; and I plainly perceive, that I cannot help espousing your cause, though in my heart I feel a reluctance to betray Signior Velasquez." — "Thou oughtest to make no scruple in so doing," replied Gaspard; "he is an old miser, who wants to keep me still in leading-strings; a wretch who denies me the necessities of life, in refusing to furnish me with money for my pleasures; for pleasures are the necessities of life, at the age of five-and-twenty: thou must therefore look upon my father in that point of view." — "Enough, Sir," said I; "there is no such thing as holding out against so just a cause of complaint. I offer my service to second you in your laudable undertakings; but let us conceal our mutual intelligence, that your faithful associate may not be

turned out of doors. You will do well, methinks, in affecting to hate me: speak roughly to me before people, and do not spare ill language; even some boxes on the ear, and kicks on the breech, will not be amiss; on the contrary, the more marks of aversion you bestow upon me, the more confidence will Balthazar have in my integrity. As for my part, I will pretend to avoid your conversation: in serving you at table, I will seem to acquit myself with regret; and when I talk of you to the apprentices, don't take it ill, that I rail at you with great bitterness."

"Egad!" cried Velasquez, hearing my last words; "I admire thy genius, my friend: thou shewest, at thy age, an astonishing capacity for intrigue, from whence I conceive the most happy presage; for I hope, with thy assistance, I shall not leave my father one single pistole." — "You do me a great deal of honour," said I, "in depending so much on my industry: I will do my utmost endeavour to justify the good opinion you have of my understanding; and if I fail, at least, it shall not be my fault."

"It was not long before I let Gaspard see that I was actually the man he wanted; and this is the first service I did him: Balthazar's strong-box stood in his chamber, just by his bedside, and served him instead of a pew for prayer. Every time I looked at it, my eye-sight was regaled; and I frequently said to myself: "Friend strong-box, must thou be always locked to me? Shall I never have the pleasure of contemplating thy contents?" As I went whenever I pleased into this chamber, which was forbid to nobody but Gaspard, I happened one day to perceive his father, who, thinking himself unobserved, after having opened and locked his strong-box, concealed the key behind a hanging. I marked the place well, and imparted the discovery to my young master, who embraced me with joy, saying, "Ah, my dear Scipio! what a charming piece of news is this? our fortune is made, my child. I will this very day give thee wax, with which thou mayest take the impression of

"the

"the key, and put it into my hands. I shall easily find an obliging locksmith in Cordova; in which, thank Heaven, there is no scarcity of rogues."

"But why," said I to Gaspard, "would you make a false key, when we can use the true one?"—"Because," answered he, "my father, through distrust, or some other motive, may take it in his head to hide it elsewhere; and therefore it is better to have one for ourselves." I approved of his caution; and, yielding to his inclination, prepared for taking the impression of the key. This was executed one morning early, while my old master paid a visit to Father Alexis, with whom he had usually long conversations. This was not all; I used the key in opening the box, which being filled with large and small bags, threw me into a charming perplexity: I did not know which to chuse, such affection did I conceive for both kinds. Nevertheless, as the fear of being surprized did not permit me to make a long scrutiny, I laid hold of one of the largest at a venture: then locking the coffer, and replating the key behind the hangings, I quitted the chamber with my prey, which I went and concealed under my bed, in a small wardrobe where I lay.

Having performed this operation so successfully, I went immediately to the young Velasquez, who waited for me in a house where he had appointed to meet me, and gave him infinite joy, by telling what I had done. He was so well satisfied, that he loaded me with caresses, and generously offered me the half of the money which was in the bag: but that I refused, saying, "No, no, Sir; this first bag is your own, use it for your occasions: I will soon return to the strong-box, where, thank Heaven! there is money enough for us both." In effect, three days after this, I carried off a second bag, containing, as the former, five hundred crowns, of which I would receive one fourth only, notwithstanding the pressing instances of Gaspard, that it should be equally divided between us.

As soon as this young man found himself well stocked, and, conse-

quently, in a condition to satisfy his passion for women and play, he abandoned himself entirely to both: he had even the misfortune to fall in love with one of those famous coquettes, who devour and swallow the largest patrimonies in a very little time; and, being at a terrible expence on her account, laid me under the necessity of paying so many visits to the strong-box, that at length old Velasquez perceived himself robbed. "Scipio," said he one morning, "I must tell thee a secret: Somebody robs me, my friend; my strong-box has been opened, and several bags taken out; this is certain. Who must be taxed with this theft? or rather, who else than my son Gaspard, who has entered my chamber by stealth, or been introduced by thee; for I am tempted to believe thee his accomplice, though you seem to hate one another so much. Nevertheless, I will not listen to my suspicion; since Father Alexis hath answered for thy fidelity." I replied that, thank Heaven, I never coveted my neighbour's wealth; and accompanied that lie with hypocritical grimace, which served instead of an apology.

The old man, sure enough, said no more of the matter; but he did not leave off including me in his suspicion; and taking his precautions against our attempts, ordered his strong-box to be secured by another lock, the key of which he always kept in his pocket. By these means, all commerce between us and the bags being broken, we looked very silly, especially Gaspard, who being no longer able to gratify the extravagance of his nymph, was afraid of losing the privilege of visiting her. He had genius enough, however, to invent an expedient which supported his expence a few days longer: and that ingenious shift was, to appropriate to himself, by way of loan, all my share of the evacuations which I had performed in the strong-box. I gave it all, to the very last piece; and this, methinks, may pass for anticipated restitution which I made to the old merchant in the person of his heir.

The young man, when he had exhausted this resource, considering that he had now none left, fell into a profound

found

found and gloomy fit of melancholy, which gradually disordered his reason. He looked upon his father as the only plague of his life; he was seized with the most violent despair; and, without listening to the voice of nature, the wretch conceived the horrible design of poisoning his parent. He not only communicated this execrable project to me, but even proposed that I should be the instrument of his vengeance. Being struck with horror at the proposal, "Sir," said I, "is it possible that you should be so abandoned by Heaven, as to form this abominable resolution? What! are you capable of murdering the author of your own being? Shall it be said, that in Spain, in the very bosom of Christianity, a crime was committed, the very idea of which raises horror in the most barbarous nations? No, my dear master," added I, falling on my knees before him; "no; you will not commit an action which would justly incense the whole world against you, and be attended with the most infamous chastisement."

I said a great many things more to dissuade Gaspard from such a guilty undertaking. I don't know where I found all the arguments of a virtuous man, which I used to combat his despair: but, certain it is, I spoke like a doctor of Salamanca, though I was but a boy, and no other than the son of Coscolina. Nevertheless, in vain did I represent to him, that he ought to reflect seriously, and courageously repel those detestable sentiments which had taken possession of his soul. All my eloquence was ineffectual: he hung his head, and remained in sullen silence; so that I concluded he would not swerve from his resolution, notwithstanding all I could say.

Whereupon I went and demanded a private conversation with my old master, to whom, when we were shut up in a room together, I said, "Suffer me, Sir, to throw myself at your feet, and implore your mercy." So saying, I fell down before him in great agitation, with my countenance bathed in tears. The merchant, surprized at my prostration, and the disorder of my looks, asked what I had done. "A deed," I re-

plied, "of which I now heartily repent, and with which I will upbraid myself as long as I live. I have been weak enough to listen to your son, and to assist him in stealing your money." I then made a sincere confession of all that had passed on that subject: after which I gave him an account of the conversation I had with Gaspard, whose design I revealed, without forgetting the least circumstance.

Bad as his opinion of his son was, old Velasquez could scarce credit my information, the truth of which, however, having no reason to doubt, "Scipio," said he, raising me, for I was still on my knees, "I pardon thee, in consideration of the important notice thou hast given me." Gaspard," added he, raising his voice, "Gaspard has a design upon my life! Ah, ungrateful son! ah, monster! who had better been stifled in the birth than allowed to live and become a parricide! What cause hast thou to attempt my life! I allow thee a reasonable yearly sum for thy pleasures, and thou art not satisfied! Must I permit thee to squander away my whole fortune!" Having uttered this bitter apostrophe, he laid injunctions upon me to keep the secret, and said he would consider what was to be done in such a delicate conjuncture.

I was very anxious to know what resolution this unfortunate father would take, when that very day he sent for Gaspard, and spoke thus to him, without manifesting a tittle of what he had in his head. "Son, I have received a letter from Merida, importing, that if you chuse to marry, you may have a maiden of that place, who is but fifteen years old, perfectly handsome, and mistress of a good fortune: if you have no reluctance to the marriage, we will set out early to-morrow for Merida, visit the lady who is proposed, and if you find her to your liking, you shall espouse her forthwith." Gaspard, hearing mention made of a good fortune, which he thought was already in his clutches, answered without hesitation, that he was ready to go: so that next morning, at day-break, they departed by themselves, mounted on two good mules.

When

“ When they had got as far as the mountains of Fesira, into a place as much frequented by robbers as dreaded by travellers, Balthazar alighted, desiring his son to do the same. The young man obeyed, and asked the reason of their quitting their mules in that place. “ I will tell thee,” answered the old man, darting at him a look in which his grief and indignation were painted, “ we have no business at Merida; and the marriage which I mentioned is only a fable I invented to bring thee thither. I am not ignorant, ungrateful and unnatural son! I am not ignorant of the crime which thou hast hatched; I know that I am to be presented with poison prepared by thee: but, fool that thou art, dost thou flatter thyself that thou canst deprive me of my life in that manner with impunity! Thou art mistaken; thy guilt would soon be discovered, and thou wouldst perish by the hand of the hangman. There is,” added he, “ a surer method of satisfying thy rage, without exposing thyself to an ignominious death: we are here without witnesses, in a place where murders are committed every day; since thou art so estranged from my blood, plunge thy poniard into my bosom, and the murder will be imputed to robbers!” So saying, Balthazar baring his breast, and pointing to his heart, “ Here, Gaspard!” added he, “ strike the mortal blow, and punish me for having given being to such a wretch as thee!”

“ Young Velasquez, thunderstruck at these words, far from seeking to justify himself, fell without sense or motion at his father’s feet. The good old man, seeing him in that condition, which seemed to be the beginning of repentance, could not help yielding to his paternal weakness, and of flying to his assistance: but Gaspard no sooner recovered the use of his reason, than, being unable to bear the presence of a father so justly incensed, he made an effort to get up, mounted his mule, and rode off without speaking a word. Balthazar let him go, and leaving him to the remorse of his own conscience, returned to Cordova; where, six months after, he learned that his son had thrown himself into the mo-

“ nastery of Carthusians at Seville, there to pass the rest of his days in penitence.

CHAP. XII.

THE CONCLUSION OF SCIPIO’S HISTORY.

BAD example sometimes produces good effects. The conduct of young Velasquez made me reflect seriously upon my own. I began to combat my thievish inclinations, and live like an honest man. The habit of seizing all the money I could lay my hands on, was so much confirmed in me, by repeated acts, that it was not easily vanquished. Nevertheless, I did not despair of succeeding, imagining, that to become virtuous, required only a sincere desire of being so. I therefore undertook this great work, and Heaven seemed to bless my efforts; I no longer beheld the old merchant’s strong-box with a covetous eye; and I believe, that, had it been in my power, I should not have touched one of his bags: I own, however, that it would have been very imprudent in him to put my infant integrity to such a proof; and therefore Velasquez took care not to do it.

“ Don Manriquez de Medrano, a young gentleman and knight of the order of Alcantara, came frequently to our house. We had his custom; and if he was not the best, he was, at least, the most noble of those who used the shop. I had the good fortune to please that cavalier, who, every time he met me, encouraged me to speak, and seemed to listen with pleasure to what I said. “ Scipio,” said he one day, “ if I had a lacquey of thy humour, I should think myself in possession of a treasure; and if thou didst not belong to a man for whom I have a regard, I would do my endeavour to debauch thee from his service.” — “ Sir,” said I, “ you would find it a very easy task; for I have an inclination to serve people of quality: that is my foible; I am charmed by their easy behaviour.” — “ If that be the case,” replied Don Manriquez, “ I will desire Signior Balthazar to consent to thy leaving him, and coming
“ into



Plate IX.

Published as the Act directs, by Harrison & Co. No. 10, 1781.

BRITISH
2 AP 1911
MUSEUM

"into my service; I don't believe he will refuse me that favour." Indeed Velasquez granted it the more easily, as he did not think the loss of a roguish lacquey irreparable: for my own part, I was glad of the change; the valet of a citizen appearing to me a mere beggar, in comparison to the lacquey of a knight of Alcantara.

To draw a faithful picture of my new patron, I must tell you, that he was a cavalier endued with a most amiable person, and with such sweetness of temper and cultivated understanding, as captivated every body who knew him: besides he had a great deal of courage and probity, and wanted nothing but fortune. Being cadet of a family more illustrious than rich, he was obliged to subsist at the expence of an old aunt who lived at Toledo, and who, loving him as her own son, took care to furnish him with what money he wanted. He went always handsomely dressed, and was perfectly well received every where: he visited the principal ladies of the city, and among others, the Marchioness of Almenara, a widow of seventy-two years of age, who, by her engaging behaviour and agreeable wit, allured the whole nobility of Cordova to her house. Men as well as women delighted in her conversation, and her family was styled, *the polite company*.

My master, who was one of the most assiduous visitors of that lady, came home from her house, one evening, with an enlivened look that was not natural to him: upon which, I said, "Signior, you seem to be strangely elevated; may your faithful servant ask the cause? hath not something extraordinary happened?" The knight smiled at that question, and owned he was actually engrossed by a serious conversation which he had enjoyed with the Marchioness of Almenara. "I heartily wish," said I, laughing, "that the superannuated toast may have made a declaration of love to you."—"Jesting apart," answered he; "know, my friend, that I am really beloved by the marchioness." "Chevalier," said she to me, "I know the smallness of your fortune, as well as the nobleness of your birth: I have an inclination for you, and am resolved

to make you easy in your circumstances, by marrying you, as I cannot decently make your fortune any other way. I know very well that this marriage will bring upon me the ridicule of the world; that scandal will be very busy at my expence; and that, in short, I shall pass for an old fool, who must needs have another husband. No matter; I intend to despise slander, in order to make you happy. All that I fear," added she, "is, that you may possibly have a reluctance to comply with my intentions." This," continued the knight, "is the subject of her discourse, which surprised me the more, as she is the most virtuous and prudent woman of Cordova. I answered, therefore, "I was astonished she should do me the honour of offering me her hand; she who had always persisted in the resolution of preserving her widowhood to the last. To this she replied, that having a considerable estate, she should be glad in her life-time to share it with a man of honour whom she esteemed."—"You are then, I suppose," said I, "determined to hazard the leap."—"Can't thou doubt it?" he replied: "the marchioness possesses immense wealth, together with excellent qualities both of the heart and head; and I must have lost my judgment indeed, if I rejected such an advantageous settlement."

I very much approved of my master's design to lay hold of this fair occasion to make his fortune, and even advised him to push matters, so much was I afraid to see her inclinations change. Luckily, the lady, who had the affair still more at heart than I had, gave such expeditious orders, that the preparations were soon made for her marriage. As soon as it was known at Cordova, that the old Marchioness of Almenara was going to marry young Don Manriquez de Medrano, the wits began to make themselves merry at the widow's expence: but in vain did they exhaust their stock of raillery; they could not divert her from her design; she let the whole city talk, and followed her knight to the altar: their nuptials were celebrated with such splendor as afforded new matter for scandal. "The bride," said they,

" might have, at least, for the sake of
" decency, suppressed all noise and
" pomp, which but ill becomes old wi-
" dows who marry young husbands."

" The marchioness, instead of ap-
" pearing ashamed of being, at her
" age, wife to the chevalier, indulged
" herself, without constraint, in the
" joy which she felt on this occa-
" sion; she had a grand entertainment
" at her house, accompanied by a con-
" cert of musick, and the feast ended
" in a ball, at which were present
" all the nobility of Cordova. To-
" wards the end of the ball, our new-
" married couple slipped off and met in
" an apartment, where, being shut up
" with a waiting-woman and me, the
" marchioness addressed herself to my
" master in these words: " Don Man-
" riquez, this is your apartment: mine
" is in another part of the house: we
" will pass the night in separate cham-
" bers, and in the day we will live
" together like mother and son." The
" knight was at first mistaken, and be-
" lieved that the lady talked thus only
" to engage him to offer soft violence
" to her delicacy: imagining, there-
" fore, that he ought, out of pure po-
" liteness, to act the passionate lover,
" he approached her, and eagerly en-
" deavoured to serve her in quality of
" valet de chambre; but she, far from
" allowing him to undress her, pushed
" him away with a serious air, saying,
" Hold, Don Manriquez; if you take
" me for one of those amorous old wi-
" dows who marry again out of frailty,
" you are deceived; I did not espouse
" you to make you buy the advantages
" which you will reap from our con-
" tract of marriage; these are the pure
" offerings of my heart, and I exact
" nothing in return but sentiments of
" friendship." So saying, she left my
" master and me in our apartment, and
" retired into her own, with her wait-
" ing-maid, absolutely forbidding the
" chevalier to follow her.

" After her retreat, we remained a
" good while confounded at what we
" had heard. " Scipio," said my ma-
" ster, " didst thou ever hear such a
" discourse as that of the marchioness?
" What dost thou think of such a
" lady?"—" I think, Sir," answered
" I, " that she has not her fellow;
" you are happy in having such a wife,
" which is like the possession of a be-

" nefice without cure of souls."—
" As for my part," replied Don Man-
" riquez, " I admire a spouse of such
" an inestimable character, and I in-
" tend to compensate, with all ima-
" ginable attention, the sacrifice which
" she makes to her delicacy." Having
" conversed some time about the lady,
" we went to rest; I upon a truckle-
" bed in a wardrobe, and my master
" in a fine bed prepared for him, where
" I believe, at bottom, he was not sorry
" to lie alone, and to be quit for his
" fear only.

" The rejoicings began again next
" day, and the new-married lady ap-
" peared in such good humour as to
" afford scope to the railers. She was
" the first to laugh at what they said;
" nay, even excited others to laugh,
" by receiving their sallies with a good
" grace. The knight, for his part,
" seemed no less satisfied with his
" spouse; and, by the tender glances
" with which he looked and spoke to
" her, one would have thought that old
" age was his taste. This happy couple
" had in the evening a new conversa-
" tion, in which it was decided, that,
" without disturbing one another, they
" should live, for the future, in the
" same manner as before marriage;
" meanwhile I must do Don Manri-
" quez the justice to say, that, out of
" consideration for his wife, he did what
" few husbands would have done in
" his place: he abandoned a girl in
" the city, whom he loved, and of
" whom he was beloved; being re-
" solved, as he said, to maintain no
" commerce which would seem to in-
" fult the delicate conduct of his wife
" towards him.

" While he gave this old lady such
" strong marks of gratitude, she re-
" paid them with usury, though she
" was ignorant of this behaviour; and
" made him master of her strong-box,
" which was even better replenished
" than that of Velasquez. As she had
" retrenched her house-keeping during
" her widowhood, she put it again on
" the same footing on which it had
" been in the life-time of her first hus-
" band: she increased the number of
" her servants, filled her stable with
" horses and mules; in a word, by her
" generosity, the chevalier, who was
" the poorest, became the richest knight
" of Alcantara. You will ask, per-
" haps,

haps, what I got by all this? I received fifty pistoles from my mistress, and one hundred from my master, who, moreover, made me his secretary, with an appointment of five hundred crowns; he had even so much confidence in my integrity, that he created me his treasurer.

‘His treasurer!’ cried I, interrupting Scipio, with a loud laugh. ‘Yes, Sir,’ he replied with a dry serious look; ‘no less than his treasurer; and I’ll venture to say, that I acquitted myself in that employment with honour. True it is, I am perhaps somewhat indebted to cash: for, as I took my wages per advance, and quitted the knight’s service suddenly, it is not impossible that I may now be in arrears: at any rate, it is the last reproach that I have deserved, having always acted with probity since that time.

‘I was, therefore,’ continued the son of Coscolina, ‘secretary and treasurer to Don Manriquez, who seemed as well satisfied with me as I was with him; when he received a letter from Toledo, importing, that his aunt Donna Theodora Moscoso was at the point of death. He set out instantly to see that lady, who had been a mother to him for many years; and I accompanied him in this journey, together with a valet de chambre and one lacquey. Being all mounted on the best horses in our stables, we soon got to Toledo, where we found Donna Theodora in such a condition as gave us hopes that she would not die of that distemper; and truly our prognostick, though contrary to that of an old physician who attended her, was verified by the event.

‘While the health of our good aunt was re-establishing, less, perhaps, by the remedies she took, than by the presence of her dear nephew, Mr. Treasurer passed his time as agreeably as he could, with young people, whose acquaintance soon introduced him to occasions of spending his money. They sometimes carried me to the tennis-court, where they engaged me in play; and, as I was not so expert a gamester as my master Don Abel, I lost much oftener than I won. I conceived insensibly an inclination for play; and if I had

entirely abandoned myself to that passion, it would, doubtless, have compelled me to take from our cash some quarters of my allowance per advance; but luckily, love saved both my own virtue and my master’s money. One day, as I passed by the church de los Reyes I perceived through a lattice, the curtains of which were withdrawn, a young maid who seemed rather a divinity than a mortal. I would use a term still stronger, if there was any, to denote the impression which she made upon my heart. I made it my business to get information about her; and, by dint of enquiry, learned that her name was Beatrice, and that she was waiting-maid to Donna Julia, second daughter of the Count de Polan.’

Beatrice interrupted Scipio with a loud laugh; then addressing herself to my wife, ‘Beautiful Antonia,’ said she, ‘pray, look steadfastly at me. Don’t you think I have the air of a divinity?’—‘You had at that time, in my eyes,’ said Scipio to her; ‘and since I no longer suspect your fidelity, you seem to me fairer than ever.’ My secretary, after such a gallant repartee, pursued his history thus.

‘This discovery quite inflamed me; not indeed with a legitimate ardour, for I imagined that I should easily triumph over her virtue, by presents capable of shaking it; but I judged amiss of the chaste Beatrice. In vain did I offer her (by means of mercenary women) my purse and affection; she rejected my proposals with disdain. Her resistance encreased my desires. I had recourse to the last expedient, and offered my hand, which she accepted, when she knew that I was secretary and treasurer to Don Manriquez. As we thought it convenient to conceal our marriage for some time, we were wedded privately, in presence of Dame Lorença Seraphora, governess of Seraphina, and some other domesticks belonging to the Duke de Polan. As soon as I had married Beatrice, she facilitated the means of seeing and conversing with her at night in the garden, in which I introduced myself by a little door, of which she gave me the key. Never were man and wife happier in one another than Beatrice and I. We waited with equal impatience for

the hour of rendezvous, ran thither with equal eagerness; and the time which we spent together, though it was sometimes pretty long, seemed but a moment to both.

One night, which was as fatal to me as the others had been propitious, I was surprized, at entering the garden, to find the little door open. I was alarmed by this uncommon event, from whence I conceived a bad omen. I grew pale and trembled, as if I had foreseen what was to happen; and advancing in the dark towards an arbour where I used to converse with my wife, I heard the voice of a man. I stopped all of a sudden to listen, and my ear was immediately saluted with these words, "Don't let me languish then, my dear Beatrice! compleat my happiness, and consider that your fortune is connected with it." Instead of having patience to hear him to an end, I thought there was no occasion for knowing more. A jealous fury took possession of my soul; and, breathing nothing but vengeance, I drew my sword, and went hastily into the arbour. "Ah! cowardly seducer!" cried I; "whosoever thou art, thou shalt sooner deprive me of life than rob me of my honour." So saying, I attacked the cavalier who was talking to Beatrice. He put himself immediately into a posture of defence, and fought like a man who understood the art much better than I, who had only received a few lessons at Cordova. Nevertheless, swordsman as he was, I made a push which he could not parry, or rather his foot slipped. I saw him fall; and, imagining that I had wounded him mortally, fled as fast as my legs could carry me, without answering Beatrice, who called me.

"Yes, really," said his wife, interrupting him, "I called in order to undeceive him. The cavalier with whom I conversed was no other than Don Fernando de Leyva. That nobleman, who loved my mistress Julia, had formed a resolution of carrying her off by force, believing it impossible to obtain her by any other means; and I myself had given him a meeting in the garden, to concert with him the steps of that undertaking, on which he assured me my fortune

depended: but in vain did I call my husband; he avoided me as a wife who had been unfaithful to him."

"My situation at that time was such," resumed Scipio, "as rendered me capable of committing any thing. Those who know by experience what jealousy is, and to what extravagance it drives the soundest understandings, will not be surprized at the disorder which it produced in my weak brain. I underwent a momentary transition from one extreme to another. I felt the emotions of hatred succeed those of tenderness, which I had entertained for my wife a moment before, and made an oath to abandon and banish her from my memory. Besides, I thought I had killed a cavalier; and, in that opinion, being afraid of falling into the hands of justice, suffered that inconceivable anxiety which incessantly pursues, like a fury, the man who has done a bad action. In this horrible situation, my whole care being to escape, I did not go home, but instantly quitted Toledo, having no other baggage than the cloaths on my back. True, indeed, I had in my pocket sixty pistoles, which were a pretty good resource to a young man who proposed to live all his life in service.

"I walked all night long, or rather ran; for the images of alguazils, which continually haunted my imagination, supplied me still with new vigour; and the morning surprized me between Rodillas and Maqueda. When I arrived at this last town, finding myself a little fatigued, I went into the church as soon as it was open; and, after having put up a short prayer, sat down upon a bench to rest me. I began to muse upon my present situation, which, Heaven knows, was perplexing enough; but I had not time to make long reflections. I heard the church echo with two or three smacks of a whip, which making me conclude that a carrier was passing, I got up immediately to see whether or not I was mistaken; and, by that time I got to the door, perceived one, who, being mounted on a mule, lead two more in a leash. "Stop, friend," said I to him; "where are those mules a-going?"—"To Madrid," answered he. "I came hither with

"two

"two good Dominican monks, and am going back myself." The opportunity that offered of travelling to Madrid, inspired me with an inclination to go thither. I made a bargain with the carrier, mounted one of his mules, and we pushed forwards for Illescas, where we were to sleep. Scarce had we got out of Maqueda, when the carrier, who was a man between thirty-five and forty years of age, thundered out church-singing with vast vociferation: he began with the prayers which the canons sing at mattins, then sung the *credo*, as it is sung at high mass; and passing on to vespers, pronounced them, without even sparing the *magnificat*. Although the rogue stunned me with his noise, I could not help laughing, and even encouraged him to continue, when he was obliged to stop and take breath. "Courage, friend!" said I to him; "pray, go on: if Heaven hath given you good lungs, I see you don't put them to a bad use."—"No, indeed," cried he; "I am not, thank God, like the most part of carriers, who sing nothing but infamous or impious songs: I would not even repeat ballads made upon our wars with the Moors; for these are things frivolous, if not wicked."—"You have," said I, "a purity of heart rarely to be met with among muleteers: with this extreme delicacy in the choice of your songs, have you likewise made a vow of chastity with regard to the young wenches who live at inns upon the road?"—"Certainly," answered he. "Continence is another thing on which I pique myself in these sort of places, where I mind nothing but my mules." I was a little astonished to hear this phoenix of carriers talk in such a manner; and looking upon him as a man of honesty and discretion, entered into a conversation with him after he had sung his fill.

We arrived at Illescas in the twilight; where, alighting at an inn, I left the care of the mules to my companion, and went into the kitchen, where I ordered the landlord to procure a good supper. This he promised to do so effectually, that I should remember I had lodged at his

house the longest day I had to live. "Ask," said he, "ask your carrier what sort of a man I am. Ecod! I will defy all the cooks of Madrid and Toledo to make an *olla podrida* comparable to those that I compose. I will treat you this night with a ragout of rabbit dressed in my manner, and you shall see whether or not I have reason to boast of my skill." Thereupon, shewing me a sauce-pan, wherein there was (as he said) a young rabbit already minced; "There," added he, "is what I intend to give you. When I have once put in some pepper, salt, wine, a handful of sweet herbs, and other ingredients which I use in my sauces, I hope to serve you in a little time with a ragout worthy of a judge."

The landlord, after having thus founded his own praise, began to dress supper; and, while it was doing, I went into the hall, where, finding a kind of couch, I lay down to sleep off my fatigue, having had no rest the night before. In two hours the carrier wakening me, said, "Master, your supper is ready; come, if you please, and sit down at table." There was one in another room, with two covers, at which my fellow-traveller and I sitting down, the ragout was served. I attacked it with a greedy appetite, and found it of an exquisite relish, whether hunger made me judge too favourable of it, or that my satisfaction was the effect of the cook's skill. We had also a plate of roast mutton; and I remarking that the carrier did honour to this last dish only, asked, why he abstained from the other. He answered, with a smile, that he did not love ragouts. This reply, or rather the smile with which it was accompanied, seemed to me mysterious: "You conceal," said I, "the true reason that hinders you from eating the ragout; pray, do me the pleasure of letting me know it."—"Since you are so curious to know it," he replied, "I will tell you, that I have loathed all these sorts of ragouts, since, in going once from Toledo to Cuença, they brought me for supper, at an inn, an hashed cat instead of a rabbit, and that gave me a disgust at all fricassees." The carrier had no sooner spoke these words, than, in spite of the

hunger

hunger that devoured me, my appetite forsook me all of a sudden. I took it in my head that I had eaten of a pretended rabbit, and could no longer look at the ragout without making wry faces. My companion did not cure me of this conjecture, when he told me, that it was a common thing among the inn-keepers of Spain, as well as the pastry-cooks, to substitute that *quid pro quo*. This discourse, you see, was very consoling; and therefore I had not the least inclination to return to the ragout, nor even to touch the roast meat, lest the mutton might be as much sophisticated as the rabbit. I rose from table, cursing the ragout, the landlord, and his inn; and, lying down again upon my settee, passed the rest of the night more quietly than I had expected. Next morning early, after having paid the landlord as handsomely as if I had been extremely well treated, I departed from Illescas, my imagination still so full of the ragout, that I fancied every animal which I saw was a cat.

I arrived in good time at Madrid, where, as soon as I had satisfied my carrier, I hired a small room near the Sun-gate. Mine eyes, though accustomed to quality, were dazzled by the great concourse of noblemen who usually appeared in the court-end of the town. I admired the prodigious quantity of coaches, and the infinite number of gentlemen, pages, and lacquies, who attended the great. My admiration redoubled, when, going to the king's levee, I beheld that monarch surrounded by his courtiers. I was charmed at the sight, and said within myself, "I am no longer surprized at what I have heard, that one cannot possibly conceive the magnificence of the court of Madrid, without being an eye-witness of it: I am overjoyed at my coming hither, where I foresee I shall be able to do something." All that I could perform, however, was to contract a few unprofitable acquaintances. I gradually spent all my money, and thought myself very lucky in having an opportunity of bestowing myself with all my merit, upon a pedant of Salamanca, whom a family-affair had

brought to Madrid, where he was born, and with whom I grew acquainted by accident. I became his *factotum*; and, when he returned to the university, followed him thither.

The name of my new patron was Don Ignacio de Ipigna. He assumed the Don, because he had been preceptor to a duke, who, by way of recompence, settled upon him a pension for life; he enjoyed another as *emeritus* professor of the college; and he drew yearly from the publick a revenue of two or three hundred pistoles, by the books of dogmatical morality which he printed. The manner in which he composed his works well deserves honourable mention. He spent almost all the day in reading Hebrew, Greek, and Latin authors, and in writing upon small squares of paper each apothegm or brilliant thought which he met with. As these squares were filled, he employed me to string them upon wire, in form of a garland, and each garland made a volume. What a world of bad books did we compose! every month almost we finished two volumes, and immediately the press groaned with them. What was most surprizing, he published these his compilings as performances entirely new; and if the criticks thought proper to upbraid him with having pillaged the ancients, he would answer with most haughty assurance, "*Furto letamur in ipso*."

He was also a great commentator; and there was so much erudition in his annotations, that he frequently made remarks on things scarce worthy to be observed; and sometimes wrote upon his paper-squares passages from Hesiod, and other authors, very little to the purpose. That I improved my understanding in the service of this virtuoso, it would be ungrateful in me to deny. I brought my hand-writing to perfection by dint of transcribing his works; and as, in treating me like a pupil, rather than a valet, he took care to cultivate my capacity, he was also far from neglecting my morals. "Scipio," he would say, when he heard of any piece of knavery committed by a servant, "beware, my child, of following the bad example of that rogue; a valet ought to serve his ma-
" *ster*."

"Her with equal fidelity and zeal." In a word, Don Ignacio left no occasion of inculcating virtue in me; and his exhortations had such good effect that I was never in the least tempted to play him a trick during the fifteen months which I spent in his house.

I have already observed, that Dr. de Ipigna was originally of Madrid, where he had a kinswoman called Catalina, chamber-maid to the prince's nurse. This waiting-maid, who is the same whom I since made use of to procure Signior de Santillane's enlargement from the tower of Segovia, being desirous of doing a good office for Don Ignacio, engaged her mistress to ask a benefice for him from the Duke of Lerma. That minister granted him a nomination to the archdeaconry of Grenada, which being a conquered country, is in the gift of the king. We set out for Madrid, as soon as we learned this piece of news, the doctor intending to thank his benefactresses before he departed to Grenada. I had more than one opportunity of seeing and speaking to Catalina, who was pleased with my easy air and gay disposition. For my part, I found her so much to my liking, that I could not help making suitable returns to the little marks of friendship which she bestowed upon me. In fine, we contracted a mutual attachment.—Forgive this confession, my dear Beatrice: as I believed you false, that mistake ought to screen me from your reproaches.

Meanwhile Dr. Don Ignacio, preparing for his departure to Grenada, his relation and I, frightened at the separation that threatened us, had recourse to an expedient which preserved us from that misfortune. I feigned myself sick, complained of my head and breast, and affected all the symptoms of a most violent distemper. My master called a physician, who having examined me with care, sincerely owned that my distemper was a very serious matter; and that, in all likelihood, I should keep my chamber a long time.

The doctor, impatient to be at his cathedral, did not think proper to delay his departure, but took another young man into his service, leaving me to the care of a nurse,

with whom he deposited a sum of money, to defray the expence of my funeral if I should die, or to recompense my service if I should recover of my disease. As soon as I understood that Don Ignacio was gone, all my complaints vanished. I got out of bed, dismissed my physician who had so much penetration, and got rid of my nurse, who stole more than half of the money with which she had been entrusted in my behalf. While I acted this part, Catalina performed another with her mistress Donna Anna de Guerva, whom, by persuading her that I was admirable in intrigues, she induced to chuse me for one of her agents. Madam Nurse, whom her avarice always stimulated to new undertakings, having occasion for such people, received me into her family, and in a little time put my abilities to the proof. She gave me commissions which required some address; and, without vanity, I did not acquit myself amiss: wherefore she was as well pleased with me as I had cause to be dissatisfied with her. This lady was so covetous, that she would not allow me the least share of the fruits which she reaped from my industry and trouble. She imagined, that she acted with great generosity in paying my wages punctually. This excess of avarice would have soon induced me to quit her service, had I not been retained by the affection of Catalina, which kindling every day more and more, she proposed, in a formal manner, that I should take her to wife.

"Softly, my dear," said I; "that ceremony can't be performed between us so soon. I must first be convinced of the death of a young woman who got the start of you, and to whom (for my sins) I am married."—"Not you, indeed," replied Catalina; "you only say so to conceal, in a polite manner, the reluctance you have to wed me." In vain did I protest that I spoke the truth. She looked upon my sincere confession as a shift; and, being offended at it, changed her behaviour towards me. We did not quarrel; but our correspondence visibly cooled, and we no longer retained for one another any other sentiments

than

‘ than those of decency and common regard.

‘ At this juncture, I heard that Signior Gil Blas de Santillane, secretary to the prime-minister of the Spanish monarchy, wanted a lacquey ; and this place flattered me the more, as it was represented the most agreeable one that I could possess. “ Signior de Santillane,” said people to me, “ is a person beloved by the Duke of Lerma, and of consequence cannot fail of pushing his fortune a great way : besides, he is very generous ; so that, in managing his affairs, you will effectually improve your own.” I did not neglect this opportunity. I went immediately, and presented myself to Signior Gil Blas, for whom at first sight I found a growing inclination, and who admitted me into his service on account of my physiognomy. I did not hesitate on quitting the nurse for him ; and, if it please Heaven, he shall be my last master.’

Here Scipio finished his history ; then addressing himself to me, ‘ Signior de Santillane,’ said he, ‘ pray

‘ witness for me to these ladies, that you have always found me a zealous and faithful servant. I have need of your testimony to persuade them that the son of Coscolina has purged his morals, and that virtuous sentiments have succeeded his vicious inclination.’

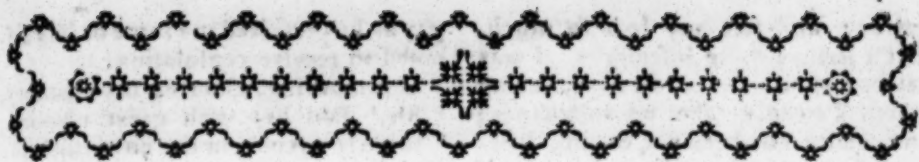
‘ Yes,’ ladies,’ said I, ‘ this is what I can answer for : if Scipio, in his childhood, was a real *picaro*, he has corrected his conduct so well since that time, that he is now the model of a perfect servant. Far from having cause to blame his behaviour towards me, I must own that I lie under great obligations to him. The night on which I was apprehended, to be carried to the tower of Segovia, he saved from pillage and secured a part of my effects, which he might have appropriated to himself with impunity. He not only preserved my money, but also, through pure friendship, came and shut himself up with me in prison, preferring the melancholy pleasure of sharing my sorrows to all the charms of liberty.’

END OF THE TENTH BOOK.

THE

GIL
JO
A
C
A
T

and
the n
band
well
with
almo
was
the w
ter, A
bring
tary
for th
with
of Pl



THE
A D V E N T U R E S
O F
G I L B L A S
O F
S A N T I L L A N E.
B O O K X I.

CHAP. I.

GILBLAS IS OVERWHELMED WITH JOY, WHICH IS DISTURBED BY A MELANCHOLY EVENT. SUCH CHANGES HAPPEN AT COURT, AS INDUCE SANTILLANE TO GO THITHER AGAIN.



I Have already observed, that there was great harmony between Antonia and Beatrice; the last being used to live like a submissive waiting-woman, and the other habituating herself to act the mistress. Scipio and I were husbands of too much gallantry, and too well beloved by our wives, to be long without children: they grew pregnant almost at the same time. Beatrice, who was the first delivered, brought into the world a girl; and a few days after, Antonia crowned my happiness in bringing forth a boy. I sent my secretary to Valencia with this piece of news for the governor, who came to Lirias with Seraphina, and the Marchioness of Pliego, to stand godmothers to the

children, being pleased to add this token of affection to those I had already received. My son, whose godfather and godmother were that nobleman and the marchioness, was christened Alphonso; and my lady governess, willing that I should have the honour of being doubly her gossip, stood with me for Scipio's daughter, to whom we gave the name of Seraphina.

Not only the people of my family were rejoiced at the birth of my son, the inhabitants of Lirias likewise celebrated it by feasts; which shewed that the whole village partook of their master's pleasure. But, alas! our rejoicings were not of long duration; or rather, they were all of a sudden converted into groans, complaints, and lamentations, by an event which more than twenty years have not been able to make me forget, and which will ever be present to my thoughts: my son died; and his mother, though safely delivered, soon followed him; a violent fever robbed me of my dear wife, fourteen months after we had been married! Let the reader conceive, if possible, the sorrow with which I was seized. I fell into a state of stupid de-

jection; and felt my loss so much, that I seemed quite insensible. I was in this condition five or six days, during which I would take no sustenance; and, had it not been for Scipio, I believe I should either have let myself die of hunger, or have lost my reason entirely; but that dexterous secretary found means to beguile my grief by conforming himself to it; he made me swallow broths, by the art of presenting them with such a mortified look, as if he gave them, not so much with a view of preserving my life, as of nursing my affliction.

This affectionate servant having written to Don Alphonso an account of my misfortune, and the deplorable situation in which I was, that tender and compassionate nobleman, that generous friend, repaired immediately to Lirias. I cannot, without being melted, recal the moment in which he presented himself to my view: 'My dear Santillane!' said he, embracing me, 'I am not come hither to console you; I am come to mourn with you for Antonia, as you would mourn with me, had Fate robbed me of my Seraphina.' In effect, he shed tears, and mingled his sighs with mine: so that, overwhelmed as I was with sorrow, I had a lively sense of Don Alphonso's goodness.

This governor having had a long conference with Scipio about the means of vanquishing my grief, they concluded that I must, for some time, be removed from Lirias, where every thing recalled incessantly to my mind the image of my poor Antonia. Upon this, Don Cæsar's son proposed to carry me with him to Valencia, and my secretary seconded him so well, that I yielded to his proposal. I left Scipio and his wife at my house, every part of which, indeed, served only to increase my affliction, and set out with the governor. When I arrived at Valencia, Don Cæsar and his daughter-in-law spared nothing to divert my chagrin; they entertained me by turns with all the amusements that seemed proper to dispel it; but, in spite of all their endeavours, I continued as much as ever plunged in the most profound melancholy. It was not Scipio's fault that I did not resume my tranquillity: he came often from Lirias to Valencia, to know how I was, and returned sad or

gay as he perceived me more or less disposed to receive consolation.

One morning, entering my chamber, 'Sir,' said he, with great emotion, 'there is a report in the city which interests the whole kingdom; it is said that Philip the Third is no more, and that the prince his son is now upon the throne: nay, more,' added he, 'that the Cardinal Duke of Lerma has lost his post; that he is even forbid the court; and that Don Gaspard de Guzman, Count d'Olivarez, is now prime-minister.' I felt myself agitated by this piece of news, without knowing wherefore; and Scipio perceiving it, asked if I was any how affected by this great change. 'Why should it affect me, my child?' said I; 'I have quitted the court, and ought to look with indifference upon all the changes that can happen there.'

'For a man of your age,' replied the son of Coscolina, 'you are very much detached from the world; were I in your place, I should have a longing desire to go to Madrid, and shew my face to the young monarch, to see if he would remember me; this is a pleasure in which I would indulge myself.'—'I understand thee,' said I; 'thou wouldst have me return to court, and try Fortune anew, or rather to grow ambitious and covetous again.'—'Why should your morals be corrupted?' answered Scipio: 'have more confidence in your own virtue; I will answer for your conduct; the wholesome reflections which you made upon the court during your disgrace will screen you from the perils of it: re-embark boldly upon a sea, the shelves of which you are so well acquainted with.'—'Peace, flatterer!' said I, interrupting him with a smile; 'art thou tired of seeing me lead a quiet life? I thought thou hadst a greater regard for my repose.'

In this part of our conversation, Don Cæsar and his son coming in, confirmed the news of the king's death, as well as the Duke of Lerma's misfortune; they moreover told me, that this minister having asked leave to return to Rome, it was refused; and he was ordered to repair to his marquissate at Denia: then, as if they had been in concert with my secretary, they advised

vised me to go Madrid, and present myself to the new king, since I was known to him, and had even done him such service as the great always recompense with pleasure. 'As for my part,' said Don Alphonso, 'I don't doubt but he will be grateful; and that Philip the Fourth will pay the debts of the Prince of Spain.'—'I am of the same opinion,' said Don Caesar; 'and look upon Santillane's journey to court as an occasion for him to arrive at great preferment.'

'Truly, gentlemen,' cried I, 'you don't consider what you say; to hear you, one would think I had nothing to do but repair to Madrid, in order to have the golden key, or some government, conferred upon me: you are mistaken; I am, on the contrary, persuaded that the king would take no notice of my person, were I to present myself to his view: but I will do it, if you desire, in order to disabuse you.' The noblemen of Leyva took me at my word, and I could not help promising that I would immediately set out for Madrid. As soon as my secretary saw me determined on the journey, he felt an immoderate joy: he imagined that I should no sooner appear before the new monarch than that prince would distinguish me in the crowd, and load me with honours and wealth: thereupon, feeding his fancy with the most splendid chimeras, he raised me to the first offices of the state, and preferred himself by the help of my elevation.

I got ready, therefore, to return to court; not with a view of sacrificing again to Fortune, but to satisfy Don Caesar and his son, who imagined that I should soon possess the favour of my sovereign. True it is, I myself felt at bottom some desire of trying if the young prince would know me again: attracted by this emotion of curiosity, without hope or design of reaping any advantage from the new reign, I departed with Scipio for Madrid, leaving the care of my house to Beatrice, who was an excellent economist.

CHAP. II.

GIL BLAS ARRIVES AT MADRID, AND APPEARS AT COURT; THE KING REMEMBERS AND RECOMMENDS HIM TO HIS PRIME-

MINISTER. THE CONSEQUENCE OF THAT RECOMMENDATION.

WE gained Madrid in less than eight days, Don Alphonso having accommodated us with two of his best horses, that we might make the greater dispatch; and we alighted at a furnished house where I lodged before, belonging to Vincent Forrero, my old landlord, who was very glad to see me again.

As this was a man who piqued himself upon knowing every thing that happened, both at court and city, I asked if there was any thing new. 'A great many things,' answered he: 'since the death of Philip III. the friends and partizans of the Cardinal Duke of Lerma have bestirred themselves to maintain his eminence in the ministry; but their efforts have been ineffectual: the Count d'Olivarez has got the better of them all. It is said, that Spain loses nothing by the change, and that the new prime-minister has a genius of such vast extent, that he is able to govern the whole world: Heaven preserve him! What is certain,' added he, 'is, that the people have conceived the highest opinion of his capacity; and we shall see, in the end, whether the Duke of Lerma's place is well or ill supplied.' Forrero having thus opened, gave me an account of all the changes which had been made at court since the Count d'Olivarez steered the helm of the monarchy.

Two days after my arrival at Madrid, I went to court in the afternoon, and put myself in the king's way, as he went into his closet: but he did not look at me. I returned next day to the same place, but was not more fortunate. The third time, he cast his eye upon me as he passed, but seemed to take no notice of my person; whereupon I came to a determination, and said to Scipio, who accompanied me, 'Thou seest that the king does not remember me; or, if he does, has no mind to renew the acquaintance: I believe it will not be amiss for us to set out upon our return to Valencia.'—'Not so fast, Sir,' replied my secretary; 'you know better than I, that success at court is only to be obtained by patience: don't cease shewing yourself to the prince; by dint of

‘perseverance in appearing before him’
‘you will oblige him to consider you
‘more attentively, and to recognize
‘the features of his agent with the
‘fair Catalina.’

That Scipio might have nothing to reproach me with, I had the complaisance to continue the same conduct during three weeks; and one day, at length, the monarch, struck with my appearance, ordered me to be called in; and I entered his closet, not without great disorder to find myself *tête à tête* with my sovereign. ‘Who are you?’ said he; ‘I remember your face, but cannot recollect where I have seen you.’—‘Sir,’ answered I, trembling, ‘I had the honour to conduct your majesty one night, with the Count de Lemos, to the house of —’ ‘Oh! I remember it,’ said the prince, interrupting me, ‘you was secretary to the Duke of Lerma, and, if I am not mistaken, your name is Santillane. I have not forgot that you served me with abundance of zeal on the occasion, and that you was very ill rewarded for your pains: was not you imprisoned for that adventure?’—‘Yes, Sir,’ said I; ‘I was six months in the tower of Segovia, from whence your goodness delivered me.’—‘That,’ answered he, ‘does not acquit me of the obligation; it is not enough to set you at liberty, I ought to recompense you for the misfortune which you suffered for love of me.’

Just as the prince had pronounced these words, the Count d’Olivarez entered the closet. A favourite takes umbrage at every thing: he was astonished to find a stranger there; and the king redoubled his surprize, in saying to him, ‘Count, I recommend this young man to you; employ him in some shape or other, and take care of his advancement.’ The minister affected to receive this order with a gracious look, eyeing me from head to foot, and very anxious to know who I was. ‘Go, friend,’ said the monarch to me, making a sign for me to retire; ‘the count will not fail to employ you in an advantageous manner, both for my service and your own interest.’

I immediately quitted the closet,

and rejoined the son of Coscolina, who, extremely impatient to know what the king had said to me, remained in the utmost agitation. He asked me forthwith, whether we must return to Valencia or stay at court. ‘Thou shalt judge,’ said I: then I overwhelmed him with joy, in recounting to him, word for word, the short conversation which I had with the king. ‘My dear master,’ said Scipio to me, when he heard it, ‘will you distrust my almannacks again? Confess that the Lords of Leyva and I were not to blame, in exhorting you to take a trip to Madrid. I already see you in some eminent post; you will become the Calderona of Count d’Olivarez.’—‘That is not at all what I wish,’ said I, interrupting him; ‘I have no ambition for a place which is environed with so many precipices. I would rather have an employment in which I should have no occasion to do injustice, or carry on a shameful traffick of my prince’s favour: after the use I made of my past credit, I cannot be too much upon my guard against avarice and ambition.’—‘Come, Sir,’ replied my secretary, ‘the minister will give you some good post, which you may fill without ceasing to be an honest man.’

More urged by Scipio than by my own curiosity, I went next day to the house of Count d’Olivarez before sunrise; having been informed, that every morning, in summer and winter, he gave audience by candle-light. I modestly took my station in the corner of the hall, from whence I narrowly observed the count when he appeared; for I had but a superficial view of him in the king’s closet: he was taller than the middle-size, and might have passed for a fat man in a country where we see none almost but lean people; his shoulders were so high, that I thought him hunch-backed, though he was not so; his head, which was extremely large, hung down upon his breast; his hair was black and straight, his visage long, his complexion of an olive colour, his mouth sunk in, and his chin peaked and turned upwards at the end*.

All this together could not make a

* It was likely, on account of his disadvantageous figure, that he generally gave audience from his couch, or received people sitting.

very handsome appearance ; nevertheless, as I believed him to be well disposed towards me, I looked upon him with a favourable eye, and even found him agreeable. True it is, he treated every body with an affable and pleasant air, and very graciously received the memorials which were presented to him; and this seemed to supply the place of a good person. Meanwhile, when I advanced in my turn to salute him, and make myself known, he darted a rude and threatening look at me ; then turning his back, without deigning to hear me, returned into his closet. I now thought him more ugly than he was naturally, went out of the hall very much confounded at such an unfavourable reception, and did not know what to think of the matter.

Having rejoined Scipio, who waited for me at the door, 'Dost thou know,' said I, 'what reception I have met with?'—'No,' answered he; 'but it is not difficult to guess: the minister, ready to conform himself to the pleasure of his prince, has doubtless offered you some considerable employment.'—'There you are mistaken,' I replied; telling him at the same time in what manner I had been received. Having listened attentively, he said, 'The count must have forgot you, or mistaken you for somebody else; I advise you to wait on him again, and I am sure he will treat you with another sort of look.' I followed my secretary's advice, and presented myself the second time before the minister, who treated me still worse than at first, frowned at me as if the sight of me had given him pain, turned his eyes another way, and retired without speaking one word.

I was touched to the quick by his behaviour, and tempted to depart immediately for Valencia: but this Scipio did not fail to oppose, being unwilling to renounce the hopes which he had conceived. 'Dost thou not see,' said I to him, 'that the count wants to remove me from court? The king has expressed to him some regard for me, and that is sufficient to bring upon me the aversion of his favourite: let us yield, my child, let us yield with a good grace to the power of such a formidable foe.'—'Sir,' answered he, 'incensed against the Count d'Olivarez, I would not so easily quit my ground;

'I would go and complain to his majesty of the little regard which the minister shews to his recommendation.'—'Bad counsel, my friend!' said I: 'if I should take that imprudent step, I would soon repent it; nay, I believe, I run some risque in tarrying in this city.'

My secretary began to weigh these words; and considering that he had actually to do with a man who might make us revisit the tower of Segovia, he partook of my fear, and no longer opposed my desire of quitting Madrid, from whence I resolved to move the very next day.

CHAP. III.

GIL BLAS IS HINDERED FROM EXECUTING HIS RESOLUTION TO LEAVE THE COURT, AND RECEIVES AN IMPORTANT PIECE OF SERVICE FROM JOSEPH NAVARRO.

ON my return to my lodging I met my old friend Joseph Navarro, clerk of the kitchen to Don Balthazar de Zuniga. I went up to him, saluted him, and asked if he knew me, and if he would still be so good as to speak to a wretch who had repaid his friendship with ingratitude. 'You confess, then,' said he, 'that you have not used me extremely well?'—'Yes,' answered I; 'and you have a right to load me with reproaches: I deserve them all, if I have not already expiated my crime by the remorse which attended it.'—'Since you have repented of your fault,' replied Navarro, embracing me, 'I ought no longer to remember it.' I, on my part, hugged Joseph in my arms; and we resumed our former sentiments for each other.

He had heard of my imprisonment, and the disorder of my affairs, but was ignorant of what followed. I informed him of all, and even recounted to him the conversation I had with the king, not concealing the bad reception I had met with from the minister, no more than my design of retiring again to my solitude. 'Beware of going thither,' said he: 'since our monarch has expressed a friendship for you, it must certainly be of some service.

'Between

Between you and me, the Count d'Olivarez has a very singular disposition, and is full of whims: he sometimes, as on this occasion, acts in a very unaccountable manner; and nobody but himself has the key of his irregular behaviour. In short, whatever reasons he may have for receiving you in this manner, stick close to the business; he will not hinder you from profiting by the prince's bounty; this is what I assure you: I will mention it this evening to Signior Don Balthazar de Zuniga, my master, who is uncle to the Count d'Olivarez, and shares with him the cares of government.' Navarro having told me this, asked a direction to my lodging; and so we parted.

It was not long before I saw him again. Coming to me next day, Signior de Santillane, said he, 'you have a protector in my master, who will favour you with his support. On account of the good character which I gave of you, he has promised to speak in your behalf to his nephew the Count d'Olivarez, whom I hope he will prepossess in your favour.' My friend Navarro, who did not serve me by halves, introduced me two days after to Don Balthazar, who said to me, with a courteous look, 'Signior de Santillane, your friend Joseph has spoke so well of you as to engage me in your interests.' I made a profound bow to Signior de Zuniga; and answered, that I should all my life have a lively sense of the obligation I lay under to Navarro, for having procured for me the protection of a minister who was justly styled, *the light of the council*. Don Balthazar, at this flattering reply, clapped me on the shoulder, saying, with a smile, 'You may go again to-morrow to the levee of the Count d'Olivarez, with whom you will be better satisfied than before.'

I appeared therefore the third time before the prime-minister; who, having distinguished me in the crowd, honoured me with a smiling look, from whence I conceived a good omen. 'This goes well,' said I to myself: 'the uncle has made the nephew hear reason.' I now expected a favourable reception, and my expectation was fulfilled: the count, after having given audience to every body, sent for me

to his closet, where he said to me, with a familiar air, 'Friend Santillane, forgive me for having thrown thee into perplexity for my diversion; I pleased myself with giving thee uneasiness, in order to try thy prudence, and see what thou wouldst do in thy chagrin. I don't doubt that thou thought'st I was displeased with thee; but, on the contrary, my child, I own I have a liking to thy person. Though the king my master had not ordered me to take care of thy fortune, I should have done it through pure inclination. Besides, my uncle, Don Balthazar de Zuniga, to whom I can refuse nothing, has desired me to look upon thee as one for whom he interests himself: this is enough to determine me in thy favour.' This declaration made such a strong impression upon my senses, that they were quite disordered. I threw myself at the feet of the minister; who, having bid me rise, went on in this manner: 'Come hither again this afternoon, and call for my steward, who will impart to thee the orders I shall give him.' So saying, his excellency went out to hear mass, as he usually did every day, after having given audience; and then repaired to the king's levee.

CHAP. IV.

GIL BLAS ACQUIRES THE LOVE OF THE COUNT D'OLIVAREZ.

I did not fail to return in the afternoon, and call for the steward, whose name was Don Raymond Caporis. I no sooner told him my name, than saluting me with great demonstrations of respect, 'Signior,' said he, 'follow me, if you please: I will conduct you to the apartment which is destined for you in this house.' So saying, he carried me by a little stair to a range of five or six rooms, which composed the second story of one wing of the house, and which were very plainly furnished. 'This,' said he, 'is the lodging which his grace appoints for you; and here you will have a table with six covers, maintained at his expence. You will be served by his own domesticks, and there will always be a coach at your command. This is not all,' added he;

he; 'his excellency has ordered me to treat you with the same respect as if you was of the family of Guzman.' — 'What the deuce is the meaning of all this!' said I to myself. 'How am I to understand these distinctions? Is there not some mischief at bottom? and is it not for his diversion that the minister gives me such honourable treatment?' While I was in this uncertainty, fluctuating between hope and fear, a page came and told me, that the count wanted me. I went instantly to his grace, who being alone in his closet, 'Well, Santillane,' said he; 'art thou satisfied with thy appointment, and the orders which I have given to Don Raymond?' — 'The goodness of your excellency,' answered I, 'seems to be excessive; and I receive it with fear and trembling.' — 'For what reason?' said he. 'Can I do too much honour to a man whom the king has recommended to my care? No, indeed; I do no more than my duty in treating thee in an honourable manner: be not therefore surprized at what I do for thee; and be assured, that a solid and splendid fortune cannot escape thee, provided thou art as much attached to me, as thou wast to the Duke of Lerma. But, with regard to that nobleman,' added he, 'I have been told that you lived in great familiarity with him. I am curious to know how you two became acquainted, and what employment you exercised under that minister: disguise nothing; I insist upon hearing the whole truth.' I then remembered my perplexity with the Duke of Lerma in the same case, and in what manner I extricated myself; and this I practised again very successfully: that is to say, in my narration I softened the rough places, and passed slightly over those things which did not much redound to my honour: I likewise spared the Duke of Lerma;

though in doing otherwise I should have better pleased my hearer. As for Don Rodrigo de Calderona*, I gave him no quarter, but disclosed all the fine strokes which I knew he struck in the traffick of commanderies, governments, and benefices.

'What you tell me of Calderona,' said the minister, interrupting me, 'is conformable to several memorials which have been presented against him, and which contain heads of accusation still more important. His trial will soon come on; and if you wish his downfall, I believe your desire will be satisfied.' — 'I don't desire his death,' said I; 'though it was not his fault that I found not mine in the tower of Segovia, where he was the cause of my being imprisoned for a good many months.' — 'How!' cried his excellency; 'was Don Rodrigo the cause of thy imprisonment? this is what I did not know. Don Balthazar, to whom Navarro recounted thy history, told me that the late king ordered thee to be confined, as a punishment for having carried the prince of Spain to a suspected place in the night; but I knew no more of the matter; and I can't conceive what part Calderona could play in the piece.' — 'The part of a lover who revenges an injury received,' answered I. I then told him the whole adventure; which he thought so diverting, that, grave as he was, he could not help laughing, or rather weeping with mirth. He was infinitely rejoiced with Catalina, sometimes niece, and sometimes granddaughter, as well as with the part which the Duke of Lerma acted in the whole.

When I had finished my narration, the count dismissed me, saying, that he would not fail in finding me some employment next day. I ran immediately to the house of Zuniga, to

* Rodrigo Calderona, was first made gentleman of the bed-chamber to the king; then secretary of state; some time after, he received the collar of the order of St. Jago, was made Commander of Arcana, and created Captain of the German Guard. Such extraordinary favours he could not support with moderation; but, becoming extremely insolent and licentious, despised the most powerful Grandees of Spain, to whose resentment he fell a sacrifice. He was tried 1619, on an impeachment containing two hundred and fifty articles, among which were, sorcery, and poisoning the queen; and though these two were not proved, yet he was condemned to lose his head; which was severed by a stroke upon the throat; none but traitors in Spain receiving it on the neck behind. He died with such courage and decency as affected even his enemies with sorrow and remorse.

thank Don Balthazar for his good offices, and to tell my friend Joseph how well I was with the prime-minister.

CHAP. V.

THE PRIVATE CONVERSATION WHICH GIL BLAS HAD WITH NAVARRO, AND THE FIRST BUSINESS IN WHICH HE WAS EMPLOYED BY THE COUNT D'OLIVAREZ.

AS soon as I saw Joseph, I told him, with some agitation, that I had a great many things to communicate; upon which he carried me to a private place, where, after having informed him of what had happened, I asked his opinion of the matter. 'My opinion,' answered he, 'is, that you are in the way of making a vast fortune: every thing smiles upon you; you are agreeable to the prime-minister; and another thing which may turn out to your advantage is, that I can do you the same service which you received from my uncle Melchior de la Ronda, when you first entered the family of the Archbishop of Grenada. He spared you the trouble of studying the prelate and his principal officers, by disclosing their different characters to you at once: and I will, after his example, make you acquainted with the count, the countess his wife, and Donna Maria de Guzman, their only child.

'The minister has a quick penetrating genius, capable of forming grand designs. He sets up for an universal man, because he has a small tincture of every science, and believes himself able to decide in every thing. He imagines himself a profound lawyer, a great captain, and a most consummate politician. Add to this, he is so intoxicated with his own opinions, that he always follows them rather than those of others, that he may not seem beholden to the understanding of any man. Between you and me, this defect may have strange consequences; from which Heaven preserve the monarchy! He shines in the council by a natural eloquence; and he would write as well as he speaks, if, in

order to dignify his style, he did not affect expressions which render it stiff and obscure. He is, besides, very whimsical, capricious, and chimerical: so much for his head. As to his heart, he is generous and friendly. He is said to be vindictive; but what Spaniard is otherwise? He is also accused of ingratitude, in being the occasion of exiling the Duke d'Uzeda, and the Friar Lewis Altaga, to whom, people say, he had great obligations: but this is pardonable; the desire of being prime-minister prevails over every other sentiment.

'Donna Agnez de Zuniga à Velasco, Countess of Olivarez,' continued Joseph, 'is a lady who has no fault that I know, but that of selling her favours at a high price. As for Donna Maria de Guzman, who is, without contradiction, this day the richest match in Spain, she is an accomplished young lady, and the idol of her father. Model your behaviour accordingly; be assiduous in making your court to these two ladies; and appear still more devoted to the Count d'Olivarez than you was to the Duke of Lerma, before your journey to Segovia; in which case, you will certainly become a personage of rank and power.

'I likewise advise you,' added he, 'to wait upon my master Don Balthazar from time to time; though you have no need of him for your advancement, don't neglect him; he has a very good opinion of you at present: preserve his friendship and esteem, which may be of service to you upon some occasion or other.' — 'As the uncle and nephew,' said I, 'are both concerned in the ministry; is there no jealousy between the two colleagues?' — 'On the contrary,' answered he, 'they live together in the greatest harmony. Had it not been for Don Balthazar, the Count d'Olivarez, perhaps, would not have been prime-minister: for, in short, after the death of Philip the Third, all the friends and partizans of the house of Sandoval exerted themselves very much, some in favour of the cardinal, and others in behalf of his son; but my master, who was the most subtle among the courtiers, and the count, as cunning as he, broke

‘broke all their measures, and took such effectual steps to secure that place, that their antagonists were quite foiled. The Count d’Olivarez, when he became minister, shared the administration with his uncle Don Balthazar, to whom he left the care of foreign affairs, reserving all domestic concerns to himself: so that, by these means, strengthening the ties of friendship, which ought naturally to unite persons of the same blood, these two noblemen, independent of one another, live in such good correspondence as to me seems unalterable.’

Such was the conversation I had with Joseph, by whose information I hoped to profit: after which I went to thank Signior de Zuniga for his goodness towards me. He told me very politely, that he would seize every occasion of befriending me, and that he was very glad to find me satisfied with his nephew, to whom, he assured me, he would speak again in my favour; resolving at least, he said, to convince me, that he had my welfare at heart, and that, instead of one patron, I had two. It was thus that Don Balthazar, out of friendship for Navarro, interested himself in my behalf.

That very evening I quitted my hired room, to go and lodge at the prime-minister’s house, where I supped with Scipio in my own apartment. There we were served by the domesticks of the family, who, while we eat our victuals with an affected gravity, laughed, perhaps, within themselves, at the respect which they were commanded to shew. When the table was uncovered, and they were retired, my secretary, laying aside his constraint, said a thousand diverting things, which his gay disposition and sanguine hopes inspired. As for me, although overjoyed at the brilliant situation in which I saw myself, I felt myself no longer disposed to be dazzled by it; but, going to bed, slept soundly, without giving way to the agreeable ideas with which I might have entertained my fancy; whereas the ambitious Scipio enjoyed little repose, but passed half of the night in hoarding up money for the portion of his daughter Seraphina.

I had scarce got on my cloaths next morning, when I was sent for by his

grace; who, when I came before him said to me, ‘Well, Santillane; let us see a specimen of what thou canst do. Thou sayest the Duke of Lerma employed thee in abridging memorials: I have got one, which I intend for thy first essay. The subject of it is this: it must be a performance to prepossess the publick in favour of my ministry. I have already privately spread a report, that I found affairs in very great disorder: the business therefore is to expose to the eyes of both court and city the miserable condition to which the monarchy is reduced. We must, on this subject, draw a picture which will strike the people, and hinder them from regretting the loss of my predecessor. After that, you must extol the measures which I have taken to render his majesty’s reign glorious, his dominions flourishing, and his subjects perfectly happy.’

His grace, having spoke in this manner, gave me a paper, containing the just causes the nation had to complain of the preceding administration, summed up in ten articles; the least of which, I remember, was sufficient to alarm all good Spaniards: then shutting me in a closet adjoining to his own, he left me to work at liberty. I began to compose my memorial as well as I could. I first of all described the bad condition of the kingdom, the finances exhausted, the royal revenue engrossed by partizans, and the marine entirely ruined. I then demonstrated the faults committed by those who had governed the state under the last reign, and the terrible consequences which might proceed from these faults. In short, I represented the monarchy in danger, and so sharply censured the former minister, that, according to my memorial, the loss of the Duke of Lerma was a great happiness for Spain. To say the truth, though I harboured no resentment against that nobleman, I was not sorry to do him this good office. Such is the disposition of man!

In fine, after a frightful picture of the misfortunes which threatened Spain, I encouraged the minds of the people, by making them conceive fair hopes of the future. I made the Count d’Olivarez speak like a saviour sent from heaven for the salvation of the state; I promised mountains and miracles:

in a word, I entered so well into the views of the new minister, that he seemed surprized at my performance; which when he had read to an end, 'Santillane,' said he, 'dost thou know that thou hast composed a morsel worthy of a secretary of state? I am not surprized that the Duke of Lerma employed thy pen; thy style is concise, and even elegant; but I think it is a little too natural.' He then pointed out the places which were not to his taste, altering them with his own hand; and I perceived, by his corrections, that he loved (as Navarro had told me) obscure and far-fetched expressions. Nevertheless, though he was resolved to have nobleneſs, or rather conceits, in his diction, he preserved two-thirds of my work; and, to shew how well he was satisfied with my capacity, sent to me, by Don Raymond, three hundred pistoles, as a desert at dinner.

C H A P. VI.

THE USE TO WHICH GIL BLAS PUTS HIS THREE HUNDRED PISTOLES; AND HIS CHARGE TO SCIPIO: WITH THE SUCCESS OF THE ABOVE-MENTIONED MEMORIAL.

THIS favour of the minister furnished Scipio with a new opportunity of congratulating my return to court. 'You see,' said he, 'that Fortune has great designs in your favour. Are you now sorry for having quitted your solitude? Long life to the Count d'Olivarez! he is quite another sort of a patron than his predecessor. The Duke of Lerma, though you was so much attached to him, allowed you to languish several months, without giving you one pistole; whereas the count has already bestowed upon you a gratification which you could not have expected till after long service.'

'I wish,' added he, 'that the Lords of Leyva were witnesses of the happiness which you enjoy, or at least made acquainted with it.'—'It is time, indeed, for them to know it,' answered I; 'and I was just going to talk to thee about the matter. I don't doubt that they are extremely impa-

tient to hear from me; but I waited until I should see myself settled in some shape or other, and be able to inform them positively whether or not I should stay at court. Now that I am fixed, thou mayest set out for Valencia when thou wilt, to inform those noblemen of my present situation, which I look upon as their own work, since it is certain, that, had it not been for them, I should never have determined upon my journey to Madrid.'—'My dear master,' cried the son of Coscolina, 'how happy will they be when I recount to them what has happened to you! would I were already at the gates of Valencia! but I shall be there very soon. Don Alphonso's two horses are ready: I will set out immediately with one of his grace's lacquies; for, besides that I shall be glad of a companion on the road, you know people will be dazzled by the livery of the prime-minister.'

I could not help laughing at the ridiculous vanity of my secretary, though, vainer still perhaps than he, I let him do as he desired. 'Go,' said I; 'and return as soon as possible; for I have another commission to give thee: thou must go to the Asturias with money for my mother. I have, through negligence, let the time pass, on which I promised to remit an hundred pistoles to her, and which you undertook to deliver with thy own hand. These sort of promises from a son ought to be so sacred that I upbraid myself with my want of punctuality.'—'Sir,' answered Scipio, 'in six weeks I will bring you an account of both these commissions; I will converse with the Lords of Leyva, make a tour to your country-house, and revisit the city of Oviedo, which I never remember without wishing three-fourths and a half of it's inhabitants at the devil.' Upon this, I counted out to the son of Coscolina one hundred pistoles for my mother's pension, with an hundred more for himself, that he might agreeably perform the long journey which he had undertaken.

A few days after his departure, the count sent our memorial to the press; and it was no sooner published than it became the subject of all conversation in Madrid. The people, always friends

to novelty, were charmed with the performance. The low ebb of the finances, which was painted in lively colours, incensed them against the Duke of Lerma; and if the strokes of the quill, which that minister received, were not applauded by every body, at least they met with abundance of approbation.

As for the magnificent promises made by the Count d'Olivarez, and, among others, that of defraying the national expence by a prudent economy, without incommoding the subjects, they dazzled the citizens in general, and confirmed them in the grand opinion which they had already entertained of his capacity; so that the whole city echoed with his praise.

That minister, overjoyed to see the accomplishment of his aim, which in that publication had been to acquire the publick affection, was resolved to deserve it effectually, by a commendable action, which should be serviceable to the king. For this purpose he had recourse to the invention of the Emperor Galba; that is, to make those who had enriched themselves, the Lord knows how, in the administration of the finances, regorge their wealth. When he had drawn from those leeches the blood which they had sucked, and filled the coffers of the king, he undertook to preserve it, by suppressing all pensions, not even excepting his own, as well as the gratifications that were given out of the king's exchequer. To succeed in this design, which he could not execute without changing the face of government, he employed me in composing a new memorial, the substance and form of which he dictated. He then enjoined me to rise as much as I could above the ordinary simplicity of my style, and give more dignity to my expressions. 'Enough, my lord,' said I; 'your excellency shall have the *splendid* and *sublime* which you desire.' I shut myself up in the same closet where I had composed the first, and there went to work, after having invoked the eloquent genius of the Archbishop of Grenada.

I began by representing, that we could not be too careful in preserving the money which was in the treasury, and which ought to be employed only in the emergencies of the state, as being a sacred fund, reserved on purpose to

keep the enemies of Spain in awe. Then I demonstrated to the king (for the memorial was addressed to him) that, in taking away all the pensions and gratifications with which the revenue was saddled, he could not, for all that, deprive himself of the pleasure of rewarding those subjects who should deserve his favour; since, without touching his treasure, he was in a condition to bestow upon them great recompences: that for some he had vice-royalties, governments, orders of knighthood, and military employments; for others, commanderies, and pensions upon them; titles, magistracies; and, in fine, all sorts of benefices for those who are consecrated to the church.

This memorial, which was much longer than the first, took me up near three days; and luckily I composed it to the taste of my master; who, finding it written with emphasis, and stuffed with metaphors, loaded me with applause. 'I am very well satisfied with this,' said he, pointing to the most tumid places; 'these are well stamped expressions. Courage, friend; I foresee that thou wilt be of great service to me.' Nevertheless, in spite of the applause of which he was so prodigal, he did not fail to retouch the memorial. He inserted a good deal of his own, and composed a piece of eloquence which charmed the king and the whole court. The city joined its approbation, and conceived a happy omen of the future; and flattered itself, that the monarchy would resume its ancient lustre under the ministry of such a great man.

His excellency, seeing that this piece did him a great deal of honour, was willing that I should reap some fruit from it, in consideration of my share in the composition: he accordingly bestowed upon me a pension of five hundred crowns upon the commandery of Castile; which was the more agreeable to me, as it was not wickedly though easily got.

C H A P. VII.

BY WHAT ACCIDENT, IN WHAT PLACE, AND CONDITION, GIL BLAS FOUND HIS FRIEND FA-

3 A 2 BRICIO;

BRICIO; AND THE CONVERSATION THAT PASSED BETWEEN THEM.

NOTHING gave more pleasure to the count, than to know the opinion which the people of Madrid had of his conduct in the ministry. He asked me every day, what people said of him; and even maintained spies, who brought him an exact account of what passed in the city. They reported to him every word which they heard; and, as he ordered them to be sincere, his self-love suffered sometimes; for the people have an intemperance of tongue which has no respect of persons.

When I perceived that he was pleased with these reports, I employed myself every afternoon in going to publick places, and joining conversation with good company. When they spoke of the government, I listened with attention; and if they said any thing that deserved to be retold to his excellency, I did not fail to inform him of it: but it must be observed, that I never reported any thing which was spoke to his prejudice.

One day, as I returned from one of those places, passing by the door of an hospital, I felt an inclination to enter. I walked through two or three wards full of sick people a-bed, and surveyed every thing around me. Among these unfortunate people, whom I could not behold without compassion, I was struck with the appearance of one, who, I believed, was my old friend and comrade Fabricio. That I might have a more distinct view of him, I approached his bed; and, having no longer any reason to doubt that it was the poet Nunnez, stopped a few minutes to consider him, without speaking; while he, recollecting me also, eyed me in the same manner. At length, breaking silence, 'Sure,' said I, 'my eyes deceive me! is this actually Fabricio whom I meet in this place?'—'The very same,' answered he coldly: 'and thou hast no cause to be surprized at it. Since I left thee, I have ever exercised the business of an author: I have composed romances, comedies, all kinds of works of genius; I have run my race, and am now at the hospital.'

I could not help laughing at these

words, and still more at the serious air with which they were pronounced. 'How!' cried I; 'has the Muse brought thee to this place? hath she played thee this villainous trick?'—'Thou seeest it is so,' he replied: 'this house is the retreat of many a wit. Thou hast done well, my child, to take another road; but methinks thou art no longer at court, and the face of thy affairs is changed: nay, I remember to have heard, that thou wast imprisoned by order of the king.'—'True,' said I, 'the charming situation in which I was, when we parted, in a little time after was followed by a reverse of fortune, which robbed me of my wealth and liberty: nevertheless, my friend, thou seest me again in a more flourishing state than ever.'—'That is impossible!' cried Nunnez; 'thy apparel is frugal and plain; and thou hast not that vain and insolent air which prosperity usually gives.'—'Misfortune,' answered I, 'hath purified my virtue; and I have learned, in the school of adversity, to enjoy riches with moderation.'

'Tell me then,' cried Fabricio, starting up in a transport, 'what may be thy employment? what business dost thou follow? art thou not steward to some ruined grandee, or opulent widow?'—'I have a better post,' I replied; 'but thou must dispense with my telling thee more at present: I will satisfy thy curiosity another time. I will now only let thee know, that I am in a condition to assist thee, or rather, to make thee easy for life, provided thou wilt promise to write no more works of genius either in verse or prose. Dost thou feel thyself capable of making such a sacrifice to me?'—'I have already made it to Heaven,' said he, 'during a severe distemper of which I am just cured. A Dominican father has made me abjure poetry, as an amusement which, if not criminal, at least diverts the mind from the pursuit of wisdom and virtue.'

'I congratulate thee, my dear Nunnez,' answered I: 'but beware of a relapse.'—'That I am in no fear of,' he resumed: 'I am firmly resolved to abandon the Muses; and, when thou camest into the ward,

'was

' was just composing an eternal adieu to them in verse.'—' Mr. Fabricio,' said I, shaking my head, ' I don't know if the Dominican and I dare trust to your abjuration, you seem so furiously enchanted by these learned dainties!'—' No, no!' answered he; ' I have broke off all connection with them; nay, more, I have conceived an aversion for the publick, who does not deserve that authors should consecrate their works to it: I should be sorry if I could produce anything that would please it. Don't imagine,' continued he, ' that this language is dictated by passion: I speak in cold blood. I equally despise the applause and hisses of the publick, which one does not know how to manage. It is so capricious, that it does not think two days one way. What fools are those dramatick writers who are vain of the success of their performances! Whatever noise they make by their novelty, if they are brought upon the stage twenty years after, they are for the most part very ill received. The present generation taxes the past with want of taste, and it's determinations are contradicted by those of the next; from whence I concluded, that those authors who are now applauded, will be hissed by posterity. It is the same thing with regard to romances, and other amusing books, which, though at first they meet with general approbation, insensibly sink into contempt. That honour, therefore, which we reap from the good success of our works, is nothing but a mere chimera, an illusion of the brain, a fire of straw which evaporates in smoke.'

Though I was well convinced that the Asturian poet spoke this from passion only, I did not seem to perceive it; but said to him, ' I am overjoyed to find thee disgusted with the belles lettres, and radically cured of the rage of writing. Be assured that I will immediately procure for thee an employment in which thou mayest enrich thyself, without being at a great expence of genius.'—' So much the better!' cried he. ' Genius stinks in my nostrils, and I now look upon it as the most fatal present that Heaven can bestow upon man.'—' I wish, my dear Fabricio,' I replied, ' that

thou mayest still preserve these sentiments. If you persist in your resolution to quit poetry, I repeat it, I will soon procure for thee an honourable and lucrative post; but until I can do thee this service,' added I, giving him a purse of sixty pistoles, ' pray accept of this small token of my friendship.'

' O generous friend!' cried the son of Barber Nunnez, transported with gratitude and joy; ' what thanks do I owe to Heaven for bringing thee into this hospital, which I will leave this very day by thy assistance!' And he actually ordered himself to be transported into a hired lodging: but, before we parted, I told him where I lived, and invited him to come and see me, as soon as he should be perfectly recovered. He seemed extremely surprized, when I told him, that I lodged in the house of the Count d'Olivarez. ' Thrice happy Gil Blas,' said he, ' whose fate it is to be a minister's favourite! I rejoice at thy good fortune, since thou usest it so well.'

C H A P. VIII.

GIL BLAS BECOMES MORE AND MORE BELOVED BY HIS MASTER. SICIO RETURNS TO MADRID, AND GIVES AN ACCOUNT OF HIS JOURNEY TO SANTILANE.

THE Count d'Olivarez, whom henceforth I shall call the count- duke, because the king was pleased about this time to honour him with that title, had a foible which I discovered very much to my own advantage; and this was, a desire of being beloved. As soon as he perceived that any one attached himself to him through inclination, he immediately conceived a friendship for that adherent.

I took care not to neglect this observation. I was not contented with barely doing what he commanded; I executed his orders with such demonstrations of zeal as quite won his heart. I studied his taste in all things, that I might conform myself to it; and anticipated his desires as much as I could.

By this conduct, which seldom fails of success, I insensibly became the favourite of my master, who, on his part,

part, as I myself had the same foible, gained my whole soul, by the marks of affection which he bestowed upon me; and I insinuated myself so far into his favour, that I at length shared his confidence with Signior Carnero, his chief secretary.

Carnero had practised the same method of being agreeable to his excellency; and succeeded so well, that he was intrusted with the mysteries of the cabinet. That secretary and I were the two confidants of the prime-minister, and the depositories of his secrets; with this difference, that he spoke to Carnero of nothing but state-affairs, and conversed with me on his own private concerns only: by these means, making as it were two separate departments, with which we were both equally satisfied, we lived together without jealousy, as without friendship. I had cause to be pleased with my situation, which giving me continual opportunities of being with the count-duke, I was always at hand to observe the very bottom of his soul; which he, though naturally dissembling, ceased to conceal from me, when he no longer doubted the sincerity of my attachment.

'Santillane,' said he to me one day, 'thou hast seen the Duke of Lerma enjoy an authority which looked more like the power of an absolute monarch than that of a favourite minister: nevertheless, I am still more lucky than he was, even at the highest point of his fortune. He had two formidable enemies in the Duke d'Uzeda his own son, and in the confessor of Philip the Third whereas I see not one person near the king, who has credit enough to hurt me, nor even one whom I suspect to be my foe.'

'It is true, indeed,' continued he, 'that when I came to the ministry, I suffered none to be near the prince, but those who were connected with me, either by blood or friendship. I have by vice-royalties or embassies got rid of all those noblemen who, by their personal merit, might have acquired some portion of my sovereign's favour, which I was resolved entirely to possess: so that I may now safely say, no great man takes umbrage at my credit. Thou seest, 'Gil Blas,' added he, 'that I disclose my heart to thee. As I have reason

'to think thee entirely devoted to me; I have chosen thee for my confident; Thou dost not want understanding; art, I believe, modest, prudent, and discreet; in a word, thou seemest proper for executing twenty sorts of commissions, which require a young man of extensive understanding, who is at the same time in my interests.'

I was not proof against the flattering images which these words raised in my imagination. Some vapours of avarice and ambition mounted into my brain, and awaked in me those sentiments over which I thought I had gained a compleat triumph. I protested to the minister, that I would answer his intentions with all my power; and I kept myself ready to execute, without scruple, all the commissions with which he should think proper to entrust me.

While I was thus disposed to raise new altars to Fortune, Scipio, returning from his journey, said, 'I have not a tedious narration to make, The Lords of Leyva were charmed when I told them the reception you met with from the king, when he knew you, and with the behaviour of the Count d'Olivarez.'

Here I interrupted Scipio, saying, 'You would have given them still more pleasure, my friend, could you have told them on what footing I am now with his grace. The rapidity of the progress which I have made in his excellency's heart since thy departure is altogether prodigious.'—'God be praised, my dear master!' answered he; 'I foresee that a splendid destiny awaits us.'—'Let us wave this subject,' said I, 'and talk of Oviedo. Thou hast been at the Asturias; in what condition didst thou leave my mother?'—'Ah, Sir!' he replied, assuming all of a sudden a melancholy look, 'I have nothing but afflicting news for you from that quarter.'—'O Heaven!' cried I, 'my mother is certainly dead.'—'Six months ago,' said my secretary, 'the good lady paid the tribute of nature, as well as your uncle Signior Gil Perez.'

I was deeply affected with my mother's death, although in my infancy I had never received from her those caresses which are necessary to make children grateful in the sequel. I likewise paid

paid those tears which I owed to the good canon, for the care he had of my education. My grief, indeed, did not last long, but soon mellowed into a tender remembrance which I have always preserved of my parents.

C H A P. IX.

HOW AND TO WHOM THE COUNT-DUKE MARRIED HIS ONLY DAUGHTER, WITH THE BITTER FRUITS WHICH THAT MARRIAGE PRODUCED.

SOON after the return of Coscolina's son, the count-duke fell into a profound reverie, in which he remained for the space of eight whole days. I imagined that he was meditating some great stroke of politicks; but the subject of his musing regarded his own family only. 'Gil Blas,' said he to me one afternoon, 'thou must have perceived that I am a good deal perplexed in mind. Yes, my child, I am wholly engrossed by an affair upon which the repose of my life depends; and I will impart the secret to thee.

'Donna Maria, my daughter,' continued he, 'is now marriageable, and her heart is disputed by a great number of noblemen. The Count de Niebles, eldest son of the Duke de Medina Sidonia, chief of the family of Guzman, and Don Lewis de Haro, eldest son of the Marquis de Carpio and my own sister, are the two candidates who seem best intitled to the preference; especially the last, who possesses merit so much superior to that of his rivals, that all the court persuade themselves I shall make choice of him for my son-in-law. Nevertheless, without entering into the reasons which I have to exclude him, as well as the Count de Niebles, I will tell thee, that I have cast my eyes on Don Ramires Nunnez de Guzman, Marquis de Toral, and chief of the family of Guzman d'Abrados: to this young nobleman, and the children which he shall have by my daughter, I intend to leave my whole estate annexed to the title of Count d'Olivarez, to which I will join the quality of grandee; so that my grand-

children and their descendants, proceeding from the branch D'Abrados and that of Olivarez, will pass for the eldest of the Guzman family.

'Well, Santillane,' added he, 'dost thou not approve of my design?'—'Pardon me, Sir,' answered I; 'the project is worthy of the genius that formed it; I am only afraid that the Duke de Medina Sidonia will murmur at it.'—'Let him murmur, if he pleases,' resumed the minister; 'I shall give myself very little trouble about that. I don't love his branch, which hath usurped the birth-right and titles thereunto attached over the house of Abrados. I shall mind his complaints less than the chagrin of my sister the Marchioness de Carpio, in seeing her son disappointed in his expectation of my daughter. But, after all, I intend to please myself, and it is already decided that Don Ramirez shall prevail over all his rivals.'

The count-duke, having taken this resolution, gave a new mark of his singular policy, in putting it in practice. He presented a petition to the king, begging that he and the queen would be pleased to bestow his daughter in marriage, describing the characters of the noblemen who were in pursuit of her, and leaving the choice entirely to their majesties; but he did not fail, in speaking of the Marquis de Toral, to shew that he was the most agreeable of them all. Whereupon the king, who had a blind complaisance for his minister, returned this answer:

'I Believe Don Ramires Nunnez worthy of your daughter Donna Maria; nevertheless, take your own choice. The match which will suit you best will be the most agreeable to me.

'The KING.'

The minister affected to shew this answer; and pretending to look upon it as his prince's order, made haste to marry his daughter to the Marquis de Toral; an event that very much displeased the Marchioness de Carpio, as well as the Guzmans, who had flattered themselves with the hope of espousing Donna Maria. Nevertheless, as they could not hinder the marriage, they affected to celebrate it with great demon-

demonstrations of joy. One would have thought that the whole family was charmed with the occasion; but the malecontents were soon revenged in a manner very melancholy for the count-duke. Donna Maria* in ten months brought forth a daughter, which died in the birth, and in a few days after fell herself a victim to death. What a loss was this for a father, who, to use the expression, had no eyes but for his daughter; and who saw, in this event, the miscarriage of his design, of taking the right of eldership from the branch of Medina Sidonia! He was so much affected, that for some days, he shut himself up, and would see nobody but me, who conforming myself to his immoderate grief, seemed as much afflicted as he. To tell the truth, I made use of this occasion to shed fresh tears to the memory of Antonia. The resemblance which her death had to that of the Marchioness de Toral, burst open again the wound which was but imperfectly cured, and renewed my affliction so much, that the minister, overwhelmed as he was with his own sorrow, could not help being struck with mine. He was astonished to see me enter so warmly into his chagrin. 'Gil Blas,' said he one day, perceiving me plunged in the most melancholy sadness, 'it is a sweet consolation for me to have such a sympathizing confident!'—'Ah, my lord!' answered I, giving to him all the honour of my affliction, 'I must be very ungrateful and hard-hearted indeed, if I did not sincerely sympathize with your grace. How can I consider that you mourn the loss of a daughter of accomplished merit, whom you tenderly loved, without mingling my tears with yours! No, my lord; I am so sensible of your goodness, that, as long as I live, I shall always share in your pain as well as pleasure.'

CHAP. X.

GIL BLAS BY ACCIDENT MEETS
THE POET NUNNEZ, WHO TELLS
HIM THAT HE HAS COMPOSED A

TRAGEDY, WHICH IS IMMEDIATELY TO BE REPRESENTED ON THE PRINCE'S THEATRE. THE BAD SUCCESS OF THAT PIECE, WITH THE SURPRIZING GOOD LUCK WHICH ATTENDED IT'S FALL.

THE minister began to be consoled, and I of consequence to resume my good-humour, when one evening I went out all alone to take the air in my coach, and met in my way the Austrian poet, whom I had not seen since he quitted the hospital. He being very well dressed, I took him into the coach, and we drove together to St. Jerome's Meadow.

'Mr. Nunnez,' said I to him, 'I think myself very lucky in having met you by chance, otherwise I should not have had the pleasure—' 'No reproaches, Santillane,' said he with precipitation; 'I sincerely own that I had no intention to visit thee, and thou shalt hear the reason. You promised me a good post, provided I should abjure poetry; and I have found a very substantial one on condition that I make verse. I have accepted this last, as most suitable to my humour. A friend of mine has introduced me into the family of Don Bertrand Gomez de Ribero, treasurer of the king's galleys. This Don Bertrand, who wants to have a wit in his pay, finding my versification very brilliant, has chosen me preferably to five or six authors who offered themselves candidates for the employment of his private secretary.'

'I am very glad to hear it, my dear Fabricio,' said I; 'for that Don Bertrand is in all appearance very rich.'—'Rich!' answered he; 'they say he has such immense wealth, that he cannot count it. Be that as it will, my office is this: as he piques himself upon being gallant, and would pass for a man of genius, he keeps a literary correspondence with several very sprightly ladies, and I lend him my pen to compose billets filled with wit and humour. I write for him, in verse to one, in prose to

* Mr. Le Sage has here deviated from the true history; for Donna Maria died unmarried, after having been betrothed to Raymond de Gusman, Marquis de Toral, afterwards created Duke de Medina de las Torres.

* another,

‘to another, and sometimes in person
‘carry the letters to shew the multi-
‘plicity of my talents.’

‘But thou hast not told me,’ said I, ‘what I chiefly desire to know; art thou well paid for thy epistolary epigrams?’—‘Very largely,’ he replied; ‘rich people are not always generous, and I know some of them who are mere scrubs; but Don Bertrand uses me very nobly. Over and above two hundred pistoles of fixed wages, I frequently receive from him small gratifications, which put me in a condition to act the gentleman, and pass my time agreeably with some authors, who are, like me, enemies to care.’—‘But,’ I resumed, ‘has thy treasurer taste enough to relish the beauties of a work of genius, and to perceive it’s faults?’—‘Not at all,’ answered Nunnez; ‘though he can talk speciously, he is by no means a connoisseur. He gives himself out, however, for another Tarp^a, decides boldly, and supports his opinion with such loudness and obstinacy, that generally when he disputes, his antagonist is obliged to yield, in order to avoid the shower of ill language with which he is wont to overwhelm his opponents.’

‘Thou mayest well believe,’ pursued he, ‘that I am very cautious of contradicting him, whatever cause he gives me for so doing; for, besides the disagreeable epithets which I should certainly bring upon myself, I might possibly be turned out of doors. I therefore prudently applaud what he praises, and disapprove of every thing which he condemns. By this complaisance, which costs me nothing, because I possess the art of accommodating myself to the characters of those who can befriend me, I have gained the friendship and esteem of my patron. He has engaged me to compose a tragedy on a subject which he suggested. I have accordingly finished it under his eye; and if it succeeds I shall owe one part of my glory to his good advice.’

I asked the title of his tragedy, and he told me it was called, the Count de

Saldagne, informing me, at the same time, that it would be represented in three days on the Prince’s Theatre. ‘I wish,’ answered I, ‘that it may have a great run; and I have such a good opinion of thy genius as to hope it will.’—‘I hope so too,’ said he; ‘but there is no dependence upon such hope, so uncertain are authors of the event of a dramatick piece.’ At length the first day of it’s representation arrived; and as I could not go to the play, being hindered by a commission I had to perform for his grace, all that I could do was to send Scipio thither, that I might at least know that very evening the success of a performance in which I interested myself. After having waited with impatience, I saw him return with a look from which I conceived a bad omen. ‘Well,’ said I; ‘how hath the Count de Saldagne been received by the publick?’—‘Very brutally,’ answered he; ‘never was a piece more barbarously used. I came away incensed at the insolence of the pit.’—‘And I,’ said I, ‘am incensed at the fury of Nunnez, in composing plays. Must he not have lost his judgment entirely, to prefer the ignominious shouts and hisses of an audience to the happy lot which I could have procured for him?’ Thus through friendship did I inveigh against the Austrian poet, and afflicted myself at the misfortune of his piece, while he exulted in the event.

Two days after he actually came to my house in a transport of joy. ‘Santillane,’ cried he, ‘I am come to share with thee the extreme pleasure which I feel! In composing a bad play, my friend, I have made my fortune. Thou knowest the strange reception which the Count de Saldagne met with; all the spectators exclaimed against him as if for a wager, and to that general exclamation I owe my good fortune.’

Astonished to hear the poet Nunnez talk in that manner; ‘How, Fabricio!’ said I, ‘is it possible that the fall of thy tragedy can justify thy immoderate joy?’—‘Yes, sure,’ answered he; ‘I told thee before that Don Ber-

* Sp. Metius Tarp^a, a famous critick of the Augustan age: his tribunal was in the temple of Apollo, where he sat with four colleagues, to judge the merit of all theatrical performances, before they were exhibited on the stage.

trand had inserted some of his own composition in my piece, which of consequence he thought excellent. He was violently piqued to find the spectators of a different opinion, and this morning said to me, "Nunnez, *Victrix causa diis placuit, sed victa Catoni*: if the publick is displeased with thy production, in recompence, it pleases me, and that is enough. To console thee for the bad taste of the age, I will give thee two thousand crowns a year on my estate; let us go instantly to my notary, and have the deed drawn." We went thither accordingly, the treasurer has signed the deed, and paid me the first year advance.

I congratulated Fabricio on the unhappy fate of the Count de Saldagne, since it had turned out so much to the author's advantage. "Thou hadst reason," continued he, "to compliment me on the occasion; how happy am I in having been soundly hissed! If the publick had been kind enough to honour me with applause, what service should I have received from it? Nothing of consequence; I should have got but a very moderate sum for my labours, whereas it's hisses have all of a sudden made me easy for life."

CHAP. XI.

SANTILLANE OBTAINS AN EMPLOYMENT FOR SCIPIO, WHO DEPARTS FOR NEW SPAIN.

MY secretary could not without envy look upon the unexpected good fortune of the poet Nunnez, which was the sole subject of his discourse during eight whole days. "I admire," said he, "the caprice of Fortune, that sometimes delights in loading a detestable author with wealth, while she leaves men of genius in misery: I wish she would take it in her head to enrich me also in the space of one night."—"That may very well happen," said I, "and much sooner than you imagine. Thou art here in her temple; for I think we may call the prime-minister's house the temple of Fortune, where favours are often bestowed which all of a sudden enrich those

who obtain them."—"That is true, Sir," answered he; "but they must be waited for with patience."—"Once more, Scipio," said I, "make yourself easy; perhaps you are on the point of having some good post." A few days after, an opportunity actually offered of employing him advantageously in the service of the count-duke, and I did not let it escape.

Discoursing one morning with Don Raymond Caporis, steward of the prime-minister, our conversation turned upon his excellency's revenues. "His grace," said he, "enjoys the commanderies of all the military orders, which are worth forty thousand crowns per annum, and he is obliged to wear the cross of Alcantara only. Besides, his three posts of great chamberlain, master of the horse, and grand chancellor of the Indies, bring in two hundred thousand more; and all that is nothing in comparison to the immense sums which he draws from America. I will tell you how: when the king's ships set sail from Seville or Lisbon for that country, he embarks on board of them wine, oil, and corn, which his estate of Olivarez affords, and he pays no duty. He sells these commodities in the Indies for four times the price which they would yield in Spain, then employs the money in purchasing spices, colours, and other things, which are bought for almost nothing in that new world, and afterwards are sold at a high rate in Europe. He has already got many millions by this traffick, without doing the least prejudice to the king. What will not surprize you," continued he, "is, that the people employed in transacting this commerce always return enriched, the count allowing them to take care of their own fortune, while they manage his."

Coscolina's son, who listened to our discourse, could not hear Don Raymond talk thus, without interrupting him. "Zooks! Signior Caporis, I should be glad to be one of these people, for I have long wished to see Mexico."—"Your curiosity will soon be satisfied," said the steward to him, "if Signior de Santillane has no objection to your desire. Though I am very nice in the choice of those whom I send to the Indies on this employ-

employment, (for I chuse them all) I will, without hesitation, insert you in my register, if your master desires it.—'You will oblige me in so doing,' said I to Don Raymond; 'pray, give me that mark of your friendship. Scipio is a young man whom I love; besides, he has a great deal of understanding, and will behave in an irreproachable manner. In a word, I can answer for him as for myself.'

'If that be the case,' resumed Caporis, 'let him repair immediately to Seville; the ships will sail for the Indies in a month. He shall have a letter from me at his departure, for a man who will give him all necessary instructions to enrich himself, without prejudicing the interests of his excellency, which must ever be looked upon as sacred.'

Scipio, charmed with this employment, made haste to set out for Seville, with a thousand crowns which I gave him, to buy wine and oil in Andalusia, and put him in a condition to trade in the Indies on his own bottom. Nevertheless, glad as he was to make a voyage by which he hoped to profit so much, he could not leave me without shedding tears, and I could not behold his departure with indifference.

CHAP. XII.

DON ALPHONSO DE LEYVA COMES TO MADRID; THE MOTIVE OF HIS JOURNEY. GIL BLAS IS AFFLICTED AT THE CAUSE, BUT REJOICES AT THE CONSEQUENCE OF IT.

SCIPIO was scarce gone, when a page belonging to the minister brought to me a billet containing these words: 'If Signior de Santillane will give himself the trouble to call at St. Gabriel's Head in Toledo Street, he will there see one of his best friends.—'Who can this anonymous friend be?' said I to myself: 'Why does he conceal his name? He wants, I suppose, to give me the pleasure of surprise.' I went out immediately to Toledo Street, and going to the appointed place, was not a little astonished to see Don Alphonso de Leyva. 'Are you here, my lord!—

'Yes, my dear Gil Blas,' answered he, hugging me in his arms; 'it is Don Alphonso himself whom you see.—'What brings you to Madrid?' said I. 'I will both surprise and afflict you,' he replied, 'in telling the cause of my journey. I am deprived of the government of Valencia, and the prime-minister has ordered me to court to give an account of my conduct.' I remained a whole quarter of an hour mute and thunderstruck, then recovering myself, asked what he was accused of. 'I know nothing of the matter,' answered he; 'but impute my disgrace to a visit which I made about three weeks ago to the Cardinal Duke of Lerma, who has been a month confined to his castle of Denia.'

'O! truly,' said I, interrupting him, 'you have reason to attribute your misfortune to that indiscreet visit; you need seek for the cause of it no where else; and give me leave to say, you did not consult your usual prudence, when you went to visit the disgraced minister.—'The error is now committed,' said he; 'and I have taken my resolution with a good grace. I will retire with my family to the castle of Leyva, where I will spend the rest of my days in profound peace. All that gives me concern, is my being obliged to appear before a haughty minister, who may possibly treat me uncivilly; a sufficient mortification to a Spaniard! nevertheless it must be borne; but before I would make this submission, I was willing to speak with you.'

'My lord,' said I, 'don't present yourself before the minister until I know what you are accused of; perhaps the evil is not without remedy. Be that as it will, you must allow me, if you please, to exert myself in your favour as much as gratitude and friendship require.' So saying, I left him at the inn, assuring him that he should hear from me soon.

As I had not meddled in state-affairs since the two memorials, of which eloquent mention has been made, I went to Carnero, and asked if it was true that the government of Valencia had been taken from Don Alphonso de Leyva. He answered in the affirmative, but said he was ignorant of the cause. Upon this I formed a resolution, with-

out hesitation to address myself to his grace, that I might learn from his own mouth what cause he had to complain of Don Cæsar's son.

I was so much penetrated with this troublesome event, that I had no occasion to affect a melancholy look to appear afflicted in the eyes of the count-
duke. 'What is the matter, Santilane?' said he, as soon as he saw me; 'I perceive an impression of sorrow on thy countenance, and even the tears ready to drop from thine eyes: has any body injured thee? Speak, and thou shalt be revenged.' — 'My lord,' answered I, weeping, 'I could not conceal my sorrow from you if I would: I am quite in despair, being told that Don Alphonso de Leyva is no longer governor of Valencia; for I could not have heard a piece of news that would affect me more.' — 'What sayest thou, Gil Blas?' replied the minister astonished; 'what concern canst thou have with that Don Alphonso and his government?' I then gave him a detail of all the obligations I lay under to the Lords of Leyva; and afterwards recounted in what manner I had obtained from the Duke of Lerma the government in question for Don Cæsar's son.

When his excellency had heard me to an end, with an attention full of kindness for me, he said, 'Dry up thy tears, my friend. I not only was ignorant of what thou hast told me, but own also that I looked upon Don Alphonso as a creature of the Cardinal of Lerma: put thyself in my place; would not the visit which he made to his eminence make thee suspect him? I am willing to believe, however, that having received his employment from the cardinal, he took that step out of pure gratitude. I am sorry for having displaced a man who owed his post to thee; but if I have destroyed thy work, I can repair it. I will even do more for thee than the Duke of Lerma did; thy friend Don Alphonso was no more than governor of the city of Valencia, and I will make him vice-roy of the kingdom of Arragon: thou mayest go and inform him of this piece of news, and desire him to come and take the oaths.'

When I heard these words, I passed from the extremity of grief to an excess of joy, which disturbed my intellects so much, that my disorder appeared in the compliment of thanks which I made to his grace, who was not, however, displeased at my confusion. But when I told him that Don Alphonso was already at Madrid, he said I might introduce him that very day. I ran immediately to the St. Gabriel, where Don Cæsar's son was overjoyed to hear of his new employment: he could scarce believe what I said, so improbable did it seem to him, that the minister, whatever friendship he had for me, was capable of bestowing vice-royalties on my recommendation. I conducted him to the count-duke, who received him very politely, and told him, he had behaved so well in his government of the city of Valencia, that the king, thinking him qualified to fill a higher place, had named him to the vice-royalty of Arragon. 'Besides,' added he, 'that dignity is not above your birth; and the nobility of Arragon cannot murmur at the choice of the court.'

His excellency made no mention of me, and the publick never knew the part which I acted in this affair: a circumstance that saved Don Alphonso and the minister a great many satirical remarks that people might have passed upon a vice-roy of my making.

As soon as Don Cæsar's son was certain of the place, he dispatched an express to Valencia to inform his father and Seraphina of his good fortune, and they soon came to Madrid: their first care was to find me, and overwhelm me with thanks. What a moving and glorious sight was it for me, to see myself embraced with eagerness by the three persons in the world whom I loved most! As sensible of my zeal and affection as the honour which the post of vice-roy did to their family, their expressions of gratitude to me were infinite: they even spoke to me as to one of their own rank: they seemed to have forgot that I was their servant; and thought they could never enough manifest their friendship. To suppress useless circumstances, Don Alphonso having received his letters-patent, thanked the king and his minister, and having taken the usual oaths, set out with his family from Madrid, to go and fix his abode

abode at Saragossa*, where he made his entrance with all possible magnificence: and the Arragonians shewed by their acclamations that they were very well pleased with the vice-roy whom I had set over them.

CHAP. XIII.

GIL BLAS MEETS DON GASTON DE COGOLLOS AND DON ANDREA DE TORDESILLAS AT THE PALACE. THE CONCLUSION OF THE STORY OF DON GASTON AND DONNA HELENA DE GALISTEO. SANTILLANE DOES AN IMPORTANT PIECE OF SERVICE TO TORDESILLAS.

I swam in joy for having so luckily changed a displaced governor into a vice-roy: even the Lords of Leyva were less pleased at it than I was. I soon had another opportunity of employing my credit for a friend; which I think I should relate, to persuade the reader that I was no longer the same Gil Blas who sold the favour of the court under the preceding ministry.

Being one day in the king's anti-chamber, discoursing with noblemen, who, knowing my situation with the prime-minister, did not disdain my conversation; I perceived in the crowd Don Gaston de Cogollos, that state-prisoner whom I had left in the tower of Segovia, and the keeper Don Andrea de Tordefillas along with him. I immediately quitted my company to go and embrace these two friends, whom, if they were astonished to see me there, I was still more so to meet in that place. After some warm hugs on both sides, Don Gaston said to me, 'Signior de Santillane, we have a world of questions to ask mutually, and this is not a convenient place for that purpose: allow me to conduct you to a house where Signior de Tordefillas and I will be glad to have a long conversation with you.' I consented to this proposal: we squeezed through the crowd, and going out

of the palace, found Don Gaston's coach waiting for us in the street; we went into it all three, and were driven to the great market-place where the bull-fights are performed, and there Cogollos lived in a very handsome house. 'Signior Gil Blas,' said Don Andrea, when we were set in a hall magnificently furnished, 'at your departure from Segovia you seemed to hate the court, and to be resolved to remove from it for ever.'—'That was actually my design,' answered I; 'and so long as the late king lived, I did not change my sentiments; but when I understood that the prince his son was on the throne, I was willing to see if the new monarch would know me again; he did recollect me, and I had the good fortune to be favourably received: he himself recommended me to the prime-minister, who has conceived a friendship for me, and with whom I am in still greater favour than ever I was with the Duke of Lerma. This, Signior Don Andrea, is what I had to tell you. Now, pray, let me know if you are still keeper of the tower of Segovia.'—'No, indeed,' he replied: 'the count-duce has put another in my place, in all probability believing me wholly devoted to his predecessor.'—'And as for me,' said Don Gaston, 'I was set at liberty for a quite contrary reason. The prime-minister no sooner learned that I was imprisoned at Segovia by the Duke of Lerma's order, than he ordered me to be discharged: it now remains, Signior Gil Blas, to inform you of what has happened to me since I have been enlarged.

'The first thing I did,' continued he, 'after having thanked Don Andrea for his kindness to me during my confinement, was to repair to Madrid, and present myself before the Count-Duke d'Olivarez, who said to me, "Don't be afraid that the misfortune which hath happened to you will in the least prejudice your reputation: you are now fully justified; and I am the more con-

* Saragossa, formerly Casarea Augusta, a fine large city, and the capital of Arragon, in Spain, surrounded with old walls, and other antique fortifications, at the confluence of the rivers Ebro, Galleyo, and Guerva, which run in a serpentine manner through the neighbourhood, rendering it very fruitful. It has an archbishop, sovereign council, and is the seat of an university and inquisition.

"vinced of your innocence, because
 "the Marquis of Villarcas, whose ac-
 "complice you were suspected to be,
 "was not guilty; for though he is a
 "Portuguese, and even related to the
 "Duke of Braganza, he is not so
 "much in his interests as in those of
 "the king my master. Your inti-
 "macy with that marquis is therefore
 "no reproach upon you; and, in or-
 "der to repair the injustice which you
 "suffered, in being accused of trea-
 "son, the king has bestowed upon
 "you a lieutenancy in the Spanish
 "guards." I accepted the commis-
 "sion, begging that his excellency
 "would allow me, before I should enter
 "upon my duty, to go to Coria and vi-
 "sit my aunt Donna Eleonora de Lax-
 "arilla. The minister gave me leave
 "for a month, and I set out, accom-
 "panied by one lacquey only. We
 "had already passed Colmenar, and
 "were engaged in a hollow road, be-
 "tween two mountains, when we per-
 "ceived a cavalier defending himself
 "valiantly against three men, who at-
 "tacked him all together. I did not
 "hesitate, but rode to his succour,
 "and put myself on his side. I ob-
 "served, while we fought, that our
 "enemies were masked, and that we
 "had to do with vigorous swordsmen:
 "however, in spite of their strength
 "and skill, we remained conquerors;
 "for I pierced one of the three, who
 "fell from his horse, and the other
 "two immediately betook themselves
 "to flight. The victory, indeed, was
 "not much less fatal to us than to the
 "wretch whom I killed; since, after
 "the action, my companion and I
 "found ourselves dangerously wound-
 "ed. But you may guess what was
 "my surprize, when in this cavalier I
 "recollected Combados, the husband
 "of Donna Helena! He was no less
 "astonished when he saw that I was
 "his defender: "Ah, Don Gaston!"
 "cried he, "was it you then who
 "came to my assistance! when you so
 "generously espoused my cause, you
 "little thought it was that of the
 "man who deprived you of your mis-
 "tress."—"I was really ignorant of
 "it," answered I; "but had I known
 "you, do you imagine that I should
 "have scrupled to do what I have
 "done? are you so much mistaken in
 "me as to think me so base?"—"No,

"no," he replied; "I have a better
 "opinion of your virtue; and if I die
 "of the wounds which I have re-
 "ceived, I hope yours will not hin-
 "der you from profiting by my death."
 —"Combados," said I, "although
 "I have not yet forgot Donna Hele-
 "na, know, that I don't desire to en-
 "joy her at the expence of your life;
 "I am even glad of having contri-
 "buted towards saving you from the
 "swords of three assassins, since in
 "that I have performed an action
 "agreeable to your wife." While
 "we conversed in this manner, my
 "lacquey alighted, and approaching
 "the dead cavalier, took off his mask,
 "and discovered features which Com-
 "bados immediately knew. "It is
 "Caprara!" cried he, "that perfid-
 "ious cousin, who, out of spite, for
 "having been disappointed of a rich
 "estate which he unjustly disputed
 "with me, has a long time cherished
 "the desire of murdering me, and at
 "length chosen this day to put it in
 "execution; but Heaven hath per-
 "mitted him to fall a victim to his
 "own design!"

"Meanwhile, our blood flowed a-
 "pace, and we grew weaker and weak-
 "er: nevertheless, wounded as we
 "were, we had strength enough to go
 "to the town of Villarejo, which was
 "but two gun-shots from the field of
 "battle. We alighted at the first inn
 "we came to, and sending for sur-
 "geons, one was brought, who had
 "the reputation of being very expert
 "in his profession. He examined our
 "wounds, which he found dangerous,
 "then dressed them, and next day,
 "after having taken off the dressings,
 "declared that the wounds of Don
 "Blas were mortal: he judged more
 "favourably of mine; and his prog-
 "nosticks were fulfilled.

"Combados, hearing his doom,
 "thought of nothing but preparing for
 "death: he likewise dispatched an ex-
 "press to inform his wife of what had
 "happened, and of his present melan-
 "choly situation; upon which Donna
 "Helena, setting out immediately,
 "soon arrived at Villarejo, her mind
 "disturbed with a disquiet which had
 "two different causes: the danger in
 "which her husband was, and the
 "dread of feeling, at sight of me, a
 "flame, which was but half extin-
 "guished,

gushed, revive, created a terrible agitation in her breast. "Madam," said Don Blas, when she came into his presence, "you arrive time enough to receive my last adieu: I am going to die; and I regard my death as the punishment of Heaven, for having by a deceit deprived you of Don Gaston. Far from murmuring at my fate, I exhort you to restore to him the heart which I unjustly seized." Donna Helena answered only by her tears; and truly it was the best reply she could make, as she was not as yet so much detached from me, as to forget the artifice which he had practised to make her break her vows.

As the surgeon had prognosticated, Combados died of his wounds in less than three days, while mine indicated a speedy cure. The young widow, who was wholly engrossed by the care of transporting her husband's corpse to Coria, in order to perform all the funeral honours which she owed to his ashes, departed from Villarejo, after having enquired (through pure politeness) about my health. As soon as I could follow her, I set out also for Coria; where, my recovery being completed, my aunt Donna Eleonora, and Don George de Galisteo, resolved that Helena and I should be married forthwith, lest Fortune should again part us by some unlucky accident. This marriage was celebrated in private, on account of the too recent death of Don Blas; and a few days after I returned to Madrid with Donna Helena. As I had exceeded the time prescribed by the count-duke for my journey, I was afraid that he had given to another the lieutenancy which he had promised to me: but he had not disposed of it, and was so good as to admit the excuses which I made for my delay.

"I am now," continued Cogollos, lieutenant of the Spanish guard, am pleased with my employment, and have contracted some agreeable friends, with whom I live very happily." "I wish I could say as much," cried Don Andrea; "but I am very far from being satisfied with my condition: I have lost my post, which was pretty advantageous; and I

have no friends who have credit enough to procure me such another."—"Pardon me, Signior Don Andrea," said I, smiling, "you have in me a friend who is good for something. I have already said that I am still better beloved by the count-duke than ever I was by the Duke of Lerma, and you have the assurance to tell me to my face, that you have not a friend who can procure a post for you. Have I not once before done you such a piece of service? Remember that, by the interest of the Archbishop of Granada, I was the occasion of your being named to exercise an employment at Mexico, where you would have made your fortune, if love had not detained you in the city of Alicante; and I am at present more capable of serving you, having the ear of the prime-minister."—"I trust wholly to you then," replied Tordefillas; "but," added he, smiling, in his turn, "pray, don't send me to New Spain; I will not go thither if I was to be made chief judge of Mexico."

We were interrupted in this part of our conversation by Donna Helena, who came into the hall, and whose amiable person equalled the charming idea which I had formed of her beauty. "Madam," said Cogollos to her, "this is Signior de Santillane, of whom you have heard me speak, and whose agreeable company hath often suspended my sorrows while I was in prison."—"Yes, Madam," said I to Donna Helena; "my conversation pleased him, because you was always the subject of it." Don George's daughter made a modest reply to my compliment; after which I took my leave of this couple, protesting that I was ravished to find their long passion was at length crowned by a happy marriage. Then, addressing myself to Tordefillas, I desired him to give me his direction, which when I received, "Without bidding you adieu, Don Andrea," said I, "I hope in less than eight days you will see that I have power as well as friendship." My words were soon verified: the very next day, the count-duke furnished me with an occasion to oblige the keeper. "Santillane," said his excellency, "the place of governor of the royal prison at Valladolid is vacant;

‘vacant; it brings in more than three hundred pistoles per annum, and I am resolved to bestow it upon thee.’—‘I would not have it, my lord,’ answered I, ‘were it worth ten thousand ducats yearly: I renounce all posts that I cannot enjoy without removing from your grace.’—‘But,’ resumed the minister, ‘thou mayest very well enjoy this, without being obliged to leave Madrid, except to go sometimes to Valladolid to visit the prison.’—‘You may say what you please,’ I replied; ‘I will not accept of that employment, but on condition that I shall be allowed to resign in favour of a brave gentleman, called Don Andrea de Tordefillas, formerly keeper of the tower of Segovia: I should love to make him that present, as an acknowledgment for the kind treatment I received from him during my confinement.’

The minister, laughing at this discourse, said, ‘I see, Gil Blas, thou hast a mind to make a governor of a royal prison, as thou hast made a vice-roy. Well, be it so, my friend; I give to thee this vacant place for Tordefillas: but tell me freely what advantage thou wilt reap from it; for I don’t believe thee fool enough to employ thy credit for nothing.’—‘My lord,’ answered I, ‘ought not a man to pay his debts? Don Andrea, in the most disinterested manner, did me all the service he could: ought not I to requite his generosity?’—‘You are becoming very disinterested,’ Mr. Santillane, said his excellency: ‘I think you were not so much so under the last minister!’—‘I own it,’ said I; ‘my morals were corrupted by bad example: as every thing then was put to sale, I conformed myself to the fashion; and as every thing is now given away, I have resumed my integrity.’

I procured, then, the government of the royal prison of Valladolid for Don Andrea; whom, in a little time, I sent to that city, as well satisfied with his new settlement as I was with the opportunity of acquitting myself of the obligations I owed him.

CHAP. XIV.

SANTILLANE VISITS THE POET
NUNNEZ: AN ACCOUNT OF THE

PERSONS WHOM HE FOUND; AND
THE DISCOURSE WHICH HE
HEARD AT HIS LODGINGS.

ONE afternoon I was seized with an inclination of visiting the Asturian poet, being curious to know how he was lodged. I went accordingly to the house of Signior Don Bertrand Gomez de Ribero, and asking for Nunnez, ‘He does not live here,’ said the porter; ‘but lodges there at present, having hired the back-side of the house.’ So saying, he pointed to a house in the neighbourhood, whither I went; and, after having crossed a small court, entered into a naked hall, where I found my friend Fabricio still at table, with five or six of his companions, whom he treated that day.

They had almost dined, and consequently were in a trim for disputing; but as soon as they perceived me, their noisy discourse subsided into profound silence. Nunnez got up with great eagerness to receive me, crying, ‘Gentlemen, this is Signior de Santillane, who is so good as to honour me with a visit; pray join me in paying your respects to the favourite of the prime-minister.’ At these words all the guests got up to salute me; and, in favour of the title which I had received, treated me with great civility and respect. Although I was neither hungry nor thirsty, I could not excuse myself from sitting down at table with them; and was even obliged to honour the toast which they had proposed.

As I imagined that my presence was a check upon their conversation, ‘Gentlemen,’ said I, ‘I have interrupted your discourse: pray, resume it, or I will be gone.’—‘These gentlemen,’ said Fabricio, ‘were talking of the Iphigenia of Euripides. The Batchelor Melchior de Villegas, who is a critick of the first order, was asking of Signior Don Jacinto de Romarata what was the most interesting circumstance of that tragedy.’—‘Yes,’ said Don Jacinto; ‘and I answered, that it was the danger of Iphigenia.’—‘And I,’ said the batchelor, ‘replied, (and I am ready to demonstrate my assertion) that the danger is not the most interesting part of the subject.’—‘What is then?’ cried the old

old Licentiate Gabriel de Leon. 'It is the wind,' said the batchelor.

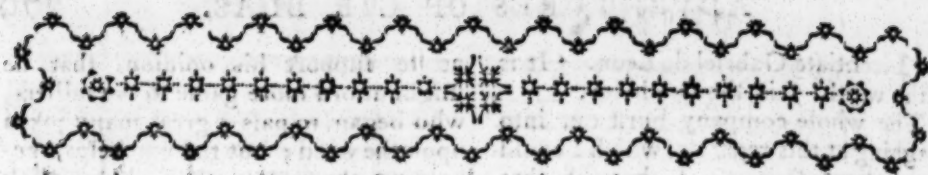
The whole company burst out into laughing at this repartee, which I could not believe serious; I thought that Melchior pronounced it with a view of enlivening the conversation; but I did not know this virtuoso, who was a man that did not at all understand raillery. 'Laugh as much as you please, gentlemen,' replied he, dryly; 'I maintain that the wind alone ought to interest, surprize, and move the spectator: figure to yourselves a numerous army assembled to go and besiege Troy; conceive all the impatience of the chiefs and soldiers to execute that enterprize, that they may speedily return into Greece, where they have left what is most dear to them, their wives, children, and household goods; in the mean time, a cursed contrary wind detains them at Aulis, seems to nail them to the port, and if it does not change, they cannot go and besiege the city of Priam: it is the wind, therefore, which constitutes the most interesting point of that tragedy. I share with the Greeks, I espouse their cause, my whole wish is the departure of the fleet, and I see with indifference the danger of Iphigenia, since her death is the only means of obtaining a favourable wind from the gods.'

Villegas had no sooner done speaking, than the laugh was renewed at his expense. Nunnez was so mischievous

as to support his opinion, that he might afford more game to the railers, who began to pass a great many jokes upon the wind; but the batchelor, beholding them all with a phlegmatick haughty look, treated them as ignorant and vulgar minds. I expected every moment to see them warm, and to go to loggerheads, the usual end of their dissertations: but I was baulked in my expectations; they were contented with reviling one another, and withdrew when they had eaten and drank their fill.

When they were gone, I asked Fabricio, why he did not live still with his treasurer; and if he had quarrelled with him. 'Quarrelled!' answered he; 'God forbid! I am more in favour than ever with Signior Don Bertrand, who has allowed me to lodge by myself. I have, therefore, hired these lodgings, to receive my friends, and make merry with them in full liberty, which is often the case: for thou knowest that I am not of an humour to leave much wealth to my heirs; and, what is very happy for me, I am at present in a condition of enjoying parties of pleasure every day.'—'I am overjoyed to hear it, my dear Nunnez,' said I; 'and I cannot help congratulating thee again upon the success of thy last tragedy: the whole eight hundred dramatick pieces of the great Lope have not brought him one fourth of what thou hast got by the Count de Saldagne.'

END OF THE ELEVENTH BOOK.



THE
ADVENTURES
OF
GIL BLAS
OF
SANTILLANE.
BOOK XII.

CHAP. I.

GIL BLAS IS SENT TO TOLEDO BY
THE MINISTER: THE MOTIVE
AND SUCCESS OF HIS JOURNEY.



URING a whole month almost, his grace had been saying to me every day, 'Santillane, the time draws near when I shall set thy address to work; and still the time did not come. At length, however, it arrived; and his excellency spoke to me in these words: 'It is reported that, in the company of players belonging to Toledo, there is a young actress whose talents make a great noise: it is said that she dances and sings divinely, and quite captivates the spectators by her declamation. I am assured also, that she has a considerable share of beauty. Such a genius deserves to appear at court. The king loves plays, musick, and dancing; and he must not be deprived of the pleasure

of seeing and hearing a person of such extraordinary merit. I have resolved, therefore, to send thee to Toledo, to judge by thyself whether or not she is actually such a wonderful actress. I will be governed by the impression she shall make upon thee, as I depend a great deal on thy discernment.' I answered, that I should give his grace a good account of that affair; and prepared for my departure with one lacquey only, whom I ordered to put off the minister's livery, that things might be done the more mysteriously; and this was very much to his excellency's taste. I set out then for Toledo, where, when I arrived, I alighted at an inn near the castle. Scarce had I set my foot to the ground, when the landlord, taking me, doubtless, for some country gentleman, said to me, 'Signior Cavalier, I suppose you are come to town to see the august ceremony of the *Auto da Fé**, which is to be performed to-morrow.' I answered in the affirmative; thinking it more prudent to let him believe that, than to give him

* The act of faith.

an opportunity of questioning me about my coming to Toledo. 'You will see,' he resumed, 'one of the finest processions that ever happened: there are, I am told, more than a hundred prisoners, among whom they reckon above ten who are to be burnt.'

Next morning, indeed, before sunrise, I heard all the bells of the city tolling; and this melancholy sound was to advertise the people, that they were going to begin the *Auto da Fé*. Curious to see this solemnity, I put on my cloaths in a hurry, and repaired to the inquisition. All along the streets through which the procession was to pass, scaffolds were erected, upon one of which I hired a place. In a little time I perceived the Dominicans, who walked foremost, preceded by the banners of the inquisition. These good fathers were immediately followed by the wretched victims which were to be sacrificed that day by the Holy Office. These miserable creatures walked one after another, with their heads and feet bare, each having a wax-taper in his hand, and a god-father* by his side. Some had large scapularies of yellow stuff, garnished with St. Andrew's crosses painted red, and called *sanbenito*; others wore *carochas*, which are high paper caps, made in the shape of a sugar loaf, and covered with flames and diabolical figures.

As I looked attentively at these unfortunate people, with a compassion which I took care to conceal, that I might not suffer for it, I thought I recollected among those who had their heads adorned with *carochas*, the reverend Father Hilary, and his companion Brother Ambrose. They passed so near me that I could not be mistaken. 'What do I see!' said I to myself; 'Heaven, wearied with the disorderly lives of these wretches, hath delivered them at last to the justice of the inquisition!' So saying, I felt myself seized with horror; I trembled from head to foot; and my spirits were so disordered, that I had almost swooned. The connection which I once had with these rogues, the adventure of Xelva, in short, all the circumstances of my correspon-

dence with them, presented themselves that moment to my fancy; and I thought I could never be thankful enough to God for having preserved me from the scapulary and *carochas*.

When the ceremony was ended, I returned to the inn, trembling at the dreadful spectacle which I had beheld: but these afflicting images which disturbed my imagination dispersed insensibly: and now my whole study was to acquit myself handsomely of the commission entrusted to my care. I waited impatiently for play time, that I might go to the theatre, judging that to be the most proper beginning of my work: and, as soon as the hour came, went thither, and sat down by a knight of Alcántara; with whom entering into conversation, 'Signior,' said I to him, 'may a stranger be so bold as to ask you one question?'—'Signior Cavalier,' answered he, very politely, 'I shall think it an honour.'—'I have heard the actors of Toledo,' I resumed, 'very much extolled; pray, have I been misinformed?'—'No,' replied the knight; 'their company is not bad; nay, there are great players among them. You will see, among others, the fair Lucretia, an actress of fourteen years of age, who will surprize you very much. I shall have no occasion to point her out to you; when she appears, you will easily distinguish her from the rest.' I asked if she was to play that evening: and he told me she would; observing, at the same time, that she had a very shining part to act in the piece which was going to be represented.

The play began; and two actresses, who had neglected nothing which could contribute towards rendering them charming, appeared on the stage; but, in spite of the lustre of their diamonds, I took neither the one nor the other for her whom I expected. At length Lucretia walked forward from the bottom of the stage; and her appearance was saluted by a long and general clapping of hands. 'Ah, there she is!' said I to myself: 'what a noble air! what grace! what fine eyes! O the divine creature!' I was actually very well pleased, or rather passion-

* People named by the inquisitor, to accompany the prisoners in the *Auto da Fé*, and obliged to be answerable for them.

ately struck with her person. On hearing her recite the first couplet, I found she had nature, fire, an understanding above her age; and I joined my applause to that which she willingly received from the whole audience, during the whole performance.

'Well,' said the knight to me, 'you see how Lucretia is caressed by the publick.'—'I am not at all surprized at it,' answered I. 'You would be less so still,' said he, 'if you had heard her sing. She is a perfect syren. Woe be to those who listen! Her dancing is no less formidable: her steps, as dangerous as her voice, charm the eye, and force the heart to yield.'—'If that be the case,' cried I, 'it must be owned she is a prodigy! What happy mortal has the pleasure of ruining himself for such an amiable creature!'

'She has no declared lover,' said he, 'and even scandal has not as yet involved her in any private intrigue. Nevertheless,' added he, 'this may soon be the case; for Lucretia is under the conduct of her aunt Estella, who is certainly the most expert of all the actresses.' At the name of Estella, I interrupted the knight with precipitation, to ask if that Estella was an actress of the Toledo company. 'She is one of the best of them,' said he; 'she has not acted to-day, and we have suffered by her absence: she usually plays the part of the waiting-woman, which she performs to admiration. Her action is full of spirit; perhaps too full; but it is an agreeable fault, which ought to be forgiven.' The knight told me wonders of this Estella; and, by the picture he drew of her person, I never doubted that it was Laura, that same Laura of whom I have spoken so much in my history, and whom I had left at Grenada.

However, to be more certain still, after the play I went behind the scenes; and, casting my eyes around, found her in the tyring-room, talking to some gentlemen, who, perhaps, regarded her only as the aunt of Lucretia. I advanced to salute Laura; but whether through whim, or in order to punish me for my precipitate departure from Grenada, she pretended not to know me, and received my civilities so dryly, that I was a little discon-

certed. Instead of upbraiding her in a laughing humour for her cold behaviour towards me, I was fool enough to be nettled at it: I even retired hastily, resolving, in my passion, to return next day to Madrid. 'To be revenged of Laura,' said I to myself, 'her niece shall not have the honour of appearing before the king: for this purpose, I can give the minister such a description of Lucretia as I please; I have no more to do, but to tell him that she dances with a bad grace, that she has a squeaking voice; and, in short, that her charms consist in her youth only. I am sure that his excellency, after that, will have no inclination to bring her to court.'

Such was the vengeance I meditated against Laura for her behaviour to me; but my resentment did not last long: next day, just as I was about to depart, a page entered my chamber, and said, 'Here is a letter for Signior de Santillane.'—'I am the person,' my child,' answered I, taking the letter, which contained these words.

FORGET the manner in which you was received last night in the tyring-room, and be so good as to follow the bearer.'

I immediately took the page for my conductor, who, when we were near the playhouse, introduced me into a very handsome house, where I found Laura at her toilette in a very genteel apartment.

She got up to embrace me, saying, 'Signior Gil Blas, I know that you have no cause to be pleased with the reception you met with when you came to salute me in our tyring-room; an old friend, like you, had a right to expect more civil treatment: but I must tell you, for my excuse, that I was then in a very bad humour. When you appeared, I was quite engrossed by some scandalous discourse which one of our gentlemen had uttered against my niece, whose honour is dearer to me than my own. Your sudden retreat,' added she, 'made me immediately recollect myself; and that moment I ordered my page to follow you to your lodging, that I might to-day make amends for my fault.'—'That is already

‘ready done, my dear Laura,’ said I, ‘let us talk no more of that matter: let us rather inform one another of what has happened to us since the unlucky day on which the dread of just chastisement made me quit Grenada with great precipitation. I left you, you may remember, in pretty great perplexity: pray, how did you extricate yourself? Had you not occasion for all your address to appease your Portuguese lover?’—‘Not at all,’ replied Laura: ‘don’t you know, that in such cases the men are so weak, that they sometimes even spare the women the trouble to justify themselves. I affirmed,’ continued she, ‘to the Marquis de Marialva, that thou wast my brother. Pardon me, Mr. Santillane, if I speak to you as familiarly as heretofore: but I can’t get rid of my old habits. I tell thee, then, that I brazened it out. “Don’t you see,” said I to the Portuguese nobleman, “that all this is the work of jealousy and rage? Narcissa, my comrade and rival, incensed to see me in quiet possession of a heart of which she was baulked, has played me this trick: she has bribed the under candle-snuffer; who, as the minister of her resentment, has the impudence to say, that he has seen me Arsenia’s chamber-maid. Nothing can be more false: the widow of Don Antonio Cielo always entertained too noble sentiments to humble herself so low as to serve an actress. Besides, what proves the falsity of the accusation, and the conspiracy of my accusers, is the precipitate retreat of my brother: if he was present, he might confound their slander; but Narcissa has, doubtless, employed some new artifice to make him disappear.” Though these reasons,’ pursued Laura, ‘made but an indifferent apology, the Marquis was so good as to be satisfied with it; and that good-natured nobleman continued to love me until the day of his departure from Grenada, on his return to Portugal. Indeed, he did not stay long after thee: and the wife of Zapata had the pleasure of seeing me lose the lover of whom I had deprived her. After that I lived some years at Grenada; then a division happening

‘in our company, which is often the case, all the players separated: some went to Seville, others to Cordova, and I came to Toledo, where I have been ten years, with my niece Lucretia, whom thou must have seen act last night, since thou wast at the play.’

I could not help laughing in this place; and Laura asking the cause, ‘Can’t you guess?’ said I. ‘You have neither brother nor sister, and of consequence cannot be Lucretia’s aunt. Besides, when I calculate the time which hath elapsed since our last separation, and compare it with the age of your niece, I cannot help thinking that you are more nearly related.’

‘I understand you, Mr. Gil Blas,’ replied Don Antonio’s widow, reddening; ‘what a chronologist you are! it is impossible to make you believe it. Well then, my friend, Lucretia is my daughter by the Marquis de Marialva; she is the fruit of our correspondence; I can no longer conceal it from thee.’—‘What a great effort you make, my princess,’ said I, ‘in revealing that secret, after having imparted to me your adventures with the steward of the hospital of Zamora. I must tell you, moreover, Lucretia is a maid of such singular merit, that the publick can never be thankful enough to you for having made such a present to it. It were to be wished, that all your comrades had done the same.’—If some mischievous reader, in this place, recollecting the private conversations which I had with Laura at Grenada, while I was secretary to the Marquis de Marialva, suspects that I might have disputed with that nobleman the honour of being Lucretia’s father, it is a suspicion the justice of which I must avow to my shame.—I recounted my principal adventures to Laura in my turn, and made her acquainted with my present situation. She listened to my narration so attentively as to shew that it was far from being indifferent to her; and when I had finished it, ‘Friend Santillane,’ said she, ‘I find you act a very considerable part on the theatre of the world; and you cannot imagine how much I am overjoyed at your good fortune. When I shall bring Lucretia to Madrid,

‘drid, with an intention to introduce her into the prince’s company, I flatter myself that she will find a powerful protector in Signior de Santillane.’—‘Never doubt that,’ answered I; ‘you may depend upon me: I will procure your daughter’s admittance into the prince’s company whenever you please: this is what I can promise, without presuming too much upon my power.’—‘I would take you at your word,’ replied Laura, ‘and set out for Madrid to-morrow, were I not restricted to this place by engagements with our company.’—‘An order from court can break these ties,’ said I; ‘and you shall receive one in less than eight days. I shall be pleased in taking Lucretia from the Toledans: such an handsome actress is destined for courtiers, and properly belongs to us.’

Lucretia entered the room just as I had pronounced these words, and seemed so pretty and engaging, that I took her for the goddess Hebe. She had just risen; and her natural beauty, shining without the help of art, presented a ravishing object to my view. ‘Come, niece,’ said her mother to her, ‘come, and thank this gentleman for his friendship: he is an old acquaintance of mine, who has great interest at court, and intends to introduce us both into the prince’s company.’ These words seemed to give pleasure to the dear girl; who made me a low curtsy, and said, with an enchanting smile, ‘I most humbly thank you for your obliging intention; but, in taking me from the people by whom I am beloved, are you sure that I shall please the audience at Madrid? I shall, perhaps, lose by the change. I remember to have heard my aunt say, that she has seen actors caressed in one place and hissed in another, and this gives me some concern; beware of exposing me to the contempt and yourself to the reproaches of the court.’—‘Fair Lucretia,’ answered I, ‘neither you nor I have reason to be apprehensive of that: I rather fear that, by inflaming all that behold you, you will create some misunderstanding among our grandees.’—‘The fear of my niece,’ said Laura, ‘is better founded than yours; but I hope they

‘are both vain: if Lucretia cannot make a noise by her charms, in recompence, she is no contemptible actress.’

Our conversation lasted some time longer; and I had reason to conclude, from every thing which Lucretia said, that she was a maid of a superior genius. I then took my leave of the two ladies, assuring them that they should soon have an order from court to repair to Madrid.

CHAP. II.

SANTILLANE GIVES AN ACCOUNT OF HIS COMMISSION TO THE MINISTER, WHO EMPLOYS HIM TO BRING LUCRETIA TO MADRID. THE ARRIVAL OF THAT ACTRESS, AND HER APPEARANCE AT COURT.

AT my return to Madrid, I found the count-duke very impatient to know the success of my journey. ‘Gil Blas,’ said he, ‘hast thou seen this same actress? Is she worth bringing to court?’—‘My lord,’ I replied, ‘Fame, which usually praises beauties more than they deserve, has not said enough in commendation of young Lucretia: she is an admirable creature, both as to her person and talents.’—‘Is it possible!’ cried the minister, with an interior satisfaction which I read in his eyes, and which made me believe that he had sent me to Toledo on his own account, ‘is it possible that she can be so amiable?’—‘When you have seen her,’ answered I, ‘you will own, that no eulogium can do justice to her charms.’—‘Santillane,’ said his excellency, ‘give me a faithful relation of thy journey; I shall be very glad to hear it.’ To satisfy my master, I then recounted all, even the history of Laura inclusively. I told him, that this actress had Lucretia by the Marquis de Marialva, a Portuguese nobleman, who, stopping at Grenada on his travels, fell in love with her. In short, when I had recounted to his grace every thing that happened between the two actresses and me, he said, ‘I am overjoyed to hear that Lucretia is the daughter of a man of quality; that circumstance interests me still more in

'in her behalf; she must be brought to town. But,' added he, 'continue as thou hast begun; let not me appear in it: every thing must pass in the name of Gil Blas de Santillane.'

I went and told Carnero, that his excellency desired him to expedite an order, by which the king received into his company Estella and Lucretia, two actresses of Toledo. 'Aha, Signior de Santillane!' said Carnero, with a satirical smile; 'yes, you shall be served immediately, since, in all appearance, you interest yourself for these two ladies.' At the same time, he wrote an order with his own hand, and delivered it to me expedited; so that I sent it instantly to Estella by the same lacquey who had attended me to Toledo. Eight days after, the mother and daughter arriving at Madrid, took lodgings hard by the prince's company, and their first care was to give me notice of it by a billet. I visited them immediately, where, after a thousand offers of service on my side, and as many acknowledgments on theirs, I left them to prepare for their first publick appearance, which I wished might be brilliant and successful.

They advertised themselves as two new actresses, whom the prince's company had received by an order from court; and they began with a comedy which they had often acted at Toledo with applause. In what part of the world are new sights disregarded? The playhouse was that day filled with an extraordinary concourse of spectators; and you may well imagine that I did not fail to be there. I suffered a little before the piece began; and, prepossessed as I was in favour of the talents both of mother and daughter, I trembled for them; so much was I interested in their success. But scarce had they opened their mouths, when my fear was banished by the applause which they received. Estella was looked upon as a consummate comick actress, and Lucretia as a prodigy in tender parts. This last captivated all hearts. Some admired the beauty of her eyes, others were touched by the sweetness of her voice; and every body, struck with the graces and brilliancy of her youth, went away enchanted by her appearance.

The count-duke, being more in-

terested than I imagined in the first essay of this actress, was at the play that evening; and I saw him go out about the end of the performance, seemingly very well satisfied with our two new players. Curious to know if he was really affected with their success, I followed him home, and going into his closet just after him, 'Well, my lord,' said I, 'is your excellency satisfied with young Marialva?'—'My excellency,' answered he, smiling, 'would be very nice indeed, if I refused to join my vote to that of the publick. Yes, child, I am charmed with thy Lucretia, and I don't doubt that the king will be pleased when he sees her.'

CHAP. III.

LUCRETIA MAKES A GREAT NOISE AT COURT, AND ACTS BEFORE THE KING, WHO FALLS IN LOVE WITH HER. THE CONSEQUENCE OF HIS PASSION.

THE appearance of two new actresses soon made a noise at court: the very next day it was spoke of at the king's levee. Some noblemen extolled young Lucretia in particular, and drew such a beautiful picture of her, that the monarch was struck with it: but, dissembling the impression which their discourses made upon his heart, he seemed to take no notice of what they said. Nevertheless, as soon as he found himself alone with the count-duke, he asked who this actress was whom they praised so much. The minister answered, that she was a young player of Toledo, who had made her first appearance the preceding night with great success. 'She is called Lucretia,' added he; 'a name very suitable to people of her profession. She is an acquaintance of Santillane's, who spoke so much in her favour, that I thought proper to receive her into your majesty's company.'

The king smiled when he heard my name mentioned, because he remembered, perhaps, at that moment, that it was I who had made him acquainted with Catalina, and foresaw that I should do him the same service on this occasion. 'Count,' said he to the minister, 'I will go to-morrow and see this Lucretia'

‘Lucretia act. Take care to advertise her of my intention.’

The count-duke having repeated this conversation to me, and informed me of the king’s design, sent me to impart it to our two actresses. ‘I come,’ said I to Laura, who was the first I met, ‘to tell you a piece of great news; you will, to-morrow, have among your spectators the sovereign of this monarchy; this is what I am ordered by the minister to acquaint you with. I don’t doubt that your daughter and you will do your utmost to deserve the honour which the king intends you; but I advise you to chuse a piece in which there is both dancing and musick, that he may admire all the talents of Lucretia together.’ — ‘We will take your advice,’ replied Laura, ‘and do all in our power to amuse the prince.’ — ‘He cannot fail of being pleased,’ said I, seeing Lucretia come in, in a dishabille, which gave her more charms than the most superb theatrical dress. ‘He will be so much the more satisfied with your lovely niece, as he loves singing and dancing above all other entertainments: who knows but he may be tempted to throw the handkerchief at her!’ — ‘I don’t at all wish,’ replied Laura, ‘that he may have any such temptation; notwithstanding his being a powerful monarch, he might find obstacles to the accomplishment of his desires. Lucretia is virtuous, though bred behind the scenes, and whatever pleasure she may feel in seeing herself applauded on the stage, she would much rather pass for a modest girl than for a good actress.’

‘Why should my aunt,’ said young Marialva, joining in the conversation, ‘form such chimeras to fight with? I shall never be obliged to repulse the sighs of the king; the delicacy of his taste will save him from the reproaches he would deserve, if he could humble his attention to me.’ — ‘But, charming Lucretia,’ said I, ‘should it happen that the prince would attach himself to you, and chuse you for his mistress, would you be so cruel as to let him languish in your chains like an ordinary lover?’ — ‘Why not?’ answered she. ‘Yes, doubtless: and though virtue were out of the question, my vanity would

exult much more in resisting than in yielding to his passion.’ I was not a little astonished to hear a pupil of Laura talk in this manner; and left the ladies; praising the last for having bestowed such good education on the other.

Next day the king, impatient to see Lucretia, went to the play. They acted a performance, mixed with songs and dances, in which our young actress shone very much. From the beginning to the end, I kept my eyes fixed on the monarch, and in his looks endeavoured to read his thoughts; but he baffled my penetration by an air of gravity which all along he affected to preserve. I did not learn till next day what I was so curious to know. ‘Santillane,’ said the minister to me, ‘I have just left the king, who has spoke to me of Lucretia with so much vivacity, that I am convinced he is captivated by that young player; and, as I told him that thou wast the occasion of bringing her from Toledo, he said he should be glad to talk with thee in private on that subject. Go, instantly, and present thyself at his chamber-door, where there is an order already given to admit thee. Run, therefore, and bring me back, as soon as possible, an account of the conversation.’

I flew instantly to the palace, where I found the king alone, walking very fast in expectation of my coming, and seemingly very much perplexed. He put several questions to me about Lucretia, whose history he obliged me to recount: he then asked, if the little gentlewoman had never been engaged in any intrigue. I boldly assured him that she had not, (though these sorts of assurances are a little rash!) and the prince seemed very glad to hear it. ‘If that be the case,’ said he, ‘I chuse thee for my agent with Lucretia; and desire, that by thy means she may this evening learn her victory. Go, signify her conquest from me,’ added he, putting into my hand a diamond necklace worth forty thousand crowns; ‘and tell her, that I desire she will accept of that present, until I give her more solid marks of my affection.’

Before I performed this commission, I went back to the count-duke, and made a faithful report of what the king had

had said: with this I imagined the minister would be more afflicted than rejoiced; for I believed (as I have already observed) that he himself had amorous views upon Lucretia, and would be chagrined to hear that his master was become his rival; but I was mistaken. Far from seeming mortified at the news, it gave him so much joy, that, being unable to contain it, some words escaped him, which did not fall to the ground. 'Aha, Philip!' cried he; 'egad! I have you fast. For once, you will be sick of business.' This apotrophe disclosed the whole contrivance of the count-duke. I now perceived that the minister, being afraid of the king's applying himself to serious affairs, endeavoured to amuse him with pleasures more suitable to his humour. 'San-tillane,' said he, afterwards, 'lose no time; make haste, my friend, to go and execute the important order which thou hast received, and which a great many noblemen at court would glory in performing. Consider,' said he, 'that thou hast here no Count de Lemos to deprive thee of one half of the honour acquired in this service: thou wilt have it entirely to thyself; and, moreover, enjoy all the fruits of it.'

Thus did his excellency gild the pill, which I swallowed down gently, though not without tasting the bitterness of it: for, since my imprisonment, I had been used to look upon things in a moral point of view, and did not think the post of Mercury in chief quite so honourable as it was called. However, though I was not vicious enough to perform it without remorse, I had not virtue sufficient to make me refuse the employment. I therefore obeyed the king the more willingly, as I saw at the same time that my compliance would be agreeable to the minister, whom it was my sole study to please. I thought proper to address myself at first to Laura, to whom, in a private conversation, I disclosed my mission in a discreet manner; and towards the end of the discourse, presented the jewels; at sight of which the lady, being unable to conceal her joy, gave a loose to it. 'Signior Gil Blas,' cried she, 'I ought not to constrain myself before my oldest and best friend. I

should be to blame in affecting a false severity of morals, and making grimaces with you. Yes; you need not doubt it,' continued she; 'I am overjoyed that my daughter has made such a precious conquest, all the advantages of which I comprehend; but, between you and me, I am afraid that Lucretia will look upon them with a different eye: for, though a young actress, she is so careful of her chastity, that she has already rejected the addresses of two young noblemen, both amiable and rich. You may say, indeed, that these were not kings. True; and in all probability, the passion of a crowned head will shake the virtue of Lucretia. Nevertheless, I must tell you, that the thing is uncertain, and I declare that I will never force the inclinations of my daughter. If, far from thinking herself honoured by the transient affection of the king, she shall regard that honour as infamous, let not that great prince be disoblige if she shall conceal herself from him. Return to-morrow,' added she, 'and then I will tell you whether you must carry back to him a favourable answer, or his jewels.'

I did not at all doubt that Laura would exhort Lucretia to swerve from her duty, rather than remain in it, and I depended a good deal on that exhortation. Nevertheless, I learned with surprize next day, that Laura had as much difficulty in swaying her daughter to vice as other mothers have to form their's to virtue; and, which is still more surprizing, Lucretia, after having granted some private interviews to the monarch, felt so much remorse for having yielded to his desires, that she quitted the world all of a sudden, and shut herself up in the monastery of the Incarnation, where she soon fell sick, and died of grief. Laura being inconsolable for the loss of her daughter, whose death she upbraided herself with, retired into the convent of the Female Penitents, there to mourn the pleasures of her youth. The king was affected by the unexpected retreat of Lucretia; but being of a humour not to be long afflicted at any thing, consoled himself by degrees for this event. As for the count-duke, although he did not seem very much touched at this incident,

it did not fail to give him a great deal of mortification; and this the reader will easily believe.

CHAP. IV.

SANTILLANE IS INVESTED BY THE MINISTER WITH A NEW EMPLOYMENT.

I Was also sensibly affected by the misfortune of Lucretia, and felt such remorse for having contributed to it, that, looking upon myself as an infamous wretch, in spite of the quality of the lover whose passion I had served, I resolved to abandon the caduceus for ever. I even expressed to the minister the reluctance I had to bear it, and begged he would employ me in something else. 'Santillane,' said he, 'I am charmed with thy delicacy; and, since thou art a man of such honour, will give thee an occupation more suitable to thy virtue. This it is; listen attentively to what I am going to impart.'

'Some years before I was in favour,' continued he, 'chance one day presented to my view a lady so handsome and well made, that I ordered her to be followed. I learned that she was a Genoese, called Donna Margarita Spinola, who lived at Madrid on the revenue of her beauty, and that Don Francisco de Valeasar*, an alcade of the court, a rich old married man, spent a great deal of money upon the coquette. This report, which ought to have inspired me with contempt for her, made me conceive a violent desire of sharing her favours with Valeasar; and, to satisfy it, I had recourse to a female go-between, who had the address in a little time to procure for me a private interview with the Genoese; and that was followed by many more, so that my rival and I were equally well treated for our presents. Perhaps, too, she had other gallants as happy as we were.'

'Be that as it will, Margarita, in

'receiving such confused homage, insensibly became pregnant, and brought forth a son, the honour of whom she bestowed on each of her lovers in particular; but not one of them being in conscience able to boast himself the father of that child, it was disowned by them all; so that the Genoese was obliged to maintain it with the fruit of her intrigues: this she did for eighteen years, at the end of which term dying, she has left her son without fortune, and, which is worse, without education.'

'This,' pursued his grace, 'is the secret I had to impart, and I will now inform thee of the great design which I have projected. I will bring this unfortunate child from obscurity; and, making him pass from one extreme to another, raise him to honours, and own him for my son.'

At this extravagant project it was impossible for me to hold my tongue. 'How, my lord!' cried I; 'can your excellency have taken such a strange resolution; pardon me for using that term, which hath escaped my zeal.'

'Thou wilt say that I am very prudent,' he replied, with precipitation, 'when I have told thee the reasons that have determined me to take it. I don't desire that my collaterals should be my heirs. Thou wilt say, that I am not as yet of such an advanced age as to make me despair of having children by my Lady Olivarez. But every one knows himself best. Let it suffice to tell thee, that there is no secret in chymistry which I have not tried in vain to become a father. Therefore, since Fortune, supplying the defects of Nature, presents a child to me, whose true father perhaps I am, I am resolved to adopt him.' When I saw the minister bent on this adoption, I ceased to oppose it, knowing him to be a man capable of committing a foolish action rather than swerve from his own opinion. 'The sole business now,' added he, 'is to bestow education upon Don Henry Philip de Guzman, (for this name I intend he shall bear)

* Don Francisco de Valeasar actually married this lady when she was big with child, and adopted the boy, whom he educated and acknowledged as his own son during the space of thirty-one years; at the expiration of which the count-duke, finding himself without heirs-male, had him legitimated, and created Marquis de Mayenza.

‘until he shall be in a condition to possess the dignities that await him. Thou, my dear Santillane, art the person whom I chuse to be his tutor. I confide in thy understanding and attachment to me for thy care in regulating his family, in giving him all sorts of masters; in a word, of making him an accomplished cavalier.’ I would have refused this employment, representing to the count-duke, that I was very ill qualified to educate young noblemen, having never practised that business, which required more knowledge and merit than I possessed. But he interrupted me, and shut my mouth, by saying, that he was absolutely resolved to make me governor to this adopted son, whom he destined for the first offices of the monarchy. I prepared myself, therefore, to fill this place for the satisfaction of his grace, who, to reward my compliance, encreased my small revenue with a pension of a thousand crowns, which he procured, or rather gave me, on the commandery of Mamdra.

CHAP. V.

THE SON OF THE GENOESE IS OWNED BY AN AUTHENTICK ACT, AND CALLED DON HENRY PHILIP DE GUZMAN. SANTILLANE FORMS THE FAMILY OF THAT YOUNG NOBLEMAN, AND HIRES ALL SORTS OF MASTERS FOR HIM.

THE count-duke in a little time actually owned the son of Donna Margarita Spinola, and the deed was executed with the consent and inclination of the king. Don Henry Philip de Guzman (for that was the name given to this child of many fathers) was declared sole heir of the Count d'Olivarez, and of the duchy of San Lucar. The minister, that nobody might be ignorant of this event, ordered Carnero to communicate the declaration to the ambassadors and grandees of Spain, who were not a little surprized at his conduct. The wits of Madrid had a fund of mirth from it a long time, and the satirical poets did not neglect such a fair occasion of shedding the gall of their pens.

When I asked where this gentleman

was whom his grace intended to entrust to my care, ‘He is in this city,’ he replied, ‘under the direction of an aunt, from whom I will take him as soon as thou shalt have prepared a house for him.’ This was soon performed. I took a house, which I caused to be magnificently furnished; hired pages, a porter, and footman; and, with the assistance of Caporis, filled up the places of his officers. When I had compleated his attendants, I went and advertised his excellency, who immediately sent for his equivocal heir and new shoot from the trunk of the Guzmans, and I found him a tall young fellow of an agreeable person. ‘Don Henry,’ said his grace to him, pointing with his finger to me, ‘this gentleman is the guide whom I have chosen to conduct you in the career of life. I have the greatest confidence in him, and give him an absolute power over you.—Yes, Santillane,’ said he, turning to me, ‘I abandon him entirely to your care, and don’t doubt that you will give a good account of him.’ To this discourse the minister joined others, exhorting the young man to submit to my directions; after which I conducted Don Henry to his house, where when we arrived, I made all his domesticks pass in review before him, signifying the office of each. He did not seem confounded at the change of his condition; and, accommodating himself to the deference and officious respect that was shewn to him, he seemed to have been always that which he was now become by chance. He did not want capacity, but was wholly illiterate, being scarce able to read or write. I furnished him with a preceptor to teach him the elements of the Latin tongue, and hired for him masters of geography, history, and fencing. You may well believe, that I did not forget a dancing-master: I was only embarrassed in the choice; for at that time there was a great number famous in that profession at Madrid, and I did not know to whom I ought to give the preference. While I was in this perplexity, a man richly dressed came into the court, and I being told that he wanted to speak with me, went to him, imagining that he was at least a knight of St. Jago or Alcantara. When I asked his commands,

mands, 'Signior de Santillane,' answered he, after having made several bows, which smelled strongly of his profession, 'understanding that your worship is the person who chuses masters for Signior Don Henry, I am come to offer my service; my name is Martin Ligerio; and I have, (thank Heaven!) some reputation. It is not my custom to come and solicit for scholars; that is the province of little obscure dancing-masters. I usually wait until I am sent for; but as I have taught the Duke de Medina Sidonia, Don Lewis de Haro, and some other noblemen of the family of Guzman, to which I am as it were a servant born, I thought it my duty to anticipate your message.'—'I find by your discourse,' said I, 'that you are the man we want. How much do you take per month?'—'Four double pistoles,' answered he, 'is the current price, and I give but two lessons per week.'—'Four doubloons a month!' cried I, 'that is a great deal.'—'How! a great deal!' replied he, with an air of astonishment; 'you would give a pistole a-month to a master of philosophy.'

There was no resisting such a pleasant reply, at which I laughed heartily, and asked Signior Ligerio, if he really thought a man of his profession preferable to a master of philosophy. 'Doubtless,' said he; 'we are of much greater use than those gentlemen. What is a man before he has passed through our hands? what but an ill-licked cub? but our lessons mould him by little and little into a due form. In a word, we teach him to move gracefully, giving him attitudes and airs of dignity and importance.'

I yielded to the arguments of this dancing-master, whom I hired for Don Henry at the rate of four double pistoles a month, since that was the price of great masters of his art.

CHAP. VI.

SCIPIO RETURNING FROM NEW-SPAIN, GIL BLAS SETTLES HIM IN THE SERVICE OF DON HENRY. THE STUDIES OF THAT YOUNG NOBLEMAN, WITH THE HONOURS

WHICH WERE CONFERRED UPON HIM, AND AN ACCOUNT OF THE LADY TO WHOM HE WAS MARRIED. GIL BLAS BECOMES NOBLE IN SPITE OF HIMSELF.

I Had not as yet compleated the half of Don Henry's family, when Scipio returned from Mexico. I asked him if he was satisfied with his voyage, and he answered, 'I have reason to be so; since, with three thousand ducats in specie, I have brought over twice as much in merchandize of the consumption of this country.'—'I congratulate thee, my child,' I replied. 'Thy fortune is now begun; and it is in thy power to compleat it, by returning to the Indies next year; or, if thou preferrest an agreeable post at Madrid to the trouble of going so far to amass wealth, thou hast nothing to do but to speak; I have one at thy service.'—'Egad!' said the son of Coscolina, 'there is no room for hesitation. I would much rather execute a good employment near you, than expose myself anew to the perils of a long voyage. Pray, master, explain yourself; what post do you intend for your humble servant?'

For his better information, I recounted to him the story of the young nobleman whom the count-duke had introduced into the family of Guzman; and after having told him, that the minister had chosen me governor to Don Henry, I promised to make him valet de chambre to that adopted son. Scipio, who asked no better, willingly accepted the post, and acquitted himself in it so well, that in less than three or four days he acquired the confidence and friendship of his new master.

I imagined that the pedagogues whom I had chosen to teach the son of the Genoesse, would find their Latin thrown away, believing one at his age undisciplinable. But I was much mistaken. He easily comprehended and retained all that was shewn to him, and his masters were very well satisfied with his capacity. I ran eagerly to impart this piece of news to the duke, who received it with excessive joy. 'Santillane,' cried he, transported, 'I am ravished to hear that Don Henry has such a memory and penetration! I perceive my own blood in him; and what convinces me of

his

his being my son is, that I feel as much affection for him, as if he had been born by my Lady Olivarez. Thou seest by this, my friend, that nature declares itself. I was not fool enough to tell his grace my sentiments of the matter; but, respecting his weakness, left him to enjoy the pleasure (whether true or false) of believing himself the father of Don Henry.

Although all the Guzmans entertained a mortal hatred to this young nobleman of fresh date, they dissembled it out of policy; nay, some of them affected to court his friendship; he was visited by the ambassadors and grantees who were then at Madrid, and honoured by them as much as if he had been a legitimate son of the count-duce. This minister, overjoyed to see such incense offered to his idol, soon decked him with dignities. He began by asking of the king the cross of Alcantara, with a commandery of ten thousand crowns, for Don Henry. In a little time after he was made gentleman of the bed-chamber. Then, resolving to marry him to a lady of the most noble family of Spain, he cast his eyes upon Donna Juana Velasco, daughter to the Duke of Castile, and had authority enough to accomplish the marriage, in spite of that duke and all his relations.

A few days before the marriage, his grace, having sent for me, put some papers into my hand, saying, 'Hold, Gil Blas, here are letters of nobility, which I have ordered to be expedited for thee.' — 'My lord,' answered I, surprized at his words, 'your excellency knows that I am the son of a poor duenna and squire; so that, in my opinion, the nobility would be prophaned by my association; and it is, of all the favours which his majesty could bestow, that which I deserve and desire the least.' — 'Thy birth,' replied the minister, 'is an objection that is easily removed: thou hast been employed in state affairs, both under the Duke of Lerma's ministry and mine: besides,' added he, with a smile, 'hast thou not done the monarch some service which deserves a recompence? In a word, Santillane, thou art not unworthy of the honour which I have procured for thee. Moreover, the

rank which thou holdest with regard to my son, requires that thou shouldst be noble; and it is on that account that I have obtained the patent.' — 'I yield, my lord,' I replied, 'since your excellency insists upon my compliance.' So saying, I went away with my patent in my pocket.

'I am now a gentleman,' said I to myself, when I had got into the street, 'ennobled, without being obliged to my parents for my quality. I may, when I please, be called Don Gil Blas; and if any one of my acquaintance shall take it in his head to laugh in my face when he calls me so, I will shew my patent. But let us read it,' continued I, taking it out of my pocket, 'and see in what manner my original meanness is washed away.' I therefore perused the paper, the substance of which was, that the king, to reward the zeal which I had manifested on more than one occasion for his service and the good of the state, had thought proper to gratify my attachment with letters of nobility. I will venture to say, in my own praise, that they did not inspire me with the least pride. Having the meanness of my extraction always before my eyes, this honour humbled instead of making me vain; therefore I determined to lock up my patent in a drawer, and never boast of it's being in my possession.

CHAP. VII.

GIL BLAS MEETS FABRICIO AGAIN BY ACCIDENT. THE LAST CONVERSATION THAT HAPPENED BETWEEN THEM, AND THE IMPORTANT ADVICE WHICH NUNNEZ GAVE TO SANTILLANE.

THE Asturian poet (as must have been observed by the reader) willingly neglected me; and my occupations did not permit me to visit him. I had not seen him since the day of the dissertation on the Iphigenia of Euripides, when chance again threw him in my way near the Gate of the Sun. He was coming out of a printing-house, and I accosted him, saying, 'Aha, Mr. Nunnez! you have been at the printer's; that seems to threaten the publick with a new work of your

‘your composition.’—‘That is what indeed it may expect,’ answered he. ‘I have actually in the press a pamphlet which will make some noise in the republick of letters.’—‘I don’t doubt the merit of thy production,’ I replied, ‘but am amazed at thy composing pamphlets, which in my opinion are trifles that do no great honour to a man of genius.’—‘I know it very well,’ said Fabricio, ‘and am not ignorant that none but those who read every thing amuse themselves with pamphlets. However, this one has escaped me, which I own is the child of necessity. Hunger, thou knowest, brings the wolf out of the wood.’

‘How!’ cried I; ‘does the author of the Count de Saldagne talk in this manner? a man who has two thousand crowns a-year!’—‘Softly, friend,’ said Nunnez to me; ‘I am no longer that happy poet who enjoyed a well-paid pension. The affairs of the Treasurer Don Bertrand are disordered all of a sudden. He has fingered and squandered away the king’s money; all his effects are seized, and my pension is gone to the devil.’—‘That is a melancholy affair,’ I resumed; ‘but hast thou no hope remaining from that quarter?’—‘Not the least,’ said he. ‘Signior Gomez de Ribero, as poor as his poet, is gone to the bottom, and will never, it is said, get his head above water again.’

‘If that be the case, my child,’ answered I; ‘I must find out some post to console thee for the loss of thy pension.’—‘I will spare thee that trouble,’ cried he. ‘If thou wouldst offer me an employment in the minister’s offices worth three thousand crowns yearly, I would refuse it. The business of clerks will not agree with the humour of a foster-child of the Muses: I must enjoy my literary amusements. What shall I say to thee! I am born to live and die a poet, and my destiny must be fulfilled.’

‘But don’t imagine,’ continued he, ‘that we are very unhappy; besides that we live in perfect independence, we are boys without care. People think that we often dine with Democritus, and there they are mis-

taken. There is not one of my fraternity, not even excepting the makers of almanacks, who is not well come to some good table. As for my part, there are two families where I am always received with pleasure. I have two covers laid for me every day, one at the house of a fat director of the farms, to whom I have dedicated a romance; and the other at the house of a rich citizen, who has the disease of being thought to entertain wits every day at his table; luckily he is not very delicate in his choice, and the city furnishes him with great plenty.’

‘I no longer pity thee then,’ said I to the Asturian poet, ‘since thou art satisfied with thy condition: though I protest to thee anew, that thou hast always in Gil Blas a friend who is proof against thy neglect and indifference; if thou hast occasion for my purse, come boldly to me; and let not a silly shame deprive thee of an infallible succour, and rob me of the pleasure of obliging thee.’

‘By that generous sentiment,’ cried Nunnez; ‘I recollect my friend Santillane; I return a thousand thanks for thy kind offer, and out of gratitude will give thee a wholesome advice. While the count-duke continues in power, and thou art in possession of his favour, profit by the opportunity; make haste to enrich thyself; for I am told he begins to totter.’ I asked Fabricio if he had that intelligence on good authority; and he answered, ‘I have it from a knight of Calatrava, who has a very singular talent in discovering the most hidden secrets; he is looked upon as an oracle, and this is what I heard him say yesterday. The count-duke has a great many enemies, who are all united to ruin him; he depends too much on the ascendancy which he has over the king; that monarch, it is reported, begins to listen to the complaints which have already reached his ears.’ I thanked Nunnez for his information, of which I took little notice, but went home, persuaded that my master’s authority was immovable, and considering him as one of those old oaks which are rooted in a forest, and which no storms can overthrow.

CHAP. VIII.

GIL BLAS IS CONVINCED OF THE TRUTH OF FABRICIO'S INTELLIGENCE. THE KING GOES TO SARAGOSSA.

NEVERTHELESS, what the Asturian poet had told me was not without foundation. There was in the palace a secret confederacy formed against the count-duke, and the queen was said to be at the head of it; but none of the measures which they took to displace the minister transpired: nay, a whole year passed before I perceived that his favour had received the least shock.

But the revolt of the Catalonians, supported by France, and the bad success of the war against these rebels, excited the murmurs of the people, who complained of the government. These complaints occasioned a council to be held in presence of the king, who desired the Marquis de Grana, the emperor's ambassador at the court of Spain, to be there; the subject of their deliberation being, whether it was most proper for the king to stay in Castile, or go and shew himself to his troops in Arragon. The count-duke, who was averse to the prince's departure for the army, spoke first: he represented, that it was better for his majesty to remain in the center of his dominions; and supported his opinion with all the reasons which his eloquence could afford. He had no sooner concluded his speech, than his advice was unanimously followed by every body in council, except the Marquis de Grana; who, listening to nothing but his zeal for the house of Austria, and giving way to the frankness of his nation, opposed the sentiment of the prime-minister, and supported the contrary opinion with such force, that the king was struck with the solidity of his arguments, embraced his opinion, though it was opposite to that of the whole council, and fixed the day of his departure for the army.

This was the first time that ever his majesty durst think otherwise than his favourite; who, looking upon this novelty as a bloody affront, was very much mortified. When the minister was going to retire into his closet, to bite upon the bridle at liberty, he perceived me, and taking me in along with him, recounted what had passed at council with great agitation: then, like a man who could not recollect himself from his surprise, 'Yes, Santillane,' continued he, 'the king, who for these twenty years past hath spoke with my mouth, and seen through my eyes, now prefers the opinion of Grana to mine; and in what manner too? loading the ambassador with eulogiums, and, in particular, praising his zeal for the house of Austria, as if that German loved it better than I do!

'By this it is easy to judge,' pursued the minister, 'that there is a party formed against me, and that the queen is at the head of it.'—'Why, my lord,' said I, 'should you be uneasy with that conjecture? Has not the queen, for more than twelve years, been used to see you at the helm; and the king been in a long habit of not consulting her? As for the Marquis of Grana, the monarch, perhaps, chose his opinion out of desire to see his army, and make a campaign.'—'That is not the case,' said the count-duke; 'say, rather, my enemies hope that the king, being among his troops, will always be surrounded by the noblemen who will attend him; and that more than one will be found so much disgusted at me, as to speak to the prejudice of my administration: but they are mistaken,' added he; 'I will make the prince inaccessible to them all during the journey.' This he actually performed, in a manner that deserves to be related.

The day of the king's departure being arrived, that monarch, after having entrusted the queen with the care of the government in his absence, set out for Saragossa; but, in his way, passing by Aranjuez*, was so delighted with the place, that he staid there almost three

* Aranjuez, is a royal palace in New Castile, situated near the rivers of Tajo and Garama, in a large plain surrounded by hills and forests, through which are many spacious avenues. The entrance to this palace is over two painted wooden bridges, upon the aforesaid rivers, which join a little below the house. Here is a delightful garden; and, in a large square paved with marble, a statue in brass of Charles the Fifth, armed cap-a-pée, trampling upon Heresy, represented by four arch-hereticks.

weeks : from thence the minister carried him to Cuença, where he amused him still longer by various diversions. Then the pleasures of the chace detained him at Molina of Arragon; after which he was conducted to Saragossa.

His army being not far from thence, he appeared for going to it; but the count-duke altered his inclination, by making him believe that he would be in danger of being taken by the French, who were masters of the plain of Monçon : so that the king, being afraid of the peril which he had no cause to fear, took the resolution of remaining shut up at home as in a prison. The minister, taking the advantage of his terror, and under pretence of watching for his safety, guarded him, as it were, from the sight of every body : and the grantees, who had been at a vast expence to put themselves in a condition to follow their sovereign, had not even the satisfaction of obtaining one private audience. Philip, at length, tired of being ill-lodged at Saragossa, of passing his time still worse, or, if you please, of being prisoner, returned in a little time to Madrid. Thus this monarch finished his campaign, leaving to the Marquis de los Velos, general of his troops, the care of maintaining the honour of the Spanish arms.

CHAP. IX.

THE REVOLUTION OF PORTUGAL, AND THE DISGRACE OF THE COUNT-DUKE.

A Few days after the king's return, a very disagreeable piece of news spread all over Madrid. It was reported that the Portuguese, looking upon the revolt of the Catalonians as a fair occasion offered to them by fortune for shaking off the Spanish yoke, had taken up arms, and chosen the Duke of Braganza for their king; that they were resolved to maintain him on the throne, and were confident of success; Spain having at that time on her hands enemies in Germany, Italy, Flanders, and

Catalonia : indeed they could not have found a more favourable conjuncture for freeing themselves from a dominion which they detested*.

What is very singular is, that the count-duke, while both court and city seemed to be struck with consternation at the news, wanted to joke with the king at the expence of the Duke of Braganza : but Philip, far from being pleased with his raillery, assumed a very grave air, which disconcerted him, and made him foresee his disgrace. He no longer doubted his own fall, when he understood that the queen had openly declared herself against him, and loudly accused him of having, by his bad administration, occasioned the revolt of Portugal. The greatest part of the grantees, especially those who had been at Saragossa, no sooner perceived that a tempest was brewing over the head of the count-duke, than they joined the queen; and what gave the last stroke to his favour was, the arrival of the Duchess-dowager of Mantua, formerly governess of Portugal. This lady, on her return from Lisbon to Madrid, plainly demonstrated to the king, that the revolution of that kingdom happened through the fault of the prime-minister.

The discourse of this princess made a great impression on the mind of the monarch; who, being at length roused from his infatuation for his favourite, stripped him of all the affection which he had entertained for him. When the minister was informed that the king listened to his enemies, he wrote a letter to him, asking leave to resign his employment, and remove from court, since people were so unjust as to impute to him all the misfortunes which had happened to the kingdom during the course of his administration. He thought that this letter would have a great effect, and that the prince still preserved so much friendship for him as to detain him at court; but all the answer which his majesty returned, was the permission that he desired, with leave to retire whithersoever he would.

These words, written by the king's

* This revolution, which happened in the year 1640, was conducted with such surprising secrecy (though the design was known to more than two hundred persons a whole year before) that the Duke of Braganza was declared king, and the Spanish yoke shook off, in one day, through all the Portuguese dominions in Europe, Asia, Africa, and America.

own hand, were a thunderbolt to his grace, who by no means expected such a reply; but, though he was very much confounded, he affected an air of constancy, and asked what I would do were I in his place. 'I would soon take my resolution,' said I; 'I would abandon the court, and pass the rest of my days in peace at some one of my estates in the country.'—'That is a wholesome advice,' replied my master; 'and I am fully resolved to finish my career at Loeches, after I shall have once more conversed with the king; for I want to demonstrate to him, that I have done all that human prudence could suggest to sustain the weighty burden with which I was loaded; and that it was impossible for me to prevent the melancholy events laid at my door; being no more to blame than a skilful pilot, who, in spite of all he can do, sees his vessel tossed about by the waves and winds.' The minister still flattered himself, that, by speaking to the prince, he might adjust matters, and regain the ground which he had lost; but he never could procure an audience; and, besides, one was sent to demand the key of the door by which he used to enter when he pleased into his majesty's apartment. Concluding, then, that there were no farther hopes for him, he determined in good earnest to retire. He examined his papers, a great quantity of which he very prudently committed to the flames; then naming the officers of his household and valets who he intended should follow him, he gave orders for his departure, which was fixed for next day. As he was afraid of being insulted by the populace in coming out of the palace, he slipped away early in the morning by the kitchen-door, and getting into a sorry coach, with his confessor and me, safely proceeded for Loeches, a village belonging to him, where his lady had built a magnificent convent of nuns of the Dominican order. Thither he repaired in less than four hours, and all his attendants arrived soon after.

C H A P. X.

THE ANXIETY AND CARES WHICH
AT FIRST DISTURBED THE RE-
POSE OF THE COUNT-DUKE, AND

THE HAPPY TRANQUILLITY BY
WHICH THEY WERE SUCCEED-
ED. THE OCCUPATIONS OF THE
MINISTER IN HIS RETREAT.

MADAM d'Olivarez let her husband set out for Loeches, and staid a few days after him at court, with a design to try if, by her tears and entreaties, she could not effect his being recalled: but in vain did she prostrate herself before their majesties; the king had no regard to her remonstrances, though artfully prepared; and the queen, who hated her mortally, beheld her tears with pleasure. The minister's wife was not repulsed for all that: she humbled herself so far as to implore the good offices of the queen's ladies; but the fruit which she reaped from her meanness was to perceive that it excited contempt rather than compassion. Vexed at having taken such humbling steps to no purpose, she went and joined her husband, to grieve with him for the loss of a place, which, under a reign like that of Philip the Fourth, was perhaps the first of the monarchy.

The lady's report of the condition in which she left Madrid, redoubled the affliction of the count-duke: 'Your enemies,' said she weeping, 'the Duke de Medina Cœli, and the other grandees who hate you, incessantly praise the king for having deprived you of the ministry; and the people celebrate your disgrace with an insolence of joy, as if the end of the national misfortunes was attached to that of your administration.'

'Madam,' said my master to her, 'follow my example, and stifle your sorrow; we must yield to the tempest which we cannot divert. I thought, indeed, that I could have perpetuated my favour even to the end of my life; the ordinary illusion of ministers and favourites, who forget that their fate depends upon their sovereign. Has not the Duke of Lerma been deceived as well as I, though he imagined that his purple was the sure guaranty of the eternal duration of his authority?'

In this manner did the count-duke exhort his spouse to arm herself with patience; while he himself was in an agitation, which was daily increased by the dispatches which he received

from Don Henry, who, having remained at court to observe, took care to inform him exactly of every thing that happened: it was Scipio that brought the letters from that young nobleman, whom he still served, I having quitted him on his marriage with Donna Juana. The dispatches of this adopted son were always filled with bad news, and unhappily no others were expected from him. Sometimes he wrote, that the grandees, not contented with rejoicing publicly at the retreat of the count-duke, were again re-united to turn out all his creatures from the posts and employments which they possessed, to replace them with his enemies; another time, he observed, that Don Lewis de Haro began to come into favour, and would, in all probability, be made prime-minister. Of all the disagreeable news which my master received, that which seemed to affect him most, was the change made in the vice-royalty of Naples, which the court, solely to mortify him, took from the Duke de Medina de las Torres, whom he loved, and gave it to the Admiral of Castile, whom he had always hated.

I may venture to say, that during three months his grace felt nothing in his solitude but trouble and chagrin; but his confessor, who was a Dominican friar, and, with the most solid piety, possessed a manly eloquence, had power enough to console him. By means of representing with energy, that he ought to bend his thoughts entirely to his own salvation, he had, with the help of grace, the good fortune to detach his mind from the court. His excellency would no longer hear any news from Madrid, his whole care being now engrossed in preparing for his latter end. Madam d'Oliver, also, making a good use of her retreat, met with a consolation prepared by Providence in the convent which she had founded. There were among the nuns some holy maidens, whose conversation, full of balm, insensibly sweetened the bitterness of her life. In proportion as my master turned his thoughts from worldly affairs, he became more and more tranquil; and in this manner regulated the day. He spent almost the whole morning in hearing mass in the church of the convent, then returned to dinner; after

which he amused himself about two hours, in playing at all sorts of games with me and some other of his most affectionate domesticks; then usually retired by himself into his closet, where he remained till sun-set; at which time he took a turn in his garden, or an airing in his coach, to the neighbourhood of his castle, accompanied sometimes by his confessor, and sometimes by me.

One day, being alone with him, and admiring the serenity of his countenance, I took the liberty to say, 'My lord, allow me to express my joy: from the air of satisfaction in your looks, I conclude that your excellency begins to be accustomed to retirement.'—'I am already quite familiarized to it,' answered he: 'and though I have been a long time used to business, I protest to thee, child, that I am every day more and more pleased with the quiet and peaceable life which I lead in this place.'

CHAP. XI.

THE COUNT-DUKE BECOMES, ALL OF A SUDDEN, SAD AND THOUGHTFUL: THE SURPRISING CAUSE OF HIS MELANCHOLY, WITH ITS FATAL CONSEQUENCE.

HIS grace, in order to vary his occupations, amused himself sometimes also in cultivating his garden. One day, while I beheld him at work, he said to me, in a jocular strain, 'Santillane, thou seest a minister banished from court turned gardener at Loeches.'—'My lord,' answered I, in the same tone, 'methinks I see Dionysius of Syracuse, schoolmaster at Corinth.' My master smiled at my reply, and was not at all displeased at the comparison.

All the people in the house were overjoyed to see their master, superior to his disgrace, charmed with a life so different from that which he had always led, when we perceived with sorrow that he visibly changed: he became gloomy, thoughtful, and sunk into a most profound melancholy. He left off playing with us, and no longer seemed sensible of all that we could invent

went for his diversion; but locked himself up after dinner in his closet, where he remained alone till night: we imagined that his chagrin had been occasioned by the returning ideas of his past greatness, and in that opinion left with him the Dominican friar, whose eloquence, however, could not triumph over the melancholy of his grace, which, instead of diminishing, seemed daily to increase.

It came into my head, that the pensiveness of this minister might have some particular cause, which he was unwilling to disclose; and on this conjecture I formed the design of drawing the secret from him: for this purpose, I lay in wait for an opportunity of speaking to him in private, and having found it, 'My lord,' said I, with an air of respect mingled with affection; 'may Gil Blas be so bold as to put one question to his master?'—'Speak,' he replied; 'I give thee leave.'—'What,' said I, 'is become of that satisfaction which appeared in your excellency's face? have you no longer that ascendancy which you had once gained over fortune? or does your lost-favour excite new regret within you? Would you be plunged again in that abyss of trouble from which your virtue hath extricated you?'—'No, thank Heaven!' resumed the minister, 'my memory is no longer engrossed by the part which I acted at court; I have for ever forgot the honours which I there enjoyed.'—'Why then,' said I, 'since you have philosophy enough to banish these things from your remembrance, are you so weak as to abandon yourself to a melancholy which alarms us all?'—'What is the matter with you, my dear master?' added I, throwing myself at his feet, 'you have, doubtless some secret sorrow that consumes you: will you make a mystery of it to Santillane, whose zeal, fidelity, and discretion, you know so well? By what misfortune have I lost your confidence?'—'Thou hast it still,' said he; 'but I confess I have a reluctance to reveal the cause of that sadness with which thou seest me overwhelmed: nevertheless, I cannot resist the entreaties of such a servant and a friend as thee. Know, then, the cause of

'my disquiet, which is a secret that I could impart to none but Santillane. 'Yes,' continued he, 'I am a prey to the most dismal melancholy, which gradually consumes my life. I see almost every moment a spectre, which presents itself before me in the most terrible shape. In vain have I said to myself that it is no more than an illusion, an unsubstantial phantom of my brain; the continual apparition infests my view, and disturbs my repose. Though my understanding is strong enough to persuade me that this spectre is really nothing, I am notwithstanding weak enough to be afflicted at the vision. This is what thou hast forced me to disclose,' added he; 'and thou mayest judge whether or not I am to blame in concealing from all the world the cause of my melancholy.' I was equally grieved and astonished to hear such an extraordinary declaration, which was a strong indication of the machine's being disordered. 'My lord,' said I to the minister, 'is not this occasioned by too little nourishment? for your abstinence is excessive.'—'That was what I imagined at first,' answered he; and to try if it was actually owing to my diet, I have for some days past eaten more than usual, but without any effect: the phantom still appears.'—'It will certainly disappear,' said I, to console him; 'and if your excellency would relax yourself a little, by playing again with your faithful servants, I believe you would soon find yourself delivered from these gloomy vapours.'

In a little time after this conversation, his grace fell sick; and, finding the affair grow serious, sent to Madrid for two notaries to make his will; as also for three famous physicians, who had the reputation of curing their patients sometimes. As soon as the arrival of these last was reported in the castle, nothing was heard but groans and lamentations: the servants looked upon the death of their master as just at hand; so much were they prejudiced against these gentlemen, who had brought along with them an apothecary and surgeon, the usual executioners of their prescriptions. They let the notaries do their business; after which they prepared to do their own. Being of Dr. Sangrado's principles,

in their very first consultation they ordered repeated bleedings; so that in six days they reduced the count-duke to extremity, and on the seventh delivered him entirely from his apparition*.

Upon the death of this minister, a deep and sincere sorrow reigned in the castle of Loeches; all his domesticks wept bitterly: far from consoling themselves for his loss, with the certainty of being comprehended in his will, there was not one among them who would not have renounced his legacy to recal him to life. As for me, who had been beloved by him, and whose attachment flowed from pure personal affection, I was more afflicted than all the rest; and question whether I shed more tears for Antonia than for the count-duke.

CHAP. XII.

THE TRANSACTIONS AT THE CASTLE OF LOECHES AFTER THE DEATH OF THE COUNT-DUKE; AND THE DEPARTURE OF SANTILLANE.

THE minister, according to his own direction, was buried without noise and pomp, in the convent of nuns, by the sound of our lamentations. After the funeral, Madam d'Olivarez ordered the will to be read, with which all the domesticks had reason to be satisfied. Every one had a legacy proportioned to his station; and the least was two thousand crowns: mine was the most considerable; his grace having bequeathed to me ten thousand pistoles, as a proof of his particular affection. He did not forget the hospitals, and founded annual service in several convents.

Madam d'Olivarez sent all the domesticks to Madrid, to receive their legacies from the Steward Don Raymond Caporis, who had orders to pay them; but I could not accompany them, being detained at the castle seven or eight days by a high fever,

which was the fruit of my affliction. In this situation I was not abandoned by the Dominican Friar; that good clergyman had conceived an affection for me; and interesting himself in my salvation, asked, when he saw me in a fair way, what I intended to do. 'I don't know, my good father,' answered I; 'I have not as yet determined with myself on that score: at some moments I am tempted to shut myself up in a cell, and do penance.' — 'Those are precious moments!' cried the Dominican: 'Signior de Santillane, you will do well to profit by them. I advise you as a friend, without your ceasing to be a layman, to retire, for example, into our convent at Madrid; to make yourself a benefactor to it by a donation of all your fortune, and die there under the habit of St. Dominique. A great many people expiate a worldly life by such an end.'

I was then in such a disposition of mind, that I began to relish the advice, and told his reverence that I would consider of it. But having consulted Scipio, whom I saw immediately after the monk, he inveighed against that sentiment, which seemed to him the whim of a sick person. 'Fye! Signior de Santillane,' said he; 'can you be pleased with such a retreat? will not your house at Lirias afford one much more agreeable? if you was delighted with it heretofore, you will have a much better relish for the sweets of it now that you are of an age much more proper for tasting the beauties of nature.'

The son of Coscolina had no great difficulty in making me change my opinion. 'Friend,' said I, 'thou hast prevailed over the Dominican. I see it will be better for me to return to my castle; and fix my resolution accordingly: we will repair to Lirias as soon as I shall be in a condition to travel.' And this happened very soon; for the fever having left me in a little time, I found myself strong enough to put my design in execution. Scipio and I went first to Madrid, the

* The count-duke died on the 12th of July 1645, not at Loeches, but at Toro in New Castile; his death (according to report) having been hastened by his relations, who seeing him become more and more odious to the people, even in spite of his retreat, were afraid of his suffering some new ignominy, to the farther disgrace of his family.

sight of which city no longer gave me that pleasure which I had formerly felt. As I knew that almost all its inhabitants abhorred the memory of a minister of whom I preserved the most tender remembrance, I could not behold it with a favourable eye; and therefore staid in it only five or six days, which Scipio employed in making preparations for our departure for Lirias. While he was busy about our equipage, I went to Caporis, who gave me my legacy in doubloons: I likewise visited the receivers of the commanderies on whom I had pensions, took measures with them for the payment; and, in a word, put all my affairs in order.

On the evening before our departure, I asked the son of Coscolina, if he had taken his leave of Don Henry. 'Yes,' answered he; 'we this morning parted good friends: he assured me that he was sorry for my leaving him. But if he was satisfied with me, I was not so with him: it is not enough, that the valet pleases the master, the master ought, at the same time, to please the valet; otherwise they are very ill met. Besides,' added he, 'Don Henry makes but a pitiful figure at court, where he is sunk into the lowest contempt. He is even pointed at in the streets, and every body calls him the son of the Genoese. So you may guess whether or not it is agreeable to a lad of honour to serve a man in such disgrace.'

At length we set out from Madrid early one morning, and took the road to Cuenca, in the following order and equipage: my confidant and I were mounted in a chaise and pair, conducted by a postilion: three moyles, loaded with our baggage and money, and led by two grooms, followed close after; and two lusty lacquies, chosen by Scipio, mounted on mules, and armed to the teeth, brought up the rear; the grooms wore sabres, and the postilion had two good pistols at his saddle-bow. As we were in all seven men, six of whom were very resolute, I travelled merrily, without any apprehension of losing my legacy. Our moyles proudly sounding their bells in the villages through which we passed, the peasants ran to their doors to see the march of our equipage, which they imagined

belonged to some grandee going to take possession of a vice-royalty.

C H A P. XIII.

GIL BLAS RETURNS TO HIS CASTLE, WHERE HE IS OVERJOYED TO FIND SERAPHINA, HIS GOD-DAUGHTER, MARRIAGEABLE; AND FALLS IN LOVE WITH ANOTHER LADY.

I Spent fifteen days on the road to Lirias, being under no necessity of travelling fast: all that I desired was to arrive at it safely; and my wish was accomplished. The sight of my castle at first inspired me with some melancholy thoughts, in recalling the memory of Antonia; but I soon banished them, by entertaining my fancy with more pleasant ideas; and this I could the more easily do, as twenty years, which were elapsed since her death, had a good deal weakened the force of my sorrow.

As soon as I entered the castle, Beatrice and her daughter came with great eagerness to salute me: then the father, mother, and child, hugged one another with transports of joy, which charmed me.

After their mutual embraces I looked at my god-daughter attentively, saying: 'Can this be that Seraphina whom I left in the cradle, when I departed from Lirias! I am overjoyed to see her again so tall and so handsome: we must have her settled for life.'—'How! my dear god-father,' cried she, reddening at my last words, 'you have seen me but for a moment, and you already talk of getting rid of me!'—'No, my child,' answered I; 'we don't intend to lose you by marriage: we must have a husband who will enjoy you without robbing your parents of your company, and in a manner live with us altogether.'

'Such an one offers at present,' said Beatrice: 'a gentleman of this country, having seen Seraphina one day at mass, in the village-chapel, fell in love with her. He has been to visit me, declared his passion, and has asked my consent. "If you had it," said I to him, "you would be never the nearer; Seraphina depends upon her father and god-father, who alone can dispose

"dispose of her. All that I can do for you is to inform them by a letter of your demand, which I own does honour to my daughter." Really, gentlemen," added she, "I was going to write about it immediately; but now that you are returned, you shall do in it what you think proper."

"But," said Scipio, "what character has this hidalgo? is he like most of your small gentry, proud of his nobility, and insolent to plebeians?"—"Not at all," replied Beatrice; "he is a sweet-tempered young man, extremely polite, has a good mien, and is not yet full thirty."—"You draw an agreeable picture of that cavalier," said I to Beatrice; "pray, what is his name?"—"Don Juan de Jutella," answered Scipio's wife: "he has but lately succeeded to his father, and lives in a castle about a league from hence, with a younger sister, who is under his care."—"I have formerly," said I, "heard of this gentleman's family, which is one of the most noble in the kingdom of Valencia."—"I esteem his nobility," cried Scipio, "less than the qualities of his heart and understanding, and this Don Juan will suit us very well, provided he be a man of honour."—"He has the reputation of one," said Seraphina, joining in the conversation: "the inhabitants of Lirias, who know him, give him the best of characters." At these words of my god-daughter, I smiled to her father; who, having likewise observed them, concluded that his daughter was not displeased at her gallant.

This cavalier soon got notice of our arrival at Lirias; and two days after appeared at our castle. He saluted us gracefully; and, far from contradicting by his presence what Beatrice had said to his advantage, his behaviour made us conceive an high opinion of his merit. He told us, that, as our neighbour, he had come to congratulate us upon our happy return; and we received him with all the courtesy in our power; but this visit, which was made out of pure civility, passed in mutual compliments; and Don Juan, without having mentioned a syllable of his passion for Seraphina, retired, only desiring our permission to profit by a neighbourhood which he foresaw would be very agreeable to him. When he was gone, Beatrice asking our opinions

of the gentleman, we answered, that he had prepossessed us in his favour; and that, in all appearance, Fortune could not offer a better match for Seraphina.

The very next day I went out after dinner, with Coscolina's son, to return the visit which we owed to Don Juan. We took the road to his castle, conducted by a guide, who (when we had walked about three quarters of an hour) said, "There is the castle of Don Juan de Jutella." In vain did we cast our eyes all around the country: it was a long time before we perceived it; nay, we did not discover it till we arrived at the gate; for it was situated at the foot of a mountain, in the middle of a wood, whose lofty trees concealed it from the view. The house denoted the nobility more than the opulence of its master; however, when we entered, we found the craziness of the building compensated by the richness of the furniture.

Don Juan received us in a very handsome hall, where he introduced us to a lady whom he called his sister Dorothea, and who seemed to be about the age of nineteen or twenty. She was full dressed; because, having expected our visit, she was desirous of appearing as amiable as she could; and, offering herself to my view, in all her charms, she made the same impression that Antonia had made upon my heart; that is, I was disconcerted; but concealed my disorder so well, that Scipio himself did not observe it. Our conversation, like that of the preceding day, turned upon the mutual pleasure we should enjoy, in visiting one another, and living together in good neighbourhood. He did not, as yet, speak to us of Seraphina, and we gave him no encouragement to declare his passion, resolving that it should first come from himself. During the conversation, I frequently eyed Dorothea, though I affected to look at her as little as possible; and every time our eyes met, she darted fresh arrows into my soul. I must say, however, for the sake of truth, that this beloved object was not a perfect beauty; for, though her skin was of a dazzling whiteness, and her lips of the complexion of the rose, her nose was somewhat too long, and her eyes too little. Nevertheless, the whole together quite enchanted me.

In short, I did not leave the castle of Jutella

Juſſella as I had entered it; and on my return to Lirias, my mind was ſo wholly poſſeſſed by Dorothea, that I ſaw nothing but her, and ſhe was the ſole ſubject of my converſation. 'How, maſter!' ſaid Scipio, looking at me with aſtoniſhment, 'you are very full of Don Juan's liſter. Haſt ſhe made a conqueſt of your heart?'—'Yes, friend', answered I; 'and I bluſh at my own weakneſs. O Heavens! muſt I, who, ſince Antonia's death, have beheld a thouſand beauties with indifference, meet with one at my age, who, in ſpite of all my endeavours, inflames me with love!'—'Well, Sir,' replied Coſcolina's ſon; 'you ought to rejoice inſtead of complaining at the adventure: there is nothing ridiculous in a man of your age being in love; and time hath not as yet ſorrowed your brow, as to deprive you of the hope of pleaſing. Take my advice; and when next you ſee Don Juan, boldly demand his liſter in marriage; he cannot reſuſe her to ſuch a perſon as you: and beſides, if it is abſolutely neceſſary that Dorothea's huſband ſhould be a gentleman, are not you one? You have letters of nobility, and that is enough for your poſterity, when time ſhall have ſhrouded theſe letters with that thick veil which covers the origin of all great families. After four or five generations, the race of Santillane will be moſt illuſtrious!'

CHAP. THE LAST.

THE DOUBLE MARRIAGE CELEBRATED AT LIRIAS, WHICH CONCLUDES THE HISTORY OF GIL BLAS DE SANTILLANE.

SCIPIO, by this diſcourſe, encouraged me to declare myſelf the lover of Dorothea, without conſidering that he expoſed me to the riſque of a reſuſal: I could not, however, determine upon it without trembling; for, although I looked younger than I was, and could have ſunk ten good years at leaſt of my age, I could not help thinking I had good reaſon to doubt of my pleaſing a young beauty. I reſolved, nevertheless, to riſque the demand, as ſoon as I ſhould ſee her brother, who, for his part, being uncertain of obtain-

ing my god-daughter, was not without abundance of anxiety.

He returned to my houſe next morning juſt as I had done dreſſing, and ſaid, 'Signior de Santillane, I am come to-day to talk with you about a ſerious affair.' I carried him into my cloſet, where coming to the point at once, 'I believe,' continued he, 'that you are not ignorant of my errand. I love Seraphina; and as you can ſway her father to any thing, pray, render him favourable to me; procure for me the object of my paſſion, and let me owe the happineſs of my life to you.'—'Signior Don Juan,' answered I, 'ſince you come to the buſineſs at once, give me leave to follow your example; and, after having promiſed you my good offices with the father of my god-daughter, to demand your intereſt with your liſter, in my behalf.'

At theſe laſt words, Don Juan expreſſed an agreeable ſurpriſe, from which I drew a favourable omen. 'Is it poſſible,' cried he, 'that Dorothea made a conqueſt of your heart yelterday?'—'I am quite charmed with her!' ſaid I; 'and will think myſelf the happieſt of mankind, if my demand is agreeable to you both.'—'Of that you may be aſſured,' he replied: 'noble as we are, we will not diſdain your alliance.'—'I am very glad,' answered I, 'that you make no difficulty in receiving a plebeian for your brother-in-law: I eſteem you the more on that account; and in ſo doing you ſhew your good underſtanding: but were you even ſo vain as to reſuſe your liſter's hand to any body but a gentleman, know, that I could ſatiſfy your pride; I have laboured twenty years under the miniſter; and the king, to recompenſe the ſervices which I have done the ſtate, has gratified me with letters of nobility, which you ſhall ſee.' So ſaying, I took my patent out of the drawer where it lay concealed, and preſented it to the gentleman, who read it attentively from beginning to end with vaſt ſatiſfaction. 'This is excellent!' ſaid he, reſtoring the papers: 'Dorothea is yours.'—'And you,' cried I, 'may depend upon Seraphina.'

Theſe two marriages being thus reſolved upon, all that remained was to know

know if the brides would consent with a good grace; for Don Juan and I, being equally delicate, did not intend to force their inclinations. That gentleman returned, therefore, to his castle of Jutella, to propose me to his sister; and I assembled Scipio, Beatrice, and their daughter, to communicate the conversation I had with that cavalier. Beatrice was for accepting him without hesitation; and Seraphina, by her silence, shewed that she was of her mother's opinion. As to the father, he was not indeed averse to the match; but expressed some uneasiness about the dowry, which, he said, must be given to the gentleman, whose castle had such pressing need of repairs. I stopped Scipio's mouth, telling him, that affair concerned me; and that I would make a present to my god-daughter of four thousand pistoles for her portion.

Don Juan returning that very evening, 'Your affairs,' said I to him, 'succeed to a miracle: I wish mine may be in no worse condition.'— 'They are also on an excellent footing,' he replied; 'I had no occasion to employ authority to obtain Dorothea's consent: your person is to her liking, and she is pleased with your behaviour. You was apprehensive of your being disagreeable to her; and she is more justly afraid, that having nothing but her heart and hand to offer—' 'What more would I have!' cried I in a transport of joy: 'since the charming Dorothea has no reluctance to unite her fate with mine, I ask no more: I am rich enough to marry her without a portion, and the possession of her alone will crown my wishes!'

Don Juan and I, very well pleased with having brought matters happily so far, resolved to hasten our nuptials, by suppressing all superfluous ceremonies. I brought this gentleman and Seraphina's parents together; and after they had agreed upon the conditions of the marriage, he took his leave, promising to return next day with Dorothea. The desire I had of appearing agreeable to that lady, made me employ three good hours at least in adjusting and Adonizing myself; and yet, for all that, I could not make

myself pleased with my own person. It is only a pleasure for a young man to prepare himself for visiting his mistresses; but to one who begins to grow old, it is quite a fatigue. However, I was more happy than I deserved to be.

When next I saw Don Juan's sister, she regarded me with such a favourable eye, that I imagined myself still good for something. I had a long conversation with her, was charmed with her disposition, and concluded, that, with delicate behaviour, and a great deal of complaisance, I should become a beloved spouse. Elevated with this agreeable hope, I sent to Valencia for two notaries, who drew up the contract of marriage; then we had recourse to the Curate of Paterna, who came to Lirias, and married Don Juan and me to our mistresses.

Thus, for a second time, did I light the torch of Hymen, and had no cause to repent my conduct. Dorothea, like a virtuous wife, made a pleasure of her duty; and, sensible of my care to anticipate her desires, soon attached herself to me, as much as if I had been a young man. On the other hand, Don Juan and my god-daughter were inflamed with mutual ardour; and, what was very singular, the two sisters-in-law conceived the most passionate and sincere friendship for one another. As for my part, I found so many good qualities in my brother-in-law, that I felt a real affection for him, and he did not repay it with ingratitude. In short, the union that reigned among us was such, that in the evening, when we parted only till next day, that separation was not performed without pain; so that of the two families we resolved to make one, which should live sometimes at the castle of Lirias, and sometimes at that of Jutella, which, for this purpose, received great reparations, by the help of his excellency's pistoles.

I have for three years, gentle reader, led a delicious life with people whom I love so much; and, to crown my felicity, Heaven has blessed me with two children, whom I piously believe to be my own, and whose education shall be the amusement of my old age.

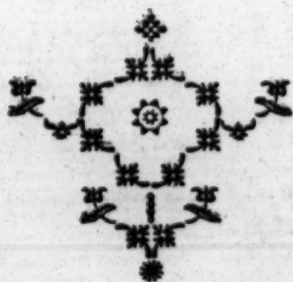
F I N I S.

BRITISH
4 APR 1911
MUSEUM

THE
L I F E
AND
A D V E N T U R E S
OF
ROBINSON CRUSOE.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

BY DANIEL DEFOE.



L O N D O N :

Printed for HARRISON and Co. No. 18, Paternoster-Row.

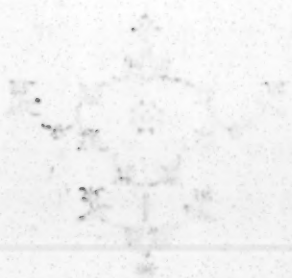
M DCC LXXXI.

J. T. H.

A. D. V. E. N. U. R. H.

ROBINSON CRUSOE.

THE TWO VOLUMES.



LONDON.

Printed by Harrison and Co. 25, Abchurch Lane.

MDCCLXXX.



T H E
P R E F A C E.

IF ever the story of any private man's adventures in the world were worth making publick, and were acceptable when published, the Editor of this account thinks this will be so.

The wonders of this man's life exceeded all that (he thinks) is to be found extant; the life of one man being scarcely capable of a greater variety.

The story is told with modesty, with seriousness, and with a religious application of events to the uses to which wise men always apply them, viz. to the instruction of others by their example, and to justify and honour the wisdom of Providence in all the variety of our circumstances, let them happen how they will.

The Editor believes the thing to be a just history of facts; neither is there any appearance of fiction in it; and however thinks, because all such things are dispatched, that the improvement of it, as well to the diversion as to the instruction of the reader, will be the same; and as such, he thinks, without farther compliment to the world, he does them a great service in the publication.

DANIEL DEFOE.

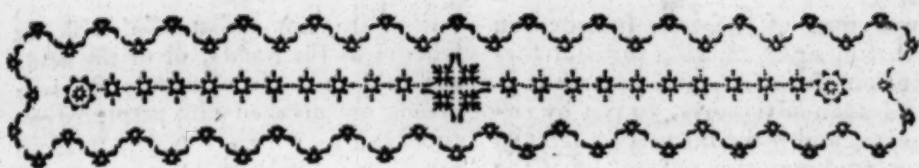


R



first
mer
lives
he h
latic
goo
who
naer
wor
nay
nam
alwa

I
whic
Eng
form
Colo
the
Span
broth
my t
was
Be
and



THE
LIFE AND ADVENTURES
OF
ROBINSON CRUSOE.

VOLUME THE FIRST.



Was born in the year 1632, in the city of York, of a good family, though not of that country, my father being a foreigner of Bremen, who settled first at Hull: he got a good estate by merchandize, and leaving off his trade, lived afterwards at York, from whence he had married my mother, whose relations were named Robinson, a very good family in that country, and from whom I was called Robinson Kreutznaer; but, by the usual corruption of words in England, we are now called, nay, we call ourselves, and write our name, Crusoe; and so my companions always called me.

I had two elder brothers, one of which was a lieutenant-colonel to an English regiment of foot in Flanders, formerly commanded by the famous Colonel Lockhart, and was killed at the battle near Dunkirk against the Spaniards: what became of my second brother, I never knew, any more than my father or mother did know what was become of me.

Being the third son of the family, and not bred to any trade, my head

began to be filled very early with rambling thoughts: my father, who was very ancient, had given me a competent share of learning, as far as house-education, and a country free-school generally goes, and designed me for the law; but I would be satisfied with nothing but going to sea; and my inclination to this led me so strongly against the will, nay, the commands, of my father, and against all the intreaties and persuasions of my mother and other friends, that there seemed to be something fatal in that propension of nature, tending directly to the life of misery which was to befall me.

My father, a wise and grave man, gave me serious and excellent counsel against what he foresaw was my design. He called me one morning into his chamber, where he was confined by the gout, and expostulated very warmly with me upon this subject: he asked me, what reasons, more than a mere wandering inclination, I had for leaving my father's house and my native country, where I might be well introduced, and had a prospect of raising my fortune by application and industry, with a life of ease and pleasure: he told me, it

it was men of desperate fortunes on one hand, or of aspiring superior fortunes on the other, and who went abroad upon adventures, to rise by enterprize, and make themselves famous in undertakings of a nature out of the common road; that these things were all either too far above me, or too far below me; that mine was the middle state, or what might be called the upper station of Low Life, which he had found, by long experience, was the best state in the world, the most suited to human happiness, not exposed to the miseries and hardships, the labour and sufferings of the mechanick part of mankind, and not embarrassed with the pride, luxury, ambition, and envy, of the upper part of mankind. He told me, I might judge of the happiness of this state, by this one thing; viz. that this was the state of life which all other people envied; that kings have frequently lamented the miserable consequences of being born to great things, and wished they had been placed in the middle of the two extremes, between the mean and the great; that the wise man gave his testimony to this, as the just standard of true felicity, when he prayed to have neither poverty nor riches.

He bade me observe it, and I should always find, that the calamities of life were shared among the upper and lower part of mankind; but that the middle station had the fewest disasters, and was not exposed to so many vicissitudes as the higher or lower part of mankind; nay, they were not subjected to so many distempers and uneasinesses, either of body or mind, as those were, who, by vicious living, luxury, and extravagancies, on one hand, or by hard labour, want of necessities, and mean or insufficient diet, on the other hand, bring distempers upon themselves by the natural consequences of their way of living; that the middle station of life was calculated for all kind of virtues, and all kind of enjoyments; that peace and plenty were the handmaids of a middle fortune; that temperance, moderation, quietness, health, society, all agreeable diversions, and all desirable pleasures, were the blessings attending the middle station of life; that this way men went silently and smoothly through the world, and comfortably

out of it; not embarrassed with the labours of the hands, or of the head; not sold to a life of slavery for daily bread, or harrassed with perplexed circumstances, which rob the soul of peace, and the body of rest; not enraged with the passion of envy, or the secret burning lust of ambition for great things; but in easy circumstances, sliding gently through the world, and sensibly tasting the sweets of living, without the bitter; feeling that they are happy, and learning by every day's experience to know it more sensibly.

After this, he pressed me earnestly, and in the most affectionate manner, not to play the young man, or to precipitate myself into miseries, which nature, and the station of life I was born in, seemed to have provided against; that I was under no necessity of seeking my bread; that he would do well for me, and endeavour to enter me fairly into the station of life which he had been just recommending to me; and that if I was not very easy and happy in the world, it must be my mere fate or fault that must hinder it; and that he should have nothing to answer for, having thus discharged his duty, in warning me against measures which he knew would be to my hurt: in a word, that as he would do very kind things for me, if I would stay and settle at home, as he directed; so he would not have so much hand in my misfortunes, as to give me any encouragement to go away: and to close all, he told me, I had my elder brother for an example, to whom he had used the same earnest persuasions, to keep him from going into the Low-Country wars, but could not prevail, his young desires prompting him to run into the army, where he was killed; and though he said he would not cease to pray for me, yet he would venture to say to me, that if I did take this foolish step, God would not bless me; and I would have leisure hereafter to reflect upon having neglected his counsel, when there might be none to assist in my recovery.

I observed in this last part of his discourse, which was truly prophetick, though I suppose my father did not know it to be so himself; I say, I observed the tears run down his face very plentifully, especially when he spoke of my brother

brother who was killed; and that when he spoke of my having leisure to repent, and none to assist me, he was so moved, that he broke off the discourse, and told me, his heart was so full he could say no more to me.

I was sincerely afflicted with this discourse, as indeed who could be otherwise! and I resolved not to think of going abroad any more, but to settle at home according to my father's desire: but, alas! a few days wore it all off; and, in short, to prevent any of my father's farther importunities, in a few weeks after, I resolved to run quite away from him. However, I did not act so hastily neither, as the first heat of my resolution prompted; but I took my mother at a time when I thought her a little pleasanter than ordinary; and told her, that my thoughts were so entirely bent upon seeing the world, that I should never settle to any thing with resolution enough to go through with it; and my father had better give me his consent, than force me to go without it; that I was now eighteen years old, which was too late to go apprentice to a trade, or clerk to an attorney; that I was sure, if I did, I should never serve out my time, but I should certainly run away from my master before my time was out, and go to sea; and if she would speak to my father to let me go one voyage abroad, if I came home again, and did not like it, I would go no more, and I would promise, by a double diligence, to recover the time that I had lost.

This put my mother into a great passion: she told me, she knew it would be to no purpose to speak to my father upon any such subject; that he knew too well what was my interest, to give his consent to any thing so much for my hurt; and that she wondered how I could think of any such thing, after the discourse I had had with my father, and such kind and tender expressions as she knew my father had used to me: and that, in short, if I would ruin myself, there was no help for me; but I might depend I should never have their consent to it; that, for her part, she would not have so much hand in my destruction; and I should never have it to say, that my mother was willing, when my father was not.

Though my mother refused to move it to my father, yet I heard afterwards, that she reported all the discourse to him; and that my father, after shewing a great concern at it, said to her, with a sigh, 'That boy might be happy, if he would stay at home; but if he goes abroad, he will be the most miserable wretch that ever was born! I can give no consent to it.'

It was not till almost a year after this that I broke loose, though in the mean time I continued obstinately deaf to all proposals of settling to business, and frequently expostulating with my father and mother, about their being so positively determined against what they knew my inclinations prompted me to. But being one day at Hull, whither I went casually, and without any purpose of making an elopement that time; but, I say, being there, and one of my companions being going by sea to London, in his father's ship, and prompting me to go with them, with the common allurements of a seafaring man, that it should cost me nothing for my passage; I consulted neither father or mother any more, nor so much as sent them word of it; but leaving them to hear of it as they might, without asking God's blessing, or my father's, without any consideration of circumstances or consequences, and in an ill hour, (God knows!) on the first of September 1651, I went on board a ship bound for London. Never any young adventurer's misfortunes, I believe, began sooner, or continued longer than mine: the ship was no sooner got out of the Humber, but the wind began to blow, and the sea to rise in a most frightful manner; and as I had never been at sea before, I was most inexpressibly sick in body, and terrified in mind. I began now seriously to reflect upon what I had done, and how justly I was overtaken by the judgment of Heaven for my wicked leaving my father's house, and abandoning my duty; all the good counsel of my parents, my father's tears and my mother's intreaties came now fresh into my mind; and my conscience, which was not yet come to the pitch of hardness to which it has been since, reproached me with the contempt of advice, and the breach of my duty to God and my father.

All this while the storm increased, and

and the sea went very high, though nothing like what I have seen many times since; no, nor what I saw a few days after; but it was enough to affect me then, who was but a young sailor, and had never known any thing of the matter. I expected every wave would have swallowed us up, and that every time the ship fell down, as I thought it did, in the trough or hollow of the sea, we should never rise more. In this agony of mind, I made many vows and resolutions, that if it would please God to spare my life in this one voyage, if ever I got once my foot upon dry land again, I would go directly home to my father, and never set it into a ship again while I lived; that I would take his advice, and never run myself into such miseries as these any more. Now I saw plainly the goodness of his observations about the middle station of life, how easy, how comfortable he had lived all his days, and never had been exposed to tempests at sea, or trouble on shore; and, in short, I resolved that I would, like a true repenting prodigal, go home to my father.

These wise and sober thoughts continued all the while the storm continued, and indeed some time after; but the next day the wind was abated, and the sea calmer, and I began to be a little inured to it. However, I was very grave for all that day, being also a little sea-sick still; but towards night the weather cleared up, the wind was quite over, and a charming fine evening followed; the sun went down perfectly clear, and rose so the next morning; and having little or no wind, and a smooth sea, the sun shining upon it, the sight was, as I thought, the most delightful that ever I saw.

I had slept well in the night, and was now no more sea-sick, but very chearful; looking with wonder upon the sea, that was so rough and terrible the day before, and could be so calm and so pleasant in so little a time after: and now, lest my good resolutions should continue, my companion, who had indeed inticed me away, comes to me, 'Well, Bob!' says he, clapping me upon the shoulder, 'how do you do after it? I warrant you were frightened, were not you, last night, when it blew but a capful of wind?'—'A capful, d'ye call it!' said I: 'it was a ter-

'ble storm.'—'A storm, you fool you!' replies he: 'do you call that a storm? Why, it was nothing at all! give us but a good ship, and sea-room, and we think nothing of such a squall of wind as that: but, you're but a fresh-water sailor, Bob; come, let us make a bowl of punch, and we'll forget all that. D'ye see what charming weather 'tis now?' To make short this sad part of my story, we went the way of all sailors; the punch was made, and I was made half drunk with it, and in that one night's wickedness I drowned all my repentance, all my reflections on my past conduct, all my resolutions for the future. In a word, as the sea was returned to it's smoothness of surface, and settled calmness, by the abatement of that storm, so the hurry of my thoughts being over, my fears and apprehensions of being swallowed up by the sea being forgotten, and the current of my former desires returned, I entirely forgot the vows and promises that I made in my distress. I found indeed some intervals of reflection, and the serious thoughts did, as it were, endeavour to return again sometimes; but I shook them off, and roused myself from them, as it were from a distemper; and applying myself to drinking and company, soon mastered the return of those fits, (for so I called them;) and I had, in five or six days, got as compleat a victory over my conscience, as any young fellow that resolved not to be troubled with it could desire: but I was to have another trial for it still; and Providence, as in such cases generally it does, resolved to leave me entirely without excuse; for if I would not take this for a deliverance, the next was to be such a one, as the worst and most hardened wretch among us would confess both the danger and the mercy.

The sixth day of our being at sea, we came into Yarmouth roads; the wind having been contrary, and the weather calm; we had made but little way since the storm. Here we were obliged to come to an anchor, and here we lay, the wind continuing contrary, viz. at S. W. for seven or eight days; during which time, a great many ships from Newcastle came into the same roads, as the common harbour where the ships might wait for a wind for the river.

We

We had not, however, rid here so long but we should have tided it up the river, but that the wind blew too fresh; and, after we had lain four or five days, blew very hard. However, the roads being reckoned as good as an harbour, the anchorage good, and our ground-tackle very strong, our men were unconcerned, and not in the least apprehensive of danger; but spent the time in rest and mirth, after the manner of the sea; but the eighth day in the morning, the wind increased, and we had all hands at work to strike our top-masts, and make every thing snug and close, that the ship might ride as easy as possible. By noon, the sea went very high indeed, and our ship rid fore-castle-in, shipped several seas, and we thought once or twice our anchor had come home; upon which, our master ordered out the sheet-anchor; so that we rode with two anchors a head, and the cables veered out to the better end.

By this time, it blew a terrible storm indeed! and, now I began to see terror and amazement in the faces even of the seamen themselves. The master, though vigilant in the business of preserving the ship, yet as he went in and out of his cabin by me, I could hear him, softly to himself, say several times; 'Lord be merciful to us! we shall be all lost, we shall be all undone!' and the like. During these first hurries, I was stupid, lying still in my cabin, which was in the steerage, and cannot describe my temper. I could ill resume the first penitence which I had so apparently trampled upon, and hardened myself against: I thought the bitterness of death had been past; and that this would be nothing too, like the first. But when the master himself came by me, as I said just now, and said we should be all lost, I was dreadfully frightened: I got up out of my cabin, and looked out; but such a dismal sight I never saw: the sea went mountains high, and broke upon us every three or four minutes. When I could look about, I could see nothing but distress round us: two ships that rid near us, we found, had cut their masts by the board, being deep laden; and our men cried out, that a ship which rid about a mile a head of us, was foundered. Two more ships, being driven from their

anchors, were run out of the roads to sea, at all adventures, and that not with a mast standing. The light ships fared the best, as not so much labouring in the sea; but two or three of them drove, and came close by us, running away with only their sprit-sail out, before the wind.

Towards the evening, the mate and boatswain begged the master of our ship to let them cut away the fore-mast, which he was very unwilling to do: but the boatswain protesting to him, that if he did not, the ship would founder, he consented; and when they had cut away the fore-mast, the main-mast stood so loose, and shook the ship so much, they were obliged to cut her away also, and make a clear deck.

Any one must judge what a condition I must be in at all this, who was but a young sailor, and who had been in such a fright before at but a little. But if I can express at this distance the thoughts I had about me at that time, I was in tenfold more horror of mind upon account of my former convictions, and the having returned from them to the resolutions I had wickedly taken at first, than I was at death itself; and these, added to the terror of the storm, put me into such a condition, that I can by no words describe it. But the worst was not come yet; the storm continued with such fury, that the seamen themselves acknowledged they had never seen a worse. We had a good ship, but she was deep laden, and wallowed in the sea; that the seamen every now and then cried out she would founder. It was my advantage in one respect, that I did not know what they meant by founder, till I enquired. However, the storm was so violent, that I saw what is not often seen, the master, the boatswain, and some others more sensible than the rest, at their prayers, and expecting every moment when the ship would go to the bottom. In the middle of the night, and under all the rest of our distresses, one of the men that had been down on purpose to see, cried out we had sprung a leak; another said, there was four feet water in the hold. Then all hands were called to the pump. At that very word my heart, as I thought, died within me; and I fell backwards upon the side of my bed where I sat, into the cabin. How-

ever, the men rouzed me, and told me, that I that was able to do nothing before, was as well able to pump as another; at which I stirred up, and went to the pump, and worked very heartily. While this was doing, the master seeing some light colliers, who, not able to ride out the storm, were obliged to flip and run away to the sea, and would come near us, ordered to fire a gun as a signal of distress. I, who knew nothing what they meant, was so surprized, that I thought the ship had broke, or some dreadful thing happened; in a word, I was so surprized, that I fell down in a swoon. As this was a time when every body had his own life to think of, nobody minded me, or what was become of me; but another man stepped up to the pump, and, thrusting me aside with his foot, let me lie, thinking I had been dead; and it was a great while before I came to myself.

We worked on, but the water increasing in the hold, it was apparent that the ship would founder; and though the storm began to abate a little, yet as it was not possible she could swim till we might run into any port, so the master continued firing guns for help; and a light ship, who had rid it out just a head of us, ventured a boat out to help us. It was with the utmost hazard the boat came near us; but it was impossible for us to get on board, or for the boat to lie near the ship's side, till at last the men rowing very heartily, and venturing their lives to save ours, our men cast them a rope over the stern with a buoy to it, and then veered it out a great length, which they, after much labour and hazard, took hold of, and we hauled them close under our stern, and got all into their boat. It was to no purpose for them or us, after we were in the boat, to think of reaching to their own ship; so all agreed to let her drive, and only to pull her in towards shore as much as we could; and our master promised them, that if the boat was staved upon shore, he would make it good to their master: so partly rowing, and partly driving, our boat went away to the northward, sloping towards the shore, almost as far as Wintertonesse.

We were not much more than a quarter of an hour out of our ship, but we saw her sink; and then I understood for the first time, what was meant

by a ship foundering in the sea. I must acknowledge I had hardly eyes to look up, when the seamen told me she was sinking; for, from that moment they rather put me into the boat, than that I might be said to go in, my heart was as it were dead within me, partly with fright, partly with horror of mind, and the thoughts of what was yet before me.

While we were in this condition, the men yet labouring at the oar to bring the boat near the shore, we could see (when our boat mounting the waves, we were able to see the shore) a great many people running along the strand to assist us when we should come near: but we made but slow way towards the shore; nor were we able to reach the shore, till being past the light-house at Winterton, the shore falls off to the westward towards Cromer; and so the land broke off a little the violence of the wind. Here we got in, and though not without much difficulty, got all safe on shore, and walked afterwards on foot to Yarmouth, where, as unfortunate men, we were used with great humanity, as well by the magistrates of the town, who assigned us good quarters, as by particular merchants and owners of ships; and had money given us sufficient to carry us either to London, or back to Hull, as we thought fit.

Had I now had the sense to have gone back to Hull, and have gone home, I had been happy, and my father, an emblem of our blessed Saviour's parable, had even killed the fatted calf for me; for, hearing the ship I went away in, was cast away in Yarmouth Road, it was a great while before he had any assurances that I was not drowned.

But my ill fate pushed me on now, with an obstinacy that nothing could resist; and though I had several times loud calls from my reason and my more composed judgment, to go home, yet I had no power to do it: I know not what to call this; nor will I urge, that it is a secret over-ruling decree that hurries us on to be the instruments of our own destruction, even though it be before us, and that we push upon it with our eyes open. Certainly, nothing but some such decreed unavoidable misery attending, and which it was impossible for me to escape, could

could have pushed me forward against the calm reasonings and persuasions of my most retired thoughts, and against two such visible instructions as I had met with in my first attempt.

My comrade, who had helped to harden me before, and who was the master's son, was now less forward than I. The first time he spoke to me after we were at Yarmouth, which was not till two or three days, for we were separated in the town to several quarters; I say, the first time he saw me, it appeared his tone was altered; and, looking very melancholy, and shaking his head, asked me how I did: and telling his father who I was, and how I had come this voyage only for a trial, in order to go farther abroad; his father turning to me with a very grave and concerned tone, 'Young man,' says he, 'you ought never to go to sea any more; you ought to take this for a plain and visible token, that you are not to be a seafaring-man.'—'Why, Sir,' said I; 'will you go to sea no more?'—'That is another case,' said he; 'it is my calling, and therefore my duty; but as you made this voyage for a trial, you see what a taste Heaven has given you, of what you are to expect, if you persist: perhaps all this has befallen us on your account, like Jonah in the ship of Tarshish. Pray,' continues he, 'what are you? and on what account did you go to sea?' Upon that I told him some of my story; at the end of which, he burst out with a strange kind of passion; 'What had I done,' says he, 'that such an unhappy wretch should come into my ship! I would not set my foot in the same ship with thee again for a thousand pounds!' This indeed was, as I said, an excruciation of his spirits, which were yet agitated by the sense of his loss, and was farther than he could have authority to go: however, he afterwards talked very gravely to me, exhorting me to go back to my father, and not tempt Providence to my ruin; told me I might see a visible hand of Heaven against me: 'And young man,' said he, 'depend upon it, if you do not go back, wherever you go, you will meet with nothing but disasters and disappointments, till your father's words are fulfilled upon you.'

We parted soon after; for I made

him little answer, and I saw him no more; which way he went, I know not. As for me, having some money in my pocket, I travelled to London by land; and there, as well as on the road, had many struggles with myself, what course of life I should take, and whether I should go home, or go to sea.

As to going home, shame opposed the best motions that offered to my thoughts; and it immediately occurred to me how I should be laughed at among the neighbours, and should be ashamed to see, not my father and mother only, but even every body else. From whence I have since often observed how incongruous and irrational the common temper of mankind is, especially of youth, to that reason that ought to guide them in such cases; viz. that they are not ashamed to sin, and yet are ashamed to repent; not ashamed of the action, for which they ought justly to be esteemed fools; but are ashamed of the returning, which only can make them esteemed wise men.

In this state of life, however, I remained some time, uncertain what measures to take, and what course of life to lead. An irresistible reluctance continued to going home; and as I staid awhile, the remembrance of the distress I had been in wore off; and as that abated, the little motion I had in my desires to return, wore off with it, till at last I quite laid aside the thoughts of it, and looked out for a voyage.

That evil influence which carried me first away from my father's house, which hurried me into the wild and indigested notion of raising my fortune, and that impressed those conceits so forcibly upon me as to make me deaf to all good advice, and to the intreaties, and even the commands, of my father; I say, the same influence, whatever it was, presented the most unfortunate of all enterprizes to my view; and I went on board a vessel bound to the coast of Africa, or, as our sailors vulgarly call it, a voyage to Guinea.

It was my great misfortune, that in all these adventures I did not ship myself as a sailor; whereby, though I might indeed have worked a little harder than ordinary, yet, at the same time, I had learned the duty and office of a foremast-man; and in time might have qual-

lified myself for a mate or lieutenant, if not for a master. But as it was always my fate to chuse for the worst, so I did here; for having money in my pocket, and good cloaths on my back, I would always go on board in the habit of a gentleman; and so I neither had any business in the ship, nor learned to do any.

It was my lot first of all to fall into pretty good company in London, which does not always happen to such loose and unguided young fellows as I then was; the devil generally not omitting to lay some snare for them very early: but it was not so with me; I first fell acquainted with the master of a ship who had been on the coast of Guinea, and who, having had very good success there, was resolved to go again: this captain, taking a fancy to my conversation, which was not disagreeable at that time, and hearing me say I had a mind to see the world, told me, if I would go the voyage with him, I should be at no expence; I should be his messmate, and his companion; and if I could carry any thing with me, I should have all the advantage of it that the trade would admit; and perhaps I might meet with some encouragement.

I embraced the offer; and entering into a strict friendship with this captain, who was an honest plain-dealing man, went the voyage with him, and carried a small adventure with me, which, by the disinterested honesty of my friend the captain, I increased very considerably; for I carried about 40*l.* in such toys and trifles as the captain directed me to buy. This 40*l.* I had mustered together, by the assistance of some of my relations whom I corresponded with, and who, I believe, got my father, or at least my mother, to contribute so much as that to my first adventure.

This was the only voyage which I may say was successful in all my adventures, and which I owe to the integrity and honesty of my friend the captain; under whom I got a competent knowledge of the mathematicks, and the rules of navigation; learned how to keep an account of the ship's course, take an observation, and, in short, to understand some things that were needful to be understood by a sailor: for, as he took delight to introduce me, I took delight to learn; and,

in a word, this voyage made me both a sailor and a merchant; for I brought home five pounds nine ounces of gold-dust for my adventure, which yielded me in London, at my return, almost 300*l.* and this filled me with those aspiring thoughts which have since so compleated my ruin.

Yet, even in this voyage, I had misfortunes too; particularly, that I was continually sick, being thrown into a violent calenture by the excessive heat of the climate; our principal trading being upon the coast, from the lat. of 15 deg. N. even to the line itself.

I was now set up for a Guinea trader; and my friend, to my great misfortune, dying soon after his arrival, I resolved to go the same voyage again; and I embarked in the same vessel with one who was his mate in the former voyage, and had now got the command of the ship. This was the unhappiest voyage that ever man made; for though I did not carry quite 200*l.* of my new-gained wealth, so that I had 200*l.* left, and which I lodged with my friend's widow, who was very just to me; yet I fell into terrible misfortunes in this voyage; and the first was this: viz. our ship making her course towards the Canary Islands, or rather between those islands and the African shore, was surprized in the grey of the morning by a Moorish rover of Sallee, who gave chase to us with all the sail she could make. We crowded also as much canvas as our yards would spread, or our masts carry, to have got clear; but finding the pirate gained upon us, and would certainly come up with us in a few hours, we prepared to fight; our ship having twelve guns, and the rover eighteen. About three in the afternoon he came up with us, and, bringing to, by mistake, just athwart our quarter, instead of athwart our stern, as he intended, we brought eight of our guns to bear on that side, and poured in a broadside upon him, which made him sheer off again, after returning our fire, and pouring in also his small shot from near 200 men which he had on board. However, we had not a man touched, all our men keeping close: he prepared to attack us again, and we to defend ourselves; but, laying us on board the next time upon our other quarter, he entered ninety men

men upon our decks, who immediately fell to cutting and hacking the decks and rigging. We plied them with small shot, half-pikes, powder-chefts, and such like, and cleared our deck of them twice. However, to cut short this melancholy part of our story, our ship being disabled, and three of our men killed, and eight wounded, we were obliged to yield; and were carried all prisoners into Sallee, a port belonging the Moors.

The usage I had there was not so dreadful as at first I apprehended; nor was I carried up the country, to the emperor's court, as the rest of our men were, but was kept by the captain of the rover, as his proper prize, and made his slave, being young and nimble, and fit for his business. At this surprizing change of my circumstances, from a merchant to a miserable slave, I was perfectly overwhelmed; and now I looked back upon my father's prophetick discourse to me, that I should be miserable, and have none to relieve me; which I thought was now so effectually brought to pass, that I could not be worse; that now the hand of Heaven had overtaken me, and I was undone without redemption. But, alas! this was but a taste of the misery I was to go through, as will appear in the sequel of this story.

As my new patron or master had taken me home to his house, so I was in hopes, that he would take me with him when he went to sea again, believing that it would be some time or other his fate to be taken by a Spanish or Portugal man of war; and that then I should be set at liberty. But this hope of mine was soon taken away; for when he went to sea, he left me on shore to look after his little garden, and do the drudgery of slaves about his house; and when he came home again from his cruise, he ordered me to lie in the cabin, to look after the ship.

Here I meditated nothing but my escape, and what method I might take to effect it; but found no way that had the least probability in it: nothing presented to make the supposition of it rational; for I had nobody to communicate it to, that would embark with me; no fellow-slave, no Englishman, Irishman, or Scotsman

there, but myself; so that for two years, though I often pleased myself with the imagination, yet I never had the least encouraging prospect of putting it in practice.

After about two years, an odd circumstance presented itself, which put the old thoughts of making some attempt for my liberty again in my head: my patron lying at home longer than usual, without fitting out his ship, which, as I heard, was for want of money, he used constantly, once or twice a week, sometimes oftener, if the weather was fair, to take the ship's pinnace, and go out into the road a fishing; and as he always took me and a young Morefco with him to row the boat, we made him very merry, and I proved very dexterous in catching fish; insomuch, that sometimes he would send me with a Moor, one of his kinsmen, and the youth the Morefco, as they called him, to catch a dish of fish for him.

It happened one time, that going a fishing with him in a calm morning, a fog rose so thick, that though we were not half a league from the shore, we lost sight of it; and, rowing we knew not whither, or which way, we laboured all day, and all the next night; and when the morning came, we found we had pulled off to sea, instead of pulling in for the shore, and that we were at least two leagues from the land; however, we got well in again, though with a great deal of labour, and some danger, for the wind began to blow pretty fresh in the morning; but particularly we were all very hungry.

But our patron, warned by this disaster, resolved to take more care of himself for the future; and having lying by him the long-boat of our English ship which he had taken, he resolved he would not go a fishing any more without a compass and some provision: so he ordered the carpenter of his ship, who was also an English slave, to build a little state-room or cabin in the middle of the long-boat, like that of a barge, with a place to stand behind it to steer, and haul home the main sheet; and room before for an hand or two to stand and work the sails. She sailed with what we call a shoulder-of-mutton sail; and the boom jibbed over the top of the cabin, which lay very snug and low, and had

in it room for him to lie, with a slave or two, and a table to eat on, with some small lockers to put in some bottles of such liquor as he thought fit to drink; particularly his bread, rice, and coffee.

We went frequently out with this boat a fishing; and as I was most dexterous to catch fish for him, he never went without me. It happened one day, that he had appointed to go out in this boat, either for pleasure or for fish, with two or three Moors of some distinction, and for whom he had provided extraordinarily; and had therefore sent on board the boat over night a larger store of provisions than usual; and had ordered me to get ready three fusils with powder and shot, which were on board his ship; for that they designed some sport of fowling, as well as fishing.

I got all things ready, as he had directed; and waited the next morning with the boat washed clean, her ancient and pendants out, and every thing to accommodate his guests; when by and by my patron came on board alone, and told me his guests had put off going, upon some business that fell out; and ordered me, with the man and boy, as usual, to go out with the boat, and catch them some fish, for that his friends were to sup at his house; he commanded me too, that as soon as I had got some fish, I should bring it home to his house: all which I prepared to do.

This moment my former notions of deliverance darted into my thoughts; for now I found I was like to have a little ship at my command; and my master being gone, I prepared to furnish myself, not for fishing business, but for a voyage; though I knew not, neither did I so much as consider, whether I would steer; for any where to get out of that place was my way.

My first contrivance was to make a pretence to speak to this Moor, to get something for our subsistence on board; for I told him we must not presume to eat of our patron's bread: he said, that was true; so he brought a large basket of rusk, or biscuit of their kind, and three jars with fresh water, into the boat: I knew where my patron's case of bottles stood, which it was evident by the make, were taken out of some English prize, and I conveyed them into the boat, while the Moor was on shore, as if they had

been there before for our master: I conveyed also a great lump of bees-wax into the boat, which weighed about half an hundred weight, with a parcel of twine or thread, an hatchet, a saw, and an hammer, all which were of great use to us afterwards; especially the wax to make candles. Another trick I tried upon him, which he innocently came into also: his name was Ismael, whom they call Muley, or Moloy; so I called to him, 'Moloy,' said I, 'our patron's guns are all on board the boat: can you not get a little powder and shot? It may be we may kill some aleamies (a fowl like our curlews) for ourselves; for I know he keeps the gunner's stores in the ship.'—'Yes,' says he, 'I'll bring some.' Accordingly, he brought a great leather pouch, which held about a pound and an half of powder, or rather more; and another with shot, that had five or six pounds, with some bullets, and put all into the boat: at the same time I had found some powder of my master's, in the great cabin, with which I filled one of the large bottles in the case, which was almost empty; pouring what was in it into another: and thus furnished with every thing needful, we sailed out of the port to fish. The castle, which was at the entrance of the port, knew who we were, and took no notice of us; and we were not above a mile out of the port, before we hauled in our sail, and sat us down to fish. The wind blew from the N. N. E. which was contrary to my desire; for had it blown southerly, I had been sure to have made the coast of Spain, and at least reached to the bay of Cadiz; but my resolutions were, blow which way it would, I would be gone from that horrid place where I was, and leave the rest to fate.

After we had fished some time, and caught nothing, (for when I had fish on my hook, I would not pull them up, that he might not see them) I said to the Moor, 'This will not do; our master will not be thus served; we must stand farther off.' He, thinking no harm, agreed; and being in the head of the boat, set the sails; and as I had the helm, I ran the boat out near a league farther, and then brought her to, as if I would fish; when, giving the boy the helm, I stepped forward to where





where the Moor was; and, making as if I stooped for something behind him, I took him by surprize with my arm under his twist, and tossed him clear over-board into the sea; he rose immediately, for he swam like a cork, and called to me, begging to be taken in, and told me he would go all over the world with me: he swam so strong after the boat, that he would have reached me very quickly, there being but little wind; upon which I stepped into the cabin, and fetching one of the fowling-pieces, I presented it at him, and told him, I had done him no hurt, and, if he would be quiet, I would do him none: 'But,' said I, 'you swim well enough to reach the shore, and the sea is calm; make the best of your way to the shore, and I will do you no harm; but if you come near the boat, I will shoot you thro' the head; for I am resolved to have my liberty.' So he turned himself about, and swam for the shore; and I make no doubt but he reached it with ease, for he was an excellent swimmer.

I could have been content to have taken this Moor with me, and have drowned the boy; but there was no venturing to trust him: when he was gone, I turned to the boy, whom they called Xury, and said to him, 'Xury, if you will be faithful to me, I will make you a great man; but if you will not stroke your face to be true to me, that is, swear by Mahomet and his father's beard, I must throw you into the sea too.' The boy smiled in my face, and spoke so innocently, that I could not mistrust him; and swore to be faithful to me, and go all over the world with me.

While I was in the view of the Moor that was swimming, I stood out directly to sea, with the boat rather stretching to windward, that they might think me gone towards the Straights Mouth, (as indeed any one that had been in their wits must have been supposed to do;) for who would have supposed we were sailed on to the southward, to the truly Barbarian coast, where whole nations of Negroes were sure to surround us with their canoes, and destroy us; where we could never once go on shore, but we should be devoured by savage beasts, or more merciless savages of human kind.

But as soon as it grew dusk in the evening, I changed my course, and steered directly S. and by E. bending my course a little towards the E. that I might keep in with the shore; and having a fair fresh gale of wind, and a smooth quiet sea, I made such sail, that I believe by the next day at three o'clock in the afternoon, when I first made the land, I could not be less than 150 miles south of Sallee, quite beyond the Emperor of Morocco's dominions, or indeed of any other king thereabouts, for we saw no people.

Yet such was the fright I had taken at the Moors, and the dreadful apprehensions I had of falling into their hands, that I would not stop, or go on shore, or come to an anchor, (the wind continuing fair) till I had sailed in that manner five days; and then the wind shifting to the southward, I concluded also, that if any of our vessels were in chace of me, they also would now give over; so I ventured to make to the coast, and came to an anchor in the mouth of a little river, I knew not what or where; neither what latitude, what country, what nation, or what river: I neither saw, or desired to see, any people; the principal thing I wanted was fresh water. We came into this creek in the evening, resolving to swim on shore as soon as it was dark, and discover the country; but as soon as it was quite dark, we heard such dreadful noises of the barking, roaring, and howling of wild creatures, of we knew not what kinds, that the poor boy was ready to die with fear, and begged of me not to go on shore till day. 'Well, Xury,' said I, 'then I won't; but it may be we may see men by day, who will be as bad to us as those lions:—' Then we 'may give them the shoot gun,' says Xury, laughing, 'make them run away; such English Xury spoke by conversing among us slaves. However, I was glad to see the boy so chearful, and I gave him a dram out of our patron's case of bottles, to chear him up: after all, Xury's advice was good, and I took it; we dropped our little anchor, and lay still all night; I say, lay still, for we slept none; for in two or three hours we saw vast great creatures, we knew not what to call them, of many sorts, come

come down to the sea shore, and run into the water, wallowing and washing themselves, for the pleasure of cooling themselves; and they made such hideous howlings and yellings, that I never indeed heard the like.

Xury was dreadfully frightened, and indeed so was I too: but we were both worse frightened when we heard one mighty creature come swimming towards our boat; we could not see him, but we might hear him by his blowing, to be a monstrous, huge, and furious beast; Xury said it was a lion, and it might be for aught I know: poor Xury cried out to me to weigh the anchor, and row away. 'No,' says I, 'Xury, we can slip our cable with a buoy to it, and go to sea: they cannot follow us far.' I had no sooner said so, but I perceived the creature (whatever it was) within two oars length, which something surprized me; however, I immediately stepped to the cabin-door, and taking up my gun, fired at him; upon which he immediately turned about, and swam towards the shore again.

But it was not possible to describe the horrible noises, and hideous cries and howlings, that were raised, as well upon the edge of the shore, as higher within the country, upon the noise or report of a gun, a thing I have some reason to believe those creatures had never heard before. This convinced me, that there was no going on shore for us in the night upon that coast; and how to venture on shore in the day, was another question too; for, to have fallen into the hands of any of the savages, had been as bad as to have fallen into the paws of lions and tigers; at least, we were equally apprehensive of the danger of it.

Be that as it would, we were obliged to go on shore somewhere or other for water, for we had not a pint left in the boat; when or where to get to it, was the point: Xury said, if I would let him go on shore with one of the jars, he would find if there was any water, and bring some to me. I asked him, why he would go; why I should not go, and he stay in the boat. The boy answered with so much affection, that made me love him ever after: says he, 'If wild mans come, they eat me, you go way.'—'Well,' 'Xury,' said I; 'we will both go,

and if the wild mans come, we will kill them; they shall eat neither of us.' So I gave Xury a piece of rusk bread to eat, and a dram out of our patron's case of bottles, which I mentioned before, and we hauled the boat in as near shore as we thought was proper, and waded on shore, carrying nothing but our arms and two jars for water.

I did not care to go out of sight of the boat, fearing the coming of the canoes with savages down the river: but the boy, seeing a low place, about a mile up the country, rambled to it, and by and by I saw him come running towards me: I thought he was pursued by some savage, or frightened with some wild beast, and I ran forward towards him, to help him; but when I came nearer to him, I saw something hanging over his shoulders, which was a creature that he had shot, like a hare, but different in colour, and longer legs; however, we were very glad of it, and it was very good meat; but the great joy that poor Xury came with, was to tell me he had found good water, and seen no wild mans.

But we found afterwards, that we need not take such pains for water; for a little higher up the creek where we were, we found the water fresh when the tide was out, which flows but a little way up; so we filled our jars, and feasted on the hare we had killed, and prepared to go on our way, having seen no footsteps of any human creature in that part of the country.

As I had been one voyage to this coast before, I knew very well, that the islands of the Canaries, and the Cape de Verd islands also, lay not far off from the coast: but as I had no instruments to take an observation to know what latitude we were in, and did not exactly know, or at least not remember, what latitude they were in, I knew not where to look for them, or when to stand off to sea towards them, otherwise I might now easily have found some of these islands. But my hope was, that if I stood along this coast till I came to that part where the English traded, I should find some of their vessels upon their usual design of trade, that would relieve and take us in.

By the best of my calculation, the place where I now was, must be that country which, lying between the Emperor

peror of Morocco's dominions and the Negroes, lies waste and uninhabited, except by wild beasts; the Negroes having abandoned it, and gone farther south, for fear of the Moors; and the Moors not thinking it worth inhabiting, by reason of it's barrenness; and, indeed, both forsaking it because of the prodigious numbers of tigers, lions, leopards, and other furious creatures which harbour there; so that the Moors use it for their hunting only, where they go like an army, two or three thousand men at a time: and indeed for near an hundred miles together upon this coast, we saw nothing but a waste uninhabited country by day, and heard nothing but howlings and roarings of wild beasts by night.

Once or twice, in the day-time, I thought I saw the Pico of Teneriffe, being the high top of the mountain Teneriffe, in the Canaries; and had a great mind to venture out, in hopes of reaching thither; but, having tried twice, I was forced in again by contrary winds, the sea also going too high for my little vessel; so I resolved to pursue my first design, and keep along the shore.

Several times we were obliged to land for fresh water, after we had left this place; and once in particular, being early in the morning, we came to an anchor under a little point of land, which was pretty high; and the tide beginning to flow, we lay still to go farther in. Xury, whose eyes were more about him than, it seems, mine were, calls softly to me, and tells me, that we had best go farther off the shore; 'For,' says he, 'look! yonder lies a dreadful monster on the side of that hillock, fast asleep.' I looked where he pointed, and saw a dreadful monster indeed; for it was a terrible great lion, that lay on the side of the shore, under the shade of a piece of the hill, that hung as it were a little over him. 'Xury,' said I, 'you shall go on shore and kill him.' Xury looked frightened, and said, 'Me kill! he eat me at one mouth;' one mouthful, he meant: however, I said no more to the boy, but bade him be still; and took our biggest gun, which was almost musket bore; and loaded it with a good charge of powder, and with two slugs, and laid it down; then I loaded another gun with two bullets, and the

third (for we had three pieces) I loaded with five smaller bullets. I took the best aim I could with the first piece to have shot him in the head; but he lay so with his leg raised a little above his nose, that the slug hit his leg about the knee, and broke the bone. He started up, growling at first; but finding his leg broke, fell down again, and then got up upon three legs, and gave the most hideous roar that I ever heard. I was a little surprized that I had not hit him on the head; however, I took up the second piece immediately, and though he began to move off, fired again, and shot him in the head, and had the pleasure to see him drop; and making but little noise, he lay struggling for life. Then Xury took heart, and would have me let him go on shore. 'Well, go,' said I. So the boy jumped into the water, and taking the little gun in one hand, swam to the shore with the other hand; and coming close to the creature, put the muzzle of the piece to his ear, and shot him in the head again, which dispatched him quite.

This was game indeed to us, but this was no food; and I was very sorry to lose three charges of powder and shot, upon a creature that was good for nothing to us. However, Xury said, he would have some of him; so he comes on board, and asked me to give him the hatchet. 'For what,' Xury? said I. 'Me cut off his head,' said he. However, Xury could not cut off his head; but he cut off a foot, and brought it with him, and it was a monstrous great one.

I bethought myself, however, that perhaps the skin of him might, one way or other, be of some value to us; and I resolved to take off his skin, if I could. So Xury and I went to work with him; but Xury was much the better workman at it, for I knew very ill how to do it. Indeed, it took us up (both) the whole day; but at last we got off the hide of him, and spreading it on the top of our cabin, the sun effectually dried it in two days time, and it afterwards served me to lie upon.

After this stop, we made on to the southward continually for ten or twelve days, living very sparingly on our provisions, which began to abate very much; and going no oftener in to the shore than we were obliged to for

fresh water. My design in this was, to make the river Gambia or Senegal, that is to say, any where about the Cape de Verd, where I was in hopes to meet with some European ship; and if I did not, I knew not what course I had to take, but to seek for the islands, or perish there among the Negroes. I knew that all the ships from Europe, which sailed either to the coast of Guinea, or to Brazil, or to the East Indies, made this cape, or those islands; and, in a word, I put the whole of my fortune upon this single point, either that I must meet with some ship, or must perish.

When I had pursued this resolution about ten days longer, as I said, I began to see that the land was inhabited; and in two or three places, as we sailed by, we saw people stand upon the shore to look at us; we could also perceive they were quite black, and stark naked. I was once inclined to have gone on shore to them; but Xury was my better counsellor, and said to me, 'No go, no go!' However, I hauled in nearer the shore, that I might talk to them, and I found they ran along the shore by me a good way. I observed they had no weapons in their hands, except one, who had a long slender stick, which Xury said was a lance, and that they would throw them a great way with good aim; so I kept at a distance, but talked with them by signs as well as I could, and particularly made signs for something to eat. They beckoned to me to stop my boat, and they would fetch me some meat. Upon this I lowered the top of my sail, and lay by; and two of them ran up into the country, and in less than half an hour came back, and brought with them two pieces of dry flesh, and some corn, such as is the produce of their country; but we neither knew what the one or the other was; however, we were willing to accept it. But how to come at it, was our next dispute; for I was not for venturing on shore to them, and they were as much afraid of us: but they took a safe way for us all; for they brought it to the shore, and laid it down, and went and stood a great way off, till we fetched it on board, and then come close to us again.

We made signs of thanks to them,

for we had nothing to make them amends: but an opportunity offered that very instant, to oblige them wonderfully; for while we were lying by the shore, came two mighty creatures, one pursuing the other (as we took it) with great fury, from the mountains towards the sea: whether it was the male pursuing the female, or whether they were in sport or in rage, we could not tell, any more than we could tell whether it was usual or strange; but I believe it was the latter; because, in the first place, those ravenous creatures seldom appear but in the night; and, in the second place, we found the people terribly frightened, especially the women. The man that had the lance or dart did not fly from them, but the rest did; however, as the two creatures ran directly into the water, they did not seem to offer to fall upon the Negroes, but plunged themselves into the sea, and swam about as if they had come for their diversion: at last one of them began to come nearer our boat than at first I expected; but I lay ready for him; for I had loaded my gun with all possible expedition, and bid Xury load both the other. As soon as he came fairly within my reach, I fired, and shot him directly in the head: immediately he sunk down into the water, but rose instantly, and plunged up and down as if he was struggling for life; and so indeed he was. He immediately made to the shore; but between the wound, which was his mortal hurt, and the strangling of the water, he died just before he reached the shore.

It is impossible to express the astonishment of these poor creatures at the noise and fire of my gun; some of them were ready even to die for fear, and fell down as dead with the very terror: but when they saw the creature dead and sunk into the water, and that I made signs to them to come to the shore, they took heart, and came to the shore, and began to search for the creature. I found him by his blood staining the water, and by the help of a rope, which I flung round him, and gave the Negroes to haul, they dragged him on shore, and found it was a most curious leopard, spotted and fine to an admirable degree; and the Negroes held up their hands with admiration, to think what it was I killed him with.

The other creature, frightened with the

the flash of fire, and the noise of the gun, swam to the shore, and ran up directly to the mountains, from which they came, nor could I at that distance know what it was. I found quickly the Negroes were for eating the flesh of this creature; so I was willing to have them take it as a favour from me, which when I made signs to them, that they might take it, they were very thankful for. Immediately they fell to work with him; and though they had no knife, yet with a sharpened piece of wood, they took off his skin as readily, nay much more readily than we would have done with a knife; they offered me some of the flesh, which I declined, making as if I would give it them; but made signs for the skin, which they gave me very freely, and brought me a great deal more of their provision, which, though I did not understand, yet I accepted. Then I made signs to them for some water, and held out one of my jars to them, turning it's bottom upward, to shew that it was empty, and that I wanted to have it filled: they called immediately to some of their friends, and there came two women, and brought a great vessel made of earth, and burnt, as I suppose, in the sun; this they set down for me, as before, and I sent Xury on shore with my jars, and filled them all three. The women were as stark naked as the men.

I was now furnished with roots and corn, such as it was, and water; and leaving my friendly Negroes, I made forward for about eleven days more, without offering to go near the shore, till I saw the land run out a great length into the sea at about the distance of four or five leagues before me; and the sea being very calm, I kept a large offing to make this point; at length, doubling the point at about two leagues from the land, I saw plainly land on the other side to sea-ward; then I concluded, as it was most certain indeed, that this was the Cape de Verd, and those the islands called from thence Cape de Verd Islands. However, they were at a great distance, and I could not well tell what I had best to do; for if I should be taken with a fresh of wind, I might neither reach one or other.

In this dilemma, as I was very pensive, I stepped into the cabin, and set

me down, Xury having the helm; when on a sudden the boy cried out, 'Master, master, a ship was a sail!' and the foolish boy was frightened out of his wits, thinking it must needs be some of his master's ships sent to pursue us, when I knew we were gotten far enough out of their reach. I jumped out of the cabin, and immediately saw not only the ship, but what she was; viz. that it was a Portuguese ship; and, as I thought, was bound to the coast of Guinea for Negroes. But when I observed the course she steered, I was soon convinced they were bound some other way, and did not design to go any nearer the shore; upon which I stretched out to sea as much as I could, resolving to speak with them, if possible.

With all the sail I could make, I found I should not be able to come in their way, but that they would be gone by before I could make any signal to them; but after I had crowded to the utmost, and began to despair, they, it seems, saw me by the help of their perspective-glasses, and that it was some European boat, which they supposed must belong to some ship that was lost; so they shortened sail to let me come up. I was encouraged with this; and as I had my patron's ancient on board, I made a waft of it to them for a signal of distress, and fired a gun, both which they saw; for they told me they saw the smoke, though they did not hear the gun: upon these signals they very kindly brought to, and lay by for me, and in about three hours time I came up with them.

They asked me what I was, in Portuguese, and in Spanish, and in French, but I understood none of them; but at last, a Scots sailor, who was on board, called to me, and I answered him, and told him I was an Englishman, that had made my escape out of slavery from the Moors at Sal-lee; then they bid me come on board, and very kindly took me in, and all my goods.

It was an inexpressible joy to me, any one will believe, that I was thus delivered, as I esteemed it, from such a miserable and almost hopeless condition as I was in: I immediately offered all I had to the captain of the ship, as a return for my deliverance; but he generously told me, he would

take nothing from me, but that all I had should be delivered safe to me when I came to the Brazils. 'For,' says he, 'I have saved your life on no other terms, than as I would be glad to be saved myself; and it may one time or other be my lot to be taken up in the same condition: besides,' says he, 'when I carry you to the Brazils, so great a way from your own country, if I should take from you what little you have, you will be starved there, and then I only take away that life I have given. No, no,' says he, 'Signior Inglife, (Mr. Englishman), I would carry you thither in charity; and these things will help you to buy your subsistence there, and your passage home again.'

As he was charitable in this proposal, so he was just in the performance to a tittle; for he ordered the seamen, that none should offer to touch any thing I had; then he took every thing into his own possession, and gave me back an exact inventory of them, that I might have them again, even so much as my three earthen jars.

As to my boat, it was a very good one, and that he saw; and told me he would buy it of me for the ship's use, and asked me what I would have for it. I told him he had been so generous to me in every thing, that I could not offer to make any price of the boat, but left it entirely to him; upon which he told me he would give me a note of his hand to pay me eighty pieces of eight for it at Brazil; and when it came there, if any one offered to give more, he would make it up: he offered me also sixty pieces of eight more for my boy Xury, which I was loth to take; not that I was not willing to let the captain have him, but I was very loth to sell the poor boy's liberty, who had assisted me so faithfully in procuring my own. However, when I let him know my reason, he owned it to be just, and offered me this medium, that he would give the boy an obligation to set him free in ten years, if he turned Christian. Upon this, and Xury saying he was willing to go to him, I let the captain have him.

We had a very good voyage to the Brazils, and arrived in the *Bay de todos los Santos*, or All-Saints Bay, in about twenty-two days after. And now I was once more delivered from the most

miserable of all conditions of life; and what to do next with myself, I was to consider.

The generous treatment the captain gave me, I can never enough remember: he would take nothing of me for my passage, gave me twenty ducats for the leopard's skin, and forty for the lion's skin, which I had in the boat, and caused every thing I had in the ship to be punctually delivered me, and what I was willing to sell, he bought; such as, the case of bottles, two of my guns, and a piece of the lump of bees wax, for I had made candles of the rest: in a word, I made about two hundred and thirty pieces of eight of all my cargo, and with this stock I went on shore in the Brazils.

I had not been long here, but being recommended to the house of a good honest man like himself, who had an *ingenio*, as they call it, that is, a plantation and a sugar-house, I lived with him some time; and acquainted myself, by that means, with the manner of their planting and making of sugar; and seeing how well the planters lived, and how they grew rich suddenly, I resolved, if I could get licence to settle there, I would turn planter among them; resolving, in the mean time, to find out some way to get my money which I had left in London, remitted to me. To this purpose, getting a kind of a letter of naturalization, I purchased as much land that was uncured as my money would reach; and formed a plan for my plantation and settlement, and such an one as might be suitable to the stock which I proposed to myself to receive from England.

I had a neighbour, a Portuguese of Lisbon, but born of English parents, whose name was Wells, and in much such circumstances as I was: I call him neighbour, because his plantation lay next to mine; and we went on very sociably together; my stock was but low, as well as his; and we rather planted for food, than any thing else, for about two years. However, we began to increase, and our land began to come into order: so that the third year we planted some tobacco, and made each of us a large piece of ground ready for planting canes in the year to come; but we both wanted help; and now I found, more than before, I had
done

done wrong in parting with my boy Xury.

But, alas! for me to do wrong that never did right, was no great wonder: I had no remedy but to go on. I was gotten into an employment quite remote to my genius, and directly contrary to the life I delighted in, and for which I forsook my father's house, and broke through all his good advice; nay, I was coming into the very middle station, or upper degree of low life, which my father advised me to before, and which if I resolved to go on with, I might as well have staid at home, and never fatigued myself in the world, as I had done; and I used often to say to myself, 'I could have done this as well in England among my friends, as have gone five thousand miles off to do it among strangers and savages in a wilderness, and at such a distance, as never to hear from any part of the world that had the least knowledge of me.'

In this manner I used to look upon my condition with the utmost regret. I had nobody to converse with but now and then this neighbour; no work to be done but by the labour of my hands; and I used to say, I lived just like a man cast away upon some desolate island, that had nobody there but himself. But how just has it been, and how should all men reflect, that when they compare their present condition with others that are worse, Heaven may oblige them to make the exchange, and be convinced of their former felicity, by their experience! I saw, how just it has been, that the truly solitary life I reflected on in an island, or mere desolation, should be my lot, who had so often unjustly compared it with the life which I then led, in which had I continued, I had in all probability been exceeding prosperous and rich!

I was in some degree settled in my measures for carrying on the plantation, before my kind friend the captain of the ship, that took me up at sea, went back; for the ship remained there in providing her loading, and preparing for her voyage, near three months; when telling him what little stock I had left behind me in London, he gave me this friendly and sincere advice: 'Signior Inglese,' says he, for so he always called me, 'if you will give me letters, and a procuration here in

'form to me, with orders to the person who has your money in London, to send your effects to Lisbon, to such persons as I shall direct, and in such goods as are proper for this country, I will bring you the produce of them, (God willing) at my return; but since human affairs are all subject to changes and disasters, I would have you give orders but for 100l. sterling, which you say is half your stock, and let the hazard be run for the first; so that if it comes safe, you may order the rest the same way; and if it miscarry, you may have the other half to have recourse to for your supply.'

This was so wholesome advice, and looked so friendly, that I could not but be convinced it was the best course I could take; so I accordingly prepared letters to the gentlewoman with whom I had left my money, and a procuration to the Portuguese captain, as he desired.

I wrote the English captain's widow a full account of all my adventures, my slavery, escape, and how I had met with the Portugal captain at sea, the humanity of his behaviour, and what condition I was now in, with all other necessary directions for my supply; and when this honest captain came to Lisbon, he found means, by some of the English merchants there, to send over not the order only, but a full account of my story to a merchant at London, who presented it effectually to her; whereupon, she not only delivered the money, but out of her own pocket sent the Portugal captain a very handsome present for his humanity and charity to me.

The merchant in London vested this 100l. in English goods, such as the captain had written for; sent them directly to him at Lisbon, and he brought them all safe to me to the Brazils; among which, without my direction, (for I was too young in my business to think of them) he had taken care to have all sorts of tools, iron-work, and utensils necessary for my plantation, and which were of great use to me.

When this cargo arrived, I thought my fortune made, for I was surprized with the joy of it; and my good steward the captain had laid out the 5l. which my friend had sent him for a present

present for himself, to purchase and bring me over a servant under bond for six years service; and would not accept of any consideration, except a little tobacco, which I would have him accept, being of my own produce.

Neither was this all; but my goods being all English manufactures, such as cloth, stuff, baize, and things particularly valuable and desirable in the country, I found means to sell them to a very great advantage; so that I may say, I had more than four times the value of my first cargo, and was now infinitely beyond my poor neighbour, I mean in the advancement of my plantation; for the first thing I did, I bought me a Negro slave, and an European servant also; I mean, another besides that which the captain brought me from Lisbon.

But as abused prosperity is oftentimes made the very means of our greatest adversity, so was it with me. I went on the next year with great success in my plantation; I raised fifty great rolls of tobacco, on my own ground, more than I had disposed of for necessaries among my neighbours; and these fifty rolls being each of above one hundred pounds weight, were well cured, and laid by, against the return of the fleet from Lisbon. And now increasing in business and wealth, my head began to be full of projects and undertakings beyond my reach; such as are indeed often the ruin of the best heads in business.

Had I continued in the station I was now in, I had room for all the happy things to have yet befallen me, for which my father so earnestly recommended a quiet retired life, and which he had so sensibly described the middle station of life to be full of; but other things attended me, and I was still to be the wilful agent of all my own miseries: and particularly to increase my fault, and double the reflections upon myself which in my future sorrows I should have leisure to make; all these miscarriages were procured by my apparent obstinate adhering to my foolish inclination of wandering abroad, and pursuing that inclination, in contradiction to the clearest views of doing myself good in a fair and plain pursuit of those prospects, and those measures of life, which Nature and Providence

concurred to present me with, and to make my duty.

As I had once done thus in breaking away from my parents, so I could not be content now, but I must go and leave the happy view I had of being a rich and thriving man in my new plantation, only to pursue a rash and immoderate desire of rising faster than the nature of the thing admitted; and thus I cast myself down again into the deepest gulph of human misery that ever man fell into, or perhaps could be consistent with life and a state of health in the world.

To come then by just degrees to the particulars of this part of my story: you may suppose, that having now lived almost four years in the Brazils, and beginning to thrive and prosper very well upon my plantation, I had not only learned the language, but had contracted acquaintance and friendship among my fellow-planters as well as among the merchants at St. Salvadoré, which was our port; and that, in my discourse among them, I had frequently given them an account of my two voyages to the coast of Guinea, the manner of trading with the Negroes there, and how easy it was to purchase upon the coast, for trifles, (such as beads, toys, knives, scissars, hatchets, bits of glass, and the like) not only gold dust, Guinea grains, elephant's teeth, &c. but Negroes for the service of the Brazils, in great numbers.

They listened always very attentively to my discourses on these heads, but especially to that part which related to the buying Negroes, which was a trade at that time not only not far entered into, but, as far as it was, had been carried on by the *Assientos*, (or permission of the King of Spain and Portugal) and engrossed in the publick stock; so that few Negroes were bought, and those excessive dear.

It happened, being in company one day with some merchants and planters of my acquaintance, and talking of those things very earnestly, three of them came to me the next morning, and told me, they had been musing very much upon what I had discoursed of with them the last night; and they came to make a secret proposal to me: and, after enjoining me secrecy, they told me, that they had a mind to fit out



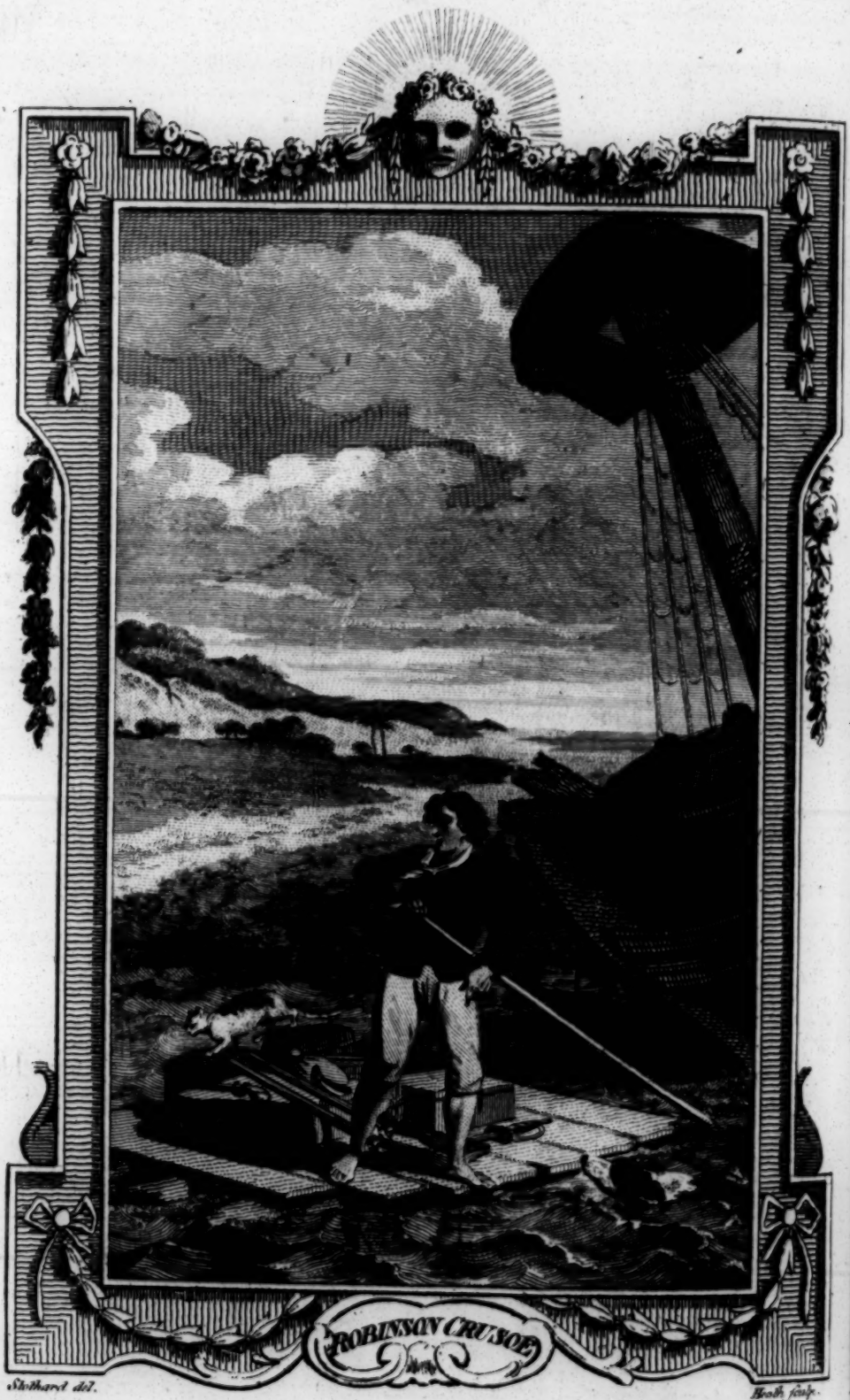


Plate VI.

Published as the Act directs, by Harrison & Co. April 7th 1781.

out a ship to go to Guinea; that they had all plantations as well as I, and were straitened for nothing so much as servants; that as it was a trade that could not publickly sell the Negroes when they came home, so they desired to make but one voyage, to bring the Negroes on shore privately, and divide them among their own plantations; and, in a word, the question was, whether I would go their supercargo in the ship, to manage the trading part upon the coast of Guinea; and they offered me, that I should have my equal share of the Negroes, without providing any part of the stock.

This was a fair proposal, it must be confessed, had it been made to any one that had not had a settlement and plantation of his own to look after, which was in a fair way of coming to be very considerable, and with a good stock upon it: but for me that was thus established, and had nothing to do but go on as I had begun for three or four years more, and to have sent for the other 100l. from England, and who in that time, and what that little addition could scarce have failed of being worth three or 4000 l. sterling, and that increasing too; for me to think of such a voyage, was the most preposterous thing that ever man in such circumstances could be guilty of!

But I, that was born to be my own destroyer, could no more resist the offer than I could restrain my first rambling designs, when my father's good counsel was lost upon me. In a word, I told them I would go with all my heart, if they would undertake to look after my plantation in my absence, and would dispose of it to such as I should direct, if I miscarried. This they all engaged to do, and entered into writings or covenants to do so; and I made a formal will, disposing of my plantation and effects, in case of my death, making the captain of the ship that had saved my life, as before, my universal heir, but obliging him to dispose of my effects as I had directed in my will: one half of the produce being to himself, and the other to be shipped to England.

In short, I took all possible caution to preserve my effects, and to keep up my plantation. Had I used half as much prudence to have looked into my

own interest, and have made a judgment of what I ought to have done, and not to have done, I had certainly never gone away from so prosperous an undertaking; leaving all the probable views of a thriving circumstance, and gone upon a voyage to sea, attended with all it's common hazards; to say nothing of the reasons I had to expect particular misfortunes to myself.

But I was hurried on, and obeyed blindly the dictates of my fancy, rather than my reason; and accordingly, the ship being fitted out, and the cargo finished, and all things done as by agreement by my partners in the voyage; I went on board in an evil hour again, the 1st of September 1659, being the same day eight years that I went from my father and mother at Hull, in order to act the rebel to their authority, and the fool to my own interest.

Our ship was about one hundred and twenty tons burden, carried six guns and fourteen men, besides the master, his boy, and myself: we had on board no large cargo of goods, except of such toys as were fit for our trade with the Negroes; such as beads, bits of glass, shells, and odd trifles; especially little looking-glasses, knives, scissars, hatchets, and the like.

The same day I went on board, we set sail, standing away to the northward upon our own coasts, with design to stretch over for the African coast, when we came into about ten or twelve degrees of northern latitude; which, it seems, was the manner of their course in those days: we had very good weather, only excessive hot, all the way upon our own coast, till we came to the height of Cape St. Augustine; from whence, keeping farther off at sea, we lost sight of land, and steered as if we were bound for the Isle Fernand de Noronha, holding our course N. E. by N. and leaving those isles on the east. In this course we passed the line in about twelve days time, and were by our last observation in 7 degrees 22 minutes northern latitude, when a violent tornado or hurricane took us quite out of our knowledge. It began from the S. E. came about to the N. W. then settled into the N. E. from whence it blew in such a terrible manner, that for twelve days together, we could do nothing but drive; and scudding away
before

before it, let it carry us wherever fate and the fury of the winds directed; and during these twelve days I need not say, that I expected every day to be swallowed up, nor did any in the ship expect to save their lives.

In this distress, we had, besides the terror of a storm, one of our men died of the calenture, and a man and a boy washed overboard. About the twelfth day, the weather abating a little, the master made an observation as well as he could, and found that he was in about 11 degrees of north latitude, but that he was 22 degrees of longitude difference west from Cape St. Augustine, so that he found he was gotten upon the coast of Guiana, or the north part of Brazil, beyond the River Amazonas, towards that of the River Oroonoque, commonly called the Great River; and now he began to consult with me what course he should take; for the ship was leaky, and very much disabled; and he was for going directly back to the coast of Brazil.

I was positively against that; and, looking over the charts of the sea-coast of America with him, we concluded there was no inhabited country for us to have recourse to, till we came within the circle of the Caribbee Islands; and therefore resolved to stand away for Barbadoes, which, by keeping off at sea, to avoid the indraught of the bay or gulph of Mexico, we might easily perform, as we hoped, in about fifteen days sail; whereas we could not possibly make our voyage to the coast of Africa, without some assistance both to our ship and to ourselves.

With this design we changed our course, and steered away N. W. by W. in order to reach some of our English islands, where I hoped for relief; but our voyage was otherwise determined; for, being in the latitude of 12 degrees 18 minutes, a second storm came upon us, which carried us away with the same impetuosity westward, and drove us so out of the very way of all human commerce, that had all our lives been saved, as to the sea, we were rather in danger of being devoured by savages, than ever returning to our own country.

In this distress, the wind still blowing very hard, one of our men, early one morning, cried out 'Land!' and we had no sooner run out of the cabin to

look out, in hopes of seeing whereabouts in the world we were, but the ship struck upon a sand, and in a moment, her motion being so stopped, the sea broke over her in such a manner, that we expected we should all have perished immediately; and we were even driven into our close quarters, to shelter us from the very foam and spray of the sea.

It is not easy for any one who has not been in the like condition, to describe or conceive the consternation of men in such circumstances; we knew nothing where we were, or upon what land it was we were driven, whether an island or the main, whether inhabited or not inhabited: and, as the rage of the wind was still great, though rather less than at first, we could not so much as hope to have the ship hold many minutes without breaking in pieces, unless the winds, by a kind of miracle, should turn immediately about. In a word, we sat looking one upon another, and expecting death every moment, and every man acting accordingly, as preparing for another world; for there was little or nothing more for us to do in this: that which was our present comfort, and all the comfort we had, was, that, contrary to our expectation, the ship did not break yet, and that the master said the wind began to abate.

Now, though we thought that the wind did a little abate, yet the ship having thus struck upon the sand, and sticking too fast for us to expect her getting off, we were in a dreadful condition indeed, and had nothing to do but to think of saving our lives as well as we could. We had a boat at our stern, just before the storm; but she was first staved by dashing against the ship's rudder, and in the next place she broke away, and either sunk, or was driven off to sea; so there was no hope from her: we had another boat on board, but how to get her off into the sea was a doubtful thing; however, there was no room to debate; for we fancied the ship would break in pieces every minute; and some told us she was actually broken already.

In this distress, the mate of our vessel lays hold of the boat, and with the help of the rest of the men, they got her swung over the ship's side, and getting

getting all into her, let go, and committed ourselves, being eleven in number, to God's mercy, and the wild sea; for though the storm was abated considerably, yet the sea went dreadfully high upon the shore, and might well be called *den wild zee*, as the Dutch call the sea in a storm.

And now our case was very dismal indeed; for we all saw plainly, that the sea went so high, that the boat could not escape, and that we should be inevitably drowned. As to making sail, we had none; nor, if we had, could we have done any thing with it; so we worked at the oar towards the land, though with heavy hearts, like men going to execution; for we all knew, that when the boat came near the shore, she would be dashed in a thousand pieces by the breach of the sea. However, we committed our souls to God in the most earnest manner, and the wind driving us towards the shore, we hastened our destruction with our own hands, pulling, as well as we could, towards land.

What the shore was, whether rock or sand, whether steep or shoal, we knew not; the only hope that could rationally give us the least shadow of expectation, was, if we might happen into some bay or gulph, or the mouth of some river, where by great chance we might have run our boat in, or got under the lee of the land; and perhaps made smooth water. But there was nothing of this appeared; but as we made nearer and nearer the shore, the land looked more frightful than the sea.

After we had rowed, or rather driven, about a league and an half, as we reckoned it, a raging wave, mountain like, came rolling altern of us, and plainly bid us expect the *coup de grace*. In a word, it took us with such a fury, that it overset the boat at once, and separating us as well from the boat as from one another, gave us not time hardly to say, 'O God!' for we were all swallowed up in a moment.

Nothing can describe the confusion of thought which I felt when I sunk into the water: for though I swam very well, yet I could not deliver myself from the waves so as to draw breath, till that wave having driven me, or rather carried me a vast way on towards the shore, and having spent it-

self, went back, and left me upon the land, almost dry, but half dead with the water I took in: I had so much presence of mind, as well as breath left, that seeing myself nearer the main land than I expected, I got upon my feet, and endeavoured to make on towards the land, as fast as I could, before another wave should return, and take me up again. But I soon found it was impossible to avoid it, for I saw the sea come after me as high as a great hill, and as furious as an enemy, which I had no means or strength to contend with; my business was to hold my breath, and raise myself upon the water, if I could, and so by swimming to preserve my breathing, and pilot myself towards the shore, if possible; my greatest concern now being, that the wave, as it would carry me a great way towards the shore when it came on, might not carry me back again with it, when it gave back towards the sea.

The wave that came upon me again, buried me at once twenty or thirty feet deep in it's own body; and I could feel myself carried with a mighty force and swiftness towards the shore, a very great way; but I held my breath, and assisted myself to swim still forward with all my might. I was ready to burst with holding my breath, when, as I found myself rising up, so, to my immediate relief, I found my head and hands shoot out above the surface of the water; and though it was not two seconds of time that I could keep myself so, yet it relieved me greatly, gave me breath and new courage. I was covered again with water a good while, but not so long but I held it out; and finding the water had spent itself, and began to return, I struck forward against the return of the waves, and felt ground again with my feet. I stood still a few moments to recover breath, and till the waters went from me, and then I took to my heels, and ran with what strength I had, farther towards the shore. But neither would this deliver me from the fury of the sea, which came pouring after me again, and twice more I was lifted up by the waves, and carried forwards as before, the shore being very flat.

The last time of these two had well near been fatal to me; for the sea, having hurried me along as before,
D landed

landed me, or rather dashed me, against a piece of a rock, and that with such force, as it left me senseless, and indeed helpless, as to mine own deliverance; for the blow, taking my side and breast, beat the breath, as it were, quite out of my body; and had it returned again immediately, I must have been strangled in the water; but I recovered a little before the return of the waves; and seeing I should be covered again with the water, I resolved to hold fast by a piece of the rock, and so to hold my breath, if possible, till the wave went back. Now as the waves were not so high as at first, being near land, I held my hold, till the wave abated; and then fetched another run, which brought me so near the shore, that the next wave, though it went over me, yet did not so swallow me up, as to carry me away; and the next run I took, I got to the main land, where, to my great comfort, I clambered up the cliffs of the shore, and sat me down upon the grass, free from danger, and quite out of the reach of the water.

I was now landed, and safe on shore, and began to look up and thank God that my life was saved, in a case wherein there was, some minutes before, scarce any room to hope. I believe it is impossible to express to the life, what the extasies and transports of the soul are when it is so saved, as I may say, out of the very grave; and I do not wonder now at that custom, viz. that when a malefactor, who has the halter about his neck, is tied up, and just going to be turned off, and has a reprieve brought to him; I say, I do not wonder, that they bring a surgeon with it, to let him blood that very moment they tell him of it, that the surprize may not drive the animal spirits from the heart, and overwhelm him;

For sudden joys, like griefs, confound at first.

I walked about on the shore, lifting up my hands, and my whole being, as I may say, wrapped up in the contemplation of my deliverance, making a thousand gestures and motions, which I cannot describe, reflecting upon all my comrades that were drowned, and that there should not be one soul saved

but myself; for as for them, I never saw them afterwards, or any sign of them, except three of their hats, one cap, and two shoes, that were not fellows.

I cast my eyes to the stranded vessel, when the breach and froth of the sea being so big, I could hardly see it, it lay so far off; and considered, 'Lord! how was it possible I could get on shore!'

After I had solaced my mind with the comfortable part of my condition, I began to look round me, to see what kind of place I was in, and what was the next to be done; and I soon found my comforts abate, and that, in a word, I had a dreadful deliverance; for I was wet, had no cloaths to shift me, nor any thing either to eat or drink, to comfort me; neither did I see any prospect before me, but that of perishing with hunger, or being devoured by wild beasts: and that which was particularly afflicting to me was, that I had no weapon either to hunt or kill any creature for my sustenance, or to defend myself against any other creatures that might desire to kill me for theirs. In a word, I had nothing about me but a knife, a tobacco-pipe, and a little tobacco in a box; this was all my provision; and this threw me into terrible agonies of mind, that for a while I ran about like a madman. Night coming upon me, I began, with an heavy heart, to consider what would be my lot, if there were any ravenous beasts in that country, seeing at night they always come abroad for their prey.

All the remedy that offered to my thoughts at that time was, to get up into a thick bushy tree, like a fir, but thorny, which grew near me, and where I resolved to sit all night, and consider the next day what death I should die; for, as yet, I saw no prospect of life. I walked about a furlong from the shore, to see if I could find any fresh water to drink, which I did to my great joy; and having drank, and put a little tobacco in my mouth, to prevent hunger, I went to the tree; and, getting up into it, endeavoured to place myself so, as that, if I should sleep, I might not fall; and, having cut me a short stick like a truncheon, for my defence, I took up my lodging; and having been excessively fatigued;

figured, I fell fast asleep, and slept as comfortably as I believe few could have done in my condition; and found myself the most refreshed with it, that I think I ever was on such an occasion.

When I waked it was broad day, the weather clear, and the storm abated, so that the sea did not rage and swell as before; but that which surprized me most was, that the ship was lifted off in the night, from the sand where she lay, by the swelling of the tide, and was driven up almost as far as the rock, which I first mentioned, where I had been so bruised by the dashing me against it: this being within about a mile from the shore where I was, and the ship seeming to stand up still, I wished myself on board, that, at least, I might have some necessary things for my use.

When I came down from my apartment in the tree, I looked about me again; and the first thing I found was the boat, which lay as the wind and the sea had tossed her upon the land, about two miles to my right-hand. I walked as far as I could upon the shore, to have got to her; but found a neck or inlet of water between me and the boat, which was about half a mile broad; so I came back, for the present, being more intent upon getting at the ship, where I hoped to find something for my present subsistence.

A little after noon I found the sea very calm, and the tide ebbed so far out, that I could come within a quarter of a mile of the ship: and here I found a fresh renewing of my grief; for I saw evidently, that if we had kept on board, we had been all safe; that is to say, we had all got safe on shore, and I had not been so miserable as to be left entirely destitute of all comfort and company, as I now was: this forced tears from my eyes again; but as there was little relief in that, I resolved, if possible, to get to the ship; so I pulled off my cloaths, for the weather was hot to extremity, and took to the water; but when I came to the ship, my difficulty was still greater to know how to get on board; as she lay a ground and high out of the water, there was nothing within my reach, to lay hold of: I swam round her twice, and the second time I espied a small piece of rope, which I wondered I did

not see at first, hang down by the fore chains, so low, as with great difficulty I got hold of it, and by the help of that rope, got up into the fore-castle of the ship. Here I found that the ship was bulged, and a great deal of water in the hold, but that she lay so on the side of a bank of hard sand, or rather earth, that her stern lay lifted up upon the bank, and her head low almost to the water; by this means all her quarter was free, and all that was in that part was dry; for you may be sure my work was to search, and to see what was spoiled and what was free: and first I found, that all the ship's provisions were dry, and untouched by the water; and being very well disposed to eat, I went to the bread-room, and filled my pockets with biscuit, and eat it as I went about other things; for I had no time to lose. I also found some rum in the great cabin, of which I took a large dram, and which I had indeed need enough of, to spirit me for what was before me. Now I wanted nothing but a boat, to furnish myself with many things which I foresaw would be very necessary to me.

It was in vain to sit still and wish for what was not to be had; and this extremity roused my application. We had several spare yards, and two or three large spars of wood, and a spare top-mast or two in the ship; I resolved to fall to work with these, and flung as many of them overboard as I could manage for their weight, tying every one with a rope, that they might not drive away; when this was done, I went down the ship's side, and pulling them to me, I tied four of them fast together at both ends as well as I could, in the form of a raft; and, laying two or three short pieces of plank upon them cross-ways, I found I could walk upon it very well, but that it was not able to bear any great weight, the pieces being too light; so I went to work, and with a carpenter's saw I cut a spare top-mast into three lengths, and added them to my raft, with a great deal of labour and pains; but the hope of furnishing myself with necessaries encouraged me to go beyond what I should have been able to have done upon another occasion.

My raft was now strong enough to

be a bear

bear any reasonable weight; my next care was what to load it with, and how to preserve what I laid upon it from the surf of the sea; but I was not long considering this: I first laid all the planks or boards upon it that I could get; and having considered well what I most wanted, I first got three of the seamen's chests, which I had broken open and emptied, and lowered them down upon my raft; the first of these I filled with provisions, viz. bread, rice, three Dutch cheeses, five pieces of dried goat's flesh, which we lived much upon, and a little remainder of European corn, which had been laid by for some fowls which we brought to sea with us, but the fowls were killed: there had been some barley and wheat together; but, to my great disappointment, I found afterwards, that the rats had eaten or spoiled it all. As for liquors, I found several cases of bottles belonging to our skipper, in which were some cordial waters, and in all about five or six gallons of arrack; these I stowed by themselves, there being no need to put them into the chest, nor any room for them. While I was doing this, I found the tide began to flow, though very calm, and I had the mortification to see my coat, shirt, and waistcoat, which I had left on shore upon the sand, swim away; as for my breeches, which were only linen and open-kneed, I swam on board in them and my stockings: however, this put me upon rummaging for cloaths, of which I found enough, but took no more than I wanted for present use, for I had other things which my eye was more upon; as, first, tools to work with on shore, and it was after long searching that I found out the carpenter's chest, which was indeed a very useful prize to me, and much more valuable than a ship-loading of gold would have been at that time. I got it down to my raft, even whole as it was, without losing time to look into it, for I knew in general what it contained.

My next care was for some ammunition and arms. There were two very good fowling-pieces in the great cabin, and two pistols; these I secured first, with some powder-horns, a small bag of shot, and two old rusty swords: I knew there were three barrels of powder in the ship, but knew not where our gunner had stowed them;

but with much search I found them, two of them dry and good, the third had taken water; those two I got to my raft, with the arms. And now I thought myself pretty well freighted, and began to think how I should get to shore with them, having neither sail, oar, or rudder, and the least capful of wind would have overfet all my navigation.

I had three encouragements: 1. A smooth and calm sea. 2. The tide rising and setting in to the shore. 3. What little wind there was blew me towards the land. And thus, having found two or three broken oars belonging to the boat, and besides the tools which were in the chest, I found two saws, an axe, and a hammer; and with this cargo I put to sea. For a mile, or thereabouts, my raft went very well, only that I found it drive a little distant from the place where I had landed before; by which I perceived that there was some indraught of the water, and consequently I hoped to find some creek of the river there, which I might make use of as a port to get to land with my cargo.

As I imagined, so it was; there appeared before me a little opening of the land. I found a strong current of the tide set into it; so I guided my raft as well as I could to keep in the middle of the stream: but here I had like to have suffered a second shipwreck, which, if I had, I think verily would have broken my heart; for, knowing nothing of the coast, my raft run aground at one end of it upon a shoal, and not being aground at the other end, it wanted but a little that all my cargo had slipped off towards that end that was afloat, and so fallen into the water: I did my utmost, by setting my back against the chests, to keep them in their places, but could not thrust off the raft with all my strength; neither durst I stir from the posture I was in, but, holding up the chests with all my might, stood in that manner near half an hour, in which time the rising of the water brought me a little more upon a level; and a little after, the water still rising, my raft floated again, and I thrust her off with the oar I had, into the channel; and then driving up higher, I at length found myself in the mouth of a little river, with land on both sides, and a strong current of tide

tide running up. I looked on both sides for a proper place to get to shore, for I was not willing to be driven too high up the river, hoping in time to see some ship at sea, and therefore resolved to place myself as near the coast as I could.

At length I spied a little cove on the right shore of the creek, to which, with great pain and difficulty I guided my raft; and at last got so near, as that, reaching ground with my oar, I could thrust her directly in; but here I had like to have dipped all my cargo in the sea again; for that shore lying pretty steep, that is to say, sloping, there was no place to land, but where one end of the float, if it ran on shore, would lie so high, and the other sink lower, as before, that it would endanger my cargo again: all that I could do, was to wait till the tide was at the highest, keeping the raft with my oar, like an anchor, to hold the side of it fast to the shore, near a flat piece of ground which I expected the water would flow over; and so it did. As soon as I found water enough (for my raft drew about a foot of water) I thrust her upon that flat piece of ground, and there fastened or moored her, by sticking my two broken oars into the ground; one on one side near one end, and one on the other side near the other end; and thus I lay till the water ebbed away, and left my raft and all my cargo, safe on shore.

My next work was to view the country, and seek a proper place for my habitation, and where to stow my goods, to secure them from whatever might happen. Where I was, I yet knew not; whether on the continent, or on an island; whether inhabited, or not inhabited; whether in danger of wild beasts, or not. There was a hill not above a mile from me, which rose up very steep and high, and which seemed to overtop some other hills which lay as in a ridge from it northward: I took out one of the fowling-pieces, and one of the pistols, and a horn of powder; and thus armed, I travelled for discovery up to the top of that hill, where, after I had with great labour and difficulty got up, I immediately saw my fate, to my great affliction; viz. that I was in an island environed every way with the sea, no land to be seen except some

rocks which lay a great way off, and two small islands less than this, which lay about three leagues to the west.

I found also that the island I was in was barren, and, as I saw good reason to believe, uninhabited, except by wild beasts, of which, however, I saw none; yet I saw abundance of fowls, but knew not their kinds; neither, when I killed them, could I tell what was fit for food, and what not. At my coming back, I shot at a great bird which I saw sitting upon a tree on the side of a large wood: I believe it was the first gun that had been fired there since the creation of the world. I had no sooner fired, but from all the parts of the wood there arose an extraordinary number of fowls of many sorts, making a confused screaming and crying, every one according to his usual note; but not one of them of any kind that I knew: as for that creature I killed, I took it to be a kind of an hawk, it's colour and beak resembling it, but it had no talons or claws more than common; it's flesh was carrion, and fit for nothing.

Contented with this discovery, I came back to my raft, and fell to work to bring my cargo on shore, which took me up the rest of the day; what to do with myself at night, I knew not, nor indeed where to rest; for I was afraid to lie down on the ground, not knowing but some wild beast might devour me, though I afterwards found there was really no need for those fears.

However, as well as I could, I barricadoed myself round with the chests and boards that I had brought on shore, and made a kind of an hut for that night's lodging: as for food, I yet saw not which way to supply myself, except that I had seen two or three creatures like hares run out of the wood where I shot the fowl.

I now began to consider, that I might yet get a great many things out of the ship, which would be useful to me, and particularly some of the rigging and sails, and such other things as might come to hand; and I resolved to make another voyage on board the vessel, if possible; and as I knew that the first storm that blew must necessarily break her all in pieces, I resolved to set all other things apart till I got every thing out of the ship that I could get;

get; then I called a council, that is to say, in my thoughts, whether I should take back the raft; but this appeared impracticable; so I resolved to go as before, when the tide was down; and I did so, only that I stripped before I went from my hut, having nothing on but a chequered shirt, a pair of linen drawers, and a pair of pumps on my feet.

I got on board the ship as before, and prepared a second raft; and, having had experience of the first, I neither made this so unwieldy, nor loaded it so hard; but yet I brought away several things very useful to me: as, first, in the carpenter's store I found two or three bags full of nails and spikes, a great screw-jack, a dozen or two of hatchets, and above all, that most useful thing called a grindstone: all these I secured, together with several things belonging to the gunner, particularly two or three iron-crows, and two barrels of musket-bullets, seven muskets, and another fowling-piece, with some small quantity of powder more; a large bag full of small shot, and a great roll of sheet-lead; but this last was so heavy, I could not hoist it up to get it over the ship's side.

Besides these things, I took all the men's cloaths that I could find, and a spare fore-top sail, hammock, and some bedding; and with this I loaded my second raft, and brought them also all safe on shore, to my very great comfort.

I was under some apprehensions during my absence from the land, that at least my provisions might be devoured on shore; but when I came back, I found no sign of any visitor, only there sat a creature like a wild cat upon one of the chests, which, when I came towards it, ran away to a little distance, and then stood still; she sat very composed and unconcerned, and looked full in my face, as if she had a mind to be acquainted with me. I presented my gun at her, but she did not understand it, she was perfectly unconcerned at it, nor did she offer to stir away; upon which I tossed her a bit of biscuit, though by the way I was not very free of it, for my store was not great. However, I spared her a bit, I say, and she went to it, smelled of it, and eat it, and looked (as pleased) for more; but I thanked her, and could spare no more, so she marched off.

Having got my second cargo on shore (though I was fain to open the barrels of powder, and bring them by parcels, for they were too heavy, being large casks) I went to work to make a little tent with the sail, and some poles which I cut for that purpose; and into this tent I brought every thing that I knew would spoil, either with rain or sun; I piled all the empty chests and casks up in a circle round the tent, to fortify it from any sudden attempt, either from man or beast.

When I had done this, I blocked up the door of the tent with some boards within, and an empty chest set up an end without; and spreading one of the beds upon the ground, laying my two pistols just at my head, and my gun at length by me, I went to bed for the first time, and slept very quietly all night: I was very weary and heavy; for the night before I had slept little, and had laboured very hard all day, as well to fetch those things from the ship, as to get them on shore.

I had the biggest magazine of all kinds now that ever was laid up, I believe, for one man; but I was not satisfied still; for while the ship sat upright in that posture, I thought I ought to get every thing out of her that I could; so every day at low water I went on board, and brought away something or other; but particularly the third time I went, I brought away as much of the rigging as I could, as also all the small ropes and rope-twine I could get, with a piece of spare canvas, which was to mend the sails upon occasion, and the barrel of wet gunpowder: in a word, I brought away all the sails first and last, only that I was fain to cut them in pieces, and bring as much at a time as I could; for they were no more useful to me for sails, but as mere canvas only.

But that which comforted me more still, was, that at last of all, after I had made five or six such voyages as these, and thought I had nothing more to expect from the ship, that was worth meddling with; I say, after all this, I found a great hoghead of bread, three large rundlets of rum or spirits, a box of fine sugar, and a barrel of fine flour: this was surprizing to me, because I had given over expecting any more provisions, except what was spoiled by the water. I soon emptied the hoghead.

hoghead of that bread, and wrapped it up, parcel by parcel, in pieces of the sails, which I cut out; and, in a word, I got all this safe on shore also, though at several times.

The next day, I made another voyage; and now having plundered the ship of what was portable, and fit to hand out, I began with the cables; and cutting the great cable into pieces, such as I could move, I got two cables and an hawser on shore, with all the iron work I could get; and having cut down the sprit-sail yard and the mizen-yard, and every thing I could to make a large raft, I loaded it with all those heavy goods, and came away; but my good luck began to leave me; for this raft was so unwieldy, and so overladen; that after I was entered the little cove, where I had landed the rest of my goods, not being able to guide it so handily as I did the other, it over-set, and threw me and all my cargo into the water. As for myself, it was no great harm, for I was near the shore; but as to my cargo, it was great part of it lost, especially the iron, which I expected would have been of great use to me: however, when the tide was out, I got most of the pieces of cable ashore, and some of the iron, though with infinite labour, for I was fain to dip for it into the water, a work which fatigued me very much; after this, I went every day on board, and brought away what I could get.

I had been thirteen days on shore, and had been eleven times on board the ship; in which time I had brought away all that one pair of hands could well be supposed capable to bring; though I believe, verily, had the calm weather held, I should have brought away the whole ship, piece by piece; but preparing the twelfth time to go on board, I found the wind began to rise; however, at low water, I went on board, and though I thought I had rummaged the cabin so effectually, as that nothing more could be found, yet I discovered a locker with drawers in it, in one of which I found two or three razors, and one pair of large scissors, with ten or a dozen good knives and forks; in another, I found about thirty-six pounds value in money, some European coin, some Brazil, some pieces of eight, some gold, some silver.

I smiled to myself at the sight of

this money. 'O drug!' said I aloud, 'what art thou good for? thou art not worth to me, no, not the taking off the ground! one of those knives is worth all this heap; I have no manner of use for thee; even remain where thou art, and go to the bottom as a creature whose life is not worth saving!' However, upon second thoughts, I took it away, and wrapping all this in a piece of canvas, I began to think of making another raft; but while I was preparing this, I found the sky over-cast, and the wind began to rise, and in a quarter of an hour it blew a fresh gale from the shore; it presently occurred to me, that it was in vain to pretend to make a raft, with the wind off shore, and that it was my business to be gone before the tide of flood began, otherwise I might not be able to reach the shore at all: accordingly, I let myself down into the water, and swam cross the channel, which lay between the ship and the sand, and even that with difficulty enough, partly with the weight of the things I had about me, and partly the roughness of the water; for the wind rose very hastily, and before it was quite high water, it blew a storm.

But I was gotten home to my little tent, where I lay with all my wealth about me very secure. It blew very hard all that night; and in the morning, when I looked out, behold, no more ship was to be seen. I was a little surprized; but recovered myself with this satisfactory reflection; viz. that I had lost no time, nor abated any diligence, to get every thing out of her that could be useful to me; and that indeed there was little left in her that I was able to bring away, if I had had more time. I now gave over any more thought of the ship, or of any thing out of her, except what might drive on shore from her wreck, as indeed divers pieces of her afterwards did; but those things were of small use to me.

My thoughts were now wholly employed about securing myself against either savages, if any should appear, or wild beasts, if any were in the island; and I had many thoughts of the method how to do this, and what kind of dwelling to make; whether I should make me a cave in the earth, or a tent upon the earth: and, in short,

I re-

I resolved upon both; the manner and description of which it may not be improper to give an account of.

I soon found the place I was in was not for my settlement; particularly because it was upon a low moorish ground near the sea, and I believed would not be wholesome, and more particularly, because there was no water near it; so I resolved to find a more healthy and more convenient spot of ground.

I consulted several things in my situation, which I found would be proper for me; first, health, and fresh water, as I just now mentioned; secondly, shelter from the heat of the sun; thirdly, security from ravenous creatures, whether man or beast; fourthly, a view to the sea, that if God sent any ship in sight, I might not lose any advantage of my deliverance, for which I was not willing to banish my expectation yet.

In search of a place proper for this, I found a little plain on the side of a rising hill, whose form towards this little plain, was as steep as an house side, so that nothing could come down upon me from the top: on the side of this rock there was an hollow place, worn a little way in, like the entrance or door of a cave, but there was not really any cave or way into the rock at all.

On the flat of the green, just before this hollow place, I resolved to pitch my tent. This plain was not above an hundred yards broad, and about twice as long, and lay like a green before the door, and at the end of it descended irregularly every way down into the low grounds by the sea-side. It was on the N. N. W. side of the hill, so that it was sheltered from the heat every day, till it came to a W. and by S. sun, or thereabouts, which in those countries is near the setting.

Before I set up my tent, I drew an half circle before the hollow place, which took in about ten yards in it's semi-diameter, from the rock, and twenty yards in it's diameter, from it's beginning and ending.

In this half circle I pitched two rows of strong stakes, driving them into the ground till they stood very firm like piles; the biggest end being out of the ground above five feet and an half, and sharpened on the top: the two

rows did not stand above six inches from one another.

Then I took the pieces of cable which I had cut in the ship, and laid them in rows upon one another, within the circle, between those two rows of stakes, up to the top; placing other stakes in the inside, leaning against them, about two feet and a-half high, like a spur to a post; and this fence was so strong, that neither man or beast could get into it, or over it. This cost me a great deal of time and labour, especially to cut the piles in the wood, bring them to the place, and drive them into the earth.

The entrance into this place I made to be, not by a door, but by a short ladder to go over the top; which ladder, when I was in, I lifted over after me; and so I was compleatly fenced in, and fortified, as I thought, from all the world, and consequently slept secure in the night, which otherwise I could not have done; though, as it appeared afterwards, there was no need of all this caution from the enemies I had apprehended danger from.

Into this fence, or fortress, with infinite labour, I carried all my riches; all my provisions, ammunition, and stores, of which you have the account above; and I made me a large tent also, to preserve me from the rains, that in one part of the year are very violent there. I made it double; viz. one smaller tent within, and one larger tent above it; and covered the uppermost part of it with a large tarpaulin, which I had saved among the sails.

And now I lay no more for a while in the bed which I had brought on shore, but in an hammock, which was indeed a very good one, and belonged to the mate of the ship.

Into this tent I brought all my provisions, and every thing that would spoil by the wet; and having thus inclosed all my goods, I made up the entrance, which till now I had left open, and so passed and repassed, as said, by a short ladder.

When I had done this, I began to work my way into the rock, and bringing all the earth and stones that I dug down, out through my tent, I laid them up within my fence in the nature of a terrace, so that it raised the ground within about a foot and an half; and

thus I made a cave just behind my tent, which served me like a cellar to my house.

It cost me much labour, and many days, before all these things were brought to perfection; and therefore I must go back to some other things which took up some of my thoughts. At the same time it happened, after I had laid my scheme for the setting up the tent, and making the cave, that a storm of rain falling from a thick dark cloud, a sudden flash of lightning happened, and after that, a great clap of thunder, as is naturally the effect of it: I was not so much surprized with the lightning, as I was with the thought which darted into my mind as swift as the lightning itself: 'O my powder!' My very heart sunk within me, when I thought, that at one blast all my powder might be destroyed: on which, not my defence only, but the providing me food, as I thought, entirely depended. I was nothing near so anxious about my own danger; though, had the powder took fire, I had never known who had hurt me.

Such impression did this make upon me, that after the storm was over, I laid aside all my work, my building and fortifying, and applied myself to make bags and boxes to separate my powder, and to keep it a little and a little in a parcel, in hopes, that whatever might come, it might not all take fire at once, and to keep so apart, that it should not be possible to make one part fire another. I finished this work in about a fortnight; and I think my powder, which in all was about 140 pounds weight, was divided into no less than an hundred parcels. As to the barrel that had been wet, I did not apprehend any danger from that, so I placed it in my new cave, which in my fancy I called my kitchen; and the rest I hid up and down in holes among the rocks, so that no wet might come to it, marking very carefully where I laid it.

In the interval of time while this was doing, I went out at least once every day with my gun, as well to divert myself, as to see if I could kill any thing fit for food, and as near as I could to acquaint myself with what the island produced. The first time I went out, I presently discovered, that there were goats in the island, which

was a great satisfaction to me; but then it was attended with this misfortune to me, viz. that they were so shy, so subtle, and so swift of foot, that it was the difficultest thing in the world to come at them; but I was not discouraged at this, not doubting but I might now and then shoot one, as it soon happened; for after I had found their haunts a little, I laid wait in this manner for them. I observed, if they saw me in the vallies, though they were upon the rocks, they would run away as in a terrible fright; but if they were feeding in the vallies and I was upon the rocks, they took no notice of me; from whence I concluded, that by the position of their opticks, their sight was so directed downward, that they did not readily see objects that were above them: so afterwards I took this method; I always climbed the rocks first, to get above them, and then had frequently a fair mark. The first shot I made among these creatures, I killed a she-goat which had a little kid by her, which she gave suck to, which grieved me heartily; but when the old one fell, the kid stood stock-still by her till I came and took her up; and not only so, but when I carried the old one with me upon my shoulders, the kid followed me quite to my inclosure; upon which I laid down the dam, and took the kid in my arms, and carried it over my pale, in hopes to have bred it up tame; but it would not eat; so I was forced to kill it, and eat it myself: these two supplied me with flesh a great while, for I eat sparingly, and saved my provisions (my bread especially) as much as possibly I could.

Having now fixed my habitation, I found it absolutely necessary to provide a place to make a fire in, and fuel to burn; and what I did for that, as also how I enlarged my cave, and what conveniences I made, I shall give a full account of in it's place: but I must first give some little account of myself, and of my thoughts about living, which it may well be supposed were not a few.

I had a dismal prospect of my condition; for as I was not cast away upon that island without being driven, as is said, by a violent storm quite out of the course of our intended voyage, and a great way, viz. some hundreds of

E

leagues

leagues out of the ordinary course of the trade of mankind, I had great reason to consider it as a determination of Heaven, that in this desolate place, and in this desolate manner, I should end my life: the tears would run plentifully down my face when I made these reflections; and sometimes I would expostulate with myself, why Providence should thus compleatly ruin it's creatures, and render them so absolutely miserable, so without help abandoned, and so entirely depressed, that it could hardly be rational to be thankful for such a life.

But something always returned swift upon me to check these thoughts, and to reprove me; and particularly, one day walking with my gun in my hand by the sea-side, I was very pensive upon the subject of my present condition, when Reason, as it were, put in, expostulating with me the other way, thus: 'Well, you are in a desolate condition, 'tis true; but, pray, remember, where are the rest of you! Did not you come eleven of you into the boat? Where are the ten? Why were not they saved, and you lost? Why are you singled out? Is it better to be here or there?' And then I pointed to the sea. All evils are to be considered with the good that is in them, and with what worse attended them.

Then it occurred to me again, how well I was furnished for my subsistence, and what would have been my case, if it had not happened, *which was an hundred thousand to one*, that the ship floated from the place where first she struck, and was driven so near to the shore that I had time to get all these things out of her. What would have been my case, if I had been to have lived in the condition in which I at first came on shore, without necessaries of life, or any means to supply and procure them: 'Particularly,' said I aloud, (though to myself) 'what would I have done without a gun; without ammunition; without any tools to make any thing; or to work with? without cloaths, bedding, a tent, or any manner of coverings?' And that now I had all these to a sufficient quantity, and was in a fair way to provide myself in such a manner, as to live without my gun when my ammunition was spent, so that I had a toler-

able view of subsisting without any want as long as I lived: for I considered from the beginning how I would provide for the accidents that might happen, and for the time that was to come, even not only after my ammunition should be spent, but even after my health or strength should decay.

I confess I had not then entertained any notion of my ammunition being destroyed at one blast, I mean, my powder being blown up by lightning; and this made the thoughts of it surprizing to me, when it lightened and thundered, as I observed just now.

And now, being to enter into a melancholy relation of a scene of silent life, such perhaps as was never heard of in the world before, I shall take it from it's beginning, and continue it in it's order. It was, by my account, the 30th of September, when, in the manner as above said, I first set foot upon this horrid island, when the sun, being to us, in it's autumnal equinox, was almost just over my head; for I reckoned myself, by observation, to be in the latitude of 9 degrees 22 minutes south of the line.

After I had been there about ten or twelve days, it came into my thoughts that I should lose my reckoning of time for want of books, and pen and ink, and should even forget the sabbath-days from the working-days: but to prevent this, I cut it with my knife upon a large post, in capital letters; and making it into a great cross, I set it up on the shore where I first landed, viz. 'I came on shore here the 30th of September 1659.' Upon the sides of this square post I cut every day a notch with my knife, and every seventh notch was as long again as the rest, and every first day of the month as long again as that long one; and thus I kept my calendar, or weekly, monthly, and yearly reckoning of time.

In the next place, we are to observe, that among the many things which I brought from the ship in several voyages, which (as above-mentioned) I made to it, I got several things of less value, but not at all less useful to me, which I omitted setting down before; as in particular, pens, ink, and paper, several parcels in the captain's, mate's, gunner's, and carpenter's keeping, three or four compasses, some mathematical instruments, dials, perspectives,

tives, charts, and books of navigation, all which I huddled together, whether I might want them or no; also I found three very good bibles, which came to me in my cargo from England, and which I had packed up among my things; some Portuguese books also, and among them, two or three Popish prayer-books, and several other books, all which I carefully secured. And I must not forget that we had in the ship a dog and two cats, of whose eminent history I must have occasion to say something in it's place; for I carried both the cats with me; and as for the dog, he jumped out of the ship of himself, and swam on shore to me the day after I went on shore with my first cargo, and was a trusty servant to me many years: I wanted nothing that he could fetch me, nor any company that he could make up to me; I only wanted to have him talk to me, but that he could not do. As I observed before, I found pen, ink, and paper, and I husbanded them to the utmost; and I shall shew, that while my ink lasted, I kept things very exact, but after that was gone, I could not; for I could not make any ink, by any means that I could get.

And this put me in mind that I wanted many things, notwithstanding all that I had amassed together: and of these, this of ink was one; as also a spade, pick-axe, and shovel, to dig or remove the earth; needles, pins, and thread. As for linen, I soon learned to want that without much difficulty.

This want of tools made every work I did go on heavily, and it was near

a whole year before I had entirely finished my little pale, or surrounded habitation: the piles or stakes, which were as heavy as I could well lift, were a long time in cutting and preparing in the woods, and more by far in bringing home; so that I spent sometimes two days in cutting and bringing home one of those posts, and a third day in driving it into the ground; for which purpose I got a heavy piece of wood at first, but at last bethought myself of one of the iron crows, which however, though I found, it yet made driving those posts or piles very laborious, and tedious work.

But what need I have been concerned at the tediousness of any thing I had to do, seeing I had time enough to do it in! Nor had I any other employment, if that had been over, at least that I could foresee, except the ranging the island to seek for food, which I did more or less every day.

I now began seriously to consider my condition, and the circumstances I was reduced to, and I drew up the state of my affairs in writing; not so much to leave them to any that were to come after me, (for I was like to have but few heirs) as to deliver my thoughts from daily poring upon them, and afflicting my mind; and as my reason began now to master my despondency, I began to comfort myself as well as I could, and so set the good against the evil, that I might have something to distinguish my case from worse; and I stated it very impartially, like debtor and creditor, (the comfort I enjoyed, against the miseries I suffered) thus:

EVIL.

I am cast upon an horrible desolate island; void of all hope of recovery.

I am singled out and separated, as it were from all the world, to be miserable.

I am divided from mankind, a solitary, one banished from human society.

I have no cloaths to cover me.

GOOD.

But I am alive, and not drowned, as all my ship's company was.

But I am singled out too from all the ship's crew, to be spared from death; and He that miraculously saved me from death, can deliver me from this condition.

But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place, affording no sustenance.

But I am in an hot climate, where, if I had cloaths, I could hardly wear them.

E z

I am

EVIL.

I am without any defence or means to resist any violence of man or beast.

I have no soul to speak to, or relieve me.

Upon the whole, here was an undoubted testimony, that there was scarce any condition in the world so miserable, but there was something negative, or something positive, to be thankful in it; and let this stand as a direction from the experience of the most miserable of all conditions in this world, that we may always find in it something to comfort ourselves from, and to set, in the description of good and evil, on the credit side of the account.

Having now brought my mind a little to relish my condition, and giving over looking out to sea, to see if I could spy a ship; I say, giving over these things, I began to apply myself to accommodate my way of living, and to make things as easy to me as I could.

I have already described my habitation, which was a tent under the side of a rock, surrounded with a strong pale of posts and cables, but I might now rather call it a wall; for I raised a kind of wall up against it of turfs, about two feet thick on the outside; and after some time, (I think it was a year and an half) I raised rafters from it, leaning to the rock, and thatched or covered it with boughs of trees, and such things as I could get to keep out the rain, which I found at some times of the year very violent.

I have already observed how I brought all my goods into this pale, and into the cave which I had made behind me; but I must observe too, that, at first, this was a confused heap of goods, which, as they lay in no order, so they took up all my place: I had no room to turn myself, so I sat myself to enlarge my cave, and worked farther into the earth; for it was a loose sandy rock, which yielded easily to the labour I bestowed on it:

GOOD.

But I am cast on an island where I see no wild beasts to hurt me, as I saw on the coast of Africa: and what if I had been shipwrecked there?

But God wonderfully sent the ship in near enough to the shore, that I have gotten out so many necessary things as will either supply my wants, or enable me to supply myself, even as long as I live.

and so when I found I was pretty safe as to beasts of prey, I worked sideways to the right-hand into the rock; and, then turning to the right again, worked quite out, and made my door to come out on the outside of my pale or fortification.

This gave me not only egress and regress, as it was a back-way to my tent, and to my store-house, but gave me room to stow my goods.

And now I began to apply myself to make such necessary things as I found I most wanted, particularly a chair and a table; for without these, I was not able to enjoy the few comforts I had in the world; I could not write or eat, or do several things, with so much pleasure, without a table.

So I went to work; and here I must needs observe, that as reason is the substance and original of the mathematicks, so, by stating and squaring every thing by reason, and by making the most rational judgment of things, every man may be, in time, master of every mechanick art. I had never handled a tool in my life, and yet in time, by labour, application, and contrivance, I found at last that I wanted nothing but I could have made it, especially if I had had tools; however, I made abundance of things even without tools, and some with no more tools than an adze and an hatchet, which perhaps were never made that way before, and that with infinite labour. For example; if I wanted a board, I had no other way but to cut down a tree, set it on an edge before me, and hew it flat on either side with my axe, till I had brought it to be as thin as a plank, and then dub it smooth with my adze: it is true, by this method I could make but one board out of a whole tree; but this I had no remedy for but patience, any more than I had

I had for the prodigious deal of time and labour which it took me up to make a plank or board: but my time or labour was little worth, and so it was as well employed one way as another.

However, I made me a table and a chair, as I observed above, in the first place, and this I did out of the short pieces of boards that I brought on my raft from the ship: but when I had wrought out some boards, as above, I made large shelves of the breadth of a foot and an half, one over another, all along one side of my cave, to lay all my tools, nails, and iron-work; and, in a word, to separate every thing at large in their places, that I might easily come at them; also I knocked pieces into the wall of the rock, to hang my guns, and all things that would hang up.

So that, had my cave been to be seen, it looked like a general magazine of all necessary things; and I had every thing so ready at my hand, that it was a great pleasure to me to see all my goods in such order, and especially to find my stock of all necessities so great.

And now it was when I began to keep a journal of every day's employment; for, indeed, at first I was in too much hurry, and not only an hurry as to labour, but in too much discomposure of mind, and my journal would have been full of many dull things. For example; I must have said thus: 'September the 30th, after I got to shore, and had escaped drowning, instead of being thankful to God for my deliverance, having first vomited, with a great quantity of salt water, which was gotten into my stomach, and recovering myself a little, I ran about the shore, wringing my hands, and beating my head and face, exclaiming at my misery, and crying out, I was undone, undone! till, tired and faint, I was forced to lie down on the ground to repose, but durst not sleep for fear of being devoured.'

'Some days after this, and after I had been on board the ship, and had got all I could out of her, yet I could not forbear getting up to the top of a little mountain, and looking out to sea, in hopes of seeing a ship; then fancy at a vast distance I spied a sail, please myself with the hopes of it, and then after

'looking steadily till I was almost blind, lose it quite, and sit down and weep like a child, and thus increase my misery by my folly.'

But having gotten over these things in some measure, and having settled my household stuff and habitation, made me a table and a chair, and all as handsome about me as I could, I began, I say, to keep my journal, of which I shall here give you the copy (though in it will be told all these particulars over again) as long as it lasted; for at last, having no more ink, I was forced to leave it off.

JOURNAL.

SEPTEMBER 30, 1659. I, poor miserable Robinson Crusoe, being shipwrecked during a dreadful storm in the offing, came on shore on this dismal, unfortunate island, which I call, The Island of Despair; all the rest of the ship's company being drowned, and myself almost dead.

All the rest of the day I spent in afflicting myself at the dismal circumstances I was brought to; viz. I had neither food, house, cloaths, weapon, or place to fly to; and, in despair of any relief, saw nothing but death before me; either that I should be devoured by wild beasts, murdered by savages, or starved to death for want of food. At the approach of night I slept in a tree for fear of wild creatures, but slept soundly, tho' it rained all night.

OCTOBER 1. In the morning, I saw, to my great surprize, the ship had floated with the high tide, and was driven on shore again much nearer the island; which, as it was some comfort on one hand, (for seeing her sit upright, and not broken in pieces, I hoped, if the wind abated, I might get on board and get some food and necessaries out of her for my relief;) so, on the other hand, it renewed my grief at the loss of my comrades, who, I imagined, if we had all staid on board, might have saved the ship, or at least that they would not have been all drowned, as they were; and that, had the men been saved, we might, perhaps, have built us a boat out of the ruins of the ship, to have carried us to some other part of the world. I spent great part of this day, in perplexing myself on these

these things; but at length, seeing the ship almost dry, I went upon the sand as near as I could, and then swam on board. This day also continued raining, though with no wind at all.

From the 1st of October to the 24th. All these days entirely spent in many several voyages to get all I could out of the ship; which I brought on shore every tide of flood upon rafts. Much rain also in these days, though with some intervals of fair weather: but, it seems, this was the rainy season.

October 24. I overset my raft, and all the goods I had got upon it; but being in shoal water, and the things being chiefly heavy, I recovered many of them when the tide was out.

October 25. It rained all night and all day, with some gusts of wind; during which time the ship broke in pieces, the wind blowing a little harder than before, and was no more to be seen, except the wreck of her, and that only at low water. I spent this day in covering and securing the goods which I had saved, that the rain might not spoil them.

October 26. I walked about the shore almost all day, to find out a place to fix my habitation; greatly concerned to secure myself from any attack in the night, either from wild beasts or men. Towards night I fixed upon a proper place under a rock, and marked out a semi-circle for my encampment, which I resolved to strengthen with a work, wall, or fortification, made of double piles, lined within with cable, and without with turf.

From the 26th to the 30th, I worked very hard in carrying all my goods to my new habitation, though some part of the time it rained exceeding hard.

The 31st, in the morning, I went out into the island with my gun to see for some food, and discover the country; when I killed a she-goat, and her kid followed me home, which I afterwards killed also, because it would not feed.

November 1. I set up my tent under a rock, and lay there for the first night, making it as large as I could, with stakes driven in to swing my hammock upon.

November 2. I set up all my chests and boards, and the pieces of timber which made my raft, and with them formed a fence round me, a little with-

in the place I had marked out for my fortification.

November 3. I went out with my gun, and killed two fowls like ducks, which were very good food. In the afternoon, went to work to make me a table.

November 4. This morning I began to order my times of work, of going out with my gun, time of sleep, and time of diversion; viz. every morning I walked out with my gun for two or three hours, if it did not rain; then employed myself at work till about eleven o'clock; then eat what I had to live on; and from twelve to two I lay down to sleep, the weather being excessive hot; and then in the evening to work again: the working part of this day and the next were wholly employed in making this table, for I was yet but a very sorry workman, though time and necessity made me a compleat natural mechanick soon after, as I believe it would do any one else.

November 5. This day I went abroad with my gun and my dog, and killed a wild cat, her skin pretty soft, but her flesh good for nothing: every creature I killed I took off the skins and preserved them. Coming back by the sea-shore, I saw many sorts of sea-fowls which I did not understand; but was surprized, and almost frightened, with two or three seals, which, while I was gazing at, not well knowing what they were, got into the sea, and escaped me for that time.

November 6. After my morning walk, I went to work with my table again, and finished it, though not to my liking; nor was it long before I learned to mend it.

November 7. Now it began to be settled fair weather. The 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, and part of the 12th, (for the 11th was Sunday, according to my reckoning) I took wholly up to make me a chair, and with much ado brought it to a tolerable shape, but never to please me; and even in the making I pulled it to pieces several times. Note. I soon neglected keeping Sundays; for, omitting my mark for them on my post, I forgot which was which.

November 13. This day it rained, which refreshed me exceedingly, and cooled the earth; but it was accompanied with terrible thunder and lightning,

ning, which frightened me dreadfully for fear of my powder: as soon as it was over, I resolved to separate my stock of powder into as many little parcels as possible, that it might not be in danger.

November 14, 15, 16. These three days I spent in making little square chests, or boxes, which might hold about a pound, or two pounds at most, of powder; and so putting the powder in, I stowed it in places as secure and remote from one another as possible. On one of these three days I killed a large bird that was good to eat, but I knew not what to call it.

November 17. This day I began to dig behind my tent into the rock, to make room for my farther convenience. *Note.* Three things I wanted exceedingly for this work, viz. a pick-axe, a shovel, and a wheelbarrow or basket: so I desisted from my work, and began to consider how to supply that want, and make me some tools. As for the pick-axe, I made use of the iron crows, which were proper enough, though heavy; but the next thing was a shovel or spade; this was so absolutely necessary, that indeed I could do nothing effectually without it; but what kind of one to make, I knew not.

November 18. The next day, in searching the woods, I found a tree of that wood, or like it, which in the Brazils they call the iron-tree, for it's exceeding hardness; of this, with great labour, and almost spoiling my axe, I cut a piece, and brought it home with difficulty enough, for it was exceeding heavy.

The excessive hardness of the wood, and having no other way, made me a long while upon this machine; for I worked it effectually, by little and little, into the form of a shovel or spade, the handles exactly shaped like ours in England, only that the broad part, having no iron shod upon it at bottom, it would not last me so long; however, it served well enough for the uses which I had occasion to put it to; but never was a shovel, I believe, made after that fashion, or so long a making.

I was still deficient, for I wanted a basket or a wheelbarrow: a basket I could not make by any means, having no such things as twigs that would bend to make wicker-ware, at least

none yet found out; and, as to the wheelbarrow, I fancied I could make all but the wheel; but that I had no notion of, neither did I know how to go about it; besides, I had no possible way to make iron gudgeons for the spindle or axis of the wheel to run in: so I gave it over; and so, for carrying away the earth which I dug out of the cave, I made me a thing like an hod, which the labourers carry mortar in when they serve the bricklayers.

This was not so difficult to me as the making the shovel; and yet this, and the shovel, and the attempt which I made in vain to make a wheelbarrow, took me up no less than four days; I mean always, excepting my morning's walk with my gun, which I seldom failed; and very seldom failed also of bringing home something fit to eat.

November 23. My other work having stood still, because of my making these tools, when they were finished, I went on; and working every day as my strength and time allowed, I spent eighteen days entirely in widening and deepening my cave, that it might hold my goods commodiously.

Note. During all this time, I worked to make this room or cave spacious enough to accommodate me as a warehouse or magazine, a kitchen, a dining-room, and a cellar; as for a lodging, I kept to the tent, except that sometimes in the wet season of the year, it rained so hard, that I could not keep myself dry; which caused me afterwards to cover all my place within my pale with long poles in the form of rafters, leaning against the rock, and load them with flags, and large leaves of trees, like a thatch.

December 10. I began now to think my cave or vault finished, when on a sudden (it seems I had made it too large) a great quantity of earth fell down from the top and one side; so much, that in short it frightened me, and not without reason too; for if I had been under it, I had never wanted a grave-digger: upon this disaster I had a great deal of work to do over again; for I had the loose earth to carry out; and, which was of more importance, I had the cieling to prop up, so that I might be sure no more would come down.

December

December 11. This day I went to work with it accordingly, and got two shoars or posts, pitched upright to the top, with two pieces of board across over each post: this I finished the next day; and setting more posts up with boards, in about a week more I had the roof secured, and the posts, standing in rows, served me for partitions to part off my house.

December 17. From this day to the 20th, I placed shelves, and knocked up nails in the posts, to hang every thing up that could be hung up; and now I began to be in some order within doors.

December 20. Now I carried every thing into the cave, and began to furnish my house, and set up some pieces of board like a dresser, to order my victuals upon; but board began to be very scarce with me: also I made me another table.

December 24. Much rain all night and all day; no stirring out.

December 25. Rain all day.

December 26. No rain, and the earth much cooler than before, and pleasanter.

December 27. Killed a young goat, and lamed another, so that I caught it, and led it home in a string; when I had it home, I bound and splintered up it's leg, which was broke.—*N.B.* I took such care of it, that it lived, and the leg grew well, and as strong as ever; but by nursing it so long, it grew tame, and fed upon the little green at my door, and would not go away. This was the first time that I entertained a thought of breeding up some tame creatures, that I might have food when my powder and shot was all spent.

December 28, 29, 30. Great heats, and no breeze; so that there was no stirring abroad, except in the evening for food. This time I spent in putting all my things in order within doors.

January 1, 1660. Very hot still; but I went abroad, early and late, with my gun, and lay still in the middle of the day: this evening, going farther into the vallies which lay towards the centre of the island, I found there was plenty of goats, though exceeding shy, and hard to come at; however, I resolved to try if I could not bring my dog to hunt them down.

January 2. Accordingly, the next day I went out with my dog, and set him upon the goats; but I was mistaken, for they all faced about upon the dog, and he knew his danger too well, for he would not come near them.

January 3. I began my fence or wall; which, being still jealous of my being attacked by somebody, I resolved to make very thick and strong.

N.B. This wall being described before, I purposely omit what was said in the journal: it is sufficient to observe, that I was no less time than from the 3d of January to the 14th of April, working, finishing, and perfecting this wall, though it was no more than about twenty-four yards in length, being an half circle from one place in the rock to another place about eight yards from it; the door of the cave being in the centre behind it.

All this time I worked very hard, the rains hindering me many days, nay, sometimes weeks together: but I thought I should never be perfectly secure till this wall was finished; and it is scarce credible what inexpressible labour every thing was done with, especially the bringing piles out of the wood, and driving them into the ground; for I made them much bigger than I needed to have done.

When this wall was finished, and the outside double fenced with a turf-wall raised up close to it, I persuaded myself, that if any people were to come ashore there, they would not perceive any thing like an habitation: and it is very well I did so, as may be observed hereafter upon a very remarkable occasion.

During this time, I made rounds in the woods for game every day, when the rain permitted me, and made frequent discoveries in these walks of something or other to my advantage; particularly, I found a kind of wild pigeons, which build not as wood-pigeons in a tree, but rather as house-pigeons in the holes of the rocks; and taking some young ones, I endeavoured to breed them up tame, and did so; but when they grew older, they flew all away, which perhaps was at first for want of feeding them, for I had nothing to give them; however, I frequently

quently found their nests, and got their young ones, which were very good meat.

And now, in the managing my household affairs, I found myself wanting in many things, which I thought at first it was impossible for me to make, as indeed as to some of them it was: for instance, I could never make a cask to be hooped; I had a small rundlet or two, as I observed before, but I could never arrive to the capacity of making one by them, though I spent many weeks about it; I could neither put in the heads, nor join the staves so true to one another, as to make them hold water; so I gave that also over.

In the next place, I was at a great loss for candles; so that as soon as it was dark, which was generally by seven o'clock, I was obliged to go to bed. I remembered the lump of beeswax with which I made candles in my African adventure; but I had none of that now. The only remedy I had, was, that when I had killed a goat, I saved the tallow, and with a little dish made of clay, which I baked in the sun, to which I added a wick of some oakum, I made me a lamp; and this gave me a light, though not a clear steady light like a candle. In the middle of all my labours it happened, that, rummaging my things, I found a little bag, which, as I hinted before, had been filled with corn for the feeding of poultry, not for this voyage, but before, as I suppose, when the ship came from Lisbon; what little remainder of corn had been in the bag, was all devoured by the rats, and I saw nothing in the bag but husks and duff; and being willing to have the bag for some other use (I think it was to put powder in, when I divided it for fear of the lightning, or some such use) I shook the husks of corn out of it on one side of my fortification under the rock.

It was a little before the great rains, just now mentioned, that I threw this stuff away, taking no notice of any thing, and not so much as remembering that I had thrown any thing there; when about a month after, or thereabouts, I saw some few stalks of something green shooting upon the ground, which I fancied might be some plant I had not seen; but I was surprized, and perfectly astonished, when, after a little longer time, I saw about ten or

twelve ears come out, which were perfect green barley of the same kind as our European, nay, as our English barley.

It is impossible to express the astonishment and confusion of my thoughts on this occasion; I had hitherto acted upon no religious foundation at all; indeed I had very few notions of religion in my head, nor had entertained any sense of any thing that had befallen me, otherwise than as a chance, or, as we lightly say, what pleases God; without so much as inquiring into the end of Providence in these things, or his ordering and governing all events in the world: but after I saw barley grow there, in a climate which I knew was not proper for corn, and especially that I knew not how it came there, it startled me strangely, and I began to suggest that God had miraculously caused this grain to grow without any help of seed sown, and that it was so directed, purely for my sustenance in that wild miserable place.

This touched my heart a little, and brought tears out of my eyes, and I began to bless myself, that such a prodigy of nature should happen upon my account; and this was the more strange to me, because I saw near it still, all along by the side of the rock, some other straggling stalks, which proved to be stalks of rice, and which I knew, because I had seen it grow in Africa when I was ashore there.

I not only thought these the pure productions of Providence for my support; but, not doubting but that there was no more in the place, I went all over that part of the island where I had been before, peering in every corner, and under every rock, to see for more of it, but I could not find any: at last it occurred to my thoughts, that I had shaken the bag of chickens meat out in that place, and the wonder began to cease; and I must confess, my religious thankfulness to God's providence began to abate too, upon discovering that all this was nothing but what was common; though I ought to have been as thankful for so strange and unforeseen providence, as if it had been miraculous; for it was really the work of Providence, as to me, that should order or appoint, that ten or twelve grains of corn should remain unspoiled, (when the rats had destroyed all the rest;) as

if it had been dropped from heaven : as also that I should throw it out into that particular place, where it being in the shade of an high rock sprang up immediately; whereas, if I had thrown it any where else at that time, it had been burnt up and destroyed.

I carefully saved the ears of this corn, you may be sure, in their season, which was about the end of June: and, laying up every corn, I resolved to sow them all again, hoping in time to have some quantity sufficient to supply me with bread; but it was not till the fourth year that I would allow myself the least grain of this corn to eat, and even then but sparingly, as I shall say afterwards in it's order; for I lost all that I sowed the first season, by not observing the proper time; for I sowed it just before the dry season, so that it never came up at all, at least not as it would have done: of which in it's place.

Besides this barley, there were, as above, twenty or thirty stalks of rice, which I preserved with the same care, and whose use was of the same kind, or to the same purpose, viz. to make me bread, or rather food; for I found ways to cook it up without baking, though I did that also after some time. But, to return to my journal.

I worked excessive hard these three or four months, to get my wall done; and the 14th of April I closed it up, contriving to go into it, not by a door, but over a wall by a ladder, that there might be no sign on the outside of my habitation.

April 16. I finished the ladder; so I went up with the ladder to the top, and then pulled it up after me, and let it down on the inside: this was a complete inclosure to me; for within I had room enough, and nothing could come at me from without unless it could first mount my wall.

The very next day after this wall was finished, I had almost had all my labour overthrown at once, and myself killed. The case was thus: as I was busy in the inside of it, behind my tent, just in the entrance into my cave, I was terribly frightened with a most dreadful surprizing thing indeed! for all on a sudden I found the earth came tumbling down from the roof of my cave, and from the edge of the hill

over my head, and two of the posts I had set up in the cave, cracked in a frightful manner: I was heartily scared, but thought nothing of what really was the cause; only thinking that the top of my cave was falling in, as some of it had done before; and for fear I should be buried in it, I ran forwards to my ladder; and, not thinking myself safe there neither, I got over my wall for fear of the pieces of the hill which I expected might roll down upon me. I was no sooner stepped down upon the firm ground, but I plainly saw it was a terrible earthquake; for the ground I stood on shook three times, at about eight minutes distance, with three such shocks as would have overturned the strongest building that could be supposed to have stood upon the earth; and a great piece of the top of the rock, which stood about half a mile from me next the sea, fell down with such a terrible noise, as I never heard in all my life: I perceived also the very sea was put into a violent motion by it; and I believe the shocks were stronger under the water than on the island.

I was so amazed with the thing itself, having never felt the like, or discoursed with any one that had, that I was like one dead or stupified; and the motion of the earth made my stomach sick, like one that was tossed at sea; but the noise of the falling of the rock awaked me, as it were; and rousing me from the stupified condition I was in, filled me with horror, and I thought of nothing then but the hill falling upon my tent and all my household goods, and burying all at once; and this sunk my very soul within me a second time.

After the third shock was over, and I felt no more for some time, I began to take courage; and yet I had not heart enough to get over my wall again, for fear of being buried alive; but still sat upon the ground, greatly cast down, and disconsolate, not knowing what to do. All this while I had not the least serious religious thought, nothing but the common, 'Lord, have mercy upon me!' and when it was over, that went away too.

While I sat thus, I found the air overcast, and it grew cloudy, as if it would rain; and, in less than half an hour, it blew a most dreadful hurricane

tane of wind: the sea all on a sudden covered with foam and froth, the shore was covered with the breach of the water, the trees were torn up by the roots, and a terrible storm it was: and this held about three hours, and then began to abate; and then in two hours more it was calm, and began to rain very hard.

All this while I sat upon the ground very much terrified and dejected, when on a sudden it came into my thoughts, that these winds and rain being the consequence of the earthquake, the earthquake itself was spent and over, and I might venture into my cave again. With this thought my spirits began to revive, and the rain helping also to persuade me, I went in, and sat me down in my tent; but the rain was so violent, that my tent was ready to be beaten down with it, and I was forced to go into my cave, though very much afraid and uneasy for fear it should fall on my head.

This violent rain forced me to a new work, viz. to cut an hole through my new fortification, like a sink, to let the water go out, which would else have drowned my cave. After I had been in my cave some time, and found still more shocks of the earthquake follow, I began to be more composed; and now, to support my spirits, which indeed wanted it very much, I went to my little store, and took a small sup of rum, which however I did then and always very sparingly, knowing I could have no more when that was gone.

It continued raining all that night, and great part of the next day, so that I could not stir abroad; but my mind being more composed, I began to think of what I had best to do; concluding, that if the island was subject to these earthquakes, there would be no living for me in a cave, but I must consider of building me some little hut in an open place, which I might surround with a wall, as I had done here, and so make myself secure from wild beasts or men; but concluded, if I staid where I was, I should certainly, one time or other, be buried alive.

With these thoughts, I resolved to move my tent from the place where it stood, which was just under the hanging precipice of the hill, and which, if it should be shaken again, would certainly fall upon my tent. And I spent

the two next days, being the 19th and 20th of April, in contriving where and how to remove my habitation.

The fear of being swallowed up alive, made me that I never slept in quiet; and yet the apprehensions of lying abroad without any fence, were almost equal to it: but still, when I looked about, and saw how every thing was put in order, how pleasantly concealed I was, and how safe from danger, it made me loth to remove.

In the mean time it occurred to me, that it would require a vast deal of time for me to do this, and that I must be contented to run the venture where I was, till I had formed a camp for myself, and had secured it so as to remove to it. So with this resolution I composed myself for a time, and resolved that I would go to work with all speed to build me a wall with piles and cables, &c. in a circle, as before, and set my tent up in it when it was finished; but that I would venture to stay where I was, till it was finished and fit to remove to. This was the 21st.

April 22. The next morning I began to consider of means to put this resolve in execution; but I was at a great loss about my tools: I had three large axes, and abundance of hatchets, (for we carried the hatchets for traffick with the Indians;) but with much chopping and cutting knotty hard wood, they were all full of notches, and dull; and though I had a grindstone, I could not turn it and grind my tools too. This cost me as much thought as a statesman would have bestowed upon a grand point of politicks, or a judge upon the life and death of a man. At length I contrived a wheel with a string to turn it with my foot, that I might have both my hands at liberty. *Note,* I had not seen any such thing in England, or at least not to take notice how it was done; though since, I have observed it was very common there; besides that, my grindstone was very large and heavy. This machine cost me a full week's work to bring it to perfection.

April 28, 29. These two whole days I took up in grinding my tools, my machine for turning my grindstone performing very well.

April 30. Having perceived my bread had been low a great while, I

now took a survey of it, and reduced myself to one biscuit-cake a day, which made my heart very heavy.

May 1. In the morning, looking towards the sea-side, the tide being low, I saw something lie on the shore bigger than ordinary, and it looked like a cask. When I came to it, I found a small barrel, and two or three pieces of the wreck of the ship, which were driven on shore by the late hurricane; and looking towards the wreck itself, I thought it seemed to lie higher out of the water than it used to do. I examined the barrel which was driven on shore, and found it was a barrel of gunpowder, but it had taken water, and the powder was caked as hard as a stone: however, I rolled it farther on the shore for the present, and went on upon the sands, as near as I could to the wreck of the ship, to look for more.

When I came down to the ship, I found it strangely removed. The fore-castle, which lay before buried in sand, was heaved up at least six feet; and the stern, which was broken to pieces, and parted from the rest by the force of the sea, soon after I had left rummaging of her, was tossed as it were up, and cast on one side; and the sand was thrown so high on that side next the stern, that whereas there was a great place of water before, so that I could not come within a quarter of a mile of the wreck without swimming, I could now walk quite up to her when the tide was out: I was surprized with this at first, but soon concluded it must be done by the earthquake; and as by this violence the ship was more broken open than formerly, so many things came daily on shore which the sea had loosened, and which the winds and water rolled by degrees to the land.

This wholly diverted my thoughts from the design of removing my habitation; and I busied myself mightily, that day especially, in searching whether I could make any way into the ship; but I found nothing was to be expected of that kind, for that all the inside of the ship was choaked up with sand; however, as I had learned not to despair of any thing, I resolved to pull every thing to pieces that I could of the ship, concluding, that every thing I could get from her would be of some use or other to me.

May 3. I began with my saw, and

cut a piece of a beam through, which I thought held some of the upper part, or quarter-deck, together; and when I had cut it through, I cleared away the sand as well as I could, from the side which lay highest: but the tide coming in, I was obliged to give over for that time.

May 4. I went a fishing, but caught not one fish that I durst eat of, till I was weary of my sport; when, just going to leave off, I caught a young dolphin. I had made me a long line of some rope-yarn, but I had no hooks; yet I frequently caught fish enough, as much as I cared to eat; all which I dried in the sun, and eat them dry.

May 5. Worked on the wreck, cut another beam asunder, and brought three great fir planks off from the decks, which I tied together, and made swim on shore when the tide of flood came on.

May 6. Worked on the wreck, got several iron bolts out of her, and other pieces of iron work; worked very hard, and came home very much tired, and had thoughts of giving it over.

May 7. Went to the wreck again, with an intent not to work; but found the weight of the wreck had broken itself down, the beams being cut; that several pieces of the ship seemed to lie loose, and the inside of the hold lay so open, that I could see into it, but almost full of water and sand.

May 8. Went to the wreck, and carried an iron crow to wrench up the deck, which lay now quite clear of the water or sand: I wrenched open two planks, and brought them on shore also with the tide. I left the iron crow in the wreck for the next day.

May 9. Went to the wreck, and with the crow made way into the body of the wreck, and felt several casks, and loosened them with the crow, but could not break them up; I felt also a roll of English lead, and could stir it, but it was too heavy to move.

May 10, 11, 12, 13, 14. Went every day to the wreck, and got a great deal of pieces of timber and boards, or planks, and two or three hundred weight of iron.

May 15. I carried two hatchets, to try if I could not cut a piece off the roll of lead, by placing the edge of one hatchet, and driving it with the other;

other; but as it lay about a foot and an half in the water, I could not make any blow to drive the hatchet.

May 16. It had blowed hard in the night, and the wreck appeared more broken by the force of the water; but I staid so long in the woods to get pigeons for food, that the tide prevented me going to the wreck that day.

May 17. I saw some pieces of the wreck blown on shore at a great distance, two miles off me, but resolved to see what they were, and found it was a piece of the head, but too heavy for me to bring away.

May 24. Every day, to this day, I worked on the wreck, and with hard labour I loosened some things so much with the crow, that the first flowing tide several casks floated out, and two of the seamen's chests: but the wind blowing from the shore, nothing came to land that day but pieces of timber, and an hog'shead which had some Brazil pork in it, but the salt-water and the sand had spoiled it.

I continued this work every day to the 15th of June, except the time necessary to get food, which I always appointed, during this part of my employment, to be when the tide was up, that I might be ready when it was ebb'd out; and by this time I had gotten timber and plank, and iron-work, enough to have built a good boat, if I had known how; and also I got, at several times, and in several pieces, near a hundred weight of the sheet-lead.

June 16. Going down to the sea-side, I found a large tortoise or turtle: this was the first I had seen; which, it seems, was only my misfortune, not any defect of the place, or scarcity; for had I happened to be on the other side of the island, I might have had hundreds of them every day, as I found afterwards; but perhaps had paid dear enough for them.

June 17. I spent in cooking the turtle: I found in her threescore eggs; and her flesh was to me, at that time, the most savoury and pleasant that ever I tasted in my life, having had no flesh but of goats and fowls, since I landed in this horrible place.

June 18. Rained all the day, and I staid within. I thought at this time the rain felt cold, and I was some-

thing chilly, which I knew was not usual in that latitude.

June 19. Very ill, and shivering, as if the weather had been cold.

June 20. No rest all night; violent pains in my head, and feverish.

June 21. Very ill, frighted almost to death with the apprehensions of my sad condition, to be sick, and no help: prayed to God, for the first time since the storm off Hull, but scarce knew what I said, or why; my thoughts being all confused.

June 22. A little better, but under dreadful apprehensions of sickness.

June 23. Very bad again; cold and shivering, and then a violent head-ach.

June 24. Much better.

June 25. An ague very violent; the fit held me several hours, cold fit and hot, with faint sweats after it.

June 26. Better; and having no victuals to eat, took my gun, but found myself very weak; however, I killed a she-goat, and with much difficulty got it home, and broiled some of it, and eat; I would fain have stewed it, and made some broth, but had no pot.

June 27. The ague again so violent, that I lay a-bed all day, and neither eat nor drank. I was ready to perish for thirst, but so weak, I had no strength to stand up, or to get myself any water to drink; prayed to God again, but was light-headed; and when I was not, I was so ignorant, that I knew not what to say; only I lay and cried, 'Lord, look upon me! Lord, pity me! Lord, have mercy upon me!' I suppose I did nothing else for two or three hours, till the fit wearing off, I fell asleep, and did not awake till far in the night. When I awaked, I found myself much refreshed, but weak, and exceedingly thirsty; however, as I had no water in my whole habitation, I was forced to lie till morning, and went to sleep again: in this second sleep, I had this terrible dream.

I thought that I was sitting on the ground, on the outside of my wall, where I sat when the storm blew after the earthquake, and that I saw a man descend from a black cloud, in a bright flame of fire, and light upon the ground: he was all over as bright as a flame, so that I could but just bear to look towards him; his countenance was most

most inexpressibly dreadful, impossible for words to describe; when he stepped upon the ground with his feet, I thought the earth trembled, just as it had done before in the earthquake; and all the air looked, to my apprehension, as if it had been filled with flashes of fire.

He was no sooner landed upon the earth, but he moved forwards towards me, with a long spear or weapon in his hand to kill me; and when he came to a rising ground, at some distance, he spoke to me, or I heard a voice so terrible, that it is impossible to express the terror of it; all that I can say I understood, was this: 'Seeing all these things have not brought thee to repentance, now thou shalt die.' At which words, I thought he lifted up the spear that was in his hand to kill me.

No one that shall ever read this account, will expect that I should be able to describe the horrors of my soul at this terrible vision; I mean, that even while it was a dream, I even dreamed of those horrors; nor is it any more possible to describe the impression that remained upon my mind, when I awaked and found it was but a dream.

I had, alas! no divine knowledge; what I had received by the good instruction of my father, was then worn out by an uninterrupted series, for eight years, of sea-faring wickedness, and a constant conversation with none but such as were, like myself, wicked and prophane to the last degree. I do not remember, that I had in all that time one thought that so much as tended either to looking upwards towards God, or inwards towards a reflection upon my own ways: but a certain stupidity of soul, without desire of good, or conscience of evil, had entirely overwhelmed me, and I was all that the most hardened, unthinking, wicked creature, among our common sailors, can be supposed to be; not having the least sense of the fear of God in dangers, or of thankfulness to God in deliverances.

In the relating what is already past of my story, this will be the more easily believed, when I shall add, that through all the variety of miseries that had to this day befallen me, I never had so much as one thought of it's being the hand of God, or that it was a

just punishment for my sins, my rebellious behaviour against my father, or my present sins, which were great; or so much as a punishment for the general course of my wicked life. When I was on the desperate expedition on the desert shores of Africa, I never had so much as one thought of what would become of me, or one wish to God to direct me whither I should go, or to keep me from the danger which apparently surrounded me, as well from voracious creatures, as cruel savages: but I was merely thoughtless of God, or a Providence; I acted like a mere brute, from the principles of nature, and by the dictates of common sense only; and, indeed, hardly that.

When I was delivered and taken up at sea by the Portugal captain, well used, and dealt justly and honourably with, as well as charitably, I had not the least thankfulness in my thoughts: when again I was shipwrecked, ruined, and in danger of drowning on this island, I was as far from remorse, or looking on it as a judgment; I only said to myself often, that I was an unfortunate dog, and born to be always miserable.

It is true, when I got on shore first here, and found all my ship's crew drowned, and myself spared, I was surprized with a kind of extasy, and some transports of soul, which, had the grace of God assisted, might have come up to true thankfulness; but it ended where it began, in a mere common flight of joy; or, as I may say, being glad I was alive, without the least reflection upon the distinguishing goodness of the hand which had preserved me, and had singled me out to be preserved, when all the rest were destroyed; or an inquiry why Providence had been thus merciful to me: even just the same common sort of joy which seamen generally have, after they have got safe ashore from a shipwreck, which they drown all in the next bowl of punch, and forget almost as soon as it is over; and all the rest of my life was like it.

Even when I was afterwards, on due consideration, made sensible of my condition, how I was cast on this dreadful place, out of the reach of human kind, out of all hope of relief or prospect of redemption, as soon as I saw

I saw a
I shoul
ger, al
off, an
plied n
my pr
far en
condit
ven, c
me: t
seldon
Th
hinted
little
affect
I tho
in it
thou
sion
also,
E
thin
ture
the
refl
the
it h
mor
mu
my
tha
per
an
de
wh
th
na
of
so
to
in
c
t
r
y

I saw a probability of living, and that I should not starve and perish for hunger, all the sense of my affliction wore off, and I began to be very easy, applied myself to the works proper for my preservation and supply, and was far enough from being afflicted at my condition, as a judgment from Heaven, or as the hand of God against me: these were thoughts which very seldom entered into my head.

The growing up of the corn, as is hinted in my journal, had at first some little influence upon me, and began to affect me with seriousness, as long as I thought it had something miraculous in it; but as soon as ever that part of thought was removed, all the impression which was raised from it wore off also, as I have noted already.

Even the earthquake, though nothing could be more terrible in its nature, or more immediately directing to the Invisible Power which alone directs such things; yet no sooner was the first fright over, but the impression it had made went off also. I had no more sense of God, or his judgment, much less of the present affliction of my circumstances being from his hand, than if I had been in the most prosperous condition of life.

But now, when I began to be sick, and a leisurely view of the miseries of death came to place itself before me; when my spirits began to sink under the burden of a strong distemper, and nature was exhausted with the violence of the fever; conscience, that had slept so long, began to awake, and I began to reproach myself with my past life, in which I had so evidently, by uncommon wickedness, provoked the justice of God to lay me under uncommon strokes, and to deal with me in so vindictive a manner.

These reflections oppressed me from the second or third day of my distemper, and in a violence, as well of the fever as of the dreadful reproaches of my conscience, extorted some words from me, like praying to God, though I cannot say they were either a prayer attended with desires, or with hopes; it was rather the voice of mere fright and distress; my thoughts were confused, the convictions great upon my mind, and the horror of dying in such a miserable condition, raised vapours into my head with the mere apprehen-

sions; and, in these hurries of my soul, I knew not what my tongue might express: but it was rather exclamation, such as, 'Lord! what a miserable creature am I! If I should be sick, I shall certainly die for want of help, and what will become of me!' Then the tears burst out of my eyes, and I could say no more a good while.

In this interval, the good advice of my father came to my mind, and presently his prediction, which I mentioned in the beginning of this story; viz. that if I did take this foolish step, God would not bless me, and I would have leisure hereafter to reflect upon having neglected his counsel, when there might be none to assist me in my recovery. 'Now,' said I, aloud, 'my dear father's words are come to pass: God's justice has overtaken me, and I have none to help or hear me: I rejected the voice of Providence, which had mercifully put me in a posture or station of life wherein I might have been happy and easy; but I would neither see it myself, nor learn to know the blessing of it from my parents; I left them to mourn over my folly, and now I am left to mourn under the consequences of it. I refused their help and assistance, who would have lifted me into the world, and would have made every thing easy to me; and now I have difficulties to struggle with, too great for even nature itself to support, and no assistance, no help, no comfort, no advice!' Then I cried out, 'Lord, be my help, for I am in great distress!'

This was the first prayer, if I might call it so, that I had made for many years.—But I return to my journal.

June 28. Having been somewhat refreshed with the sleep I had had, and the fit being entirely off, I got up; and though the fright and terror of my dream was very great, yet I considered that the fit of the ague would return again the next day, and now was my time to get something to refresh and support myself when I should be ill; and the first thing I did, I filled a large square case-bottle with water, and set it upon my table, in reach of my bed; and to take off the chill or aguish disposition of the water, I put about a quarter

ter of a pint of rum into it, and mixed them together; then I got me a piece of the goat's flesh, and broiled it on the coals, but could eat very little; I walked about, but was very weak, and withal, very sad and heavy-hearted in the sense of my miserable condition, dreading the return of my distemper the next day; at night I made my supper of three of the turtle's eggs, which I roasted in the ashes, and eat, as we call it, in the shell; and this was the first bit of meat I had ever asked God's blessing to, even (as I could remember) in my whole life.

After I had eaten, I tried to walk; but found myself so weak, that I could hardly carry the gun, (for I never went out without that;) so I went out but a little way, and sat down upon the ground, looking out upon the sea, which was just before me, and very calm and smooth. As I sat here, some thoughts, such as these, occurred to me.

'What is the earth and sea, of which I have seen so much? Whence is it produced? And what am I, and all the other creatures, wild and tame, human and brutal; whence are we?

'Sure we are all made by some secret Power, who formed the earth, and sea, the air and sky; and who is that?

Then it followed most naturally, 'It is God that has made it all!—Well, but,' then it came on strongly; 'if God has made all these things, he guides and governs them all, and all things that concern them; for the Being that could make all things, must certainly have power to guide and direct them.

'If so, nothing can happen in the great circuit of his works, either without his knowledge or appointment.

'And if nothing happens without his knowledge, he knows that I am here, and am in a dreadful condition; and if nothing happens without his appointment, he has appointed all this to befall me.'

Nothing occurred to my thoughts to contradict any of these conclusions; and therefore it rested upon me with the greater force, that it must need be, that God had appointed all this to befall me; that I was brought to this

miserable circumstance by his direction; he having the sole power, not of me only, but of every thing that happened in the world. Immediately it followed—

'Why has God done this to me? what have I done to be thus used?'

My conscience presently checked me in that enquiry, as if I had blasphemed; and methought it spoke to me like a voice: 'Wretch! dost thou ask what thou hast done? Look back upon a dreadful mispent life, and ask thyself what thou hast not done? Ask, why is it that thou wert not long ago destroyed? Why wert thou not drowned in Yarmouth Roads? killed in the fight, when the ship was taken by the Sallee man of war? devoured by the wild beasts on the coasts of Africa? or, drowned here, when all the crew perished but thyself? Dost thou ask, what have I done?'

I was struck dumb with these reflections, as one astonished, and had not a word to say; no, not to answer to myself: but rose up, pensive and sad, walked back to my retreat, and went up over my wall, as if I had been going to bed; but my thoughts were sadly disturbed, and I had no inclination to sleep; so I sat down in my chair, and lighted my lamp, for it began to be dark. Now, as the apprehensions of the return of my distemper terrified me very much, it occurred to my thought, that the Brazillians take no physick but their tobacco, for almost all distempers; and I had a piece of a roll of tobacco in one of the chests, which was quite cured, and some also that was green and not quite cured.

I went, directed by Heaven, no doubt! for in this chest I found a cure both for soul and body; I opened the chest, and found what I looked for, viz. the tobacco; and as the few books I had saved lay there too, I took out one of the bibles which I mentioned before, and which, to this time, I had not found leisure, or so much as inclination, to look into; I say, I took it out, and brought both that and the tobacco with me to the table.

What use to make of the tobacco I knew not, as to my distemper, or whether it was good for it or no; but I tried several experiments with it, as if I was resolved it should hit one way or other: I first took a piece of

of a leaf, and chewed it in my mouth, which indeed at first almost stupified my brain, the tobacco being green and strong, and that I had not been much used to it; then I took some, and steeped it an hour or two in rum, and resolved to take a dose of it when I lay down; and lastly, I burnt some upon a pan of coals, and held my nose close over the smoke of it, as long as I could bear it, as well for the heat as the virtue of it, and I held almost to suffocation.

In the interval of this operation I took up the bible, and began to read; but my head was too much disturbed with the tobacco to bear reading, at least at that time; only having opened the book casually, the first words that occurred to me were these: 'Call on me in the day of trouble, and I will deliver, and thou shalt glorify me.'

The words were very apt to my case, and made some impression upon my thoughts at the time of reading them, though not so much as they did afterwards; for, as for being delivered, the word had no sound, as I may say, to me; the thing was so remote, so impossible, in my apprehension of things, that I began to say, as the children of Israel did when they were promised flesh to eat, 'Can God spread a table in the wilderness?' So I began to say, 'Can God himself deliver me from this place?' And as it was not for many years that any hope appeared, this prevailed very often upon my thoughts: but, however, the words made a very great impression upon me, and I mused upon them very often. It grew now late, and the tobacco had, as I said, dozed my head so much, that I inclined to sleep; so I left my lamp burning in the cave, lest I should want any thing in the night, and went to bed; but before I lay down, I did what I never had done in all my life, I kneeled down and prayed to God to fulfil the promise to me, that if I called upon him in the day of trouble, he would deliver me: after my broken and imperfect prayer was over, I drank the rum in which I had steeped the tobacco, which was so strong and rank of the tobacco, that indeed I could scarce get it down. Immediately upon this I went to bed, and I found presently it flew up into my head violently; but I fell into a sound sleep, and

waked no more, till, by the sun, it must necessarily be near three o'clock in the afternoon the next day; nay, to this hour I am partly of the opinion, that I slept all the next day and night, and till almost three the day after; for otherwise I knew not how I should lose a day out of my reckoning in the days of the week, as it appeared some years after I had done; for if I had lost it by crossing and re-crossing the line, I should have lost more than a day; but in my account it was lost, and I never knew which way.

Be that, however, one way or other, when I awaked, I found myself exceedingly refreshed, and my spirits lively and chearful; when I got up, I was stronger than I was the day before, and my stomach better; for I was hungry; and, in short, I had no fit the next day, but continued much altered for the better. This was the 29th.

The 30th was my well day of course, and I went abroad with my gun, but did not care to travel too far: I killed a sea-fowl or two, something like a brand goose, and brought them home, but was not very forward to eat them; so I eat some more of the turtle's eggs, which were very good. This evening I renewed the medicine which I had supposed did me good the day before, viz. the tobacco steeped in rum; only I did not take so much as before, nor did I chew any of the leaf, or hold my head over the smoke; however, I was not so well the next day, which was the 1st of July, as I hoped I should have been, for I had a little spice of the cold fit, but it was not much.

July 2. I renewed the medicine all the three ways, and dozed myself with it as at first, and doubled the quantity which I drank.

July 3. I missed the fit for good and all, though I did not recover my full strength for some weeks after. While I was thus gathering strength, my thoughts ran exceedingly upon this scripture, 'I will deliver thee;' and the impossibility of my deliverance lay much upon my mind, in bar of my ever expecting it: but as I was discouraging myself with such thoughts, it occurred to my mind, that I pored so much upon my deliverance from the main affliction, that I disregarded the

deliverance I had received; and I was, as it were, made to ask myself such questions as these; viz. 'Have I not been delivered, and wonderfully too, from sickness? From the most distressed condition that could be, and that was so frightful to me? And what notice had I taken of it? Had I done my part? God had delivered me: but I had not glorified him.' That is to say, I had not owned and been thankful for that as a deliverance, and how could I expect greater deliverance!

This touched my heart very much, and immediately I kneeled down, and gave God thanks aloud for my recovery from my sickness.

July 4. In the morning I took the bible; and, beginning at the New Testament, I began seriously to read it, and imposed upon myself to read awhile every morning and every night, not tying myself to the number of chapters, but as long as my thoughts should engage me: it was not long after I set seriously to this work, but I found my heart more deeply and sincerely affected with the wickedness of my past life; the impression of my dream revived, and the words, 'All these things have not brought thee to repentance,' ran seriously in my thoughts: I was earnestly begging of God to give me repentance, when it happened providentially the very day, that, reading the Scripture, I came to these words, 'He is exalted a Prince and a Saviour, to give repentance, and to give remission:' I threw down the book, and with my heart as well as my hand lifted up to heaven, in a kind of extasy of joy, I cried out aloud, 'Jesus, thou son of David! Jesus, thou exalted Prince and Saviour, give me repentance!'

This was the first time that I could say, in the true sense of the words, that I prayed in all my life; for now I prayed with a sense of my condition, and with a true Scripture view of hope, founded on the encouragement of the word of God; and from this time, I may say, I began to have hope that God would hear me.

Now I began to construe the words mentioned above, 'Call on me, and I will deliver thee,' in a different sense from what I had ever done before; for then I had no notion of any

thing being called deliverance, but my being delivered from the captivity I was in; for though I was indeed at large in the place, yet the island was certainly a prison to me, and that in the worst sense in the world; but now I learned to take it in another sense. Now I looked back upon my past life with such horror, and my sins appeared so dreadful, that my soul sought nothing of God but deliverance from the load of guilt that bore down all my comfort. As for my solitary life, it was nothing; I did not so much as pray to be delivered from it, or think of it; it was all of no consideration in comparison of this; and I added this part here, to hint to whoever shall read it, that whenever they come to a true sense of things, they will find deliverance from sin a much greater blessing than deliverance from affliction.

But leaving this part, I return to my journal.

My condition began now to be, though not less miserable as to my way of living, yet much easier to my mind; and my thoughts being directed, by a constant reading the scripture and praying to God, to things of a higher nature, I had a great deal of comfort within, which till now I knew nothing of: also, as my health and strength returned, I bestirred myself to furnish myself with every thing I wanted, and make my way of living as regular as I could.

From the 4th of July to the 14th, I was chiefly employed in walking about with my gun in my hand a little and a little at a time, as a man that was gathering up his strength after a fit of sickness; for it is hardly to be imagined, how low I was, and to what weakness I was reduced. The application which I made use of, was perfectly new, and perhaps what had never cured an ague before; neither can I recommend it to any one to practise, by this experiment: and though it did carry off the fit, yet it rather contributed to weaken me; for I had frequent convulsions in my nerves and limbs for some time.

I learned from it, also, this in particular, that being abroad in the rainy season was the most pernicious thing to my health that could be, especially in those rains that came attended with storms and hurricanes of wind; for as

the

the rain which came in a dry season was always most accompanied with such storms, so I found this rain was much more dangerous than the rain which fell in September and October.

I had been now in this unhappy island above ten months; all possibility of deliverance from this condition seemed to be entirely taken from me; and I firmly believed, that no human shape had ever set foot upon that place. Having now secured my habitation, as I thought, fully to my mind, I had a great desire to make a more perfect discovery of the island, and to see what other productions I might find which yet I knew nothing of.

It was the 15th of July that I began to take a more particular survey of the island itself; I went up the creek first, where, as hinted, I brought my rafts on shore. I found, after I came about two miles up, that the tide did not flow any higher, and that it was no more than a little brook of running water, and very fresh and good; but this being the dry season, there was hardly any water in some parts of it, at least not enough to run into any stream, so as it could be perceived.

On the bank of this brook I found many pleasant savannahs or meadows, plain, smooth, and covered with grass; and on the rising parts of them next to the higher grounds, where the water, as it might be supposed, never overflowed, I found a great deal of tobacco, green, and growing to a great and very strong stalk: there were divers other plants which I had no notion of or understanding about; and might, perhaps have virtues of their own, which I could not find out.

I searched for the cassava root, which the Indians in all that climate make their bread of, but I could find none. I saw large plants of aloes, but did not then understand them: I saw several sugar-canes, but wild, and, for want of cultivation, imperfect. I contented myself with these discoveries for this time, and came back musing with myself what course I might take to know the virtue and goodness of any of the fruits or plants which I should discover, but could bring it to no conclusion; for, in short, I had made so little observation while I was in the *Brazils*, that I knew little of the plants of the field; at least, very little that

might serve me to any purpose, now in my distress.

The next day, the 16th, I went up the same way again; and, after going something farther than I had done the day before, I found the brook and the savannahs began to cease, and in the country became more woody than before. In this part I found different fruits, and particularly I found melons upon the ground in great abundance, and grapes upon the trees; the vines had spread indeed over the trees, and the clusters of grapes were just now in their prime, very ripe and rich. This was a surprizing discovery, and I was exceeding glad of them, but I was warned by my experience to eat sparingly of them, remembering, that when I was ashore in Barbary, the eating of grapes killed several of our Englishmen who were slaves there, by throwing them into fluxes and fevers: but I found an excellent use for these grapes, and that was, to cure or dry them in the sun, and keep them as dried grapes or raisins are kept, which I thought would be, as indeed they were, as wholesome, and as agreeable to eat, when no grapes might be had.

I spent all that evening there, and went not back to my habitation, which, by the way, was the first night, as I might say, I had lain from home. In the night I took my first contrivance, and got up into a tree, where I slept well, and the next morning proceeded upon my discovery, travelling near four miles, as I might judge by the length of the valley, keeping still due north, with a ridge of hills on the south and north side of me.

At the end of this march I came to an opening where the country seemed to descend to the west; and a little spring of fresh water, which issued out of the side of the hill by me, ran the other way, that is, due east: and the country appeared so fresh, so green, so flourishing, every thing being in a constant verdure or flourish of spring, that it looked like a planted garden.

I descended a little on the side of that delicious valley, surveying it with a secret kind of pleasure (though mixed with other afflicting thoughts) to think that this was all my own; that I was king and lord of all this country indefeasibly, and had a right of possession; and, if I could convey it, I

might have it in inheritance, as completely as any lord of a manor in England. I saw here abundance of cocoa-trees, orange and lemon, and citron-trees; but all wild, and few bearing any fruit; at least, not then: however, the green limes that I gathered, were not only pleasant to eat, but very wholesome; and I mixed their juice afterwards with water, which made it very wholesome, and very cool and refreshing.

I found now I had business enough, to gather and carry home; and resolved to lay up a store, as well of grapes as limes and lemons, to furnish myself for the wet season, which I knew was approaching.

In order to do this, I gathered a great heap of grapes in one place, and a lesser heap in another place, and a great parcel of limes and lemons in another place; and taking a few of each with me, I travelled homeward, and resolved to come again, and bring a bag or sack, or what I could make, to carry the rest home.

Accordingly, having spent three days in this journey, I came home, (so I must now call my tent, and my cave;) but before I got thither, the grapes were spoiled; the richness of the fruit, and the weight of the juice, having broken them, and bruised them, they were good for little or nothing; as to the limes, they were good, but I could bring but few.

The next day, being the 19th, I went back, having made me two small bags to bring home my harvest: but I was surprized, when coming to my heap of grapes, which were so rich and fine when I gathered them, I found them all spread abroad, trod to pieces, and dragged about, some here, some there, and abundance eaten and devoured. By this I concluded there were some wild creatures thereabouts, which had done this; but what they were, I knew not.

However, as I found there was no laying them up on heaps, and no carrying them away in a sack, but that one way they would be destroyed, and the other way they would be crushed with their own weight, I took another course; for I gathered a large quantity of the grapes, and hung them upon the out branches of the trees, that they

might cure and dry in the sun; and as for the limes and lemons, I carried as many back as I could well stand under.

When I came home from this journey, I contemplated with great pleasure the fruitfulness of that valley, and the pleasantness of the situation, the security from storms on that side of the water, and the wood; and concluded that I had pitched upon a place to fix my abode, which was by far the worst part of the country. Upon the whole, I began to consider of removing my habitation, and to look out for a place equally safe, as where I now was situate, if possible, in that pleasant fruitful part of the island.

This thought ran long in my head, and I was exceeding fond of it for some time, the pleasantness of the place tempting me; but when I came to a nearer view of it, and to consider that I was now by the sea-side, where it was at least possible that something might happen to my advantage, and that the same ill fate that brought me hither, might bring some other unhappy wretches to the same place; and though it was scarce probable, that any such thing should ever happen, yet to inclose myself among the hills and woods, in the centre of the island, was to anticipate my bondage, and to render such an affair not only improbable, but impossible; and that therefore I ought not by any means to remove.

However, I was so enamoured with this place, that I spent much of my time there for the whole remaining part of the month of July: and though, upon second thoughts, I resolved as above, not to remove; yet I built me a little kind of a bower, and surrounded it at a distance with a very strong fence, being a double hedge, as high as I could reach, well staked and filled between with brushwood: and here I lay very secure, sometimes two or three nights together, always going over it with a ladder as before; so that I fancied now I had my country-house, and my sea-coast house. And this work took me up the beginning of August.

I had but newly finished my fence, and began to enjoy my labour, when the rains came on, and made me stick close to my first habitation; for though I had made me a tent like the other, with a piece of a sail, and spread it very well,

well, yet I had not the shelter of an hill to keep me from storms, nor a cave behind me to retreat into when the rains were extraordinary.

About the beginning of August, as I said, I had finished my bower, and began to enjoy myself. The third of August, I found the grapes I had hung up were perfectly dried, and indeed were excellent good raisins of the sun; so I began to take them down from the trees, and it was very happy that I did so; for the rains which followed would have spoiled them, and I had lost the best part of my winter food; for I had above two hundred large bunches of them. No sooner had I taken them all down, and carried most of them home to my cave, but it began to rain; and from thence, which was the 14th of August, it rained more or less every day, till the middle of October; and sometimes so violently, that I could not stir out of my cave for several days.

In this season I was much surprized with the increase of my family: I had been concerned for the loss of one of my cats, which ran away from me, or, as I thought, had been dead; and I heard no more tale or tidings of her, till to my astonishment she came home about the end of August, with three kittens. This was the more strange to me, because though I had killed a wild cat, as I called it, with my gun, yet I thought it was quite a different kind from our European cats; yet the young cats were the same kind of house-breed like the old one; and both my cats being females, I thought it very strange. But from these three cats, I afterwards came to be so pestered with cats, that I was forced to kill them like vermin, or wild beasts, and to drive them from my house as much as possible.

From the 14th of August to the 26th, incessant rain, so that I could not stir, and was now very careful not to be much wet. In this confinement I began to be straitened for food; but venturing out twice, I one day killed a goat; and the last day, which was the 26th, found a very large tortoise, which was a treat to me. And my food was regulated thus: I eat a bunch of raisins for my breakfast; a piece of the goat's flesh, or of the turtle, for my dinner, broiled, (for, to my great mis-

fortune, I had no vessel to boil or stew any thing;) and two or three of the turtle's eggs for supper.

During this confinement in my cover by the rain, I worked daily two or three hours at enlarging my cave; and, by degrees, worked it on towards one side, till I came to the outside of the hill, and made a door or way out, which came beyond my fence or wall; and so I came in and out this way. But I was not perfectly easy at lying so open; for as I had managed myself before, I was in a perfect inclosure, whereas now I thought I lay exposed; and yet I could not perceive, that there was any living thing to fear, the biggest creature that I had yet seen upon the island being a goat.

September 30. I was now come to the unhappy anniversary of my landing: I cast up the notches on my post, and found I had been on shore three hundred and sixty-five days. I kept this day as a solemn fast, setting it apart to a religious exercise, prostrating myself to the ground with the most serious humiliation, confessing myself to God, acknowledging his righteous judgment upon me, and praying to him to have mercy on me, through Jesus Christ; and having not tasted the least refreshment for twelve hours, even till the going down of the sun, I then eat a biscuit-cake and a bunch of grapes, and went to bed, finishing the day as I began it.

I had all this time observed no sabbath-day; for as at first I had no sense of religion upon my mind, I had after some time omitted to distinguish the weeks, by making a longer notch than ordinary for the sabbath-day, and so did not really know what any of the days were; but now having cast up the days as above, I found I had been there a year; so I divided it into weeks, and set apart every seventh day for a sabbath; though I found at the end of my account I had lost a day or two of my reckoning.

A little after this, my ink began to fail me, and so I contented myself to use it more sparingly, and to write down only the most remarkable events of my life, without continuing a daily memorandum of other things.

The rainy season, and the dry season, began now to appear regular to me, and I learned to divide them so as

to

to provide for them accordingly. But I bought all my experience before I had it; and this I am going to relate, was one of the most discouraging experiments that I made at all. I have mentioned, that I had saved the few ears of barley and rice which I had so surprizingly found spring up, as I thought, of themselves, and believe there were about thirty stalks of rice, and about twenty of barley; and now I thought it a proper time to sow it after the rains, the sun being in it's southern position going from me.

Accordingly I dug up a piece of ground, as well as I could, with my wooden spade, and dividing it into two parts, I sowed my grain; but as I was sowing, it casually occurred to my thoughts, that I would not sow it all at first, because I did not know when was the proper time for it; so I sowed about two-thirds of the seeds, leaving about a handful of each.

It was a great comfort to me afterwards, that I did so, for not one grain of that I sowed this time came to any thing; for the dry months following, the earth having had no rain after the seed was sown, it had no moisture to assist it's growth, and never came up at all, till the wet season had come again, and then it grew as if it had been newly sown.

Finding my first seed did not grow, which I easily imagined was by the drought, I sought for a moister piece of ground to make another trial in; and I dug up a piece of ground near my new bower, and sowed the rest of my seed in February, a little before the vernal equinox; and this, having the rainy months of March and April to water it, sprung up very pleasantly, and yielded a very good crop; but having part of the seed left only, and not daring to sow all that I had yet, I had but a small quantity at last, my whole crop not amounting to above half a peck of each kind.

But by this experience I was made master of my business, and knew exactly when the proper season was to sow; and that I might expect two seed-times, and two harvests, every year.

While this corn was growing, I made a little discovery, which was of use to me afterwards: as soon as the rains were over, and the weather began to settle, which was about the

month of November, I made a visit up the country to my bower, where, though I had not been some months, yet I found all things just as I left them. The circle or double hedge that I had made, was not only firm and entire, but the stakes which I had cut off of some trees that grew thereabouts, were all shot out, and grown with long branches, as much as a willow-tree usually shoots the first year after lopping it's head. I could not tell what tree to call it, that these stakes were cut from. I was surprized, and yet very well pleased, to see the young trees grow; and I pruned them, and led them up to grow as much alike as I could; and it is scarce credible, how beautiful a figure they grew into in three years; so that though the hedge made a circle of about twenty-five yards in diameter, yet the trees, for such I might now call them, soon covered it; and it was a compleat shade, sufficient to lodge under all the dry season.

This made me resolve to cut some more stakes, and make me an hedge like this in a semi-circle round my wall, (I mean, that of my first dwelling) which I did; and, placing the trees or stakes in a double row, at above eight yards distance from my first fence, they grew presently, and were at first a fine cover to my habitation, and afterwards served for a defence also, as I shall observe in it's order.

I found now, that the seasons of the year might generally be divided, not into summer and winter, as in Europe; but into the rainy seasons, and the dry seasons, which were generally thus:

Half Feb.	} Rainy, the sun being then on or near the Equinox.
March	
Half April	
Half April	} Dry, the sun being then to the north of the line.
May	
June	
July	
Half Aug.	} Rain, the sun being then come back.
Half Aug.	
Sept.	
Half Oct.	} Dry, the sun being then to the south of the line.
Half Oct.	
Nov.	
Dec.	
Jan.	
Half Feb.	

The

The rainy season sometimes held longer or shorter, as the winds happened to blow; but this was the general observation I made. After I had found, by experience, the ill consequence of being abroad in the rain, I took care to furnish myself with provisions beforehand, that I might not be obliged to go out; and I sat within-doors as much as possible during the wet months.

In this time I found much employment, (and very suitable also to the time) for I found great occasion of many things which I had no way to furnish myself with, but by hard labour and constant application; particularly, I tried many ways to make myself a basket; but all the twigs I could get for the purpose proved so brittle, that they would do nothing. It proved of excellent advantage to me now, that when I was a boy, I used to take great delight in standing at a basket-maker's in the town where my father lived, to see them make their wicker-ware; and being, as boys usually are, very officious to help, and a great observer of the manner how they worked those things, and sometimes lent an hand, I had by this means so full knowledge of the methods of it, that I wanted nothing but the materials; when it came into my mind, that the twigs of that tree from whence I cut my stakes that grew, might possibly be as tough as the fallows and willows, and others, in England; and I resolved to try.

Accordingly, the next day I went to my country-house, as I called it, and cutting some of the smaller twigs, I found them to my purpose as much as I could desire; whereupon, I came the next time prepared with an hatchet to cut down a quantity, which I soon found, for there was a great plenty of them: these I set up to dry within my circle or hedges; and when they were fit for use, I carried them to my cave; and here, during the next season, I employed myself in making (as well as I could) a great many baskets, both to carry earth, and to carry or lay up any thing, as I had occasion; and though I did not finish them very handsomely, yet I made them sufficiently serviceable for my purpose: and thus afterwards I took care never to be without them; and

as my wicker-ware decayed, I made more; especially, I made strong deep baskets to place my corn in, instead of sacks, when I should come to have any quantity of it.

Having mastered this difficulty, and employed a world of time about it, I bestirred myself to see, if possible, how to supply two wants. I had no vessels to hold any thing that was liquid, except two rundlets, which were almost full of rum, and some glass bottles, some of the common size, and others which were case-bottles, square, for the holding of waters, spirits, &c. I had not so much as a pot to boil any thing in, except a great kettle which I saved out of the ship, and which was too big for such uses as I desired it for, viz. to make broth, and stew a bit of meat by itself. The second thing I would fain have had, was a tobacco-pipe, but it was impossible for me to make one; however, I found a contrivance for that too at last.

I employed myself in planting my second rows of stakes or piles, and in this wicker work, all the summer, or dry season: when another business took me up more time than it could be imagined I could spare.

I mentioned before, that I had a great mind to see the whole island, and that I had travelled up the brook, and so on to where I built my bower, and where I had an opening quite to the sea, on the other side of the island. I now resolved to travel quite across to the sea-shore on that side: so taking my gun and hatchet, and my dog, and a larger quantity of powder and shot than usual, with two biscuit-cakes and a great bunch of raisins in my pouch, for my store, I began my journey. When I had passed the vale where my bower stood, as above, I came within view of the sea to the west; and it being a very clear day, I fairly descried land, whether an island or continent I could not tell; but it lay very high, extending from the W. to the W. S. W. at a very great distance; by my guess it could not be less than fifteen or twenty leagues off.

I could not tell what part of the world this might be, otherwise than that I knew it must be part of America; and, as I concluded by all my observations, must be near the Spanish dominions,

minions, and perhaps was all inhabited by savages, where, if I should have landed, I had been in a worse condition than I was now; and, therefore, I acquiesced in the dispositions of Providence, which I began now to own, and to believe, ordered every thing for the best; I say, I quieted my mind with this, and left afflicting myself with fruitless wishes of being there.

Besides, after some pause upon this affair, I considered, that if this land was the Spanish coast, I should certainly, one time or other, see some vessels pass or repass one way or other; but if not, then it was the savage coast between the Spanish country and Brazil, which were, indeed, the worst of savages; for they are cannibals, or men-eaters, and fail not to murder and devour all the human bodies that fall into their hands.

With these considerations I walked very leisurely forward. I found that side of the island where I now was much pleasanter than mine, the open or savannah fields sweet, adorned with flowers and grass, and full of very fine woods. I saw abundance of parrots, and fain would I have caught one, if possible, to have kept it to be tame, and taught it to speak to me. I did, after some pains-taking, catch a young parrot; for I knocked it down with a stick, and having recovered it, I brought it home, but it was some years before I could make him speak. However, at last I taught him to call me by my name very familiarly: but the accident that followed, though it be a trifle, will be very diverting in its place.

I was exceedingly diverted with this journey: I found in the low grounds, hares, as I thought them to be, and foxes, but they differed greatly from all the other kinds I had met with; nor could I satisfy myself to eat them, though I killed several: but I had no need to be venturous; for I had no want of food, and of that which was very good too; especially these three sorts, viz. goats, pigeons, and turtle or tortoise; which, added to my grapes, Leadenhall market could not have furnished a table better than I, in proportion to the company: and though my case was deplorable enough, yet I had great cause of thankfulness, that I was

not driven to any extremities for food; but rather plenty, even to dainties.

I never travelled in this journey above two miles outright in a day, or thereabouts; but I took so many turns and returns, to see what discoveries I could make, that I came weary enough to the place where I resolved to sit down for all night; and then either reposed myself in a tree, or surrounded myself with a row of stakes set upright in the ground, either from one tree to another, or so as no wild creature could come at me without waking me.

As soon as I came to the sea-shore, I was surprized to see that I had taken up my lot on the worst side of the island; for here indeed the shore was covered with innumerable turtles, whereas, on the other side, I had found but three in a year and a half. Here was also an infinite number of fowls of many kinds, some of which I had not seen before, and many of them very good meat; but such as I knew not the names of, except those called pen-guins.

I could have shot as many as I pleased, but was very sparing of my powder and shot; and therefore had more mind to kill a she-goat, if I could, which I could better feed on: and though there were many goats here more than on the other side of the island, yet it was with much more difficulty that I could come near them; the country being flat and even, and they saw me much sooner than when I was on the hills.

I confess this side of the country was much pleasanter than mine, but yet I had not the least inclination to remove; for as I was fixed in my habitation, it became natural to me, and I seemed all the while I was here, to be, as it were, upon a journey, and from home: however, I travelled along the shore of the sea towards the east, I suppose, about twelve miles; and then setting up a great pole upon the shore for a mark, I concluded I would go home again; and the next journey I took, should be on the other side of the island, east from my dwelling, and so round till I came to my post again: of which in its place.

I took another way to come back than that I went, thinking I could easily keep

keep all the island so much in my view, that I could not miss finding my first dwelling by viewing the country; but I found myself mistaken; for being come about two or three miles, I found myself descended into a very large valley; but so surrounded with hills, and those hills covered with woods, that I could not see which was my way by any direction but that of the sun, nor even then, unless I knew very well the position of the sun at that time of the day.

It happened, to my farther misfortune, that the weather proved hazy for three or four days, while I was in this valley; and not being able to see the sun, I wandered about very uncomfortably, and at last was obliged to find out the sea-side, look for my post, and come back the same way I went; and then, by easy journeys, I turned homeward, the weather being exceeding hot; and my gun, ammunition, hatchet, and other things, very heavy.

In this journey my dog surprized a young kid, and seized upon it; and I running in to take hold of it, caught it, and saved it alive from the dog: I had a great mind to bring it home, if I could; for I had often been musing whether it might not be possible to get a kid or two, and so raise a breed of tame goats, which might supply me when my powder and shot should be spent.

I made a collar to this little creature, and with a string which I made of some rope-yarn, which I always carried about me, I led him along, though with some difficulty, till I came to my bower, and there I inclosed him, and left him; for I was very impatient to be at home, from whence I had been absent above a month.

I cannot express what a satisfaction it was to me, to come into my old hut, and lie down in my hammock-bed: this little wandering journey, without a settled place of abode, had been so unpleasant to me, that my own house, as I called it to myself, was a perfect settlement to me, compared to that; and it rendered every thing about me so comfortable, that I resolved I would never go a great way from it again, while it should be my lot to stay on the island.

I reposed myself here a week, to rest

and regale myself after my long journey; during which, most of the time was taken up in the weighty affair of making a cage for my Poll, who began now to be a mere domestick, and to be mighty well acquainted with me. Then I began to think of the poor kid, which I had pent in within my little circle, and resolved to go and fetch it home, and give it some food; accordingly I went, and found it where I left it; for indeed it could not get out, but was almost starved for want of food; I went and cut boughs of trees, and branches of such shrubs as I could find, and threw it over, and having fed it, I tied it, as I did before, to lead it away; but it was so tame with being hungry, that I had no need to have tied it; for it followed me like a dog; and, as I continually fed it, the creature became so loving, so gentle, and so fond, that it became from that time one of my domesticks also, and would never leave me afterwards.

The rainy season of the autumnal equinox was now come, and I kept the 30th of September in the same solemn manner as before, being the anniversary of my landing on the island; having now been there two years, and no more prospect of being delivered than the first day I came there. I spent the whole day in humble and thankful acknowledgements of the many wonderful mercies which my solitary condition was attended with, and without which it might have been infinitely more miserable. I gave humble and hearty thanks, that God had been pleased to discover to me, even that it was possible I might be more happy in this solitary condition, than I should have been in a liberty of society, and in all the pleasures of the world: that he could fully make up to me the deficiencies of my solitary state, and the want of human society, by his presence, and the communication of his grace to my soul, supporting, comforting, and encouraging me to depend upon his providence here, and hope for his eternal presence hereafter.

It was now that I began sensibly to feel how much more happy the life I now led was, with all its miserable circumstances, than the wicked, cursed, abominable life, I led all the past part of my days; and now having changed both my sorrows and my joys,

H

my

my very desires altered, my affections changed their gust, and my delights were perfectly new, from what they were at first coming, or indeed for the two years past.

Before, as I walked about, either on my hunting, or for viewing the country, the anguish of my soul at my condition would break out upon me on a sudden, and my very heart would die within me, to think of the woods, the mountains, the desarts I was in; and how I was a prisoner locked up, with the eternal bars and bolts of the ocean, in an uninhabited wilderness, without redemption. In the midst of the greatest composures of my mind, this would break out upon me like a storm, and made me wring my hands, and weep like a child. Sometimes it would take me in the middle of my work, and I would immediately sit down and sigh, and look upon the ground for an hour or two together, and this was still worse to me; for if I could burst out into tears, or vent myself by words, it would go off, and the grief, having exhausted itself, would abate.

But now I began to exercise myself with new thoughts; I daily read the word of God, and applied all the comforts of it to my present state. One morning, being very sad, I opened the bible upon these words, 'I will never, never leave thee, nor forsake thee!' Immediately it occurred, that these words were to me: why else should they be directed in such a manner, just at the moment when I was mourning over my condition, as one forsaken of God and man? 'Well, then,' said I, 'if God does not forsake me, of what ill consequence can it be, or what matters it, though the world should all forsake me; seeing, on the other hand, if I had all the world, and should lose the favour and blessing of God, there would be no comparison in the loss?'

From this moment I began to conclude in my mind, that it is was possible for me to be more happy in this forsaken, solitary condition, than it was probable I should have ever been in any other particular state in the world; and with this thought I was going to give thanks to God for bringing me to this place.

I know not what it was, but something

shocked my mind at that thought, and I durst not speak the words. 'How canst thou be such an hypocrite,' said I, even audibly, 'to pretend to be thankful for a condition, which, however thou mayest endeavour to be contented with, thou wouldst rather pray heartily to be delivered from?' So I stopped there; but though I could not say, I thanked God for being there, yet I sincerely gave thanks to God for opening my eyes, by whatever afflicting providences, to see the former condition of my life, and to mourn for my wickedness, and repent. I never opened the bible, or shut it, but my very soul within me blessed God for directing my friend in England, without any order of mine, to pack it up among my goods; and for assisting me afterwards to save it out of the wreck of the ship.

Thus, and in this disposition of mind, I began my third year; and though I have not given the reader the trouble of so particular an account of my works this year as the first; yet in general it may be observed, that I was very seldom idle; having regularly divided my time, according to the several daily employments that were before me: such as, First, My duty to God, and reading the scriptures, which I constantly set apart some time for, thrice every day. Secondly, The going abroad with my gun for food, which generally took me up three hours in every morning when it did not rain. Thirdly, The ordering, curing, preserving, and cooking, what I had killed or caught for my supply; these took up great part of the day: also it is to be considered, that in the middle of the day, when the sun was in the zenith, the violence of the heat was too great to stir out; so that about four hours in the evening was all the time I could be supposed to work in; with this exception, that sometimes I changed my hours of hunting and working, and went to work in the morning, and abroad with my gun in the afternoon.

To this short time allowed for labour, I desire may be added the exceeding laboriousness of my work; the many hours, which, for want of tools, want of help, and want of skill, every thing that I did took up out of my time: for example, I was full two and forty days making me a board for a long

long shelf, which I wanted in my cave; whereas two sawyers, with their tools and saw-pit, would have cut six of them, out of the same tree, in half a day.

My case was this: It was to be a large tree which was to be cut down, because my board was to be a broad one. The tree I was three days a cutting down, and two more cutting off the boughs, and reducing it to a log or piece of timber. With inexpressible hacking and hewing I reduced both the sides of it into chips, till it began to be light enough to move; then I turned it, and made one side of it smooth and flat as a board, from end to end; then turning that side downward, cut the other side till I brought the plank to be about three inches thick, and smooth on both sides. Any one may judge the labour of my hands in such a piece of work; but labour and patience carried me through that and many other things: I only observe this in particular, to shew the reason why so much of my time went away with so little work, viz. that what might be a little to be done with help and tools, was a vast labour, and required a prodigious time to do alone, and by hand.

But, notwithstanding this, with patience and labour, I went through many things, and indeed every thing that my circumstances made necessary for me to do, as will appear by what follows.

I was now in the months of November and December, expecting my crop of barley and rice. The ground I had manured or dug up for them was not great; for, as I observed, my seed of each was not above the quantity of half a peck; for I had lost one whole crop by sowing in the dry season; but now my crop promised very well; when, on a sudden, I found I was in danger of losing it all again by enemies of several sorts, which it was scarce possible to keep from it; as first, the goats, and wild creatures which I called hares, which, tasting the sweetness of the blade, lay in it night and day, as soon as it came up, and eat it so close, that it could get no time to shoot up into stalks.

This I saw no remedy for, but by making an inclosure about it with a hedge, which I did with a great deal of toil; and the more, because it re-

quired a great deal of speed; the creatures daily spoiling my corn. However, as my arable land was but small, suited to my crop, I got it totally well fenced in about three weeks time; and shooting some of the creatures in the day-time, set my dog to guard it in the night, tying him up to a stake at the gate, where he would stand and bark all night long; so, in a little time, the enemies forsook the place, and the corn grew very strong and well, and began to ripen apace.

But as the beasts ruined me before, while my corn was in the blade, so the birds were as likely to ruin me now, when it was in the ear; for, going along by the place to see how it throve, I saw my little crop surrounded with fowls of I know not how many sorts, which stood as it were watching till I should be gone. I immediately let fly among them (for I always had my gun with me.) I had no sooner shot, but there arose up a little cloud of fowls, which I had not seen at all, from among the corn itself.

This touched me sensibly, for I foresaw, that in a few days they would devour all my hopes, that I should be starved, and never be able to raise a crop at all; and what to do I could not tell: however, I resolved not to lose my corn, if possible, though I should watch it night and day. In the first place, I went among it, to see what damage was already done, and found they had spoiled a good deal of it; but that, as it was yet too green for them, the loss was not so great, but the remainder was like to be a good crop, if it could be saved.

I staid by it to load my gun, and then coming away, I could easily see the thieves sitting upon all the trees about me, as if they only waited till I was gone away, and the event proved it to be so; for as I walked off, as if I was gone, I was no sooner out of their sight, but they dropped down one by one into the corn again. I was so provoked, that I could not have patience to stay till more came on, knowing that every grain that they eat now, was, as it might be said, a peck lost to me in the consequence; but coming up to the hedge, I fired again, and killed three of them. This was what I wished for; so I took them up, and served them as we serve notorious thieves in

England, viz. hanged them in chains for a terror to others. It is impossible to imagine almost, that this should have such an effect as it had; for the fowls would not only not come at the corn, but in short they forsook all that part of the island, and I could never see a bird near the place as long as my scarecrows hung there.

This I was very glad of, you may be sure; and about the latter end of December, which was our second harvest of the year, I reaped my corn.

I was sadly put to it for a scythe or a sickle to cut it down, and all I could do was to make one as well as I could out of one of the broad swords or cutlasses, which I saved among the arms out of the ship. However, as my crop was but small, I had no great difficulty to cut it down: in short, I reaped it my way, for I cut nothing off but the ears, and carried it away in a great basket which I had made, and so rubbed it out with my hands: and at the end of all my harvesting, I found, that out of my half-peck of seed, I had near two bushels of rice, and above two bushels and an half of barley; that is to say, by my guess, for I had no measure at that time.

However, this was a great encouragement to me; and I foresaw, that in time it would please God to supply me with bread: and yet here I was perplexed again, for I neither knew how to grind or make meal of my corn, or indeed how to clean it and part it; nor, if made into meal, how to make bread of it; and if how to make it, yet I knew not how to bake it. These things being added to my desire of having a good quantity for store, and to secure a constant supply, I resolved not to taste any of this crop, but to preserve it all for seed against the next season, and in the mean time to employ all my study and hours of working to accomplish this great work of providing myself with corn and bread.

It might be truly said, that now I worked for my bread. It is a little wonderful, and what I believe few people have thought much upon, viz. the strange multitude of little things necessary in the providing, producing, curing, dressing, making, and finishing, this one article of bread.

I, that was reduced to a mere state of nature, found this to be my daily

discouragement, and was made more and more sensible of it every hour, even after I got the first handful of seed-corn, which, as I have said, came up unexpectedly, and indeed to a surprize.

First, I had no plough to turn the earth, no spade or shovel to dig it. Well, this I conquered by making a wooden spade, as I observed before; but this did my work but in a wooden manner; and though it cost me a great many days to make it, yet, for want of iron, it not only wore out the sooner, but made my work the harder, and made it be performed much worse.

However, this I bore with too, and was content to work it out with patience, and bear with the badness of the performance. When the corn was sowed, I had no harrow, but was forced to go over it myself, and drag a great heavy bough of a tree over it, to scratch the earth, as it may be called, rather than rake or harrow it.

When it was growing, or grown, I have observed already how many things I wanted, to fence it, secure it, mow or reap it, cure or carry it home, thresh, part it from the chaff, and save it. Then I wanted a mill to grind it, sieves to dress it, yeast and salt to make it into bread, and an oven to bake it in; and all these things I did without, as shall be observed; and yet the corn was an inestimable comfort and advantage to me too; but all this, as I said, made every thing laborious and tedious to me, but that there was no help for; neither was my time so much lost to me, because I had divided it: a certain part of it was every day appointed to these works; and as I resolved to use none of the corn for bread, till I had a greater quantity by me, I had the next six months to apply myself wholly by labour and invention, to furnish myself with utensils proper for the performing all the operations necessary for the making the corn, when I had it, fit for my use.

But, first, I was to prepare more land, for I had now seed enough to sow above an acre of ground. Before I did this, I had a week's work at least to make me a spade, which, when it was done, was a very sorry one indeed, and very heavy, and required double labour to work with it; however, I went through that, and sowed my seeds in two large flat pieces of ground, as near my house

as I could find them to my mind, and fenced them in with a good hedge, the stakes of which were all cut of that wood which I had set before, which I knew would grow, so that in one year's time I knew I should have a quick of living hedge, that would want but little repair. This work was not so little, as to take me up less than three months, because great part of that time was of the wet season, when I could not go abroad.

Within-door, that is, when it rained, and I could not go out, I found employment on the following occasion, always observing, that all the while I was at work, I diverted myself with talking to my parrot, and teaching him to speak; and I quickly learned him to know his own name; at last, to speak it out pretty loud, POLL; which was the first word I ever heard spoken in the island by any mouth but my own. This therefore was not my work, but an assistant to my work; for now, as I said, I had a great employment upon my hands, as follows, viz. I had long studied, by some means or other, to make myself some earthen vessels, which indeed I wanted sorely, but knew not where to come at them; however, considering the heat of the climate, I did not doubt but, if I could find out any such clay, I might botch up some such pot, as might, being dried by the sun, be hard enough, and strong enough, to bear handling, and to hold any thing that was dry, and required to be kept so; and as this was necessary in preparing corn, meal, &c. which was the thing I was upon, I resolved to make some as large as I could, and fit only to stand like jars to hold what should be put into them.

It would make the reader pity me, or rather laugh at me, to tell how many awkward ways I took to raise this paste, what odd, mis-shapen, ugly things I made, how many of them fell in, and how many fell out, the clay not being stiff enough to bear it's own weight; how many cracked by the over-violent heat of the sun, being set out too hastily; and how many fell to pieces with only removing, as well before as after they were dried; and, in a word, how, after having laboured hard to find the clay, to dig it, to temper it, to bring it home, and work it, I could not make above two large earthen ugly things,

I cannot call them jars, in about two months labour.

However, as the sun baked these two very dry and hard, I lifted them very gently up, and set them down again in two great wicker baskets, which I had made on purpose for them, that they might not break; and as, between the pot and the basket, there was a little room to spare, I stuffed it full of the rice and barley straw; and these two pots being to stand always dry, I thought would hold my dry corn, and perhaps the meal when the corn was bruised.

Though I miscarried so much in my design for large pots, yet I made several smaller things with better success; such as little round pots, flat dishes, pitchers, and pipkins, and any thing my hand turned to; and the heat of the sun baked them strangely hard.

But all this would not answer my end; which was, to get an earthen pot to hold what was liquid, and bear the fire, which none of these could do. It happened after some time, making a pretty large fire for cooking my meat; when I went to put it out, after I had done with it, I found a broken piece of one of my earthen-ware vessels in the fire, burnt as hard as a stone, and red as a tile. I was agreeably surprized to see it, and said to myself, that certainly they might be made to burn whole, if they would burn broken.

This set me to study how to order my fire, so as to make it burn me some pots. I had no notion of a kiln, such as the potters burn in, or of glazing them with lead, though I had some lead to do it with: but I placed three large pipkins, and two or three pots, in a pile, one upon another, and placed my fire-wood all round it, with a great heap of embers under them: I plied the fire with fresh fuel round the outside, and upon the top, till I saw the pots in the inside red hot quite through, and observed that they did not crack at all: when I saw them clear red, I let them stand in that heat about five or six hours, till I found one of them, though it did not crack, did melt or run; for the sand which was mixed with the clay, melted by the violence of the heat, and would have run into glass, if I had gone on; so I slackened my fire gradually, till the pots began to abate of the red colour; and watching

ing them all night, that I might not let the fire abate too fast, in the morning I had three very good, I will not say handsome pipkins, and two other earthen pots, as hard burnt as could be desired; and one of them perfectly glazed with the running of the sand.

After this experiment, I need not say that I wanted no sort of earthenware for my use; but I must needs say, as to the shapes of them, they were very indifferent, as any one may suppose, when I had no way of making them, but as the children make dirt-pies, or as a woman would make pies that never learned to raise paste.

No joy at a thing of so mean a nature was ever equal to mine, when I found I had made an earthen pot that would bear the fire; and I had hardly patience to stay till they were cold; before I set one upon the fire again, with some water in it, to boil me some meat, which I did admirably well; and with a piece of a kid I made some very good broth, though I wanted oatmeal, and several other ingredients requisite to make it so good as I would have had it.

My next concern was, to get me a stone mortar to stamp or beat some corn in; for as to the mill, there was no thought of arriving to that perfection of art with one pair of hands. To supply this want, I was at a great loss; for, of all trades in the world, I was as perfectly unqualified for a stone-cutter, as for any whatsoever; neither had I any tools to go about it with. I spent many a day to find out a great stone big enough to cut hollow, and make fit for a mortar, and could find none at all, except what was in the solid rock, and which I had no way to dig or cut out; nor indeed were the rocks in the island of hardness sufficient, but were all of a sandy crumbling stone, which would neither bear the weight of an heavy pestle, nor would break the corn without filling it with sand: so, after a great deal of time lost in searching for a stone, I gave it over, and resolved to look out a great block of hard wood, which I found indeed much easier; and getting one as big as I had strength to stir, I rounded it, and formed it on the outside with my ax and hatchet; and then, with the help of fire, and

infinite labour, made an hollow place in it, as the Indians in Brazil make their canoes. After this, I made a great heavy pestle or beater, of the wood called the iron-wood, and this I prepared and laid by against I had my next crop of corn, when I proposed to myself to grind, or rather pound, my corn or meal to make my bread.

My next difficulty was to make a sieve or sifter, to dress my meal, and part it from the bran and the husk, without which I did not see it possible I could have any bread. This was a most difficult thing, so much as but to think on; for to be sure I had nothing like the necessary things to make it with; I mean, fine thin canvas, or stuff to sieve the meal through. And here I was at a full stop for many months; nor did I really know what to do; linen I had none left, but what were mere rags; I had goats hair, but neither knew I how to weave or spin it; and had I known how, here were no tools to work it with: all the remedy that I found for this was, that at last I did remember I had, among the seamen's cloaths which were saved out of the ship, some neckcloths of callico or muslin; and with some pieces of these I made three small sieves, but proper enough for the work; and thus I made shift for some years; how I did afterwards, I shall shew in its place.

The baking part was the next thing to be considered, and how I should make bread when I came to have corn; for, first, I had no yeast: as to that part, as there was no supplying the want, so I did not concern myself much about it. But, for an oven, I was indeed in great pain. At length I found out an experiment for that also, which was this; I made some earthen vessels very broad, but not deep; that is to say, about two feet diameter, and not above nine inches deep; these I burnt in the fire, as I had done the other, and laid them by; and when I wanted to bake, I made a great fire upon the hearth, which I had paved with some square tiles of my own making and burning also: but I should not call them square.

When the fire-wood was burnt pretty much into embers or live coals, I drew them forward upon this hearth, so

so as to cover it all over; and there I let them lie, till the hearth was very hot; then sweeping away all the embers, I set down my loaf or loaves; and wheeling down the earthen pot upon them, drew the embers all round the outside of the pot, to keep in and add to the heat; and thus, as well as in the best oven in the world, I baked my barley-loaves, and became in a little time a mere pastry-cook into the bargain; for I made myself several cakes of the rice, and puddings; indeed I made no pies, neither had I any thing to put into them, supposing I had, except the flesh either of fowls or goats.

It need not be wondered at, if all these things took me up most part of the third year of my abode here; for it is to be observed, that in the intervals of these things, I had my new harvest and husbandry to manage: for I reaped my corn in its season, and carried it home as well as I could, and laid it up in the ear, in my large baskets, till I had time to rub it out; for I had no floor to thresh it on, or instrument to thresh it with.

And now, indeed, my stock of corn increasing, I really wanted to build my barns bigger: I wanted a place to lay it up in; for the increase of the corn now yielded me so much, that I had of the barley about twenty bushels, and of the rice as much, or more; insomuch, that I now resolved to begin to use it freely, for my bread had been quite gone a great while; also I resolved to see what quantity would be sufficient for me a whole year, and to sow but once a year.

Upon the whole, I found that the forty bushels of barley and rice were much more than I could consume in a year; so I resolved to sow just the same quantity every year that I sowed the last, in hopes that such a quantity would fully provide me with bread, &c.

All the while these things were doing, you may be sure my thoughts ran many times upon the prospect of land, which I had seen from the other side of the island; and I was not without secret wishes, that I was on shore there, fancying that seeing the main land, and an inhabited country, I might find some way or other to convey myself farther; and perhaps, at last, find some means of escape.

But all this while I made no allowance for the dangers of such a condition, and how I might fall into the hands of savages, and perhaps such as I might have reason to think far worse than the lions and tygers of Africa; that if I once came into their power, I should run a hazard, more than a thousand to one, of being killed, and perhaps of being eaten; for I had heard that the people of the Caribbean coasts were cannibals, or men-eaters; and I knew, by the latitude, that I could not be far off from that shore: that, suppose they were not cannibals, yet they might kill me, as many Europeans who had fallen into their hands had been served, even when they had been ten or twenty together; much more I, that was but one, and could make little or no defence. All these things, I say, which I ought to have considered well of, and I did cast up in my thoughts afterwards, yet took up none of my apprehensions at first; and my head ran mightily upon the thoughts of getting over to that shore.

Now I wished for my boy Xury, and the long-boat with the shoulder-of-mutton sail, with which I sailed above a thousand miles on the coast of Africa; but this was in vain. Then I thought I would go on and look on our ship's boat, which, as I have said, was blown up upon the shore a great way in the storm, when we were first cast away. She lay almost where she did at first, but not quite; and was turned, by the force of the waves and the winds, almost bottom upwards, against the high ridge of beachy, rough sand, but no water about her as before.

If I had had hands to have refitted her, and have launched her into the water, the boat would have done well enough, and I might have gone back into the Brazils with her easy enough; but I might have easily foreseen, that I could no more turn her, and set her upright upon her bottom, than I could remove the island. However, I went to the wood, and cut levers and rollers, and brought them to the boat; resolved to try what I could do; suggesting to myself, that if I could but turn her down, I might easily repair the damage she had received, and she would be a very good boat, and I might go to sea in her very easily.

I spared no pains, indeed, in this piece

piece of fruitless toil, and spent, I think, three or four weeks about it; at last, finding it impossible to heave it up with my little strength, I fell to digging away the sand to undermine it; and so to make it fall down, setting pieces of wood to thrust and guide it right in the fall.

But when I had done this, I was unable to stir it up again, or to get under it, much less to move it forwards towards the water; so I was forced to give it over: and yet, though I gave over the hopes of the boat, my desire to venture over for the main increased, rather than decreased, as the means for it seemed impossible.

This, at length, set me upon thinking, whether it was not possible to make myself a canoe or periagua, such as the natives of those climates make, even without tools, or, as I might say, without hands, viz. of the trunk of a great tree. This I not only thought possible, but easy; and pleased myself extremely with my thoughts of making it, and with my having much more convenience for it than any of the Negroes or Indians; but not at all considering the particular inconveniences which I lay under more than the Indians did, viz. want of hands to move it into the water when it was made; a difficulty much harder for me to surmount, than all the consequences of want of tools could be to them: for what was it to me, that when I had chosen a vast tree in the woods, I might with great trouble cut it down, if after I might be able with my tools to hew and dub the outside into a proper shape of a boat, and burn or cut out the inside to make it hollow, so as to make a boat of it; if, after all this, I must leave it just where I found it, and was not able to launch it into the water?

One would have thought, I could not have had the least reflection upon my mind of my circumstance, while I was making this boat, but I should have immediately thought how I should get it into the sea; but my thoughts were so intent upon my voyage over the sea in it, that I never once considered how I should get it off of the land; and it was really in it's own nature more easy for me to guide it over forty-five miles of sea, than about

forty-five fathom of land, where it lay, to set it afloat in the water.

I went to work upon this boat the most like a fool that ever man did, who had any of his senses awake. I pleased myself with the design, without determining whether I was ever able to undertake it; not but that the difficulty of launching my boat came often into my head; but I put a stop to my own inquiries into it by this foolish answer, which I gave myself; 'Let me first make it, I'll warrant I'll find some way or other to get it along, when it is done.'

This was a most preposterous method; but the eagerness of my fancy prevailed, and to work I went, and felled a cedar tree: I question much whether Solomon ever had such an one for the building the temple at Jerusalem; it was five feet ten inches diameter at the lower part next the stump, and four feet eleven inches diameter at the end of twenty-two feet, after which it lessened for a while, and then parted into branches: it was not without infinite labour that I felled this tree: I was twenty days hacking and hewing it at the bottom; I was fourteen more getting the branches and limbs, and the vast spreading head of it cut off; which I hacked and hewed through with my ax and hatchet, and inexpressible labour: after this it cost me a month to shape it, and dub it to a proportion, and to something like the bottom of a boat, that it might swim upright as it ought to do. It cost me near three months more to clear the inside, and work it out, so as to make an exact boat of it: this I did, indeed, without fire, by mere mallet and chisel, and by the dint of hard labour, till I had brought it to be a very handsome periagua, and big enough to have carried six and twenty men, and consequently big enough to have carried me and all my cargo.

When I had gone through this work, I was extremely delighted with it: the boat was really much bigger than I ever saw a canoe or periagua, that was made of one tree, in my life; many a weary stroke it had cost, you may be sure, for there remained nothing but to get it into the water, and had I gotten it into the water, I make no question but I should have begun the maddest

maddest voyage, and the most unlikely to be performed, that ever was undertaken.

But all my devices to get it into the water failed me, though they cost infinite labour too; it lay about one hundred yards from the water, and not more; but the first inconvenience was, it was up hill towards the creek. Well, to take away this discouragement, I resolved to dig into the surface of the earth, and so make a declivity; this I began, and it cost me a prodigious deal of pains: but who grudge pains, that have their deliverance in view? But when this was worked through, and this difficulty managed, it was still much at one; for I could no more stir the canoe, than I could the other boat.

Then I measured the distance of ground, and resolved to cut a dock, or canal, to bring the water up to the canoe, seeing I could not bring the canoe down to the water. Well, I began this work, and when I began to enter into it, and calculated how deep it was to be dug, how broad, how the stuff to be thrown out, I found, that by the number of hands I had, being none but my own, it must have been ten or twelve years before I should have gone through with it; for the shore lay high, so that, at the upper end, it must have been at least twenty feet deep; so, at length, though with great reluctancy, I gave this attempt over also.

This grieved me heartily; and now I saw, though too late, the folly of beginning a work before we count the cost, and before we judge rightly of our own strength to go through with it.

In the middle of this work I finished my fourth year in this place, and kept my anniversary with the same devotion, and with as much comfort as ever before; for by a constant study, and serious application of the word of God, and by the assistance of his grace, I gained a different knowledge from what I had before; I entertained different notions of things; I looked now upon the world as a thing remote, which I had nothing to do with, no expectation from, and indeed no desires about. In a word, I had nothing indeed to do with it, nor was ever like to have; so I thought it looked, as we perhaps may look upon it hereafter, viz. as a place I had lived in, but was come out of it;

and well might I say, as Father Abraham to Dives, 'Between me and thee there is a great gulph fixed.'

In the first place, I was removed from all the wickedness of the world here: I had neither the 'Lust of the flesh, the lust of the eye, or the pride of life.' I had nothing to covet, for I had all I was now capable of enjoying: I was lord of the whole manor, or, if I pleased, I might call myself king or emperor over the whole country which I had possession of; there were no rivals. I had no competitor, none to dispute sovereignty or command with me. I might have raised ship-loadings of corn, but I had no use for it; so I let as little grow as I thought enough for my occasion: I had tortoises or turtles enough; but now and then one, was as much as I could put to any use. I had timber enough to have built a fleet of ships; I had grapes enough to have made wine, or to have cured into raisins, to have loaded that fleet when they had been built.

But all I could make use of, was all that was valuable. I had enough to eat, and to supply my wants, and what was all the rest to me? If I killed more flesh than I could eat, the dog must eat it, or the vermin; if I sowed more corn than I could eat, it must be spoiled: the trees that I cut down were lying to rot on the ground, I could make no more use of them than for fuel; and that I had no occasion for, but to dress my food.

In a word, the nature and experience of things dictated to me, upon just reflection, that all the good things of this world are no farther good to us, than they are for our use; and that whatever we may heap up, indeed, to give others, we enjoy as much as we can use, and no more. The most covetous griping miser in the world would have been cured of the vice of covetousness, if he had been in my case; for I possessed infinitely more than I knew what to do with; I had no room for desire, except it was of things which I had not, and they were but trifles, though indeed of great use to me. I had, as I hinted before, a parcel of money, as well gold as silver, about thirty-six pounds sterling: alas! there the nasty, sorry, useless stuff lay; I had no manner of business for it; and I often

often thought with myself, that I would have given a handful of it for a gross of tobacco-pipes, or for a hand-mill to grind my corn; nay, I would have given it all for sixpenny-worth of turnep and carrot seed out of England, or for a handful of peas and beans and a bottle of ink. As it was, I had not the least advantage by it, or benefit from it; but there it lay in a drawer, and grew mouldy with the damp of the cave, in the wet season; and if I had had the drawer full of diamonds, it had been the same case; and they had been of no manner of value to me, because of no use.

I had now brought my state of life to be much easier in itself than it was at first, and much easier to my mind as well as to my body. I frequently sat down to my meat with thankfulness, and admired the hand of God's providence, which had thus spread my table in the wilderness: I learned to look more upon the bright side of my condition, and less upon the dark side; and to consider what I enjoyed, rather than what I wanted; and this gave me sometimes such secret comforts, that I cannot express them; and which I take notice of here, to put those discontented people in mind of it, who cannot enjoy comfortably what God hath given them, because they see and covet something that he has not given them. All our discontents about what we want, appear to me to spring from the want of thankfulness for what we have.

Another reflection was of great use to me, and doubtless would be so to any one that should fall into such distress as mine was; and this was, to compare my present condition with what I at first expected it should be; nay, with what it would certainly have been, if the good Providence of God had not wonderfully ordered the ship to be cast up nearer to the shore, where I not only could come at her, but could bring what I got out of her to the shore for my relief and comfort; without which I had wanted tools to work, weapons for defence, or gunpowder and shot for getting my food.

I spent whole hours, I may say, whole days, in representing to myself in the most lively colours, how I must have acted, if I had got nothing out of the ship; how I could not have so

much as got any food, except fish and turtles; and that, as it was long before I found any of them, I must have perished first: that I should have lived, if I had not perished, like a mere savage; that if I had killed a goat or a fowl by any contrivance, I had no way to flea or open them, or part the flesh from the skin and the bowels, or to cut it up; but must gnaw it with my teeth, and pull it with my claws, like a beast.

These reflections made me very sensible of the goodness of Providence to me, and very thankful for my present condition, with all its hardships and misfortunes: and this part also I cannot but recommend to the reflection of those who are apt in their misery to say, 'Is any affliction like mine?' Let them consider, how much worse the cases of some people are, and what their case might have been, if Providence had thought fit.

I had another reflection which assisted me also to comfort my mind with hopes; and this was, comparing my present condition with what I had deserved, and had therefore reason to expect from the hand of Providence; I had lived a dreadful life, perfectly destitute of the knowledge and fear of God; I had been well instructed by father and mother; neither had they been wanting to me in their early endeavours to infuse a religious awe of God into my mind, a sense of my duty, and of what the nature and end of my being required of me: but, alas! falling early into the sea-faring life, which of all the lives is the most destitute of the fear of God, though his terrors are always before them; I say, falling early into the sea-faring life, and into sea-faring company, all that little sense of religion which I had entertained, was laughed out of me by my messmates; by an hardened despising of dangers, and the views of death, which grew habitual to me; by my long absence from all manner of opportunities to converse with any thing but what was like myself, or to hear any thing of what was good, or tended towards it.

So void was I of every thing that was good, or of the least sense of what I was, or was to be, that in the greatest deliverance I enjoyed, such as my escape from Sallee, my being taken up by

by the Portuguese master of the ship, my being planted so well in Brazil, my receiving the cargo from England, and the like, I never once had the word 'Thank God,' so much as on my mind, or in my mouth; nor in the greatest distress, had I so much thought as to pray to him, nor so much as to say, 'Lord, have mercy upon me!' No, not to mention the name of God, unless it was to swear by and blaspheme it.

I had terrible reflections upon my mind for many months, as I have already observed, on the account of my wicked and hardened life past; and when I looked about me, and considered what particular providences had attended me, since my coming into this place, and how God had dealt bountifully with me; had not only punished me less than my iniquity deserved, but had so plentifully provided for me; this gave me great hopes, that my repentance was accepted, and that God had yet mercies in store for me.

With these reflections I worked my mind up, not only to resignation to the will of God in the present disposition of my circumstances, but even to a sincere thankfulness of my condition; and that I, who was yet a living man, ought not to complain, seeing I had not the due punishment of my sins; that I enjoyed so many mercies, which I had no reason to have expected in that place, that I ought never more to repine at my condition, but to rejoice, and to give daily thanks, for that daily bread, which nothing but a cloud of wonders could have brought; that I ought to consider I had been fed even by a miracle, even as great as that of feeding Elijah by ravens; nay, by a long series of miracles; and that I could hardly have named a place in the uninhabited part of the world, where I could have been cast more to my advantage: a place where, as I had no society, which was my affliction on one hand, so I found no ravenous beasts, no furious wolves or tygers, to threaten my life; no venomous creatures or poisonous, which I might have fed on to my hurt; no savages to murder and devour me.

In a word, as my life was a life of sorrow one way, so it was a life of mercy another; and I wanted nothing

to make it a life of comfort, but to be able to make my sense of God's goodness to me, and care over me in this condition, be my daily consolation; and after I made a just improvement of these things, I went away, and was no more sad.

I had now been here so long, that many things which I brought on shore for my help were either quite gone, or very much wasted, and near spent.

My ink, as I observed, had been gone for some time, all but a very little, which I eeked out with water a little and a little, till it was so pale it scarce left any appearance of black upon the paper. As long as it lasted, I made use of it to minute down the days of the month on which any remarkable thing happened to me; and first, by casting up times past, I remember, that there was a strange concurrence of days, in the various providences which befel me, and which, if I had been superstitiously inclined to observe days as fatal or fortunate, I might have had reason to have looked upon with a great deal of curiosity.

First, I had observed, that the same day that I broke away from my father and my friends, and ran away to Hull, in order to go to sea, the same day afterwards I was taken by the Sallee man of war, and made a slave.

The same day of the year that I escaped out of the wreck of that ship in Yarmouth Roads, that same day of the year afterwards I made my escape from Sallee in the boat.

The same day of the year I was born on, viz. the 20th of September, the same day I had my life so miraculously saved twenty-six years after, when I was cast on shore in this island; so that my wicked life, and solitary life, both began on a day.

The next thing to my ink's being wasted, was that of my bread; I mean, the biscuit which I brought out of the ship. This I had husbanded to the last degree, allowing myself but one cake of bread a day for above a year; and yet I was quite without bread for a year, before I got any corn of my own; and great reason I had to be thankful that I had any at all, the getting it being, as has been already observed, next to miraculous.

My cloaths too began to decay mightily: as to linen, I had none a

good while, except some chequered shirts which I found in the chests of the other seamen, and which I carefully preserved, because many times I could bear no other cloaths on but a shirt; and it was a very great help to me, that I had, among all the men's cloaths of the ship, almost three dozen of shirts. There were also several thick watch-coats of the seamen, which were left behind, but they were too hot to wear; and though it is true that the weather was so violent hot that there was no need of cloaths, yet I could not go quite naked; no, though I had been inclined to it, which I was not; nor could I abide the thoughts of it, though I was all alone.

One reason why I could not go quite naked, was, I could not bear the heat of the sun so well when quite naked, as with some cloaths on; nay, the very heat frequently blistered my skin; whereas, with a shirt on, the air itself made some motion, and whistling under the shirt, was twofold cooler than without it: no more could I ever bring myself to go out in the heat of the sun without a cap or an hat; the heat of the sun beating with such violence as it does in that place, would give me the head-ach presently, by darting so directly on my head, without a cap or hat on, so that I could not bear it; whereas, if I put on my hat, it would presently go away.

Upon these views I began to consider about putting the few rags I had, which I called cloaths, into some order; I had worn out all the waistcoats I had, and my business was now to try if I could not make jackets out of the great watch-coats which I had by me, and with such other materials as I had; so I set to work a tayloring, or rather, indeed, a botching; for I made most piteous work of it. However, I made shift to make two or three waistcoats, which I hoped would serve me a great while; as for breeches, or drawers, I made but very sorry shift indeed, till afterwards.

I have mentioned, that I saved the skins of all the creatures that I killed, I mean, four-footed ones; and I had hung them up stretched out with sticks in the sun, by which means some of them were so dry and hard, that they were fit for little; but others, it seems, were very useful. The first thing I

made of these was a great cap for my head, with the hair on the outside to shoot off the rain; and this I performed so well, that after this I made a suit of cloaths wholly of those skins; that is to say, a waistcoat and breeches open at the knees, and both loose; for they were rather wanting to keep me cool than to keep me warm. I must not omit to acknowledge, that they were wretchedly made; for, if I was a bad carpenter, I was a worse taylor; however, they were such as I made a very good shift with; and when I was abroad, if it happened to rain, the hair of the waistcoat and cap being outmost, I was kept very dry.

After this I spent a deal of time and pains to make me an umbrella: I was, indeed, in great want of one, and had a great mind to make one; I had seen them made in the Brazils, where they are very useful in the great heats which are there; and I felt the heats every jot as great here, and greater too, being nearer the equinox; besides, as I was obliged to be much abroad, it was a most useful thing to me, as well for the rains as the heats. I took a world of pains at it, and was a great while before I could make any thing likely to hold; nay, after I thought I had hit the way, I spoiled two or three before I made one to my mind; but, at last, I made one that answered indifferently well; the main difficulty I found was to make it to let down. I could make it to spread; but if it did not let down too, and draw in, it would not be portable for me any way, but just over my head, which would not do: however, at last, as I said, I made one to answer; I covered it with skins, the hair upwards, so that it cast off the rain like a penthouse, and kept off the sun so effectually, that I could walk out in the hottest of the weather, with greater advantage than I could before in the coolest; and when I had no need of it, I could close it, and carry it under my arm.

Thus I lived mighty comfortably, my mind being entirely composed by resigning to the will of God, and throwing myself wholly upon the disposal of his providence: this made my life better than sociable; for, when I began to regret the want of conversation, I would ask myself, whether
thus

thus conversing mutually with my own thoughts, and, as I hope, I may say, with even my Maker, by ejaculations and petitions, was not better than the utmost enjoyment of human society in the world.

I cannot say, that after this, for five years, any extraordinary thing happened to me; but I lived on in the same course, in the same posture and place, just as before: the chief thing I was employed in, besides my yearly labour of planting my barley and rice, and curing my raisins, of both which I always kept up just enough to have sufficient stock of the year's provisions beforehand; I say, besides this yearly labour, and my daily labour of going out with my gun, I had one labour to make me a canoe, which at last I finished; so that by digging a canal to it six feet wide and four feet deep, I brought it into the creek, almost half a mile. As for the first, that was so vastly big, as I made it without considering beforehand, as I ought to do, how I should be able to launch it; so, never being able to bring it to the water, or bring the water to it, I was obliged to let it lie where it was, as a memorandum to teach me to be wiser next time. Indeed, the next time, though I could not get a tree proper for it, and was in a place where I could not get the water to it, at any less distance than, as I have said, of near half a mile; yet, as I saw it was practicable at last, I never gave it over; and though I was near two years about it, yet I never grudged my labour, in hopes of having a boat to go off to sea at last.

However, though my little periagua was finished, yet the size of it was not at all answerable to the design which I had in view when I made the first; I mean, of venturing over to the *terra firma*, where it was above forty miles broad; accordingly, the smallness of my boat assisted to put an end to that design, and now I thought no more of it: but, as I had a boat, my next design was to make a tour round the island; for, as I had been on the other side, in one place, crossing, as I have already described it, over the land, so the discoveries I made in that journey, made me very eager to see the other parts of the coast: and now I had a boat,

I thought of nothing but sailing round the island.

For this purpose, and that I might do every thing with discretion and consideration, I fitted up a little mast to my boat, and made a sail to it out of some of the pieces of the ship's sails, which lay in store, and of which I had a great store by me.

Having fitted my mast and sail, and tried the boat, I found she would sail very well: then I made little lockers and boxes at either end of my boat, to put provisions, necessaries, and ammunition, &c. into, to be kept dry, either from rain, or the spray of the sea; and a little, long, hollow place, I cut in the inside of the boat, where I could lay my gun, making a flap to hang down over it to keep it dry.

I fixed my umbrella also in a step at the stern, like a mast, to stand over my head, and keep the heat of the sun off of me like an awning; and thus I every now and then took a little voyage upon the sea, but never went far out, nor far from the little creek; but at last being eager to view the circumference of my little kingdom, I resolved upon my tour, and accordingly I victualled my ship for the voyage; putting in two dozen of my loaves (cakes I should rather call them) of barley-bread; an earthen pot full of parched rice, (a food I eat a great deal of;) a little bottle of rum; half a goat, and powder with shot for killing more; and two large watch-coats, of those which, as I mentioned before, I had saved out of the seamen's chests; these I took, one to lie upon, and the other to cover me in the night.

It was the sixth of November, in the sixth year of my reign, or my captivity, which you please, that I set out on this voyage; and I found it much longer than I expected; for though the island itself was not very large, yet, when I came to the east side of it, I found a great ledge of rocks lie out about two leagues into the sea, some above water, some under it; and beyond this a shoal of sand, lying dry half a league more; so that I was obliged to go a great way out to sea to double that point.

When I first discovered them, I was going to give over my enterprize, and come back again, not knowing how far it might oblige me to go out to sea; and,

and, above all, doubting how I should get back again; so I came to an anchor, for I had made me a kind of an anchor with a piece of broken grappling which I got out of the ship.

Having secured my boat, I took my gun, and went on shore, climbing upon an hill, which seemed to overlook that point, where I saw the full extent of it, and resolved to venture.

In my viewing the sea from that hill where I stood, I perceived a strong, and indeed a most furious current, which ran to the east, even came close to the point; and I took the more notice of it, because I saw there might be some danger, that when I came into it, I might be carried out to sea by the strength of it, and not be able to make the island again: and, indeed, had I not gotten first upon this hill, I believe it would have been so; for there was the same current on the other side of the island, only that it set off at a farther distance; and I saw there was a strong eddy under the shore; so I had nothing to do but to get out of the first current, and I should presently be in an eddy.

I lay here, however, two days; because the wind blowing pretty fresh (E. at S. E. and that being just contrary to the said current) made a great breach of the sea upon the point; so that it was not safe for me to keep too close to the shore for the breach, nor to go too far off because of the stream.

The third day, in the morning, the wind having abated over night, the sea was calm, and I ventured; but I am a warning-piece again to all rash and ignorant pilots; for no sooner was I come to the point, when even I was not my boat's length from the shore, but I found myself in a great depth of water, and a current like a sluice of a mill: it carried my boat along with it with such violence, that all I could do could not keep her so much as on the edge of it; but I found it hurried me farther and farther out from the eddy, which was on the left-hand. There was no wind stirring to help me, and all that I could do with my paddle signified nothing: and now I began to give myself over for lost; for, as the current was on both sides the island, I knew in a few leagues distance they must join again, and then I was irrecoverably gone; nor did I

see any possibility of avoiding it; so that I had no prospect before me but of perishing; not by the sea, for that was calm enough, but of starving for hunger. I had indeed found a tortoise on the shore, as big almost as I could lift, and had tossed it into the boat; and I had a great jar of fresh water, that is to say, one of my earthen pots; but what was all this to being driven into the vast ocean, where, to be sure, there was no shore, no main land or island, for a thousand leagues at least?

And now I saw how easy it was for the providence of God to make the most miserable condition that mankind could be in, worse. Now I looked back upon my desolate solitary island, as the most pleasant place in the world, and all the happiness my heart could wish for, was to be there again: I stretched out my hands to it with eager wishes; 'O happy desert!' said I, 'I shall never see thee more! O miserable creature!' said I, 'whither am I going!' Then I reproached myself with my unthankful temper, and how I had repined at my solitary condition; and now what would I give to be on shore there again! Thus we never see the true state of our condition, till it is illustrated to us by its contraries; nor know how to value what we enjoy, but by the want of it: it is scarce possible to imagine the consternation I was now in, being driven from my beloved island (for so it appeared to me now to be) into the wide ocean, almost two leagues, and in the utmost despair of ever recovering it again: however, I worked hard, till indeed my strength was almost exhausted; and kept my boat as much to the northward, that is, towards the side of the current which the eddy lay on, as possibly I could; when, about noon, as the sun passed the meridian, I thought I felt a little breeze of wind in my face, springing up from the S. S. E. This cheered my heart a little, and especially, when, in about half an hour more, it blew a pretty small gentle gale: by this time I was gotten at a frightful distance from the island; and, had the least cloud or hazy weather intervened, I had been undone another way too; for I had no compass on board, and should never have known how to have steered towards

towards the island, if I had but once lost sight of it; but the weather continuing clear, I applied myself to get up my mast again, and spread my sail, standing away to the north as much as possible, to get out of the current.

Just as I had set my mast and sail, and the boat began to stretch away, I saw, even by the clearness of the water, some alteration of the current was near; for where the current was so strong, the water was foul; but perceiving the water clear, I found the current abate; and presently I found to the east, at about half a mile, a breach of the sea upon some rocks; these rocks I found caused the current to part again; and as the main stress of it ran away more southerly, leaving the rocks to the N.E. so the other returned by the repulse of the rock, and made a strong eddy, which ran back again to the N.W. with a very sharp stream.

They who know what it is to have a reprieve brought to them upon the ladder, or to be rescued from thieves just going to murder them, or who have been in such like extremities, may guess what my present surprize of joy was, and how gladly I put my boat into the stream of this eddy; and the wind also freshening, how gladly I spread my sail to it, running cheerfully before the wind, and with a strong tide or eddy under foot.

This eddy carried me about a league in my way back again, directly towards the island, but about two leagues more towards the northward than the current lay, which carried me away at first; so that when I came near the island, I found myself open to the northern shore of it, that is to say, the other end of the island, opposite to that which I went out from.

When I had made something more than a league of way by the help of this current or eddy, I found it was spent, and saved me no farther. However, I found, that being between the two great currents, viz. that on the south-side, which had hurried me away, and that on the north, which lay about two leagues on the other side, I say, between these two, in the west of the island, I found the water at least still, and running no way; and having still a breeze of wind fair for me, I kept on steering directly for the

island, though not making such fresh way as I did before.

About four o'clock in the evening, being then within about a league of the island, I found the point of the rocks which occasioned this distance stretching out, as is described before, to the southward, and, casting off the current more southerly, had, of course, made another eddy to the north, and this I found very strong, but directly setting the way my course lay, which was due west, but almost full north. However, having a fresh gale, I stretched across this eddy, slanting north-west, and in about an hour came within about a mile of the shore, where, it being smooth water, I soon got to land.

When I was on shore, I fell on my knees, and gave God thanks for my deliverance, resolving to lay aside all thoughts of my deliverance by my boat; and refreshing myself with such things as I had, I brought my boat close to the shore, in a little cove that I had spied under some trees, and laid me down to sleep, being quite spent with the labour and fatigue of the voyage.

I was now at a great loss which way to get home with my boat; I had run so much hazard, and knew too much the case to think of attempting it by the way I went out; and what might be at the other side (I mean, the west side) I knew not, nor had I any mind to run any more ventures; so, I only resolved in the morning to make my way westward along the shore, and to see if there was no creek where I might lay up my frigate in safety, so as to have her again if I wanted her. In about three miles, or thereabouts, coasting the shore, I came to a very good inlet or bay, about a mile over, which narrowed till it came to a very little rivulet or brook, where I found a convenient harbour for my boat, and where she lay as if she had been in a little dock made on purpose for her; here I put in, and having stowed my boat very safe, I went on shore to look about me, and see where I was.

I soon found I had but a little passed by the place where I had been before, when I travelled on foot to that shore; so taking nothing out of my boat, but my gun and my umbrella, for it was exceeding hot, I began my march: the way was comfortable enough, after
such

such a voyage as I had been upon ; and I reached my old bower in the evening, where I found every thing standing as I left it ; for I always kept it in good order, being, as I said before, my country-house.

I got over the fence, and laid me down in the shade to rest my limbs, for I was very weary, and fell asleep : but judge you, if you can, that read my story, what a surprize I must be in, when I was awaked out of my sleep by a voice calling me by my name several times, ' Robin, Robin, ' Robin Crusoe ! poor Robin Crusoe ! ' Where are you, Robin Crusoe ? ' where are you ? where have you ' been ?'

I was so dead asleep at first, being fatigued with rowing, or paddling, as it is called, the first part of the day, and walking the latter part, that I did not awake thoroughly ; and dozing between sleeping and waking, thought I dreamed that somebody spoke to me : but as the voice continued to repeat ' Robin Crusoe ! Robin Crusoe !' at last I began to awake more perfectly, and was at first dreadfully frightened, and started up in the utmost consternation : but no sooner were my eyes open, but I saw my Pol sitting on the top of the hedge, and immediately knew that this was he that spoke to me ; for just in such bemoaning language I had used to talk to him, and teach him ; and he had learned it so perfectly, that he would sit upon my finger, and lay his bill close to my face, and cry, ' Poor Robin Crusoe, ' where are you ! where have you been ! ' how came you here !' and such things as I had taught him.

However, even though I knew it was the parrot, and that indeed it could be nobody else, it was a good while before I could compose myself. First, I was amazed how the creature got thither, and then how he should just keep about the place, and no where else : but as I was well satisfied it could be nobody but honest Pol, I got it over ; and holding out my hand, and calling him by his name, ' Pol,' the sociable creature came to me, and sat upon my thumb, as he used to do, and continued talking to me, ' Poor ' Robin Crusoe ;' and how did I come here ; and, where I had been : just as if he had been overjoyed to see me a-

gain. And so I carried him home along with me.

I had now had enough of rambling to sea for some time, and had enough to do for many days, to sit still and reflect upon the danger I had been in : I would have been very glad to have had my boat again on my side of the island, but I knew not how it was practicable to get it about : as to the east-side of the island, which I had gone round, I knew well enough there was no venturing that way ; my very heart would shrink, and my very blood run chill, but to think of it ; and to the other side of the island, I did not know how it might be there ; but supposing the current ran with the same force against the shore at the east, as it passed by it on the other, I might run the same risque of being driven down the stream, and carried by the island, as I had been before of being carried away from it ; so, with these thoughts, I contented myself to be without any boat, though it had been the product of so many months labour to make it, and of so many more to get it into the sea.

In this government of my temper I remained near a year, lived a very sedate retired life, as you may well suppose ; and my thoughts, being very much composed as to my condition, and fully comforted in resigning myself to the dispositions of Providence, I thought I lived really very happily in all things, except that of society.

I improved myself, in this time, in all the mechanick exercises which my necessities put me upon applying myself to ; and, I believe, could, upon occasion, have made a very good carpenter, especially considering how few tools I had.

Besides this, I arrived at an unexpected perfection in my earthen-ware, and contrived well enough to make them with a wheel, which I found infinitely easier and better ; because I made things round and shapeable, which before were filthy things indeed to look on. But I think I never was more vain of my own performance, or more joyful for any thing I found out, than for my being able to make a tobacco-pipe ; and though it was a very ugly clumsy thing when it was done, and only burnt red like other earthen-ware, yet, as it was hard and firm

firm, and would draw the smoak; I was exceedingly comforted with it; for I had been always used to smoak; and there were pipes in the ship; but I forgot them at first, not knowing that there was tobacco in the island; and afterwards, when I searched the ship again, I could not come at any pipes at all.

In my wicker-ware I also improved much, and made abundance of necessary baskets, as well as my invention shewed me, though not very handsome; yet convenient for my laying things up in, or fetching things home in. For example, if I killed a goat abroad, I could hang it up in a tree, flay it, and dress it, and cut it in pieces; and bring it home in a basket; and the like by a turtle, I could cut it up, take out the eggs, and a piece or two of the flesh, which was enough for me, and bring them home in a basket, and leave the rest behind me: also large deep baskets were my receivers for my corn, which I always rubbed out as soon as it was dry, and cured; and kept it in great baskets instead of a granary.

I began now to perceive my powder abated considerably: and this was a want which it was impossible for me to supply; and I began seriously to consider what I must do when I should have no more powder; that is to say, how I should do to kill any goats. I had, as I observed in the third year of my being here, kept a young kid, and bred her up tame; I was in hopes of getting an he-kid, but I could not by any means bring it to pass, till my kid grew an old goat; and I could never find in my heart to kill her, till she died at last of mere age.

But being now in the eleventh year of my residence; and, as I have said, my ammunition growing low, I set myself to study some art to trap and snare the goats, to see whether I could not catch some of them alive; and particularly I wanted a she-goat great with young.

To this purpose I made snares to hamper them; and I believe they were more than once taken in them; but my tackle was not good, for I had no wire, and always found them broken; and my bait devoured.

At length I resolved to try a pit-fall; so I dug several large pits in the earth, in places where I had observed

the goats used to feed, and over these pits I placed hurdles of my own making too, with a great weight upon them; and several times I put ears of barley and dry rice, without setting the trap; and I could easily perceive, that the goats had gone in and eaten up the corn; that I could see the mark of their feet: at length, I set three traps in one night, and going the next morning, I found them all standing, and yet the bait eaten and gone: this was very discouraging; however, I altered my traps; and, not to trouble you with particulars, going one morning to see my traps, I found, in one of them, a large old he-goat; and, in one of the other, three kids, a male and two females.

As to the old one, I knew not what to do with him; he was so fierce I durst not go into the pit to him; that is to say, to go about to bring him away alive, which was what I wanted: I could have killed him, but that was not my business, nor would it answer my end; so I e'en let him out, and he ran away as if he had been frightened out of his wits; but I did not then know what I afterwards learned, that hunger would tame a lion: if I had let him stay there three or four days without food, and then have carried him some water to drink, and then a little corn; he would have been as tame as one of the kids; for they are mighty sagacious, tractable creatures, where they are well used.

However, for the present, I let him go, knowing no better at that time; then I went to the three kids; and, taking them one by one, I tied them with strings together, and with some difficulty brought them all home.

It was a good while before they would feed, but throwing them some sweet corn, it tempted them, and they began to be tame: and now I found, that if I expected to supply myself with goats flesh, when I had no powder or shot left, breeding some up tame was my only way, when perhaps I might have them about my house like a flock of sheep.

But then it presently occurred to me, that I must keep the tame from the wild, or else they would always run wild when they grew up; and the only way for this was to have some inclosed piece of ground, well fenced

K

either

either with hedge or pale, to keep them up so effectually, that those within might not break out, or those without break in.

This was a great undertaking for one pair of hands; yet as I saw there was an absolute necessity of doing it, my first piece of work was to find out a proper piece of ground; viz. where there was likely to be herbage for them to eat, water for them to drink, and cover to keep them from the sun.

Those who understand such inclosures, will think I had very little contrivance, when I pitched upon a place very proper for all these, being a plain open piece of meadow-land, or savannah, (as our people call it in the western colonies) which had two or three little drills of fresh water in it, and at one end was very woody; I say, they will smile at my forecast, when I shall tell them I began my inclosing of this piece of ground in such a manner, that my hedge or pale must have been at least two miles about; nor was the madness of it so great as to the compass; for if it was ten miles about, I was like to have time enough to do it in; but I did not consider, that my goats would be as wild in so much compass, as if they had had the whole island; and I should have so much room to chase them in, that I should never catch them.

My hedge was began and carried on, I believe, about fifty yards, when this thought occurred to me; so I presently stopped short, and for the first beginning I resolved to inclose a piece of about one hundred and fifty yards in length, and one hundred yards in breadth, which, as it would maintain as many as I should have in any reasonable time, so, as my flock increased, I could add more ground to my inclosure.

This was acting with some prudence, and I went to work with courage; I was about three months hedging in the first piece; and, till I had done it, I tethered the three kids in the best part of it, and used them to feed as near me as possible, to make them familiar; and very often I would go and carry them some ears of barley, or an handful of rice, and feed them out of my hand; so that after my inclosure was finished, and I let them

loose, they would follow me up and down, bleating after me for an handful of corn.

This answered my end, and in about a year and a half, I had a flock of about twelve goats, kids and all; and in two years more I had three and forty, besides several that I took and killed for my food; and after that I inclosed five several pieces of ground to feed them in, with little pens to drive them into, to take them as I wanted them; and gates out of one piece of ground into another.

But this was not all; for now I not only had goats flesh to feed on when I pleased, but milk too; a thing which, indeed, in my beginning, I did not so much as think of, and which, when it came into my thoughts, was really an agreeable surprize; for now I set up my dairy, and had sometimes a gallon or two of milk in a day. And as nature, who gives supplies of food to every creature, dictates even naturally how to make use of it; so I, that never milked a cow, much less a goat, or saw butter or cheese made, very readily and handily, though after a great many essays and miscarriages, made me both butter and cheese at last, and never wanted it afterwards.

How mercifully can our great Creator treat his creatures, even in those conditions in which they seemed to be overwhelmed in destruction! How can he sweeten the bitterest providences, and give us cause to praise him for dungeons and prisons! What a table was here spread for me in a wilderness, where I saw nothing at first but to perish for hunger!

It would have made a stoick smile, to have seen me and my little family sit down to dinner: there was my majesty, the prince and lord of the whole island; I had the lives of all my subjects at absolute command; I could hang, draw, give life and liberty, and take it away, and no rebels among all my subjects.

Then, to see how like a king I dined too, all alone, attended by my servants! Pol, as if he had been my favourite, was the only person permitted to talk to me; my dog, which was now grown very old and crazy, and found no species to multiply his kind upon, sat always at my right-hand; and

and two cats, one on one side of the table, and one on the other, expecting now and then a bit from my hand, as a mark of special favour.

But these were not the two cats which I brought on shore at first; for they were both of them dead, and had been interred near my habitation by my own hands; but one of them having multiplied by I know not what kind of creature, these were two which I preserved tame, whereas the rest ran wild into the woods, and became indeed troublesome to me at last; for they would often come into my house, and plunder me too, till at last I was obliged to shoot them, and did kill a great many; at length they left me with this attendance, and in this plentiful manner I lived; neither could I be said to want any thing but society, and of that, in some time after this, I was like to have too much.

I was something impatient, as I have observed, to have the use of my boat, though very loth to run any more hazard; and therefore, sometimes, I sat contriving ways to get her about the island, and at other times I sat myself down contented enough without her. But I had a strange uneasiness in my mind to go down to the point of the island, where, as I have said, in my last ramble, I went up the hill to see how the shore lay, and how the current set, that I might see what I had to do: this inclination increased upon me every day, and at length I resolved to travel thither by land; and, following the edge of the shore, I did so: but had any one in England been to meet such a man as I was, it must either have frightened him, or raised a great deal of laughter; and as I frequently stood still to look at myself, I could not but smile at the notion of my travelling through Yorkshire with such an equipage, and in such a dress. Be pleased to take a sketch of my figure, as follows:

I had a great, high, shapeless cap, made of goat's skin, with a flap hanging down behind, as well to keep the sun from me, as to shoot the rain off from running into my neck; nothing being so hurtful in these climates as the rain upon the flesh under the cloaths.

I had a short jacket of goat's skin, the skirts coming down to about the middle of my thighs; and a pair of

open-kneed breeches of the same: the breeches were made of a skin of an old he-goat, whose hair hung down such a length on either side, that, like Pantaloon's, it reached to the middle of my legs. Stockings and shoes I had none; but I had made me a pair of something, I scarce knew what to call them, like buskins, to flap over my legs, and lace on either side like spatterdashes, but of a most barbarous shape; as indeed were all the rest of my cloaths.

I had on a broad belt of goat's skin dried, which I drew together with two thongs of the same, instead of buckles; and, in a kind of a frog on either side of this, instead of a sword and dagger, hung a little saw and an hatchet, one on one side, one on the other: I had another belt not so broad, and fastened in the same manner, which hung over my shoulder; and at the end of it, under my left-arm, hung two pouches, both made of goat's-skin too; in one of which hung my powder, in the other my shot: at my back I carried my basket, on my shoulder my gun, and over my head a great, clumsy, ugly goat-skin umbrella, but which, after all, was the most necessary thing I had about me, next to my gun: as for my face, the colour of it was really not so Mulatto-like, as one might expect from a man not at all careful of it, and living within nine or ten degrees of the equinox. My beard I had once suffered to grow till it was about a quarter of a yard long; but as I had both scissars and razors sufficient, I had cut it pretty short, except what grew on my upper-lip, which I had trimmed into a large pair of Mahometan whiskers, such as I had seen worn by some Turks, whom I saw at Sal-lee; for the Moors did not wear such, though the Turks did: of these mustachios, or whiskers, I will not say they were long enough to hang my hat upon them; but they were of length and shape monstrous enough, and such as in England would have passed for frightful.

But all this is by the bye: for as to my figure, I had so few to observe me, that it was of no manner of consequence; so I say no more to that part: in this kind of figure I went my new journey, and was out five or six days. I travelled first along the sea-shore,

K 2

directly

directly to the place where I first brought my boat to an anchor, to get up upon the rocks; and, having no boat now to take care of, I went over the land a nearer way, to the same height that I was upon before; when, looking forward to the point of the rock which lay out, and which I was to double with my boat, as I said above, I was surprized to see the sea all smooth and quiet; no rippling, no motion, no current, any more there than in other places.

I was at a strange loss to understand this, and resolved to spend some time in the observing of it, to see if nothing from the sets of the tide had occasioned it: but I was presently convinced how it was, viz. that the tide of ebb setting from the west, and joining with the current of waters from some great river on the shore, must be the occasion of this current; and that according as the wind blew more forcibly from the west, or from the north, this current came near, or went farther from the shore; for, waiting thereabouts till evening, I went up to the rock again, and then the tide of ebb being made, I plainly saw the current again as before, only that it ran farther off, being near half a league from the shore; whereas, in my case, it set close upon the shore, and hurried me in my canoe along with it, which at another time it would not have done.

This observation convinced me, that I had nothing to do but to observe the ebbing and the flowing of the tide, and I might very easily bring my boat about the island again: but when I began to think of putting it in practice, I had such a terror upon my spirits, at the remembrance of the danger I had been in, that I could not think of it again with any patience; but, on the contrary, I took up another resolution, which was more safe, though more laborious; and this was, that I would build, or rather make me another periagua, or canoe; and so have one for one side of the island, and one for the other.

You are to understand, that I now had, as I may call it, two plantations in the island; one, my little fortification or tent, with the wall about it, under the rock, with the cave behind me, which by this time I had enlarged into several

apartments or caves, one within another. One of these, which was the driest and largest, and had a door out beyond my wall or fortification, that is to say, beyond where my wall joined to the rock, was all filled up with the large earthen pots, of which I have given an account, and with fourteen or fifteen great baskets, which would hold five or six bushels each, where I laid up my stores of provision, especially, my corn; some in the ear, cut off short from the straw, and the other rubbed out with my hand.

As for my wall, made, as before, with long stakes or piles, those piles grew all like trees, and were by this time grown so big, and spread so very much, that there was not the least appearance, to any one's view, of any habitation behind them.

Near this dwelling of mine, but a little farther within the land, and upon lower ground, lay my two pieces of corn-ground; which I kept duly cultivated and sowed, and which duly yielded me their harvest in it's season; and whenever I had occasion for more corn, I had more land adjoining as fit as that.

Besides this, I had my country-seat, and I had now a tolerable plantation there also; for first, I had my little bower, as I called it, which I kept in repair; that is to say, I kept the hedge which circled it in, constantly fitted up to it's usual height, the ladder standing always in the inside; I kept the trees, which at first were no more than my stakes, but were now grown very firm and tall; I kept them always so cut, that they might spread and grow thick and wild, and make the more agreeable shade, which they did effectually to my mind. In the middle of this I had my tent always standing, being a piece of a sail spread over poles set up for that purpose, and which never wanted any repair or renewing; and under this I had made me a squab or couch, with the skins of the creatures I had killed, and with other soft things, and a blanket laid on them, such as belonged to our sea-bedding, which I had saved, and a great watch-coat to cover me; and here, whenever I had occasion to be absent from my chief seat, I took up my country habitation.

Adjoining to this I had my inclosure

fences for my cattle, that is to say, my goats: and as I had taken an inconceivable deal of pains to fence and inclose this ground, I was so uneasy to see it kept entire, lest the goats should break through, that I never left off, till with infinite labour I had stuck the outside of the hedge so full of small stakes, and so near to one another, that it was rather a pale than a hedge, and there was scarce room to put a hand through between them; which, afterwards, when those stakes grew, as they all did in the next rainy season, made the inclosure strong, like a wall; indeed, stronger than any wall.

This will testify for me that I was not idle, and that I spared no pains to bring to pass whatever appeared necessary for my comfortable support; for I considered the keeping up a breed of tame creatures thus at my hand, would be a living magazine of flesh, milk, butter, and cheese, for me, as long as I lived in the place, if it were to be forty years; and that keeping them in my reach, depended entirely upon my perfecting my inclosures to such a degree, that I might be sure of keeping them together; which by this method, indeed, I so effectually secured, that when these little stakes began to grow, I had planted them so very thick, I was forced to pull some of them up again.

In this place also I had my grapes growing, which I principally depended on for my winter store of raisins, and which I never failed to preserve very carefully, as the best and most agreeable dainty of my whole diet; and indeed they were not agreeable only, but physical, wholesome, nourishing, and refreshing to the last degree.

As this was also about half-way between my other habitation and the place where I had laid up my boat, I generally staid and lay here in my way thither; for I used frequently to visit my boat, and I kept all things about or belonging to her in very good order; sometimes I went out in her to divert myself, but no more hazardous voyages would I go, nor scarce ever above a stone's cast or two from the shore, I was so apprehensive of being hurried out of my knowledge again by the currents or winds, or any other accident. But now I come to a new scene of my life.

It happened one day about noon, going towards my boat, I was exceedingly surprized with the print of a man's naked foot on the shore, which was very plain to be seen in the sand: I stood like one thunder-struck, or as if I had seen an apparition; I listened, I looked round me, I could hear nothing, nor see any thing; I went up to a rising ground to look farther: I went up the shore, and down the shore, but it was all one, I could see no other impression but that one. I went to it again to see if there were any more, and to observe if it might not be my fancy; but there was no room for that, for there was exactly the very print of a foot, toes, heel, and every part of a foot; how it came thither I knew not, nor could in the least imagine. But, after innumerable fluttering thoughts, like a man perfectly confused, and out of myself, I came home to my fortification, not feeling, as we say, the ground I went on, but terrified to the last degree, looking behind me at every two or three steps, mistaking every bush and tree, and fancying every stump at a distance to be a man; nor is it possible to describe, how many various shapes an affrighted imagination represented things to me in; how many wild ideas were formed every moment in my fancy, and what strange unaccountable whimsies came into my thoughts by the way!

When I came to my castle, for so I think I called it ever after this, I fled into it like one pursued; whether I went over by the ladder, as first contrived, or went in at the hole in the rock, which I called a door, I cannot remember; for never frightened hare fled to cover, or fox to earth, with more terror of mind than I to this retreat.

I had no sleep that night; the farther I was from the occasion of my fright, the greater my apprehensions were; which is something contrary to the nature of such things, and especially to the usual practice of all creatures in fear. But I was so embarrassed with my own frightful ideas of the thing, that I formed nothing but dismal imaginations to myself, even though I was now a great way off it. Sometimes I fancied it must be the devil; and reason joined in with me upon

upon this supposition: for how should any other thing in human shape come into the place? Where was the vessel that brought them? what marks were there of any other footsteps? and how was it possible a man should come there? But then to think that Satan should take human shape upon him in such a place, where there could be no manner of occasion for it, but to leave the print of his foot behind him, and that even for no purpose too, (for he could not be sure I should see it;) this was an amazement the other way: I considered that the devil might have found out abundance of other ways to have terrified me, than this of the single print of a foot; that as I lived quite on the other side of the island, he would never have been so simple to leave a mark in a place where it was ten thousand to one whether I should ever see it or not; and in the sand too, which the first surge of the sea upon an high wind would have defaced entirely. All this seemed inconsistent with the thing itself, and with all notions we usually entertain of the subtlety of the devil.

Abundance of such things as these assisted to argue me out of all apprehensions of it's being the devil: and I presently concluded then, that it must be some more dangerous creature, viz. that it must be some of the savages of the main land over-against me, who had wandered out to sea in their canoes; and, either driven by the currents, or by contrary winds, had made the island; and had been on shore, but were gone away again to sea, being as loth, perhaps, to have staid in this desolate island, as I would have been to have had them.

While these reflections were rolling upon my mind, I was very thankful in my thought, that I was so happy as not to be thereabouts at that time, or that they did not see my boat, by which they would have concluded, that some inhabitants had been in the place, and, perhaps, have searched farther for me. Then terrible thoughts racked my imaginations about their having found my boat, and that there were people here; and that if so, I should certainly have them come again in greater numbers, and devour me; that if it should happen so that they should not find me, yet they would

find my inclosure, destroy all my corn, carry away all my flock of tame goats, and I should perish at last for mere want.

Thus my fear banished all my religious hope; all that former confidence in God, which was founded upon such wonderful experience, as I had had of his goodness, now vanished; as if he that had fed me by miracle hitherto, could not preserve by his power the provision which he had made for me by his goodness. I reproached myself with my easiness, that would not sow any more corn one year than would just serve me till the next season, as if no accident could intervene to prevent my enjoying the crop that was upon the ground; and this I thought so just a reproof, that I resolved for the future to have two or three years corn before-hand, so that whatever might come, I might not perish for want of bread.

How strange a chequer-work of Providence is the life of man! and by what secret differing springs are the affections hurried about, as differing circumstances present! To-day we love what to-morrow we hate; to-day we seek what to-morrow we shun; to-day we desire what to-morrow we fear, nay, even tremble at the apprehensions of. This was exemplified in me at this time in the most lively manner imaginable; for I, whose only affliction was, that I seemed banished from human society, that I was alone circumscribed by the boundless ocean, cut off from mankind, and condemned to what I call a silent life; that I was as one whom Heaven thought not worthy to be numbered among the living, or to appear among the rest of his creatures; that to have seen one of my own species would have seemed to me a raising me from death to life, and the greatest blessing that Heaven itself, next to the supreme blessing of salvation, could bestow; I say, that I should now tremble at the very apprehensions of seeing a man, and was ready to sink into the ground at but the shadow or silent appearance of a man's having set his foot on the island.

Such is the uneven state of human life; and it afforded me a great many curious speculations afterwards, when I had a little recovered my first sur-

prize: I considered that this was the station of life the infinitely wise and good providence of God had determined for me; that as I could not foresee what the ends of Divine Wisdom might be in all this, so I was not to dispute his sovereignty, who, as I was his creature, had an undoubted right by creation to govern and dispose of me absolutely as he thought fit; and who, as I was a creature who had offended him, had likewise a judicial right to condemn me to what punishment he thought fit; and that it was my part to submit to bear his indignation, because I had sinned against him.

I then reflected, that God, who was not only righteous, but omnipotent, as he had thought fit thus to punish and afflict me, so he was able to deliver me; that if he did not think fit to do it, it was my unquestioned duty to resign myself absolutely and entirely to his will; and, on the other hand, it was my duty also to hope in him, pray to him, and quietly to attend the dictates and directions of his daily providence.

These thoughts took me up many hours, days, nay, I may say, weeks and months; and one particular effect of my cogitations on this occasion, I cannot omit; viz. one morning early, lying in my bed, and filled with thoughts about my danger from the appearance of savages; I found it discomposed me very much; upon which those words of the Scripture came into my thoughts, 'Call upon me in the day of trouble, and I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me.'

Upon this, rising chearfully out of my bed, my heart was not only comforted, but I was guided and encouraged to pray earnestly to God for deliverance. When I had done praying, I took up my bible, and opening it to read, the first words that presented to me were, 'Wait on the Lord, and he shall be of good cheer, and he shall strengthen thy heart: wait, I say, on the Lord.' It is impossible to express the comfort this gave me: and, in return, I thankfully laid down the book, and was no more sad; at least, not on that occasion.

In the middle of these cogitations, apprehensions, and reflections, it came

into my thoughts one day, that all this might be a mere chimera of my own, and that this foot might be the print of my own foot, when I came on shore from my boat. This cheered me up a little too, and I began to persuade myself it was all a delusion; that it was nothing else but my own foot; and why might not I come that way from the boat, as well as I was going that way to the boat? Again, I considered also, that I could by no means tell for certain where I had trod, and where I had not; and that if at last this was only the print of my own foot, I had played the part of those fools, who strive to make stories of spectres and apparitions, and then are themselves frightened at them more than any body else.

Now I began to take courage, and to peep abroad again; for I had not stirred out of my castle for three days and nights, so that I began to starve for provision; for I had little or nothing within doors, but some barley-cakes and water. Then I knew that my goats wanted to be milked too, which usually was my evening diversion; and the poor creatures were in great pain and inconvenience for want of it; and indeed it almost spoiled some of them, and almost dried up their milk.

Heartening myself therefore with the belief that this was nothing but the print of one of my own feet, (and so I might be truly said to start at my own shadow) I began to go abroad again, and went to my country-house to milk my flock; but to see with what fear I went forward, how often I looked behind me, how I was ready, every now and then, to lay down my basket and run for my life, it would have made any one have thought I was haunted with an evil conscience, or that I had been lately most terribly frightened; and so indeed I had.

However, as I went down thus two or three days, and having seen nothing, I began to be a little bolder, and to think there was really nothing in it but my own imagination; but I could not persuade myself fully of this, till I should go down to the shore again, and see this print of a foot, and measure it by my own, and see if there was any similitude or fitness, that I might be assured it was my own foot:

foot: but when I came to the place first, it appeared evidently to me, that when I laid up my boat, I could not possibly be on shore any where thereabouts. Secondly, when I came to measure the mark with my own foot, I found my foot not so large by a great deal. Both these things filled my head with new imaginations, and gave me the vapours again to the highest degree; so that I shook with cold, like one in an ague, and I went home again, filled with the belief, that some man or men had been on shore there; or, in short, that the island was inhabited, and I might be surprized before I was aware; and what course to take for my security I knew not.

O what ridiculous resolutions men take, when possessed with fear! It deprives them of the use of those means which reason offers for their relief. The first thing I proposed to myself was, to throw down my inclosures, and turn all my tame cattle wild into the woods, that the enemy might not find them, and then frequent the island in prospect of the same or the like booty; then to the simple thing of digging up my two corn fields, that they might not find such a grain there, and still be prompted to frequent the island; then to demolish my bower and tent, that they might not see any vestiges of my habitation, and be prompted to look farther, in order to find out the persons inhabiting.

These were the subjects of the first night's cogitation, after I was come home again, while the apprehensions which had so over-run my mind were fresh upon me, and my head was full of vapours, as above. Thus, fear of danger is ten thousand times more terrifying than danger itself, when apparent to the eyes; and we find the burden of anxiety greater, by much, than the evil which we are anxious about; but, which was worse than all this, I had not that relief in this trouble for the resignation I used to practise, that I hoped to have. I looked, I thought, like Saul, who complained not only that the Philistines were upon him, but that God had forsaken him; for I did not now take due ways to compose my mind, by crying to God in my distress, and resting upon his providence, as I had done before, for my defence and deliverance; which, if I had

done, I had, at least, been more cheerfully supported under this new surprize, and perhaps carried through it with more resolution.

This confusion of my thoughts kept me waking all night; but in the morning I fell asleep; and having, by the amusement of my mind, been, as it were, tired, and my spirits exhausted, I slept very soundly, and awaked much better composed than I had ever been before: and now I began to think sedately; and, upon the utmost debate with myself, I concluded, that this island, which was so exceeding pleasant, fruitful, and no farther from the main land than as I had seen, was not so entirely abandoned as I might imagine: that, although there were no stated inhabitants who lived on the spot, yet that there might sometimes come boats off from the shore; who, either with design, or perhaps never but when they were driven by cross winds, might come to this place.

That I had lived here fifteen years now, and had not met with the least shadow or figure of any people before; and that if at any time they should be driven here, it was probable they went away again as soon as ever they could, seeing they had never thought fit to fix there upon any occasion to this time.

That the most I could suggest any danger from was, from any such casual accidental landing of straggling people from the main; who, as it was likely, if they were driven hither, were here against their wills; so they made no stay here, but went off again with all possible speed, seldom staying one night on shore, lest they should not have the help of the tides and daylight back again; and that therefore I had nothing to do but to consider of some safe retreat, in case I should see any savages land upon the spot.

Now I began sorely to repent, that I had dug my cave so large, as to bring a door through again, which door, as I said, came out beyond where my fortification joined to the rock. Upon maturely considering this, therefore, I resolved to draw me a second fortification, in the same manner of a semi-circle, at a distance from my wall, just where I had planted a double row of trees about twelve years before, of which I made mention. These trees

having

having been planted so thick before, there wanted but a few piles to be driven between them, that they should be thicker and stronger, and my wall would be soon finished.

So that I had now a double wall, and my outer wall was thickened with pieces of timber, old cables, and every thing I could think of to make it strong; having in it seven little holes, about as big as I might put my arm out at. In the inside of this I thickened my wall to about ten feet thick, continually bringing earth out of my cave, and laying it at the foot of the wall, and walking upon it; and through the seven holes I contrived to plant the musquets, of which I took notice, that I got seven on shore out of the ship; these, I say, I planted like my cannon, and fitted them into frames that held them like a carriage, that so I could fire all the seven guns in two minutes time. This wall I was many a weary month in finishing, and yet never thought myself safe till it was done.

When this was done, I stuck all the ground without my wall, for a great way every way, as full with stakes or sticks of the osier-like wood, which I found so apt to grow, as they could well stand; insomuch, that I believe, I might set in near twenty thousand of them, leaving a pretty large space between them and my wall, that I might have room to see an enemy, and they might have no shelter from the young trees, if they attempted to approach my outer wall.

Thus, in two years time, I had a thick grove; and in five or six years time I had a wood before my dwelling, grown so monstrous thick and strong, that it was indeed perfectly impassable; and no man, of what kind soever, would ever imagine that there was any thing beyond it, much less an habitation. As for the way I proposed myself to go in and out (for I left no avenue) it was by setting two ladders, one to a part of the rock which was low, and then broke in, and left room to place another ladder upon that; so when the two ladders were taken down, no man living could come down to me without mischieving himself; and if they had come down, they were still on the outside of my outer wall.

Thus I took all the measures human

prudence could suggest for my own preservation; and it will be seen at length, that they were not altogether without just reason; though I foresaw nothing at that time more than my mere fear suggested.

While this was doing, I was not altogether careless of my other affairs; for I had a great concern upon me for my little herd of goats; they were not only a present supply to me upon every occasion, and began to be sufficient to me, without the expence of powder and shot, but also abated the fatigue of my hunting after the wild ones; and I was loth to lose the advantage of them, and to have them all to nurse up over again.

To this purpose, after long consideration, I could think of but two ways to preserve them; one was, to find another convenient place to dig a cave under-ground, and to drive them into it every night; and the other was, to inclose two or three little bits of land, remote from one another, and as much concealed as I could, where I might keep about half a dozen young goats in each place; so that if any disaster happened to the flock in general, I might be able to raise them again with little trouble and time: and this, though it would require a great deal of time and labour, I thought was the most rational design.

Accordingly I spent some time, to find out the most retired parts of the island; and I pitched upon one, which was as private indeed as my heart could wish; for it was a little damp piece of ground in the middle of the hollow and thick woods, where, as is observed, I almost lost myself once before, endeavouring to come back that way from the eastern part of the island. Here I found a clear piece of land near three acres, so surrounded with woods, that it was almost an inclosure by nature; at least, it did not want near so much labour to make it so, as the other pieces of ground I had worked so hard at.

I immediately went to work with this piece of ground, and in less than a month's time I had so fenced it round, that my flock or herd, call it which you please, which were not so wild now as at first they might be supposed to be, were well enough secured in it. So, without any farther delay, I removed

moved ten she-goats and two he-goats to this piece; and when they were, I continued to perfect the fence, till I had made it as secure as the other, which, however, I did at more leisure, and it took me up more time by a great deal.

All this labour I was at the expence of, purely from my apprehensions on the account of the print of a man's foot which I had seen; for as yet I never saw any human creature come near the island: and I had now lived two years under these uneasinesses, which, indeed, made my life much less comfortable than it was before; as may well be imagined, by any who know what it is to live in the constant snare of the *fear of man*; and this I must observe with grief too, that the discomposure of my mind had too great impressions also upon the religious part of my thoughts; for the dread and terror of falling into the hands of savages and canibals lay so upon my spirits, that I seldom found myself in a due temper for application to my Maker; at least, not with the sedate calmness and resignation of soul which I was wont to do. I rather prayed to God as under great affliction and pressure of mind, surrounded with danger, and in expectation every night of being murdered and devoured before morning; and I must testify from my experience, that a temper of peace, thankfulness, love and affection, is much the more proper frame for prayer than that of terror and discomposure; and that under the dread of mischief impending, a man is no more fit for a comforting performance of the duty of praying to God, than he is for repentance on a sick-bed; for these discomposures affect the mind as the others do the body; and the discomposure of the mind must necessarily be as great a disability as that of the body, and much greater; praying to God being properly an act of the mind, not of the body.

But to go on. After I had thus secured one part of my little living stock, I went about the whole island, searching for another private place to make such another deposit; when wandering more to the west point of the island than I had ever done yet, and looking out to sea, I thought I saw a boat upon the sea, at a great distance. I had

found a perspective-glass or two, in one of the seamen's chests, which I saved out of our ship; but I had it not about me, and this was so remote, that I could not tell what to make of it, though I looked at it till my eyes were not able to look any longer; whether it was a boat, or not, I do not know; but as I descended from the hill, I could see no more of it, so I gave it over; only resolved to go no more without a perspective-glass in my pocket.

When I was come down the hill to the end of the island, where indeed I had never been before, I was presently convinced, that the seeing the print of a man's foot was not such a strange thing in the island as I imagined; and, but that it was a special providence that I was cast upon the side of the island, where the savages never came, I should easily have known, that nothing was more frequent than for the canoes from the main, when they happened to be a little too far out at sea, to shoot over to that side of the island for harbour; likewise, as they often met, and fought in their canoes, the victors, having taken any prisoners, would bring them over to this shore, where, according to their dreadful customs, being all canibals, they would kill and eat them. Of which hereafter.

When I was come down the hill to the shore, as I said above, being the S. W. point of the island, I was perfectly confounded and amazed; nor is it possible for me to express the horror of my mind, at seeing the shore spread with skulls, hands, feet, and other bones of human bodies; and, particularly, I observed a place where there had been a fire made, and a circle dug in the earth, like a cock-pit, where it is supposed the savage wretches had sat down to their inhuman feasting upon the bodies of their fellow-creatures.

I was so astonished with the sight of these things, that I entertained no notions of any danger to myself from it for a long while; all my apprehensions were buried in the thoughts of such a pitch of inhuman, hellish brutality, and the horror of the degeneracy of human nature; which, though I had heard of often, yet I never had so near a view of before; in short, I turned away my face from the horrid

spectacle;

spectacle; my stomach grew sick, and I was just at the point of fainting, when nature discharged the disorder from my stomach; and, having vomited with an uncommon violence, I was a little relieved, but could not bear to stay in the place a moment; so I got me up the hill again with all the speed I could, and walked on towards my own habitation.

When I came a little out of that part of the island, I stood still a while amazed; and then recovering myself, I looked up with the utmost affection of my soul, and, with a flood of tears in my eyes, gave God thanks, that had cast my first lot in a part of the world, where I was distinguished from such dreadful creatures as these; and that though I had esteemed my present condition very miserable, had yet given me so many comforts in it, that I had still more to give thanks for, than to complain of; and this above all, that I had, even in this miserable condition, been comforted with the knowledge of Himself, and the hope of his blessing, which was a felicity more than sufficiently equivalent to all the misery which I had suffered, or could suffer.

In this frame of thankfulness, I went home to my castle, and began to be much easier now, as to the safety of my circumstances, than ever I was before; for I observed, that these wretches never came to this island in search of what they could get; perhaps not seeking, not wanting, or not expecting any thing here; and having often, no doubt, been up in the covered woody part of it, without finding any thing to their purpose. I knew I had been here now almost eighteen years, and never saw the least footsteps of a human creature there before; and might be here eighteen more as entirely concealed as I was now, if I did not discover myself to them, which I had no manner of occasion to do, it being my only business to keep myself entirely concealed where I was, unless I found a better sort of creatures than cannibals to make myself known to.

Yet I entertained such an abhorrence of the savage wretches that I have been speaking of, and of the wretched inhuman custom of their devouring and eating one another up, that I conti-

nued pensive and sad, and kept close within my own circle for almost two years after this. When I say my own circle, I mean by it, my three plantations; viz. my castle, my country-seat, which I called my bower, and my inclosure in the woods; nor did I look after this for any other use, than as an inclosure for my goats; for the aversion which nature gave me to these hellish wretches was such, that I was as fearful of seeing them, as of seeing the devil himself; nor did I so much as go to look after my boat in all this time, but began rather to think of making me another; for I could not think of ever making any more attempts to bring the other boat round the island to me, lest I should meet with some of those creatures at sea, in which, if I had happened to have fallen into their hands, I knew what would have been my lot.

Time, however, and the satisfaction I had, that I was in no danger of being discovered by these people, began to wear off my uneasiness about them; and I began to live just in the same composed manner as before; only with this difference, that I used more caution, and kept my eyes more about me than I did before, lest I should happen to be seen by any of them; and, particularly, I was more cautious of firing my gun, lest any of them on the island should happen to hear it; and it was therefore a very good providence to me, that I had furnished myself with a tame breed of goats, that I had no need to hunt any more about the woods, or shoot at them; and if I did catch any more of them after this, it was by traps and snares, as I had done before; so that for two years after this, I believe, I never fired my gun once off, though I never went out without it; and, which was more, as I had saved three pistols out of the ship, I always carried them out with me, or, at least, two of them, sticking them in my goat-skin belt. I likewise furnished up one of the great cutlasses that I had out of the ship, and made me a belt to put it in also; so that I was now a most formidable fellow to look at, when I went abroad, if you add to the former description of myself, the particular of two pistols and a great broad-sword hanging at my side in a belt, but without a scabbard.

Things going on thus, as I have said, for some time, I seemed, excepting these cautions, to be reduced to my former calm sedate way of living; all these things tending to shew me more and more how far my condition was from being miserable, compared to some others; nay, to many other particulars of life, which it might have pleased God to have made my lot. It put me upon reflecting, how little repining there would be among mankind, at any condition of life, if people would rather compare their condition with those that are worse in order to be thankful, than be always comparing them with those which are better, to assist their murmurings and complainings.

As in my present condition there were not really many things which I wanted, so, indeed, I thought that the frights I had been in about these savage wretches, and the concern I had been in for my own preservation, had taken off the edge of my invention for my own conveniences, and I had dropt a good design, which I had once bent my thought upon; and that was, to try if I could not make some of my barley into malt, and then try to brew myself some beer: this was really a whimsical thought, and I reproved myself often for the simplicity of it; for I presently saw there would be the want of several things necessary to the making my beer, that it would be impossible for me to supply; as, first, casks to preserve it in, which was a thing that, as I have observed already, I could never compass; no, though I spent not only many days, but weeks, nay, months, in attempting it, but to no purpose. In the next place, I had no hops to make it keep, no yeast to make it work, no copper or kettle to make it boil; and yet, had not all these things intervened, I mean the frights and terrors I was in about the savages, I had undertaken it, and, perhaps, brought it to pass too; for I seldom gave any thing over without accomplishing it, when I once had it in my head enough to begin it.

But my invention now ran quite another way; for night and day I could think of nothing, but how I might destroy some of these monsters in their cruel bloody entertainment; and, if possible, save the victim they should bring hither to destroy. It would take

up a larger volume than this whole work is intended to be, to set down all the contrivances I hatched, or rather brooded upon in my thoughts, for the destroying these creatures, or at least frightening them, so as to prevent their coming hither any more: but all was abortive; nothing could be possible to take effect, unless I was to be there to do it myself; and what could one man do among them, when perhaps there might be twenty or thirty of them together, with their darts, or their bows and arrows, with which they could shoot as true to a mark as I could with my gun?

Sometimes I contrived to dig a hole under the place where they made their fire, and put in five or six pounds of gunpowder; which, when they kindled their fire, would consequently take fire, and blow up all that was near it: but, as in the first place I should be very loth to waste so much powder upon them, my store being now within the quantity of a barrel; so neither could I be sure of it's going off at any certain time, when it might surprize them; and, at best, that it would do little more than just blow the fire about their ears, and fright them, but not sufficient to make them forsake the place; so I laid it aside; and then proposed, that I would place myself in ambush, in some convenient place, with my three guns all double loaded, and, in the middle of their bloody ceremony, let fly at them, when I should be sure to kill or wound perhaps two or three at every shoot; and then falling in upon them with my three pistols, and my sword, I made no doubt but that, if there were twenty, I should kill them all: this fancy pleased my thoughts for some weeks; and I was so full of it, that I often dreamed of it; and sometimes, that I was just going to let fly at them in my sleep.

I went so far with it in my indignation, that I employed myself several days, to find out proper places to put myself in ambuscade, as I said, to watch for them; and I went frequently to the place itself, which was now grown more familiar to me; and especially while my mind was thus filled with thoughts of revenge, and of a bloody putting twenty or thirty of them to the sword, as I may call it; but the horror I had at the place,

place, and at the signals of the barbarous wretches devouring one another, abated my malice.

Well, at length, I found a place in the side of the hill, where I was satisfied I might securely wait till I saw any of the boats coming; and might then, even before they would be ready to come on shore, convey myself unseen into thickets of trees, in one of which there was an hollow large enough to conceal me entirely; and where I might sit and observe all their bloody doings, and take my full aim at their heads, when they were so close together as that it would be next to impossible that I should miss my shoot, or that I could fail wounding three or four of them at the first shoot.

In this place, then, I resolved to fix my design; and accordingly I prepared two musquets, and my ordinary fowling-piece. The two musquets I loaded with a brace of slugs each, and four or five smaller bullets, about the size of pistol-bullets; and the fowling-piece I loaded with near an handful of swan-shot, of the largest size; I also loaded my pistols with about four bullets each: and in this posture, well provided with ammunition for a second and third charge, I prepared myself for my expedition.

After I had thus laid the scheme for my design, and, in my imagination, put it in practice, I continually made my tour every morning up to the top of the hill, which was from my castle, as I called it, about three miles, or more, to see if I could observe any boats upon the sea, coming near the island, or standing over towards it; but I began to tire of this hard duty, after I had for two or three months constantly kept my watch; but came always back without any discovery, there having not, in all that time, been the least appearance, not only on or near the shore, but not on the whole ocean, so far as my eyes or glasses could reach every way.

As long as I kept up my daily tour to the hill, to look out, so long also I kept up the vigour of my design, and my spirits seemed to be all the while in a suitable frame for so outrageous an execution as the killing twenty or thirty naked savages, for an offence which I had not at all entered into a discussion of in my thoughts,

any farther than my passions were at first fired by the horror I conceived at the unnatural custom of the people of that country, who, it seems, had been suffered by Providence, in his wise disposition of the world, to have no other guide than that of their own abominable and vitiated passions; and, consequently, were left, and perhaps had been for some ages, to act such horrid things, and receive such dreadful customs, as nothing but nature, entirely abandoned of Heaven, and actuated by some hellish degeneracy, could have run them into: but now, when, as I have said, I began to be weary of the fruitless excursions which I had made so long, and so far, every morning, in vain; so my opinion of the action itself began to alter; and I began, with cooler and calmer thoughts, to consider what it was I was going to engage in; what authority or call I had, to pretend to be judge and executioner upon these men as criminals, whom Heaven had thought fit, for so many ages, to suffer, unpunished, to go on, and to be, as it were, the executioners of his judgments upon one another; also how far these people were offenders against me, and what right I had to engage in the quarrel of that blood, which they had shed promiscuously one upon another. I debated this very often with myself thus: 'How do I know what God himself judges in this particular case? It is certain these people do not commit this as a crime; it is not against their own consciences reproving, or their light reproaching them. They do not know it to be an offence, and then commit it in defiance of Divine Justice, as we do in almost all the sins we commit. They think it no more a crime to kill a captive taken in war, than we do to kill an ox; nor to eat human flesh, than we do to eat mutton.'

When I had considered this a little, it followed necessarily, that I was certainly in the wrong in it; that these people were not murderers in the sense that I had before condemned them in my thoughts, any more than those Christians were murderers, who often put to death the prisoners taken in battle, or more frequently, upon many occasions, put whole troops of men to the sword, without giving quarter, though

though they threw down their arms and submitted.

In the next place, it occurred to me, that albeit the usage they gave one another was thus brutish and inhuman, yet it was really nothing to me: these people had done me no injury; that if they attempted me, or I saw it necessary for my immediate preservation to fall upon them, something might be said for it; but that I was yet out of their power, and they had really no knowledge of me, and consequently no design upon me; and therefore it could not be just for me to fall upon them: that this would justify the conduct of the Spaniards, in all their barbarities practised in America, where they destroyed millions of these people; who, however they were idolaters and barbarians, and had several bloody and barbarous rites in their customs, such as sacrificing human bodies to their idols, were yet, as to the Spaniards, very innocent people; and that the rooting them out of the country is spoken of with the utmost abhorrence and detestation, even by the Spaniards themselves, at this time, and by all other Christian nations of Europe, as a mere butchery, a bloody and unnatural piece of cruelty, unjustifiable either to God or man; and such as for which the very name of a Spaniard is reckoned to be frightful and terrible to all people of humanity, or of Christian compassion; as if the kingdom of Spain were particularly eminent for the product of a race of men, who were without principles of tenderness, or the common bowels of pity to the miserable, which is reckoned to be a mark of a generous temper in the mind.

These considerations really put me to a pause, and to a kind of a full stop; and I began by little and little to be off of my design, and to conclude I had taken wrong measures in my resolutions to attack the savages; that it was not my business to meddle with them, unless they first attacked me, and this it was my business, if possible, to prevent; but that, if I were discovered and attacked, then I knew my duty.

On the other hand, I argued with myself, that this really was the way not to deliver myself, but entirely to ruin and destroy myself; for unless I

was sure to kill every one that not only should be on shore at that time, but that should ever come on shore afterwards; if but one of them escaped to tell their country-people what had happened, they would come over again by thousands to revenge the death of their fellows; and I should only bring upon myself a certain destruction, which at present I had no manner of occasion for.

Upon the whole, I concluded, that, neither in principles nor in policy, I ought one way or other to concern myself in this affair: that my business was, by all possible means, to conceal myself from them, and not to leave the least signal to them to guess by, that there were any living creatures upon the island; I mean, of human shape.

Religion joined in with this prudential, and I was convinced now, many ways, that I was perfectly out of my duty, when I was laying all my bloody schemes for the destruction of innocent creatures; I mean, innocent as to me: as to the crimes they were guilty of towards one another, I had nothing to do with them; there were national punishments to make a just retribution for national offences; and to bring publick judgments upon those who offend in a publick manner, by such ways as best please God.

This appeared so clear to me now, that nothing was a greater satisfaction to me, than that I had not been suffered to do a thing which I now saw so much reason to believe would have been no less a sin, than that of wilful murder, if I had committed it; and I gave most humble thanks on my knees to God, that had thus delivered me from blood-guiltiness; beseeching him to grant me the protection of his providence, that I might not fall into the hands of barbarians; or that I might not lay my hands upon them, unless I had a more clear call from Heaven to do it, in defence of my own life.

In this disposition I continued for near a year after this; and so far was I from desiring an occasion for falling upon these wretches, that in all that time I never once went up the hill to see whether there were any of them in sight, or to know whether any of them had been on shore there, or not; that I might not be tempted

to renew any of my contrivances against them; or be provoked by any advantage which might present itself, to fall upon them: only this I did; I went and removed my boat, which I had on the other side the island, and carried it down to the east-end of the whole island, where I ran it into a little cove which I found under some high rocks, and where I knew, by reason of the currents, the savages durst not, at least would not, come with their boats, upon any account whatsoever.

With my boat I carried away every thing that I had left there belonging to her, though not necessary for the bare going thither; viz. a mast and sail, which I had made for her, and a thing like an anchor, but, indeed, which could not be called either anchor or grappling; however, it was the best I could make of it's kind. All these I removed, that there might not be the least shadow of any discovery, or any appearance of any boat or of any habitation upon the island.

Besides this, I kept myself, as I said, more retired than ever, and seldom went from my cell, other than upon my constant employment, viz. to milk my she-goats, and manage my little flock in the wood; which, as it was quite on the other part of the island, was quite out of danger: for certain it is, that these savage people, who sometimes haunted this island, never came with any thoughts of finding any thing here; and consequently never wandered off from the coast; and I doubt not, but they might have been several times on shore, after my apprehensions of them had made me cautious, as well as before; and, indeed, I looked back with some horror upon the thoughts of what my condition would have been, if I had chopped upon them, and been discovered before that, when naked and unarmed, except with one gun, and that loaded often only with small shot. I walked every where, peeping and peering about the island, to see what I could get: what a surprize should I have been in, if, when I discovered the print of a man's foot, I had instead of that seen fifteen or twenty savages, and found them pursuing me; and, by the swiftness of their running, no possibility of my escaping them!

The thoughts of this sometimes sunk my very soul within me, and distressed my mind so much, that I could not soon recover it; to think what I should have done, and how I not only should not have been able to resist them, but even should not have had presence of mind enough to do what I might have done; much less, what now, after so much consideration and preparation, I might be able to do. Indeed, after serious thinking of these things, I would be very melancholy, and sometimes it would last a great while; but I resolved it at last all into thankfulness to that Providence which had delivered me from so many unseen dangers, and had kept me from those mischiefs which I could no way have been the agent in delivering myself from; because I had not the least notion of any such thing depending, or the least supposition of it's being possible.

This renewed a contemplation, which often had come to my thoughts in former time, when first I began to see the merciful dispositions of Heaven in the dangers we run through in this life; how wonderfully we are delivered when we know nothing of it: how when we are in a *quandary*, (as we call it) a doubt or hesitation, whether to go this way or that way, a secret hint shall direct us this way, when we intended to go that way; nay, when sense, our own inclination, and perhaps business, has called to go the other way, yet a strange impression upon the mind, from we know not what springs, and by we know not what power, shall over-rule us to go this way; and it shall afterwards appear, that had we gone that way which we would have gone, and even to our imagination ought to have gone, we should have been ruined and lost: upon these, and many like reflections, I afterwards made it a certain rule with me, that whenever I found those secret hints; or pressings of my mind, to doing or not doing any thing that presented, or to going this way or that way, I never failed to obey the secret dictate; though I knew no other reason for it, than that such a pressure, or such an hint, hung upon my mind. I could give many examples of the success of this conduct in the course of my life; but more especially in the latter part of my inhabiting this unhappy

happy island; besides many occasions which it is very likely I might have taken notice of, if I had seen with the same eyes then that I saw with now: but it is never too late to be wise; and I cannot but advise all considering men, whose lives are attended with such extraordinary incidents as mine, or even though not so extraordinary, not to slight such secret intimations of Providence, let them come from what invisible intelligence they will; that I shall not discuss, and perhaps cannot account for; but certainly they are a proof of the converse of spirits, and the secret communication between those embodied, and those unembodied; and such a proof as can never be withstood: of which I shall have occasion to give some very remarkable instances, in the remainder of my solitary residence in this dismal place.

I believe the reader of this will not think it strange, if I confess that these anxieties, these constant dangers I lived in, and the concern that was now upon me, put an end to all invention, and to all the contrivances, that I had laid for my future accommodations and conveniences. I had the care of my safety more now upon my hands than that of my food. I cared not to drive a nail, or chop a stick of wood now, for fear the noise I should make should be heard; much less would I fire a gun, for the same reason; and, above all, I was very uneasy at making any fire, lest the smoke, which is visible at a great distance in the day, should betray me; and for this reason I removed that part of my business which required fire, such as burning of pots and pipes, &c. into my new apartment in the woods; where, after I had been some time, I found, to my unspeakable consolation, a mere natural cave in the earth, which went in a vast way, and where, I dare say, no savage, had he been at the mouth of it, would be so hardy as to venture in; nor, indeed, would any man else, but one who, like me, wanted nothing so much as a safe retreat.

The mouth of this hollow was at the bottom of a great rock, where, by mere accident, (I would say, if I did not see an abundant reason to ascribe all such things now to Providence) I was cutting down some thick branches of trees to make charcoal—and, before

I go on, I must observe the reason of my making this charcoal; which was thus.

I was afraid of making a smoke about my habitation, as I said before; and yet I could not live there without baking my bread, cooking my meat, &c. so I contrived to burn some wood here, as I had seen done in England under turf, till it became chark, or dry coal; and then putting the fire out, I preserved the coal to carry home, and perform the other services, which fire was wanting for at home, without danger or smoke.

But this by the bye. While I was cutting down some wood here, I perceived that behind a very thick branch of low brush-wood, or under-wood, there was a kind of hollow place: I was curious to look into it; and getting, with difficulty, into the mouth of it, I found it was pretty large; that is to say, sufficient for me to stand upright in, and perhaps another with me; but I must confess to you, I made more haste out than I did in; when looking farther into the place, which was perfectly dark, I saw two broad shining eyes of some creature, whether devil or man, I knew not, which twinkled like two stars, the dim light from the cave's mouth shining directly in, and making the reflexion.

However, after some pause, I recovered myself, and began to call myself a thousand fools, and tell myself, that he that was afraid to see the devil, was not fit to live twenty years in an island all alone, and that I durst to believe, there was nothing in this cave that was more frightful than myself: upon this, plucking up my courage, I took up a large firebrand, and in I rushed again, with the stick flaming in my hand: I had not gone three steps in, but I was almost as much frightened as I was before; for I heard a very loud sigh, like that of a man in some pain; and it was followed by a broken noise, as if of words half expressed, and then a deep sigh again. I stepped back, and was indeed struck with such a surprize, that it put me into a cold sweat; and if I had had a hat on my head, I will not answer for it, that my hair might not have lifted it off. But still plucking up my spirits as well as I could, and encouraging myself a little, with consider-

ing that the power and presence of God was every where, and was able to protect me; upon this I stepped forward again, and by the light of the firebrand, holding it up a little over my head, I saw lying on the ground a most monstrous frightful old he-goat, just making his will, as we say, gasping for life, and dying indeed of mere old age.

I stirred him a little, to see if I could get him out; and he essayed to get up, but was not able to raise himself: and I thought with myself, he might e'en lie there; for if he had frightened me so, he would certainly fright any of the savages, if any of them should be so hardy as to come in there while he had any life in him.

I was now recovered from my surprise, and began to look round me, when I found the cave was but very small; that is to say, it might be about twelve feet over, but in no manner of shape, either round or square, no hands having ever been employed in making it but those of mere nature: I observed also, that there was a place at the farther side of it that went in farther, but so low, that it required me to creep upon my hands and knees to get into it; and whither it went, I knew not: so having no candle, I gave it over for some time, but resolved to come again the next day, provided with candles and a tinder-box, which I had made of the lock of one of the musquets, with some wildfire in the pan.

Accordingly, the next day, I came provided with six large candles of my own making, for I made very good candles now of goats tallow; and, going into this low place, I was obliged to creep upon all fours, as I have said, almost ten yards; which, by the way, I thought was a venture bold enough, considering that I knew not how far it might go, or what was beyond it: when I was got through the strait, I found the roof rose higher up, I believe near twenty feet; but never was such a glorious light seen in the island, I dare say, as it was, to look round the sides and roof of this vault or cave: the walls reflected an hundred thousand lights to me from my two candles; what it was in the rock, whether diamonds, or any other precious stones, or gold, which I rather supposed it to be, I knew not.

The place I was in was a most de-

lightful cavity, or grotto, of it's kind; as could be expected, though perfectly dark; the floor was dry and level, and had a sort of small loose gravel upon it; so that there was no nauseous creature to be seen; neither was there any damp or wet on the sides of the roof: the only difficulty in it was the entrance, which, however, as it was a place of security, and such a retreat as I wanted, I thought that was a convenience; so that I was really rejoiced at the discovery, and resolved, without any delay, to bring some of those things which I was most anxious about to this place; particularly, I resolved to bring hither my magazine of powder, and all my spare arms, viz. two fowling-pieces, (for I had three in all) and three musquets, (for of them I had eight in all;) so I kept at my castle only five, which stood ready mounted, like pieces of cannon, on my outmost fence; and were ready also to take out upon any expedition.

Upon this occasion of removing my ammunition, I was obliged to open the barrel of powder which I took up out of the sea, and which had been wet; and I found, that the water had penetrated about three or four inches into the powder on every side, which, caking and growing hard, had preserved the inside like a kernel in a shell; so that I had near sixty pounds of very good powder in the centre of the cask; and this was an agreeable discovery to me at that time; so I carried all away thither, never keeping above two or three pounds of powder with me in my castle, for fear of a surprize of any kind. I also carried thither all the lead I had left for bullets.

I fancied myself now like one of the ancient giants, which were said to live in caves and holes in the rocks, where none could come at them; for I persuaded myself while I was here, if five hundred savages were to hunt me, they could never find me out, or if they did, they would not venture to attack me here.

The old goat, which I found expiring, died in the mouth of the cave, the next day after I made this discovery; and I found it much easier to dig a great hole there, and throw him in and cover him with earth, than to drag him out: so I interred him there, to prevent offence to my nose.

I was now in my twenty-third year

of residence in this island, and was so naturalized to the place, and to the manner of living, that could I have but enjoyed the certainty that no savages would come to the place to disturb me, I could have been content to have capitulated for spending the rest of my time there, even to the last moment, till I had laid me down and died, like the old goat, in the cave: I had also arrived to some little diversions and amusements, which made the time pass more pleasantly with me a great deal than it did before; as, first, I had taught my Pol, as I noted before, to speak; and he did it so familiarly, and talked so articulately and plain, that it was very pleasant to me; and he lived with me no less than six and twenty years: how long he might live afterwards, I knew not; though I know they have a notion in the Brazils, that they live an hundred years; perhaps some of my Pols may be alive there still, calling after 'Poor Robinson Crusoe,' to this day: I wish no Englishman the ill luck to come there and hear them; but if he did, he would certainly believe it was the devil. My dog was a very pleasant and loving companion to me for no less than sixteen years of my time, and then died of mere old age; as for my cats, they multiplied, as I have observed, to that degree, that I was obliged to shoot several of them at first, to keep them from devouring me and all I had; but at length, when the two old ones I brought with me were gone, and after some time continually driving them from me, and letting them have no provision with me, they all ran wild into the woods, except two or three favourites, which I kept tame, and whose young, when they had any, I always drowned; and these were part of my family: besides these, I always kept two or three household kids about me, which I taught to feed out of my hand; and I had also more parrots, which talked pretty well, and would all call 'Robin Crusoe,' but none like my first; nor, indeed, did I take the pains with any of them that I had done with him: I had also several tame sea-fowls, whose names I know not, which I caught upon the shore, and cut their wings; and the little stakes, which I had planted before my castle wall, being now grown up to a good thick

grove, these fowls all lived among these low trees, and bred there, which was very agreeable to me; so that, as I said above, I began to be very well contented with the life I led, if it might but have been secured from the dread of savages.

But it was otherwise directed: and it might not be amiss for all people who shall meet with my story, to make this just observation from it; viz. how frequently, in the course of our lives, the evil, which in itself we seek most to shun, and which, when we are fallen into, is the most dreadful to us, is oftentimes the very means or door of our deliverance, by which alone we can be raised again from the affliction we are fallen into: I could give many examples of this in the course of my unaccountable life; but in nothing was it more particularly remarkable, than in the circumstances of my last years of solitary residence in this island.

It was now the month of December, as I said above, in my twenty-third year; and this being the southern solstice, for winter I cannot call it, was the particular time of my harvest, and required my being pretty much abroad in the fields; when going out pretty early in the morning, even before it was thorough day-light, I was surprized with seeing a light of some fire upon the shore, at a distance from me of about two miles, towards the end of the island, where I had observed some savages had been, as before; but not on the other side; but, to my great affliction, it was on my side of the island.

I was, indeed, terribly surprized at the sight, and stopped short within my grove, not daring to go out, lest I might be surprized; and yet I had no more peace within, from the apprehensions I had, that if these savages, in rambling over the island, should find my corn standing, or cut, or any of my works and improvements, they would immediately conclude that there were people in the place, and would then never give over till they found me out. In this extremity I went back directly to my castle, and pulled up the ladder after me, having made all things without look as wild and natural as I could.

Then I prepared myself within, putting myself in a posture of defence; I loaded all my cannon, as I called them,

that is to say, my musquets, which were mounted upon my new fortification, and all my pistols, and resolved to defend myself to the last gasp; not forgetting seriously to recommend myself to the Divine Protection, and earnestly to pray to God to deliver me out of the hands of the barbarians; and in this posture I continued about two hours, but began to be mighty impatient for intelligence abroad, for I had no spies to send out.

After sitting a while longer, and musing what I should do in this case, I was not able to bear sitting in ignorance longer; so setting up my ladder to the side of the hill, where there was a flat place, as I observed before, and then pulling the ladder up after me, I set it up again, and mounted to the top of the hill; and pulling out my perspective-glass, which I had taken on purpose, I laid me down flat on my belly on the ground, and began to look for the place: I presently found there were no less than nine naked savages sitting round a small fire they had made; not to warm them, for they had no need of that, the weather being extreme hot; but, as I suppose, to dress some of their barbarous diet of human flesh, which they had brought with them, whether alive or dead I could not know.

They had two canoes with them, which they had hauled up upon the shore; and as it was then tide of ebb, they seemed to me to wait the return of the flood to go away again. It is not easy to imagine what confusion this sight put me into, especially seeing them come on my side the island, and so near me too; but when I observed their coming must be always with the current of the ebb, I began afterwards to be more sedate in my mind, being satisfied that I might go abroad with safety, all the time of tide of flood, if they were not on shore before; and having made this observation, I went abroad about my harvest-work with the more composure.

As I expected, so it proved; for as soon as the tide made to the westward, I saw them all take boat, and row (or paddle, as we call it) all away: I should have observed, that for an hour and more before they went off, they went to dancing, and I could easily discern their postures and gestures by

my glasses: I could not perceive, by my nicest observations, but that they were stark-naked, and had not the least covering upon them; but whether they were men or women, that I could not distinguish.

As soon as I saw them shipped and gone, I took two guns upon my shoulders, and two pistols at my girdle, and my great sword by my side without a scabbard; and with all the speed I was able to make, I went away to the hill, where I had discovered the first appearance of all. As soon as I got thither, which was not less than two hours, (for I could not go apace, being so loaded with arms as I was) I perceived there had been three canoes more of savages on that place; and looking out farther, I saw they were all at sea together, making over for the main.

This was a dreadful sight to me, especially when going down to the shore, I could see the marks of horror which the dismal work they had been about had left behind it; viz. the blood, the bones, and part of the flesh of human bodies, eaten and devoured by those wretches with merriment and sport. I was so filled with indignation at the sight, that I began now to premeditate the destruction of the next that I saw there, let them be who or how many soever.

It seemed evident to me, that the visits which they thus made to this island, were not very frequent; for it was above fifteen months before any more of them were on shore there again; that is to say, I never saw them, or any footsteps or signals of them, in all that time; for as to the rainy seasons, then they are sure not to come abroad, at least not so far; yet, all this while I lived uncomfortably, by reason of the constant apprehensions I was in of their coming upon me by surprize: from whence I observe, that the expectation of evil is more bitter than the suffering, especially if there is no room to shake off that expectation or those apprehensions.

During all this time, I was in the murdering humour; and took up most of my hours, which should have been better employed, in contriving how to circumvent and fall upon them the very next time I should see them; especially if they should be divided,

as they were the last time, into two parties; nor did I consider at all, that if I killed one party, suppose ten or a dozen, I was still the next day, or week, or month, to kill another, and so another, even *ad infinitum*, till I should be at length no less a murderer than they were in being men-eaters, and perhaps much more so.

I spent my days now in great perplexity and anxiety of mind, expecting that I should, one day or other, fall into the hands of these merciless creatures; if I did at any time venture abroad, it was not without looking round me with the greatest care and caution imaginable; and now I found, to my great comfort, how happy it was that I had provided a tame flock or herd of goats; for I durst not, upon any account, fire my gun, especially near that side of the island where they usually came, lest I should alarm the savages; and if they had fled from me now, I was sure to have them come back again, with perhaps two or three hundred canoes with them in a few days; and then I knew what to expect.

However, I wore out a year and three months more, before I ever saw any more of the savages, and then I found them again, as I shall soon observe. It is true, they might have been there once or twice; but either they made no stay, or at least I did not hear them; but in the month of May, as near as I could calculate, and in my four and twentieth year, I had a very strange encounter with them, of which in it's place.

The perturbation of my mind, during this fifteen or sixteen months interval, was very great: I slept unquiet, dreamed always frightful dreams, and often started out of my sleep in the night; in the day great troubles overwhelmed my mind; in the night I dreamed often of killing the savages, and the reasons why I might justify the doing of it. But to wave all this for a while, it was in the middle of May, on the 16th day, I think, as well as my poor wooden calendar would reckon; for I marked all upon the post still; I say, it was on the 16th of May, that it blew a great storm of wind all day, with a great deal of lightning and thunder, and a very foul night was after it. I know not

what was the particular occasion of it, but as I was reading in the bible, and taken up with serious thoughts about my present condition, I was surprized with the noise of a gun; as I thought, fired at sea.

This was, to be sure, a surprize of a quite different nature from any I had met with before; for the notions this put into my thoughts were quite of another kind. I started up in the greatest haste imaginable; and in a trice clapped up my ladder to the middle place of the rock, and pulled it after me, and mounting it the second time, got to the top of the hill; that very moment a flash of fire bade me listen for a second gun, which, accordingly, in about half a moment, I heard, and by the sound knew that it was from that part of the sea where I was driven out with the current in my boat.

I immediately considered, that this must be some ship in distress, and that they had some comrade, or some other ship in company, and fired these guns for signals of distress, and to obtain help. I had this presence of mind at that minute, as to think, that though I could not help them, it may be they might help me; so I brought together all the dry wood I could get at hand, and making a good handsome pile, I set it on fire upon the hill; the wood was dry, and blazed freely, and though the wind blew very hard, yet it burnt fairly out; so that I was certain, if there was any such thing as a ship, they must need see it, and no doubt they did; for as soon as ever my fire blazed up, I heard another gun, and after that several others, all from the same quarter. I plied my fire all night long, till day broke; and when it was broad day, and the air cleared up, I saw something at a great distance at sea, full east of the island, whether a sail, or an hull, I could not distinguish, no not with my glasses, the distance was so great, and the weather still something hazy also; at least it was so out at sea.

I looked frequently at it all that day, and soon perceived, that it did not move; so I presently concluded, that it was a ship at anchor; and being eager, you may be sure, to be satisfied, I took my gun in my hand, and ran towards the south-east side of the island.

island, to the rocks, where I had been formerly carried away with the current; and getting up there, the weather by this time being perfectly clear, I could plainly see; to my great sorrow, the wreck of a ship cast away in the night upon those concealed rocks which I found when I was out in my boat; and which rocks, as they checked the violence of the stream, and made a kind of counter-stream or eddy, were the occasion of my recovering then from the most desperate, hopeless condition that ever I had been in in all my life!

Thus, what is one man's safety, is another man's destruction; for it seems, these men, whoever they were, being out of their knowledge, and the rocks being wholly under water, had been driven upon them in the night, the wind blowing hard at E. and E. N. E. Had they seen the island, as I must necessarily suppose they did not, they must, as I thought, have endeavoured to have saved themselves on shore by the help of their boat; but their firing of their guns for help, especially when they saw, as I imagined, my fire, filled me with many thoughts. First, I imagined, that, upon seeing my light, they might have put themselves into their boat, and have endeavoured to make the shore; but that the sea going very high, they might have been cast away; other times I imagined, that they might have lost their boat before, as might be the case many ways; as particularly, by the breaking of the sea upon their ship, which many times obliges men to stave or take in pieces their boat, and sometimes to throw it overboard with their own hands: other times I imagined, they had some other ship or ships in company, who, upon the signals of distress they had made, had taken them up, and carried them off: other whiles I fancied, they were all gone off to sea in their boat, and being hurried away by the current that I had been formerly in, were carried out into the great ocean, where there was nothing but misery and perishing; and that perhaps they might by this time think of starving, and of being in a condition to eat one another.

As all these were but conjectures at best, so, in the condition I was in, I could do no more than look upon the misery of the poor men, and pity them; which had still this good effect on my

side, that it gave me more and more cause to give thanks to God, who had so happily and comfortably provided for me in my desolate condition; and that of two ships companies who were now cast away upon this part of the world, not one life should be spared but mine. I learned here again to observe, that it is very rare, that the providence of God casts us into any condition of life so low, or any misery so great, but we may see something or other to be thankful for, and may see others in worse circumstances than our own.

Such certainly was the case of these men, of whom I could not so much as see room to suppose any of them were saved; nothing could make it rational, so much as to wish or expect that they did not all perish there, except the possibility only of their being taken up by another ship in company: and this was but mere possibility indeed; for I saw not the least signal or appearance of any such thing.

I cannot explain, by any possible energy of words, what a strange longing, or hankering of desire, I felt in my soul upon this sight; breaking out sometimes thus: 'O that there had been but one or two, nay, or but one soul saved out of the ship, to have escaped to me; that I might but have had one companion, one fellow-creature, to have spoken to me, and to have conversed with!' In all the time of my solitary life, I never felt so earnest, so strong a desire after the society of my fellow-creatures, or so deep a regret at the want of it.

There are some secret moving springs in the affections, which, when they are set a going by some object in view, or be it some object though not in view, yet rendered present to the mind by the power of imagination, that motion carries out the soul by its impetuosity to such violent, eager embracings of the object, that the absence of it is insupportable!

Such were these earnest wishings, that but one man had been saved! 'O that it had been but one!' I believe I repeated the words, 'O that it had been but one!' a thousand times; and my desires were so moved by it, that when I spoke the words, my hands would clench together, and my fingers press the palms of my hands, that if I had

had had any soft thing in my hand, it would have crushed it involuntarily; and my teeth in my head would strike together, and set against one another so strong, that for some time I could not part them again.

Let the naturalists explain these things, and the reason and manner of them: all I can say of them is, to describe the fact, which was ever surprising to me when I found it, though I knew not from what it should proceed; it was doubtless the effects of ardent wishes, and of strong ideas formed in my mind, realizing the comfort which the conversation of one of my fellow-christians would have been to me.

But it was not to be; either their fate or mine, or both, forbid it; for till the last year of my being on this island, I never knew whether any were saved out of that ship or no; and had only the affliction, some days after, to see the corpse of a drowned boy come on shore, at the end of the island, which was next the shipwreck: he had on no clothes, but a seaman's waistcoat, a pair of open-kneed linen drawers, and a blue linen shirt; but nothing to direct me so much as to guess what nation he was of. He had nothing in his pocket but two pieces of eight, and a tobacco-pipe; the last was to me of ten times more value than the first.

It was now calm, and I had a great mind to venture out in my boat to this wreck, not doubting but I might find something on board, that might be useful to me; but that did not altogether press me so much, as the possibility that there might be yet some living creature on board, whose life I might not only save, but might, by saving that life, comfort my own to the last degree. And this thought clung so to my heart, that I could not be quiet, night nor day, but I must venture out in my boat on board this wreck; and committing the rest to God's providence, I thought the impression was so strong upon my mind, that it could not be resisted, that it must come from some invisible direction, and that I should be wanting to myself if I did not go.

Under the power of this impression, I hastened back to my castle, prepared every thing for my voyage, took a

quantity of bread, a great pot for fresh water, a compass to steer by, a bottle of rum, (for I had still a great deal of that left) a basket full of raisins; and thus loading myself with every thing necessary, I went down to my boat, got the water out of her, and got her afloat, loaded all my cargo in her, and then went home again for more: my second cargo was a great bag full of rice, the umbrella to set up over my head for shade, another large pot full of fresh water, and about two dozen of my small loaves, or barley cakes, more than before, with a bottle of goat's milk, and a cheese; all which, with great labour and sweat, I brought to my boat; and praying to God to direct my voyage, I put out, and rowing or paddling the canoe along the shore, I came at last to the utmost point of the island, on that side, viz. N. E. And now I was to launch out into the ocean, and either to venture or not to venture; I looked on the rapid currents which ran constantly on both sides of the island, at a distance, and which were very terrible to me, from the remembrance of the hazard I had been in before, and my heart began to fail me; for I foresaw, that if I was driven into either of those currents, I should be carried a vast way out to sea, and perhaps out of my reach, or sight of the island again; and that then, as my boat was but small, if any little gale of wind should rise, I should be inevitably lost.

These thoughts so oppressed my mind, that I began to give over my enterprize, and having hauled my boat into a little creek on the shore, I stepped out, and sat me down upon a little spot of rising ground, very pensive and anxious, between fear and desire about my voyage; when, as I was musing, I could perceive that the tide was turned, and the flood came on, upon which my going was for so many hours impracticable: upon this it presently occurred to me, that I should go up to the highest piece of ground I could find, and observe, if I could, how the sets of the tide or currents lay, when the flood came in, that I might judge whether, if I was driven one way out, I might not expect to be driven another way home, with the same rapidness of the currents. This thought was no sooner in my head, but I cast my

my eye upon a little hill which sufficiently overlooked the sea both ways, and from whence I had a clear view of the currents, or sets of the tide, and which way I was to guide myself in my return. Here I found, that as the current of the ebb set out close by the south point of the island, so the current of the flood set in close by the shore of the north side; and that I had nothing to do but to keep to the north of the island in my return, and I should do well enough.

Encouraged with this observation, I resolved the next morning to set out with the first of the tide; and reposing myself for that night in the canoe, under the great watch-coat I mentioned, I launched out: I made first a little out to sea full north, till I began to feel the benefit of the current, which set eastward, and which carried me at a great rate; and yet did not so hurry me as the southern-side current had done before, and so as to take from me all government of the boat; but having a strong steerage with my paddle, I went, I say, at a great rate, directly for the wreck, and in less than two hours I came up to it.

It was a dismal sight to look at: the ship, which by its building was Spanish, stuck fast, jammed in between two rocks; all the stern and quarter of her was beaten to pieces with the sea; and as her fore-castle, which struck in the rocks, had run on with great violence, her main-mast and fore-mast were brought by the board, that is to say, broken short off; but her bowsprit was sound, and the head and bow appeared firm: when I came close to her, a dog appeared upon her; which, seeing me coming, yelped and cried, and as soon as I called him, jumped into the sea, to come to me; and I took him into the boat, but found him almost dead for hunger and thirst: I gave him a cake of my bread, and he eat like a ravenous wolf, that had been starving a fortnight in the snow; I then gave the poor creature some fresh water, with which, if I would have let him, he would have burst himself.

After this I went on board: the first sight I met with, was two men drowned in the cook-room, or fore-castle of the ship, with their arms fast about one another. I concluded, as is indeed probable, that when the ship

struck, it being in a storm, the sea broke so high, and so continually over her, that the men were not able to bear it, and were strangled with the constant rushing in of the water, as much as if they had been under water: besides the dog, there was nothing left in the ship that had life, nor any goods that I could see, but what were spoiled by the water: there were some casks of liquor, whether wine or brandy, I knew not, which lay lower in the hold, and which, the water being ebbed out, I could see; but they were too big to meddle with. I saw several chests, which I believed belonged to some of the seamen, and I got two of them into the boat, without examining what was in them.

Had the stern of the ship been fixed, and the fore-part broken off, I am persuaded I might have made a good voyage; for by what I found in these two chests, I had room to suppose the ship had a great deal of wealth on board; and if I may guess by the course she steered, she must have been bound from the Buenos Ayres, or the Rio de la Plata, in the south part of America, beyond the Brazils, to the Havannah, in the Gulph of Mexico, and so perhaps to Spain: she had, no doubt, a great treasure in her, but of no use at that time to any body; and what became of the rest of her people I then knew not.

I found, besides these chests, a little cask full of liquor, of about twenty gallons, which I got into my boat with much difficulty: there were several musquets in a cask, and a great powder-horn, with about four pounds of powder in it; as for the musquets, I had no occasion for them, so I left them, but took the powder-horn: I took a fire-shovel and tongs, which I wanted extremely; as also two little brass kettles, a copper pot to make chocolate, and a gridiron; and with this cargo, and the dog, I came away, the tide beginning to make home again; and the same evening, about an hour within night, I reached the island again, weary and fatigued to the last degree.

I reposed that night in the boat, and in the morning I resolved to harbour what I had gotten in my new cave; not to carry it home to my castle: after refreshing myself, I got all my cargo

cargo on shore, and began to examine the particulars: the cask of liquor I found to be a kind of rum, but not such as we had at the Brazils; and, in a word, not at all good; but when I came to open the chests, I found several things which I wanted: for example, I found in one a fine case of bottles, of an extraordinary kind, and filled with cordial waters, fine, and very good; the bottles held about three pints each, and were tipped with silver. I found two pots of very good succades, or sweetmeats, so fastened also on the top, that the salt-water had not hurt them; and two more of the same, which the water had spoiled. I found some very good shirts, which were very welcome to me, and about a dozen and a half of white linen handkerchiefs and coloured neckcloths; the former were also very welcome, being exceeding refreshing to wipe my face in a hot day; besides this, when I came to the till in the chests, I found there three great bags of pieces of eight, which held about eleven hundred pieces in all; and in one of them, wrapt up in a paper, six doubloons of gold, and some small bars or wedges of gold: I suppose they might all weigh near a pound.

The other chest I found had some clothes in it, but of little value; but by the circumstances it must have belonged to the gunner's mate; though there was no powder in it, but about two pounds of glazed powder in the three flasks, kept, I suppose, for charging their fowling-pieces on occasion: upon the whole, I got very little by this voyage, that was of much use to me; for, as to the money, I had no manner of occasion for it; it was to me as the dirt under my feet; and I would have given it all for three or four pair of English shoes and stockings, which were things I greatly wanted, but had not had on my feet now for many years: I had, indeed, gotten two pair of shoes now, which I took off of the feet of the two drowned men, whom I saw in the wreck; and I found two pair more in one of the chests, which were very welcome to me, but they were not like our English shoes, either for ease or service, being rather what we call pumps than shoes. I found in this seaman's chest about fifty pieces of eight in roy-

als, but no gold: I suppose, this belonged to a poorer man than the other, which seemed to belong to some officer.

Well, however, I lugged this money home to my cave, and laid it up, as I had done that before, which I brought from our own ship; but it was great pity, as I said, that the other part of the ship had not come to my share; for I am satisfied I might have loaded my canoe several times over with money, which, if I had ever escaped to England, would have lain here safe enough till I might have come again and fetched it.

Having now brought all my things on shore, and secured them, I went back to my boat, and rowed or paddled her along the shore to her old harbour, where I laid her up, and made the best of my way to my old habitation, where I found every thing safe and quiet; so I began to repose myself, live after my old fashion, and take care of my family affairs; and, for a while, I lived easy enough; only that I was more vigilant than I used to be, looked out oftener, and did not go abroad so much; and if at any time I did stir with any freedom, it was always to the east part of the island, where I was pretty well satisfied the savages never came, and where I could go without so many precautions, and such a load of arms and ammunition as I always carried with me if I went the other way.

I lived in this condition near two years more; but my unlucky head, that was always to let me know, it was born to make my body miserable, was all those two years filled with projects and designs, how, if it were possible, I might get away from this island; for sometimes I was for making another voyage to the wreck, though my reason told me that there was nothing left there worth the hazard of my voyage: sometimes for a ramble one way, sometimes another; and I believe verily, if I had had the boat that I went from Sallee in, I should have ventured to sea, bound any where, I knew not whither.

I have been, in all my circumstances, a memento to those who are touched with that general plague of mankind, whence, for aught I know, one half of their miseries flow; I mean, that

of not being satisfied with the station wherein God and nature hath placed them; for, not to look back upon my primitive condition, and the excellent advice of my father, the opposition to which was, as I may call it, my original sin, my subsequent mistakes of the same kind have been the means of my coming into this miserable condition; for had that Providence, which so happily had seated me at the Brazils, as a planter, blessed me with confined desires, and could I have been contented to have gone on gradually, I might have been by this time, I mean in the time of my being on this island, one of the most considerable planters in the Brazils; nay, I am persuaded, that by the improvements I had made in that little time I lived there, and the increase I should probably have made, if I had stayed, I might have been worth an hundred thousand moidores; and what business had I to leave a settled fortune, well stocked plantation, improving and increasing, to turn supercargo to Guinea, to fetch Negroes, when patience and time would have so increased our stock at home, that we could have bought them at our own doors, from those whose business it was to fetch them? And though it had cost us something more, yet the difference of that price was by no means worth saving at so great a hazard.

But as this is ordinarily the fate of young heads, so reflection upon the folly of it is as ordinarily the exercise of more years, or of the dear bought experience of time; and so it was with me now; and yet so deep had the mistake taken root in my temper, that I could not satisfy myself in my station, but was continually poring upon the means and possibility of my escape from this place; and that I may, with the greater pleasure to the reader, bring on the remaining part of my story, it may not be improper to give some account of my first conceptions on the subject of this foolish scheme for my escape, and how and upon what foundation I acted.

I am now to be supposed to be retired into my castle, after my late voyage to the wreck, my frigate laid up, and secured under water as usual, and my condition restored to what it was before: I had more wealth, indeed, than

I had before, but was not at all the richer; for I had no more use for it, than the Indians of Peru had before the Spaniards came thither.

It was one of the nights in the rainy season in March, the four and twentieth year of my first setting foot in this island of solitariness, I was lying in my bed, or hammock, awake, very well in health, had no pain, no distemper, no uneasiness of body, no, nor any uneasiness of mind more than ordinary, but could by no means close my eyes; that is, so as to sleep; no, not a wink all night long, otherwise than as follows.

It is as impossible as needless, to set down the innumerable crowd of thoughts that whirled through that great thoroughfare of the brain, the memory, in this night's time: I ran over the whole history of my life in miniature, or by abridgement, as I may call it, to my coming to this island; and also of that part of my life since I came to this island; in my reflections upon the state of my case, since I came on shore on this island, I was comparing the happy posture of my affairs, in the first years of my habitation here, to that course of anxiety, fear, and care, which I had lived in ever since I had seen the print of a foot in the sand; not that I did not believe the savages had frequented the island even all the while, and might have been several hundred of them at times on shore there; but as I had never known it, and was incapable of any apprehensions about it, my satisfaction was perfect, though my danger was the same; and I was as happy in not knowing my danger, as if I had never really been exposed to it; this furnished my thoughts with many very profitable reflections, and particularly this one: 'How infinitely good that Providence is, which has settled in it's government of mankind such narrow bounds to his sight and knowledge of things; and though he walks in the midst of so many thousand dangers, the sight of which, if discovered to him, would distract his mind, and sink his spirits, he is kept serene and calm, by having the events of things hid from his eyes, and knowing nothing of the dangers which surround him.'

After these thoughts had for some

time entertained me, I came to reflect seriously upon the real danger I had been in for so many years in this very island; and how I had walked about in the greatest security, and with all possible tranquillity, even when perhaps nothing but a brow of an hill, a great tree, or the casual approach of night, had been between me and the worst kind of destruction; viz. that of falling into the hands of cannibals and savages, who would have seized on me with the same view as I did on a goat or a turtle, and have thought it no more a crime to kill and devour me, than I did of a pigeon or a curlew; I should unjustly slander myself, if I should say I was not sincerely thankful to my Great Preserver, to whose singular protection I acknowledged, with great humility, that all these unknown deliverances were due, and without which I should inevitably have fallen into their merciless hands.

When these thoughts were over, my head was for some time taken up in considering the nature of these wretched creatures; I mean, the savages; and how it came to pass in the world, that the Wise Governor of all things should give up any of his creatures to such inhumanity, nay, to something so much below even brutality itself, as to devour it's own kind: but as this ended in some (at that time fruitless) speculations, it occurred to me to enquire what part of the world these wretches lived in; how far off the coast was from whence they came; what they ventured so far from home for; what kind of boats they had; and why I might not order myself, and my business so, that I might be as able to go over thither, as they were to come to me.

I never so much as troubled myself to consider, what I should do with myself when I came thither; what should become of me, if I fell into the hands of the savages; or how I should escape from them, if they attempted me; no, nor so much as how it was possible for me to reach the coast, and not be attempted by some or other of them, without any possibility of delivering myself; and if I should not fall into their hands, what I should do for provision, or whither I should bend my course; none of these thoughts, I say, so much as came in my way; but

my mind was wholly bent upon the notion of my passing over in my boat to the main land: I looked back upon my present condition, as the most miserable that could possibly be; that I was not able to throw myself into any thing but death that could be called worse; that if I reached the shore of the main, I might, perhaps, meet with relief; or I might coast along, as I did on the shore of Africa, till I came to some inhabited country, and where I might find some relief, and after all, perhaps, I might fall in with some Christian ship that might take me in; and if the worst came to the worst, I could but die, which would put an end to all these miseries at once. Pray note, all this was the fruit of a disturbed mind, an impatient temper, made, as it were, desperate by the long continuance of my troubles, and the disappointments I had met in the wreck I had been on board of, and where I had been so near the obtaining of what I so earnestly longed for, viz. somebody to speak to, and to learn some knowledge from, of the place where I was, and of the probable means of my deliverance: I say, I was agitated wholly by these thoughts. All my calm of mind in my resignation to Providence, and waiting the issue of the dispositions of Heaven, seemed to be suspended; and I had, as it were, no power to turn my thoughts to anything; but the project of a voyage to the main, which came upon me with such force, and such an impetuosity of desire, that it was not to be resisted.

When this had agitated my thoughts for two hours or more, with such violence, that it set my very blood into a ferment, and my pulse beat as high as if I had been in a fever, merely with the extraordinary fervour of my mind about it; nature, as if I had been fatigued and exhausted with the very thought of it, threw me into a sound sleep: one would have thought I should have dreamed of it; but I did not, nor of any thing relating to it; but I dreamed, that as I was going out in the morning, as usual, from my castle, I saw upon the shore two canoes, and eleven savages coming to land, and that they brought with them another savage, whom they were going to kill, in order to eat him; when, on a sudden, the savage that they were going

going to kill jumped away, and ran for his life; then I thought in my sleep, that he came running into my little thick grove, before my fortification, to hide himself; and that I, seeing him alone, and not perceiving that the others sought him that way, shewed myself to him, and smiling upon him, encouraged him: that he kneeled down to me, seeming to pray me to assist him; upon which I shewed my ladder, made him go up it, and carried him into my cave, and he became my servant; and that as soon as I had gotten this man, I said to myself, 'Now I may certainly venture to the main land; for this fellow will serve me as a pilot, and will tell me what to do, and whither to go for provisions, and whither not to go for fear of being devoured; what places to venture into, and what to escape.' I waked with this thought, and was under such inexpressible impressions of joy at the prospect of my escape in my dream, that the disappointments which I felt upon coming to myself, and finding it was no more than a dream, were equally extravagant the other way, and threw me into a very great dejection of spirit.

Upon this, however, I made this conclusion; that my only way to go about an attempt for an escape, was, if possible, to get a savage in my possession; and, if possible, it should be one of their prisoners whom they had condemned to be eaten, and should bring hither to kill; but these thoughts still were attended with this difficulty, that it was impossible to effect this, without attacking a whole caravan of them, and killing them all; and this was not only a very desperate attempt, and might miscarry; but, on the other hand, I had greatly scrupled the lawfulness of it to me, and my heart trembled at the thoughts of shedding so much blood, though it was for my deliverance: I need not repeat the arguments which occurred to me against this, they being the same mentioned before; but though I had other reasons to offer now; viz. that those men were enemies to my life, and would devour me, if they could; that it was self-preservation, in the highest degree, to deliver myself from this death of a life, and was acting in my own de-

fence, as much as if they were actually assaulting me, and the like; I say, though these things argued for it, yet the thoughts of shedding human blood for my deliverance were very terrible to me, and such as I could by no means reconcile myself to a great while.

However, at last, after many secret disputes with myself, and after great perplexities about it (for all these arguments, one way and another, struggled in my head a long time) the eager prevailing desire of deliverance at length mastered all the rest; and I resolved, if possible, to get one of these savages into my hands, cost what it would: my next thing then was to contrive how to do it; and this, indeed, was very difficult to resolve on: but as I could pitch upon no probable means for it, so I resolved to put myself upon the watch, to see them when they came on shore, and leave the rest to the event, taking such measures as the opportunity should present, let it be what it would.

With these resolutions in my thoughts, I set myself upon the scout, as often as possible, and indeed so often, till I was heartily tired of it; for it was above a year and a half that I waited, and for a great part of that time went out to the west end, and to the south-west corner of the island, almost every day, to see the canoes, but none appeared: this was very discouraging, and began to trouble me much; though I cannot say that it did in this case as it had done some time before that, viz. wear off the edge of my desire to the thing; but the longer it seemed to be delayed, the more eager I was for it: in a word, I was not at first more careful to shun the sight of these savages, and avoid being seen by them, than I was now eager to be upon them.

Besides, I fancied myself able to manage one, nay, two or three savages, if I had them, so as to make them entirely slaves to me, to do whatever I should direct them, and to prevent their being able, at any time, to do me any hurt. It was a great while that I pleased myself with this affair, but nothing still presented; all my fancies and schemes came to nothing, for no savages came near me for a great while.

About a year and a half after I had entertained these notions, and, by long musing, had, as it were, resolved them all into nothing, for want of an occasion to put them in execution, I was surprized one morning early, with seeing no less than five canoes all on shore together, on my side the island, and the people who belonged to them all landed, and out of my sight: the number of them broke all my measures; for seeing so many, and knowing that they always came four, or six, or sometimes more, in a boat, I could not tell what to think of it, or how to take my measures to attack twenty or thirty men single handed; so I lay still in my castle, perplexed, and discomfited; however, I put myself into all the same postures for an attack that I had formerly provided, and was just ready for action, if any thing had presented: having waited a good while, listening to hear if they made any noise, at length being very impatient, I set my guns at the foot of my ladder, and clambered up to the top of the hill by my two stages, as usual; standing so, however, that my head did not appear above the hill; so that they could not perceive me by any means: here I observed, by the help of my perspective-glass, that they were no less than thirty in number, that they had a fire kindled, and that they had had meat dressed; how they cooked it, that I know not, or what it was; but they were all dancing, in I know not how many barbarous gestures and figures, their own way, round the fire.

When I was thus looking on them, I perceived by my perspective two miserable wretches dragged from the boats, where, it seems, they were laid by, and were now brought out for the slaughter. I perceived one of them immediately fall, being knocked down, I suppose, with a club or wooden sword, for that was their way; and two or three others were at work immediately, cutting him open for their cookery, while the other victim was left standing by himself, till they should be ready for him: in that very moment, this poor wretch seeing himself a little at liberty, nature inspired him with hopes of life, and he started away from them, and ran with incredible swiftness along the sands, directly towards me; I mean, towards that

part of the coast where my habitation was.

I was dreadfully frightened (that I must acknowledge) when I perceived him to run my way; and especially when, as I thought, I saw him pursued by the whole body; and now I expected that part of my dream was coming to pass, and that he would certainly take shelter in my grove; but I could not depend, by any means, upon my dream for the rest of it; viz. that the other savages would not pursue him thither, and find him there; however, I kept my station, and my spirits began to recover, when I found that there were not above three men that followed him; and still more was I encouraged, when I found that he outstript them exceedingly in running, and gained ground of them, so that if he could but hold it for half an hour, I saw easily he would fairly get away from them all.

There was between them and my castle the creek, which I mentioned often at the first part of my story, when I landed my cargoes out of the ship; and this I knew he must necessarily swim over, or the poor wretch would be taken there: but when the savage escaping came thither, he made nothing of it, though the tide was then up; but plunging in, swam through in about thirty strokes, or thereabouts, landed, and ran on with exceeding strength and swiftness: when the three pursuers came to the creek, I found that two of them could swim, but the third could not, and that he, standing on the other side, looked at the other, but went no farther, and soon after went softly back again; which, as it happened, was very well for him in the main.

I observed that the two who swam, were yet more than twice as long swimming over the creek than the fellow was that fled from them: it came now very warmly upon my thoughts, and indeed irresistibly, that now was my time to get me a servant, and perhaps a companion or assistant, and that I was called plainly by Providence to save this poor creature's life. I immediately got down the ladders with all possible expedition, fetched my two guns, for they were both at the foot of the ladder, as I observed above; and getting up again with the

same

same haste to the top of the hill, I crossed towards the sea; and, having a very short cut, and all down-hill, clapped myself in the way between the pursuers and the pursued, hallooing aloud to him that fled; who, looking back, was at first perhaps as much frightened at me as at them; but I beckoned with my hand to him to come back; and in the mean time, I slowly advanced towards the two that followed; then rushing at once upon the foremost, I knocked him down with the stock of my piece: I was loth to fire, because I would not have the rest hear; though at that distance it would not have been easily heard; and being out of sight of the smoke too, they would not have easily known what to make of it. Having knocked this fellow down, the other who pursued him stopped, as if he had been frightened, and I advanced apace towards him; but as I came nearer, I perceived presently he had a bow and arrow, and was fitting it to shoot at me; so I was then necessitated to shoot at him first; which I did, and killed him at the first shot. The poor savage who fled, but had stopped, though he saw both his enemies fallen, and killed (as he thought) yet was so frightened with the fire and noise of my piece, that he stood stock-still, and neither came forward, nor went backward, though he seemed rather inclined to fly still than to come on. I hallooed again to him, and made signs to come forward, which he easily understood, and came a little way, then stopped again, and then a little farther, and stopped again; and I could then perceive that he stood trembling, as if he had been taken prisoner, and had just been to be killed, as his two enemies were. I beckoned him again to come to me, and gave him all the signs of encouragement that I could think of; and he came nearer and nearer, kneeling down every ten or twelve steps, in token of acknowledgment for saving his life. I smiled at him, and looked pleasantly, and beckoned to him to come still nearer. At length he came close to me, and then he kneeled down again, kissed the ground, and laid his head upon the ground, and taking me by the foot, set my foot upon his head: this, it seems, was in token of swearing to be my slave for ever. I took

him up, and made much of him, and encouraged him all I could. But there was more work to do yet; for I perceived the savage, whom I knocked down, was not killed, but stunned with the blow, and began to come to himself: so I pointed to him, and shewed him the savage, that he was not dead; upon this he spoke some words to me, and though I could not understand them, yet I thought they were pleasant to hear, for they were the first sound of a man's voice that I had heard (my own excepted) for above five and twenty years: but there was no time for such reflections now; the savage, who was knocked down, recovered himself so far, as to sit up upon the ground; and I perceived that my savage began to be afraid; but when I saw that, I presented my other piece at the man, as if I would shoot him; upon this my savage, for so I call him now, made a motion to me to lend him my sword, which hung naked in a belt by my side; so I did: he no sooner had it, but he runs to his enemy, and at one blow cut off his head so cleverly, no executioner in Germany could have done it sooner or better; which I thought it very strange for one, who, I had reason to believe, never saw a sword in his life before, except their own wooden swords; however, it seems, as I learned afterwards, they made their wooden swords so sharp, so heavy, and the wood is so hard, that they will cut off heads even with them, ay, and arms, and that at one blow too. When he had done this, he comes laughing to me in sign of triumph, and brought me the sword again; and with abundance of gestures, which I did not understand, laid it down; with the head of the savage that he had killed, just before me.

But that which astonished him most was, to know how I had killed the other Indian so far off; so pointing to him, he made signs to me to let him go to him: so I bade him go, as well as I could. When he came to him, he stood like one amazed, looking at him; turned him first on one side, then on the other; looked at the wound the bullet had made, which, it seems, was just in his breast, where it had made an hole, and no great quantity of blood had followed, but he had bled inwardly, for he

he was quite dead. Then he took up his bow and arrows, and came back; so I turned to go away, and beckoned to him to follow me, making signs to him, that more might come after them.

Upon this he signified to me, that he should bury them with sand, that they might not be seen by the rest, if they followed; and so I made signs again to him to do so. He fell to work, and in an instant he had scraped an hole in the sand with his hands, big enough to bury the first in, and then dragged him into it, and covered him; and did so also by the other. I believe he had buried them both in a quarter of an hour. Then calling him away, I carried him not to my castle, but quite away to my cave, on the farther part of the island; so I did not let my dream come to pass in that part, viz. that he came into my grove for shelter.

Here I gave him bread, and a bunch of raisins to eat, and a draught of water, which I found he was indeed in great distress for by his running; and having refreshed him, I made signs for him to go lie down and sleep, pointing to a place where I had laid a great parcel of rice straw, and a blanket upon it, which I used to sleep upon myself sometimes; so the poor creature lay down, and went to sleep.

He was a comely, handsome fellow, perfectly well made, with straight long limbs, not too large, tall, and well-shaped; and, as I reckon, about twenty-six years of age. He had a very good countenance, not a fierce and surly aspect, but seemed to have something very manly in his face, and yet he had all the sweetness and softness of an European in his countenance too, especially when he smiled: his hair was long and black, not curled like wool; his forehead very high and large, and a great vivacity and sparkling sharpness in his eyes. The colour of his skin was not quite black, but very tawny, and yet not of an ugly yellow, nauseous tawny, as the Brazilians and Virginians, and other natives of America are, but of a bright kind of a dun olive colour, that had in it something very agreeable, though not very easy to describe. His face was round and plump, his nose small, not flat like the Negroes; a very good mouth, thin lips, and his teeth fine, well-set, and

white as ivory. After he had flumbered, rather than slept, about half an hour, he waked again, and comes out of the cave to me, for I had been milking my goats which I had in the inclosure just by. When he espied me, he came running to me, laying himself down again upon the ground, with all the possible signs of an humble thankful disposition, making many antick gestures to shew it. At last he lays his head flat upon the ground, close to my foot, and sets my other foot upon his head, as he had done before; and after this made all the signs to me of subjection, servitude, and submission imaginable, to let me know how much he would serve me as long as he lived. I understood him in many things, and let him know I was very well pleased with him. In a little time I began to speak to him, and teach him to speak to me; and first, I made him know his name should be Friday, which was the day I saved his life, and I called him so for the memory of the time; I likewise taught him to say 'Master,' and then let him know that was to be my name; I likewise taught him to say *Yes* and *No*, and to know the meaning of them; I gave him some milk in an earthen pot, and let him see me drink it before him, and sop my bread in it; and I gave him a cake of bread to do the like, which he quickly complied with, and made signs that it was very good for him.

I kept there with him all that night, but as soon as it was day, I beckoned him to come with me, and let him know I would give him some cloaths, at which he seemed very glad, for he was stark-naked. As we went by the place where he had buried the two men, he pointed exactly to the spot, and shewed me the marks that he had made to find them again, making signs to me that we should dig them up again, and eat them; at this I appeared very angry, expressed my abhorrence of it, made as if I would vomit at the thoughts of it, and beckoned with my hand to him to come away, which he did immediately with great submission. I then led him up to the top of the hill, to see if his enemies were gone, and pulling out my glass, I looked, and saw plainly the place where they had been, but no appearance of them, or of their canoes; so that

that it was plain that they were gone, and had left their two comrades behind them, without any search after them.

But I was not content with this discovery; but having now more courage, and consequently more curiosity, I took my man Friday with me, giving him the sword in his hand, with the bow and arrows at his back, which I found he could use very dexterously, making him carry one gun for me, and I two for myself, and away we marched to the place where these creatures had been; for I had a mind now to get some fuller intelligence of them. When I came to the place, my very blood ran chill in my veins, and my heart sunk within me at the horror of the spectacle. Indeed it was a dreadful sight, at least it was so to me, though Friday made nothing of it. The place was covered with human bones, the ground dyed with the blood, great pieces of flesh left here and there half-eaten, mangled, and scoured; and, in short, all the tokens of the triumphant feast they had been making there, after a victory over their enemies. I saw three skulls, five hands, and the bones of three or four legs and feet, and abundance of other parts of the bodies; and Friday, by his signs, made me understand, that they brought over four prisoners to feast upon; that three of them were eaten up, and that he, pointing to himself, was the fourth; that there had been a great battle between them and their next king, whose subjects, it seems, he had been one of; and that they had taken a great number of prisoners, all which were carried to several places by those that had taken them in the flight, in order to feast upon them, as was done here by these wretches upon those they brought hither.

I caused Friday to gather all the skulls, bones, flesh, and whatever remained, and lay them together on an heap, and make a great fire upon it, and burn them all to ashes. I found Friday had still an hankering stomach after some of the flesh, and was still a cannibal in his nature; but I discovered so much abhorrence at the very thoughts of it, and at the least appearance of it, that he durst not discover it; for I had, by some means, let him

know, that I would kill him if he offered it.

When we had done this, we came back to our castle, and there I fell to work for my man Friday; and first of all, I gave him a pair of linen drawers, which I had out of the poor gunner's chest I mentioned, and which I found in the wreck; and which, with a little alteration, fitted him very well; then I made him a jerkin of goat's skin, as well as my skill would allow, and I was now grown a tolerable good taylor; and I gave him a cap, which I had made of an hare-skin, very convenient, and fashionable enough: and thus he was dressed, for the present, tolerably well, and mighty well was he pleased to see himself almost as well clothed as his master. It is true, he went awkwardly in these things at first: wearing the drawers was very awkward to him, and the sleeves of the waistcoat galled his shoulders and the inside of his arms; but a little easing them, where he complained they hurt him, and using himself to them, at length he took to them very well.

The next day after I came home to my hut with him, I began to consider where I should lodge him; and that I might do well for him, and yet be perfectly easy myself, I made a little tent for him in the vacant place between my two fortifications, in the inside of the last, and in the outside of the first: and as there was a door or entrance there into my cave, I made a formal framed door-case and a door to it of boards, and set it up in the passage, a little within the entrance; and causing the door to open on the inside, I barred it up in the night, taking in my ladders too; so that Friday could no way come at me in the inside of my innermost wall, without making so much noise in getting over, that it must needs awaken me; for my first wall had now a complete roof over it of long poles, covering all my tent, and leaning up to the side of the hill, which was again laid cross with small sticks instead of laths, and then thatched over a great thickness with the rice-straw, which was strong like reeds; and at the hole or place which was left to go in or out by the ladder, I had placed a kind of trap-door, which, if it had been attempted on the outside,

would not have opened at all, but would have fallen down, and made a great noise; and as to weapons, I took them all in to my side every night.

But I needed none of all this precaution; for never man had a more faithful, loving, sincere servant, than Friday was to me; without passions, fullness, or designs; perfectly obliging and engaging; his very affections were tied to me, like those of a child to a father; and I dare say, he would have sacrificed his life for the saving mine, upon any occasion whatsoever. The many testimonies he gave me of this, put it out of doubt; and soon convinced me, that I needed to use no precautions as to my safety on his account.

This frequently gave me occasion to observe, and that with wonder, that, however it had pleased God in his providence, and in the government of the works of his hands, to take from so great a part of the world of his creatures, the best uses to which their faculties and the powers of their souls are adapted; yet that he has bestowed upon them the same powers, the same reason, the same affections, the same sentiments of kindness and obligation, the same passions and resentments of wrongs, the same sense of gratitude, sincerity, fidelity, and all the capacities of doing good, and receiving good, that he has given to us; and that when he pleases to offer them occasions of exerting these, they are as ready, nay, more ready to apply them to the right uses for which they are bestowed, than we are. And this made me very melancholy sometimes, in reflecting, as the several occasions presented, how mean an use we make of all these, even though we have these powers enlightened by the great lamp of instruction, the Spirit of God, and by the knowledge of his Word, added to our understanding; and why it has pleased God to hide the like saving knowledge from so many millions of souls, who, if I might judge by this poor savage, would make a much better use of it than we did?

From hence I sometimes was led too far to invade the sovereignty of Providence, and, as it were, arraign the justice of so arbitrary a disposition of things, that should hide that light from some, and reveal it to others, and

yet expect a like duty from both. But I shut it up, and checked my thoughts with this conclusion: First, That we do not know by what light and law these should be condemned; but that, as God was necessarily, and by the nature of his being, infinitely holy and just, so it could not be, but that if these creatures were all sentenced to absence from himself, it was on account of sinning against that light, which, as the Scripture says, 'was a law to themselves,' and by such rules as their consciences would acknowledge to be just, though the foundation was not discovered to us. And, secondly, That still, as we are all clay in the hand of the potter; no vessel could say to him, 'Why hast thou formed me thus?'

But to return to my new companion. I was greatly delighted with him, and made it my business to teach him every thing that was proper to make him useful, handy, and helpful; but especially to make him speak, and understand me when I spake; and he was the aptest scholar that ever was; and particularly was so merry, so constantly diligent, and so pleased when he could but understand me, or make me understand him, that it was very pleasant to me to talk to him; and now my life began to be so easy, that I began to say to myself, that could I but have been safe from more savages, I cared not if I was never to remove from the place while I lived.

After I had been two or three days returned to my castle, I thought, that, in order to bring Friday off from his horrid way of feeding, and from the relish of a cannibal's stomach, I ought to let him taste other flesh; so I took him out with me one morning to the woods; I went, indeed, intending to kill a kid out of my own flock; and bring it home and dress it: but, as I was going, I saw a she-goat lying down in the shade, and two young kids sitting by her. I caught hold of Friday, 'Hold,' said I, 'stand still;' and made signs to him not to stir. Immediately I presented my piece, shot, and killed one of the kids. The poor creature, who had at a distance, indeed, seen me kill the savage, his enemy, but did not know, or could not imagine, how it was done, was sensibly surprized, trembled and shook, and

and looked so amazed, that I thought he would have sunk down. He did not see the kid I had shot at, or perceive I had killed it, but ripped up his waistcoat to feel if he was not wounded; and, as I found presently, thought I was resolved to kill him; for he came and kneeled down to me, and embracing my knees, said a great many things I did not understand, but I could easily see that his meaning was to pray me not to kill him.

I soon found a way to convince him that I would do him no harm; and taking him up by the hand, laughed at him, and pointing to the kid which I had killed, beckoned to him to run and fetch it, which he did; and while he was wondering and looking to see how the creature was killed, I loaded my gun again, and by-and-by I saw a great fowl, like a hawk, sit upon a tree within shot; so, to let Friday understand a little what I would do, I called him to me again, pointing at the fowl, which was indeed a parrot, though I thought it had been a hawk; I say, pointing to the parrot, and to my gun, and to the ground under the parrot, to let him see I would make him fall, I made him understand that I would shoot and kill that bird; accordingly I fired, and bid him look, and immediately he saw the parrot fall. He stood like one frightened again, notwithstanding all that I had said to him; and I found he was the more amazed, because he did not see me put any thing into the gun; but thought there must be some wonderful fund of death and destruction in that thing, able to kill man, beast, bird, or any thing near or far off; for the astonishment this created in him was such, as could not wear off for a long time; and I believe, if I would have let him, he would have worshipped me and my gun: as for the gun itself, he would not so much as touch it for several days after; but would speak to it, and talk to it, as if it had answered him, when he was by himself; which, as I afterwards learned of him, was to desire it not to kill him.

Well, after his astonishment was a little over at this, I pointed to him to run and fetch the bird I had shot, which he did, but staid some time; for the parrot, not being quite dead,

was fluttered a good way off from the place where she fell; however he found her, took her up and brought her to me; and, as I had perceived his ignorance about the gun before, I took this advantage to charge the gun again, and not let him see me do it, that I might be ready for any other mark that might present; but nothing more offered at that time; so I brought home the kid, and the same evening I took the skin off, and cut it out as well as I could, and having a pot for that purpose, I boiled or stewed some of the flesh, and made some very good broth; after I had begun to eat some, I gave some to my man, who seemed very glad of it, and liked it very well; but that which was strangest to him was, to see me eat salt with it. He made a sign to me, that the salt was not good to eat, and putting a little into his own mouth, he seemed to nauseate it, and would spit and sputter at it, washing his mouth with fresh water after it; on the other hand, I took some meat in my mouth without salt, and I pretended to spit and sputter for want of salt, as fast as he had done at the salt; but it would not do, he would never care for salt with meat, or in his broth; at least, not a great while, and then but a very little.

Having thus fed him with boiled meat and broth, I was resolved to feast him the next day with roasting a piece of the kid; this I did by hanging it before the fire in a string, as I had seen many people do in England, setting two poles up, one on each side the fire, and one across on the top, and tying the string to the cross stick, letting the meat turn continually. This Friday admired very much; but when he came to taste the flesh, he took so many ways to tell me how well he liked it, that I could not but understand him: and at last he told me he would never eat man's flesh any more, which I was very glad to hear.

The next day I set him to work to beating some corn out, and sifting it in the manner I used to do, as I observed before; and he soon understood how to do it as well as I, especially after he had seen what the meaning of it was, and that it was to make bread of; for after that I let him see me make my bread, and bake it too; and

in a little time Friday was able to do all the work for me, as well as I could do it myself.

I began now to consider, that having two mouths to feed instead of one, I must provide more ground for my harvest, and plant a larger quantity of corn than I used to do; so I marked out a larger piece of land, and began the fence in the same manner as before, in which Friday not only worked very willingly, and very hard, but did it very cheerfully; and I told him what it was for, that it was for corn to make more bread, because he was now with me, and that I might have enough for him and myself too. He appeared very sensible of that part, and let me know, that he thought I had much more labour upon me on his account, than I had for myself, and that he would work the harder for me, if I would tell him what to do.

This was the pleasantest year of all the life I led in this place: Friday began to talk pretty well, and understand the names of almost every thing I had occasion to call for, and of every place I had to send him to, and talk a great deal to me; so that, in short, I began now to have some use for my tongue again, which, indeed, I had very little occasion for before; that is to say, about speech. Besides the pleasure of talking to him, I had a singular satisfaction in the fellow himself; his simple unfeigned honesty appeared to me more and more every day, and I began really to love the creature; and on his side, I believe, he loved me more than it was possible for him ever to love any thing before.

I had a mind once to try if he had any hankering inclination to his own country again; and having learned him English so well, that he could answer me almost any questions; I asked him, whether the nation that he belonged to never conquered in battle. At which he smiled, and said, 'Yes, yes, we always fight the better!' that is, he meant, always get the better in fight; and so we began the following discourse. 'You always fight the better!' said I: 'how come you to be taken prisoner then, Friday?'

FRIDAY. My nation beat much for all that.

MASTER. How beat! if your na-

tion beat them, how came you to be taken?

FRIDAY. They more than my nation in the place where me was; they take one, two, three, and me. My nation over-beat them in the yonder place, where me no was; there my nation take one, two, great thousand.

MASTER. But why did not your side recover you from the hands of your enemies then?

FRIDAY. They run one, two, three, and me, and make go in the canoe; my nation have no canoe that time.

MASTER. Well, Friday, and what does your nation do with the men they take? Do they carry them away, and eat them, as these did?

FRIDAY. Yes, my nation eat mans too; eat all up.

MASTER. Where do they carry them?

FRIDAY. Go to other place where they think.

MASTER. Do they come hither?

FRIDAY. Yes, yes, they come hither; come other else place.

MASTER. Have you been here with them?

FRIDAY. Yes, I been here. [Points to the N. W. side of the island, which, it seems, was their side.]

By this I understood, that my man Friday had formerly been among the savages, who used to come on shore on the father part of the island, on the same man-eating occasions that he was now brought for; and some time after, when I took the courage to carry him to that side, being the same I formerly mentioned, he presently knew the place, and told me, he was there once when they eat up twenty men, two women, and one child. He could not tell twenty in English, but he numbered them by laying so many stones in a row, and pointing to me to tell them over.

I have told this passage, because it introduces what follows; that after I had had this discourse with him, I asked him, how far it was from our island to the shore, and whether the canoes were not often lost: he told me there was no danger, no canoes ever lost; but that after a little way out to sea, there was a current, and a wind always one way in the morning, the other in the afternoon.

This

This I understood to be no more than the sets of the tide, as going out or coming in; but I afterwards understood it was occasioned by the great draught and reflux of the mighty River Oroonoke; in the mouth of which river, as I thought afterwards, our island lay; and that this land, which I perceived to the W. and N. W. was the great island Trinidad, on the north point of the mouth of the river: I asked Friday a thousand questions about the country, the inhabitants, the sea, the coast, and what nations were near; he told me all he knew, with the greatest openness imaginable: I asked him the names of the several nations of his sort of people, but could get no other name than Caribs; from whence I easily understood, that these were the Caribbees, which our maps place on that part of America which reaches from the mouth of the River Oroonoke to Guiana, and onwards to St. Martha: he told me, that up a great way beyond the moon, that was, beyond the setting of the moon, which must be west from their country, there dwelt white-bearded men, like me, and pointed to my great whiskers, which I mentioned before; and that they had killed much mans, (that was his word:) by which I understood he meant the Spaniards, whose cruelties in America had been spread over the whole countries, and were remembered by all the nations from father to son.

I enquired if he could tell me how I might come from this island, and get among those white men; he told me, yes, yes, I might go in two canoe; I could not understand what he meant by two canoe; till at last, with great difficulty, I found he meant, that it must be in a large great boat as big as two canoes.

This part of Friday's discourse began to relish with me very well; and from this time I entertained some hopes, that one time or other I might find an opportunity to make my escape from this place, and that this poor savage might be a means to help me to do it.

During the long time that Friday had now been with me, and that he began to speak to me, and understand me, I was not wanting to lay a foundation of religious knowledge in his mind; particularly, I asked him one

time, who made him. The poor creature did not understand me at all, but thought I had asked who was his father: but I took it by another handle, and asked him, who made the sea, the ground he walked on, and the hills and wood? He told me, it was one old Benamuckee that lived beyond all. He could describe nothing of this great person, but that he was very old; much older, he said, than the sea or the land, than the moon or the stars. I asked him then, if this old person had made all things, why did not all things worship him? He looked very grave, and with a perfect look of innocence said, 'All things say O to him.' I asked him, if the people who die in his country, went away any where. He said, yes, they all went to Benamuckee. Then I asked him, whether those they eat up went thither too. He said, yes.

From these things I began to instruct him in the knowledge of the true God. I told him, that the great Maker of all things lived there, pointing up towards Heaven: that he governs the world by the same power and providence by which he made it; that he was omnipotent; could do every thing for us; give every thing to us, take every thing from us; and thus, by degrees, I opened his eyes: he listened with great attention, and received with pleasure the notion of Jesus Christ being sent to redeem us, and of the manner of making our prayers to God, and his being able to hear us, even into Heaven. He told me, one day, that if our God could hear us up beyond the sun, he must needs be a greater God than their Benamuckee, who lived but a little way off, and yet could not hear, till they went up to the great mountains where he dwelt, to speak to him. I asked if ever he went thither to speak to him. He said, no, they never went that were young men; none went thither but the old men; whom he called their Oowookakee, that is, as I made him explain it to me, their religious or clergy; and that they went to say O, (so he called saying prayers) and then came back, and told them what Benamuckee said. By this I observed, that there is priestcraft even among the most blinded ignorant pagans in the world; and the policy of making a secret religion, in order

to preserve the veneration of the people to the clergy, is not only to be found in the Roman, but perhaps among all religions in the world, even among the most brutish and barbarous savages.

I endeavoured to clear up this fraud to my man Friday; and told him, that the pretence of their old men going up to the mountains to say O to their god Benamuckee, was a cheat; and their bringing word from thence what he said, was much more so; that if they met with any answer, or spoke with any one there, it must be with an evil spirit: and then I entered into a long discourse with him about the devil, the original of him, his rebellion against God, his enmity to man, the reason of it, his setting himself up in the dark parts of the world to be worshipped instead of God, and as God; and the many stratagems he made use of to delude mankind to their ruin; how he had a secret access to our passions, and to our affections, to adapt his snares so to our inclinations, as to cause us even to be our own tempters, and to run upon our own destruction by our own choice.

I found it was not so easy to imprint right notions in his mind about the devil, as it was about the being of a God: nature assisted all my arguments to evidence to him even the necessity of a great First Cause, and over-ruling governing Power, a secret directing Providence, and of the equity and justice of paying homage to him that made us, and the like: but there appeared nothing of all this in the notion of an evil spirit, of his original, his being, his nature, and above all, of his inclination to do evil, and to draw us in to do so too: and the poor creature puzzled me once in such a manner, by a question merely natural and innocent, that I scarce knew what to say to him. I had been talking a great deal to him of the power of God, his omnipotence, his dreadful aversion to sin, his being a consuming fire to the workers of iniquity; how, as he had made us all, he could destroy us, and all the world, in a moment; and he listened with great seriousness to me all the while.

After this, I had been telling him how the devil was God's enemy in the hearts of men, and used all his malice

and skill to defeat the good designs of Providence, and to ruin the kingdom of Christ in the world, and the like. 'Well,' says Friday, 'but you say, God is so strong, so great, is he not much strong, much might, as the devil?'—'Yes, yes,' said I, 'Friday, God is stronger than the devil; God is above the devil; and therefore we pray to God to tread him under our feet, and enable us to resist his temptations, and quench his fiery darts.'—'But,' says he again, 'if God much strong, much might, as the devil, why God not kill the devil, so make him no more wicked?'

I was strangely surprized at his question, and after all, though I was now an old man, yet I was but a young doctor, and ill enough qualified for a casuist, or a solver of difficulties: and, at first I could not tell what to say; so I pretended not to hear him, and asked him what he said: but he was too earnest for an answer to forget his question; so that he repeated it in the very same broken words as above. By this time I had recovered myself a little, and I said, 'God will at last punish him severely; he is reserved for the judgment, and is to be cast into the bottomless pit, to dwell with everlasting fire.' This did not satisfy Friday; but he returns upon me, repeating my words, 'Reserve at last, me no understand: but why not kill the devil now, not kill great ago?'—'You may as well ask me,' said I, 'why God does not kill you and me, when we do wicked things here that offend him: we are preserved to repent and be pardoned.' He muses awhile at this; 'Well, well!' says he, mighty affectionately; 'that well! so you, I, devil, all wicked, all preserve, repent, God pardon all!' Here I was run down again by him to the last degree, and it was a testimony to me, how the mere notions of nature, though they will guide reasonable creatures to the knowledge of a God, and of a worship or homage due to the supreme being of God, as the consequence of our nature; yet nothing but Divine Revelation can form the knowledge of Jesus Christ, and of a redemption purchased for us; of a mediator, of a new covenant, and of an intercessor at the footstool of God's throne; I say, nothing but a revelation from

from Heaven can form these in the soul; and that therefore the Gospel of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ; I mean, the Word of God, and the Spirit of God, promised for the guide and sanctifier of his people; are the absolutely necessary instructors of the souls of men in the saving knowledge of God, and the means of salvation.

I therefore diverted the present discourse between me and my man, rising up hastily, as upon some sudden occasion of going out; then sending him for something a great way off, I seriously prayed to God, that he would enable me to instruct savingly this poor savage, assisting by his Spirit the heart of the poor ignorant creature to receive the light of the knowledge of God in Christ, reconciling him to himself, and would guide me to speak so to him from the Word of God, as his conscience might be convinced, his eyes opened, and his soul saved: when he came again to me, I entered into a long discourse with him upon the subject of the redemption of man by the Saviour of the world, and of the doctrine of the Gospel preached from Heaven; viz. of the repentance towards God, and faith in our blessed Lord Jesus. I then explained to him, as well as I could, why our blessed Redeemer took not on him the nature of angels, but the seed of Abraham, and how for that reason the fallen angels had no share in the redemption; that he came only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel, and the like.

I had, God knows, more sincerity than knowledge, in all the methods I took for this poor creature's instruction; and must acknowledge, what I believe all that act upon the same principle will find, that in laying things open to him, I really informed and instructed myself, in many things that either I did not know, or had not fully considered before; but which occurred naturally to my mind, upon my searching into them for the information of this poor savage; and I had more affection in my enquiry after things upon this occasion, than ever I felt before; so that whether this poor wild wretch was the better for me or no, I had great reason to be thankful that ever he came to me; my grief far lighter upon me, my habitation grew comfortable to me beyond measure;

and when I reflected, that in this solitary life which I had been confined to, I had not only been moved myself to look up to Heaven, and to seek to the hand that brought me thither, but was now to be made an instrument, under Providence, to save the life, and, for aught I know, the soul of a poor savage, and bring him to the true knowledge of religion, and of the Christian doctrine, that he might know Christ Jesus, to know whom is life eternal; I say, when I reflected upon all these things, a secret joy ran through every part of my soul, and I frequently rejoiced that ever I was brought to this place, which I had often thought the most dreadful of all afflictions that could possibly have befallen me.

In this thankful frame I continued all the remainder of my time, and the conversation which employed the hours between Friday and me was such, as made the three years which we lived there together, perfectly and compleatly happy, if any such thing as compleat happiness can be found in a sublunary state. The savage was now a good Christian, a much better than I; though I have reason to hope, and bless God for it, that we were equally penitent, and comforted, restored penitents: we had herethe Word of God to read, and were no farther off from his Spirit to instruct, than if we had been in England.

I always applied myself to reading the Scripture, and to let him know, as well as I could, the meaning of what I read; and he again, by his serious enquiries and questions, made me, as I said before, a much better scholar in the Scripture-knowledge, than I should ever have been by my own mere private reading: another thing I cannot refrain from observing here also from experience, in this retired part of my life, viz. how infinite and inexpressible a blessing it is, that the knowledge of God, and of the doctrine of salvation by Christ Jesus, is so plainly laid down in the Word of God, so easy to be received and understood, that as the bare reading the Scripture made me capable of understanding enough of my duty to carry me directly on to the great work of sincere repentance for my sins, and laying hold of a Saviour for life and salvation, to a stated reformation in practice, and obedience to

to all God's commands, and this without any teacher or instructor, (I mean, human;) so the plain instruction sufficiently served to the enlightening this savage creature, and bring him to be such a Christian, as I have known few equal to him in my life.

As to the disputes, wranglings, strife, and contention, which have happened in the world about religion, whether niceties in doctrines, or schemes of church-government, they were all perfectly useless to us; as, for aught I can yet see, they have been to all the rest in the world: we had the sure guide to heaven, viz. the Word of God; and we had, blessed be God, comfortable views of the Spirit of God, teaching and instructing us by his word, 'leading us into all truth,' and making us both willing and obedient to the instruction of his word; and I cannot see the least use that the greatest knowledge of the disputed points in religion, which have made such confusions in the world, would have been to us, if we could have obtained it. But I must go on with the historical part of things, and take every part in its order.

After Friday and I became more intimately acquainted, and that he could understand almost all I said to him, and speak fluently, though in broken English, to me; I acquainted him with my own story, or at least so much of it as related to my coming into the place, how I had lived there, and how long. I let him into the mystery (for such it was to him) of gunpowder and bullets, and taught him how to shoot: I gave him a knife, which he was wonderfully delighted with; and I made him a belt with a frog hanging to it, such as in England we wear hangers in; and in the frog, instead of a hanger, I gave him a hatchet, which was not only as good a weapon in some cases, but much more useful upon many occasions.

I described to him the countries of Europe, and particularly England, which I came from; how we lived, how we worshipped God, how we behaved to one another, and how we traded in ships to all the parts of the world. I gave him an account of the wreck which I had been on board of, and shewed him, as near as I could, the place where she lay; but she was

all beaten in pieces long before, and quite gone.

I shewed him the ruins of our boat, which we lost when we escaped, and which I could not stir with my whole strength then, but was now fallen almost all to pieces. Upon seeing this boat, Friday stood musing a great while, and said nothing; I asked him what it was he studied upon. At last, says he, 'Me see such boat like come to place 'at my nation.'

I did not understand him a good while; but at last, when I had examined farther into it, I understood by him, that a boat such as that had been came on shore upon the country where he lived; that is, as he explained it, was driven thither by stress of weather: I presently imagined, that some European ship must have been cast away upon their coast, and the boat might get loose, and drive ashore; but was so dull, that I never once thought of men making escape from a wreck thither, much less whence they might come; so I only enquired after a description of the boat.

Friday described the boat to me well enough; but brought me better to understand him, when he added, with some warmth, 'We save the white mans from drown.' Then I presently asked him, if there were any white mans, as he called them, in the boat. 'Yes,' he said, 'the boat full of 'white mans.' I asked him, how many: he told upon his fingers seventeen. I asked him then, what became of them. He told me, 'They live, 'they dwell at my nation.'

This put new thought into my head again; for I presently imagined, that these might be the men belonging to the ship that was cast away in sight of my island, as I now call it; and who, after the ship was struck on the rock, and they saw her inevitably lost, had saved themselves in their boat, and were landed upon that wild shore among the savages.

Upon this, I enquired of him more critically, what was become of them: he assured me they lived still there, that they had been there about four years, that the savages let them alone, and gave them victuals to live. I asked him, how it came to pass they did not kill them, and eat them. He said, 'No, they make brother with them;

'them;' that is, as I understood him, a truce: and then he added, 'They eat no mans but when make the war & fight:' that is to say, they never eat any men, but such as come to fight with them, and are taken in battle.

It was after this, some considerable time, that being on the top of the hill, at the east-side of the island, from whence, as I have said, I had, in a clear day, discovered the main or continent of America; Friday, the weather being very serene, looks very earnestly towards the main land, and, in a kind of surprize, falls a jumping and dancing, and calls out to me, for I was at some distance from him: I asked him what was the matter. 'O joy!' says he; 'O glad! There, see my country, there my nation!'

I observed an extraordinary sense of pleasure appeared in his face, and his eyes sparkled, and his countenance discovered a strange eagerness, as if he had a mind to be in his own country again: and this observation of mine put a great many thoughts into me, which made me at first not so easy about my new man Friday as I was before; and I made no doubt, but that if Friday could get back to his own nation again, he would not only forget all his religion, but all his obligations to me; and would be forward enough to give his countrymen an account of me, and come back, perhaps, with an hundred or two of them, and make a feast upon me, at which he might be as merry as he used to be with those of his enemies, when they were taken in war.

But I wronged the poor honest creature very much, for which I was very sorry afterwards: however, as my jealousy increased, and held me some weeks, I was a little more circumspect, and not so familiar and kind to him as before; in which I was certainly in the wrong too, the honest grateful creature having no thoughts about it, but what consisted of the best principles, both as a religious Christian, and as a grateful friend; as appeared afterwards to my full satisfaction.

Whilst my jealousy of him lasted, you may be sure I was every day pumping him, to see if he would discover any of the new thoughts, which I suspected were in him; but I found eye-

ry thing he said was so honest, and so innocent, that I could find nothing to nourish my suspicion; and, in spite of all my uneasiness, he made me at last entirely his own again; nor did he in the least perceive that I was uneasy, and therefore I could not suspect him of deceit.

One day, walking up the same hill, but the weather being hazy at sea, so that we could not see the continent, I called to him, and said, 'Friday, do not you wish yourself in your own country, your own nation?'—'Yes,' he said, 'I be much O glad to be at my own nation.'—'What would you do there?' said I: 'would you turn wild again, eat man's flesh again, and be a savage as you were before?' He looked full of concern, and shaking his head, said, 'No, no, Friday tell them to live good, tell them to pray God, tell them to eat corn-bread, cattle-flesh, milk; no eat man again.'—'Why then,' said I to him, 'they will kill you.' He looked grave at that, and then said, 'No, they no kill me, they willing love learn.' He meant by this, they would be willing to learn. He added, they learned much of the bearded mans that came in the boat. Then I asked him, if he would go back to them. He smiled at that, and told me he could not swim so far. I told him I would make a canoe for him. He told me he would go, if I would go with him. 'I go!' said I; 'why they will eat me if I come there.'—'No, no,' says he, 'me make them no eat you, me make they much love you.' He meant, he would tell them how I had killed his enemies, and saved his life, and so he would make them love me. Then he told me, as well as he could, how kind they were to seventeen white men, or bearded men, as he called them, who came on shore in distress.

From this time, I confess, I had a mind to venture over, and see if I could possibly join with these bearded men, who, I made no doubt, were Spaniards or Portuguese; not doubting but, if I could, we might find some method to escape from thence, being upon the continent, and a good company together, better than I could from an island forty miles off the shore, and alone without help: so, after some

some days, I took Friday to work again, by way of discourse; and told him, I would give him a boat to go back to his own nation; and accordingly I carried him to my frigate, which lay on the other side of the island; and having cleared it of water, (for I always kept it sunk in the water) I brought it out, shewed it him, and we both went into it.

I found he was a most dexterous fellow at managing it, would make it go almost as swift and fast again as I could: so when he was in, I said to him, 'Well, now, Friday, shall we go to your nation?' He looked very dull at my saying so; which, it seems, was because he thought the boat too small to go so far. I told him then I had a bigger; so the next day, I went to the place where the first boat lay which I had made, but which I could not get into the water; he said that was big enough: but then, as I had taken no care of it, and it had lain two or three and twenty years there, the sun had split and dried it, that it was in a manner rotten. Friday told me, such a boat would do very well, and would carry much enough vittles, drink, bread; that was his way of talking.

Upon the whole, I was by this time so fixed upon my design of going over with him to the continent, that I told him we would go and make one as big as that, and he should go home in it. He answered not one word, but looked very grave and sad. I asked him what was the matter with him. He asked me again, thus: 'Why you angry mad with Friday? what me done?' I asked him what he meant; I told him I was not angry with him at all. 'No angry! no angry!' says he, repeating the words several times; 'why send Friday home away to my nation?' — 'Why,' said I, 'Friday, did you not say you wished you were there?' — 'Yes, yes,' says he, 'with be both there; no wish Friday there, no master there.' In a word, he would not think of going there without me. 'I go there, Friday?' said I: 'what should I do there?' He turned very quick upon me at this; 'You do great deal much good,' says he; 'you teach wild mans be good, sober, tame mans; you tell them know God, pray God, and live new

life.' — 'Alas! Friday,' said I, 'thou knowest not what thou sayest; I am but an ignorant man myself.' — 'Yes, yes,' says he, 'you teach me good, you teach them good.' — 'No, no, Friday,' said I, 'you shall go without me; leave me here to live by myself, as I did before.' He looked confused again at that word; and running to one of the hatchets which he used to wear, he takes it up hastily, and gives it me. 'What must I do with this?' said I to him. 'You take kill Friday,' says he. 'What must I kill you for?' said I again. He returns very quick, 'What you send Friday away for? Take kill Friday, no send Friday away.' This he spoke so earnestly, that I saw tears stand in his eyes. In a word, I so plainly discovered the utmost affection in him to me, and a firm resolution in him, that I told him then, and often after, that I would never send him away from me, if he was willing to stay with me.

Upon the whole, as I found by all his discourse, a settled affection to me, and that nothing should part him from me, so I found all the foundation of his desire to go to his own country, was laid in his ardent affection to the people, and his hopes of my doing them good; a thing, which, as I had no notion of myself, so I had not the least thought, or intention, or desire of undertaking it: but still I found a strong inclination to my attempting an escape, as above, founded on the supposition gathered from the former discourse, viz. that there were seventeen bearded men there; and therefore, without any delay, I went to work with Friday, to find out a great tree proper to fell, and make a large perriagua or canoe, to undertake the voyage. There were trees enough in the island to have built a little fleet, not of perriaguas and canoes only, but even of good large vessels; but the main thing I looked at, was to get one so near the water, that we might launch it when it was made, to avoid the mistake I committed at first.

At last, Friday pitched upon a tree; for I found he knew much better than I, what kind of wood was fittest for it; nor can I tell to this day what wood to call the tree we cut down, except that it was very like the tree we call



Stothard del.

Collier sculp.

Plate I.

Published as the Act directs, by Harrison & C^o March 3^d 1781.

BRITISH
4 APR 1914
MUSEUM

call
nical
the
was
of
but
out
him
and
we f
some
whic
we
true
ever
to g
inch
ter:
have
ease
V
thou
to
fwi
her,
fo I
mig
said
' th
ever
kne
ma
wit
ma
I p
tre
and
in
wo
rec
bu
cul
or
bu
ye
ca
tha
usu
wo
th
pic
an
w
w
su
m
w
of
be
to

call fustick, or between that and the nicaragua-wood, for it was much of the same colour and smell. Friday was for burning the hollow or cavity of this tree out, to make it into a boat; but I shewed him how rather to cut it out with tools, which, after I shewed him how to use, he did very handily, and in about a month's hard labour we finished it, and made it very handsome, especially when with our axes, which I shewed him how to handle, we cut and hewed the outside into the true shape of a boat; after this, however, it cost us near a fortnight's time to get her along, as it were inch by inch, upon great rollers, into the water: but when she was in, she would have carried twenty men with great ease.

When she was in the water, and though she was so big, it amazed me to see with what dexterity and how swift my man Friday could manage her, turn her, and paddle her along; so I asked him if he would, and if we might venture over in her. 'Yes,' he said, 'he venture over in her very well, though great blow wind.' However, I had a farther design, that he knew nothing of, and that was to make a mast and sail, and to fit her with an anchor and cable. As to a mast, that was easy enough to get; so I pitched upon a straight young cedar-tree, which I found near the place, and which there was great plenty of in the island; and I set Friday to work to cut it down, and gave him directions how to shape and order it; but as to the sail, that was my particular care. I knew I had old sails, or rather pieces of old sails enough; but as I had had them now twenty-six years by me, and had not been very careful to preserve them, not imagining that I should ever have this kind of use for them, I did not doubt but they were all rotten; and indeed most of them were so; however, I found two pieces which appeared pretty good, and with these I went to work, and with a great deal of pains, and awkward tedious stitching (you may be sure) for want of needles, I at length made a three-cornered ugly thing, like what we call in England a shoulder-of-mutton sail, to go with a boom at bottom, and a little short sprit at the top, such as usually our ships long-

boats sail with, and such as I best knew how to manage, because it was such an one as I used in the boat in which I made my escape from Barbary, as related in the first part of my story.

I was near two months performing this last work, viz. rigging and fitting my mast and sails; for I finished them very compleat, making a small stay, and a sail or foresail to it, to assist if we should turn to windward; and, which was more than all, I fixed a rudder to the stern of her, to steer with; and though I was but a bungling shipwright, yet as I knew the usefulness and even necessity of such a thing, I applied myself with so much pains to do it, that at last I brought it to pass, though, considering the many dull contrivances I had for it that failed, I think it cost me almost as much labour as making the boat.

After all this was done, I had my man Friday to teach as to what belonged to the navigation of my boat; for though he knew very well how to paddle the canoe, he knew nothing what belonged to a sail and a rudder, and was the most amazed when he saw me work the boat to-and-again in the sea by the rudder, and how the sail gibbed, and filled this way or that way, as the course we sailed changed; I say, when he saw this, he stood like one astonished and amazed; however, with a little use, I made all these things familiar to him, and he became an expert sailor, except that as to the compass, I could make him understand very little of that. On the other hand, as there was very little cloudy weather, and seldom or never any fogs in those parts, there was the less occasion for a compass, seeing the stars were always to be seen by night, and the shore by day, except in the rainy seasons; and then nobody cared to stir abroad, either by land or sea.

I was now entered on the seven and twentieth year of my captivity in this place; though the three last years that I had this creature with me, ought rather to be left out of the account, my habitation being quite of another kind than in all the rest of my time. I kept the anniversary of my landing here with the same thankfulness to God for his mercies as at first; and if I had such cause of acknow-

ledgment at first, I had much more so now, having such additional testimonies of the care of Providence over me, and the great hopes I had of being effectually and speedily delivered; for I had an invincible impression upon my thoughts, that my deliverance was at hand, and that I should not be another year in this place. However, I went on with my husbandry, digging, planting, fencing, as usual; I gathered and cured my grapes, and did every necessary thing, as before.

The rainy season was in the mean time upon me, when I kept more within-doors than at other times; so I had stowed our new vessel as secure as we could, bringing her up into the creek, where, as I said in the beginning, I landed my rafts from the ship; and hauling her up to the shore, at high-water mark, I made my man Friday dig a little dock, just big enough to hold her, and just deep enough to give her water enough to float in; and then when the tide was out, we made a strong dam cross the end of it, to keep the water out; and so she lay dry, as to the tide, from the sea; and to keep the rain off, we laid a great many boughs of trees so thick, that she was as well thatched as an house; and thus we waited for the months of November and December, in which I designed to make my adventure.

When the settled season began to come in, as the thought of my design returned with the fair weather, I was preparing daily for the voyage; and the first thing I did was to lay up a certain quantity of provision, being the store for the voyage; and intended in a week or a fortnight's time to open the dock, and launch out our boat. I was busy one morning upon something of this kind, when I called to Friday, and bid him go to the sea-shore, and see if he could find a turtle or tortoise, a thing which we generally got once a week, for the sake of the eggs, as well as the flesh. Friday had not been long gone, when he came running back, and flew over my outward wall, or fence, like one that felt not the ground, or the steps he set his feet on; and before I had time to speak to him, he cried out to me, 'O master! O master! O sorrow! O bad!'—'What is the matter, Friday?' said I.

'O yonder there,' says he, 'one, two, three canoe! one, two, three!'—By this way of speaking I concluded there were six; but on enquiry I found there were but three. 'Well, Friday,' said I, 'do not be frightened;' so I heartened him up as well as I could. However, I saw the poor fellow most terribly scared; for nothing ran in his head but that they were come to look for him, and would cut him in pieces and eat him. The poor fellow trembled so, that I scarce knew what to do with him. I comforted him as well as I could, and told him I was in as much danger as he, and that they would eat me as well as him. 'But,' said I, 'Friday, we must resolve to fight them. Can you fight, Friday?'—'Me shoot,' says he; 'but there come many great number.'—'No matter for that,' said I again; 'our guns will fright them that we do not kill.' So I asked him, whether, if I resolved to defend him, he would defend me, and stand by me, and do just as I bade him? He said, 'Me die, when you bid die, master.' So I went and fetched a good dram of rum, and gave him; for I had been so good an husband of my rum, that I had a great deal left. When he had drank it, I made him take the two fowling-pieces which we always carried, and load them with large swan-shot as big as small pistol-bullets; then I took four musquets, and loaded them with two slugs, and five small bullets each; and my two pistols I loaded with a brace of bullets each: I hung my great sword, as usual, naked by my side, and gave Friday his hatchet.

When I had thus prepared myself, I took my perspective-glass, and went up to the side of the hill, to see what I could discover; and I found quickly, by my glass, that there were one and twenty savages, three prisoners, and three canoes; and that their whole business seemed to be the triumphant banquet upon these three human bodies: a barbarous feast indeed; but nothing more than, as I have observed, was usual with them!

I observed also, that they were landed, not where they had done when Friday made his escape, but nearer to my creek, where the shore was low, and where a thick wood came close almost down to the sea. This, with the

the abhorrence of the inhuman errand these wretches came about, so filled me with indignation, that I came down again to Friday, and told him, I was resolved to go down to them, and kill them all; and asked him if he would stand by me. He was now gotten over his fright, and his spirits being a little raised with the dram I had given him, he was very chearful; and told me as before, 'he would die when I bid die.'

In this fit of fury, I took first and divided the arms which I had charged, as before, between us: I gave Friday one pistol, to stick in his girdle, and three guns upon his shoulder; and I took one pistol, and the other three, myself; and in this posture we marched out. I took a small bottle of rum in my pocket, and gave Friday a large bag with more powder and bullet; and as to orders, I charged him to keep close behind me, and not to stir, shoot, or do any thing till I bid him; and in the mean time, not to speak a word. In this posture I fetched a compass to my right-hand of near a mile, as well to get over the creek as to get into the wood; so that I might come within shot of them before I could be discovered, which I had seen by my glass it was easy to do.

While I was making this march, my former thoughts returning, I began to abate my resolution; I do not mean, that I entertained any fear of their number; for as they were naked, unarmed wretches, it is certain I was superior to them; nay, though I had been alone: but it occurred to my thoughts, what call, what occasion, much less, what necessity, I was in to go and dip my hands in blood, to attack people, who had neither done or intended me any wrong; who, as to me, were innocent, and whose barbarous customs were their own disaster, being in them a token indeed of God's having left them, with the other nations of that part of the world, to such stupidity and to such inhuman courses; but did not call me to take upon me to be a judge of their actions, much less an executioner of his justice: that whenever he thought fit, he would take the cause into his own hands, and by national vengeance punish them for national crimes; but that, in the mean time, it was none of

my business; that it was true, Friday might justify it, because he was a declared enemy, and in a state of war with those very particular people, and it was lawful for him to attack them; but I could not say the same with respect to me. These things were so warmly pressed upon my thoughts all the way as I went, that I resolved I would only go place myself near them, that I might observe their barbarous feast, and that I would act then as God should direct; but that unless something offered that was more a call to me than yet I knew of, I would not meddle with them.

With this resolution I entered the wood; and with all possible wariness and silence (Friday following close at my heels) I marched till I came to the skirt of the wood, on the side which was next to them; only that one corner of the wood lay between me and them. Here I called softly to Friday, and shewing him a great tree, which was just at the corner of the wood, I bade him go to the tree, and bring me word if he could see there plainly what they were doing. He did so, and came immediately back to me, and told me they might be plainly viewed there; that they were all about the fire, eating the flesh of one of their prisoners; and that another lay bound upon the sand, a little from them, whom he said they would kill next, and which fired the very soul within me. He told me, it was not one of their nation, but one of the bearded men whom he had told me of, who came to their country in the boat. I was filled with horror at the very naming the white-bearded man, and going to the tree, I saw plainly, by my glass, a white man, who lay upon the beach of the sea, with his hands and his feet tied with flags, or things like rushes, and that he was an European, and had cloaths on.

There was another tree, and a little thicket beyond it, about fifty yards nearer to them than the place where I was, which, by going a little way about, I saw I might come at undiscovered, and that then I should be within half shot of them; so I withheld my passion, though I was indeed enraged to the highest degree; and going back about twenty paces, I got behind some bushes, which held all

ledgment at first, I had much more so now, having such additional testimonies of the care of Providence over me, and the great hopes I had of being effectually and speedily delivered; for I had an invincible impression upon my thoughts, that my deliverance was at hand, and that I should not be another year in this place. However, I went on with my husbandry, digging, planting, fencing, as usual; I gathered and cured my grapes, and did every necessary thing, as before.

The rainy season was in the mean time upon me, when I kept more within-doors than at other times; so I had stowed our new vessel as secure as we could, bringing her up into the creek, where, as I said in the beginning, I landed my rafts from the ship; and hauling her up to the shore, at high-water mark, I made my man Friday dig a little dock, just big enough to hold her, and just deep enough to give her water enough to float in; and then when the tide was out, we made a strong dam cross the end of it, to keep the water out; and so she lay dry, as to the tide, from the sea; and to keep the rain off, we laid a great many boughs of trees so thick, that she was as well thatched as an house; and thus we waited for the months of November and December, in which I designed to make my adventure.

When the settled season began to come in, as the thought of my design returned with the fair weather, I was preparing daily for the voyage; and the first thing I did was to lay up a certain quantity of provision, being the store for the voyage; and intended in a week or a fortnight's time to open the dock, and launch out our boat. I was busy one morning upon something of this kind, when I called to Friday, and bid him go to the sea-shore, and see if he could find a turtle or tortoise, a thing which we generally got once a week, for the sake of the eggs, as well as the flesh. Friday had not been long gone, when he came running back, and flew over my outward wall, or fence, like one that felt not the ground, or the steps he set his feet on; and before I had time to speak to him, he cried out to me, 'O master! O master! O sorrow! O bad!'—'What is the matter, Friday?' said I.

'O yonder there,' says he, 'one, two, three canoe! one, two, three!'—By this way of speaking I concluded there were six; but on enquiry I found there were but three. 'Well, Friday,' said I, 'do not be frightened;' so I heartened him up as well as I could. However, I saw the poor fellow most terribly scared; for nothing ran in his head but that they were come to look for him, and would cut him in pieces and eat him. The poor fellow trembled so, that I scarce knew what to do with him. I comforted him as well as I could, and told him I was in as much danger as he, and that they would eat me as well as him. 'But,' said I, 'Friday, we must resolve to fight them. Can you fight, Friday?'—'Me shoot,' says he; 'but there come many great number.'—'No matter for that,' said I again; 'our guns will fright them that we do not kill.' So I asked him, whether, if I resolved to defend him, he would defend me, and stand by me, and do just as I bade him? He said, 'Me die, when you bid die, master.' So I went and fetched a good dram of rum, and gave him; for I had been so good an husband of my rum, that I had a great deal left. When he had drank it, I made him take the two fowling-pieces which we always carried, and load them with large swan-shot as big as small pistol-bullets; then I took four musquets, and loaded them with two slugs, and five small bullets each; and my two pistols I loaded with a brace of bullets each: I hung my great sword, as usual, naked by my side, and gave Friday his hatchet.

When I had thus prepared myself, I took my perspective-glass, and went up to the side of the hill, to see what I could discover; and I found quickly, by my glass, that there were one and twenty savages, three prisoners, and three canoes; and that their whole business seemed to be the triumphant banquet upon these three human bodies: a barbarous feast indeed; but nothing more than, as I have observed, was usual with them!

I observed also, that they were landed, not where they had done when Friday made his escape, but nearer to my creek, where the shore was low, and where a thick wood came close almost down to the sea. This, with the

the abhorrence of the inhuman errand these wretches came about, so filled me with indignation, that I came down again to Friday, and told him, I was resolved to go down to them, and kill them all; and asked him if he would stand by me. He was now gotten over his fright, and his spirits being a little raised with the dram I had given him, he was very chearful; and told me as before, 'he would die when I bid die.'

In this fit of fury, I took first and divided the arms which I had charged, as before, between us: I gave Friday one pistol, to stick in his girdle, and three guns upon his shoulder; and I took one pistol, and the other three, myself; and in this posture we marched out. I took a small bottle of rum in my pocket, and gave Friday a large bag with more powder and bullet; and as to orders, I charged him to keep close behind me, and not to stir, shoot, or do any thing till I bid him; and in the mean time, not to speak a word. In this posture I fetched a compass to my right-hand of near a mile, as well to get over the creek as to get into the wood; so that I might come within shot of them before I could be discovered, which I had seen by my glass it was easy to do.

While I was making this march, my former thoughts returning, I began to abate my resolution; I do not mean, that I entertained any fear of their number; for as they were naked, unarmed wretches, it is certain I was superior to them; nay, though I had been alone: but it occurred to my thoughts, what call, what occasion, much less, what necessity, I was in to go and dip my hands in blood, to attack people, who had neither done or intended me any wrong; who, as to me, were innocent, and whose barbarous customs were their own disaster, being in them a token indeed of God's having left them, with the other nations of that part of the world, to such stupidity and to such inhuman courses; but did not call me to take upon me to be a judge of their actions, much less an executioner of his justice: that whenever he thought fit, he would take the cause into his own hands, and by national vengeance punish them for national crimes; but that, in the mean time, it was none of

my business; that it was true, Friday might justify it, because he was a declared enemy, and in a state of war with those very particular people, and it was lawful for him to attack them; but I could not say the same with respect to me. These things were so warmly pressed upon my thoughts all the way as I went, that I resolved I would only go place myself near them, that I might observe their barbarous feast, and that I would act then as God should direct; but that unless something offered that was more a call to me than yet I knew of, I would not meddle with them.

With this resolution I entered the wood; and with all possible wariness and silence (Friday following close at my heels) I marched till I came to the skirt of the wood, on the side which was next to them; only that one corner of the wood lay between me and them. Here I called softly to Friday, and shewing him a great tree, which was just at the corner of the wood, I bade him go to the tree, and bring me word if he could see there plainly what they were doing. He did so, and came immediately back to me, and told me they might be plainly viewed there; that they were all about the fire, eating the flesh of one of their prisoners; and that another lay bound upon the sand, a little from them, whom he said they would kill next, and which fired the very soul within me. He told me, it was not one of their nation, but one of the bearded men whom he had told me of, who came to their country in the boat. I was filled with horror at the very naming the white-bearded man, and going to the tree, I saw plainly, by my glass, a white man, who lay upon the beach of the sea, with his hands and his feet tied with flags, or things like rushes, and that he was an European, and had cloaths on.

There was another tree, and a little thicket beyond it, about fifty yards nearer to them than the place where I was, which, by going a little way about, I saw I might come at undiscovered, and that then I should be within half shot of them; so I withheld my passion, though I was indeed enraged to the highest degree; and going back about twenty paces, I got behind some bushes, which held all

the way till I came to the other tree, and then I came to a little rising ground, which gave me a full view of them, at a distance of about eighty yards.

I had now not a moment to lose: for nineteen of the dreadful wretches sat upon the ground all close huddled together, and had just sent the other two to butcher the poor Christian, and bring him, perhaps, limb by limb, to their fire; and they were stooped down to untie the bands at his feet. I turned to Friday; 'Now, Friday,' said I, 'do as I bid thee.' Friday said he would. 'Then, Friday,' said I, 'do exactly as you see me do; fail in nothing.' So I set down one of the musquets and the fowling-piece upon the ground, and Friday did the like by his; and with the other musquet I took my aim at the savages, bidding him do the like. Then asking him if he was ready, he said, 'Yes.'—'Then fire at them,' said I; and the same moment I fired also.

Friday took his aim so much better than I, that on the side that he shot, he killed two of them, and wounded three more; and on my side, I killed one, and wounded two. They were, you may be sure, in a dreadful consternation; and all of them, who were not hurt, jumped up upon their feet immediately, but did not know which way to run, or which way to look; for they knew not from whence their destruction came. Friday kept his eyes close upon me, that, as I had bid him, he might observe what I did; so as soon as the first shot was made, I threw down the piece, and took up the fowling-piece, and Friday did the like: he sees me cock and present; he did the same again. 'Are you ready, Friday,' said I. 'Yes,' said he. 'Let fly, then,' said I, 'in the name of God!' and with that I fired again among the amazed wretches, and so did Friday; and as our pieces were now loaden with what I called swan-shot, or small pistol bullets, we found only two drop; but so many were wounded, that they ran about yelling and screaming like mad creatures, all bloody and miserably wounded, most of them; whereof three more fell quickly after, though not quite dead.

'Now, Friday,' said I, laying down the discharged pieces, and tak-

ing up the musquet, which was yet loaden; 'follow me!' which he did, with a deal of courage; upon which I rushed out of the wood, and shewed myself, and Friday close at my foot. As soon as I perceived they saw me, I shouted as loud as I could, and bade Friday do so too; and running as fast as I could, (which, by the way, was not very fast, being loaded with arms as I was) I made directly towards the poor victim, who was, as I said, lying upon the beach, or shore, between the place where they sat and the sea. The two butchers, who were just going to work with him, had left him at the surprize of our first fire, and fled in a terrible fright to the sea-side, and had jumped into a canoe, and three more of the rest made the same way: I turned to Friday, and bade him step forwards, and fire at them; he understood me immediately, and running about forty yards to be near them, he shot at them, and I thought he had killed them all; for I saw them all fall on an heap into the boat; though I saw two of them up again quickly: however, he killed two of them, and wounded the third, so that he lay down in the bottom of the boat, as if he had been dead.

While my man Friday fired at them, I pulled out my knife, and cut the flags that bound the poor victim, and loosing his hands and feet, I lifted him up, and asked him in the Portuguese tongue? what he was. He answered in Latin, 'Christianus;' but was so weak and faint, that he could scarce stand or speak; I took my bottle out of my pocket, and gave it him, making signs that he should drink, which he did; and I gave him a piece of bread, which he eat; then I asked him, what countryman he was? and he said, 'Espagnole;' and, being a little recovered, let me know, by all the signs he could possibly make, how much he was in my debt for his deliverance. 'Seignior,' said I, with as much Spanish as I could make up, 'we will talk afterwards, but we must fight now: if you have any strength left, take this pistol and sword, and lay about you.' He took them very thankfully, and no sooner had he the arms in his hands, but as if they had put new vigour into him, he flew upon his murderers

derers like a fury, and had cut two of them in pieces in an instant; for the truth is, as the whole was a surprize to them, so the poor creatures were so much frightened with the noise of our pieces, that they fell down for mere amazement and fear, and had no more power to attempt their own escape, than their flesh had to resist our shot; and that was the case of those five that Friday shot in the boat; for as three of them fell with the hurt they received, so the other two fell with the fright.

I kept my piece in my hand still, without firing, being willing to keep my charge ready, because I had given the Spaniard my pistol and sword; so I called to Friday, and bade him run up to the tree from whence we first fired, and fetch the arms which lay there that had been discharged, which he did with great swiftness; and then giving him my musquet, I sat down myself to load all the rest again, and bade them come to me when they wanted. While I was loading these pieces, there happened a fierce engagement between the Spaniard and one of the Savages, who made at him with one of their great wooden swords, the same weapon that was to have killed him before, if I had not prevented it. The Spaniard, who was as bold and as brave as could be imagined, though weak, had fought this Indian a good while, and had cut him two great wounds on his head; but the savage, being a stout lusty fellow, closing in with him, had thrown him down, (being faint) and was wringing my sword out of his hand, when the Spaniard, though undermost, wisely quitting his sword, drew the pistol from his girdle, shot the savage through the body, and killed him upon the spot, before I, who was running to help, could come near him.

Friday, being now left at his liberty, pursued the flying wretches with no weapon in his hand but his hatchet; and with that he dispatched those three, who, as I said before, were wounded at first and fallen, and all the rest he could come up with; and the Spaniard coming to me for a gun, I gave him one of the fowling-pieces, with which he pursued two of the savages and wounded them both; but as he was not able to run, they both got from him into the woods, where Friday pursued them,

and killed one of them; but the other was too nimble for him; and though he was wounded, yet he plunged into the sea, and swam with all his might off to those who were left in the canoe; which three in the canoe, with one wounded, who we knew not whether he died or no, were all that escaped our hands of one and twenty. The account of the rest is as follows:

- 3 Killed at our shot from the tree.
- 2 Killed at the next shot.
- 2 Killed by Friday in the boat.
- 2 Killed by ditto, of those at first wounded.
- 1 Killed by ditto, in the wood.
- 3 Killed by the Spaniard.
- 4 Killed, being found dropt here and there, of their wounds, or killed by Friday in his chase of them.
- 4 Escaped in the boat, whereof one wounded, if not dead.

—
21 In all.
—

Those that were in the canoe, worked hard to get out of gun-shot; and though Friday made two or three shot at them, I did not find that he hit any of them. Friday would fain have had me take one of their canoes, and pursue them; and indeed I was very anxious about their escape, lest, carrying the news home to their people, they should come back, perhaps, with two or three hundred of their canoes, and devour us by mere multitudes; so I consented to pursue them by sea; and running to one of their canoes, I jumped in, and bade Friday follow me; but when I was in the canoe, I was surprized to find another poor creature lie there alive, bound hand and foot, as the Spaniard was, for the slaughter, and almost dead with fear, not knowing what the matter was; for he had not been able to look up over the side of the boat, he was tied so hard neck and heels, and had been tied so long, that he had really little life in him.

I immediately cut the twisted flags, or rushes, which they had bound him with, and would have helped him up; but he could not stand or speak, but groaned most piteously, believing, it seems, still that he was only unbound in order to be killed.

When

When Friday came to him, I bade him speak to him, and tell him of his deliverance; and pulling out my bottle, made him give the poor wretch a dram; which, with the news of his being delivered, revived him, and he sat up in the boat; but when Friday came to hear him speak, and looked in his face, it would have moved any one to tears, to have seen how Friday kissed him, embraced him, hugged him, cried, laughed, hallooed, jumped about, danced, sung, then cried again, wrung his hands, beat his own face and head, and then sung and jumped about again, like a distracted creature. It was a good while before I could make him speak to me, or tell me what was the matter; but when he came a little to himself, he told me that it was his father.

It was not easy for me to express how it moved me, to see what extasy and filial affection had worked in this poor savage, at the sight of his father, and of his being delivered from death; nor indeed can I describe half the extravagances of his affection after this; for he went into the boat and out of the boat a great many times: when he went in to him, he would sit down by him, open his breast, and hold his father's head close to his bosom, half an hour together, to nourish it; then he took his arms and ancles, which were numbed and stiff with the bindings, and chafed and rubbed them with his hands; and I, perceiving what the case was, gave him some rum out of my bottle to rub them with, which did them a great deal of good.

This action put an end to our pursuit of the canoe with the other savages, who were now gotten almost out of sight; and it was happy for us that we did not; for it blew so hard within two hours after, and before they could be gotten a quarter of their way, and continued blowing so hard all night, and that from the north-west, which was against them, that I could not suppose their boat could live, or that they ever reached to their own coast.

But to return to Friday. He was so busy about his father, that I could not find in my heart to take him off for some time; but, after I thought I could leave him a little, I called him to me, and he came jumping and laughing, and pleased to the highest extreme. Then I asked him, if he

had given his father any bread. He shook his head, and said, 'None: ugly dog eat all up self.' So I gave him a cake of bread out of a little pouch I carried on purpose; I also gave him a dram for himself; but he would not taste it, but carried it to his father. I had in my pocket also two or three bunches of my raisins; so I gave him a handful of them for his father. He had no sooner given his father these raisins, but I saw him come out of the boat, and run away as if he had been bewitched. He ran at such a rate, (for he was the swiftest fellow of his feet that ever I saw;) I say, he ran at such a rate, that he was out of sight as it were in an instant; and though I called and hallooed too after him, it was all one; away he went, and in a quarter of an hour I saw him come back again, though not so fast as he went; and as he came nearer, I found his pace was slacker because he had something in his hand.

When he came up to me, I found he had been quite home for an earthen jug or pot, to bring his father some fresh water; and that he had got two more cakes or loaves of bread. The bread he gave me, but the water he carried to his father; however, as I was very thirsty too, I took a little sup of it: this water revived his father more than all the rum or spirits I had given him; for he was just fainting with thirst.

When his father had drank, I called him to know if there was any water left; he said, yes; and I bade him give it to the poor Spaniard, who was in as much want of it as his father; and I sent one of the cakes, that Friday brought, to the Spaniard too, who was indeed very weak, and was reposing himself upon a green place, under the shade of a tree, and whose limbs were also very stiff, and very much swelled with the rude bandage he had been tied with: when I saw that upon Friday's coming to him with the water, he sat up and drank, and took the bread and began to eat, I went to him, and gave him a handful of raisins; he looked up in my face with all the tokens of gratitude and thankfulness that could appear in any countenance; but was so weak, notwithstanding he had so exerted himself in the fight, that he could not stand

stand up upon his feet; he tried to do it two or three times, but was really not able, his ancles were so swelled and so painful to him; so I bade him sit still, and caused Friday to rub his ancles, and bathe them with rum, as he had done his father's.

I observed the poor affectionate creature every two minutes, or perhaps leis, all the while he was here, turned his head about, to see if his father was in the same place and posture as he left him sitting: and at last he found he was not to be seen; at which he started up, and without speaking a word, flew with that swiftness to him, that one could scarce perceive his feet to touch the ground as he went; but when he came, he only found he had laid himself down to ease his limbs; so Friday came back to me presently, and I then spoke to the Spaniard to let Friday help him up, if he could, and lead him to the boat, and then he should carry him to our dwelling, where I would take care of him; but Friday, a lusty young fellow, took the Spaniard quite up upon his back, and carried him away to the boat, and set him down softly upon the side or gunnel of the canoe, with his feet in the inside of it, and then lifted them quite in, and set him close to his father; and presently stepping out again, launched the boat off, and paddled it along the shore faster than I could walk, though the wind blew pretty hard too: so he brought them both safe into our creek; and leaving them in the boat, runs away to fetch the other canoe. As he passed me, I spoke to him, and asked him, whither he went. He told me, 'Go, fetch more boat.' So away he went, like the wind, for sure never man or horse ran like him; and he had the other canoe in the creek, almost as soon as I got to it by land; so he wasted me over, and then went to help our new guests out of the boat, which he did: but they were neither of them able to walk; so that poor Friday knew not what to do.

To remedy this, I went to work in my thought; and calling to Friday to bid them sit down on the bank while he came to me, I soon made a kind of hand-barrow to lay them on; and Friday and I carried them up both together upon it between us: but when we

got them to the outside of our wall or fortification, we were at a worse loss than before; for it was impossible to get them over; and I was resolved not to break it down: so I set to work again; and Friday and I, in about two hours time, made a very handsome tent, covered with old sails, and, above that, with boughs of trees; being in the space without our outward fence, and between that and the grove of young wood which I had planted: and here we made two beds, of such things as I had, viz. of good rice-straw, with blankets laid upon it, to lie on, and another to cover them, on each bed.

My island was now peopled, and I thought myself very rich in subjects; and it was a merry reflection which I frequently made, how like a king I looked. First of all, the whole country was my own mere property; so that I had an undoubted right of dominion: secondly, my people were perfectly subjected; I was absolutely lord and lawgiver; they all owed their lives to me, and were ready to lay down their lives, if there had been occasion for it, for me: it was remarkable too, I had but three subjects, and they were of three different religions; my man Friday was a Protestant, his father a Pagan and a cannibal, and the Spaniard was a Papist. However, I allowed liberty of conscience throughout my dominions: but this by the way.

As soon as I had secured my two weak rescued prisoners, and given them shelter, and a place to rest them upon, I began to think of making some provision for them: and the first thing I did, I ordered Friday to take a yearly goat, betwixt a kid and a goat, out of my particular flock, to be killed: then I cut off the hinder quarter, and, chopping it into small pieces, I set Friday to work to boiling and stewing, and made them a very good dish, I assure you, of flesh and broth, having put some barley and rice also into the broth; and as I cooked it without doors (for I made no fire within my inner wall) so I carried it all into the new tent; and having set a table there for them, I sat down and eat my dinner also with them; and, as well as I could, cheered them and encouraged them; Friday being my interpreter, especially to his father, and indeed to the Spaniard too; for

for the Spaniard spoke the language of the savages pretty well.

After we had dined, or rather supped, I ordered Friday to take one of the canoes, and go and fetch our muskets, and other fire-arms, which, for want of time, we had left upon the place of battle; and the next day I ordered him to go and bury the dead bodies of the savages, which lay open to the sun, and would presently be offensive; and I also ordered him to bury the horrid remains of their barbarous feast, which I knew were pretty much, and which I could not think of doing myself; nay, I could not bear to see them, if I went that way. All which he punctually performed, and defaced the very appearance of the savages being there; so that when I went again, I could scarce know where it was, otherwise than by the corner of the wood pointing to the place.

I then began to enter into a little conversation with my two new subjects; and first, I set Friday to enquire of his father, what he thought of the escape of the savages in that canoe, and whether he might expect a return of them, with a power too great for us to resist. His first opinion was, that the savages in the boat never could live out the storm, which blew that night they went off, but must of necessity be drowned, or driven south to those other shores, where they were as sure to be devoured, as they were to be drowned if they were cast away: but as to what they would do if they came safe on shore, he said he knew not; but it was his opinion, that they were so dreadfully frightened with the manner of being attacked, the noise, and the fire, that he believed they would tell their people, they were all killed by thunder and lightning, and not by the hand of man; and that the two which appeared (*viz.* Friday and I) were two heavenly spirits or furies, come down to destroy them, and not men with weapons. This, he said, he knew, because he heard them all cry out so in their language to one another; for it was impossible for them to conceive that a man should dart fire, and speak thunder, and kill at a distance, without lifting up the hand, as was done now. And this old savage

was in the right; for, as I understood since, by other hands, the savages of that part never attempted to go over to the island afterwards. They were so terrified with the accounts given by those four men (for it seems they did escape the sea) that they believed, whoever went to that enchanted island, would be destroyed with fire from the gods.

This, however, I knew not, and therefore was under continual apprehensions for a good while; and kept always upon my guard, I and all my army; for as we were now four of us, I would have ventured upon an hundred of them fairly in the open field at any time.

In a little time, however, no more canoes appearing, the fear of their coming wore off, and I began to take my former thoughts of a voyage to the main into consideration; being likewise assured by Friday's father, that I might depend upon good usage from their nation on his account, if I would go.

But my thoughts were a little suspended, when I had a serious discourse with the Spaniard, and when I understood, that there were sixteen more of his countrymen and Portuguese, who having been cast away, and made their escape to that side, lived there at peace indeed with the savages, but were very sore put to it for necessities, and indeed for life: I asked him all the particulars of their voyage, and found they were a Spanish ship, bound from the Rio de la Plata to the Havannah, being directed to leave their loading there, which was chiefly hides and silver, and to bring back what European goods they could meet with there; that they had five Portuguese seamen on board, whom they took out of another wreck; that five of their own men were drowned when first the ship was lost; and that these escaped through infinite dangers and hazards, and arrived, almost starved, on the canibal coast, where they expected to have been devoured every moment.

He told me, they had some arms with them, but they were perfectly useless, for that they had neither powder or ball, the washing of the sea having spoiled all their powder, but a little

little which they used at their first landing, to provide themselves some food.

I asked him what he thought would become of them there; and if they had formed no design of making any escape. He said, they had many consultations about it; but that having neither vessel, nor tools to build one, or provisions of any kind, their counsels always ended in tears and despair.

I asked him how he thought they would receive a proposal from me, which might tend towards an escape; and whether, if they were all here, it might not be done. I told him with freedom, I feared mostly their treachery and ill usage of me, if I put my life in their hands; for that gratitude was no inherent virtue in the nature of man; nor did men always square their dealings by the obligations they had received, so much as they did by the advantages they expected: I told him, it would be very hard that I should be the instrument of their deliverance, and that they should afterwards make me their prisoner in New Spain, where an Englishman was certain to be made a sacrifice, what necessity, or what accident soever, brought him thither; and that I had rather be delivered up to the savages, and be devoured alive, than fall into the merciless claws of the priests, and be carried into the Inquisition. I added, that otherwise I was persuaded, if they were all here, we might, with so many hands, build a bark large enough to carry us all away, either to the Brazils southward, or to the islands or Spanish coast northward; but that if, in requital, they should, when I had put weapons into their hands, carry me by force among their own people, I might be ill used for my kindness to them, and make my case worse than it was before.

He answered with a great deal of candour and ingenuity, that their condition was so miserable, and they were so sensible of it, that he believed they would abhor the thought of using any man unkindly that should contribute to their deliverance; and that, if I pleased, he would go to them with the old man, and discourse with them about it, and would return again, and bring me their answer; that he would make conditions with them upon their solemn oath, that they would be abso-

lutely under my leading, as their commander and captain; and that they should swear upon the Holy Sacraments and Gospel, to be true to me, and to go to such Christian country as I should agree to, and no other; and to be directed wholly and absolutely by my orders, till they were landed safely in such country as I intended; and that he would bring a contract from them under their hands for that purpose.

Then he told me, he would first swear to me himself, that he would never stir from me as long as he lived, till I gave him order; and that he would take my side to the last drop of blood, if there should happen the least breach of faith among his countrymen.

He told me, they were all of them very civil honest men, and they were under the greatest distress imaginable, having neither weapons nor cloaths, nor any food, but at the mercy and discretion of the savages; out of all hopes of ever returning to their own country; and that he was sure, if I would undertake their relief, they would live and die by me.

Upon these assurances, I resolved to venture to relieve them, if possible, and to send the old savage and this Spaniard over to them to treat. But when he had gotten all things in readiness to go, the Spaniard himself started an objection, which had so much prudence in it on one hand, and so much sincerity on the other hand, that I could not but be very well satisfied in it; and, by his advice, put off the deliverance of his comrades for at least half a year. The case was thus:

He had been with us now about a month; during which time I had let him see in what manner I had provided, with the assistance of Providence, for my support; and he saw evidently what stock of corn and rice I had lain up; which, as it was more than sufficient for myself, so it was not sufficient, at least, without good husbandry, for my family, now it was increased to number four: but much less would it be sufficient, if his countrymen, who were, as he said, fourteen still alive, should come over; and least of all would it be sufficient to victual our vessel, if we should build one, for a voyage to any of the Christian

tian colonies of America. So he told me, he thought it would be more advisable, to let him and the other two dig and cultivate some more land, as much as I could spare seed to sow; and that we should wait another harvest, that we might have a supply of corn for his countrymen when they should come; for want might be a temptation to them to disagree, or not to think themselves delivered, otherwise than out of one difficulty into another. 'You know,' says he, 'the children of Israel, though they rejoiced at first at their being delivered out of Egypt, yet rebelled even against God himself, that delivered them, when they came to want bread in the wilderness.'

His caution was so seasonable, and his advice so good, that I could not but be very well pleased with his proposal, as well as I was satisfied with his fidelity. So we fell to digging, all four of us, as well as the wooden tools we were furnished with permitted; and in about a month's time, by the end of which it was seed time, we had gotten as much land cured and trimmed up as we sowed twenty-two bushels of barley on, and sixteen jars of rice; which was, in short, all the seed we had to spare; nor indeed did we leave ourselves barley sufficient for our own food for the six months that we had to expect our crop; that is to say, reckoning from the time we set our seed aside for sowing; for it is not to be supposed it is six months in the ground in that country.

Having now society enough, and our number being sufficient to put us out of fear of the savages, if they had come, unless their number had been very great, we went freely all over the island, wherever we found occasion; and as here we had our escape or deliverance upon our thoughts, it was impossible, at least for me, to have the means of it out of mine; to this purpose, I marked out several trees, which I thought fit for our work, and I set Friday and his father to cutting them down; and then I caused the Spaniard, to whom I imparted my thoughts on that affair, to oversee and direct their work. I shewed them with what indefatigable pains I had hewed a large tree into single planks, and I caused them to do the like, till they had made

about a dozen large planks of good oak, near two feet broad, thirty-five feet long, and from two inches to four inches thick: what prodigious labour it took up, any one may imagine.

At the same time I contrived to increase my little flock of tame goats as much as I could; and to this purpose I made Friday and the Spaniard go out one day, and myself, with Friday, the next day; for we took our turns; and by this means we got about twenty young kids to breed up with the rest; for whenever we shot the dam, we saved the kids, and added them to our flock. But above all, the season for curing the grapes coming on, I caused such a prodigious quantity to be hung up in the sun, that I believe, had we been at Alicant, where the raisins of the sun are cured, we should have filled sixty or eighty barrels; and these, with our bread, was a great part of our food, and very good living too, I assure you; for it is an exceeding nourishing food.

It was now harvest, and our crop in good order; it was not the most plentiful increase I had seen in the island, but, however, it was enough to answer our end; for, from twenty-two bushels of barley, we brought in and threshed out above two hundred and twenty bushels, and the like in proportion of the rice; which was store enough for our food to the next harvest, though all the sixteen Spaniards had been on shore with me; or, if we had been ready for a voyage, it would very plentifully have victualled our ship, to have carried us to any part of the world; that is to say, of America. When we had thus housed and secured our magazine of corn, we fell to work to make more wicker-work; viz. great baskets, in which we kept it; and the Spaniard was very handy and dexterous at this part, and often blamed me, that I did not make some things for defence, of this kind of work; but I saw no need of it. And now having a full supply of food for all the guests expected, I gave the Spaniard leave to go over to the main, to see what he could do with those he left behind him there: I gave him a strict charge in writing, not to bring any man with him who would not first swear, in the presence of himself and of the old savage, that he would no way injure, fight

fight with, or attack, the person he should find in the island, who was so kind to send for them in order to their deliverance; but that they would stand by and defend him against all such attempts; and wherever they went, would be entirely under, and subjected to his command; and that this should be put in writing, and signed with their hands. How we were to have this done, when I knew they had neither pen or ink, that indeed was a question which we never asked.

Under these instructions, the Spaniard and the old savage (the father of Friday) went away in one of the canoes, which they might be said to come in, or rather were brought in, when they came as prisoners, to be devoured by the savages.

I gave each of them a musquet with a firelock on it, and about eight charges of powder and ball; charging them to be very good husbands of both, and not to use either of them but upon urgent occasions.

This was a chearful work, being the first measures used by me in view of my deliverance for now twenty-seven years and some days. I gave them provisions of bread, and of dried grapes, sufficient for themselves for many days, and sufficient for their countrymen for about eight days time; and wishing them a good voyage, I let them go, agreeing with them about a signal they should hang out at their return, by which I should know them again when they came back, at a distance, before they came on shore.

They went away with a fair gale, on the day that the moon was at the full; by my account in the month of October; but as for the exact reckoning of days, after I had once lost it, I could never recover it again; nor had I kept even the number of years so punctually, as to be sure that I was right; though, as it proved, when I afterwards examined my account, I found I had kept a true reckoning of years.

It was no less than eight days I waited for them, when a strange and unforeseen accident intervened, of which the like has not, perhaps, been heard of in history. I was fast asleep in my hut one morning, when my man Friday came running in to me,

and called aloud, 'Master! master! they are come, they are come!'

I jumped up; and, regardless of danger, I went out as soon as I could get my cloaths on, through my little grove, which, by the way, was by this time grown to be a very thick wood: I say, regardless of danger, I went without my arms, which was not my custom to do; but I was surprized, when turning my eyes to the sea, I presently saw a boat at about a league and a half's distance, standing in for the shore, with a shoulder of mutton sail, as they call it, and the wind blowing pretty fair to bring them in: also I observed presently, that they did not come from that side which the shore lay on, but from the fouthernmost end of the island; upon this I called Friday in, and bid him lie close, for these were not the people we looked for, and that we did not know yet whether they were friends or enemies.

In the next place, I went in to fetch my perspective-glass, to see what I could make of them; and having taken the ladder out, I climbed up to the top of the hill, as I used to do when I was apprehensive of any thing, and to take my view the plainer without being discovered.

I had scarce set my foot on the hill, when my eye plainly discovered a ship lying at an anchor, at about two leagues and a half's distance from me, S. S. E. but not above a league and an half from the shore. By my observation it appeared plainly to be an English ship, and the boat appeared to be an English long-boat.

I cannot express the confusion I was in, though the joy of seeing a ship, and one whom I had reason to believe was manned by my own countrymen, and consequently friends, was such as I cannot describe; but yet I had some secret doubts hung about me, I cannot tell from whence they came, bidding me keep upon my guard. In the first place, it occurred to me to consider what business an English ship could have in that part of the world, since it was not the way to or from any part of the world where the English had any traffick; and I knew there had been no storms to drive them in there, as in distress; and that if they were English really, it was most probable, that

they were here upon no good design; and that I had better continue as I was, than fall into the hands of thieves and murderers.

Let no man despise the secret hints and notices of danger, which sometimes are given him when he may think there is no possibility of it's being real. That such hints and notices are given us, I believe few that have made any observations of things can deny; that they are certain discoveries of an invisible world, and a converse of spirits, we cannot doubt; and if the tendency of them seems to be to warn us of danger, why should we not suppose they are from some friendly agent (whether Supreme, or inferior and subordinate, is not the question) and that they are given for our good?

The present question abundantly confirms me in the justice of this reasoning; for had I not been made cautious by this secret admonition, come it from whence it will, I had been undone inevitably, and in a far worse condition than before, as you will see presently.

I had not kept myself long in this posture, but I saw the boat drew near the shore, as if they looked for a creek to thrust in at for the convenience of landing; however, as they did not come quite far enough, they did not see the little inlet where I formerly landed my rafts, but run their boat on shore upon the beach, at about half a mile from me, which was very happy for me; for otherwise they would have landed just, as I may say, at my door, and would have soon beaten me out of my castle, and perhaps have plundered me of all I had.

When they were on shore, I was fully satisfied they were Englishmen; at least, most of them: one or two I thought were Dutch, but it did not prove so. There were in all eleven men, whereof three of them I found were unarmed, and (as I thought) bound; and when the first four or five of them were jumped on shore, they took those three out of the boat as prisoners. One of the three I could perceive using the most passionate gestures of intreaty, affliction, and despair, even to a kind of extravagance; the other two I could perceive lifted up their hands sometimes, and appeared con-

cerned indeed, but not to such a degree as the first.

I was perfectly confounded at the sight, and knew not what the meaning of it should be. Friday called out to me in English, as well as he could, 'O master! you see English mans eat prisoners as well as savage mans.'—'Why,' said I, 'Friday, do you think they are going to eat them then?'—'Yes,' says Friday, 'they will eat them.'—'No, no,' said I, 'Friday; I am afraid they will murder them, indeed; but you may be sure they will not eat them.'

All this while I had no thought of what the matter really was, but stood trembling with the horror of the sight, expecting every moment when the three prisoners should be killed; nay, once I saw one of the villains lift up his arm with a great *cutlase* (as the seamen call it) or sword, to strike one of the poor men; and I expected to see him fall every moment, at which all the blood in my body seemed to run chill in my veins.

I wished heartily now for our Spaniard, and the savage that was gone with him; or that I had any way to have come undiscovered within shot of them, that I might have rescued the three men; for I saw no fire-arms they had among them: but it fell out to my mind another way.

After I had observed the outrageous usage of the three men by the insolent seamen, I observed the fellows ran scattering about the land, as if they wanted to see the country: I observed also, that the three other men had liberty to go where they pleased; but they sat down all three upon the ground very pensive, and looked like men in despair.

This put me in mind of the first time when I came on shore, and began to look about me; how I gave myself over for lost, how wildly I looked round me, what dreadful apprehensions I had, and how I lodged in the tree all night for fear of being devoured by wild beasts.

As I knew nothing that night of the supply I was to receive by the providential driving of the ship nearer the land by the storms and tide, by which I have since been so long nourished and supported; so these three poor de-

solate

solate men knew nothing how certain of deliverance and supply they were, how near it was to them, and how effectually and really they were in a condition of safety, at the same time they thought themselves lost, and their case desperate.

So little do we see before us in the world, and so much reason have we to depend chearfully upon the Great Maker of the world, that he does not leave his creatures so absolutely destitute, but that in the worst circumstances they have always something to be thankful for, and sometimes are nearer their deliverance than they imagine; nay, are even brought to their deliverance by the means by which they seem to be brought to their destruction.

It was just at the top of high water when these people come on shore, and while partly they stood parleying with the prisoners they brought, and partly while they rambled about to see what kind of place they were in, they had carelessly staid till the tide was spent, and the water was ebbd considerably away, leaving their boat aground.

They had left two men in the boat, who, as I found afterwards, having drank a little too much brandy, fell asleep; however, one of them waking sooner than the other, and finding the boat too fast aground for him to stir it, hallooed for the rest who were straggling about, upon which they all soon came to the boat; but it was past all their strength to launch her, the boat being very heavy, and the shore on that side being a soft ouzy sand, almost like a quick-sand.

In this condition, like true seamen, who are, perhaps, the least of all mankind, given to fore-thought, they gave it over, and away they strolled about the country again; and I heard one of them say aloud to another, (calling them off from the boat;) 'Why, let her alone, Jack, can't ye? she'll float next tide.' By which I was fully confirmed in the main enquiry, of what countrymen they were.

All this while I kept myself close, not once daring to stir out of my castle, any farther than to my place of observation, near the top of the hill; and very glad I was, to think how well it was fortified. I knew it was no less than ten hours before the boat could

be on float again, and by that time it would be dark, and I might be more at liberty to see their motions, and to hear their discourse, if they had any.

In the mean time I fitted myself up for a battle, as before, though with more caution, knowing I had to do with another kind of enemy than I had at first. I ordered Friday also, whom I had made an excellent marksmen with his gun, to load himself with arms. I took myself two fowling-pieces, and I gave him three musquets. My figure, indeed, was very fierce; I had my formidable goat-skin coat on, with the great cap I mentioned, a naked sword, two pistols in my belt, and a gun upon each shoulder.

It was my design, as I said above, not to have made any attempt till it was dark; but about two o'clock, being the heat of the day, I found that in short they were all gone straggling into the woods, and, as I thought, were all laid down to sleep. The three poor distressed men, too anxious for their condition to get any sleep, were however set down under the shelter of a great tree, at about a quarter of a mile from me, and, as I thought, out of sight of any of the rest.

Upon this I resolved to discover myself to them, and learn something of their condition. Immediately I marched in the figure above, my man Friday at a good distance behind me, as formidable for his arms as I, but not making quite so staring a spectre-like figure as I did.

I came as near them undiscovered as I could, and then, before any of them saw me, I called aloud to them in Spanish, 'What are ye, gentlemen?'

They started up at the noise, but were ten times more confounded when they saw me, and the uncouth figure that I made. They made no answer at all, but I thought I perceived them just going to fly from me, when I spoke to them in English. 'Gentlemen,' said I, 'do not be surprized at me; perhaps you may have a friend near you, when you did not expect it.'—'He must be sent directly from Heaven then,' said one of them very gravely to me, and pulling off his hat at the same time, 'for our condition is past the help of man.'—'All help is from Heaven, Sir,' said I: 'but can you put a stranger in the way, how

' how to help you? for you seem to me to be in some great distress: I saw you when you landed; and when you seemed to make application to the brutes that came with you, I saw one of them lift up his sword to kill you.'

The poor man, with tears running down his face, and trembling, looking like one astonished, returned, ' Am I talking to God or man? Is it a real man, or an angel?'—' Be in no fear about that, Sir,' said I: ' if God had sent an angel to relieve you, he would have come better clothed, and armed after another manner than you see me in. Pray lay aside your fears; I am a man, an Englishman, and disposed to assist you, you see; I have one servant only; we have arms and ammunition; tell us freely, Can we serve you? What is your case?'

' Our case,' said he, ' Sir, is too long to tell you, while our murderers are so near; but, in short, Sir, I was commander of that ship, my men having mutinied against me, they have been hardly prevailed on not to murder me; and at last have set me on shore in this desolate place, with these two men with me, one my mate, the other a passenger, where we expected to perish, believing the place to be uninhabited, and know not yet what to think of it.'

' Where are those brutes, your enemies?' said I; ' do you know where they are gone?'—' There they are,' Sir, said he, pointing to a thicket of trees; ' my heart trembles for fear they have seen us, and heard you speak; if they have, they will certainly murder us all.'

' Have they any fire-arms?' said I. He answered they had only two pieces, and one which they left in the boat. ' Well then,' said I, ' leave the rest to me. I see they are all asleep; it is an easy thing to kill them all; but shall we rather take them prisoners?' He told me there were two desperate villains among them, that it was scarce safe to shew any mercy to; but if they were secured, he believed all the rest would return to their duty. I asked him which they were? He told me he could not at that distance describe them; but he would obey my orders in any thing I would direct. ' Well,' said I,

' let us retreat out of their view or hearing, lest they awake, and we will resolve farther.' So they willingly went back with me, till the woods covered us from them.

' Look you, Sir,' said I, ' if I venture upon your deliverance, are you willing to make two conditions with me?' He anticipated my proposals, by telling me, that both he and the ship, if recovered, should be wholly directed and commanded by me in every thing; and if the ship was not recovered, he would live and die with me in what part of the world soever I would send him; and the two other men said the same.

' Well,' said I, ' my conditions are but two: First, That while you stay on this island with me, you will not pretend to any authority here; and if I put arms into your hands, you will upon all occasions give them up to me, and do no prejudice to me or mine, upon this island, and in the mean time be governed by my orders.'

' Secondly, That if the ship is or may be recovered, you will carry me and my man to England passage free.'

He gave me all the assurance that the invention and faith of a man could devise, that he would comply with these most reasonable demands, and besides would owe his life to me, and acknowledge it upon all occasions as long as he lived.

' Well then,' said I, ' here are three muskets for you with powder and ball: tell me next what you think is proper to be done?' He shewed all the testimony of his gratitude that he was able; but offered to be wholly guided by me. I told him, I thought it was hard venturing any thing, but the best method I could think of, was to fire upon them at once, as they lay; and if any were not killed at the first volley, and offered to submit, we might save them, and so put it wholly upon God's providence to direct the shot.

He said very modestly, that he was loth to kill them, if he could help it; but that those two were incorrigible villains, and had been the authors of all the mutiny in the ship; and if they escaped, we should be undone still; for they would go on board, and bring the whole ship's company, and destroy us all. ' Well, then,' said I, ' ne-

I, 'necessity legitimates my advice; for it is the only way to save our lives.' However, seeing him still cautious of shedding blood, I told him, they should go themselves, and manage as they found convenient.

In the middle of this discourse we heard some of them awake, and soon after we saw two of them on their feet: I asked him, if either of them were the men, who he had said were the heads of the mutiny. He said, 'No.'—'Well, then,' said I, 'you may let them escape, and Providence seems to have wakened them on purpose to save themselves: now, if the rest escape you, it is your fault.'

Animated with this, he took the musquet I had given him in his hand, and pistol in his belt, and his two comrades with him, with each man a piece in his hand: the two men who were with him going first, made some noise, at which one of the seamen, who was awake, turned about and, seeing them coming, cried out to the rest: but it was too late then; for the moment he cried out, they fired; I mean, the two men, the captain wisely reserving his own piece. They had so well aimed their shot at the men they knew, that one of them was killed on the spot, and the other very much wounded; but not being dead, he started up upon his feet, and called eagerly for help to the other; but the captain, stepping to him, told him it was too late to cry for help; he should call upon God to forgive his villainy; and with that word knocked him down with the stock of his musquet, so that he never spoke more: there were three more in the company, and one of them was also slightly wounded. By this time I was come; and when they saw their danger, and that it was in vain to resist, they begged for mercy: the captain told them, he would spare their lives, if they would give him any assurance of their abhorrence of the treachery they had been guilty of, and would swear to be faithful to him in recovering the ship, and afterwards in carrying her back to Jamaica, from whence they came. They gave him all the protestations of their sincerity that could be desired, and he was willing to believe them, and spare their lives; which I was not against; only

I obliged him to keep them bound hand and foot while they were upon the island.

While this was doing, I sent Friday with the captain's mate to the boat, with orders to secure her, and bring away the oars and sail, which they did; and, by and by, three straggling men, that were (happily for them) parted from the rest, came back upon hearing the guns fired; and seeing their captain, who before was their prisoner, now their conqueror, they submitted to be bound also, and so our victory was complete.

It now remained, that the captain and I should enquire into one another's circumstances: I began first, and told him my whole history; which he heard with an attention even to amazement; and particularly at the wonderful manner of my being furnished with provisions and ammunition; and, indeed, as my story is a whole collection of wonders, it affected him deeply; but when he reflected from thence upon himself, and how I seemed to have been preserved there on purpose to save his life, the tears ran down his face, and he could not speak a word more.

After this communication was at an end, I carried him, and his two men, into my apartments, leading them in just where I came out, viz. at the top of the house; where I refreshed them with such provisions as I had, and shewed them all the contrivances I had made, during my long, long inhabiting that place.

All I shewed them, all I said to them, was perfectly amazing; but, above all, the captain admired my fortification; and how perfectly I had concealed my retreat with a grove of trees, which, having now been planted near twenty years, and the trees growing much faster than in England, was become a little wood, and so thick, that it was unpassable in any part of it, but at that one side, where I had reserved my little winding passage into it; this I told him was my castle, and my residence; but that I had a seat in the country, as most princes have, whither I could retreat upon occasion, and I would shew him that too another time; but at present our business was to consider, how to recover the ship: he agreed with me as to that; but told me, he was perfectly at a loss what measures

measures to take; for that there were still six and twenty hands on board, who having entered into a cursed conspiracy, by which they had all forfeited their lives to the law, would be hardened in it now by desperation; and would carry it on, knowing that if they were reduced, they should be brought to the gallows as soon as they came to England, or to any of the English colonies; and that therefore there would be no attacking them with so small a number as we were.

I mused for some time upon what he had said, and found it was a very rational conclusion, and that therefore something was to be resolved on very speedily, as well to draw the men on board into some snare for their surprize, as to prevent their landing upon us, and destroying us: upon this it presently occurred to me, that in a little while, the ship's crew, wondering what was become of their comrades, and of the boat, would certainly come on shore in their other boat to see for them; and that then, perhaps, they might come armed, and be too strong for us. This he allowed was rational.

Upon this I told him, the first thing we had to do was to stave the boat, which lay upon the beach, so that they might not carry her off; and, taking every thing out of her, leave her so far useless as not to be fit to swim; accordingly we went on board, took the arms, which were left on board, out of her, and whatever else we found there, which was a bottle of brandy, and another of rum, a few biscuit-cakes, a horn of powder, and a great lump of sugar in a piece of canvas; (the sugar was five or six pounds;) all which was very welcome to me, especially the brandy and sugar, of which I had had none left for many years.

When we had carried all these things on shore, (the oars, mast, sail, and rudder of the boat, were carried away before, as above) we knocked a great hole in her bottom, that if they had come strong enough to master us, yet they could not carry off the boat.

Indeed, it was not much in my thoughts, that we could be capable to recover the ship; but my view was, that if they went away without the boat, I did not much question to make her fit again to carry us away to the Leeward

Islands, and call upon our friends the Spaniards in my way, for I had them still in my thoughts.

While we were thus preparing our designs, and had first, by main strength, heaved the boat up upon the beach, so high, that the tide would not float her off at high-water mark; and, besides, had broken a hole in her bottom, too big to be quickly stopped, and were sat down musing what we should do, we heard the ship fire a gun, and saw her make a waft with her ancient, as a signal for the boat to come on board; but no boat stirred; and they fired several times, making other signals for the boat.

At last, when all their signals and firings proved fruitless, and they found the boat did not stir, we saw them (by the help of our glasses) hoist another boat out, and row towards the shore; and we found, as they approached, that there were no less than ten men in her, and that they had fire-arms with them.

As the ship lay almost two leagues from the shore, we had a full view of them as they came, and a plain sight of the men, even of their faces; because the tide having set them a little to the east of the other boat, they rowed up under shore, to come to the same place, where the other had landed, and where the boat lay.

By this means, I say, we had a full view of them, and the captain knew the persons and characters of all the men in the boat; of whom he said that there were three very honest fellows, who he was sure were led into this conspiracy by the rest, being overpowered and frightened.

But that for the boatswain, who, it seems, was the chief officer among them, and all the rest, they were as outrageous as any of the ship's crew; and were, no doubt, made desperate in their new enterprize: and terribly apprehensive he was, that they would be too powerful for us.

I smiled at him, and told him, that men in our circumstances were past the operations of fear: that seeing almost every condition that could be, was better than that we were supposed to be in, we ought to expect that the consequence, whether death or life, would be sure to be a deliverance. I asked him, what he thought of the circumstances of my life; and whether a delive-

deliverance were not worth venturing for. 'And where, Sir,' said I, 'is your belief of my being preserved here on purpose to save your life, which elevated you a little while ago? For my part, there seems to be but one thing amiss in all the prospect of it.'—'What's that?' says he. 'Why,' said I, 'tis that, as you say there are three or four honest fellows among them, which should be spared; had they been all of the wicked part of the crew, I should have thought God's providence had singled them out to deliver them into your hands; for depend upon it, every man of them that comes ashore are our own, and shall die or live as they behave to us.'

As I spoke this with a raised voice, and chearful countenance, I found it greatly encouraged him; so we set vigorously to our business. We had, upon the first appearance of the boat's coming from the ship, considered of separating our prisoners, and had, indeed, secured them effectually.

Two of them, of whom the captain was less assured than ordinary, I sent with Friday, and one of the three (delivered men) to my cave, where they were remote enough, and out of danger of being heard or discovered; or of finding their way out of the woods, if they could have delivered themselves. Here they left them bound, but gave them provisions, and promised them, if they continued there quietly, to give them their liberty in a day or two; but that if they attempted their escape, they should be put to death without mercy. They promised faithfully to bear their confinement with patience, and were very thankful, that they had such good usage as to have provisions and a light left them; for Friday gave them candles (such as we made ourselves) for their comfort; and they did not know but that he stood centinel over them at the entrance.

The other prisoners had better usage; two of them were kept pinioned indeed, because the captain was not free to trust them; but the other two were taken into my service upon their captain's recommendation, and upon their solemnly engaging to live and die with us; so, with them and the three honest men, we were seven men well armed;

and I made no doubt we should be able to deal well enough with the ten that were a coming, considering that the captain had said there were three or four honest men among them also.

As soon as they got to the place where their other boat lay, they ran their boat into the beach, and came all on shore, hauling the boat up after them, which I was glad to see; for I was afraid they would rather have left the boat at an anchor, some distance from the shore, with some hands in her to guard her; and so we should not be able to seize the boat.

Being on shore, the first thing they did, they ran all to the other boat; and it was easy to see they were under a great surprize, to find her stripped, as above, of all that was in her, and a great hole in her bottom.

After they had mused a while upon this, they set up two or three great shouts, hallooing with all their might, to try if they could make their companions hear; but all was to no purpose; then they came all close in a ring, and fired a volley of their small arms, which indeed we heard, and the echoes made the woods ring; but it was all one: those in the cave, we were sure, could not hear; and those in our keeping, though they heard it well enough, yet durst give no answer to them.

They were so astonished at the surprize of this, that, as they told us afterwards, they resolved to go all on board again to their ship, and let them know there, that the men were all murdered, and the long-boat staved; accordingly, they immediately launched the boat again, and got all of them on board.

The captain was terribly amazed, and even confounded at this, believing they would go on board the ship again, and set sail, giving their comrades for lost, and so he should still lose the ship, which he was in hopes we should have recovered: but he was quickly as much frightened the other way.

They had not been long put off with the boat, but we perceived them all coming on shore again; but with this new measure in their conduct, which, it seems they consulted together upon; viz. to leave three men in the boat,

R and

and the rest to go on shore, and go up into the country to look for their fellows.

This was a great disappointment to us; for now we were at a loss what to do; for our seizing those seven men on shore would be no advantage to us if we let the boat escape, because they would then row away to the ship; and then the rest of them would be sure to weigh, and set sail, and so our recovering the ship would be lost.

However, we had no remedy but to wait and see what the issue of things might present: the seven men came on shore, and the three who remained in the boat, put her off to a good distance from the shore, and came to an anchor to wait for them; so that it was impossible for us to come at them in the boat.

Those that came on shore kept close together, marching towards the top of the little hill, under which my habitation lay; and we could see them plainly, though they could not perceive us: we could have been very glad they would have come nearer to us, so that we might have fired at them; or that they would have gone farther off, that we might have come abroad.

But when they were come to the brow of the hill, where they could see a great way in the valley and woods which lay towards the north-east part, and where the island lay lowest, they shouted and hallooed till they were weary; and not caring, it seems, to venture far from the shore, nor far from one another, they sat down together under a tree, to consider of it: had they thought fit to have gone to sleep there, as the other party of them had done, they had done the job for us; but they were too full of apprehensions of danger to venture to go to sleep, though they could not tell what the danger was they had to fear neither.

The captain made a very just proposal to me upon this consultation of theirs; viz. that perhaps they would all fire a volley again, to endeavour to make their fellows hear, and that we should all fall upon them, just at the juncture when their pieces were all discharged, and they would certainly yield, and we should have them without bloodshed; I liked the proposal, provided it was done while we were

near enough to come up to them, before they could load their pieces again.

But this event did not happen, and we lay still a long time, very irresolute what course to take: at length I told them, there would be nothing to be done, in my opinion, till night; and then, if they did not return to the boat, perhaps we might find a way to get between them and the shore, and so might use some stratagem with them in the boat to get them on shore.

We waited a great while, though very impatient, for their removing, and were very uneasy; when, after long consultations, we saw them start all up, and march down towards the sea. It seems, they had such dreadful apprehensions upon them of the danger of the place, that they resolved to go on board the ship again, give their companions over for lost, and so go on with their intended voyage with the ship.

As soon as I perceived them go towards the shore, I imagined it to be as it really was; that they had given over their search, and were for going back again: and the captain, as soon as I told him my thoughts, was ready to sink at the apprehensions of it; but I presently thought of a stratagem to fetch them back again, and which answered my end to a tittle.

I ordered Friday and the Captain's mate to go over the little creek westward, towards the place where the savages came on shore when Friday was rescued; and as soon as they came to a little rising ground, at about half a mile's distance, I bade them halloo as loud as they could, and wait till they found the seamen heard them; that as soon as ever they heard the seamen answer them, they should return it again, and then keeping out of sight, take a round, always answering when the other hallooed, to draw them as far into the island, and among the woods, as possible; and then wheel about again to me, by such ways as I directed.

They were just going into the boat, when Friday and the mate hallooed, and they presently heard them, and answering, run along the shore westward, towards the voice they heard; when they were presently stopped by the creek, where the water being up, they

they could not get over, and called for the boat to come up, and set them over, as indeed I expected.

When they had set themselves over; I observed that the boat being gone up a good way into the creek, and as it were in a harbour within the land, they took one of the three men out of her to go along with them, and left only two in the boat, having fastened her to the stump of a little tree on the shore.

This was what I wished for; and immediately leaving Friday and the captain's mate to their business, I took the rest with me, and crossing the creek out of their sight, we surprized the two men before they were aware, one of them lying on shore, and the other being in the boat; the fellow on shore was between sleeping and waking, and going to start up, the captain, who was foremost, ran in upon him, and knocked him down, and then called out to him in the boat to yield, or he was a dead man.

There needed very few arguments to persuade a single man to yield, when he saw five men upon him, and his comrade knocked down; besides, this was, it seems, one of the three who were not so hearty in the mutiny as the rest of the crew, and therefore was easily persuaded, not only to yield, but afterwards to join very sincerely with us.

In the mean time, Friday and the captain's mate so well managed their business with the rest, that they drew them, by hallooing and answering, from one hill to another, and from one wood to another, till they not only heartily tired them, but left them where they were very sure they could not reach back to the boat before it was dark; and indeed they were heartily tired themselves also by the time they came back to us.

We had nothing now to do but to watch for them in the dark, and to fall upon them, so as to make sure work with them.

It was several hours after Friday came back to me, before they came back to their boat; and we could hear the foremost of them, long before they came quite up, calling to those behind to come along, and could also hear them answer, and complain how lame and tired they were, and not being able

to come any faster, which was very welcome news to us.

At length they came up to the boat; but it is impossible to express their confusion, when they found the boat fast aground in the creek, the tide ebbed out, and their two men gone; we could hear them call to one another in a most lamentable manner, telling one another they were gotten into an enchanted island; that either there were inhabitants in it, and they should all be murdered; or else there were devils or spirits in it, and they should be all carried away and devoured.

They hallooed again, and called their two comrades by their names a great many times, but no answer. After some time, we could see them, by the little light there was, run about, wringing their hands, like men in despair; and that sometimes they would go and sit down in the boat to rest themselves, then come ashore, and walk about again, and so the same thing over again.

My men would fain have had me given them leave to fall upon them at once in the dark; but I was willing to take them at some advantage, so to spare them, and kill as few of them as I could; and especially I was unwilling to hazard the killing any of our men, knowing the other were very well armed: I resolved to wait to see if they did not separate; and therefore, to make sure of them, I drew my ambuscade nearer; and ordered Friday and the captain to creep upon their hands and feet as close to the ground as they could, that they might not be discovered, and get as near them as they could possibly, before they offered to fire.

They had not been long in that posture, but that the boatswain, who was the principal ringleader of the mutiny, and had now shewn himself the most dejected and dispirited of all the rest, came walking towards them with two more of their crew; the captain was so eager, at having the principal rogue so much in his power, that he could hardly have patience to let him come so near as to be sure of him; for they only heard his tongue before: but when they came nearer, the captain and Friday, starting up on their feet, let fly at them.

The boatswain was killed upon the spot;

spot; the next man was shot in the body, and fell just by him, though he did not die till an hour or two after; and the third run for it.

At the noise of the fire, I immediately advanced with my whole army, which was now eight men, viz. myself generalissimo; Friday my lieutenant-general; the captain and his two men; and the three prisoners of war, whom he had trusted with arms.

We came upon them indeed in the dark, so that they could not see our number; and I made the man they had left in the boat, who was now one of us, to call them by name, to try if I could bring them to a parley, and so might perhaps reduce them to terms; which fell out just as we desired: for indeed it was easy to think, as their condition then was, they would be very willing to capitulate; so he calls out, as loud as he could, to one of them, 'Tom Smith, Tom Smith!' Tom Smith answered immediately, 'Who's that? Robinson?' For it seems he knew his voice. The other answered, 'Ay, ay; for God's sake, Tom Smith, throw down your arms, and yield, or you are all dead men this moment.'

'Who must we yield to? Where are they?' says Smith again. 'Here they are,' says he; 'here is our captain and fifty men with him, have been hunting you this two hours; the boatswain is killed, Will Fry is wounded, and I am a prisoner; and if you do not yield, you are all lost.'

'Will they give us quarter then?' says Tom Smith, 'and we will yield.' — 'I'll go and ask, if you promise to yield,' says Robinson. So he asked the captain, and the captain himself then calls out: 'You, Smith; you know my voice; if you lay down your arms immediately and submit, you shall have your lives, all but Will Atkins.'

Upon this Will Atkins cried out, 'For God's sake, captain, give me quarter: What have I done? They have been all as bad as I!' which, by the way, was not true neither; for it seems, this Will Atkins was the first man that laid hold of the captain, when they first mutinied, and used him barbarously, in tying his hands, and giving him injurious language. How-

ever, the captain told him he must lay down his arms at discretion, and trust to the governor's mercy; by which he meant me, for they all called me governor.

In a word, they all laid down their arms, and begged their lives; and I sent the man that had parleyed with them, and two more, who bound them all; and then my great army of fifty men, which, particularly with those three, were all but eight, came up and seized upon them all, and upon their boat, only that I kept myself and one more out of sight, for reasons of state.

Our next work was to repair the boat, and to think of seizing the ship; and as for the captain, now he had leisure to parley with them, he expostulated with them upon the villainy of their practices with him, and at length upon the farther wickedness of their design; and how certainly it must bring them to misery and distress in the end, and perhaps to the gallows.

They all appeared very penitent, and begged hard for their lives. As for that, he told them they were none of his prisoners, but the commander's of the island; that they thought they had set him on shore in a barren uninhabited island; but it had pleased God so to direct them, that the island was inhabited, and that the governor was an Englishman; that he might hang them all there if he pleased; but as he had given them all quarter, he supposed he would send them to England, to be dealt with there, as justice required, except Atkins, whom he was commanded by the governor to advise to prepare for death, for that he would be hanged in the morning.

Though this was all a fiction of his own, yet it had it's desired effect. Atkins fell upon his knees to beg the captain to intercede with the governor for his life; and all the rest begged of him, for God's sake, that they might not be sent to England.

It now occurred to me, that the time of our deliverance was come, and that it would be a most easy thing to bring these fellows in, to be hearty in getting possession of the ship; so I retired in the dark from them, that they might not see what kind of a governor they had, and called the captain

tain to me; when I called, as at a good distance, one of the men was ordered to speak again, and say to the captain, 'Captain, the commander calls for you;' and presently the captain replied, 'Tell his excellency I am just a coming.' This more perfectly amused them; and they all believed, that the commander was just by with his fifty men.

Upon the captain's coming to me, I told him my project for seizing the ship; which he liked of wonderfully well, and resolved to put it in execution the next morning.

But, in order to execute it with more art, and to be secure of success, I told him we must divide the prisoners, and that he should go and take Atkins, and two more of the worst of them, and send them pinioned to the cave where the others lay. This was committed to Friday, and the two men who came on shore with the captain.

They conveyed them to the cave, as to a prison; and it was indeed a dismal place, especially to men in their condition.

The other I ordered to my bower, as I called it, of which I have given a full description; and as it was fenced in, and they pinioned, the place was secure enough, considering they were upon their behaviour.

To these in the morning I sent the captain, who was to enter into a parley with them; in a word, to try them, and tell me whether he thought they might be trusted or no to go on board and surprize the ship. He talked to them of the injury done him, of the condition they were brought to; and that though the governor had given them quarter for their lives, as to the present action, yet that if they were sent to England, they would all be hanged in chains to be sure; but that if they would join in such an attempt as to recover the ship, he would have the governor's engagement for their pardon.

Any one may guess how readily such a proposal would be accepted by men in their condition; they fell down on their knees to the captain, and promised, with the deepest imprecations, that they would be faithful to him to the last drop, and that they should owe their lives to him, and would go with him all over the world; that they would

own him for a father to them as long as they lived.

'Well,' says the captain, 'I must go and tell the governor what you say, and see what I can do to bring him to consent to it.' So he brought me an account of the temper he found them in; and that he verily believed they would be faithful.

However, that we might be very secure, I told him he should go back again, and chuse out five of them, and tell them, that they should see that they did not want men; but he would take out those five to be his assistants, and that the governor would keep the other two, and the three that were sent prisoners to the castle, (my cave) as hostages, for the fidelity of those five; and that if they proved unfaithful in the execution, the five hostages should be hanged in chains alive upon the shore.

This looked severe, and convinced them that the governor was in earnest: however, they had no way left them but to accept it; and it was now the business of the prisoners, as much as of the captain, to persuade the other five to do their duty.

Our strength was now thus ordered for the expedition. 1. The captain, his mate, and passenger. 2. Then the two prisoners of the first gang, to whom, having their characters from the captain, I had given their liberty, and trusted them with arms. 3. The other two whom I kept till now in my bower pinioned; but, upon the captain's motion, had now released. 4. These five released at last. So that they were twelve in all, besides five we kept prisoners in the cave for hostages.

I asked the captain if he was willing to venture with these hands on board the ship: for, as for me and my man Friday, I did not think it was proper for us to stir, having seven men left behind; and it was employment enough for us to keep them asunder, and supply them with victuals.

As to the five in the cave, I resolved to keep them fast; but Friday went twice a day to them, to supply them with necessaries; and I made the other two carry provisions to a certain distance, where Friday was to take it.

When I shewed myself to the two hostages, it was with the captain, who told them, I was the person the governor

vernor had ordered to look after them, and that it was the governor's pleasure they should not stir any where but by my direction; that if they did, they should be fetched into the castle, and be laid in irons; so that as we never suffered them to see me as governor, so I now appeared as another person, and spoke of the governor, the garrison, the castle, and the like, upon all occasions.

The captain now had no difficulty before him, but to furnish his two boats, stop the breach of one, and man them. He made his passenger captain of one, with four other men; and himself, his mate, and five more, went in the other: and they contrived their business very well; for they came up to the ship about midnight. As soon as they came within call of the ship, he made Robinson hail them, and tell them he had brought off the men and the boat, but that it was a long time before they had found them; and the like: holding them in a chat, till they came to the ship's side; when the captain and the mate entering first with their arms, immediately knocked down the second mate and carpenter with the butt-end of their musquets, being very faithfully seconded by their men; they secured all the rest that were upon the main and quarter-decks, and began to fasten the hatches, to keep them down who were below, when the other boat, and their men, entering at the fore-chains, secured the fore-castle of the ship, and the skuttle which went down into the cook-room, making three men they found there prisoners.

When this was done, and all safe upon the deck, the captain ordered the mate with three men to break into the round-house, where the new rebel captain lay, and having taken the alarm, was gotten up, and with two men and a boy, had gotten fire-arms in their hands; and when the mate with a crew split open the door, the new captain and his men fired boldly among them, and wounded the mate with a musquet-ball, which broke his arm, and wounded two more of the men, but killed nobody.

The mate, calling for help, rushed, however, into the round-house, wounded as he was, and with his pistol shot the new captain through the head, the bullets entering at his mouth, and

came out again behind one of his ears; so that he never spoke a word; upon which the rest yielded, and the ship was taken effectually, without any more lives lost.

As soon as the ship was thus secured, the captain ordered seven guns to be fired, which was the signal agreed upon with me, to give me notice of his success; which you may be sure I was very glad to hear, having sat watching upon the shore for it till near two of the clock in the morning.

Having thus heard the signal plainly, I laid me down; and it having been a day of great fatigue to me, I slept very sound, till I was something surprized with the noise of a gun; and presently starting up, I heard a man call me by the name of 'Governor! 'Governor!' and presently I knew the captain's voice; when climbing up to the top of the hill, there he stood, and pointing to the ship, he embraced me in his arms; 'My dear friend and 'deliverer,' says he, 'there's your 'ship, for she is all yours, and so are 'we, and all that belong to her.' I cast my eyes to the ship, and there she rode within a little more than half a mile of the shore; for they had weighed her anchor as soon as they were masters of her; and the weather being fair, had brought her to an anchor just against the mouth of a little creek; and the tide being up, the captain had brought the pinnace in near the place where I first landed my rafts, and so landed just at my door.

I was, at first, ready to sink down with the surprize: for I saw my deliverance indeed visibly put into my hands, all things easy, and a large ship just ready to carry me away whither I pleased to go. At first, for some time, I was not able to answer one word; but as he had taken me in his arms, I held fast by him, or I should have fallen to the ground.

He perceived the surprize, and immediately pulled a bottle out of his pocket, and gave me a dram of cordial, which he had brought on purpose for me. After I had drank it, I sat down upon the ground; and though it brought me to myself, yet it was a good while before I could speak a word to him.

All this while the poor man was in as great an extasy as I, only not under

der any surprize, as I was; and he said a thousand kind tender things to me, to compose and bring me to myself; but such was the flood of joy in my breast, that it put all my spirits into confusion; at last it broke into tears, and in a little while after I recovered my speech.

Then I took my turn, and embraced him as my deliverer; and we rejoiced together. I told him, I looked upon him as a man sent from heaven to deliver me, and that the whole transaction seemed to be a chain of wonders; that such things as these were the testimonies we had of a secret hand of Providence governing the world, and an evidence, that the eyes of an Infinite Power could search into the remotest corner of the world, and send help to the miserable whenever he pleased.

I forgot not to lift up my heart in thankfulness to Heaven: and what heart could forbear to bless him, who had not only in a miraculous manner provided for one in such a wilderness, and in such a desolate condition, but from whom every deliverance must always be acknowledged to proceed!

When we had talked awhile, the captain told me, he had brought me some little refreshments, such as the ship afforded, and such as the wretches, who had been so long his masters, had not plundered him of. Upon this he called aloud to the boat, and bid his men bring the things ashore that were for the governor; and indeed it was a present, as if I had been one, not that was to be carried along with them, but as if I had been to dwell upon the island still, and they were to go without me.

First, he had brought me a case of bottles full of excellent cordial waters, six large bottles of Madeira wine, (the bottles held two quarts apiece;) two pounds of excellent good tobacco, twelve good pieces of the ship's beef, and six pieces of pork, with a bag of peas, and about an hundred weight of biscuit.

He brought me also a box of sugar, a box of flour, a bag full of lemons, and two bottles of lime-juice; and abundance of other things: but besides these, and what was a thousand times more useful to me, he brought

me six clean new shirts, six very good neckcloths, two pair of gloves, one pair of shoes, a hat, and one pair of stockings, and a very good suit of cloaths of his own, which had been worn but very little: in a word, he cloathed me from head to foot.

It was a very kind and agreeable present, as any one may imagine, to one in my circumstances; but never was any thing in the world of that kind so unpleasant, awkward, and uneasy, as it was to me to wear such cloaths at their first putting on.

After these ceremonies past, and after all his good things were brought into my little apartment, we began to consult what was to be done with the prisoners we had; for it was worth considering whether we might venture to take them away with us or no, especially two of them, whom we knew to be incorrigible and refractory to the last degree; and the captain said, he knew they were such rogues, that there was no obliging them; and if he did carry them away, it must be in irons, as malefactors, to be delivered over to justice at the first English colony he could come at. And I found that the captain himself was very anxious about it.

Upon this, I told him, that if he desired it, I durst undertake to bring the two men he spoke of, to make it their own request that he should leave them upon the island. 'I should be very glad of that,' says the captain, 'with all my heart.'

'Well,' said I, 'I will send for them, and talk with them for you.' So I caused Friday and the two hostages, for they were now discharged, their comrades having performed their promise; I say, I caused them to go to the cave, and bring up the five men, pinioned as they were, to the bower, and keep them there till I came.

After some time, I came thither dressed in my new habit; and now I was called governor again. Being all met, and the captain with me, I caused the men to be brought before me, and I told them I had had a full account of their villainous behaviour to the captain, and how they had run away with the ship, and were preparing to commit farther robberies; but that Providence had ensnared them in their

own ways, and that they were fallen into the pit which they had digged for others.

I let them know, that by my direction the ship had been seized, that she lay now in the road, and they might see by and by, that their new captain had received the reward of his villainy, for that they might see him hanging at the yard-arm.

That as to them, I wanted to know what they had to say, why I should not execute them as pirates taken in the fact, as by my commission they could not doubt I had authority to do.

One of them answered in the name of the rest, that they had nothing to say but this, that when they were taken, the captain promised them their lives, and they humbly implored my mercy. But I told them, I knew not what mercy to shew them; for, as for myself, I had resolved to quit the island with all my men, and had taken passage with the captain to go for England: and as for the captain, he could not carry them to England, other than as prisoners in irons, to be tried for mutiny, and running away with the ship; the consequence of which, they must needs know, would be the gallows; so that I could not tell which was best for them, unless they had a mind to take their fate in the island; if they desired that, I did not care, as I had liberty to leave it: I had some inclination to give them their lives, if they thought they could shift on shore. They seemed very thankful for it; said they would much rather venture to stay there, than to be carried to England to be hanged; so I left them on that issue.

However, the captain seemed to make some difficulty of it, as if he durst not leave them there: upon this I seemed a little angry with the captain, and told him, that they were my prisoners, not his; and that seeing I had offered them so much favour, I would be as good as my word; and that if he did not think fit to consent to it, I would set them at liberty as I found them; and if he did not like that, he might take them again, if he could catch them.

Upon this they appeared very thankful; and I accordingly set them at liberty, and bade them retire into the woods, to the place whence they came, and I

would leave them some fire-arms, some ammunition, and some directions how they should live very well, if they thought fit.

Upon this, I prepared to go on board the ship; but told the captain, that I would stay that night to prepare my things, and desired him to go on board in the mean time, and keep all right in the ship, and send the boat on shore the next day for me; ordering him in the mean time, to cause the new captain, who was killed, to be hanged at the yard-arm, that these men might see him.

When the captain was gone, I sent for the men up to my apartment, and entered seriously into discourse with them of their circumstances: I told them, I thought they had made a right choice; that if the captain carried them away, they would certainly be hanged: I shewed them their captain hanging at the yard-arm of the ship, and told them they had nothing less to expect.

When they had all declared their willingness to stay, I then told them I would let them into the story of my living there, and put them into the way of making it easy to them: accordingly I gave them the whole history of the place, and of my coming to it; shewed them my fortifications, the way I made my bread, planted my corn, cured my grapes; and, in a word, all that was necessary to make them easy: I told them the story also of the sixteen Spaniards that were to be expected; for whom I left a letter, and made them promise to treat them in common with themselves.

I left them my fire-arms; viz. five musquets, three fowling-pieces, and three swords. I had about a barrel of powder left; for after the first year or two I used but little, and wasted none. I gave them a description of the way I managed the goats, and directions to milk and fatten them, to make both butter and cheese.

In a word, I gave them every part of my own story; and I told them, I would prevail with the captain to leave them two barrels of gun-powder more, and some garden-seed, which I told them I would have been very glad of; also I gave them the bag of pease which the captain had brought me to eat, and bade them be sure to sow and increase them.

Having

Having done all this, I left them the next day, and went on board the ship. We prepared immediately to sail, but did not weigh that night. The next morning early, two of the five men came swimming to the ship's side, and, making a most lamentable complaint of the other three, begged to be taken into the ship, for God's sake; for they should be murdered; and begged the captain to take them on board, though he hanged them immediately.

Upon this the captain pretended to have no power without me; but after some difficulty, and after their solemn promises of amendment, they were taken on board, and were some time after soundly whipped and pickled; after which they proved very honest and quiet fellows.

Some time after this, I went with the boat on shore, the tide being up, with the things promised to the men, to which the captain, at my intercession, caused their chests and cloaths to be added; which they took, and were very thankful for: I also encouraged them, by telling them, that if it lay in my way to send a vessel to take them in, I would not forget them.

When I took leave of this island, I carried on board for reliques the great goat's skin cap I had made, my umbrella, and one of my parrots; also I forgot not to take the money I formerly mentioned, which had lain by me so long useless, that it was grown rusty, or tarnished, and could hardly pass for silver, till it had been a little rubbed and handled; and also the money I found in the wreck of the Spanish ship.

And thus I left the island the nineteenth of December, as I found by the ship's account, in the year 1686, after I had been upon it eight and twenty years, two months, and nineteen days; being delivered from the second captivity the same day of the month that I first made my escape in the *barco-longo*, from among the Moors of Salée.

In this vessel, after a long voyage, I arrived in England the eleventh of June, in the year 1687, having been thirty and five years absent.

When I came to England, I was a perfect stranger to all the world, as if I had never been known there: my

benefactor, and faithful steward, whom I had left in trust with my money, was alive, but had had great misfortunes in the world, was become a widow the second time, and very low in the world. I made her easy as to what she owed me, assuring her, I would give her no trouble; but on the contrary, in gratitude to her former care and faithfulness to me, I relieved her as my little stock would afford, which at that time would indeed allow me to do but little for her; but I assured her I would never forget her former kindness to me; nor did I forget her, when I had sufficient to help her, as shall be observed in it's place.

I went down afterwards into Yorkshire; but my father was dead, and my mother, and all the family extinct; except that I found two sisters, and two of the children of one of my brothers; and as I had been long ago given over for dead, there had been no provision made for me; so that, in a word, I found nothing to relieve or assist me; and that little money I had, would not do much for me, as to settling in the world.

I met with one piece of gratitude indeed, which I did not expect; and this was, that the master of the ship, whom I had so happily delivered, and by the same means saved the ship and cargo, having given a very handsome account to the owners, of the manner how I had saved the lives of the men and the ship, they invited me to meet them, and some other merchants concerned, and all together made me a very handsome compliment upon that subject, and a present of almost two hundred pounds sterling.

But, after making several reflections upon the circumstances of my life, and how little way this would go toward settling me in the world, I resolved to go to Lisbon, and see if I might not come by some information of the state of my plantation in the Brazils, and what was become of my partner, who I had reason to suppose had some years now given me over for dead.

With this view I took shipping for Lisbon, where I arrived in April following; my man Friday accompanying me very honestly in all these ramblings, and proving a most faithful servant upon all occasions.

When I came to Lisbon, I found

out by enquiry, and to my particular satisfaction, my old friend the captain of the ship, who first took me up at sea, off the shore of Africa: he was now grown old, and had left off the sea, having put his son, who was far from a young man, into his ship; and who still used the Brazil trade. The old man did not know me; and, indeed, I hardly knew him; but I soon brought myself to his remembrance, when I told him who I was.

After some passionate expressions of our old acquaintance, I enquired, you may be sure, after my plantation, and my partner: the old man told me, he had not been in the Brazils for about nine years; but that he could assure me, that when he came away, my partner was living, but the trustees, whom I had joined with him to take cognizance of my part, were both dead; that, however, he believed that I would have a very good account of the improvement of the plantation; for that, upon the general belief of my being cast away and drowned, my trustees had given in the account of the produce of my part of the plantation to the Procurator Fiscal; who had appropriated it, in case I never came to claim it, one third to the king, and two thirds to the monastery of St. Augustine, to be expended for the benefit of the poor, and for the conversion of the Indians to the Catholick faith; but that if I appeared, or any one for me, to claim the inheritance, it would be restored; only that the improvement, or annual production, being distributed to charitable uses, could not be restored; but he assured me, that the steward of the king's revenue, (from lands) and the provedore, or steward of the monastery, had taken great care all along, that the incumbent, that is to say, my partner, gave every year a faithful account of the produce, of which they received duly my moiety.

I asked him, if he knew to what height of improvement he had brought the plantation; and whether he thought it might be worth looking after; or whether, on my going thither, I should meet with no obstruction to my possessing my just right in the moiety.

He told me, he could not tell exactly to what degree the plantation was improved; but this he knew, that my partner was grown exceeding rich up-

on the enjoying but one half of it; and that, to the best of his remembrance he had heard, that the king's third of my part, which was, it seems, granted away to some other monastery, or religious house, amounted to above two hundred moidores a year; that, as to my being restored to a quiet possession of it, there was no question to be made of that, my partner being alive to witness my title, and my name being also inrolled in the register of the country. Also he told me, that the survivors of my two trustees were very fair, honest people; and very wealthy; and he believed I would not only have their assistance for putting me in possession, but would find a very considerable sum of money in their hands, for my account, being the produce of the farm while their fathers held the trust, and before it was given up, as above, which, as he remembered, was about twelve years.

I shewed myself a little concerned and uneasy at this account, and enquired of the old captain, how it came to pass, that the trustees should thus dispose of my effects, when he knew, that I had made my will, and had made him, the Portuguese captain, my universal heir, &c.

He told me, that was true; but that, as there was no proof of my being dead, he could not act as executor, until some certain account should come of my death; and that, besides, he was not willing to intermeddle with a thing so remote: that it was true, he had registered my will, and put in his claim; and could he have given any account of my being dead or alive, he would have acted by procuration, and taken possession of the ingenio, (so they called the sugar-house) and had given his son, who was now at the Brazils, order to do it.

‘But,’ says the old man, ‘I have one piece of news to tell you, which perhaps may not be so acceptable to you as the rest; and that is, that believing you were lost, and all the world believing so also, your partner and trustees did offer to account to me in your name, for six or eight of the first years of profits, which I received; but there being at that time great disbursements for increasing the works, building an ingenio, and buying slaves, it did not amount to near

'near so much as afterwards it produced. However,' says the old man, 'I shall give you a true account of what I have received in all, and how I have disposed of it.'

After a few days farther conference with this ancient friend, he brought me an account of the six first years income of my plantation, signed by my partner, and the merchant's trustees, being always delived in goods; viz. tobacco in rolls, and sugar in chests, besides rum, melasses, &c. which is the consequence of a sugar-work; and I found by this account, that every year the income considerably increased; but, as above, the disbursement being large, the sum at first was small: however, the old man let me see, that he was debtor to me four hundred and seventy moidores of gold, besides sixty chests of sugar, and fifteen double rolls of tobacco, which were lost in his ship, he having been shipwrecked coming home to Lisbon, about eleven years after my leaving the place.

The good man then began to complain of his misfortunes, and how he had been obliged to make use of my money to recover his losses, and buy him a share in a new ship. 'However,' my old friend, says he, 'you shall not want a supply in your necessity; and as soon as my son returns, you shall be fully satisfied.'

Upon this he pulls out an old pouch, and gives me two hundred Portugal moidores in gold; and giving me the writings of his title to the ship which his son was gone to the Brazils in, of which he was a quarter-part owner, and his son another, he puts them both in my hands for security of the rest.

I was too much moved with the honesty and kindness of the poor man, to be able to bear this; and remembering what he had done for me; how he had taken me up at sea, and how generously he had used me on all occasions, and particularly, how sincere a friend he was now to me, I could hardly refrain weeping at what he said to me: therefore, first I asked him if his circumstances admitted him to spare so much money at that time, and if it would not straiten him. He told me he could not say but it might straiten him a little; but, however,

it was my money, and I might want it more than he.

Every thing the good man said was full of affection, and I could hardly refrain from tears while he spoke. In short, I took one hundred of the moidores, and called for a pen and ink to give him a receipt for them; then I returned him the rest, and told him, if ever I had possession of the plantation, I would return the other to him also, as indeed I afterwards did; and that, as to the bill of sale of his part in his son's ship, I would not take it by any means; but that if I wanted the money, I found he was honest enough to pay me; and if I did not, but came to receive what he gave me reason to expect, I would never have a penny more from him.

When this was passed, the old man began to ask me if he should put me in a method to make my claim to my plantation. I told him, I thought to go over to it myself: he said I might do so if I pleased; but that if I did not, there were ways enough to secure my right, and immediately to appropriate the profits to my use; and as there were ships in the river of Lisbon, just ready to go away to Brazil, he made me enter my name in a publick register, with his affidavit, affirming upon oath that I was alive, and that I was the same person who took up the land for the planting the said plantation at first.

This being regularly attested by a notary, and a procuration affixed, he directed me to send it with a letter of his writing, to a merchant of his acquaintance at the place; and then proposed my staying with him till an account came of the return.

Never any thing was more honourable than the proceedings upon this procuration; for in less than seven months I received a large packet from the survivors of my trustees, the merchants, for whose account I went to sea, in which were the following particular letters and papers inclosed.

First, There was the account current of the produce of my farm, or plantation, from the year when their fathers had balanced with my old Portugal captain, being for six years; the balance appeared to be 1174 moidores in my favour.

S 2

Secondly,

Secondly, There was the account of four years more while they kept the effects in their hands, before the government claimed the administration, as being the effects of a person not to be found, which they call *civil death*; and the balance of this, the value of the plantation, increasing, amounted to cruizadoes which made three thousand two hundred and forty one moidores.

Thirdly, There was the prior of the Augustines account, who had received the profits for above fourteen years; but not being able to account for what was disposed to the hospital, very honestly declared he had 872 moidores not distributed, which he acknowledged to my account. As to the king's part, that refunded nothing.

There was also a letter of my partner's, congratulating me very affectionately upon my being alive; giving me an account how the estate was improved, and what it produced a year, with a particular of the number of squares or acres that it contained; how planted; how many slaves there were upon it; and making two and twenty crosses for blessings, told me, he had said so many Ave Maria's to thank the Blessed Virgin that I was alive; inviting me very passionately to come over and take possession of my own, and in the mean time to give him orders to whom he should deliver my effects, if I did not come myself; concluding with an hearty tender of his friendship, and that of his family; and sent me, as a present, seven fine leopards skins, which he had, it seems, received from Africa by some other ship which he had sent thither, and who, it seems, had made a better voyage than I. He sent me also five chests of excellent sweetmeats; and an hundred pieces of gold uncoined, not quite so large as moidores.

By the same fleet my two merchant-trustees shipped me one thousand two hundred chests of sugar, eight hundred rolls of tobacco, and the rest of the whole account in gold.

I might well say now, indeed, that the latter end of Job was better than the beginning. It is impossible to express the flutterings of my very heart, when I looked over these letters, and especially when I found all my wealth

about me; for as the Brazil ships came all in fleets, the same ships which brought my letters brought my goods; and the effects were safe in the Tagus before the letter came to my hand: in a word, I turned pale, and grew sick; and had not the old man run and fetched me a cordial, I believe the sudden surprize of joy had overlet nature, and I had died upon the spot.

Nay, after that, I continued very ill, and was so some hours, till a physician being sent for, and something of the real cause of my illness being known, he ordered me to be let blood; after which I had relief, and grew well; but I verily believe, if it had not been eased by the vent given in that manner to the spirits, I should have died.

I was now master, all on a sudden, of above 50,000*l.* sterling in money, and had an estate, as I might well call it, in the Brazils, of above a thousand pounds a year, as sure as an estate of lands in England; and, in a word, I was in a condition which I scarce knew how to understand, or how to compose myself for the enjoyment of.

The first thing I did, was to recompense my original benefactor, my good old captain, who had been first charitable to me in my distress, kind to me in the beginning, and honest to me at the end. I shewed him all that was sent me; I told him that, next to the Providence of Heaven, which disposes all things, it was owing to him; and that it now lay in me to reward him, which I would do an hundred-fold. So I first returned to him the hundred moidores I had received of him; then I sent for a notary, and caused him to draw up a general release or discharge for the four hundred and seventy moidores which he had acknowledged he owed me, in the fullest and firmest manner possible; after which, I caused a procuration to be drawn, empowering him to be my receiver of the annual profits of my plantation, and appointing my partner to account to him, and make the returns by the usual fleets to him in my name; and a clause in the end, being a grant of one hundred moidores a year to him during his life, out of the effects; and fifty moidores a year to his son after him,

him, for his life. And thus I requited my old man.

I was now to consider which way to steer my course next, and what to do with the estate that Providence had thus put into my hands; and, indeed, I had more care upon my head now, than I had in my silent state of life in the island, where I wanted nothing but what I had, and had nothing but what I wanted; whereas I had now a great charge upon me, and my business was how to secure it. I had never a cave to hide my money in, or a place where it might lie without lock or key, till it grew mouldy and tarnished before any body would meddle with it: on the contrary, I knew not where to put it, or whom to trust with it; my old patron, the captain, indeed, was honest, and that was the only refuge I had.

In the next place, my interest in the Brazils seemed to summon me thither; but now I could not tell how to think of going thither till I had settled my affairs, and left my effects in some safe hands behind me. At first I thought of my old friend the widow, who I knew was honest, and would be just to me; but then she was in years, and but poor, and for aught I knew, might be in debt; so that, in a word, I had no way but to go back to England myself, and take my effects with me.

I was some months, however, before I resolved upon this, and therefore as I had rewarded the old captain fully, and to satisfaction, who had been my former benefactor; so I began to think of my poor widow, whose husband had been my first benefactor, and she, while it was in her power, my faithful steward and instructor: so the first thing I did, I got a merchant in Lisbon to write to his correspondent in London, not only to pay a bill, but to go, find her out, and carry her in money a hundred pounds from me, and to talk with her, and comfort her in her poverty, by telling her, she should, if I lived, have a farther supply. At the same time I sent my two sisters in the country, each of them, a hundred pounds, they being, though not in want, yet not in very good circumstances; one having been married and left a widow, and the other having a

husband not so kind to her as he should be.

But among all my relations or acquaintances I could not yet pitch upon one, to whom I durst commit the gross of my stock, that I might go away to the Brazils, and leave things safe behind me; and this greatly perplexed me.

I had once a mind to have gone to the Brazils, and have settled myself there; for I was, as it were, naturalized to the place; but I had some little scruple in my mind about religion, which unsensibly drew me back, of which I shall say more presently. However, it was not religion that kept me from going thither for the present; and as I had made no scruple of being openly of the religion of the country, all the while I was among them, so neither did I yet; only that now and then having of late thought more of it than formerly, when I began to think of living and dying among them, I began to regret my having professed myself a Papist, and thought it might not be the best religion to die in.

But, as I have said, this was not the main thing that kept me from going to the Brazils, but that really I did not know with whom to leave my effects behind me; so I resolved at last to go to England with them, where, if I arrived, I concluded I should make some acquaintance, or find some relations, that would be faithful to me; and accordingly I prepared to go for England with all my wealth.

In order to prepare things for my going home, I first (the Brazil fleet being just going away) resolved to give answers suitable to the just and faithful account of things I had from thence; and first to the Prior of St. Augustine I wrote a letter full of thanks for his just dealings; and the offer of the eight hundred and seventy-two moidores, which were undisposed of, which I desired might be given, five hundred to the monastery, and three hundred and seventy-two to the poor, as the prior should direct, desiring the good *padres* prayers for me, and the like.

I wrote next a letter of thanks to my two trustees, with all the acknowledgment that so much justice and honesty called for. As for sending them any

any present, they were far above having any occasion of it.

Lastly, I wrote to my partner, acknowledging his industry in the improving the plantation, and his integrity in increasing the stock of the works, giving him instructions for his future government of my part, according to the powers I had left with my old patron, to whom I desired him to send whatever became due to me, till he should hear from me more particularly; assuring him, that it was my intention, not only to come to him, but to settle myself there for the remainder of my life. To this I added a very handsome present of some Italian silks for his wife and two daughters, for such the captain's son informed me he had; with two pieces of fine English broad-cloth, the best I could get in Lisbon; five pieces of black baize, and some Flanders lace of a good value.

Having thus settled my affairs, sold my cargo, and turned all my effects into good bills of exchange, my next difficulty was, which way to go to England. I had been accustomed enough to the sea, and yet I had a strange aversion to go to England by sea at that time; and though I could give no reason for it, yet the difficulty increased upon me so much, that though I had once shipped my baggage in order to go, yet I altered my mind, and that not once, but two or three times.

It is true, I had been very unfortunate by sea, and this might be one of the reasons; but let no man slight the strong impulses of his own thoughts in cases of such moment. Two of the ships which I had singled out to go in, I mean, more particularly singled out than any other; that is to say, so as in one of them to put my things on board, and in the other to have agreed with the captain; I say, two of these ships miscarried, viz. one was taken by the Algerines, and the other was cast away on the Start near Torbay, and all the people drowned except three; so that in either of those vessels I had been made miserable, and in which most, it was hard to say.

Having been thus harassed in my thoughts, my old pilot, to whom I communicated every thing, pressed me

earnestly not to go by sea; but either to go by land to the Groyne, and cross over the Bay of Biscay to Rochelle, from whence it was but an easy and safe journey by land to Paris, and so to Calais and Dover; or to go up to Madrid, and so all the way by land through France.

In a word, I was so prepossessed against my going by sea at all, except from Calais to Dover, that I resolved to travel all the way by land: which, as I was not in haste, and did not value the charge, was by much the pleasanter way; and to make it more so, my old captain brought an English gentleman, the son of a merchant in Lisbon, who was willing to travel with me. After which we picked up two who were English merchants also, and two young Portuguese gentlemen, the last going to Paris only; so that we were in all six of us, and five servants, the two merchants, and the two Portuguese, contenting themselves with one servant between two, to save the charge; and as for me, I got an English sailor to travel with me as a servant, besides my man Friday, who was too much a stranger to be capable of supplying the place of a servant upon the road.

In this manner I set out from Lisbon; and our company being all very well mounted and armed, we made a little troop, whereof they did me the honour to call me captain, as well because I was the oldest man, as because I had two servants, and indeed was the original of the whole journey.

As I have troubled you with none of my sea journals, so shall I trouble you with none of my land journal: but some adventures that happened to us in this tedious and difficult journey, I must not omit.

When we came to Madrid, we, being all of us strangers to Spain, were willing to stay some time to see the court of Spain, and to see what was worth observing; but it being the latter part of the summer, we hastened away, and set out from Madrid about the middle of October. But when we came to the edge of Navarre, we were alarmed at several towns on the way, with an account that so much snow was fallen on the French side of the mountains, that several travellers were obliged

obliged to come back to Pampeluna, after having attempted, at an extreme hazard, to pass on.

When we came to Pampeluna itself, we found it so indeed; and to me that had been always used to an hot climate, and indeed to countries where we could scarce bear any cloaths on, the cold was unsufferable; nor, indeed, was it more painful than it was surprizing, to come but ten days before out of the Old Castile, where the weather was not only warm, but very hot; and immediately to feel a wind from the Pyrenean mountains, so very keen, so severely cold, as to be intolerable, and to endanger benumbing and perishing of our fingers and toes, was very strange.

Poor Friday was really frightened when he saw the mountains all covered with snow, and felt cold weather which he had never seen or felt before in his life.

To mend the matter, after we came to Pampeluna, it continued snowing with so much violence, and so long, that the people said, 'Winter was come before it's time;' and the roads, which were difficult before, were now quite impassable: in a word, the snow lay in some places too thick for us to travel; and being not hard frozen, as is the case in Northern countries, there was no going without being in danger of being buried alive every step. We said no less than twenty days at Pampeluna; when (seeing the winter coming on, and no likelihood of it's being better, for it was the severest winter all over Europe that had been known in many years) I proposed that we should all go away to Fontarabia, and there take shipping for Bourdeaux, which was a very little voyage.

But while we were considering this, there came in four French gentlemen, who, having been stopped on the French side of the passes, as we were on the Spanish, had found out a guide, who, traversing the country near the head of Languedoc, had brought them over the mountains by such ways, that they were not much incommoded with the snow; and where they met with snow in any quantity, they said it was frozen hard enough to bear them and their horses.

We sent for this guide, who told us, he would undertake to carry us the

same way, with no hazard from the snow, provided we were armed sufficiently to protect us from wild beasts; for, he said, upon these great snows, it was frequent for some wolves to shew themselves at the foot of the mountains, being made ravenous for want of food, the ground being covered with snow. We told him we were well enough prepared for such creatures as they were, if he would insure us from a kind of two-legged wolves, which we were told we were in most danger from, especially on the French side of the mountains.

He satisfied us that there was no danger of that kind in the way that we were to go: so we readily agreed to follow him; as did also twelve other gentlemen, with their servants, some French, some Spanish, who, as I said, had attempted to go, and were obliged to come back again.

Accordingly we all set out from Pampeluna, with our guide, on the 15th of November; and, indeed, I was surprized, when, instead of going forward, he came directly back with us, on the same road that we came from Madrid, above twenty miles; when having passed two rivers, and come into the plain country, we found ourselves in a warm climate again, where the country was pleasant, and no snow to be seen; but, on a sudden, turning to the left, he approached the mountains another way; and though it is true, the hills and the precipices looked dreadfully, yet he made so many tours, such meanders, and led us by such winding ways, we insensibly passed the height of the mountains, without being much incumbered with the snow; and all on a sudden he shewed us the pleasant fruitful provinces of Languedoc and Gascoigne, all green and flourishing; though, indeed, they were at a great distance, and we had some rough way to pass yet.

We were a little uneasy however, when we found it snowed one whole day and a night, so fast, that we could not travel; but he bid us be easy, we should soon be past it all. We found, indeed, that we began to descend every day, and to come more north than before; and so, depending upon our guide, we went on.

It was about two hours before night, when

when our guide being something before us, and not just in sight, out rushed three monstrous wolves, and after them a bear, out of a hollow way, adjoining to a thick wood; two of the wolves flew upon the guide; and had he been half a mile before us, he had been devoured indeed, before we could have helped him. One of them fastened upon his horse; and the other attacked the man, with that violence, that he had not time, or not presence of mind enough, to draw his pistol, but hallooed and cried out to us most justly; my man Friday being next to me, I bid him ride up, and see what was the matter. As soon as Friday came in sight of the man, he hallooed as loud as the other, 'O master! O master!' But, like a bold fellow, rode directly up to the man, and with his pistol shot the wolf that attacked him into the head.

It was happy for the poor man, that it was my man Friday; for he, having been used to that kind of creature in his country, had no fear upon him, but went up close to him, and shot him, as above; whereas any of us would have fired at a farther distance, and have, perhaps, either missed the wolf, or endangered shooting the man.

But it was enough to have terrified a bolder man than I; and indeed it alarmed all our company, when, with the noise of Friday's pistol, we heard on both sides the dismal howlings of wolves, and the noise redoubled by the echo of the mountains, that it was to us as if there had been a prodigious multitude of them; and perhaps, indeed, there was not such a few, as that we had no cause of apprehensions.

However, as Friday had killed this wolf, the other, that had fastened upon the horse, left him immediately, and fled, having happily fastened upon his head, where the bosses of the bridle had stuck in his teeth, so that he had not done him much hurt: the man, indeed, was most hurt; for the raging creature had bit him twice, once on the arm, and the other time a little above his knee; and he was just as it were tumbling down by the disorder of the horse, when Friday came up, and shot the wolf.

It is easy to suppose, that at the noise of Friday's pistol, we all mended

our pace, and rid up as fast as the way (which was very difficult) would give us leave, to see what was the matter: as soon as we came clear of the trees, which blinded us before, we saw plainly what had been the case, and how Friday had disengaged the poor guide; though we did not presently discern what kind of creature it was he had killed.

But never was a fight managed so hardly, and in such a surprizing manner, as that which followed between Friday and the bear, which gave us all (though at first we were surprized and afraid for him) the greatest diversion imaginable. As the bear is a heavy, clumsy creature, and does not gallop as the wolf does, which is swift and light, so he has two particular qualities, which generally are the rule of his actions: first, as to men, who are not his proper prey; I say, not his proper prey, though I cannot say what excessive hunger might do, which was now their case, the ground being all covered with snow; yet, as to men, he does not usually attempt them, unless they first attack him; on the contrary, if you meet him in the woods, though if you do not meddle with him, he won't meddle with you; yet, then, you must take care to be very civil to him, and give him the road; for he is a very nice gentleman, he won't go a step out of the way for a prince; nay, if you are really afraid, your best way is to look another way, and keep going on; for sometimes, if you stop, and stand still, and look stedfastly at him, he takes it for an affront; but if you throw or toss any thing at him, and it hits him, though it were but a bit of stick as big as your finger, he takes it for an affront, and sets all other business aside to pursue his revenge; for he will have satisfaction in point of honour; and this is his first quality: the next is, that if he be once affronted, he will never leave you night or day, till he has his revenge, but follow at a good round rate till he overtakes you.

My man Friday had delivered our guide, and when we came up to him, he was helping him off from his horse; for the man was both hurt and frightened, and indeed the last more than the first; when, on a sudden, we spied the bear come out of the wood, and a vast monstrous one it was, the biggest by far that





Plate V.

Robinson as the Act directs, by Harrison & Co. March 31, 1781.

that ever I saw. We were all a little surprized when we saw him; but when Friday saw him, it was easy to see joy and courage in the fellow's countenance. 'O! O! O!' says Friday, three times, pointing to him, 'O man! ster! you give me to leave me shakee te hand with him, me makee you good laugh.'

I was surprized to see the fellow so pleased. 'You fool you,' said I, 'he will eat you up.' — 'Eat me up! eat me up!' says Friday twice over again. 'No, eat me up! me makee you good laugh; you all stay here, me show you good laugh.' So down he sits, and gets his boots off in a moment, and puts on a pair of pumps (as we call the flat shoes they wear) and which he had in his pocket, gives my other servant his horse, and, with his gun, away he flew, swift like the wind.

The bear was walking softly on, and offered to meddle with nobody, till Friday, coming pretty near, calls to him, as if the bear could understand him. 'Hark ye! hark ye!' says Friday, 'me speak to you.' We followed at a distance, for now being come down to the gentle side of the mountains, we were entered a vast great forest, where the country was plain, and pretty open, though many trees in it scattered here and there.

Friday, who had, as we say, the heels of the bear, came up with him quickly, and takes up a great stone, and throws at him, and hit him jolt on the head; but did him no more harm than if he had thrown it against a wall: but it answered Friday's end; for the rogue was so void of sense, that he did it purely to make the bear follow him, and show us some laugh, as he called it.

As soon as the bear felt the stone, and saw him, he turns about, and comes after him, taking devilish long strides, and shuffling along at a strange rate, so as would put a horse to a middling gallop; away runs Friday, and takes his course as if he ran towards us for help, so we all resolved to fire at once upon the bear, and deliver my man; though I was angry at him heartily for bringing the bear back upon us, when he was going about his own business another way; and especially I was angry that he had

turned the bear upon us, and then run away; and I called out, 'You dog, said I, 'is this your making us laugh? Come away, and take your horse; that we may shoot the creature.' He hears me, and cries out, 'No shoot, no shoot; stand still, you get much laugh!' and as the nimble creature ran two feet for the bear's one, he turned on a sudden, on one side of us, and springing a great oak tree, fit for his purpose, he beckoned us to follow, and doubling his pace, he gets nimbly up the tree, laying his gun down upon the ground, at about five or six yards from the bottom of the tree.

The bear soon came to the tree, and we followed at a distance; the first thing he did, he stood at the foot, smell in it, but, I tell thee, and up he scrambles into the tree, climbing like a cat, though so monstrously heavy. I was amazed at the folly, as I thought it, of my man, and could not for my life see any thing to laugh at yet; till, seeing the bear get up the tree, we all rode nearer to him.

When we came to the tree, there was Friday got up to the small part of a large limb of the tree; and the bear got about half way to him. As soon as the bear got out to that part where the limb of the tree was weaker, 'Hark!' says he to us, 'now you see me teacher of the bear dance!' So he falls a jumping, and shaking the boughs, in which the bear began to totter; but stood still, and began to look behind him, to see how he should get back; then, indeed, we did laugh heartily. But Friday had not done with him by a great deal. When he sees him stand still, he calls out to him again, as if he had supposed the bear could speak English. 'What, you come no farther! Pray you come farther! So he falls a jumping and shaking the boughs, and the bear, just as if he understood what he said, did as he said; then he fell a jumping again, and the bear stopped again.

We thought now was a good time to knock him on the head, and called to Friday to stand still, and we would shoot the bear; but he cried out earnestly, 'O pray! O pray! no shoot; me shoot by and then he would have said, 'by and by.' However, to shorten the story, Friday danced so much, and the bear stood so ticklish,

T that

that we had laughing enough indeed; but still could not imagine what the fellow would do; for first we thought he depended upon shaking the bear off; and we found the bear was too cunning for that too; for he would not get out far enough to be thrown down, but clings fast with his great broad claws and feet, so that we could not imagine what would be the end of it; and where the jest would be at last.

But Friday put us out of doubt quickly; for seeing the bear cling fast to the bough, and that he would not be persuaded to come any farther; 'Well, well,' said Friday, 'you no come farther, me go, me go; you no come to me, me come to you.' And upon this he goes out to the smallest end of the bough, where it should bend with his weight, and gently lets himself down by it, sliding down the bough, till he came near enough to jump down on his feet, and away he ran to his gun, takes it up, and stands still.

'Well,' said I to him, 'Friday, what still you do now? Why don't you shoot him?' 'No shoot,' says Friday, 'no yet; methought now, me no kill; some stay, give you one more laugh.' And indeed so he did, as you will see presently; for when the bear saw his enemy gone, he comes back from the bough where he stood, but did it mighty leisurely, looking behind him every step, and coming backward till he got into the body of the tree; then, with the same hinder end foremost, he came down the tree, grasping it with his claws, and moving one foot at a time, very leisurely; at this juncture, and just before he could set his hind feet upon the ground, Friday stopped close to him, clapped the muzzle of his piece into his ear, and shot him dead on the spot. When the rogue turned about, to see if we did not laugh; and when he saw we were pleased by our looks, he falls a laughing himself very loud. 'So we kill bear in my country,' says Friday. 'So you kill them,' said I; 'why, you have the guns.' 'No,' says he, 'not guns, but shoot great much; long arrows.' 'O yes,' says I. 'This was, indeed, a good diversion to us; but we were still in a wild place, and our guide stry much hurt, and what so do we hardly know; the howl-

ing of wolves ran much in my head; and, indeed, except the noise I once heard on the shore of Africa, of which I have said something already, I never heard any thing that filled me with so much horror.

These things, and the approach of night, called us off, or else, as Friday would have had us, we should certainly have taken the skin of this monstrous creature off, which was worth saving; but we had three leagues to go, and our guide hastened us; so we left him, and went forward on our journey.

The ground was still covered with snow, though not so deep and dangerous as on the mountains; and the ravenous creatures, as we heard afterwards, were come down into the forest, and plain country, pressed by hunger, to seek for food; and had done a great deal of mischief in the villages, where they surprized the country people, killed a great many of their sheep and horses, and some people too.

We had one dangerous place to pass, of which our guide told us, if there were any more wolves in the country, we should find them there; and this was a small plain, surrounded with woods on every side, and a long narrow defile or lane, which we were to pass to get through the wood, and then we should come to the village where we were to lodge.

It was within half an hour of sun-set when we entered the first wood; and a little after sun-set when we came into the plain. We met with nothing in the first wood, except that in a little plain within the wood, which was not above two furlongs over, we saw five great wolves cross the road, full speed one after another, as if they had been in chase of some prey, and had it in view; they took no notice of us, and were gone and out of our sight in a few moments.

Upon this, our guide, who, by the way, was a wretched faint-hearted fellow, bade us keep in a ready posture, for he believed there were more wolves a coming.

We kept our arms ready, and our eyes about us; but we saw no more wolves till we came through that wood, which was near half a league, and entered the plain. As soon as we came into

into the plain, we had occasion enough to look about us. The first object we met with, was a dead horse; that is to say, a poor horse which the wolves had killed, and at least a dozen of them at work; we could not say eating of him, but picking of his bones rather, for they had eaten up all the flesh before.

We did not think fit to disturb them at their feast, neither did they take much notice of us. Friday would have let fly at them, but I would not suffer him by any means; for I found we were like to have more business upon our hands than we were aware of. We were not half gone over the plain, but we began to hear the wolves howl in the wood, on our left, in a frightful manner; and presently after we saw about a hundred coming on directly towards us, all in a body, and most of them in a line, as regularly as an army drawn up by experienced officers. I scarce knew in what manner to receive them; but found, to draw ourselves in a close line, was the only way: so we formed in a moment; but, that we might not have too much interval, I ordered, that only every other man should fire; and that the others, who had not fired, should stand ready to give them a second volley immediately, if they continued to advance upon us; and that then those who had fired at first, should not pretend to load their fusils again, but stand ready, with every one a pistol; for we were all armed with a fusil, and a pair of pistols each man; so we were, by this method, able to fire six volleys, half of us at a time. However, at present, we had no necessity; for, upon firing the first volley, the enemy made a full stop, being terrified, as well with the noise, as with the fire: four of them, being shot in the head, dropped; several others were wounded, and went bleeding off, as we could see by the snow. I found they stopped, but did not immediately retreat; whereupon, remembering that I had been told, that the fiercest creatures were terrified at the voice of a man, I caused all our company to halloo as loud as we could; and I found the notion not altogether mistaken; for, upon our shout, they began to retire, and turn about; then I ordered a second volley to be fired in their rear, which put

them to the gallop, and away they went to the woods.

This gave us leisure to charge our pieces again; and, that we might lose no time, we kept doing; but we had but little more than loaded our fusils, and put ourselves into a readiness, when we heard a terrible noise in the same wood on our left; only that it was farther onward the same way we were to go.

The night was coming on, and the night began to be dusky, which made it the worse on our side; but, the noise increasing, we could easily perceive that it was the howling and yelling of those hellish creatures; and, on a sudden, we perceived two or three troops of wolves, one on our left, one behind us, and one on our front; so that we seemed to be surrounded with them; however, as they did not fall upon us, we kept our way forward, as fast as we could make our horses go, which, the way being very rough, was only a good large trot; and in this manner we only came in view of the entrance of the wood, through which we were to pass, at the farther side of the plain; but we were greatly surprised, when, coming near the lane, or pass, we saw a confused number of wolves standing just at the entrance.

On a sudden, at another opening of the wood, we heard the noise of a gun; and, looking that way, out rushed a horse, with a saddle and a bridle on him, flying like the wind, and sixteen or seventeen wolves after him, full speed; indeed the horse had the heels of them; but, as we supposed that he could not hold it at that rate, we doubted not but they would get up with him at last; and no question but they did.

Here we had a most horrible sight; for, riding up to the entrance where the horse came out, we found the carcase of another horse, and of two men, devoured by these ravenous creatures, and one of the men was, no doubt, the same whom we heard fire the gun; for there lay a gun just by him fired off; but, as to the man, his head, and the upper part of his body, were eaten up.

This filled us with horror, and we knew not what course to take; but the creatures resolved us soon; for they gathered

gathered about us presently, in hopes of prey; and I verily believe there were three hundred of them. It happened, very much to our advantage, that at the entrance into the wood, but a little way from it, there lay some large timber-trees, which had been cut down the summer before, and I suppose lay there for carriage. I drew my little troop in among these trees; and placing ourselves in a line behind one large tree, I advised them all to alight, and, keeping that tree before us, for a breast-work, to stand in a triangle, or three fronts, inclosing our horses in the centre.

We did so, and it was well we did; for never was a more furious charge than the creatures made upon us in this place: they came on us with a growling kind of a noise, and mounted the piece of timber, (which, as I said, was our breast-work) as if they were only rushing upon their prey; and this fury of theirs, it seems, was principally occasioned by their seeing our horses behind us, which was the prey they aimed at. I ordered our men to fire as before, every other man, and they took their aim so sure, that indeed they killed several of the wolves at the first volley; but there was a necessity to keep a continual firing, for they came on like devils, those behind pushing on those before.

When we had fired our second volley of our fusils, we thought they stopped a little, and I hoped they would have gone off; but it was but a moment, for others came forward again; so we fired our volleys of our pistols; and I believe in these four firings, we killed seventeen or eighteen of them, and lamed twice as many; yet they came on again.

I was loth to spend our last shot too hastily; so I called my servant, not my man Friday, for he was better employed; for, with the greatest dexterity imaginable, he charged my fusil, and his own, while we were engaged; but, as I said, I called my other man, and giving him a horn of powder, I bade him lay a train all along the piece of timber, and let it be a large train: he did so, and had but just time to get away when the wolves came up to it, and some were got up upon it; when I, snapping an uncharged pistol close to the powder,

set it on fire; and those that were upon the timber were scorched with it, and six or seven of them fell, or rather jumped in among us, with the force and fright of the fire; we dispatched these in an instant, and the rest were so frightened with the light, which the night, for now it was very near dark, made more terrible, that they drew back a little.

Upon which I ordered our last pistols to be fired off in one volley, and after that we gave a shout: upon this the wolves turned tail, and we sallied immediately upon near twenty lame ones, which we found struggling on the ground, and fell a cutting them with our swords; which answered our expectation, for the crying and howling they made were better understood by their fellows; so that they fled, and left us.

We had, first and last, killed about three-score of them; and had it been day-light, we had killed many more. The field of battle being thus cleared, we made forward again; for we had still near a league to go. We heard the ravenous creatures howl and yell in the woods as we went several times; and sometimes we fancied we saw some of them, but the snow dazzling our eyes, we were not certain; so, in about an hour more, we came to the town, where we were to lodge, which we found in a terrible fright, and all in arms; for it seems, that the night before, the wolves and some bears had broken into that village, and put them in a terrible fright; and they were obliged to keep guard night and day, but especially in the night, to preserve their cattle, and indeed their people.

The next morning our guide was so ill, and his limbs so swelled with the rankling of his two wounds, that he could go no farther; so we were obliged to take a new guide there, and go to Tholouse, where we found a warm climate, a fruitful pleasant country, and no snow, no wolves, or any thing like them; but when we told our story at Tholouse, they told us it was nothing but what was ordinary in the great forest at the foot of the mountains, especially when the snow lay on the ground: but they enquired much what kind of a guide we had gotten, that would venture to bring us that way in such a severe season; and told us,

us, it was very much we were not all devoured. When we told them how we placed ourselves, and the horses in the middle, they blamed us exceedingly, and told us, it was fifty to one but we had been all destroyed; for it was the sight of the horses that made the wolves so furious, seeing their prey; and that at other times they are really afraid of a gun; but they being excessive hungry, and raging on that account, the eagerness to come at the horses had made them senseless of danger; and that if we had not by the continued fire, and at last by the stratagem of the train of powder, masted them, it had been great odds but that we had been torn to pieces; whereas, had we been content to have sat still on horseback, and fired as horsemen, they would not have taken the horses so much for their own, when men were on their backs, as otherwise; and withal they told us, that at last, if we had stood all together, and left our horses, they would have been so eager to have devoured them, that we might have come off safe, especially having our fire-arms in our hands, and being so many in number.

For my part, I was never so sensible of danger in my life; for seeing above three hundred devils come roaring and open-mouthed to devour us, and having nothing to shelter us or retreat to, I gave myself over for lost; and as it was, I believe, I shall never care to cross those mountains again; I think I would much rather go a thousand leagues by sea, though I were sure to meet with a storm once a week.

I have nothing uncommon to take notice of, in my passage through France; nothing but what other travellers have given an account of with much more advantage than I can. I travelled from Tholouse to Paris, and without any considerable stay came to Calais, and landed safe at Dover the 24th of January, after having had a severe cold season to travel in.

I was now come to the centre of my travels, and had in a little time all my new discovered estate safe about me; the bills of exchange, which I brought with me, having been very currently paid.

My principal guide, and privy-counsellor, was my good ancient widow; who, in gratitude for the money I had

sent her, thought no pains too much, or care too great, to employ for me; and I trusted her so entirely with every thing, that I was perfectly easy as to the security of my effects; and indeed I was very happy from my beginning, and now to the end, in the unspotted integrity of this good gentlewoman.

And now I began to think of leaving my effects with this woman, and setting out for Lisbon, and so to the Brazils; but now another scruple came in the way, and that was religion: for as I had entertained some doubts about the Roman religion, even while I was abroad, especially in my state of solitude; so I knew there was no going to the Brazils for me, much less going to settle there, unless I resolved to embrace the Roman Catholick religion without any reserve; except, on the other hand, I resolved to be a sacrifice to my principles, be a martyr for religion, and die in the inquisition; so I resolved to stay at home, and (if I could find means for it) to dispose of my plantation.

To this purpose I wrote to my old friend at Lisbon, who in return gave me notice, that he could easily dispose of it there: but that if I thought fit to give him leave to offer it in my name to the two merchants, the survivors of my trustees who lived in the Brazils, who must fully understand the value of it, who lived just upon the spot, and whom I knew to be very rich, so that he believed they would be fond of buying it; he did not doubt but I should make four or five thousand pieces of eight the more of it.

Accordingly I agreed, gave him orders to offer it to them, and he did so; and, in about eight months more, the ship being then returned, he sent me an account, that they had accepted the offer, and had remitted thirty three thousand pieces of eight to a correspondent of theirs at Lisbon, to pay for it.

In return, I signed the instrument of sale in the form which they sent from Lisbon, and sent it to my old man, who sent me the bills of exchange for thirty-two thousand eight hundred pieces of eight for the estate; reserving the payment of one hundred moidores a year to him, the old man, during his life, and fifty moidores afterwards to his son for his life, which I had promised

promised them; and which the plantation was to make good as a rent-charge. And thus I have given the first part of a life of fortune and adventure, a life of Providence's chequer-work, and of a variety which the world will seldom be able to shew the like of; beginning foolishly, but closing much more happily than any part of it ever gave me leave so much as to hope for.

Any one would think, that in this state of complicated good fortune, I was past running any more hazards; and so indeed I had been, if other circumstances had occurred; but I was inured to a wandering life, had no family, nor many relations; nor, however rich, had I contracted much acquaintance; and though I had sold my estate in the Brazils, yet I could not keep that country out of my head, and had a great mind to be upon the wing again; especially I could not resist the strong inclination I had to see my island, and to know if the poor Spaniards were in being there; and how the rogues I left there had used them.

My true friend, the widow, earnestly dissuaded me from it; and so far prevailed with me, that almost for seven years she prevented my running abroad; during which time I took my two nephews, the children of one of my brothers, into my care: the eldest, having something of his own, I bred up as a gentleman, and gave him a settlement of some addition to his estate after my decease; the other I put out to a captain of a ship; and after five years, finding him a sensible, bold, enterprising young fellow, I put him into a good ship, and sent him to sea: and this young fellow afterwards drew me in, as old as I was, to farther adventures myself.

In the mean time, I in part settled myself here: for first of all I married, and that not either to my disadvantage or dissatisfaction; and had three children, two sons and one daughter. But my wife dying, and my nephew coming home with good success from a voyage to Spain, my inclination to go abroad, and his importunity, prevailed, and engaged me to go in his ship as a private trader to the East-Indies. This was in the year 1694.

In this voyage I visited my new co-

lony in the island; saw my successors, the Spaniards; had the whole story of their lives, and of the villains I left there: how at first they insulted the poor Spaniards; how they afterwards agreed, disagreed, united, separated, and how at last the Spaniards were obliged to use violence with them; how they were subjected to the Spaniards; how honestly the Spaniards used them; an history, if it were entered into, as full of variety and wonderful accidents as my own part; particularly also as to their battles with the Caribbeans, who landed several times upon the island, and as to the improvement they made upon the island itself; and how five of them made an attempt upon the main land, and brought away eleven men and five women prisoners; by which, at my coming, I found about twenty young children on the island.

Here I stayed about twenty days; left them supplies of all necessary things, and particularly of arms, powder, shot, cloaths, tools, and two workmen, which I brought from England with me; viz. a carpenter and a smith.

Besides this, I shared the land into parts with them, reserved to myself the property of the whole, but gave them such parts, respectively, as they agreed on; and, having settled all things with them, and engaged them not to leave the place, I left them there.

From thence I touched at the Brazils, from whence I sent a bark, which I bought there, with more people to the island; and in it, besides other supplies, I sent seven women, being such as I found proper for service, or for wives to such as would take them. As to the Englishmen, I promised them to send them some women from England, with a good cargo of necessaries, if they would apply themselves to planting; which I afterwards could not perform. The fellows proved very honest and diligent, after they were mastered, and had their properties set apart for them. I sent them also from the Brazils five cows, (three of them being big with calf) some sheep, and some hogs; which, when I came again, were considerably increased.

But all these things, with an account how three hundred Caribbeans came and invaded them, and ruined their

their plantations; and how they fought with that whole number twice, and were at first defeated, and one of them killed; but at last a storm destroying their enemies canoes, they famished or destroyed almost all the rest, and renewed and recovered the possession of

their plantation, and still lived upon the island.

All these things, with some very surprizing incidents in some new adventures of my own, for ten years more, I may, perhaps, give a farther account of hereafter,

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

their plantations; and how they thought
that their whole might be lost, and
they were left destitute, and one of them
killed; but at last a storm blowing
from the sea drove the savages
away, and they returned to their
plantations, and still lived upon
the island. All these things, with some very
particulars, I have written in my new ad-
venture of my own, for ten years
more, I may perhaps have a better
account of the island.

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.



THE
Preface to the Second Volume
OF
ROBINSON CRUSOE.

THE success the former part of this Work has met with in the world, has yet been no other than is acknowledged to be due to the surprizing variety of the subject, and to the agreeable manner of the performance.

All the endeavours of envious people to reproach it with being a romance, to search it for errors in geography, inconsistency in the relation, and contradictions in the fact, have proved abortive, and as impotent as malicious.

The just application of every incident, the religious and useful inferences drawn from every part, are so many testimonies to the good design of making it publick, and must legitimate all the part that may be called invention or parable in the story.

The second part, if the Editor's opinion may pass, is (contrary to the usage of second parts) every way as entertaining as the first; contains as strange and surprizing incidents, and as great a variety of them; nor is the application less serious or suitable; and doubtless will, to the sober as well as ingenious reader, be every way as profitable and diverting: and this makes the *abridging* this work as scandalous, as it is knavish and ridiculous; seeing, to shorten the book, that they may seem to reduce the value, they strip it of all those reflections, as well religious as moral, which are not only the greatest beauties of the work, but are calculated for the infinite advantage of the reader.

By this, they leave the work naked of it's brightest ornaments; and yet they would (at the same time they pretend that the author has supplied his story out of his invention) take from it the improvement which alone recommends that invention to wise and good men.

The injury these men do to the proprietors of works, is a practice all honest men abhor; and they believe they may challenge them to shew the difference between that and robbing on the highway, or breaking open a house.

If they cannot shew any difference in the crime, they will find it hard to shew why there should be any difference in the punishment.

DANIEL DEFOE.

THE HISTORY OF THE

RELIGION OF THE

OF

THE

THE HISTORY OF THE RELIGION OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE RELIGION OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE RELIGION OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE RELIGION OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE RELIGION OF THE

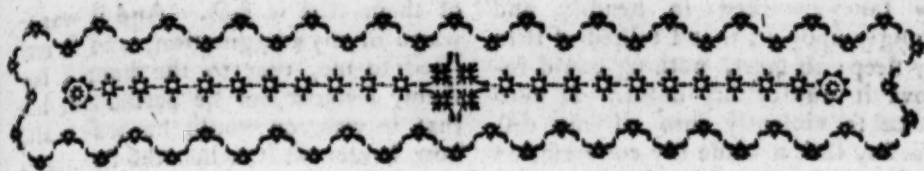
THE HISTORY OF THE RELIGION OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE RELIGION OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE RELIGION OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE RELIGION OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE RELIGION OF THE



THE
LIFE AND ADVENTURES
OF
ROBINSON CRUSOE.

VOLUME THE SECOND.

THAT homely proverb, used on so many occasions in England, viz. 'That what is bred in the bone, will not go out of the flesh,' was never more verified than in the Story of my LIFE. Any one would think, that after thirty-five years affliction, and a variety of unhappy circumstances, which few men, if ever any, went through before, and after near seven years of peace and enjoyment in the fullness of all things; grown old, and when, if ever, it might be allowed me to have had experience of every state of middle life, and to know which was most adapted to make a man compleatly happy; I say, after all this, any one would have thought, that the native propensity to rambling, which I gave an account of in my first setting out into the world to have been so predominant in my thoughts, should be worn out, the volatile part be fully evacuated, or at least condensed, and I might at sixty-one years of age have been a little inclined to stay at home, and have done venturing life and fortune any more.

Nay, farther, the common motive of foreign adventures was taken away in me; for I had no fortune to make, I had nothing to seek. If I had gained ten thousand pounds, I had been no richer; for I had already sufficient for me, and for those I had to leave it to; and that I had, was visibly increasing; for having no great family, I could not spend the income of what I had, unless I would set up for an expensive way of living, such as a great family, servants, equipage, gaiety, and the like, which were things I had no notion of, or inclination to; so that I had nothing indeed to do, but to sit still, and fully enjoy what I had got, and see it increase daily upon my hands.

Yet all these things had no effect upon me, or at least not enough to resist the strong inclination I had to go abroad again, which hung about me like a chronical distemper; particularly, the desire of seeing my new plantation in the island, and the colony I left there, run in my head continually. I dreamed of it all night, and my imagination ran upon it all day; it was uppermost in all my thoughts, and

my fancy worked so steadily and strongly upon it, that I talked of it in my sleep: in short, nothing could remove it out of my mind. It even broke so violently into all my discourses, that it made my conversation tiresome; for I could talk of nothing else; all my discourse run into it, even to impertinence, and I saw it myself.

I have often heard persons of good judgment say, that all the stir people make in the world about ghosts and apparitions, is owing to the strength of imagination, and the powerful operation of fancy in their minds; that there is no such thing as a spirit appearing, or a ghost walking, and the like: that people's poring affectionately upon the past conversation of their deceased friends so realizes it to them, that they are capable of fancying upon some extraordinary circumstances, that they see them, talk to them, and are answered by them; when, in truth, there is nothing but shadow and vapour in the thing, and they really know nothing of the matter.

For my part, I know not to this hour, whether there are any such things as real apparitions, spectres, or walking of people after they are dead; or whether there is any thing in the stories they tell us of that kind, more than the product of vapours, sick minds, and wandering fancies: but this I know, that my imagination worked me up to such a height, and brought me into such excess of vapours, or what else I may call it, that I actually supposed myself oftentimes upon the spot, at my old castle behind the trees; saw my old Spaniard, Friday's father, and the reprobate sailors, whom I left upon the island; nay, I fancied I talked with them, and looked at them so steadily, though I was broad awake, as at persons just before me; and this I did, till I often frightened myself with the images my fancy represented to me. One time, in my sleep, I had the villainy of the three pirate sailors so lively related to me, by the first Spaniard and Friday's father, that it was surprizing; they told me how they barbarously attempted to murder all the Spaniards, and that they set fire to the provisions they had laid up, on purpose to distress and starve them: things that I had never heard of, and that yet were all

of them true in fact. And it was so warm in my imagination, and so realized to me, that to the hour I saw them, I could not be persuaded, but that it was, or would be true; also how I relented it, when the Spaniards complained to me; and how I brought them to justice, tried them before me, and ordered them all three to be hanged. What there was really in this, shall be seen in its place. For however I came to form such things in my dream, and what secret converse of spirits injected it, yet there was, I say, very much of it true. I own that this dream had nothing in it literally and specifically true; but the general part was so true, the base and villainous behaviour of these three hardened rogues was such, and had been so much worse than all I can describe, that the dream had too much similitude of the fact; and as I would afterwards have punished them severely, so if I had hanged them all, I had been much in the right, and should have been justified both by the laws of God and man.

But to return to my story. In this kind of temper I had lived some years; I had no enjoyment of my life, no pleasant hours, no agreeable diversion, but what had something or other of this in it; so that my wife, who saw my mind so wholly bent upon it, told me very seriously one night, that she believed there was some secret powerful impulse of Providence upon me, which had determined me to go thither again; and that she found nothing hindered my going, but my being engaged to a wife and children. She told me, that it was true she could not think of parting with me; but as she was assured, that if she was dead, it would be the first thing I would do; so, as it seemed to her, that the thing was determined above, she would not be the only obstruction: for, if I thought fit, and resolved to go— Here she found me very intent upon her words, and that I looked very earnestly at her; so that it a little disordered her, and she stopped. I asked her why she did not go on, and say out what she was going to say. But I perceived her heart was too full, and some tears stood in her eyes. 'Speak out, my dear,' says I: 'are you willing I should go?'—'No,' says she, very affectionately, 'I am far from willing! But if you are re-

solved

‘solved to go,’ says she, ‘rather than
‘I will be the only hindrance, I will
‘go with you; for though I think it
‘a preposterous thing for one of your
‘years, and in your condition; yet, if
‘it must be,’ said she again, weeping,
‘I won’t leave you! for if it be of
‘Heaven, you must do it, there is no
‘resisting it; and if Heaven makes it
‘your duty to go, he will also make it
‘mine to go with you, or otherwise
‘dispose of me, that I may not ob-
‘struct it.’

This affectionate behaviour of my wife, brought me a little out of the vapours, and I began to consider what I was a doing. I corrected my wandering fancy, and began to argue with myself sedately, what business I had, after threescore years, and after such a life of tedious sufferings and disasters, and closed in so happy and easy a manner; I say, what business had I to rush into new hazards, and put myself upon adventures, fit only for youth and poverty to run into?

With those thoughts, I considered my new engagements: that I had a wife, one child born, and my wife then great with child of another; that I had all the world could give me, and had no need to seek hazards for gain; that I was declining in years, and ought to think rather of leaving what I had gained, than of seeking to increase it; that as to what my wife had said of it’s being an impulse from Heaven, and that it should be my duty to go, I had no notion of that; so, after many of these cogitations, I struggled with the power of my imagination, reasoned myself out of it, as I believe people may always do in like cases if they will; and, in a word, I conquered it; composed myself with such arguments as occurred to my thoughts, and which my present condition furnished me plentifully with; and particularly, as the most effectual method, I resolved to divert myself with other things, and to engage in some business that might effectually tie me up from any more excursions of this kind; for I found the thing returned upon me chiefly when I was idle, had nothing to do, or any thing of moment immediately before me.

To this purpose I bought a little farm in the county of Bedford, and

resolved to remove myself thither. I had a little convenient house upon it, and the land about it I found was capable of great improvement, and that it was many ways suited to my inclination, which delighted in cultivating, managing, planting, and improving of land; and particularly, being an inland county, I was removed from conversing among ships, sailors, and things relating to the remote parts of the world.

In a word, I went down to my farm, settled my family, bought me ploughs, harrows, a cart, waggon, horses, cows, sheep; and, setting seriously to work, became in one half year a mere country gentleman; my thoughts were entirely taken up in managing my servants, cultivating the ground, inclosing, planting, &c. and I lived, as I thought, the most agreeable life that nature was capable of directing, or that a man always bred to misfortunes was capable of being retreated to.

I farmed upon my own land, I had no rent to pay, was limited by no articles; I could pull up, or cut down, as I pleased. What I planted was for myself; and what I improved was for my family; and having thus left off the thoughts of wandering, I had not the least discomfort in any part of my life, as to this world. Now I thought, indeed, that I enjoyed that middle state of life, which my father so earnestly recommended to me. A kind of heavenly life, something like what is described by the poet upon the subject of a country life:

Free from vices, free from care,
Age has no pain, and youth no snare.

But in the middle of all this felicity, one blow from unseen Providence unhinged me at once; and not only made a breach upon me inevitable and incurable, but drove me by it’s consequence, upon a deep relapse into the wandering disposition, which, as I may say, being born in my very blood, soon recovered it’s hold of me, and, like the returns of a violent distemper, came on with an irresistible force upon me; so that nothing could make any more impression on me. This blow was the loss of my wife!

It

It is not my business here to write an elegy upon my wife, to give a character of her particular virtues, and make my court to the sex by the flattery of a funeral sermon. She was, in a few words, the stay of all my affairs, the centre of all my enterprises; the engine, that by her prudence, reduced me to that happy compass I was in, from the most extravagant and ruinous project that fluttered in my head, as above; and did more to guide my rambling genius than a mother's tears, a father's instructions, a friend's counsel, or all my own reasoning powers could do. I was happy in listening to her tears, and in being moved by her intreaties, and to the last degree desolate and dislocated in the world by the loss of her.

When she was gone, the world looked awkwardly round me; I was as much a stranger in it, in my thoughts, as I was in the Brazils, when I first went on shore there; and as much alone, except as to the assistance of servants, as I was in my island. I knew neither what to do, or what not to do. I saw the world busy round me, one part labouring for bread, and the other squandering it in vile excesses or empty pleasures; equally miserable, because the end they proposed still fled from them; for the men of pleasure every day surfeited of their vice, and heaped up work for sorrow and repentance; and the men of labour spent their strength in daily strugglings for bread, to maintain the vital strength they laboured with; so living in a daily circulation of sorrow, living but to work, and working but to live; as if daily-bread were the only end of a wearisome life, and a wearisome life the only occasion of daily-bread.

This put me in mind of the life I lived in my kingdom, the island; where I suffered no more corn to grow, because I did not want it; and bred no more goats, because I had no more use for them; where the money lay in the drawer till it grew mildewed, and had scarce the favour to be looked upon in twenty years.

All these things, had I improved them as I ought to have done, and as reason and religion had dictated to me, would have taught me to search farther than human enjoyments for a full felicity, and that there was something

which certainly was the reason and end of life, superior to all these things, which was either to be possessed, or at least hoped for, on this-side the grave.

But my sage counsellor was gone; I was like a ship, without a pilot, that could only run afore the wind. My thoughts run all away again into the old affair; my head was quite turned with the whimsies of foreign adventures; and all the pleasing innocent amusements of my farm and my garden, my cattle and my family, which before entirely possessed me, were nothing to me, had no relish, and were like musick to one that has no ear, or food to one that has no taste. In a word, I resolved to leave off housekeeping, let my farm, and return to London. And in a few months after, I did so.

When I came to London, I was still as uneasy as before: I had no relish to the place, no employment in it, nothing to do but to saunter about like an idle person, of whom it may be said, he is perfectly useless in God's creation, and it is not one farthing matter to the rest of his kind whether he be dead or alive. This also was the thing, which of all circumstances of life was the most my aversion, who had been all my days used to an active life; and I would often say to myself, 'A state of idleness is the very dregs of life!' And, indeed, I thought I was much more suitably employed, when I was twenty-six days making a deal-board.

It was now the beginning of the year 1693, when my nephew, whom, as I have observed before, I had brought up to the sea, and had made him commander of a ship, was come home from a short voyage to Bilboa, being the first he had made. He came to me, and told me that some merchants of his acquaintance had been proposing to him to go a voyage for them to the East-Indies, and to China, as private traders. 'And now, uncle,' says he, 'if you will go to sea with me, I'll engage to land you upon your old habitation in the island, for we are to touch at the Brazils.'

Nothing can be a greater demonstration of a future state, and of the existence of an invisible world, than the concurrence of second causes with the ideas of things, which we form in
our

our minds, perfectly reserved, and not communicated to any in the world.

My nephew knew nothing how far my distemper of wandering was returned upon me, and I knew nothing of what he had in his thoughts to say; when that very morning before he came to me, I had, in a great deal of confusion of thought, and revolving every part of my circumstances in my mind, come to this resolution; viz. that I would go to Lisbon, and consult with my old sea-captain; and so, if it was rational and practicable, I would go and see the island again, and see what was become of my people there. I had pleased myself also with the thoughts of peopling the place, and carrying inhabitants from hence, getting a patent for the possession, and I know not what; when, in the middle of all this, in comes my nephew, as I have said, with his project of carrying me thither in his way to the East-Indies.

I paused a while at his words, and looking steadily at him, 'What devil,' said I, 'sent you on this unlucky errand?' My nephew startled, as if he had been frightened at first, but perceiving I was not much displeased with the proposal, he recovered himself. 'I hope it may not be an unlucky proposal, Sir,' says he; 'I dare say you would be pleased to see your new colony there, where you once reigned with more felicity than most of your brother monarchs in the world.'

In a word, the scheme hit so exactly with my temper, that is to say, with the prepossession I was under, and of which I have said so much, that I told him, in few words, if he agreed with the merchants I would go with him: but I told him, I would not promise to go any farther than my own island. 'Why, Sir,' says he, 'you don't want to be left there again, I hope?' — 'Why,' said I, 'can you not take me up again in your return?' He told me, it would not be possible to do so; that the merchants would never allow him to come that way with a laden ship of such value, it being a month's sail out of his way, and might be three or four. 'Besides, Sir, if I should miscarry,' said he, 'and not return at all, then you would be just reduced to the condition you were in before.'

This was very rational; but we

both found out a remedy for it, which was to carry a framed sloop on board the ship, which, being taken in pieces, and shipped on board the ship, might, by the help of some carpenters, whom we agreed to carry with us, be set up again in the island, and finished, fit to go to sea in a few days.

I was not long resolving: for indeed the importunities of my nephew, joined in so effectually with my inclination, that nothing could oppose me. On the other hand, my wife being dead, I had nobody that concerned themselves so much for me, as to persuade me one way or other, except my ancient good friend the widow, who earnestly struggled with me to consider my years, my easy circumstances, and the needless hazard of a long voyage; and, above all, my young children. But it was all to no purpose, I had an irresistible desire to the voyage; and I told her, I thought there was something so uncommon in the impressions I had upon my mind for the voyage, that it would be a kind of resisting Providence, if I should attempt to stay at home. After which she ceased her expostulations; and joined with me, not only in making provision for my voyage, but also in settling my family-affairs in my absence, and providing for the education of my children.

In order to this, I made my will, and settled the estate I had in such a manner for my children, and placed it in such hands, that I was perfectly easy and satisfied they would have justice done them, whatever might befall me: and for their education, I left it wholly to my widow, with a sufficient maintenance to herself for her care. All which she richly deserved; for no mother could have taken more care in their education, or understood it better; and as she lived till I came home, I also lived to thank her for it.

My nephew was ready to sail about the beginning of January, 1694-5; and I, with my man Friday, went on board, in the Downs, the 8th, having, besides that sloop which I mentioned above, a very considerable cargo of all kinds of necessary things for my colony, which if I did not find in good condition, I resolved to leave so.

First, I carried with me some servants, whom I purposed to place there as inhabitants, or at least, to set on work

work there upon my own account while I staid, and either to leave them there, or carry them forward, as they should appear willing; particularly I carried two carpenters, a smith, and a very handy ingenious fellow, who was a cooper by trade, but was also a general mechanick, for he was dextrous at making wheels, and hand-mills to grind corn; was a good turner, and a good pot-maker; he also made any thing that was proper to make of earth, or wood; in a word, we called him our 'Jack of all trades.'

With these I carried a taylor, who had offered himself to go passenger to the East-Indies with my nephew, but afterwards consented to stay on our new plantation, and proved a most necessary handy fellow, as could be desired, in many other businesses besides that of his trade; for, as I observed formerly, necessity arms us for all employments.

My cargo, as near as I can recollect, for I have not kept an account of particulars, consisted of a sufficient quantity of linen, and some thin English stuffs, for clothing the Spaniards that I expected to find there; and enough of them, as, by my calculation, might comfortably supply them for seven years. If I remember right, the materials which I carried for cloathing them, with gloves, hats, shoes, stockings, and all such things as they could want for wearing, amounted to above 200 l. including some beds, bedding, and household-stuff, particularly kitchen-utensils, with pots, kettles, pewter, brass, &c. besides near 100 l. more in iron-work, nails, tools of every kind, staples, hooks, hinges, and every necessary thing I could think of.

I carried also, a hundred spare arms, musquets and fusils, besides some pistols, a considerable quantity of shot of all sizes, three or four tons of lead, and two pieces of brass cannon; and because I knew not what time, and what extremities I was providing for, I carried an hundred barrels of powder, besides swords and cutlasses, and the iron part of some pikes and halberts; so that, in short, we had a large magazine of all sorts of stores; and I made my nephew carry two small quarter-deck guns more than he wanted for his ship, to leave behind,

if there was occasion; that, when they came there, we might build a fort, and man it against all sorts of enemies: and indeed I at first thought there would be need enough of it all, and much more, if we hoped to maintain our possession of the island, as shall be seen in the course of the story.

I had not such bad luck in this voyage as I had been used to meet with; and therefore shall have the less occasion to interrupt the reader, who, perhaps, may be impatient to hear how matters went with my colony; yet, some odd accidents, cross winds, and bad weather, happened on this first setting out, which made the voyage longer than I expected it at first; and I, who had never made but one voyage, (*viz.* my first voyage to Guinea) in which I might be said to come back again, as the voyage was at first designed, began to think the same ill fate still attended me, and that I was born to be never contented with my own shore, and yet to be always unfortunate at sea.

Contrary winds first put us to the northward, and we were obliged to put in at Galway, in Ireland, where we lay wind-bound two and thirty days; but we had this satisfaction with the disaster, that provisions were here exceeding cheap, and in the utmost plenty; so that while we lay here, we never touched the ship's stores, but rather added to them. Here also I took several hogs, and two cows with their calves, which I resolved, if I had a good passage, to put ashore in my island; but we found occasion to dispose otherwise of them.

We set out the 5th of February from Ireland, and had a very fair gale of wind for some days. As I remember, it might be about the 20th of February, in the evening, late, when the mate, having the watch, came into the round-house, and told us, he saw a flash of fire, and heard a gun fired; and while he was telling us of it, a boy came in, and told us the boatswain heard another. This made us all run out upon the quarter-deck, where for a while we heard nothing; but in a few minutes we saw a very great light, and found that there was some very terrible fire at a distance. Immediately we had recourse to our reckonings, in which we all agreed, that there could be

be no land that way in which the fire shewed itself, no, not for 500 leagues; for it appeared at W. N. W. Upon this, we concluded it must be some ship on fire at sea; and as by our hearing the noise of guns just before, we concluded it could not be far off, we stood directly towards it; and were presently satisfied we should discover it, because the farther we sailed, the greater the light appeared, though the weather being hazy, we could not perceive any thing but the light for a while. In about half an hour's sailing, the wind being fair for us, though not much of it, and the weather clearing up a little, we could plainly discern that it was a great ship on fire in the middle of the sea. I was most sensibly touched with this disaster, though not at all acquainted with the persons engaged in it. I presently recollected my former circumstances, in what condition I was in when taken up by the Portuguese captain; and how much more deplorable the circumstances of the poor creatures belonging to the ship must be, if they had no other ship in company with them. Upon this, I immediately ordered that five guns should be fired, one soon after another, that, if possible, we might give notice to them that there was help for them at hand, and that they might endeavour to save themselves in their boat; for though we could see the flame in the ship, yet they, it being night, could see nothing of us.

We lay by some time upon this, only driving as the burning ship drove, waiting for day-light; when on a sudden, to our great terror, though we had reason to expect it, the ship blew up in the air, and immediately, (that is to say, in a few minutes) all the fire was out; that is to say, the rest of the ship sunk. This was terrible, and indeed an afflicting sight, for the sake of the poor men, who, I concluded, must be either all destroyed in the ship, or be in the utmost distress in their boats in the middle of the ocean, which, at present, by reason it was dark, I could not see: however, to direct them as well as I could, I caused lights to be hung out in all the parts of the ship where we could, and which we had lanterns for, and kept firing guns all the night long; letting them know by this, that there was a ship not far off.

About eight o'clock in the morning, we discovered the ship's boats, by the help of our perspective-glasses; and found there were two of them, both thronged with people, and deep in the water. We perceived they rowed, the wind being against them; that they saw our ship, and did the utmost to make us see them.

We immediately spread our ancient, to let them know we saw them; and hung a waft out, as a signal for them to come on board; and then made more sail, standing directly to them. In a little more than half an hour, we came up with them; and, in a word, took them all in, being no less than sixty-four men, women, and children; for there were a great many passengers.

Upon the whole, we found it was a French merchant-ship of 300 tons, homeward-bound from Quebec, in the river of Canada. The master gave us a long account of the distress of his ship, how the fire began in the steerage, by the negligence of the steersman; but, on his crying out for help, was, as every body thought, entirely put out. But they soon found, that some sparks of the first fire had gotten into some part of the ship, so difficult to come at, that they could not effectually quench it; and afterwards getting in between the timbers, and within the ceiling of the ship, it proceeded into the hold, and mastered all the skill and all the application they were able to exert.

They had no more to do then, but to get into their boats, which, to their great comfort, were pretty large; being their long-boat, and a great shallop, besides a small skiff, which was of no great service to them, other than to get some fresh water and provisions into her, after they had secured themselves from the fire. They had indeed small hope of their lives by getting into these boats at that distance from any land; only, as they said well, that they were escaped from the fire, and had a possibility that some ship might happen to be at sea and might take them in. They had sails, oars, and a compass, and were preparing to make the best of their way to Newfoundland, the wind blowing pretty fair; for it blew an easy gale at S. E. by E. They had as much provisions and water, as, with sparing it so as to be next door to

starving, might support them about twelve days; in which, if they had no bad weather, and no contrary winds, the captain said, he hoped he might get to the Banks of Newfoundland, and might perhaps take some fish to sustain them till they might go on shore. But there were so many chances against them in all these cases; such as storms to overset and founder them; rains and cold to benumb and perish their limbs; contrary winds to keep them out and starve them; that it must have been next to miraculous if they had escaped.

In the midst of their consultations, every one being hopeless and ready to despair, the captain with tears in his eyes told me, they were on a sudden surprized with the joy of hearing a gun fire, and after that four more; these were the five guns which I caused to be fired at first seeing the light: this revived their hearts, and gave them the notice, which, as above, I designed it should, viz. that there was a ship at hand for their help.

It was upon the hearing these guns that they took down their masts and sails; and the sound coming from the windward, they resolved to lie by till morning. Some time after this, hearing no more guns, they fired three musquets, one a considerable while after another; but these, the wind being contrary, we never heard.

Some time after that again, they were still more agreeably surprized with seeing our lights, and hearing the guns, which, as I have said, I caused to be fired all the rest of the night; this set them to work with their oars to keep their boats a-head, at least that we might the sooner come up with them; and at last, to their inexpressible joy, they found we saw them.

It is impossible for me to express the several gestures, the strange extasies, the variety of postures, which these poor delivered people run into, to express the joy of their souls at so unexpected a deliverance: grief and fear are easily described; sighs, tears, groans, and a very few motions of head and hands, make up the sum of it's variety; but an excess of joy, a surprize of joy, has a thousand extravagancies in it: there were some in tears, some raging and tearing themselves, as if they had been in the greatest agonies

of sorrow; some stark raving and downright lunatick; some ran about the ship stamping with their feet, others wringing their hands; some were dancing, several singing, some laughing, more crying; many quite dumb, not able to speak a word; others sick and vomiting; several swooning, and ready to faint; and a few were crossing themselves and giving God thanks.

I would not wrong them neither; there might be many that were thankful afterward; but the passion was too strong for them at first, and they were not able to master it: they were thrown into extasies and a kind of frenzy, and so there were but a very few who were composed and serious in their joy.

Perhaps also the case may have some addition to it, from the particular circumstance of the nation they belonged to; I mean, the French, whose temper is allowed to be more volatile, more passionate, and more sprightly, and their spirits more fluid, than of other nations. I am not philosopher enough to determine the cause, but nothing I had ever seen before came up to it: the extasies poor Friday, my trusty savage, was in, when he found his father in the boat, came the nearest to it; and the surprize of the matter, and his two companions, whom I delivered from the two villains that set them on shore in the island, came a little way towards it; but nothing was to compare to this, either that I saw in Friday, or any where else in my life.

It is farther observable, that these extravagancies did not shew themselves in that different manner I have mentioned, in different persons only; but all the variety would appear in a short succession of moments in one and the same person. A man that we saw this minute dumb, and, as it were, stupid and confounded, should the next minute be dancing and hallooing like an antick; and the next moment a tearing his hair, or pulling his cloaths to pieces, and stamping them under his feet like a madman; a few minutes after that, we should have him all in tears, then sick, then swooning; and had not immediate help been had, would, in a few moments more, have been dead: and thus it was, not with one or two, or ten or twenty, but with the greatest part of them; and, if I remember right, our surgeon was obliged

obliged to let above thirty of them blood.

There were two priests among them, one an old man, and the other a young man; and that which was strangest was, that the oldest man was the worst.

As soon as he set his foot on board our ship, and saw himself safe, he dropped down stone-dead, to all appearance; not the least sign of life could be perceived in him: our surgeon immediately applied proper remedies to recover him, and was the only man in the ship that believed he was not dead; and at length he opened a vein in his arm, having first chafed and rubbed the part, so as to warm it as much as possible; upon this the blood, which only dropped at first, flowed something freely; in three minutes after the man opened his eyes; and about a quarter of an hour after that he spoke, grew better, and in a little time quite well; after the blood was stopped, he walked about, told us he was perfectly well, took a dram of cordial which the surgeon gave him, and was, what we called, come to himself. About a quarter of an hour after this, they came running into the cabin to the surgeon, who was bleeding a French woman that had fainted, and told him the priest was gone stark mad. It seems he had began to revolve the change of his circumstances in his mind, and this put him into an extasy of joy; his spirits whirled about faster than the vessels could convey them; the blood grew hot and feverish; and the man was as fit for Bedlam, as any creature that ever was in it: the surgeon would not bleed him again in that condition, but gave him something to doze and put him to sleep, which, after some time, operated upon him, and he waked next morning perfectly composed and well.

The younger priest behaved himself with great command of his passion, and was really an example of a serious well-governed mind. At his first coming on board the ship, he threw himself flat on his face, prostrating himself in thankfulness for his deliverance; in which I unhappily and unseasonably disturbed him, really thinking he had been in a swoon; but he spake calmly, thanked me, told me he was giving God thanks for his deliverance; begged me to leave him a few moments,

and that, next to his Maker, he would give me thanks also.

I was heartily sorry that I disturbed him; and not only left him, but kept others from interrupting him also. He continued in that posture about three minutes, or a little more, after I left him; then came to me as he had said he would, and with a great deal of seriousness and affection, but with tears in his eyes, thanked me, that had, under God, given him and so many miserable creatures their lives. I told him, I had no room to move him to thank God for it rather than me, for I had seen that he had done that already; but I added, that it was nothing but what reason and humanity dictated to all men, and that we had as much reason as he to give thanks to God, who had blessed us so far as to make us the instruments of his mercy to so many of his creatures.

After this, the young priest applied himself to his country-folks, laboured to compose them; persuaded, intreated, argued, reasoned with them, and did his utmost to keep them within the exercise of their reason; and with some he had success, though others were, for a time, out of all government of themselves.

I cannot help committing this to writing, as perhaps it may be useful to those into whose hands it may fall, in the guiding themselves in all the extravagancies of their passions; for if an excess of joy can carry men out to such a length beyond the reach of their reason, what will not the extravagancies of anger, rage, and a provoked mind, carry us to! And, indeed, here I saw reason for keeping an exceeding watch over our passions of every kind, as well those of joy and satisfaction, as those of sorrow and anger.

We were something disordered by these extravagancies among our new guests for the first day; but when they had been retired, lodgings provided for them as well as our ship would allow, and they had slept heartily, as most of them did, being fatigued and frightened, they were quite another sort of people the next day.

Nothing of good manners, or civil acknowledgments for the kindness shewn them was wanting; the French, it is known, are naturally apt enough to

exceed that way. The captain and one of the priests came to me the next day; and, desiring to speak with me and my nephew, began to consult with us what should be done with them; and first they told us, that, as we had saved their lives, so all they had was little enough for a return to us for the kindness received. The captain said, they had saved some money, and some things of value in their boats, caught hastily out of the flames; and if we would accept it, they were ordered to make an offer of it all to us; they only desired to be set on shore somewhere in our way, where, if possible, they might get a passage to France.

My nephew was for accepting their money at first word, and to consider what to do with them afterwards: but I over-ruled him in that part; for I knew what it was to be set on shore in a strange country; and if the Portugal captain, that took me up at sea, had served me so, and took all I had for my deliverance, I must have starved, or have been as much a slave at the Brazils as I had been at Barbary, the being sold to a Mahometan only excepted; and perhaps a Portugeze is not a much better master than a Turk, if not, in some cases, a much worse.

I therefore told the French captain, that we had taken them up in their distress it was true; but that it was our duty to do so, as we were fellow-creatures, and as we would desire to be so delivered if we were in the like or any other extremity; that we had done nothing for them but what we believed they would have done for us, if we had been in their case and they in ours; but that we took them up to serve them not to plunder them; and that it would be a most barbarous thing to take that little from them which they had saved out of the fire, and then set them on shore and leave them; that this would be first to save them from death, and then kill them ourselves; save them from drowning, and then abandon them to starving; and therefore I would not let the least thing be taken from them. As to setting them on shore, I told them, indeed, that was an exceeding difficulty to us, for that the ship was bound to the East-Indies; and though we were driven out of our course to the westward a very great way, which perhaps was directed by Heaven on pur-

pose for their deliverance, yet it was impossible for us wilfully to change our voyage on this particular account; nor could my nephew, the captain, answer it to the freighters, with whom he was under charter-party to pursue his voyage by the way of Brazil; and all I knew he could do for them was, to put ourselves in the way of meeting with other ships homeward-bound from the West-Indies, and get them passage, if possible, to England or France.

The first part of the proposal was so generous and kind, they could not but be very thankful for it; but they were in a great consternation, especially the passengers, at the notion of being carried away to the East-Indies. They then intreated me, that seeing I was driven so far to the westward before I met with them, I would at least keep on the same course to the Banks of Newfoundland, where it was possible I might meet with some ship or sloop that they might hire to carry them back to Canada, from whence they came.

I thought this was but a reasonable request on their part, and therefore I inclined to agree to it; for indeed I considered, that to carry this whole company to the East-Indies, would not only be an intolerable severity to the poor people, but would be ruining our whole voyage by devouring all our provisions; so I thought it no breach of charter-party, but what an unforeseen accident made absolutely necessary to us, and in which no one could say we were to blame; for the laws of God and nature would have forbid that we should refuse to take up two boats full of people in such a distressed condition; and the nature of the thing, as well respecting ourselves as the poor people, obliged us to see them on shore somewhere or other for their deliverance: so I consented that we would carry them to Newfoundland, if wind and weather would permit; and, if not, that I would carry them to Martinico, in the West-Indies.

The wind continued fresh easterly, but the weather pretty good; and as it had blowed continually in the points between N.E. and S.E. a long time, we missed several opportunities of sending them to France; for we met several ships bound to Europe, whereof two were French, from St. Christo-pher's

pher's; but they had been so long beating up against the wind, that they durst take in no passengers for fear of wanting provisions for the voyage, as well for themselves as for those they should take in; so we were obliged to go on. It was about a week after this, that we made the Banks of Newfoundland; where, to shorten my story, we put all our French people on board a bark, which they hired at sea there, to put them on shore, and afterwards to carry them to France, if they could get provision to victual themselves with. When I say all the French went on shore, I should remember, that the young priest I spoke of, hearing we were bound to the East-Indies, desired to go the voyage with us, and to be set on shore on the coast of Coromandel: I readily agreed to that; for I wonderfully liked the man, and had very good reason, as will appear afterwards; also four of the seamen entered themselves in our ship, and proved very useful fellows.

From hence we directed our course for the West-Indies, steering away S. and S. by E. for about twenty days together, sometimes little or no wind at all, when we met with another subject for our humanity to work upon, almost as deplorable as that before.

It was in the latitude of twenty-seven degrees, five minutes N. and the 19th day of March, 1694-5, when we espied a sail, our course S. E. and by S. We soon perceived it was a large vessel, and that she bore up to us; but could not at first know what to make of her, till after coming a little nearer, we found she had lost her main top-mast, fore-mast, and bolt-sprit; and presently she fired a gun as a signal of distress: the weather was pretty good, wind at N. N. W. a fresh gale, and we soon came to speak with her.

We found her a ship of Bristol, bound home from Barbadoes, but had been blown out of the road at Barbadoes, a few days before she was ready to sail, by a terrible hurricane, while the captain and chief mate were both gone on shore; so that beside the terror of the storm, they were but in an indifferent case for good artists to bring the ship home: they had been already nine weeks at sea, and had met with another terrible storm after the hurricane was over, which had blown them

quite out of their knowledge to the westward, and in which they lost their masts, as above. They told us, they expected to have seen the Bahama islands, but were then driven away again to the south-east, by a strong gale of wind at N. N. W. the same that blew now, and having no sails to work the ship with, but a main-course, and a kind of square sail upon a jury-fore-mast, which they had set up, they could not lie near the wind, but were endeavouring to stand away for the Canaries.

But that which was worst of all was, that they were almost starved for want of provisions; besides the fatigues they had undergone, their bread and flesh was quite gone, they had not an ounce left in the ship, and had had none for eleven days; the only relief they had was, their water was not all spent, and they had about half a barrel of flour left; they had sugar enough; some succades or sweetmeats they had at first, but they were devoured; and they had seven casks of rum.

There was a youth and his mother, and a maid-servant, on board, who were going passengers, and thinking the ship was ready to sail, unhappily came on board the evening before the hurricane began; and, having no provisions of their own left, they were in a more deplorable condition than the rest; for the seamen, being reduced to such an extreme necessity themselves, had no compassion, we may be sure, for the poor passengers; and they were, indeed, in such a condition, that their misery is very hard to describe.

I had, perhaps, not known this part, if my curiosity had not led me, the weather being fair, and the wind abated, to go on board the ship. The second mate, who upon this occasion commanded the ship, had been on board our ship; and he told me, indeed, that they had three passengers in the great cabin, that they were in a deplorable condition: 'Nay,' says he, 'I believe they are dead, for I have heard nothing of them for above two days; and I was afraid to enquire after them, for I had nothing to relieve them with.'

We immediately applied ourselves to give them what relief we could spare; and indeed I had so far over-ruled things with my nephew, that I would have

have victualled them, though we had gone away to Virginia, or any part of the coast of America, to have supplied ourselves; but there was no necessity for that.

But now they were in a new danger; for they were afraid of eating too much, even of that little we gave them. The mate or commander brought six men with him in his boat; but these poor wretches looked like skeletons, and were so weak, they could hardly sit to their oars: the mate himself was very ill, and half-starved; for he declared he had reserved nothing from the men, and went share and share alike with them in every bit they eat.

I cautioned him to eat sparingly, but set meat before him immediately, and he had not eaten three mouthfuls before he began to be sick and out of order; so he stopped a while, and our surgeon mixed him up something with some broth, which he said would be to him both food and physick; and after he had taken it, he grew better: in the mean time, I forgot not the men; I ordered victuals to be given them, and the poor creatures rather devoured than eat it; they were so exceeding hungry, that they were in a manner ravenous, and had no command of themselves; and two of them eat with so much greediness, that they were in danger of their lives the next morning.

The sight of these people's distress was very moving to me, and brought to mind what I had at terrible prospect of at my first coming on shore in my island, where I had not the least mouthful of food, or any hopes of procuring it; besides the hourly apprehension I had of being made the food of other creatures. But all the while the mate was thus relating to me the miserable condition of the ship's company, I could not put out of my thought the story he had told me of the three poor creatures in the great cabin; viz. the mother, her son, and the maid-servant, whom he had heard nothing of for two or three days; and whom he seemed to confess they had wholly neglected, their own extremities being so great; by which I understood, that they had really given them no food at all, and that therefore they must be perished, and be all lying dead perhaps on the floor or deck of the cabin.

As I therefore kept the mate, whom we then called captain, on board with his men to refresh them, so I also forgot not the starving crew that were left on board, but ordered my own boat to go on board the ship, and with my mate and twelve men to carry them a sack of bread, and four or five pieces of beef to boil. Our surgeon charged the men to cause the meat to be boiled while they stayed, and to keep guard in the cook-room, to prevent the men's taking it to eat raw, or taking it out of the pot before it was well boiled, and then to give every man but a little at a time: and by this caution he preserved the men, who would otherwise have killed themselves with that very food that was given them on purpose to save their lives.

At the same time, I ordered the mate to go into the great cabin, and see in what condition the poor passengers were in; and, if they were alive, to comfort them, and give them what refreshment was proper; and the surgeon gave him a large pitcher with some of the prepared broth which he had given the mate that was on board, and which he did not question would restore them gradually.

I was not satisfied with this; but, as I said above, having a great mind to see the scene of misery, which I knew the ship itself would present me with, in a more lively manner than I could have it by report, I took the captain of the ship, as we now called him, with me, and went myself a little after in their boat.

I found the poor men on board almost in a tumult to get the victuals out of the boiler before it was ready. But my mate observed his order, and kept a good guard at the cook-room door; and the man he placed there, after using all possible persuasion to have patience, kept them off by force: however, he caused some biscuit cakes to be dipped in the pot, and softened them with the liquor of the meat, which they call *breuvé*, and gave them every one one, to stay their stomachs; and told them it was for their own safety that he was obliged to give them but little at a time. But it was all in vain, and had I not come on board, and their own commander and officers with me, and with good words, and some threats also of giving them no
more,

more, I believe they would have broke into the cook-room by force, and tore the meat out of the furnace; for words, indeed, are of a very small force to a hungry belly. However, we pacified them, and fed them gradually and cautiously for the first time, and the next time gave them more, and at last filled their bellies, and the men did well enough.

But the misery of the poor passengers in the cabin was of another nature, and far beyond the rest; for as, first, the ship's company had so little for themselves, it was but too true, that they had at first kept them very low, and at last totally neglected them; so that for six or seven days, it might be said, they had really had no food at all, and for several days before very little.

The poor mother, who, as the first mate reported, was a woman of good sense and good breeding, had spared all she could get so affectionately for her son, that at last she entirely sunk under it, and when the mate of our ship went in, she sat upon the floor or deck, with her back up against the sides, between two chairs, which were lashed fast, and her head sunk in between her shoulders, like a corpse, though not quite dead. My mate said all he could to revive and encourage her, and with a spoon put some broth into her mouth. She opened her lips, and lifted up one hand, but could not speak; yet she understood what he said, and made signs to him, intimating, that it was too late for her; but pointed to her child, as if she would have said, they should take care of him.

However, the mate, who was exceedingly moved with the sight, endeavoured to get some of the broth into her mouth; and, as he said, got two or three spoonfuls down, though I question whether he could be sure of it or not: but it was too late, and she died the same night.

The youth, who was preserved at the price of his most affectionate mother's life, was not so far gone; yet he lay in a cabin-bed as one stretched out, with hardly any life left in him; he had a piece of an old glove in his mouth, having eaten up the rest of it; however, being young, and having more strength than his mother, the mate got something down his throat,

and he began sensibly to revive; though by giving him, some time after, but two or three spoonfuls extraordinary, he was very sick, and brought it up again.

But the next care was the poor maid. She lay all along upon the deck hard by her mistress, and just like one that had fallen down with an apoplexy, and struggled for life: her limbs were distorted; one of her hands was clasped round the frame of one chair, and she griped it so hard that we could not easily make her let it go; her other arm lay over her head, and her feet lay both together, set fast against the frame of the cabin-table; in short, she lay just like one in the last agonies of death, and yet she was alive too.

The poor creature was not only starved with hunger, and terrified with the thoughts of death, but, as the men told us afterwards, was broken-hearted for her mistress, whom she saw dying two or three days before, and whom she loved most tenderly.

We knew not what to do with this poor girl; for when our surgeon, who was a man of very great knowledge and experience, and with great application recovered her as to life, he had her upon his hand as to her senses; for she was little less than distracted for a considerable time after, as shall appear presently.

Whoever shall read these memorandums, must be desired to consider, that visits at sea are not like a journey into the country, where sometimes people stay a week or a fortnight at a place. Our business was to relieve this distressed ship's crew, but not lie by for them; and though they were willing to steer the same course with us for some days, yet we could carry no sail to keep pace with a ship that had no masts. However, as their captain begged of us to help him to set up a main-top-mast, and a kind of top-mast to his jury-fore-mast, we did, as it were, lie by him for three or four days; and then having given him five barrels of beef and pork, two hogheads of biscuit, and a proportion of peas, flour, and what other things we could spare; and taking three casks of sugar, and some rum, and some pieces of eight of them for satisfaction, we left them, taking on board with us, at their own earnest

earnest request, the youth and the maid, and all their goods.

The young lad was about seventeen years of age, a pretty, well-bred, modest, and sensible youth; greatly dejected with the loss of his mother, and, as it seems, had lost his father but a few months before at Barbadoes. He begged of the surgeon to speak to me; to take him out of the ship; for he said, the cruel fellows had murdered his mother; and, indeed, so they had, that is to say, passively; for they might have spared a small sustenance to the poor helpless widow, that might have preserved her life, though it had been just to keep her alive. But hunger knows no friend, no relation, no justice, no right; and therefore is remorseless, and capable of no compassion.

The surgeon told him how far we were going; and how it would carry him away from all his friends, and put him, perhaps, in as bad circumstances almost as we found them in; that is to say, starving in the world. He said, it mattered not whither he went, if he was but delivered from the terrible crew that he was among: that the captain (by which he meant me, for he could know nothing of my nephew) had saved his life, and he was sure would not hurt him; and as for the maid, he was sure, if she came to herself, she would be very thankful for it, let us carry them whither we would. The surgeon represented the case so affectionately to me, that I yielded; and we took them both on board, with all their goods, except eleven hog-sheads of sugar, which could not be removed or come at; and as the youth had a bill of lading for them, I made his commander sign a writing, obliging him to go, as soon as he came to Bristol, to one Mr. Rogers; a merchant there, to whom the youth said he was related, and to deliver a letter which I wrote to him, and all the goods he had belonging to the deceased widow; which I suppose was not done; for I could never learn that the ship came to Bristol, but was, as is most probable, lost at sea, being in so disabled a condition, and so far from any land, that I am of opinion, the first storm she met with afterwards she might founder in the sea; for she was

leaky, and had damage in her hold when I met with her.

I was now in the latitude of 19 degrees 32 minutes; and had hitherto had a tolerable voyage as to weather, though at first the winds had been contrary. I shall trouble nobody with the little incidents of wind, weather, currents, &c. on the rest of our voyage; but, shortening my story for the sake of what is to follow, shall observe, that I came to my old habitation, the island, on the 10th of April, 1695. It was with no small difficulty that I found the place; for as I came to it, and went from it before, on the south and east-side of the island, as coming from the Brazils, so now coming in between the main and the island, and having no chart for the coast, nor any land-mark, I did not know it when I saw it, or know whether I saw it or no.

We beat about a great while, and went on shore on several islands in the mouth of the great River Oroonoke; but none for my purpose; only this I learned by my coasting the shore, that I was under one great mistake before; viz. that the continent which I thought I saw from the island I lived in, was really no continent, but a long island, or rather a ridge of islands, reaching from one to the other side of the extended mouth of that great river; and that the savages who came to my island, were not properly those which we call Caribbees, but islanders, and other barbarians of the same kind, who inhabited something nearer to our side than the rest.

In short, I visited several of the islands to no purpose; some I found were inhabited, and some were not. On one of them I found some Spaniards, and thought they had lived there; but, speaking with them, found they had a sloop lay in a small creek hard by, and that they came thither to make salt, and catch some pearl-mussels if they could, but they belonged to the Isle de Trinidad, which lay farther north, in the latitude of 10 and 11 degrees.

Thus coasting from one island to another, sometimes with the ship, sometimes with the Frenchman's shallop, (which we had found a convenient boat, and therefore kept her with their very good

good will) at length I came fair on the south-side of my island, and I presently knew the very countenance of the place; so I brought the ship safe to an anchor, broadside with the little creek where was my old habitation.

As soon as I saw the place, I called for Friday, and asked him if he knew where he was. He looked about a little, and presently clapping his hands, cried, 'O yes! O there! O yes! O there!' pointing to our old habitation, and fell a dancing and capering like a mad fellow; and I had much ado to keep him from jumping into the sea, to swim ashore to the place.

'Well, Friday,' said I, 'do you think we shall find any body here or no? And what do you think, shall we see your father?' The fellow stood mute as a stock a good while; but when I named his father, the poor affectionate creature looked dejected; and I could see the tears run down his face very plentifully. 'What is the matter, Friday?' said I. 'Are you troubled because you may see your father?'—'No, no,' says he, shaking his head, 'no see him more, no ever more see again.'—'Why so,' said I, 'Friday? How do you know that?'—'O no! O no!' says Friday, 'he long ago die; long ago, he much old man.'—'Well, well,' said I, 'Friday, you don't know. But shall we see any one else then?' The fellow, it seems, had better eyes than I, and he points just to the hill above my old house; and though we lay half a league off, he cries out, 'Me see! me see! yes, yes, me see much man there, and there, and there.' I looked, but I could see nobody, no, not with a perspective-glass; which was, I suppose, because I could not hit the place; for the fellow was right, as I found upon enquiry the next day, and there were five or six men all together stood to look at the ship, not knowing what to think of us.

As soon as Friday had told me he saw people, I caused the English ancient to be spread, and fired three guns, to give them notice we were friends; and about half a quarter of an hour after, we perceived a smoke rise from the side of the creek; so I immediately ordered a boat out, taking Friday with me; and, hanging out a white flag, or a flag of truce, I went directly on

shore, taking with me the young friar I mentioned, to whom I had told the whole story of my living there, and the manner of it, and every particular, both of myself and those that I left there; and who was, on that account, extremely desirous to go with me. We had besides about sixteen men very well armed, if we had found any new guest there which we did not know of; but we had no need of weapons.

As we went on shore upon the tide of flood, near high water, we rowed directly into the creek; and the first man I fixed my eye upon was the Spaniard whose life I had saved, and whom I knew by his face perfectly well; as to his habit, I shall describe it afterwards. I ordered nobody to go on shore at first but myself, but there was no keeping Friday in the boat; for the affectionate creature had spied his father at a distance, a good way off of the Spaniards, where indeed I saw nothing of him; and if they had not let him go on shore, he would have jumped into the sea. He was no sooner on shore, but he flew away to his father like an arrow out of a bow. It would have made any man shed tears, in spite of the firmest resolution, to have seen the first transports of this poor fellow's joy when he came to his father; how he embraced him, kissed him, stroaked his face, took him up in his arms, set him down upon a tree, and lay down by him; then stood and looked at him, as any one would look at a strange picture, for a quarter of an hour together; then lay down upon the ground, and stroaked his legs, and kissed them, and then got up again, and stared at him: one would have thought the fellow bewitched. But it would have made a dog laugh to see how the next day his passion ran out another way. In the morning he walked along the shore, to-and-again, with his father, several hours, always leading him by the hand, as if he had been a lady; and every now and then would come to fetch something or other for him to the boat, either a lump of sugar, or a dram, a biscuit, or something of other that was good. In the afternoon his follies ran another way; for then he would set the old man down upon the ground, and dance about him, and made a thousand antick postures and gestures; and all the while he did this, he would be

Y

talking

talking to him, and telling him one story or another of his travels, and of what had happened to him abroad, to divert him. In short, if the same filial affection was to be found in Christians to their parents, in our parts of the world, one would be tempted to say, there hardly would have been any need of the fifth commandment.

But this is a digression. I return to my landing. It would be endless to take notice of all the ceremonies and civilities that the Spaniards received me with. The first Spaniard, whom, as I said, I knew very well, was he whose life I saved. He came towards the boat, attended by one more, carrying a flag of truce also; and he did not only not know me at first, but he had no thoughts, no notion of it's being me that was come, till I spoke to him. 'Signior,' said I, in Portuguese, 'do you not know me?' At which he spoke not a word; but, giving his musquet to the man that was with him, threw his arms abroad, and saying something in Spanish, that I did not perfectly hear, came forward, and embraced me, telling me he was inexcusable not to know that face again, that he had once seen, as of an angel from heaven, sent to save his life. He said abundance of very handsome things, as a well-bred Spaniard always knows how; and then beckoning to the person that attended him, bade him go and call out his comrades. He then asked me, if I would walk to my old habitation, where he would give me possession of my own house again, and where I should see there had been but mean improvements. So I walked along with him; but, alas! I could no more find the place again, than if I had never been there; for they had planted so many trees, and placed them in such a posture, so thick and close to one another, in ten years time they were grown so big, that, in short, the place was inaccessible, except by such windings and blind ways, as they themselves only who made them could find.

I asked them what put them upon all these fortifications. He told me, I would say there was need enough of it, when they had given an account how they had passed their time since their arriving in the island, especially after they had the misfortune to find that

I was gone. He told me he could not but have some satisfaction in my good fortune, when he heard that I was gone in a good ship, and to my satisfaction; and that he had oftentimes a strong persuasion, that one time or other he should see me again. But nothing that ever befel him in his life, he said, was so surprizing and afflicting to him at first, as the disappointment he was under when he came back to the island, and found I was not there.

As to the three barbarians (so he called them) that were left behind, and of whom he said he had a long story to tell me, the Spaniards all thought themselves much better among the savages, only that their number was so small. 'And,' says he, 'had they been strong enough, we had been all long ago in purgatory!' and with that he crossed himself upon the breast. 'But, Sir,' says he, 'I hope you will not be displeased, when I shall tell you how, forced by necessity, we were obliged, for our own preservation, to disarm them, and make them our subjects, who would not be content with being moderately our masters, but would be our murderers.' I answered, I was heartily afraid of it when I left them there; and nothing troubled me at my parting from the island, but that they were not come back, that I might have put them in possession of every thing first, and left the others in a state of subjection, as they deserved: but if they had reduced them to it, I was very glad, and should be very far from finding any fault with it; for I knew they were a parcel of refractory ungovernable villains, and were fit for any manner of mischief.

While I was saying this, came the man whom he had sent back, and with him eleven men more. In the dress they were in, it was impossible to guess what nation they were of; but he made all clear both to them and to me. First, he turned to me, and pointing to them, said, 'These, Sir, are some of the gentlemen who owe their lives to you.' And then turning to them, and pointing to me, he let them know who I was; upon which they all came up one by one, not as if they had been sailors and ordinary fellows, and I the like, but really

really as if they had been ambassadors or noblemen, and I a monarch or a great conqueror. Their behaviour was to the last degree obliging and courteous, and yet mixed with a manly, majestick gravity, which very well became them; and, in short, they had so much more manners than I, that I scarce knew how to receive their civilities, much less how to return them in kind.

The history of their coming to and conduct in the island, after my going away, is so remarkable, and has so many incidents, which the former part of my relation will help to understand, and which will, in most of the particulars, refer to that account I have already given, that I cannot but commit them with great delight to the reading of those that come after me.

I shall no longer trouble the story with a relation in the first person, which will put me to the expence of ten thousand *said I's*, and *said he's*, and *he told me's*, and *I told him's*, and the like; but I shall collect the facts historically, as near as I can gather them out of my memory from what they related to me, and from what I met with in my conversing with them, and with the place.

In order to do this succinctly, and as intelligibly as I can, I must go back to the circumstance in which I left the island, and which the persons were in of whom I am to speak. At first it is necessary to repeat, that I had sent away Friday's father and the Spaniard, the two whose lives I had rescued from the savages; I say, I had sent them away in a large canoe to the main (as I then thought it) to fetch over the Spaniard's companions whom he had left behind him, in order to save them from the like calamity that he had been in; and in order to succour them for the present, and that, if possible, we might together find some way for our deliverance afterward.

When I sent them away, I had no visible appearance of, or the least room to hope for my own deliverance, any more than I had twenty years before; much less had I any foreknowledge of what after happened; I mean, of an English ship coming on shore there to fetch them off; and it could not but be a very great surprize to them, when they came back, not only to find that I

was gone, but to find three strangers left on the spot, possessed of all that I had left behind me, which would otherwise have been their own.

The first thing, however, which I enquired into, that I might begin where I left off, was of their own part; and I desired he would give me a particular account of his voyage back to his countrymen with the boat, when I sent him to fetch them over. He told me there was little variety in that part; for nothing remarkable happened to them on the way, they having very calm weather and a smooth sea; for his countrymen, it could not be doubted, he said, but that they were overjoyed to see him: (it seems he was the principal man among them, the captain of the vessel they had been shipwrecked in having been dead some time.) They were, he said, the more surprized to see him, because they knew he was fallen into the hands of savages, who, they were satisfied, would devour him, as they did all the rest of their prisoners; that when he told them the story of his deliverance, and in what manner he was furnished for carrying them away, it was like a dream to them; and their astonishment, they said, was something like that of Joseph's brethren, when he told them who he was, and told them the story of his exaltation in Pharaoh's court. But when he shewed them the arms, the powder, the ball, and the provisions that he brought them for their journey or voyage, they were restored to themselves, took a just share of the joy of their deliverance, and immediately prepared to come away with him.

Their first business was to get canoes; and in this they were obliged not to stick so much upon the honest part of it, but to trespass upon their friendly savages, and to borrow two large canoes or periaguas, on pretence of going out a fishing or for pleasure.

In these they came away the next morning. It seems they wanted no time to get themselves ready, for they had no baggage, neither cloaths nor provisions, nor any thing in the world but what they had on them, and a few roots to eat, of which they used to make their bread.

They were in all three weeks absent,

sent, and in that time, unluckily for them, I had the occasion offered for my escape, as I mentioned in my other part, and to get off from the island; leaving three of the most impudent, hardened, ungoverned, disagreeable villains behind me, that any man could desire to meet with, to the poor Spaniards great grief and disappointment you may be sure.

The only just thing the rogues did was, that when the Spaniards came on shore, they gave my letter to them, and gave them provisions, and other relief, as I had ordered them to do; also they gave them the long paper of directions, which I had left with them, containing the particular methods which I took for managing every part of my life there; the way how I baked my bread, bred up my tame goats, and planted my corn; how I cured my grapes, made my pots, and, in a word, every thing I did; all this being written down, they gave to the Spaniards, two of whom understood English well enough; nor did they refuse to accommodate the Spaniards with any thing else, for they agreed very well for some time; they gave them an equal admission into the house or cave, and they began to live very sociably; and the head Spaniard, who had seen pretty much of my method, and Friday's father together, managed all their affairs; for, as for the Englishmen, they did nothing but ramble about the island, shoot parrots, and catch tortoises, and when they came home at night the Spaniards provided their suppers for them.

The Spaniards would have been satisfied with this, would the others but have let them alone; which, however, they could not find in their hearts to do long; but, like the dog in the manger, they would not eat themselves, and would not let others eat neither. The differences, nevertheless, were at first but trivial, and such as are not worth relating; but at last it broke out into open war, and it began with all the rudeness and insolence that can be imagined, without reason, without provocation, contrary to nature, and indeed to common sense; and though it is true, the first relation of it came from the Spaniards themselves, whom I may call the accusers, yet when I came to examine the fel-

lows, they could not deny a word of it.

But before I come to the particulars of this part, I must supply a defect in my former relation; and this was, that I forgot to set down among the rest, that, just as we were weighing the anchor to set sail, there happened a little quarrel on board our ship, which I was afraid once would turn to a second mutiny; nor was it appeased, till the captain, rousing up his courage, and taking us all to his assistance, parted them by force, and making two of the most refractory fellows prisoners, he laid them in irons; and as they had been active in the former disorders, and let fall some ugly dangerous words the second time, he threatened to carry them in irons to England, and have them hanged there for mutiny and running away with the ship.

This, it seems, though the captain did not intend to do it, frightened some other men in the ship; and some of them had put it into the heads of the rest, that the captain only gave them good words for the present, till they should come to some English port, and that then they should be all put into a gaol, and tried for their lives.

The mate got intelligence of this, and acquainted us with it; upon which it was desired that I, who still passed for a great man among them, should go down with the mate, and satisfy the men, and tell them, that they might be assured, if they behaved well the rest of the voyage, all they had done for the time past should be pardoned. So I went; and after passing my honour's word to them, they appeared easy; and the more so, when I caused the two men, who had been laid in irons, to be released and forgiven.

But this mutiny had brought us to an anchor for that night, the wind also falling calm. Next morning we found, that our two men who had been laid in irons, had stole each of them a musket, and some other weapons; what powder or shot they had, we knew not; and had taken the ship's pinnace, which was not yet hauled up, and run away with her to their companions in roguery on shore.

As soon as we found this, I ordered the long-boat on shore, with twelve men and the mate; and away they went

to seek the rogues; but they could neither find them nor any of the rest, for they all fled into the woods when they saw the boat coming on shore. The mate was once resolved, in justice to their roguery, to have destroyed their plantations, burnt all their household-stuff and furniture, and left them to shift without it; but having no order, he let all alone, left every thing as they found it, and bringing the pinnace away, came on board without them.

These two men made their number five; but the other three villains were so much wickeder than these, that after they had been two or three days together, they turned their two new-comers out of doors to shift for themselves; and would have nothing to do with them; nor could they, for a good while, be persuaded to give them any food. As for the Spaniards, they were not yet come.

When the Spaniards came first on shore, the business began to go forward; the Spaniards would have persuaded the three English brutes to have taken in their two countrymen again, that, as they said, they might be all one family; but they would not hear of it. So the two poor fellows lived by themselves, and finding nothing but industry and application would make them live comfortable, they pitched their tents on the north shore of the island, but a little more to the west, to be out of the danger of the savages, who always landed on the east parts of the island.

Here they built two huts, one to lodge in, and the other to lay up their magazines and stores in; and the Spaniards having given them some corn for seed, especially some of the peas which I had left them, they dug and planted, and inclosed, after the pattern I had set for them all, and began to live pretty well. Their first crop of corn was on the ground, and though it was but a little bit of land which they had dug up at first, having had but a little time, yet it was enough to relieve them, and find them with bread and other eatables; and one of the fellows, being the cook's mate of the ship, was very ready at making soup, puddings, and such other preparations, as the rice, and the milk, and such little flesh as they got, furnished him to do.

They were going on in a little thriving posture, when the three unnatural

rogues, their own countrymen too, in mere humour, and to insult them, came and bullied them, and told them the island was theirs; that the governor, meaning me, had given them possession of it, and nobody else had any right to it; and, damn them, they should build no houses upon their ground, unless they would pay them rent for them.

The two men thought they had jested at first; and asked them to come and sit down, and see what fine houses they were that they had built, and tell them what rent they demanded. And one of them merrily told them, if they were ground-landlords, he hoped, if they built tenements upon the land, and made improvements, they would, according to the custom of all landlords, grant them a long lease, and bid them go fetch a scrivener to draw the writings. One of the three, damning and raging, told them, they should see they were not in jest; and going to a little place at a distance, where the honest men had made a fire to dress their victuals, he takes a fire-brand, and claps it to the outside of their hut, and very fairly set it on fire; and it would have been all burnt down in a few minutes, if one of the two had not run to the fellow, thrust him away, and trod the fire out with his feet, and that not without some difficulty too.

The fellow was in such a rage at the honest man's thrusting him away, that he turned upon him with a pole he had in his hand; and had not the man avoided the blow very nimbly, and run into the hut, he had ended his days at once. His comrade, seeing the danger they were both in, ran in after him, and immediately they came both out with their musquets; and the man that was first struck at with the pole, knocked the fellow down who began the quarrel with the stock of his musquet, and that before the other two could come to help him; and then seeing the rest come at them, they stood together, and presenting the other ends of their pieces to them, bade them stand off.

The others had fire-arms with them too; but one of the two honest men, bolder than his comrade, and made desperate by his danger, told them, if they offered to move hand or foot they were all dead men, and boldly commanded them to lay down their arms.

They

They did not indeed lay down their arms; but, seeing him resolute, it brought them to a parley, and they consented to take their wounded man with them, and be gone; and, indeed, it seems the fellow was wounded sufficiently with the blow; however, they were much in the wrong, since they had the advantage, that they did not disarm them effectually, as they might have done, and have gone immediately to the Spaniards, and given them an account how the rogues had treated them; for the three villains studied nothing but revenge, and every day gave them some intimation that they did so.

But not to crowd this part with an account of the lesser part of their rogueries, such as treading down their corn, shooting three young kids, and a she-goat, which the poor men had got to breed up tame for their store; and, in a word, plaguing them night and day in this manner; it forced the two men to such a desperation, that they resolved to fight them all three the first time they had a fair opportunity. In order to this, they resolved to go to the castle, as they called it, that was my old dwelling, where the three rogues and the Spaniards all lived together at that time, intending to have a fair battle, and the Spaniards should stand by to see fair play. So they got up in the morning before day, and came to the place, and called the Englishmen by their names, telling a Spaniard that answered, that they wanted to speak with them.

It happened that the day before two of the Spaniards, having been in the woods, had seen one of the two Englishmen, whom, for distinction, I call the honest men; and he had made a sad complaint to the Spaniards of the barbarous usage they had met with from their three countrymen, and how they had ruined their plantation and destroyed their corn that they had laboured so hard to bring forward, and killed their milch-goat and the three kids, which was all they had provided for their sustenance; and that if he and his friends, meaning the Spaniards, did not assist them again, they should be starved. When the Spaniards came home at night, and they were all at supper, he took the freedom to reprove the three Englishmen, though in

gentle and mannerly terms, and asked them how they could be so cruel, they being harmless inoffensive fellows, and that they were putting themselves in a way to subsist by their labour, and that it had cost them a great deal of pains to bring things to such perfection as they had.

One of the Englishmen returned very briskly, 'What had they to do there?' that they came on shore without leave; and that they should not plant or build upon the island; it was none of their ground. 'Why,' says the Spaniard, very calmly, 'Seignior Inglese, they must not starve!' The Englishman replied, like a true rough-hewn tarpaulin, they might starve and be damned, they should not plant nor build in that place. 'But what must they do then, Seignior?' says the Spaniard. Another of the brutes returned, 'Do! d—n them!' they should be servants, and work for them. 'But how can you expect that of them? They are not bought with your money; you have no right to make them servants.' The Englishman answered, the island was theirs, the governor had given it to them, and no man had any thing to do there but themselves; and with that swore by his Maker, that he would go and burn all their new huts; they should build none upon their land.

'Why, Seignior,' says the Spaniard, 'by the same rule, we must be your servants too.'—'Ay,' says the bold dog, 'and so you shall too, before we have done with you;' mixing two or three G—d damme's in the proper intervals of his speech. The Spaniard only smiled at that, and made him no answer. However, this little discourse had heated them; and starting up, one says to the other, (I think it was he they called Will Atkins) 'Come, Jack, let us go and have t'other brush with them: we'll demolish their cattle, I'll warrant you; they shall plant no colony in our dominions.'

Upon this, they were all trooping away, with every man a gun, a pistol, and a sword; and muttered some insolent things among themselves, of what they would do to the Spaniards too, when opportunity offered; but the Spaniards, it seems, did not so perfectly understand them as to know all the

the particulars; only, that, in general, they threatened them hard for taking the two Englishmen's part.

Whither they went, or how they bestowed their time that evening, the Spaniards said they did not know; but it seems they wandered about the country part of the night, and then lying down in the place which I used to call my bower, they were weary, and overslept themselves. The case was this: they had resolved to stay till midnight, and so to take the poor men when they were asleep; and they acknowledged it afterwards, intending to set fire to their huts while they were in them, and either burn them in them, or murder them as they came out. And as malice seldom sleeps very sound, it was very strange they would not have been kept waking.

However, as the two men had also a design upon them, as I have said, though a much fairer one than that of burning and murdering, it happened, and very luckily for them all, that they were up and gone abroad before the bloody-minded rogues came to their huts.

When they came thither, and found the men gone, Atkins, who it seems was the forwardest man, called out to his comrades, 'Ha, Jack! here's the nest; but, d—n them, the birds are flown.' They mused a while to think what should be the occasion of their being gone abroad so soon, and suggested presently, that the Spaniards had given them notice of it; and with that they shook hands, and swore to one another that they would be revenged of the Spaniards. As soon as they had made this bloody bargain, they fell to work with the poor men's habitation; they did not set fire indeed to any thing, but they pulled down both their houses, and pulled them so limb from limb, that they left not the least stick standing, or scarce any sign on the ground where they stood; they tore all their little collected household stuff in pieces, and threw every thing about in such a manner, that the poor men found, afterwards, some of their things a mile off from their habitation.

When they had done this, they pulled up all the young trees which the poor men had planted; pulled up the inclosure they had made to secure their

cattle and their corn; and, in a word, sacked and plundered every thing, as compleatly as a herd of Tartars would have done.

The two men were at this juncture gone to find them out, and had resolved to fight them wherever they had been, though they were but two to three: so that, had they met, there certainly would have been bloodshed among them; for they were all very stout, resolute fellows, to give them their due.

But Providence took more care to keep them asunder, than they themselves could do to meet; for, as they had dogged one another, when the three were gone thither, the two were here; and afterwards, when the two went back to find them, the three were come to the old habitation again. We shall see their differing conduct presently. When the three came back, like furious creatures, flushed with the rage which the work they had been about put them into, they came up to the Spaniards, and told them what they had done, by way of scoff and bravado; and one of them stepping up to one of the Spaniards, as if they had been a couple of boys at play, takes hold of his hat, as it was upon his head, and giving it a twirl about, sneering in his face, says he to him, 'And you, Signior Jack Spaniard, shall have the same sauce, if you do not mend your manners.' The Spaniard, who, though quite a civil man, was as brave as a man could be desired to be, and withal a strong well-made man, looked steadily at him for a good while; and then, having no weapon in his hand, stepped gravely up to him, and, with one blow of his fist, knocked him down, as an ox is felled with a pole-ax; at which one of the rogues, insolent as the first, fired his pistol at the Spaniard immediately; he missed his body indeed, for the bullets went through his hair, but one of them touched the tip of his ear, and he bled pretty much. The blood made the Spaniard believe he was more hurt than he really was, and that put him into some heat, for before he acted all in a perfect calm; but now resolving to go through with his work, he stooped, and took the fellow's musquet whom he had knocked down, and was just going to shoot the man

man who had fired at him; when the rest of the Spaniards, being in the cave, came out, and calling to him not to shoot, they stepped in, secured the other two, and took their arms from them.

When they were thus disarmed, and found they had made all the Spaniards their enemies, as well as their own countrymen, they began to cool; and, giving the Spaniards better words, would have had their arms again; but the Spaniards, considering the feud that was between them and the other two Englishmen, and that it would be the best method they could take to keep them from one another, told them they would do them no harm; and if they would live peaceably, they would be very willing to assist and associate with them as they did before; but that they could not think of giving them their arms again, while they appeared so resolved to do mischief with them to their own countrymen, and had even threatened them all to make them their servants.

The rogues were now more capable to hear reason than to act reason; but being refused their arms, they went raving away, and raging like madmen, threatening what they would do, though they had no fire-arms. But the Spaniards, despising their threatening, told them they should take care how they offered any injury to their plantation or cattle; for, if they did, they would shoot them, as they would do ravenous beasts, wherever they found them; and, if they fell into their hands alive, they would certainly be hanged. However, this was far from cooling them; but away they went, swearing and raging like furies of hell. As soon as they were gone, came back the two men, in passion and rage enough also, though of another kind; for, having been at their plantation, and finding it all demolished and destroyed, as above, it will easily be supposed they had provocation enough; they could scarce have room to tell their tale, the Spaniards were so eager to tell them theirs; and it was strange enough to find, that three men should thus bully nineteen, and receive no punishment at all.

The Spaniards indeed despised them, and especially having thus disarmed them, made light of their threaten-

ings; but the two Englishmen resolved to have their remedy against them, what pains soever it cost to find them out.

But the Spaniards interposed here too, and told them, that they were already disarmed; they could not consent that they (the two) should pursue them with fire-arms, and perhaps kill them: 'But,' said the grave Spaniard, who was their governor, 'we will endeavour to make them do you justice, if you will leave it to us; for, as there is no doubt but they will come to us again when their passion is over, being not able to subsist without our assistance, we promise you to make no peace with them, without having a full satisfaction for you; and upon this condition we hope you will promise to use no violence with them other than in your defence.'

The two Englishmen yielded to this very awkwardly, and with great reluctance; but the Spaniards protested, they did it only to keep them from bloodshed, and to make all easy at last: 'for,' said they, 'we are not so many of us; here is room enough for us all, and it is great pity we should not be all good friends.' At length they did consent, and waited for the issue of the thing, living for some days with the Spaniards; for their own habitation was destroyed.

In about five days time the three vagrants, tired with wandering, and almost starved with hunger, having chiefly lived on turtle's eggs all that while, came back to the grove; and finding my Spaniard, who, as I have said, was the governor, and two more with him, walking by the side of the creek, they came up in a very submissive humble manner, and begged to be received again into the family. The Spaniards used them civilly, but told them, they had acted so unnaturally by their countrymen, and so very grossly by them, (the Spaniards) that they could not come to any conclusion without consulting the two Englishmen, and the rest; but, however, they would go to them and discourse about it, and they should know in half an hour. It may be guessed, that they were very hard put to it; for it seems, as they were to wait this half hour for an answer, they begged he would send them

them out some bread in the mean time; which he did, and sent them at the same time a large piece of goat's flesh, and a broiled parrot; which they eat very heartily, for they were hungry enough.

After half an hour's consultation they were called in, and a long debate had about them, their two countrymen charging them with the ruin of all their labour, and a design to murder them; all which they owned before, and therefore could not deny now. Upon the whole, the Spaniards acted the moderators between them; and as they had obliged the two Englishmen not to hurt the three, while they were naked and unarmed, so they now obliged the three to go and rebuild their fellows two huts, one to be of the same dimensions, and the other larger than they were before; also to fence their ground again, where they had pulled up the fences, plant trees in the room of those pulled up, dig up the land again for planting corn, where they had spoiled it; and, in a word, to restore every thing in the same state as they found it, as near as they could; for entirely it could not be, the season for the corn and the growth of the trees and hedges not being possible to be recovered.

Well, they all submitted to this; and as they had plenty of provisions given them all the while, they grew very orderly, and the whole society began to live pleasantly and agreeably together again; only that these three fellows could never be persuaded to work; I mean, not for themselves, except now and then a little, just as they pleased; however, the Spaniards told them plainly, that if they would but live sociably and friendly together, and study in the whole the good of the plantation, they would be content to work for them, and let them walk about and be as idle as they pleased; and thus having lived pretty well together for a month or two, the Spaniards gave them their arms again, and gave them liberty to go abroad with them as before.

It was not above a week after they had these arms, and went abroad, but the ungrateful creatures began to be as insolent and troublesome as before; but, however, an accident happened presently upon this, which endangered

the safety of them all; they were obliged to lay by all private resentments, and look to the preservation of their lives.

It happened one night, that the Spaniard governor, as I call him, that is to say, the Spaniard whose life I had saved, who was now the captain, or leader, or governor of the rest, found himself very uneasy in the night, and could by no means get any sleep: he was perfectly well in body, as he told me the story, only found his thoughts tumultuous; his mind ran upon men fighting, and killing one another, but was broad awake, and could not by any means get any sleep; in short, he lay a great while; but, growing more and more uneasy, he resolved to rise. As they lay, being so many of them, upon goat-skins, laid thick upon such couches and pads as they made for themselves, and not in hammocks and ship-beds, as I did, who was but one; so they had little to do, when they were willing to rise, but to get up upon their feet, and perhaps put on a coat, such as it was, and their pumps, and they were ready for going any way that their thoughts guided them.

Being thus gotten up, he looked out; but, being dark, he could see little or nothing; and besides, the trees which I had planted, as in my former account is described, and which were now grown tall, intercepted his sight, so that he could only look up, and see that it was a clear star-light night; and hearing no noise, he returned and laid him down again; but it was all one, he could not sleep, nor could he compose himself to any thing like rest, but his thoughts were to the last degree uneasy, and yet he knew not for what.

Having made some noise with rising and walking about, going out and coming in, another of them waked, and calling, asked who it was that was up. The governor told him how it had been with him. 'Say you so?' says the other Spaniard; 'such things are not to be slighted, I assure you; there is certainly some mischief working,' says he, 'near us.' And presently he asked him, 'Where are the Englishmen?'—'They are all in their huts,' says he, 'safe enough.' It seems, the Spaniards had kept possession of the main apartment, and had made a place where

the three Englishmen, since their last mutiny, always quartered by themselves, and could not come at the rest.

'Well,' says the Spaniard, 'there is something in it, I am persuaded from my own experience; I am satisfied our spirits embodied have converse with, and receive intelligence from, the spirits unembodied, and inhabiting the invisible world; and this friendly notice is given for our advantage, if we know how to make use of it. Come,' says he, 'let us go out and look abroad; and if we find nothing at all in it to justify our trouble, I'll tell you a story to the purpose, that shall convince you of the justice of my proposing it.'

In a word, they went out to go to the top of the hill, where I used to go; but they, being strong, and in good company, nor alone, as I was, used none of my cautions to go up by the ladder, and then pulling it up after them, to go up a second stage to the top, but were going round through the grove unconcerned and unwary, when they were surprized with seeing a light, as of fire, a very little way off from them, and hearing the voices of men, not of one or two, but of a great number.

In all the discoveries I had made of the savages landing on the island, it was my constant care to prevent them making the least discovery of there being any inhabitant upon the place; and when by any necessity they came to know it, they felt it so effectually, that they that got away, were scarce able to give any account of it, for we disappeared as soon as possible; nor did ever any that had seen me, escape to tell any one else, except it were the three savages in our last encounter, who jumped into the boat, of whom I mentioned, that I was afraid they should go home and bring more help.

Whether it was the consequence of the escape of those men, that so great a number came now together; or whether they came ignorantly and by accident, on their usual bloody errand, the Spaniards could not it seems understand: but whatever it was, it had been their business, either to have concealed themselves, and not have seen them at all; much less to have let the savages have seen that there were any

inhabitants in the place; but to have fallen upon them so effectually, as that not a man of them should have escaped, which could only have been by getting in between them and their boats; but this presence of mind was wanting to them, which was the ruin of their tranquillity for a great while.

We need not doubt, but that the governor, and the man with him, surprized with this sight, ran back immediately and raised their fellows, giving them an account of the imminent danger they were all in; and they again as readily took the alarm, but it was impossible to persuade them to stay close within where they were, but that they must all run out to see how things stood.

While it was dark, indeed, they were well enough, and they had opportunity enough for some hours, to view them by the light of three fires they had made at some distance from one another. What they were doing they knew not, and what to do themselves they knew not; for, first, the enemy were too many; and, secondly, they did not keep together, but were divided into several parties, and were on shore in several places.

The Spaniards were in no small consternation at this sight; and as they found that the fellows ran straggling all over the shore, they made no doubt but first or last some of them would chop in upon their habitation, or upon some other place, where they would see the tokens of inhabitants; and they were in great perplexity also for fear of their flock of goats, which would have been little less than starving them, if they should have been destroyed; so the first thing they resolved upon was, to dispatch three men away before it was light, viz. two Spaniards and one Englishman, to drive all the goats away to the great valley where the cave was, and, if need were, to drive them into the very cave itself.

Could they have seen the savages all together in one body, and at a distance from their canoes, they resolved, if there had been an hundred of them, to have attacked them; but that could not be obtained, for they were some of them two miles off from the other, and, as it appeared afterwards, were of two different nations.

After having mused a great while

on the course they should take, and beating their brains in considering their present circumstances, they resolved at last, while it was dark, to send the old savage (Friday's father) out as a spy, to learn, if possible, something concerning them, as what they came for, and what they intended to do, and the like. The old man readily undertook it, and stripping himself quite naked, as most of the savages were, away he went: after he had gone an hour or two, he brings word, that he had been among them undiscovered; that he found they were two parties, and of two several nations, who had war with one another, and had had a great battle in their own country, and that both sides having had several prisoners taken in the fight, they were by mere chance landed in the same island, for the devouring their prisoners, and making merry; but their coming so by chance to the same place, had spoiled all their mirth; that they were in a great rage at one another, and were so near, that he believed they would fight again as soon as day-light began to appear; but he did not perceive that they had any notion of any body's being on the island but themselves. He had hardly made an end of telling the story, when they could perceive, by the unusual noise they made, that the two little armies were engaged in a bloody fight.

Friday's father used all the arguments he could to persuade our people to lie close, and not be seen; he told them, their safety consisted in it, and that they had nothing to do but to lie still, and the savages would kill one another to their hands, and the rest would go away; and it was so to a tittle. But it was impossible to prevail, especially upon the Englishmen; their curiosity was so importunate upon their prudentials, that they must run out and see the battle. However, they used some caution, viz. they did not go openly, just by their own dwelling, but went farther into the woods, and placed themselves to advantage, where they might securely see them manage the fight, and, as they thought, not to be seen by them; but, it seems, the savages did see them, as we shall find hereafter.

The battle was very fierce; and if

I might believe the Englishmen, one of them said, he could perceive that some of them were men of great bravery, of invincible spirits, and of great policy in guiding the fight. The battle, they said, held two hours, before they could guess which party would be beaten; but then that party which was nearest our people's habitation, began to appear weakest, and after some time more, some of them began to fly; and this put our men again into a great consternation, lest any of those that fled should run into the grove before their dwelling for shelter, and thereby involuntarily discover the place; and that by consequence the pursuers should do the like in search for them. Upon this they resolved, that they would stand armed within the wall, and whoever came into the grove, they should sally out over the wall and kill them; so that, if possible, not one should return to give an account of it. They ordered also, that it should be done with their swords, or by knocking them down with the stock of the musquet, not by shooting them, for fear of raising an alarm by the noise.

As they expected, it fell out; three of the routed army fled for life, and crossing the creek, ran directly into the place, not in the least knowing whither they went, but running as into a thick wood for shelter: the scout they kept to look abroad gave notice of this within, with this addition, to our men's great satisfaction, viz. that the conquerors had not pursued them, or seen which way they were gone. Upon this the Spaniard governor, a man of humanity, would not suffer them to kill the three fugitives; but, sending three men out by the top of the hill, ordered them to go round, and coming in behind them, surprize and take them prisoners, which was done; the residue of the conquered people fled to their canoes, and got off to sea; the victors retired, and made no pursuit, or very little; but drawing themselves into a body together, gave two great screaming shouts, which they supposed were by way of triumph, and so the fight ended: and the same day, about three o'clock in the afternoon, they also marched to their canoes. And thus the Spaniards had their island again

again free to themselves, their fright was over, and they saw no savages in several years after.

After they were all gone, the Spaniards came out of their den; and viewing the field of battle, they found about two and thirty dead men upon the spot; some were killed with great long arrows, several of which were found sticking in their bodies; but most of them were killed with their great wooden swords, sixteen or seventeen of which they found in the field of battle, and as many bows, with a great many arrows. These swords were great unwieldy things, and they must be very strong men that used them. Most of those men that were killed with them, had their heads mashed to pieces, as we may say, or, as we call it in English, their brains knocked out, and several of their arms and legs broken; so that it is evident they fight with inexpressible rage and fury. They found not one wounded man that was not stone dead; for either they stay by their enemy till they have quite killed him, or they carry all the wounded men, that are not quite dead, away with them.

This deliverance tamed our Englishmen for a great while: the sight had filled them with horror, and the consequence appeared terrible to the last degree, especially upon supposing that some time or other they should fall into the hands of those creatures; who would not only kill them as enemies, but kill them for food, as we kill our cattle. And they professed to me, that the thoughts of being eaten up like beef or mutton, though it was supposed it was not to be till they were dead, had something in it so horrible, that it nauseated their very stomachs, made them sick when they thought of it, and filled their minds with unusual terror, that they were not themselves for some weeks after.

This, as I said, tamed even the three English brutes I have been speaking of; and for a great while after they were very tractable, and went about the common business of the whole society well enough; planted, sowed, reaped, and began to be all naturalized to the country; but some time after this, they fell all into such simple measures again as brought them into a great deal of trouble.

They had taken three prisoners, as I had observed; and these three being lusty stout young fellows, they made them servants, and taught them to work for them; and, as slaves, they did well enough; but they did not take their measures with them as I did by my man Friday; viz. to begin with them upon the principle of having saved their lives, and then instructed them in the rational principles of life, much less of religion, civilizing and reducing them by kind usage, and affectionate arguings; but, as they gave them their food every day, so they gave them their work too, and kept them fully employed in drudgery enough; but they failed in this by it, that they never had them to assist them and fight for them, as I had my man Friday, who was as true to me as the very flesh upon my bones.

But to come to the family part. Being all now good friends, (for common danger, as I said above, had effectually reconciled them) they began to consider their general circumstances; and the first thing that came under their consideration was, whether, seeing the savages particularly haunted that side of the island, and that there were more remote and retired parts of it equally adapted to their way of living, and manifestly to their advantage, they should not rather remove their habitation, and plant in some more proper place for their safety, and especially for the security of their cattle and corn.

Upon this, after long debate, it was conceived, that they should not remove their habitation; because that some time or other they thought they might hear from their governor again, meaning me; and if I should send any one to seek them, I would be sure to direct them on that side, where, if they should find the place demolished, they would conclude the savages had killed us all, and we were gone, and so our supply would go away too.

But as to their corn and cattle, they agreed to remove them into the valley where my cave was, where the land was as proper to both, and where indeed there was land enough. However, upon second thoughts, they altered one part of that resolution too, and resolved only to remove part of their cattle thither, and plant part of their corn

corn there; and so, if one part was destroyed, the other might be saved. And one piece of prudence they used, which it was very well they did; viz. that they had never trusted these three savages, which they had taken prisoners, with knowing any thing of the plantation they had made in that valley, or of any cattle they had there; much less of the cave there, which they kept in case of necessity, as a safe retreat: and thither they carried also the two barrels of powder, which I had sent them at my coming away.

But, however, they resolved not to change their habitation; yet they agreed, that as I had carefully covered it first with a wall of fortification, and then with a grove of trees; so, seeing their safety consisted entirely in their being concealed, of which they were now fully convinced, they set to work to cover and conceal the place yet more effectually than before. To this purpose, as I had planted trees (or rather thrust in stakes, which in time all grew to be trees) for some good distance before the entrance into my apartment, they went on in the same manner, and filled up the rest of that whole space of ground, from the trees I had set, quite down to the side of the creek, where, as I said, I landed my floats, and even into the very ouze where the tide flowed, not so much as leaving any place to land, or any sign that there had been any landing thereabout. These stakes also, being of a wood very forward to grow, as I have noted formerly, they took care to have generally very much larger and taller than those which I had planted, and placed them so very thick and close, that when they had been three or four years grown, there was no piercing with the eye any considerable way into the plantation. As for that part which I had planted, the trees were grown as thick as a man's thigh; and among them they placed so many other short ones, and so thick, that, in a word, it stood like a pallisado a quarter of a mile thick, and it was next to impossible to penetrate it, but with a little army, to cut it all down; for a little dog could hardly get between the trees, they stood so close.

But this was not all; for they did the same by all the ground to the right-hand, and to the left, and round even

to the top of the hill; leaving no way, not so much as for themselves to come out, but by the ladder placed up to the side of the hill, and then lifted up, and placed again from the first stage up to the top; which ladder, when it was taken down, nothing but what had wings or witchcraft to assist it, could come at them.

This was excellently well contrived; nor was it less than what they afterwards found occasion for; which served to convince me, that as human prudence has authority of Providence to justify it, so it has, doubtless, the direction of Providence to set it to work; and, would we listen carefully to the voice of it, I am fully persuaded we might prevent many of the disasters which our lives are now by our own negligence subjected to. But this by the way.

I return to the story. They lived two years after this in perfect retirement, and had no more visits from the savages; they had, indeed, an alarm given them one morning, which put them in a great consternation; for, some of the Spaniards being out early one morning on the west side, or rather end of the island, which, by the way, was that end where I never went, for fear of being discovered, they were surprised with seeing above twenty canoes of Indians just coming on shore.

They made the best of their way home, in hurry enough; and giving the alarm to their comrades, they kept close all that day and the next, going out only at night, to make observation. But they had the good luck to be mistaken; for wherever the savages went, they did not land at that time on the island, but pursued some other design.

And now they had another broil with the three Englishmen; one of which, a most turbulent fellow, being in a rage at one of the three slaves, which I mentioned they had taken, because the fellow had not done something right which he bid him do, and seemed a little untractable in his shewing him, drew a hatchet out of a frog-belt, in which he wore it by his side, and fell upon the poor savage, not to correct him, but to kill him. One of the Spaniards, who was by, seeing him give the fellow a barbarous cut with the hatchet, which he aimed at his

his head, but struck into his shoulder, so that he thought he had cut the poor creature's arm off, ran to him, and, intreating him not to murder the poor man, clapt in between him and the savage, to prevent the mischief.

The fellow, being enraged the more at this, struck at the Spaniard with his hatchet, and swore he would serve him as he intended to serve the savage; which the Spaniard perceiving, avoided the blow, and with a shovel, which he had in his hand (for they were working in the field about their corn-land) knocked the brute down: another of the Englishmen, running at the same time to help his comrade, knocked the Spaniard down; and then two Spaniards more came to help their man, and a third Englishman fell upon them. They had none of them any fire-arms, or any other weapons but hatchets and other tools, except the third Englishman; he had one of my old rusty cutlasses, with which he made at the last Spaniards, and wounded them both. This fray set the whole family in an uproar, and more help coming in, they took the three Englishmen prisoners. The next question was, What should be done with them? They had been so often mutinous, and were so furious, so desperate, and so idle withal, that they knew not what course to take with them, for they were mischievous to the highest degree, and valued not what hurt they did any man; so that, in short, it was not safe to live with them.

The Spaniard who was governor, told them in so many words, that if they had been his own countrymen, he would have hanged them all; for all laws, and all governors, were to preserve society; and those who were dangerous to the society, ought to be expelled out of it: but, as they were Englishmen, and that it was to the generous kindness of an Englishman that they all owed their preservation and deliverance, he would use them with all possible lenity, and would leave them to the judgment of the other two Englishmen, who were their countrymen.

One of the two honest Englishmen stood up, and said, they desired it might not be left to them: 'For,' says he, 'I am sure we ought to sentence them to the gallows.' And with that

gives an account, how Will Atkins, one of the three, had proposed to have all the five Englishmen join together, and murder all the Spaniards when they were in their sleep.

When the Spanish governor heard this, he calls to Will Atkins. 'How,' says he, 'will you murder us all? What have you to say to that?' That hardened villain was so far from denying it, that he said it was true; and, G—d damn him, they would do it still before they had done with them. 'Well,' says the Spaniard, 'but Seignior Atkins,' said the Spaniard, 'what have we done to you, that you will kill us? And what would you get by killing us? And what must we do to prevent your killing us? Must we kill you, or will you kill us? Why will you put us to the necessity of this, Seignior Atkins?' says the Spaniard very calmly, and smiling.

Seignior Atkins was in such a rage at the Spaniard's making a jest of it, that, had he not been held by three men, and withal had no weapons with him, it was thought he would have attempted to have killed the Spaniard in the middle of all the company.

This hair-brained carriage obliged them to consider seriously what was to be done. The two Englishmen, and the Spaniard who saved the poor savage, were of the opinion, that they should hang one of the three for an example to the rest; and that particularly it should be he that had twice attempted to commit murder with his hatchet; and indeed there was some reason to believe he had done it, for the poor savage was in such a miserable condition with the wound he had received, that it was thought he could not live.

But the governor Spaniard still said, no, it was an Englishman that had saved all their lives, and he would never consent to put an Englishman to death, though he had murdered half of them; nay, he said, if he had been killed himself by an Englishman, and had time left to speak, it should be, that they should pardon him.

This was so positively insisted on by the governor Spaniard, that there was no gainsaying it; and, as merciful councils are most apt to prevail, where they are so earnestly pressed, so they all came into it; but then it was to be

be considered, what should be done to keep them from the mischief they designed; for all agreed, governor and all, that means were to be used for preserving the society from danger. After a long debate it was agreed, First, That they should be disarmed, and not permitted to have either gun, or powder, or shot, or sword, or any weapon, and should be turned out of the society, and left to live where they would, and how they could, by themselves; but that none of the rest, either Spaniards or English, should converse with them, speak with them, or have any thing to do with them; that they should be forbid to come within a certain distance of the place where the rest dwelt; and that if they offered to commit any disorder, so as to spoil, burn, kill, or destroy any of the corn, plantings, buildings, fences, or cattle belonging to the society, that they should die without mercy, and they should shoot them wherever they could find them.

The governor, a man of great humanity, musing upon the sentence, considered a little upon it; and, turning to the two honest Englishmen, said, 'Hold! you must reflect, that it will be long ere they can raise corn and cattle of their own, and they must not starve; we must therefore allow them provisions.' So he caused to be added, That they should have a proportion of corn given them to last them eight months, and for seed to sow, by which time they might be supposed to raise some of their own; that they should have six milch goats, four he-goats, and six kids given them, as well for present subsistence, as for a store; and that they should have tools given them for their work in the field; such as, six hatchets, an ax, a saw, and the like: but they should have none of these tools or provisions, unless they would swear solemnly, that they would not hurt or injure any of the Spaniards with them, or of their fellow Englishmen.

Thus they dismissed them the society, and turned them out to shift for themselves. They went away sullen and refractory, as neither contented to go away, or to stay; but, as there was no remedy, they went, pretending

to go and chuse a place where they should settle themselves, to plant, and live by themselves; and some provisions were given them, but no weapons.

About four or five days after, they came again for some victuals, and gave the governor an account where they had pitched their tents, and marked themselves out a habitation or plantation. It was a very convenient place indeed, on the remotest part of the island, N. E. much about the place where I providentially landed in my first voyage, when I was driven out to sea, the Lord alone knows whither, in my foolish attempt to surround the island.

Here they built themselves two handsome huts, and contrived them in a manner like my first habitation, being close under the side of a hill, having some trees growing already to the three sides of it; so that by planting others, it would be very easily covered from the sight, unless narrowly searched for. They desired some dry goat-skins for beds and covering, which were given them; and, upon their giving their words, that they would not disturb the rest, or injure any of their plantations, they gave them hatchets, and what other tools they could spare; some peas, barley, and rice, for sowing; and, in a word, any thing they wanted, but arms and ammunition.

They lived in this separate condition about six months, and had gotten in their first harvest, though the quantity was but small, the parcel of land they had planted being but little; for, indeed, having all their plantation to form, they had a great deal of work upon their hands; and when they came to make boards, and pots, and such things, they were quite out of their element, and could make nothing of it; and when the rainy season came on, for want of a cave in the earth, they could not keep their grain dry, and it was in great danger of spoiling; and this humbled them much; so they came and begged the Spaniards to help them, which they very readily did; and in four days worked a great hole in the side of the hill for them, big enough to secure their corn and other things from the rain; but it was but a poor place at best, compared to mine; and

and especially as mine was then; for the Spaniards had greatly enlarged it, and made several new apartments in it.

About three quarters of a year after this separation, a new frolick took these rogues, which, together with the former villainy they had committed, brought mischief enough upon them, and had very near been the ruin of the whole colony. The three new associates began, it seems, to be weary of the laborious life they led, and that without hope of bettering their circumstances; and a whim took them, that they would make a voyage to the continent, from whence the savages came, and would try if they could not seize upon some prisoners among the natives there, and bring them home, so as to make them do the laborious part of the work for them.

The project was not so preposterous, if they had gone no farther; but they did nothing, and proposed nothing, but had either mischief in the design, or mischief in the event: and, if I may give my opinion, they seemed to be under a blast from Heaven; for if we will not allow a visible curse to pursue visible crimes, how shall we reconcile the events of things with Divine Justice? It was certainly an apparent vengeance on their crime of mutiny and piracy, that brought them to the state they were in; and, as they shewed not the least remorse for the crime, but added new villainies to it, such as, particularly, that piece of monstrous cruelty of wounding a poor slave, because he did not, or perhaps could not understand to do what he was directed; and to wound him in such a manner, as, no question, made him a cripple all his life; and in a place where no surgeon or medicine could be had for his cure; and, what was still worse, the murderous intent; or, to do justice to the crime, the intentional murder, for such to be sure it was, as was afterwards the formed design they all laid, to murder the Spaniards in cold blood, and in their sleep.

But I leave observing, and return to the story. The three fellows came down to the Spaniards one morning, and in very humble terms desired to be admitted to speak with them. The Spaniards very readily heard what they had to say, which was this: that they were tired of living in the man-

ner they did; that they were not handy enough to make the necessaries they wanted; and that, having no help, they found they should be starved; but if the Spaniards would give them leave to take one of the canoes which they came over in, and give them arms and ammunition, proportioned for their defence, they would go over to the main, and seek their fortune, and so deliver them from the trouble of supplying them with any other provisions.

The Spaniards were glad enough to be rid of them, but yet very honestly represented to them the certain destruction they were running into; told them, they had suffered such hardships upon that very spot, that they could, without any spirit of prophecy, tell them, that they would be starved or murdered; and bade them consider of it.

The men replied audaciously, they should be starved if they stayed here, for they could not work, and would not work; and they could but be starved abroad; and if they were murdered, there was an end of them, they had no wives or children to cry after them: and, in short, insisted importunately upon their demand, declaring that they would go, whether they would give them any arms or no.

The Spaniards told them, with great kindness, that if they were resolved to go, they should not go like naked men, and be in no condition to defend themselves; and that though they could ill spare their fire-arms, having not enough for themselves, yet they would let them have two musquets, a pistol, and a cutlass, and each man a hatchet, which they thought was sufficient for them.

In a word, they accepted the offer; and having baked them bread enough to serve them a month, and given them as much goats flesh as they could eat while it was sweet, and a great basket full of dried grapes, a pot full of fresh water, and a young kid alive to kill, they boldly set out in a canoe for a voyage over the sea, where it was at least forty miles broad.

The boat was indeed a large one, and would have very well carried fifteen or twenty men; and therefore was rather too big for them to manage; but as they had a fair breeze, and the flood-

good-tide with them, they did well enough. They had made a mast of a long pole, and a sail of four large goat-skins dried, which they had sewed or laced together; and away they went merrily enough. The Spaniards called after them, '*Bon voyage*;' and no man ever thought of seeing them any more.

The Spaniards would often say to one another, and the two honest Englishmen who remained behind, how quiet and comfortably they lived now those three turbulent fellows were gone. As for their ever coming again, that was the remotest thing from their thoughts that could be imagined: when behold! after twenty-two days absence, one of the Englishmen being abroad upon his planting-work, sees three strange men coming towards him at a distance, two of them with guns upon their shoulders.

Away runs the Englishman, as if he was bewitched, and came frightened and amazed to the governor Spaniard, and tells them they were all undone, for there were strangers landed upon the island, he could not tell who. The Spaniard, pausing a while, says to him, 'How do you mean, you cannot tell who? They are savages to be sure.' 'No, no,' says the Englishman, 'they are men in cloaths, with arms.' 'Nay then,' says the Spaniard, 'why are you concerned? If they are not savages, they must be friends; for there is no Christian nation upon earth but will do us good rather than harm.'

While they were debating thus, came the three Englishmen, and standing without the wood, which was new-planted, hallooed to them. They presently knew their voices; and so all the wonder of that kind ceased. But now the admiration was turned upon another question; viz. What could be the matter, and what made them come back again?

It was not long before they brought the men in; and enquiring where they had been, and what they had been doing? they gave them a full account of their voyage, in a few words, viz. That they reached the land in two days, or something less; but, finding the people alarmed at their coming, and preparing with bows and arrows to fight them, they durst not go on

shore, but sailed on to the northward six or seven hours, till they came to a great opening, by which they perceived that the land they saw from our island was not the main, but an island; that entering that opening of the sea, they saw another island on the right-hand north, and several more west; and, being resolved to land somewhere, they put over to one of the islands which lay west, and went boldly on shore; that they found the people were courteous and friendly to them, and they gave them several roots, and some dried fish, and appeared very sociable; and the women, as well as the men, were very forward to supply them with any thing they could get for them to eat, and brought it to them a great way upon their heads.

They continued here four days, and enquired, as well as they could of them by signs, what nations were this way, and that way; and were told of several fierce and terrible people, that lived almost every way; who, as they made known by signs to them, used to eat men; but as for themselves, they said that they never eat men or women, except only such as they took in the wars; and then they owned, that they made a great feast, and eat their prisoners.

The Englishmen enquired, when they had a feast of that kind; and they told them, two moons ago, pointing to the moon, and then to two fingers; and that their great king had two hundred prisoners now, which he had taken in his war, and they were feeding them to make them fat for the next feast. The Englishmen seemed mighty desirous to see those prisoners; but the others, mistaking them, thought they were desirous to have some of them, to carry away for their own eating. So they beckoned to them, pointing to the setting of the sun, and then to the rising; which was to signify, that the next morning, at sun-rising, they would bring some for them: and, accordingly, the next morning, they brought down five women and eleven men, and gave them to the Englishmen, to carry with them on their voyage, just as we would bring so many cows and oxen down to a sea-port town to victual a ship.

As brutish and barbarous as these fellows were at home, their stomachs

A a turned

turned at this sight, and they did not know what to do: to refuse the prisoners, would have been the highest affront to the savage gentry that offered them; and what to do with them they knew not; however, upon some debate, they resolved to accept of them; and, in return, they gave the savages that brought them one of their hatchets, an old key, a knife, and six or seven of their bullets; which, though they did not understand, they seemed extremely pleased with; and then, tying the poor creatures hands behind them, they (the people) dragged the prisoners into the boat for our men.

The Englishmen were obliged to come away as soon as they had them, or else they that gave them this noble present would certainly have expected that they should have gone to work with them, have killed two or three of them the next morning, and perhaps have invited the donors to dinner.

But, having taken their leave, with all the respects and thanks that could well pass between people, where, on either side, they understood not one word they could say, they put off with their boat, and came back towards the first island; where, when they arrived, they set eight of their prisoners at liberty, there being too many of them for their occasion.

In their voyage, they endeavoured to have some communication with their prisoners; but it was impossible to make them understand any thing; nothing they could say to them, or give them, or do for them, but was looked upon as going about to murder them. They first of all unbound them; but the poor creatures screamed at that, especially the women, as if they had just felt the knife at their throats; for they immediately concluded they were unbound on purpose to be killed.

If they gave them any thing to eat, it was the same thing; then they concluded, it was for fear they should sink in flesh, and so not be fat enough to kill; if they looked at one of them more particularly, the party presently concluded, it was to see whether he or she was fattest and fittest to kill first; nay, after they had brought them quite over, and began to use them kindly, and treat them well, still they expected every day to make a dinner or supper for their new masters.

When the three wanderers had given this unaccountable history or journal of their voyage, the Spaniard asked them, where their new family was. And being told that they had brought them on shore, and put them into one of their huts, and were come to beg some victuals for them; they (the Spaniards) and the other two Englishmen, that is to say, the whole colony, resolved to go all down to the place, and see them; and did so; and Friday's father with them.

When they came into the hut, there they sat all bound; for when they had brought them on shore, they bound their hands, that they might not take the boat and make their escape; there, I say, they sat, all of them stark naked. First, there were three men, lusty comely fellows, well shaped, straight and fair limbs, about thirty to thirty-five years of age; and five women, whereof two might be from thirty to forty; two more not above twenty-four or twenty-five; and the fifth, a tall comely maiden, about sixteen or seventeen. The women were well-favoured agreeable persons, both in shape and features, only tawny; and two of them, had they been perfect white, would have passed for handsome women, even in London itself, having very pleasant agreeable countenances, and of a very modest behaviour, especially when they came afterwards to be cloathed, and dressed as they called it, though that dress was very indifferent it must be confessed; of which hereafter.

The sight, you may be sure, was something uncouth to our Spaniards, who were (to give them a just character) men of the best behaviour, of the most calm, sedate tempers, and perfect good-humour that ever I met with; and, in particular, of the most modesty, as will presently appear: I say, the sight was very uncouth, to see two naked men and five naked women, all together bound, and in the most miserable circumstances that human nature could be supposed to be; viz. to be expecting every moment to be dragged out, and have their brains knocked out, and then to be eaten up like a calf that is killed for a dainty.

The first thing they did was to cause the old Indian, Friday's father, to go in and see first if he knew any of them, and then if he understood any

of their speech. As soon as the old man came in, he looked seriously at them, but knew none of them; neither could any of them understand a word he said, or a sign he could make, except one of the women.

However, this was enough to answer the end, which was to satisfy them, that the men into whose hands they were fallen were Christians; that they abhorred eating of men or women, and that they might be sure they would not be killed. As soon as they were assured of this, they discovered such a joy, and by such awkward and several ways, as is hard to describe; for it seems they were of several nations.

The woman, who was their interpreter, was bid, in the next place, to ask them if they were willing to be servants, and to work for the men who had brought them away to save their lives? At which they all fell a dancing; and presently one fell to taking up this, and another that, any thing that lay next, to carry on their shoulders, to intimate that they were willing to work.

The governor, who found that the having women among them would presently be attended with some inconvenience, and might occasion some strife, and perhaps blood, asked the three men what they intended to do with these women, and how they intended to use them, whether as servants, or as women. One of the Englishmen answered very boldly and readily, that they would use them as both. To which the governor said, 'I am not going to restrain you from it; you are your own masters as to that: but this I think is but just; for avoiding disorders and quarrels among you, and I desire it of you for that reason only; viz. that you will all engage, that if any of you take any of these women, as a woman or wife, he shall take but one; and that, having taken one, none else shall touch her; for though we cannot marry any of you, yet it is but reasonable, that while you stay here, the woman any of you takes should be maintained by the man that takes her, and should be his wife; I mean,' says he, 'while he continues here; and that none else should have any thing to do with her.' All this

appeared so just, that every one agreed to it without any difficulty.

Then the Englishmen asked the Spaniards if they designed to take any of them. But every one answered, 'No.' Some of them said they had wives in Spain, and others did not like women that were not Christians; and all together declared that they would not touch one of them; which was an instance of such virtue, as I have not met with in all my travels. On the other hand, to be short, the five Englishmen took them every one a wife; that is to say, a temporary wife; and so they set up a new form of living; for the Spaniards and Friday's father lived in my old habitation, which they had enlarged exceedingly within; the three servants, which they had taken in the late battle of the savages, lived with them; and these carried on the main part of the colony, supplying all the rest with food, and assisting them in any thing as they could, or as they found necessity required.

But the wonder of this story was, how five such refractory ill-matched fellows should agree about these women, and that two of them should not pitch upon the same woman, especially seeing two or three of them were, without comparison, more agreeable than the others: but they took a good way enough to prevent quarrelling among themselves; for they set the five women by themselves in one of their huts, and they went all into the other hut, and drew lots among them who should chuse first.

He that drew to chuse first, went away by himself to the hut where the poor naked creatures were; and fetched out her he chose; and it was worth observing, that he that chose first took her that was reckoned the homeliest and the oldest of the five, which made mirth enough among the rest; and even the Spaniards laughed at it: but the fellow considered better than any of them, that it was application and business that they were to expect assistance in, as much as any thing else; and she proved the best wife in the parcel.

When the poor women saw themselves set in a row thus, and fetched out one by one, the terrors of their condition returned upon them again,

and they firmly believed that they were now going to be devoured. Accordingly, when the English sailor came in and fetched out one of them, the rest set up a most lamentable cry, and hung about her, and took their leave of her with such agonies, and such affection, as would have grieved the hardest heart in the world; nor was it possible for the Englishmen to satisfy them that they were not to be immediately murdered, till they fetched the old man, Friday's father, who instantly let them know, that the five men, who had fetched them out one by one, had chosen them for their wives.

When they had done this, and the fright the women were in was a little over, the men went to work, and the Spaniards came and helped them; and, in a few hours, they had built them every one a new hut or tent for their lodging apart; for those they had already were crowded with their tools, household-stuff and provisions: the three wicked ones had pitched farthest off, and the two honest ones nearer, but both on the north-shore of the island; so that they continued separate as before: and thus my island was peopled in three places; and, as I might say, three towns were begun to be planted.

And here it is very well worth observing, that as it often happens in the world, (what the wise ends of God's Providence are in such a disposition of things I cannot say) the two honest fellows had the two worst wives; and the three reprobates, that were scarce worth hanging, that were fit for nothing, and neither seemed born to do themselves good, or any one else, had three clever, diligent, careful, and ingenious wives; not that the two first were ill wives as to their temper or humour; for all the five were most willing, quiet, passive, and subjected creatures, rather like slaves than wives; but my meaning is, they were not alike capable, ingenious, or industrious; or alike cleanly and neat.

Another observation I must make, to the honour of a diligent application on the one hand, and to the disgrace of a slothful, negligent, idle temper on the other, that when I came to the place, and viewed the several improvements, planting, and management of the several little colonies, the two men had so far outgone the three,

that there was no comparison. They had, indeed, both of them as much ground laid out for corn as they wanted; and the reason was, because, according to my rule, nature dictated, that it was to no purpose to sow more corn than they wanted; but the difference of the cultivation, of the planting, of the fences, and indeed every thing else, was easy to be seen at first view.

The two men had innumerable young trees planted about their huts, that when you came to the place, nothing was to be seen but a wood; and though they had their plantation twice demolished, once by their own countrymen, and once by the enemy, as shall be shewn in its place, yet they had retored all again, and every thing was flourishing and thriving about them; they had grapes planted in order, and managed like a vineyard, though they had themselves never seen any thing of that kind; and by their good ordering their vines, their grapes were as good again as any of the others. They had also found themselves a retreat in the thickest part of the woods, where, though there was not a natural cave, as I had found, yet they made one with incessant labour of their hands, and where, when the mischief which followed happened, they secured their wives and children, so as they could never be found; they having, by sticking innumerable stakes and poles of the wood which, as I said, grew so easily, made a grove impassable, except in one place, where they climbed up to get over the outside part, and then went in by ways of their own leaving.

As to the three reprobates, as I justly call them, though they were much civilized by their new settlement, compared to what they were before, and were not so quarrelsome, having not the same opportunity; yet one of the certain companions of a profligate mind never left them, and that was their idleness. It is true they planted corn, and made fences; but Solomon's words were never better verified than in them: 'I went by the vineyard of the slothful, and it was all overgrown with thorns.' For when the Spaniards came to view their crop, they could not see it in some places for weeds; the hedge had several gaps in it,

it, where the wild goats had gotten in and eaten up the corn; perhaps here and there a dead bush was crammed in, to stop them out for the present; but it was only shutting the stable-door after the steed was stolen: whereas, when they looked on the colony of the other two, there was the very face of industry and success upon all they did; there was not a weed to be seen in all their corn, or a gap in any of their hedges; and they, on the other hand, verified Solomon's words in another place: 'That the diligent hand makes rich.' For every thing grew and thrived, and they had plenty within and without; they had more tame cattle than the others, more utensils and necessaries within doors, and yet more pleasure and diversion too.

It is true, the wives of the three were very handy and cleanly within doors; and, having learned the English ways of dressing and cooking from one of the other Englishmen, who, as I said, was a cook's mate on board the ship, they dressed their husband's victuals very nicely and well; whereas the other could not be brought to understand it; but then the husband, who, as I said, had been cook's mate, did it himself. But as for the husbands of the three wives, they loitered about, fetched turtles eggs, and caught fish and birds: in a word, any thing but labour; and they fared accordingly. The diligent lived well and comfortably, and the slothful lived hard and beggarly; and so I believe, generally speaking, it is all over the world.

But now I come to a scene different from all that had happened before, either to them or to me; and the original of the story was this:

Early one morning there came on shore five or six canoes of Indians, or savages; call them which you please; and there is no room to doubt, that they came upon the old errand of feeding upon their slaves: but that part was now so familiar to the Spaniards, and to our men too, that they did not concern themselves about it as I did; but, having been made sensible by their experiences, that their only business was to lie concealed, and that, if they were not seen by any of the savages, they would go off again quietly when their business was done, having as yet not the least notion of there being any in-

habitants in the island; I say, having been made sensible of this, they had nothing to do but to give notice to all the three plantations to keep within doors, and not to shew themselves; only placing a scout in a proper place, to give notice when the boats went off to sea again.

This was without doubt very right; but a disaster spoiled all these measures, and made it known among the savages, that there were inhabitants there; which was, in the end, the desolation of almost the whole colony. After the canoes with the savages were gone off, the Spaniards peeped abroad again, and some of them had the curiosity to go to the place where they had been, to see what they had been doing. Here, to their great surprize, they found three savages left behind, and lying fast asleep upon the ground; it was supposed, they had either been so gorged with their inhuman feast, that, like beasts, they were asleep, and would not stir when the others went, or they were wandered into the woods, and did not come back in time to be taken in.

The Spaniards were greatly surprized at this sight, and perfectly at a loss what to do. The Spanish governor, as it happened, was with them, and his advice was asked; but he professed he knew not what to do. As for slaves, they had enough already; and as to killing them, they were none of them inclined to that. The Spaniard governor told me they could not think of shedding innocent blood; for, as to them, the poor creatures had done no wrong, invaded none of their property, and they thought they had no just quarrel against them to take away their lives.

And here I must, in justice to these Spaniards, observe, that let all the accounts of Spanish cruelty in Mexico and Peru be what they will, I never met with seventeen men, of any nation whatsoever, in any foreign country, who were so universally modest, temperate, virtuous, so very good-humoured, and so courteous, as these Spaniards; and as to cruelty, they had nothing of it in their very nature; no inhumanity, no barbarity, no outrageous passions, and yet all of them men of great courage and spirit.

Their temper and calmness had appeared, in their bearing the unsufferable

able usage of the three Englishmen; and their justice and humanity appeared now in the case of the savages, as above. After some consultation, they resolved upon this, that they would lie still awhile longer, till, if possible, these three men might be gone; but then the governor Spaniard recollected, that the three savages had no boat, and that, if they were left to rove about the island, they would certainly discover that there were inhabitants in it; and so they should be undone that way.

Upon this they went back again, and there lay the fellows fast asleep still: so they resolved to awaken them, and take them prisoners; and they did so. The poor fellows were strangely frightened when they were seized upon and bound, and afraid, like the women, that they should be murdered and eaten; for, it seems, those people think all the world do as they do, eating men's flesh; but they were soon made easy as to that, and away they carried them.

It was very happy to them, that they did not carry them home to their castle; I mean, to my palace under the hill; but they carried them first to the bower, where was the chief of their country-work; such as the keeping the goats, the planting the corn, &c. and afterwards they carried them to the habitation of the two Englishmen.

Here they were set to work, though it was not much they had for them to do. And, whether it was by negligence in guarding them, or that they thought the fellows could not mend themselves, I know not, but one of them ran away; and, taking into the woods, they could never hear of him more.

They had good reason to believe he got home again soon after, in some other boats or canoes of savages, who came on shore three or four weeks afterwards, and who, carrying on their revels as usual, went off again in two days time. This thought terrified them exceedingly; for they concluded, and that not without good cause indeed, that if this fellow got safe home among his comrades, he would certainly give them an account that there were people in the island, as also how weak and few they were; for this savage, as I observed before, had never

been told, as it was very happy he had not, how many they were, or where they lived; nor had he ever seen or heard the fire of any of their guns, much less had they shewn him any other of their retired places, such as the cave in the valley, or the new retreat which the two Englishmen had made, and the like.

The first testimony they had, that this fellow had given intelligence of them was, that about two months after this, six canoes of savages, with about seven or eight, or ten men in a canoe, came rowing along the north-side of the island, where they never used to come before, and landed about an hour after sun-rise, at a convenient place, about a mile from the habitation of the two Englishmen, where this escaped man had been kept. As the Spaniard governor said, had they been all there the damage would not have been so much, for not a man of them would have escaped: but the case differed now very much; for two men to fifty were too much odds. The two men had the happiness to discover them about a league off, so that it was above an hour before they landed; and, as they landed about a mile from their huts, it was some time before they could come at them. Now having great reason to believe that they were betrayed, the first thing they did was to bind the slaves which were left, and cause two of the three men, whom they brought with the women, who, it seems, proved very faithful to them, to lead them with their two wives, and whatever they could carry away with them, to their retired place in the woods, which I have spoken of above, and there to bind the two fellows hand and foot till they heard farther.

In the next place, seeing the savages were all come on shore, and that they bent their course directly that way, they opened the fences where their milch-goats were kept, and drove them all out, leaving their goats to straggle into the wood, whither they pleased, that the savages might think they were all bred wild: but the rogue who came with them was too cunning for that, and gave them an account of it all; for they went directly to the place.

When the two poor frightened men had secured their wives and goods, they

they sent the other slave they had of the three who came with the women, and who was at their place by accident, away to the Spaniards, with all speed, to give them the alarm, and desire speedy help; and in the mean time they took their arms, and what ammunition they had, and retreated towards the place in the wood where the wives were sent, keeping at a distance; yet so that they might see, if possible, which way the savages took.

They had not gone far, but that, from a rising ground, they could see the little army of their enemies come on directly to their habitation, and in a moment more, could see all their huts and household-stuff flaming up together, to their great grief and mortification; for they had a very great loss, and to them irretrievable, at least for some time. They kept their station for a while, till they found the savages, like wild beasts, spread themselves all over the place, rummaging every way, and every place they could think of, in search for prey; and, in particular, for the people, of whom it plainly appeared they had intelligence.

The two Englishmen seeing this, thinking themselves not secure where they stood, because, as it was likely some of the wild people might come that way, so they might come too many together, thought it proper to make another retreat about half a mile farther, believing, as it afterwards happened, that the farther they strolled the fewer would be together.

The next halt was at the entrance into a very thick grown part of the woods, and where an old trunk of a tree stood, which was hollow, and vastly large; and in this tree they both took their standing, resolving to see what might offer.

They had not stood there long, but two of the savages appeared running directly that way, as if they had already notice where they stood, and were coming up to attack them; and a little way farther, they espied three more coming after them, and five more beyond them, all coming the same way; besides which, they saw seven or eight more at a distance, running another way; for, in a word, they ran every way, like sportsmen beating for their game.

The poor men were now in great

perplexity, whether they should stand, and keep their posture, or fly: but after a very short debate with themselves, they considered, that if the savages ranged the country thus, before help came, they might, perhaps, find out their retreat in the woods, and then all would be lost; so they resolved to stand them there; and if there were too many to deal with, then they would get to the top of the tree, from whence they doubted not to defend themselves, (fire excepted) as long as their ammunition lasted, though all the savages that were landed, which were near fifty, were to attack them.

Having resolved upon this, they next considered whether they should fire at the two first, or wait for the three, and so take the middle party; by which the two and the five that followed would be separated. At length they resolved to let the two first pass by, unless they should espy them in the tree, and come to attack them. The two first savages also confirmed them in this resolution, by turning a little from them towards another part of the wood; but the three, and the five after them, came forwards directly to the tree, as if they had known the Englishmen were there.

Seeing them come so straight towards them, they resolved to take them in a line as they came; and as they resolved to fire but one at a time, perhaps the first shot might hit them all three; to which purpose, the man who was to fire, put three or four bullets into his piece; and, having a fair loophole, as it were, from a broken hole in the tree, he took a sure aim, without being seen, waiting till they were within about thirty yards of the tree, so that he could not miss.

While they were thus waiting, and the savages came on, they plainly saw that one of the three was the un-away savage that had escaped from them, and they both knew him distinctly, and resolved, that, if possible, he should not escape, though they should both fire; so the other stood ready with his piece, that if he did not drop at the first shot, he should be sure to have a second.

But the first was too good a marksman to miss his aim; for, as the savages kept near one another, a little behind in a line, (in a word) he fired, and

and hit two of them directly. The foremost was killed outright, being shot in the head; the second, which was the run-away Indian, was shot through the body, and fell, but was not quite dead; and the third had a little scratch in the shoulder, perhaps by the same ball that went through the body of the second; and, being dreadfully frightened, though not much hurt, sat down upon the ground, screaming and yelling in a hideous manner.

The five that were behind, more frightened with the noise than sensible of their danger, stood still at first; for the woods made the sound a thousand times bigger than it really was; the echoes rattling from one side to another, and the fowls rising from all parts, screaming and making, every sort, a several kind of noise, according to their kind, just as it was when I fired the first gun that, perhaps, was ever shot off in that place since it was an island.

However, all being silent again, and they not knowing what the matter was, came on unconcerned till they came to that place where their companions lay, in a condition miserable enough: and here the poor ignorant creatures, not sensible that they were within reach of the same mischief, stood all of a huddle over the wounded man, talking, and, as may be supposed, enquiring of him how he came to be hurt; and who, it is very rational to believe, told them that a flash of fire first, and immediately after that, thunder from their gods had killed those two and wounded him. This, I say, is rational; for nothing is more certain than that, as they saw no man near them, so they had never heard a gun in all their lives, or so much as ever heard of a gun; neither knew they any thing of killing or wounding at a distance with fire and bullets; if they had, one might reasonably believe that they would not have stood so unconcerned, in viewing the fate of their fellows, without some apprehension of their own.

Our two men, though, as they confessed to me, it grieved them to be obliged to kill so many poor creatures, who at the same time had no notion of their danger; yet, having them all thus in their power, and the first having loaded his piece again, resolved to let fly

both together among them; and signalling out by agreement which to aim at, they shot together, and killed or very much wounded four of them; the fifth, frightened even to death, though not hurt, fell with the rest; so that our men seeing them all fall together, thought they had killed them all.

The belief that the savages were all killed, made our two men come boldly out from the tree before they had charged their guns again, which was a wrong step; and they were under some surprise when they came to the place and found no less than four of the men alive, and of them two very little hurt, and one not at all. This obliged them to fall upon them with the stocks of their muskets; and first they made sure of the run-away savage that had been the cause of all the mischief; and of another that was hurt in his knee, and put them out of their pain; then the man that was not hurt at all came and kneeled down to them, with his two hands held up, and made piteous moan to them, by gestures and signs, for his life; but could not say one word to them that they could understand.

However, they signed to him to sit down at the foot of a tree thereby; and one of the Englishmen, with a piece of rope-twine, which he had by great chance in his pocket, tied his feet fast together, and his hands behind him, and there they left him; and, with what speed they could, made after the other two which were gone before, fearing they, or any more of them, should find the way to their covered place in the woods, where their wives and the few goods they had left lay. They came once in sight of the two men, but it was at a great distance; however, they had the satisfaction to see them cross over a valley, towards the sea, the quite contrary way from that which led to their retreat, which they were afraid of; and, being satisfied with that, they went back to the tree where they left their prisoner; who, as they supposed, was delivered by his comrades, for he was gone, and the two pieces of rope-yarn, with which they had bound him, lay just at the foot of the tree.

They were now in as great a concern as before, not knowing what course to take, or how near the enemy might

might be, or in what numbers; so they resolved to go away to the place where their wives were, to see if all was well there, and to make them easy, who were in fright enough to be sure; for though the savages were their own country-folk, yet they were most terribly afraid of them, and perhaps the more for the knowledge they had of them.

When they came thither, they found the savages had been in the wood, and very near the place, but had not found it; for indeed it was inaccessible, by the trees standing so thick, as before, unless the persons seeking it had been directed by those that knew it, which these were not; they found, therefore, every thing very safe, only the women in a terrible fright. While they were here, they had the comfort of seven of the Spaniards coming to their assistance; the other ten, with their servants, and old Friday, (I mean, Friday's father) were gone in a body to defend their bower, and the corn and cattle that were kept there, in case the savages should have roved over to that side of the country; but they did not spread so far: with the seven Spaniards came one of the savages, who, as I said, were their prisoners formerly, and with them also came the savage whom the Englishmen had left bound hand and foot at the tree; for it seems they came that way, saw the slaughter of the seven men, and unbound the eight, and brought him along with them; where, however, they were obliged to bind him again, as they had done the two others who were left when the third ran away.

The prisoners began now to be a burden to them; and they were so afraid of their escaping, that they thought they were under an absolute necessity to kill them for their own preservation: however, the Spaniard governor would not consent to it, but ordered that they should be sent out of the way to my old cave in the valley, and be kept there with two Spaniards to guard them and give them food: which was done; and they were bound there hand and foot for that night.

When the Spaniards came, the two Englishmen were so encouraged, that they could not satisfy themselves to stay any longer there; but taking five of the Spaniards and themselves, with four muskets and a pistol among

them, and two stout quarter-staves, away they went in quest of the savages. And first, they came to the tree where the men lay that had been killed; but it was easy to see that some more of the savages had been there; for they attempted to carry their dead men away, and had dragged two of them a good way, but had given it over. From thence they advanced to the first rising ground, where they had stood and seen their camp destroyed, and where they had the mortification still to see some of the smoke; but neither could they here see any of the savages. They then resolved, though with all possible caution, to go forward towards their ruined plantation: but a little before they came thither, coming in sight of the sea-shore, they saw plainly the savages all embarking again in their canoes, in order to be gone.

They seemed sorry at first, that there was no way to come at them, to give them a parting blow; but upon the whole, were very well satisfied to be rid of them.

The poor Englishmen being now twice ruined, and all their improvements destroyed, the rest all agreed to come and help them to rebuild, and to assist them with needful supplies. Their three countrymen, who were not yet noted for having the least inclination to do any good, yet, as soon as they heard of it, (for they, living remote eastward, knew nothing of the matter till all was over) came and offered their help and assistance, and did very friendly work for several days, to restore their habitations, and make necessaries for them; and thus in a little time they were set upon their legs again.

About two days after this, they had the farther satisfaction of seeing three of the savages canoes come driving on shore, and at some distance from them, with two drowned men; by which they had reason to believe, that they had met with a storm at sea, which had overset some of them; for it had blown very hard the night after they went off.

However, as some might miscarry; so, on the other hand, enough of them escaped to inform the rest as well of what they had done, as of what happened to them, and to whet them on to another enterprize of the same nature, which

they, it seems, resolved to attempt, with sufficient force to carry all before them; for, except what the first man had told them of inhabitants, they could say little to it of their own knowledge, for they never saw one man, and the fellow being killed that had affirmed it, they had no other witnesses to confirm it to them.

It was five or six months after this before they heard any more of the savages, in which time our men were in hopes they had not forgot their former bad luck, or had given over the hopes of better, when on a sudden they were invaded with a most formidable fleet of no less than twenty-eight canoes full of savages, armed with bows and arrows, great clubs, wooden swords, and such like engines of war; and they brought such numbers with them, that, in short, it put all our people into the utmost consternation.

As they came on shore in the evening, and at the easternmost side of the island, our men had that night to consult and consider what to do; and, in the first place, knowing that their being entirely concealed was their only safety before, and would much more be so now, while the number of their enemies was so great, they therefore resolved first of all to take down the huts which were built for the two Englishmen, and drive away their goats to the old cave; because they supposed the savages would go directly thither, as soon as it was day, to play the old game over again, though they did not now land within two leagues of it.

In the next place, they drove away all the flock of goats they had at the old bower, as I call it, which belonged to the Spaniards; and, in short, left as little appearance of inhabitants any where as possible; and the next morning early they posted themselves with all their force at the plantation of the two men, waiting for their coming. As they guessed, so it happened; these new invaders, leaving their canoes at the east-end of the island, came ranging along the shore directly towards the place, to the number of two hundred and fifty, as near as our men could judge. Our army was but small indeed; but that which was worse, they had not arms for all their number neither. The whole account, it seems, stood thus. First, as to men:

- 17 Spaniards.
- 5 Englishmen.
- 1 Old Friday, or Friday's father.
- 3 Slaves, taken with the women, who proved very faithful.
- 3 Other slaves, who lived with the Spaniards.

29 To arm these, they had

- 11 Musquets.
- 5 Pistols.
- 3 Fowling-pieces.
- 5 Musquets, or fowling-pieces, which were taken by me from the mutinous seamen whom I reduced.
- 2 Swords.
- 3 Old halberts.

29

To their slaves they did not give either musquet or fusil; but they had every one an halbert, or a long staff, like a quarter-staff, with a great spike of iron fastened into each end of it, and by his side a hatchet; also every one of our men had hatchets. Two of the women could not be prevailed upon, but they would come into the fight; and they had bows and arrows, which the Spaniards had taken from the savages when the first action happened, which I have spoken of, where the Indians fought with one another; and the women had hatchets too.

The Spaniard governor, whom I have described so often, commanded the whole; and William Atkins, who, though a dreadful fellow for wickedness, was a most daring bold fellow, commanded under him. The savages came forward like lions, and our men, which was the worst of their fate, had no advantage in their situation; only that Will Atkins, who now proved a most useful fellow, with six men, was planted just behind a small thicket of bushes, as an advanced guard, with orders to let the first of them pass by, and then fire into the middle of them; and, as soon as he had fired, to make his retreat, as nimbly as he could, round a part of the wood, and so come in behind the Spaniards where they stood, having a thicket of trees all before them.

When the savages came on, they
ran

ran straggling about every way in heaps, out of all manner of order; and Will Atkins let about fifty of them pass by him; then, seeing the rest come in a very thick throng, he orders three of his men to fire, having loaded their musquets with six or seven bullets apiece, about as big as large pistol-bullets. How many they killed or wounded they knew not; but the consternation and surprize was inexpressible among the savages, who were frightened to the last degree, to hear such a dreadful noise, and see their men killed, and others hurt, but see nobody that did it; when in the middle of their fright, William Atkins, and his other three, let fly again among the thickest of them; and in less than a minute, the first three, being loaded again, gave them a third volley.

Had William Atkins and his men retired immediately, as soon as they had fired, as they were ordered to do, or had the rest of the body been at hand, to have poured in their shot continually, the savages had been effectually routed; for the terror that was among them came principally from this; viz. that they were killed by the gods with thunder and lightning, and could see nobody that hurt them; but William Atkins, staying to load again, discovered the cheat. Some of the savages, who were at a distance, spying them, came upon them behind; and though Atkins and his men fired at them also, two or three times, and killed above twenty, retiring as fast as they could, yet they wounded Atkins himself, and killed one of his fellow Englishmen with their arrows, as they did afterwards one Spaniard, and one of the Indian slaves who came with the women. This slave was a most gallant fellow, and fought most desperately, killing five of them with his own hand, having no weapon but one of the armed staves and a hatchet.

Our men being thus hard laid at, Atkins wounded, and two other men killed, retreated to a rising ground in the wood; and the Spaniards, after firing three volleys upon them, retreated also; for their number was so great, and they were so desperate, that though above fifty of them were killed, and more than so many wounded, yet they came on in the teeth of our men,

fearless of danger, and shot their arrows like a cloud; and it was observed, that their wounded men, who were not quite disabled, were made outrageous by their wounds, and fought like madmen.

When our men retreated, they left the Spaniard and the Englishman that were killed behind them; and the savages, when they came up to them, killed them over again in a wretched manner, breaking their arms, legs and heads, with their clubs and wooden swords, like true savages. But finding our men were gone, they did not seem to pursue them, but drew themselves up in a kind of a ring, which is, it seems, their custom; and shouted twice, in token of their victory. After which, they had the mortification to see several of their wounded men fall, dying with the mere loss of blood.

The Spaniard governor having drawn his little body up together upon a rising ground, Atkins, though he was wounded, would have had him marched, and charged them again all together at once. But the Spaniard replied, 'Seignior Atkins, you see how their wounded men fight; let them alone till morning; all these wounded men will be stiff and sore with their wounds, and faint with the loss of blood; and so we shall have the fewer to engage.'

The advice was good; but Will Atkins replied merrily, 'That's true, Seignior, and so shall I too; and that's the reason I would go on while I am warm.'—'Well, Seignior Atkins,' says the Spaniard, 'you have behaved gallantly, and done your part, we will fight for you, if you cannot come on; but I think it is best to stay till morning.' So they waited.

But as it was a clear moon-light night, and they found the savages in great disorder about their dead and wounded men, and a great hurry and noise among them where they lay, they afterwards resolved to fall upon them in the night, especially if they could come to give them but one volley before they were discovered. This they had a fair opportunity to do; for one of the two Englishmen, in whose quarter it was where the fight began, led them round, between the woods and the sea-side, westward, and turning

ing short south, they came so near where the thickest of them lay, that before they were seen or heard, eight of them fired in among them, and did dreadful execution upon them; in half a minute more eight others fired after them, pouring in their small-shot in such a quantity, that abundance were killed and wounded; and all this while they were not able to see who hurt them, or which way to fly.

The Spaniards charged again, with the utmost expedition, and then divided themselves into three bodies, and resolved to fall in among them all together. They had in each body eight persons; that is to say, twenty-four; whereof were twenty-two men, and the two women, who, by the way, fought desperately.

They divided the fire-arms equally in each party, and so of the halberts and staves. They would have had the women keep back; but they said, they were resolved to die with their husbands. Having thus formed their little army, they marched out from among the trees, and came up to the teeth of the enemy, shouting and hallooing as loud as they could. The savages stood all together, but were in the utmost confusion, hearing the noise of our men shouting from three quarters together. They would have fought if they had seen us; and, as soon as we came near enough to be seen, some arrows were shot, and poor old Friday was wounded, though not dangerously. But our men gave them no time; but, running up to them, fired among them three ways, and then fell in with the but-ends of their musquets, their swords, armed staves, and hatchets; and laid about them so well, that, in a word, they set up a dismal screaming and howling, flying to save their lives which way soever they could.

Our men were tired with the execution; and killed or mortally wounded, in the two fights, about one hundred and eighty of them. The rest, being frightened out of their wits, scoured through the woods, and over the hills, with all the speed and fear that nimble feet could help them to do; and as we did not trouble ourselves much to pursue them, they got all together to the sea-side, where they land-

ed, and where their canoes lay. But their disaster was not at an end yet; for it blew a terrible storm of wind that evening from the sea-ward, so that it was impossible for them to put off; nay, the storm continuing all night, when the tide came up, their canoes were most of them driven by the surge of the sea so high upon the shore, that it required infinite toil to get them off; and some of them were even dashed to pieces against the beach, or against one another.

Our men, though glad of their victory, yet got little rest that night; but having refreshed themselves as well as they could, they resolved to march to that part of the island where the savages were fled, and see what posture they were in. This necessarily led them over the place where the fight had been, and where they found several of the poor creatures not quite dead, and yet past recovering life: a sight disagreeable enough to generous minds; for a truly great man, though obliged by the law of battle to destroy his enemy, takes no delight in his misery.

However, there was no need to give any order in this case; for their own savages who were their servants, dispatched those poor creatures with their hatchets.

At length they came in view of the place where the more miserable remains of the savages army lay, where there appeared about one hundred still; their posture was generally sitting upon the ground, with their knees up towards their mouth, and their head put between the hands, leaning down upon the knees.

When our men came within two musquet-shot of them, the Spaniard governor ordered two musquets to be fired without ball, to alarm them. This he did, that by their countenance he might know what to expect; viz. whether they were still in heart to fight, or were so heartily beaten, as to be dispirited and discouraged, and so he might manage accordingly.

This stratagem took; for, as soon as the savages heard the first gun, and saw the flash of the second, they started up upon their feet in the greatest consternation imaginable; and, as our men advanced swiftly towards them, they all ran screaming and yawling away, with a kind of a howling

ing noise, which our men did not understand, and had never heard before; and thus they ran up the hills into the country.

At first, our men had much rather the weather had been calm, and they had all gone away to sea. But they did not then consider, that this might probably have been the occasion of their coming again in such multitudes as not to be resisted; or, at least, to come so many and so often, as would quite desolate the island and starve them. Will Atkins, therefore, who, notwithstanding his wound, kept always with them, proved the best counsellor in this case. His advice was, to take the advantage that offered, and clap in between them and their boats, and so deprive them of the capacity of ever returning any more to plague the island.

They consulted long about this, and some were against it, for fear of making the wretches fly into the woods, and live there desperate; and so they should have them to hunt like wild beasts, be afraid to stir about their business, and have their plantation continually rifled, all their tame goats destroyed, and, in short, be reduced to a life of continual distress.

Will Atkins told them, they had better have to do with one hundred men, than with one hundred nations; that as they must destroy their boats, so they must destroy the men, or be all of them destroyed themselves. In a word, he shewed them the necessity of it so plainly, that they all came into it; so they went to work immediately with the boats, and, getting some dry wood together from a dead tree, they tried to set some of them on fire; but they were so wet, that they would scarce burn. However, the fire so burned the upper part, that it soon made them unfit for swimming in the sea as boats. When the Indians saw what they were about, some of them came running out of the woods; and, coming as near as they could to our men, kneeled down and cried, 'Oa, 'oa, waramokoa,' and some other words of their language, which none of the others understood any thing of; but as they made pitiful gestures, and strange noises, it was easy to understand, they begged to have their boats spared, and

that they would be gone, and never come thither again.

But our men were now satisfied, that they had no way to preserve themselves, or to save their colony, but effectually to prevent any of these people from ever going home again; depending upon this, that if ever so much as one of them got back into their country to tell the story, the colony was undone. So that, letting them know that they should not have any mercy, they fell to work with their canoes, and destroyed them every one, that the storm had not destroyed before; at the sight of which the savages raised a hideous cry in the woods, which our people heard plain enough; after which they ran about the island like distracted men; so that, in a word, our men did not really know at first what to do with them.

Nor did the Spaniards, with all their prudence, consider, that while they made those people thus desperate, they ought to have kept good guard at the same time upon their plantations; for, though it is true they had driven away their cattle, and the Indians did not find their main retreat; (I mean, my old castle at the hill, nor the cave in the valley;) yet they found out my plantation at the bower, and pulled it all to pieces, and all the fences and planting about it; trod all the corn under foot; tore up the vines and grapes, being just then almost ripe; and did our men an inestimable damage, though to themselves not one farthing's worth of service.

Though our men were able to fight them upon all occasions, yet they were in no condition to pursue them, or hunt them up and down; for as they were too nimble of foot for our men when they found them single, so our men durst not go about single, for fear of being surrounded with their numbers. The best was, they had no weapons; for though they had bows, they had no arrows left, nor any materials to make any, nor had they any edged tool or weapon among them.

The extremity and distress they were reduced to was great, and indeed deplorable; but, at the same time, our men were also brought to very hard circumstances by them; for though their retreats were preserved, yet their provi-

provision was destroyed, and their harvest spoiled; and what to do, or which way to turn themselves, they knew not. The only refuge they had now, was the stock of cattle they had in the valley by the cave, and some little corn which grew there. The three Englishmen, William Atkins, and his comrades, were now reduced to two, one of them being killed by an arrow, which struck him on the side of his head, just under the temples, so that he never spoke more; and it was very remarkable, that this was the same barbarous fellow who cut the poor savage slave with his hatchet, and who afterwards intended to have murdered the Spaniards.

I looked upon their case to have been worse at this time, than mine was at any time after. I first discovered the grains of barley and rice, and got into the method of planting and raising my corn, and my tame cattle; for now they had, as I may say, a hundred wolves upon the island, which would devour every thing they could come at, yet could be very hardly come at themselves.

The first thing they concluded, when they saw what their circumstances were, was, that they would, if possible, drive them up to the farther part of the island, south-east; that if any more savages came on shore, they might not find one another; then, that they would daily hunt and harass them, and kill as many of them as they could come at, till they had reduced their number; and if they could at last tame them, and bring them to any thing, they would give them corn, and teach them how to plant, and live upon their daily labour.

In order to this, they followed them, and so terrified them with their guns, that in a few days, if any of them fired a gun at an Indian, if he did not hit him, yet he would fall down for fear; and so dreadfully frightened they were, that they kept out of sight farther and farther; till at last our men following them, and every day almost killing and wounding some of them, they kept up in the woods and hollow places so much, that it reduced them to the utmost misery for want of food; and many were afterwards found dead in the woods, without any hurt, but merely starved to death.

When our men found this, it made their hearts relent, and pity moved them; especially the Spaniard governor, who was the most gentleman-like, generous-minded man, that I ever met with in my life: and he proposed, if possible, to take one of them alive, and bring him to understand what they meant, so far as to be able to act as interpreter, and to go among them, and see if they might be brought to some conditions, that might be depended upon to save their lives, and to do us no spoil.

It was some time before any of them could be taken; but, being weak and half starved, one of them was at last surprized, and made a prisoner; he was sullen at first, and would neither eat nor drink; but finding himself kindly used, and victuals given him, and no violence offered him, he at last grew tractable, and came to himself.

They brought old Friday to him, who talked often with him, and told him how kind the others would be to them all; that they would not only save their lives, but would give them a part of the island to live in, provided they would give satisfaction, that they should keep in their own bounds, and not come beyond them, to injure or prejudice others; and that they should have corn given them, to plant and make it grow for their bread, and some bread given them for their present subsistence: and old Friday bade the fellow go and talk with the rest of his countrymen, and see what they said to it; assuring them, that if they did not agree immediately, they should all be destroyed.

The poor wretches, thoroughly humbled, and reduced in number to about thirty-seven, closed with the proposal at the first offer, and begged to have some food given them; upon which twelve Spaniards and two Englishmen, well armed, and three Indian slaves and old Friday, marched to the place where they were. The three Indian slaves carried them a large quantity of bread, and some rice boiled up to cakes, and dried in the sun, and three live goats; and they were ordered to go to the side of a hill, where they sat down, eat the provisions very thankfully, and were the most faithful fellows to their words that could be thought of; for, except when they came

came to beg victuals and directions, they never came out of their bounds; and there they lived when I came to the island, and I went to see them.

They had taught them both to plant corn, make bread, breed tame goats, and milk them. They wanted nothing but wives, and they soon would have been a nation. They were confined to a neck of land, surrounded with high rocks behind them, and lying plain towards the sea before them, on the south-east corner of the island. They had land enough, and it was very good and fruitful; for they had a piece of land about a mile and half broad, and three or four miles in length.

Our men taught them to make wooden spades, such as I made for myself; and gave among them twelve hatchets, and three or four knives; and there they lived, the most subjected innocent creatures that ever were heard of.

After this, the colony enjoyed a perfect tranquillity, with respect to the savages, till I came to re-visit them, which was in about two years. Not but that now and then some canoes of savages came on shore for their triumphal unnatural feasts; but as they were of several nations, and, perhaps, had never heard of those that came before, or the reason of it, they did not make any search or enquiry after their countrymen; and if they had, it would have been very hard for them to have found them out.

Thus, I think, I have given a full account of all that happened to them, to my return; at least, that was worth notice. The Indians, or savages, were wonderfully civilized by them, and they frequently went among them; but forbid, on pain of death, any of the Indians coming to them, because they would not have their settlements betrayed again.

One thing was very remarkable; viz. that they taught the savages to make wicker-work, or baskets; but they soon out-did their masters, for they made abundance of most ingenious things in wicker-work; particularly, all sorts of baskets, sieves, bird-cages, cupboards, &c. as also chairs to sit on, stools, beds, couches, and abundance of other things, being very ingenious at such work, when they were once put in the way of it.

My coming was a particular relief

to these people, because we furnished them with knives, scissars, spades, shovels, pick-axes, and all things of that kind which they could want.

With the help of these tools they were so very handy, that they came at last to build up their huts, or houses, very handsomely; radling, or working it up like basket-work all the way round, which was a very extraordinary piece of ingenuity, and looked very odd; but was an exceeding good fence, as well against heat, as against all sorts of vermin; and our men were so taken with it, that they got the wild savages to come and do the like for them; so that when I came to see the two Englishmen's colonies, they looked, at a distance, as if they lived all like bees in a hive; and as for Will Atkins, who was now become a very industrious, necessary, and sober fellow, he had made himself such a tent of basket-work, as I believe was never seen; it was one hundred and twenty paces round on the outside, as I measured by my steps; the walls were as close worked as a basket, in pannels, or squares, thirty-two in number, and very strong, standing about seven feet high: in the middle was another not above twenty-two paces round, but built stronger, being eight-square in it's form, and in the eight corners stood eight very strong posts, round the top of which he laid strong pieces, joined together with wooden pins, from which he raised a pyramid before the roof of eight rafters, very handsome, I assure you, and joined together very well, though he had no nails, and only a few iron spikes, which he had made himself too, out of the old iron that I left there; and, indeed, this fellow shewed abundance of ingenuity in several things which he had no knowledge of: he made himself a forge, with a pair of wooden bellows to blow the fire; he made himself charcoal for his work, and he formed out of one of the iron crows a middling good anvil to hammer upon; in this manner he made many things, but especially hooks, staples and spikes, bolts and hinges. But to return to the house; after he had pitched the roof of his innermost tent, he worked it up between the rafters with basket-work, so firm, and thatched that over again so ingeniously with rice-straw, and

and over that a large leaf of a tree, which covered the top, that his house was as dry as if it had been tiled or slated. Indeed, he owned that the savages made the basket-work for him.

The outer circuit was covered, as a lean-to, all round this inner apartment, and long rafters lay from the thirty-two angles to the top posts of the inner-house, being about twenty feet distant; so that there was a space like a walk, within the outer wicker-wall, and without the inner, near twenty feet wide.

The inner place he partitioned off with the same wicker-work, but much fairer, and divided it into six apartments, so that he had six rooms on a floor, and out of every one of these there was a door; first, into the entry or coming into the main tent, and another door into the space or walk that was round it; so that this walk was also divided into six equal parts, which served not only for a retreat, but to store up any necessaries which the family had occasion for. These six spaces not taking up the whole circumference, what other apartments the outer circle had, were thus ordered: As soon as you were in at the door of the outer circle, you had a short passage straight before you to the door of the inner-house; but on either side was a wicker partition, and a door in it, by which you went, first, into a large room or store-house, twenty feet wide, and about thirty feet long, and through that into another not quite so long. So that in the outer circle were ten handsome rooms, six of which were only to be come at through the apartments of the inner tent, and served as closets or retired rooms to the respective chambers of the inner circle; and four large warehouses or barns, or what you please to call them, which went in through one another, two on either hand of the passage, that led through the outer door to the inner tent.

Such a piece of basket-work, I believe, was never seen in the world; nor an house or tent so neatly contrived, much less so built. In this great bee-hive lived the three families; that is to say, Will Atkins, and his companion; the third was killed, but his wife remained with three children; for she was, it seems, big with child when he died; and the other two were not at all back-

ward to give the widow her full share of every thing; I mean, as to their corn, milk, grapes, &c. and when they killed a kid, or found a turtle on the shore; so that they all lived well enough, though, it was true, they were not so industrious as the other two, as has been observed already.

One thing, however, cannot be omitted; viz. that as for religion, I don't know that there was any thing of that kind among them; they pretty often, indeed, put one another in mind, that there was a God, by the very common method of seamen, viz. swearing by his name. Nor were their poor ignorant savage wives much the better for having been married to Christians, as we must call them; for as they knew very little of God themselves, so they were utterly incapable of entering into any discourse with their wives about a God, or to talk any thing to them concerning religion.

The utmost of all the improvement which I can say the wives had made from them, was, that they had taught them to speak English pretty well; and all the children they had, which were near twenty in all, were taught to speak English too, from their first learning to speak, though they at first spoke it in a very broken manner like their mothers. There were none of those children above six years old when I came thither; for it was not much above seven years that they had fetched these five savage ladies over, but they had all been pretty fruitful, for they had all children, more or less. I think the cook's mate's wife was big of her sixth child; and the mothers were all a good sort of well-governed, quiet, laborious women, modest and decent, helpful to one another, mighty observant and subject to their masters, (I cannot call them husbands) and wanted nothing but to be well instructed in the Christian religion, and to be legally married; both which were happily brought about afterwards by my means, or, at least, by the consequence of my coming among them.

Having thus given an account of the colony in general, and pretty much of my five runagate Englishmen, I must say something of the Spaniards, who were the main body of the family; and in whose story there are some incidents also remarkable enough.

I had a great many discourses with them

them about their circumstances, when they were among the savages. They told me readily, that they had no instances to give of their application or ingenuity in that country; that they were a poor miserable dejected handful of people; that if means had been put into their hands, they had yet so abandoned themselves to despair, and so sunk under the weight of their misfortunes, that they thought of nothing but starving. One of them, a grave and very sensible man, told me, he was convinced they were in the wrong; that it was not the part of wise men to give up themselves to their misery, but always to take hold of the helps which reason offered, as well for present support, as for future deliverance. He told me, that grief was the most senseless, insignificant passion in the world; for that it regarded only things past, which were generally impossible to be recalled or to be remedied, but had no view to things to come, and had no share in any thing that looked like deliverance, but rather added to the affliction than proposed a remedy. And upon this, he repeated a Spanish proverb; which, though I cannot repeat in just the same words that he spoke it, yet I remember I made it into an English proverb of my own thus:

In trouble to be troubled,
Is to have your trouble doubled.

He ran on then in remarks upon all the little improvements I had made in my solitude; my unwearied application, as he called it; and how I had made a condition, which, in it's circumstances, was at first much worse than theirs, a thousand times more happy than theirs was, even now, when they were all together. He told me, it was remarkable, that Englishmen had a greater presence of mind in their distress than any people that ever he met with; that their unhappy nation, and the Portuguese, were the worst men in the world to struggle with misfortunes; for that their first step in dangers, after common efforts are over, was always to despair, lie down under it and die, without rousing their thoughts up to proper remedies for escape.

I told him, their case and mine dif-

fered exceedingly; that they were cast upon the shore without necessities, without supply of food, or of present sustenance, till they could provide it: that it is true, I had this disadvantage and discomfort, that I was alone; but then the supplies I had providentially thrown into my hands, by the unexpected driving of the ship on shore, was such a help as would have encouraged any creature in the world to have applied himself as I had done. 'Seignior,' says the Spaniard, 'had we poor Spaniards been in your case, we should never have gotten half those things out of the ship as you did. Nay,' says he, 'we should never have found means to have gotten a raft to carry them, or to have gotten a raft on shore without boat or sail; and how much less should we have done,' said he, 'if any of us had been alone!' Well, I desired him to abate his compliment, and go on with the history of their coming on shore, where they landed. He told me, they unhappily landed at a place where there were people without provisions; whereas, had they had the common sense to have put off to sea again, and gone to another island a little farther, they had found provisions, though without people; there being an island that way, as they had been told, where there were provisions; though no people; that is to say, that the Spaniards of Trinidad had frequently been there, and filled the island with goats and hogs at several times; where they have bred in such multitudes, and where turtle and sea-fowls were in such plenty, that they could have been in no want of flesh, though they had found no bread; whereas here they were only sustained with a few roots and herbs, which they understood not, and which had no substance in them, and which the inhabitants gave them sparingly enough, and who could treat them no better, unless they would turn canibals, and eat men's flesh, which was the great dainty of their country.

They gave me an account how many ways they strove to civilize the savages they were with, and to teach them rational customs in the ordinary way of living, but in vain; and how they retorted it upon them as unjust, that they, who came thither for assist-

ance and support, should attempt to set up for instructors of those that gave them bread; intimating, it seems, that none should set up for instructors of others, but those who could live without them.

They gave me dismal accounts of the extremities they were driven to; how sometimes they were many days without any food at all; the island they were upon being inhabited by a sort of savages that lived more indolent, and, for that reason, were less supplied with the necessaries of life, than they had reason to believe others were in the same part of the world; and yet they found, that these savages were less ravenous and voracious than those who had better supplies of food.

Also they added, that they could not but see with what demonstrations of wisdom and goodness the governing providence of God directs the event of things in the world; which, they said, appeared in their circumstances; for if, pressed by the hardships they were under, and the barrenness of the country where they were, they had searched after a better place to live in, they had been out of the way of the relief that happened to them by my means.

Then they gave me an account, how the savages, whom they lived among, expected them to go out with them into their wars. And it was true, that, as they had fire arms with them, had they not had the disaster to lose their ammunition, they should not have been serviceable only to their friends, but have made themselves terrible both to friends and enemies; but being without powder and shot, and yet in a condition that they could not in reason deny to go out with their landlords to their wars, when they came in the field of battle, they were in a worse condition than the savages themselves; for they neither had bows nor arrows, nor could they use those the savages gave them; so that they could do nothing but stand still, and be wounded with arrows, till they came up to the teeth of their enemy; and then, indeed, the three halberts they had, were of use to them, and they would often drive a whole little army before them, with those halberts and sharpened sticks put into the muzzles of their musquets: but

that, for all this, they were sometimes surrounded with multitudes, and in great danger from their arrows; till at last they found the way to make themselves large targets of wood, which they covered with skins of wild beasts, whose names they knew not; and these covered them from the arrows of the savages. That, notwithstanding these, they were sometimes in great danger, and were once five of them knocked down together, with the clubs of the savages, which was the time when one of them was taken prisoner; that is to say, the Spaniard, whom I had relieved. That at first they thought he had been killed, but when afterwards they heard he was taken prisoner, they were under the greatest grief imaginable, and would willingly have all ventured their lives to have rescued him.

They told me, that when they were so knocked down, the rest of their company rescued them, and stood over them, fighting till they were come to themselves, all but he, who they thought had been dead; and then they made their way with their halberts and pieces, standing close together in a line, through about a body of above a thousand savages, beating down all that came in their way, got the victory over their enemies, but to their great sorrow, because it was with the loss of their friend, whom the other party, finding him alive, carried off with some others, as I gave an account in my former.

They described most affectionately, how they were surprized with joy at the return of their friend and companion in misery, who they thought had been devoured by wild beasts of the worst kind, viz. by wild men; and yet, how more and more they were surprized with the account he gave them of his errand, and that there was a Christian in any place near, much more one that was able, and had humanity enough to contribute to their deliverance.

They described how they were astonished at the sight of the relief I sent them, and at the appearance of loaves of bread, things they had not seen since their coming to that miserable place; how often they crossed it, and blessed it as bread sent from heaven; and what a reviving cordial it was to their

their spirits to taste it; as also, of the other things I had sent for their supply. And, after all, they would have told me something of the joy they were in, at the sight of a boat and pilots to carry them away to the person and place from whence all these new comforts came; but they told me it was impossible to express it by words; for their excessive joy naturally driving them to unbecoming extravagancies, they had no way to describe them, but by telling me, that they bordered upon lunacy, having no way to give vent to their passion suitable to the sense that was upon them; that in some it worked one way, and in some another; and that some of them, through a surprise of joy, would burst out into tears, others be half mad, and others immediately faint. This discourse extremely affected me, and called to my mind Friday's extasy when he met his father, and the poor people's extasy when I took them up at sea after their ship was on fire; the mate of the ship's joy, when he found himself delivered in the place where he expected to perish; and my own joy, when, after twenty-eight years captivity, I found a good ship ready to carry me to my own country. All these things made me more sensible of the relation of these poor men, and more affected with it.

Having thus given a view of the state of things, as I found them, I must relate the heads of what I did for these people, and the condition in which I left them. It was their opinion, and mine too, that they would be troubled no more with the savages; or that, if they were, they would be able to cut them off, if they were twice as many as before; so that they had no concern about that. Then I entered into a serious discourse with the Spaniard, whom I called governor, about their stay in the island; for, as I was not come to carry any of them off, so it would not be just to carry off some, and leave others, who, perhaps, would be unwilling to stay, if their strength was diminished.

On the other hand, I told them, I came to establish them there, not to remove them; and then I let them know, that I had brought with me relief of sundry kinds for them; that I had been at a great charge to supply them

with all things necessary, as well for their convenience as their defence; and that I had such and such particular persons with me, as well to increase and recruit their number, as by the particular necessary employments which they were bred to, being artificers, to assist them in those things, in which, at present, they were to seek.

They were all together when I talked thus to them; and before I delivered to them the stores I had brought, I asked them, one by one, if they had entirely forgot and buried the first animosities that had been among them, and could shake hands with one another, and engage in a strict friendship and union of interest, so that there might be no more misunderstandings or jealousies.

William Atkins, with abundance of frankness and good-humour, said, they had met with afflictions enough to make them all sober, and enemies enough to make them all friends; that, for his part, he would live and die with them; and was so far from designing any thing against the Spaniards, that he owned they had done nothing to him but what his own bad humour made necessary, and what he would have done, and perhaps much worse, in their case; and that he would ask them pardon, if I desired it, for the foolish and brutish things he had done to them; and was very willing and desirous of living in terms of entire friendship and union with them, and would do any thing that lay in his power to convince them of it: and as for going to England, he cared not if he did not go thither these twenty years.

The Spaniards said they had indeed, at first, disarmed and excluded William Atkins and his two countrymen, for their ill conduct, as they had let me know; and they appealed to me, for the necessity they were under to do so; but that William Atkins had behaved himself so bravely in the great fight they had with the savages, and on several occasions since, and had shewed himself so faithful too, and concerned for the general interest of them all, that they had forgotten all that was past, and thought he merited as much to be trusted with arms, and supplied with necessaries, as any of them; and that they had testified their satisfaction in him, by committing

ting the command to him, next to the governor himself; and as they had an entire confidence in him, and all his countrymen, so they acknowledged they had merited that confidence, by all the methods that honest men could merit to be valued and trusted; and they most heartily embraced the occasion of giving me this assurance, that they would never have any interest separate from one another.

Upon these frank and open declarations of friendship, we appointed the next day to dine all together; and indeed we made a splendid feast. I caused the ship's cook and his mate to come on shore and dress our dinner; and the old cook's mate we had on shore assisted. We brought on shore six pieces of good beef, and four pieces of pork, out of the ship's provision, with our punch-bowl, and materials to fill it; and, in particular, I gave them ten bottles of French claret, and ten bottles of English beer; things that neither the Spaniards or the Englishmen had tasted for many years, and which it may be supposed they were exceeding glad of.

The Spaniards added to our feast five whole kids, which the cooks roasted; and three of them were sent, covered up close, on board our ship, to the seamen, that they might feast on fresh meat from on shore, as we did with their salt meat from on board.

After this feast, at which we were very innocently merry, I brought out my cargo of goods, wherein, that there might be no dispute about dividing, I shewed them there was sufficient for them all; and desired, that they might all take an equal quantity of the goods that were for wearing; that is to say, equal when made up. As first, I distributed linen sufficient to make every one of them four shirts; and, at the Spaniard's request, afterwards made them up six: these were exceeding comfortable to them, having been what, as I may say, they had long since forgot the use of, or what it was to wear them.

I allotted the thin English stuffs, which I mentioned before, to make every one a light coat like a frock, which I judged fittest for the heat of the season, cool and loose; and ordered, that whenever they decayed,

they should make more, as they thought fit: the like for pumps, shoes, stockings, and hats, &c.

I cannot express what pleasure, what satisfaction, sat upon the countenances of all these poor men, when they saw the care I had taken of them, and how well I had furnished them. They told me, I was a father to them; and that, having such a correspondent as I was, in so remote a part of the world, it would make them forget that they were left in a desolate place: and they all voluntarily engaged to me, not to leave the place without my consent.

Then I presented to them the people I had brought with me; particularly the taylor, the smith, and the two carpenters, all of them most necessary people; but, above all, my general artificer, than whom they could not name any thing that was more needful to them. And the taylor, to shew his concern for them, went to work immediately, and, with my leave, made them every one a shirt the first thing he did; and, which was still more, he taught the women not only how to sew and stitch, and use the needle, but made them assist to make the shirts for their husbands, and for all the rest.

As to the carpenters, I scarce need mention how useful they were, for they took in pieces all my clumsy unhandy things, and made them clever convenient tables, stools, bedsteads, cupboards, lockers, shelves, and every thing they wanted of that kind.

But, to let them see how nature made artificers at first, I carried the carpenters to see William Atkins's basket-house, as I called it; and they both owned, they never saw an instance of such natural ingenuity before; nor any thing so regular, and so handily built, at least of it's kind: and one of them, when he saw it, after musing a good while, turning about to me, 'I am sure,' says he, 'that man has no need of us; you need do nothing but give him tools.'

Then I brought them out all my store of tools, and gave every man a digging-spade, a shovel, and a rake, for we had no harrows or ploughs; and, to every separate place, a pick-ax, a crow, a broad-ax, and a saw: always appointing, that as often as any were broken, or worn out, they should

should be supplied, without grudging, out of the general stores that I left behind.

Nails, staples, hinges, hammers, chissels, knives, scissars, and all sorts of tools and iron-work, they had without tale, as they required; for no man would care to take more than they wanted; and he must be a fool that would waste or spoil them on any account whatever: and, for the use of the smith, I left two tons of unwrought iron for a supply.

My magazine of powder and arms, which I brought them, was such, even to profusion, that they could not but rejoice at them; for now they could march, as I used to do, with a musquet upon each shoulder, if there was occasion; and were able to fight a thousand savages, if they had but some little advantages of situation; which also they could not miss of, if they had occasion.

I carried on shore with me the young man, whose mother was starved to death, and the maid also. She was a sober, well-educated, religious young woman; and behaved so inoffensively, that every one gave her a good word. She had, indeed, an unhappy life with us, there being no woman in the ship but herself; but she bore it with patience. After a while, seeing things so well ordered, and in so fine a way of thriving upon my island; and considering they had neither business nor acquaintance in the East-Indies, or reason for taking so long a voyage; I say, considering all this, both of them came to me, and desired I would give them leave to remain on the island, and be entered among my family, as they called it.

I agreed to it readily; and they had a little plot of ground allotted to them, where they had three tents or houses set up, surrounded with a basket-work, pallisadoed like Atkins's, and adjoining to his plantation: their tents were contrived so, that they had each of them a room apart to lodge in, and a middle tent, like a great store-house, to lay all their goods in, and to eat and drink in. And now the other two Englishmen removed their habitation to the same place; and so the island was divided into three colonies, and no more; viz. the Spaniards with old

Friday, and the first servants, at my old habitation under the hill; which was, in a word, the capital city; and where they had so enlarged and extended their works, as well under, as on the outside of the hill, that they lived, though perfectly concealed, yet full at large. Never was there such a little city in a wood, and so hid, I believe, in any part of the world: for, I verily believe, a thousand men might have ranged the island a month, and, if they had not known there was such a thing, and looked on purpose for it, they would not have found it; for the trees stood so thick and so close, and grew so fast matted into one another, that nothing but cutting them down first could discover the place; except the two narrow entrances where they went in and out could be found, which was not very easy. One of them was just down at the water's edge, on the side of the creek; and it was afterwards above two hundred yards to the place; and the other was up the ladder at twice, as I have already formerly described it; and they had a large wood, thick planted also, on the top of the hill, which contained above an acre, which grew apace, and covered the place from all discovery there, with only one narrow place between two trees, not easy to be discovered, to enter on that side.

The other colony was that of Will Atkins's, where there were four families of Englishmen; I mean, those I had left there with their wives and children; three savages that were slaves; the widow and children of the Englishman that was killed; the young man and the maid; and, by the way, we made a wife of her also, before we went away: there were also the two carpenters and the taylor, who I brought with me for them; also the smith, who was a very necessary man to them, especially as a gunsmith, to take care of their arms; and my other man, whom I called Jack of all Trades, who was himself as good almost, as twenty men, for he was not only a very ingenious fellow, but a very merry fellow; and, before I went away, we married him to the honest maid that came with the youth in the ship whom I mentioned before.

And now I speak of marrying, it brings

brings me naturally to say something of the French ecclesiastick that I had brought with me out of the ship's crew whom I took at sea. It is true, this man was a Roman; and, perhaps, it may give offence to some hereafter, if I leave any thing extraordinary upon record of a man whom, before I begin, I must (to set him out in just colours) represent in terms very much to his disadvantage in the account of Protestants: as first, that he was a Papist; secondly, a popish priest; and, thirdly, a French popish priest.

But justice demands of me to give him a due character; and I must say, he was a grave, sober, pious, and most religious person; exact in his life, extensive in his charity, and exemplary in almost every thing he did. What then can any one say against my being very sensible of the value of such a man, notwithstanding his profession? though it may be my opinion, perhaps, as well as the opinion of others, who shall read this, that he was mistaken.

The first hour that I began to converse with him, after he had agreed to go with me to the East-Indies, I found reason to delight exceedingly in his conversation: and he first began with me about religion, in the most obliging manner imaginable.

'Sir,' says he, 'you have not only, under God,' (and at that he crossed his breast) 'saved my life, but you have admitted me to go this voyage in your ship; and, by your obliging civility, have taken me into your family, giving me an opportunity of free conversation. Now, Sir,' says he, 'you see by my habit, what my profession is; and I guess by your nation, what yours is. I may think it is my duty, and, doubtless, it is so, to use my utmost endeavours, on all occasions, to bring all the souls that I can to the knowledge of the truth, and to embrace the Catholick doctrine; but, as I am here under your permission, and in your family, I am bound in justice to your kindness, as well as in decency and good manners, to be under your government; and therefore I shall not, without your leave, enter into any debates on the points of religion in which we may not agree, farther than you shall give me leave.'

I told him his carriage was so modest, that I could not but acknowledge it; that it was true we were such people as they called hereticks; but that he was not the first Catholick that I had conversed with, without falling into any inconveniences, or carrying the questions to any height in debate; that he should not find himself the worse used for being of a different opinion from us; and if we did not converse without any dislike on either side, upon that score, it would be his fault, not ours.

He replied, that he thought our conversation might be easily separated from disputes; that it was not his business to cap principles with every man he discoursed with; and that he rather desired me to converse with him as a gentleman than as *religieux*; that if I would give him leave at any time to discourse upon religious subjects, he would readily comply with it; and that then he did not doubt but I would allow him also to defend his own opinions as well as he could; but that, without my leave, he would not break in upon me with any such thing.

He told me farther, that he would not cease to do all that became him in his office as a priest, as well as a private Christian, to procure the good of the ship, and the safety of all that was in her; and though, perhaps, we would not join with him, and he could not pray with us, he hoped he might pray for us, which he would do upon all occasions. In this manner we conversed; and as he was of a most obliging gentleman-like behaviour, so he was, if I may be allowed to say so, a man of good sense, and, as I believe, of great learning.

He gave me a most diverting account of his life, and of the many extraordinary events of it; of many adventures which had befallen him in the few years that he had been abroad in the world, and particularly this was very remarkable; viz. That during the voyage he was now engaged in, he had the misfortune to be five times shipped and unshipped, and never to go to the place whither any of the ships he was in were at first designed: that his first intent was to have gone to Martinico; and that he went on board a ship bound thither at St. Maloe's; but being forced into Lisbon in bad weather,

the

the ship received some damage, by running aground in the mouth of the River Tagus, and was obliged to unload her cargo there: that finding a Portuguese ship there bound to the Madeiras, and ready to sail, and supposing he should easily meet with a vessel there bound to Martinico, he went on board in order to sail to the Madeiras; but the master of the Portuguese ship, being but an indifferent mariner, had been out in his reckoning, and they drove to Fial; where, however, he happened to find a very good market for his cargo, which was corn, and therefore resolved not to go to the Madeiras, but to load salt at the Isle of May, to go away to Newfoundland. He had no remedy in this exigence but to go with the ship; and had a pretty good voyage as far as the Banks, (so they call the place where they catch the fish) where meeting with a French ship bound from France to Quebec, in the River of Canada, and from thence to Martinico, to carry provisions, he thought he should have an opportunity to compleat his first design; but when he came to Quebec, the master of the ship died, and the ship proceeded no farther: so the next voyage he shipped himself for France in the ship that was burnt, when we took them up at sea, and then shipped himself with us for the East-Indies, as I have already said. Thus he had been disappointed in five voyages, all, as I may call it, in one voyage, besides what I shall have occasion to mention farther of the same person.

But I shall not make digressions into other men's stories, which have no relation to my own. I return to what concerns our affairs in the island. He came to me one morning, for he lodged among us all the while we were upon the island, and it happened to be just when I was going to visit the Englishmen's colony at the farthest part of the island; I say, he came to me, and told me, with a very grave countenance, that he had for two or three days desired an opportunity of some discourse with me, which, he hoped, would not be displeasing to me, because he thought it might, in some measure, correspond with my general design, which was the prosperity of my new colony; and, perhaps, might

put it, at least more than he yet thought it was, in the way of God's blessing.

I looked a little surprized at the last part of his discourse; and turning a little short, 'How, Sir,' said I, 'can it be said that we are not in the way of God's blessing, after such visible assistances and wonderful deliverances as we have seen here, and of which I have given you a large account?'

'If you had pleased, Sir,' said he, with a world of modesty, and yet with great readiness, 'to have heard me, you would have found no room to have been displeased, much less to think so hard of me, that I should suggest that you have not had wonderful assistances and deliverances: and, I hope, on your behalf, that you are in the way of God's blessing, and your design is exceeding good, and will prosper. But, Sir,' said he, 'though it were more so than is even possible to you, yet there may be some among you that are not equally right in their actions: and you know, that in the story of Israel, one Achan, in the camp, removed God's blessing from them, and turned his hand so against them, that thirty-six of them, though not concerned in the crime, were the objects of Divine Vengeance, and bore the weight of that punishment.'

I was sensibly touched with this discourse, and told him his inference was so just, and the whole design seemed so sincere, and was really so religious in its own nature, that I was sorry I had interrupted him, and begged him to go on; and in the mean time, because it seemed that what we had both to say might take up some time, I told him I was going to the Englishmen's plantations, and asked him to go with me, and we might discourse of it by the way. He told me, he would more willingly wait on me thither, because there, partly, the thing was acted which he desired to speak to me about. So we walked on, and I pressed him to be free and plain with me in what he had to say.

'Why then, Sir,' says he, 'be pleased to give me leave to lay down a few propositions, as the foundation of what I have to say, that we may not differ in the general principles,

‘ ciples, though we may be of some
 ‘ differing opinions in the practice of
 ‘ particulars. First, Sir, though we
 ‘ differ in some of the doctrinal arti-
 ‘ cles of religion, and it is very un-
 ‘ happy that it is so, especially in the
 ‘ case before us, as I shall shew after-
 ‘ wards, yet there are some general
 ‘ principles in which we both agree;
 ‘ viz. First, that there is a God; and
 ‘ that this God, having given us some
 ‘ stated general rules for our service
 ‘ and obedience, we ought not willing-
 ‘ ly and knowingly to offend him, ei-
 ‘ ther by neglecting to do what he has
 ‘ commanded, or by doing what he
 ‘ has expressly forbidden: and let our
 ‘ different religions be what they will,
 ‘ this general principle is readily own-
 ‘ ed by us all; that the blessing of
 ‘ God does not ordinarily follow a pre-
 ‘ sumptuous sinning against his com-
 ‘ mand; and every good Christian will
 ‘ be affectionately concerned to pre-
 ‘ vent any that are under his care liv-
 ‘ ing in a total neglect of God and his
 ‘ commands. It is not your men be-
 ‘ ing Protestants, whatever my opi-
 ‘ nion may be of such, that discharges
 ‘ me from being concerned for their
 ‘ souls, and from endeavouring, if it
 ‘ lies before me, that they should live
 ‘ in as little distance from, and enmi-
 ‘ ty with, their Maker as possible;
 ‘ especially if you give me leave to
 ‘ meddle so far in your circuit.’

I could not yet imagine what he aimed at, and told him, I granted all he had said; and thanked him, that he would so far concern himself for us: and begged he would explain the particulars of what he had observed, that, like Joshua, (to take his own parable) I might put away the accursed thing from us.

‘ Why, then, Sir,’ says he, ‘ I will
 ‘ take the liberty you give me; and
 ‘ there are three things which, if I am
 ‘ right, must stand in the way of God’s
 ‘ blessing upon your endeavours here,
 ‘ and which I should rejoice, for your
 ‘ sake and their own, to see removed.
 ‘ And, Sir,’ says he, ‘ I promise my-
 ‘ self that you will fully agree
 ‘ with me in them all as soon as I
 ‘ shall name them; especially, be-
 ‘ cause I shall convince you that every
 ‘ one of them may with great ease,
 ‘ and very much to your satisfaction,
 ‘ be remedied.’

He gave me no leave to put in any more civilities, but went on. ‘ First, Sir,’ says he, ‘ you have here four
 ‘ Englishmen; who have fetched wo-
 ‘ men from among the savages, and
 ‘ have taken them as their wives, and
 ‘ have had many children by them all,
 ‘ and yet are not married to them af-
 ‘ ter any stated legal manner, as the
 ‘ laws of God and man require; and
 ‘ therefore are yet, in the sense of
 ‘ both, no less than adulterers, and
 ‘ living in adultery. To this, Sir,’ says he, ‘ I know you will object, that
 ‘ there was no clergyman, or priest of
 ‘ any kind, or of any profession, to
 ‘ perform the ceremony; nor any pen
 ‘ and ink, or paper, to write down a
 ‘ contract of marriage, and have it
 ‘ signed between them. And I know
 ‘ also, Sir, what the Spaniard gover-
 ‘ nor has told you; I mean, of the
 ‘ agreement that he obliged them to
 ‘ make when they took these women;
 ‘ viz. That they should chuse them
 ‘ out by consent, and keep separately
 ‘ to them; which, by the way, is no-
 ‘ thing of a marriage, no agreement
 ‘ with the women as wives, but only
 ‘ an agreement among themselves to
 ‘ keep them from quarrelling.’

‘ But, Sir, the essence of the sacra-
 ‘ ment of matrimony,’ (so he called it,
 ‘ being a Roman) ‘ consists not only in
 ‘ the mutual consent of the parties to
 ‘ take one another as man and wife,
 ‘ but in the formal and legal obliga-
 ‘ tion that there is in the contract, to
 ‘ compel the man and woman, at all
 ‘ times, to own and acknowledge each
 ‘ other; obliging the man to abstain
 ‘ from all other women, to engage in
 ‘ no other contract while this subsists,
 ‘ and on all occasions, as ability al-
 ‘ lows, to provide honestly for them
 ‘ and their children; and to oblige the
 ‘ woman to the same, or like condi-
 ‘ tions, *mutatis mutandis*, on their
 ‘ side.

‘ Now, Sir,’ says he, ‘ these men
 ‘ may, when they please, or when oc-
 ‘ casion presents, abandon these wo-
 ‘ men, disown their children, leave
 ‘ them to perish, and take other wo-
 ‘ men and marry them whilst these are
 ‘ living.’ And here he added, with
 ‘ some warmth, ‘ How, Sir, is God ho-
 ‘ noured in this unlawful liberty!
 ‘ And how shall a blessing succeed
 ‘ your endeavours in this place, how-
 ‘ ever

ever good in themselves, and how-
ever sincere in your design, while
these men, who at present are your
subjects, under your absolute go-
vernment and dominion, are allowed
by you to live in open adultery ?

I confess, I was struck at the thing
itself, but much more with the con-
vincing arguments he supported it with;
for it was certainly true, that though
they had no clergyman on the spot,
yet a formal contract on both sides,
made before witnesses, and confirmed
by any token which they had all a-
greed to be bound by, though it had
been but the breaking a stick between
them, engaging the men to own these
women for their wives upon all occa-
sions, and never to abandon them or
their children, and the women to the
same with their husbands, had been
an effectual lawful marriage in the sight
of God; and it was a great neglect
that it was not done.

But I thought to have gotten off
with my young priest, by telling him
that all that part was done when I was
not here; and they had lived so many
years with them now, that if it was
an adultery, it was past remedy; they
could do nothing in it now.

'Sir,' says he, 'asking your par-
don for such freedom, you are right
in this; that it being done in your
absence, you could not be charged
with that part of the crime: but, I
beseech you, flatter not yourself that
you are not therefore under an obli-
gation to do your uttermost now to put
an end to it. How can you think
but that, let the time past lie on
whom it will, all the guilt, for the
future, will lie entirely upon you?
because it is certainly in your pow-
er now to put an end to it; and in
nobody's power but yours.'

I was so dull still that I did not take
him right; but I imagined, that by
putting an end to it he meant that I
should part them, and not suffer them
to live together any longer: and I
said to him I could not do that by any
means, for that it would put the whole
island in confusion. He seemed sur-
prized that I should so far mistake
him. 'No, Sir,' says he, 'I do not
mean that you should separate them,
but legally and effectually marry
them now: and, Sir, as my way of
marrying may not be so easy to re-

concile them to, though it will be as
effectual, even by your own laws;
so your way may be as well before
God, and as valid among men; I
mean, by a written contract, signed
by both man and woman, and by
all the witnesses present; which all
the laws of Europe would decree to
be valid.'

I was amazed to see so much true
piety, and so much sincerity of zeal, be-
sides the unusual impartiality in his dis-
course, as to his own party or church;
and such a true warmth for the pre-
serving people that he had no know-
ledge of, or relation to; I say, for
preserving them from transgressing the
laws of God; the like of which I had,
indeed, not met with any where. But
recollecting what he had said of mar-
rying them by a written contract,
which I knew would stand too; I re-
turned it back upon him, and told
him, I granted all that he had said to
be just, and on his part very kind;
that I would discourse with the men
upon the point now, when I came to
them. And I knew no reason why
they should scruple to let him marry
them all; which I knew well enough
would be granted to be as authentick
and valid in England, as if they were
married by one of our own clergymen.
What was afterwards done in this
matter, I shall speak of by itself.

I then pressed him to tell me what
was the second complaint which he
had to make; acknowledging, that I
was very much his debtor for the first;
and thanked him heartily for it. He
told me, he would use the same free-
dom and plainness in the second; and
hoped I would take it as well: and
this was, that, notwithstanding these
English subjects of mine, as he called
them, had lived with these women for
almost seven years, and had taught
them to speak English, and even to
read it; and that they were, as he per-
ceived, women of tolerable understand-
ing, and capable of instruction; yet
they had not to this hour taught them
any thing of the Christian religion;
no; not so much as to know that there
was a God, or a worship, or in what
manner God was to be served; or that
their own idolatry, and worshipping
they knew not who, was false and ab-
surd.

This, he said, was an unaccountable
D d neglect,

neglect, and what God would certainly call them to an account for; and, perhaps, at last take the work out of their hands. He spoke this very affectionately and warmly. 'I am persuaded,' says he, 'had those men lived in the savage country whence their wives came, the savages would have taken more pains to have brought them to be idolaters, and to worship the devil, than any of these men, so far as I can see, has taken with them to teach them the knowledge of the true God. Now, Sir,' said he, 'though I do not acknowledge your religion, or you mine, yet we should be all glad to see the devil's servants, and the subjects of his kingdom, taught to know the general principles of the Christian religion; that they might, at least, hear of God and of a Redeemer, and of the resurrection and of a future state, things which we all believe; they had, at least, been so much nearer coming into the bosom of the true church, than they are now in the publick profession of idolatry and devil-worship.'

I could hold no longer; I took him in my arms and embraced him with an excess of passion. 'How far,' said I to him, 'have I been from understanding the most essential part of a Christian; viz. to love the interest of the Christian church, and the good of other men's souls? I scarce have known what belongs to being a Christian!'—'O, Sir, do not say so,' replied he; 'this thing is not your fault.'—'No!' said I, 'but why did I never lay it to heart as well as you?'—'Tis not too late yet,' said he; 'be not too forward to condemn yourself.'—'But what can be done now?' said I; 'you see I am going away.'—'Will you give me leave,' said he, 'to talk with these poor men about it?'—'Yes, with all my heart,' said I; 'and will oblige them to give heed to what you say too.'—'As to that,' said he, 'we must leave them to the mercy of Christ; but it is our business to assist them, encourage them, and instruct them; and, if you will give me leave, and God his blessing, I do not doubt but the poor ignorant souls shall be brought home into the great circle of Christianity, if not into the particular faith that we all embrace;

and that even while you stay here.' Upon this I said, 'I shall not only give you leave, but give you a thousand thanks for it.' What followed on this account I shall mention also again in its place.

I now pressed him for the third article in which we were to blame. 'Why, really,' says he, 'it is of the same nature, and I will proceed (asking your leave) with the same plainness as before. It is about your poor savages yonder, who are, as I may say, your conquered subjects. It is a maxim, Sir, that is, or ought to be received among all Christians, of what church or pretended church soever; viz. that Christian knowledge ought to be propagated by all possible means, and on all possible occasions. It is on this principle that our church sends missionaries into Persia, India, and China; and that our clergy, even of the superior sort, willingly engage in the most hazardous voyages, and the most dangerous residence among murderers and barbarians, to teach them the knowledge of the true God, and to bring them over to embrace the Christian faith. Now, Sir, you have such an opportunity here to have six or seven and thirty poor savages brought over from idolatry to the knowledge of God, their Maker and Redeemer, that I wonder how you can pass such an occasion of doing good, which is really worth the expence of a man's whole life.'

I was now struck dumb indeed, and had not one word to say. I had here a spirit of true Christian zeal for God and religion before me, let his particular principles be of what kind soever. As for me, I had not so much as entertained a thought of this in my heart before; and, I believe, should not have thought of it; for I looked upon these savages as slaves and people whom, had we any work for them to do, we would have used as such, or would have been glad to have transported them to any other part of the world; for our business was to get rid of them; and we would all have been satisfied if they had been sent to any country, so they had never seen their own. But to the case: I say, I was confounded at his discourse, and knew not what answer to make him. He looked earnestly

at me, seeing me in some disorder. 'Sir,' said he, 'I shall be very sorry if what I have said gives you any offence.'—'No, no,' said I, 'I am offended with nobody but myself; but I am perfectly confounded, not only to think that I should never take any notice of this before, but with reflecting what notice I am able to take of it now. You know, Sir,' said I, 'what circumstances I am in; I am bound to the East-Indies in a ship freighted by merchants, and to whom it would be an insufferable piece of injustice to detain their ship here, the men lying all this while at victuals and wages upon the owner's account. It is true, I agreed to be allowed twelve days here; and if I stay more I must pay 3*l.* sterling per diem demurrage: nor can I stay upon demurrage above eight days more; and I have been here thirteen days already; so that I am perfectly unable to engage in this work, unless I would suffer myself to be left behind here again; in which case, if this single ship should miscarry in any part of her voyage, I should be just in the same condition that I was left in here at first, and from which I have been so wonderfully delivered.'

He owned the case was very hard upon me as to my voyage; but laid it home upon my conscience, whether the blessing of saving seven and thirty souls was not worth my venturing all I had in the world for. I was not so sensible of that as he was; and I returned upon him thus: 'Why, Sir, it is a valuable thing indeed, to be an instrument in God's hand to convert seven and thirty heathens to the knowledge of Christ; but as you are an ecclesiastick, and are given over to that work, so that it seems naturally to fall into the way of your profession, how is it then that you do not rather offer yourself to undertake it, than press me to it?'

Upon this he faced about, just before me, as he walked along, and putting me to a full stop, made me a very low bow. 'I most heartily thank God and you, Sir,' says he, 'for giving me so evident a call to so blessed a work; and if you think yourself discharged from it, and desire me to undertake it, I will most

readily do it, and think it a happy reward for all the hazards and difficulties of such a broken disappointed voyage as I have met with, that I have dropped at last into so glorious a work.'

I discovered a kind of rapture in his face, while he spoke this to me; his eyes sparkled like fire, his face glowed, and his colour came and went as if he had been falling into fits: in a word, he was fired with the joy of being embarked in such a work. I paused a considerable while before I could tell what to say to him; for I was really surprized to find a man of such sincerity and zeal, and carried out in his zeal beyond the ordinary rate of men, not of his profession only, but even of any profession whatsoever: but after I had considered it a while, I asked him seriously, if he was in earnest, and that he would venture on the single consideration of an attempt on those poor people, to be locked up in an unplanted island for perhaps his life; and, at last, might not know whether he should be able to do them any good or not.

He turned short upon me, and asked me, what I called a venture. 'Pray, Sir,' said he, 'what do you think I consented to go in your ship to the East-Indies for?'—'Nay,' said I, 'that I know not, unless it was to preach to the Indians.'—'Doubtless it was,' said he; 'and do you think, if I can convert these seven and thirty men to the faith of Christ, it is not worth my time, though I should never be fetched off the island again? Nay, is it not infinitely of more worth to save so many souls, than my life is, or the life of twenty more of the same profession? Yes, Sir,' says he, 'I would give Christ and the blessed Virgin thanks all my days, if I could be made the least happy instrument of saving the souls of these poor men, though I was never to set my foot off this island, or see my native country any more. But, since you will honour me,' says he, 'with putting me into this work, (for which I will pray for you all the days of my life) I have one humble petition to you besides.'—'What is that?' said I. 'Why,' says he, 'it is, that you will leave your man Friday with me to be my interpreter to them,

‘and to assist me; for, without some help, I cannot speak to them, or they to me.’

I was sensibly troubled at his requesting Friday, because I could not think of parting with him; and that for many reasons. He had been the companion of my travels; he was not only faithful to me, but sincerely affectionate to the last degree; and I had resolved to do something considerable for him, if he outlived me, as it was probable he would. Then I knew, that as I had bred Friday up to be a Protestant, it would quite confound him, to bring him to embrace another profession; and he would never, while his eyes were open, believe that his old master was an heretick, and would be damned; and this might, in the end, ruin the poor fellow’s principles, and so turn him back again to his first idolatry.

However, a sudden thought relieved me in this strait, and it was this; I told him, I could not say that I was willing to part with Friday on any account whatever; though a work, that to him was of more value than his life, ought to me to be of much more value than the keeping or parting with a servant. But, on the other hand, I was persuaded that Friday would by no means consent to part with me; and then to force him to it, without his consent, would be manifest injustice; because I had promised I would never put him away; and he had promised and engaged to me that he would never leave me, unless I put him away.

He seemed very much concerned at it; for he had no rational access to these poor people, seeing he did not understand one word of their language, nor they one word of his. To remove this difficulty, I told him, Friday’s father had learned Spanish, which I found he also understood; and he should serve him for an interpreter; so he was much better satisfied, and nothing could persuade him but he would stay to endeavour to convert them; but Providence gave another and very happy turn to all this.

I come back now to the first part of his objections. When we came to the Englishmen, I sent for them all together; and after some accounts given them of what I had done for

them; viz. what necessary things I had provided for them, and how they were distributed, which they were sensible of, and very thankful for; I began to talk to them of the scandalous life they led, and gave them a full account of the notice the clergyman had already taken of it; and, arguing how unchristian and irreligious a life it was, I first asked them, if they were married men or batchelors. They soon explained their condition to me, and shewed me that two of them were widowers, and the other three were single men or batchelors. I asked them, with what conscience they could take these women, and lie with them, as they had done, call them their wives, and have so many children by them, and not be married lawfully to them.

They all gave me the answer that I expected; viz. that there was nobody to marry them; that they agreed before the governor to keep them as their wives; and to keep them, and own them, as their wives; and they thought, as things stood with them, they were as legally married as if they had been married by a parson, and with all the formalities in the world.

I told them, that no doubt they were married in the sight of God, and were bound in conscience to keep them as their wives; but that the laws of men being otherwise, they might pretend they were not married, and so desert the poor women and children hereafter; and that their wives, being poor desolate women, friendless and moneyless, would have no way to help themselves. I therefore told them, that unless I was assured of their honest intent, I could do nothing for them; but would take care that what I did should be for the women and children, without them; and that unless they would give some assurances that they would marry the women, I could not think it was convenient they should continue together as man and wife; for that it was both scandalous to men and offensive to God, who they could not think would bless them if they went on thus.

All this passed as I expected; and they told me, especially Will Atkins, who seemed now to speak for the rest, that they loved their wives as well as if they had been born in their own native

five country, and would not leave them upon any account whatever; and they did verily believe their wives were as virtuous, and as modest, and did, to the utmost of their skill, as much for them, and for their children, as any women could possibly do; and they would not part with them on any account. And William Atkins, for his own particular, added, if any man would take him away, and offer to carry him home to England, and make him captain of the best man of war in the navy, he would not go with him, if he might not carry his wife and children with him; and if there was a clergyman in the ship, he would be married to her now with all his heart.

This was just as I would have it. The priest was not with me at that moment, but was not far off: so, to try him farther, I told him, I had a clergyman with me, and, if he was sincere, I would have him married the next morning; and bade him consider of it, and talk with the rest. He said, as for himself, he need not consider of it at all; for he was very ready to do it, and was glad I had a minister with me; and he believed they would be all willing also. I then told him, that my friend, the minister, was a Frenchman, and could not speak English; but that I would act the clerk between them. He never so much as asked me whether he was a Papist or Protestant; which was, indeed, what I was afraid of. But, I say, they never enquired about it. So we parted. I went back to my clergyman; and Will Atkins went in to talk with his companions. I desired the French gentleman not to say anything to them, till the business was thorough ripe; and I told him what answer the men had given me.

Before I went from their quarter, they all came to me, and told me, they had been considering what I had said; that they were very glad to hear I had a clergyman in my company; and they were very willing to give me the satisfaction I desired, and to be formally married as soon as I pleased; for they were far from desiring to part from their wives; and that they meant nothing but what was very honest when they chose them. So I appointed them to meet me the next morning; and that, in the mean time, they

should let their wives know the meaning of the marriage-law; and that it was not only to prevent any scandal, but also to oblige them, that they should not forsake them, whatever might happen.

The women were easily made sensible of the meaning of the thing, and were very well satisfied with it, as, indeed, they had reason to be; so they failed not to attend all together at my apartment the next morning, where I brought out my clergyman. And though he had not on a minister's gown, after the manner of England, or the habit of a priest, after the manner of France; yet having a black vest, something like a cassock, with a sash round it, he did not look very unlike a minister; and as for his language, I was interpreter.

But the seriousness of his behaviour to them, and the scruples he made of marrying the women, because they were not baptized and professed Christians, gave them an exceeding reverence for his person; and there was no need after that to enquire whether he was a clergyman or no.

Indeed I was afraid his scruple would have been carried so far, as that he would not have married them at all; nay, notwithstanding all I was able to say to him, he resisted me, though modestly, yet very steadily; and at last refused absolutely to marry them, unless he had first talked with the men, and the women too. And though, at first, I was a little backward to it, yet at last I agreed to it with a good will, perceiving the sincerity of his design.

When he came to them, he let them know, that I had acquainted him with their circumstances, and with the present design: that he was very willing to perform that part of his function, and marry them, as I had desired; but that, before he could do it, he must take the liberty to talk with them. He told them, that in the sight of all different men, and in the sense of the laws of society, they had lived all this while in an open adultery; and that it was true, that nothing but the consenting to marry, or effectually separating them from one another now, could put an end to it; but there was a difficulty in it too, with respect to the laws of Christian matrimony, which he was not fully satisfied about; viz. that

that of marrying one that is a professed Christian to a savage, an idolater, and a heathen, one that is not baptized; and yet that he did not see, that there was time left for it, to endeavour to persuade the women to be baptized, or to profess the name of Christ, whom they had, he doubted, heard nothing of, and without which they could not be baptized.

He told me, he doubted they were but indifferent Christians themselves; that they had but little knowledge of God or his ways; and therefore he could not expect, that they had said much to their wives on that head yet; but that unless they would promise him to use their endeavours with their wives, to persuade them to become Christians, and would, as well as they could, instruct them in the knowledge and belief of God that made them, and to worship Jesus Christ that redeemed them, he could not marry them; for he would have no hand in joining Christians with savages; nor was it consistent with the principles of the Christian religion; and was, indeed, expressly forbidden in God's law.

They heard all this very attentively, and I delivered it very faithfully to them from his mouth, as near his own words as I could, only sometimes adding something of my own, to convince them how just it was, and how I was of his mind: and I always very faithfully distinguished between what I said from myself, and what were the clergyman's words. They told me, it was very true what the gentleman had said, that they were but very indifferent Christians themselves, and that they had never talked to their wives about religion. 'Lord, Sir,' says Will Atkins, 'how should we teach them religion? Why, we know nothing ourselves. And besides, Sir,' said he, 'should we go to talk to them of God, and Jesus Christ, and heaven and hell, it would be to make them laugh at us, and ask us what we believe ourselves. And if we should tell them, we believe all the things that we speak of to them; such as of good people going to heaven, and wicked people to the devil; they would ask us, where we intended to go ourselves, who believe all this, and yet are such wicked fellows as we indeed are. Why, Sir,

said Will, 'it is enough to give them a surfeit of religion at first hearing. Folks must have some religion themselves, before they pretend to teach other people.'—'Will Atkins,' said I to him, 'though I am afraid what you say has too much truth in it, yet can you not tell your wife that she is in the wrong? That there is a God, and a religion better than her own; that her Gods are idols; that they can neither hear nor speak; that there is a great Being that made all things, and that can destroy all that he has made; that he rewards the good, and punishes the bad; that we are to be judged by him, at last, for all we do here? You are not so ignorant, but even nature itself will teach you, that all this is true; and I am satisfied you know it all to be true, and believe it yourself.'

'That's true, Sir,' said Atkins; 'but with what face can I say any thing to my wife of all this, when she will tell me immediately it cannot be true?'

'Not true,' said I; 'what do you mean by that?'—'Why, Sir,' said he, 'she will tell me it cannot be true, that this God (I shall tell her of) can be just, or can punish, or reward, since I am not punished and sent to the devil, that have been such a wicked creature as she knows I have been, even to her and to every body else; and that I should be suffered to live, that have been always acting so contrary to what I must tell her is good, and to what I ought to have done.'

'Why truly, Atkins,' said I, 'I am afraid thou speakest too much truth.' And with that I let the clergyman know what Atkins had said; for he was impatient to know. 'O!' said the priest, 'tell him there is one thing will make him the best minister in the world to his wife; and that is repentance; for none teach repentance like true penitents. He wants nothing but to repent; and then he will be so much the better qualified to instruct his wife; he will then be able to tell her, that there is not only a God, and that he is the just rewarder of good and evil, but that he is a merciful Being, and, with infinite goodness and long-suffering, forbears to punish those that offend;

‘ offend; waiting to be gracious, and
 ‘ willing not the death of a sinner, but
 ‘ rather that he should return and live;
 ‘ that he often suffers wicked men to
 ‘ go on a long time, and even reserves
 ‘ damnation to the general day of re-
 ‘ tribution. That it is a clear evi-
 ‘ dence of God, and of a future state,
 ‘ that righteous men receive not their
 ‘ reward, or wicked men their punish-
 ‘ ment, till they come into another
 ‘ world; and this will lead him to
 ‘ teach his wife the doctrine of the
 ‘ resurrection, and of the last judg-
 ‘ ment. Let him but repent for him-
 ‘ self, he will be an excellent preach-
 ‘ er of repentance to his wife.’

I repeated all this to Atkins, who
 looked very serious all the while, and
 who, we could easily perceive, was
 more than ordinarily affected with it:
 when being eager, and hardly suffer-
 ing me to make an end, ‘ I knew all
 ‘ this, Master,’ says he, ‘ and a great
 ‘ deal more; but I ha’n’t the impu-
 ‘ dence to talk thus to my wife; when
 ‘ God, and my own conscience knows,
 ‘ and my wife will be an undeniable
 ‘ evidence against me, that I have liv-
 ‘ ed as if I had never heard of a God,
 ‘ or a future state, or any thing about
 ‘ it: and to talk of my repenting,
 ‘ alas!’ (and with that he fetched a
 deep sigh; and I could see that tears
 stood in his eyes) ‘ it is past all that
 ‘ with me.’—‘ Past it! Atkins,’ said
 I, ‘ what dost thou mean by that?’—
 ‘ I know well enough what I mean,
 ‘ Sir,’ says he; ‘ I mean, it is too
 ‘ late; and that is too true.’

I told my clergyman, word for word,
 what he said. The poor zealous priest
 (I must call him so; for be his opi-
 nion what it will, he had certainly a
 most singular affection for the good of
 other men’s souls; and it would be
 hard to think he had not the like for
 his own: I say, this zealous affectio-
 nate man) could not refrain tears also.
 But, recovering himself, he said to
 me, ‘ Ask him but one question, Is
 ‘ he easy, that it is too late; or is he
 ‘ troubled, and wishes it were not so?’
 I put the question fairly to Atkins;
 and he answered with a great deal of
 passion, how could any man be easy
 in a condition that certainly must
 end in eternal destruction: that he
 was far from being easy; but that,

on the contrary, he believed it would
 one time or other ruin him.

‘ What do you mean by that?’ said
 I. Why, he said, he believed he
 should, one time or another, cut his
 own throat, to put an end to the ter-
 ror of it.

The clergyman shook his head, with
 a great concern in his face, when I
 told him all this; but turning quick
 to me upon it, said, ‘ If that be his
 ‘ case, you may assure him it is not
 ‘ too late; Christ will give him re-
 ‘ pentance. But pray,’ says he, ‘ ex-
 ‘ plain this to him, That as no man
 ‘ is saved but by Christ, and the me-
 ‘ rit of his passion procuring Divine
 ‘ Mercy for him, how can it be too
 ‘ late for any man to receive mercy?
 ‘ Does he think he is able to sin be-
 ‘ yond the power or reach of Divine
 ‘ Mercy? Pray tell him, there may
 ‘ be a time when provoked Mercy will
 ‘ no longer strive, and when God may
 ‘ refuse to hear; but that it is never
 ‘ too late for men to ask mercy: and
 ‘ we that are Christ’s servants are com-
 ‘ manded to preach mercy at all times,
 ‘ in the name of Jesus Christ, to all
 ‘ those that sincerely repent; so that
 ‘ it is never too late to repent.’

I told Atkins all this, and he heard
 me with great earnestness; but it
 seemed as if he turned off the dis-
 course to the rest; for he said to me,
 he would go and have some talk with
 his wife. So he went out a while, and
 we talked to the rest. I perceived they
 were all stupidly ignorant as to mat-
 ters of religion, much as I was when
 I went rambling away from my father;
 and yet that there were none of them
 backward to hear what had been said;
 and all of them seriously promised that
 they would talk with their wives about
 it, and do their endeavour to per-
 suade them to turn Christians.

The clergyman smiled upon me
 when I reported what answer they
 gave, but said nothing a good while;
 but, at last, shaking his head, ‘ We
 ‘ that are Christ’s servants,’ says he,
 ‘ can go no farther than to exhort
 ‘ and instruct; and when men com-
 ‘ ply, submit to the reproof, and pro-
 ‘ mise what we ask, it is all we can
 ‘ do; we are bound to accept their
 ‘ good words. But, believe me, Sir,’
 said he, ‘ whatever you may have
 ‘ known

‘ known of the life of that man you
 ‘ call William Atkins, I believe he is
 ‘ the only sincere convert among them;
 ‘ I take that man to be a true peni-
 ‘ tent: I won’t despair of the rest;
 ‘ but that man is perfectly struck with
 ‘ the sense of his past life; and I doubt
 ‘ not but when he comes to talk
 ‘ religion to his wife, he will talk
 ‘ himself effectually into it; for at-
 ‘ tempting to teach others, is some-
 ‘ times the best way of teaching our-
 ‘ selves. I knew a man,’ added he,
 ‘ who, having nothing but a summary
 ‘ notion of religion himself, and be-
 ‘ ing wicked and profligate to the
 ‘ last degree in his life, made a tho-
 ‘ rough reformation of himself by la-
 ‘ bouring to convert a Jew. And if
 ‘ that poor Atkins begins but once to
 ‘ talk seriously of Jesus Christ to his
 ‘ wife, my life for it, he talks him-
 ‘ self into a thorough convert, makes
 ‘ himself a penitent; and who knows
 ‘ what may follow!’

Upon this discourse, however, and
 their promising, as above, to endea-
 vour to persuade their wives to em-
 brace Christianity, he married the other
 three couple; but Will Atkins and his
 wife were not yet come in. After this,
 my clergyman, waiting a while, was
 curious to know where Atkins was
 gone; and turning to me, says he,
 ‘ I intreat you, Sir, let us walk out
 ‘ of your labyrinth here, and look;
 ‘ I dare say we shall find this poor
 ‘ man, somewhere or other, talking
 ‘ seriously with his wife, and teaching
 ‘ her already something of religion.’
 I began to be of the same mind: so
 we went out together; and I carried
 him a way which none knew but
 myself, and where the trees were
 so thick set, as that it was not easy
 to see through the thicket of leaves,
 and far harder to see in than to see
 out. When coming to the edge of the
 wood, I saw Atkins, and his tawny
 savage wife, sitting under the shade of
 a bush, very eager in discourse. I
 stopped short, till my clergyman came
 up to me; and then, having shewed
 him where they were, we stood and
 looked very steadily at them a good
 while.

We observed him very earnest with
 her, pointing up to the sun, and to every
 quarter of the heavens; then down to
 the earth, then out to the sea, then to

himself, then to her, to the woods, to
 the trees. ‘ Now,’ says my clergyman,
 ‘ you see my words are made good.
 ‘ The man preaches to her; mark
 ‘ him! Now he is telling her, that our
 ‘ God has made him, and her, and
 ‘ the heavens, the earth, the sea, the
 ‘ woods, the trees, &c.’—‘ I believe
 ‘ he is,’ said I. Immediately we per-
 ceived Will Atkins start up upon his
 feet, fall down upon his knees, and
 lift up both his hands. We supposed he
 said something, but we could not hear
 him; it was too far for that. He did
 not continue kneeling half a minute,
 but comes and sits down again by his
 wife, and talks to her again. We per-
 ceived then the woman very attentive;
 but whether she said any thing or no
 we could not tell. While the poor fel-
 low was upon his knees, I could see
 the tears run plentifully down my cler-
 gyman’s cheeks; and I could hardly
 forbear myself. But it was a great
 affliction to us both, that we were not
 near enough to hear any thing that
 passed between them.

Well, however, we could come no
 nearer, for fear of disturbing them:
 so we resolved to see an end of this
 piece of still conversation; and it spoke
 loud enough to us without the help of
 voice. He sat down again, as I have
 said, close by her, and talked again
 earnestly to her; and two or three
 times we could see him embrace her
 passionately; another time we saw him
 take out his handkerchief and wipe her
 eyes, and then kiss her again, with a
 kind of transport very unusual. And
 after several of these things, we saw
 him on a sudden jump up again, and
 lend her his hand to help her up, when
 immediately, leading her by the hand
 a step or two, they both kneeled down
 together, and continued so about two
 minutes.

My friend could bear it no longer,
 but cries out aloud, ‘ Saint Paul! Saint
 ‘ Paul! behold he prayeth!’ I was
 afraid Atkins would hear him; there-
 fore I intreated him to with-hold him-
 self a while, that we might see an end
 of the scene, which, to me, I must con-
 fess, was the most affecting, and yet
 the most agreeable, that ever I saw in
 my life. Well, he strove with him-
 self, and contained himself for a while,
 but was in such raptures of joy, to
 think that the poor heathen woman
 was



Plate IV

Published as the Act directs, by Harrison & C^o March 24th 1781.

216A

1871
APR 10
1871

was become a Christian, that he was not able to contain himself: he wept several times; then throwing up his hands, and crossing his breast, said over several things ejaculatory, and by way of giving God thanks for so miraculous a testimony of the success of our endeavours; some he spoke softly, and I could not well hear; others audibly; some in Latin, some in French; then two or three times the tears of joy would interrupt him, that he could not speak at all. But I begged that he would compose himself, and let us more narrowly and fully observe what was before us; which he did for a time, and the scene was not ended there yet; for, after the poor man and his wife were risen again from their knees, we observed he stood talking still eagerly to her, and we observed by her motion that she was greatly affected with what he said, by her frequent lifting up her hands, laying her hand to her breast, and such other postures as usually express the greatest seriousness and attention. This continued about half a quarter of an hour, and then they walked away too; so that we could see no more of them in that situation.

I took this interval to talk with my clergyman; and first, I told him, I was glad to see the particulars we had both been witnesses to; that though I was hard enough of belief in such cases, yet that I began to think it was all very sincere here, both in the man and his wife, however ignorant they both might be; and I hoped such a beginning would have yet a more happy end. 'And who knows,' said I, 'but these two may in time, by instruction and example, work upon some of the others?' — 'Some of them!' said he, turning quick upon me, 'aye, upon all of them. Depend upon it, if those two savages (for he has been but little better, as you relate it) should embrace Jesus Christ, they will never leave till they work upon all the rest; for true religion is naturally communicative; and he that is once made a Christian, will never leave a Pagan behind him, if he can help it.' I owned it was a most Christian principle to think so, and a testimony of a true zeal, as well as a generous heart in him. 'But, my friend,' said I, 'will you give me liberty to start one difficulty here? I

cannot tell how to object the least thing against that affectionate concern which you shew for the turning the poor people from their paganism to the Christian religion. But how does this comfort you, while these people are, in your account, out of the pale of the catholick church; without which you believe there is no salvation; so that you esteem these but hereticks still, and, for other reasons, as effectually lost as the Pagans themselves?'

To this he answered with abundance of candour and Christian charity, thus: 'Sir, I am a catholick of the Roman church, and a priest of the order of St. Benedict, and I embrace all the principles of the Roman faith; but yet, if you will believe me, and this I do not speak in compliment to you, or in respect to my circumstances, or your civilities; I say, nevertheless, I do not look upon you, who call yourselves Reformed, without some charity. I dare not say, though I know it is our opinion in general, yet, I dare not say, that you cannot be saved; will by no means limit the mercy of Christ, so far as to think that he cannot receive you into the bosom of his church, in a manner to us imperceivable, and which it is impossible for us to know; and I hope you have the same charity for us: I pray daily for your being all restored to Christ's church, by whatsoever methods He, who is All-wise, is pleased to direct. In the mean time, sure you will allow it to consist with me, as a Roman, to distinguish far between a Protestant and a Pagan; between one that calls on Jesus Christ, though in a way which I do not think is according to the true faith; and a savage, a barbarian, that knows no God, no Christ, no Redeemer at all; and if you are not within the pale of the Catholick church, we hope you are nearer being restored to it than those that know nothing at all of God, or his church. I rejoice, therefore, when I see this poor man, who you say has been a profligate, and almost a murderer, kneel down and pray to Jesus Christ, as we suppose he did, though not fully enlightened; believing that God, from whom every such work

proceeds, will sensibly touch his heart, and bring him to the further knowledge of the truth in his own time; and if God shall influence this poor man to convert and instruct the ignorant savage his wife, I can never believe that he shall be cast away himself. And have I not reason then to rejoice, the nearer any are brought to the knowledge of Christ, though they may not be brought quite home into the bosom of the catholick church just at the time when I may desire it; leaving it to the goodness of Christ to perfect his work in his own time, and his own way? Certainly I would rejoice if all the savages in America were brought, like this poor woman, to pray to God, though they were to be all Protestants at first, rather than they should continue Pagans and Heathens; firmly believing, that he who had bestowed that first light upon them, would farther illuminate them with a beam of his heavenly grace, and bring them into the pale of his church when he should see good.

I was astonished at the sincerity and temper of this truly pious Papist, as much as I was oppressed by the power of his reasoning: and it presently occurred to my thoughts, that if such a temper was universal, we might be all Catholick Christians, whatever church or particular profession we joined to or joined in; that a spirit of charity would soon work us all up into right principles; and, in a word, as he thought, that the like charity would make us all Catholicks, so I told him, I believed, had all the members of his church the like moderation, they would soon be all Protestants. And there we left that part, for we never disputed at all.

However, I talked to him another way; and, taking him by the hand, 'My friend,' said I, 'I wish all the clergy of the Roman church were blessed with such moderation, and an equal share of your charity. I am entirely of your opinion; but I must tell you, that if you should preach such doctrine in Spain or Italy, they would put you into the Inquisition.'

'It may be so,' said he; 'I know not what they might do in Spain and

Italy; but I will not say they would be the better Christians for that severity; for I am sure there is no remedy in too much charity.'

Well, as Will Atkins and his wife were gone, our business there was over: so we went back our own way; and when we came back, we found them waiting to be called in. Observing this, I asked my clergyman, if we should discover to him that we had seen him under the bush, or no; and it was his opinion we should not; but that we should talk to him first, and hear what he would say to us. So we called him in alone, nobody being in the place but ourselves; and I began with him thus.

'Will Atkins,' said I, 'pr'ythee what education had you? What was your father?'

W. A. A better man than ever I shall be. Sir, my father was a clergyman.

R. C. What education did he give you?

W. A. He would have taught me well, Sir; but I despised all education, instruction, or correction, like a beast as I was.

R. C. It is true, Solomon says, 'He that despiseth reproof is brutish.'

W. A. Ay, Sir, I was brutish indeed; I murdered my father. For God's sake, Sir, talk no more about that, Sir; I murdered my poor father!

PRIEST. Ha! a murderer!

[Here the priest started (for I interpreted every word as he spoke it) and looked pale. It seems, he believed that Will had really killed his own father.]

R. C. No, no, Sir; I do not understand him so.—Will Atkins, explain yourself; you did not kill your father, did you, with your own hands?

W. A. No, Sir; I did not cut his throat; but I cut the thread of all his comforts, and shortened his days; I broke his heart by the most ungrateful unnatural return for the most tender affectionate treatment that ever father gave or child could receive.

R. C. Well, I did not ask you about your father, to extort this confession: I pray God give you repentance for it, and forgive you that, and all your other sins; but I asked you, because I see, that though you have not much learning,

learning, yet you are not so ignorant as some are, in things that are good; that you have known more of religion a great deal than you have practised.

W. A. Though you, Sir, did not extort the confession that I make about my father, conscience does; and whenever we come to look back upon our lives, the sins against our indulgent parents are certainly the first that touch us; the wounds they make, lie deepest; and the weight they leave, will lie heaviest upon the mind, of all the sins we can commit.

R. C. You talk too feelingly and sensible for me, Atkins: I cannot bear it.

W. A. You bear it, master! I dare say you know nothing of it.

R. C. Yes, Atkins; every shore, every hill, nay, I may say, every tree in this island is witness to the anguish of my soul for my ingratitude and base usage of a good tender father; a father much like yours, by your description; and I murdered my father as well as you, Will Atkins; but think, for all that, my repentance is short of yours too by a great deal.

[I would have said more, if I could have restrained my passions; but I thought this poor man's repentance was so much sincerer than mine, that I was going to leave off the discourse, and retire: for I was surprized with what he said; and thought, that instead of my going about to teach and instruct him, the man was made a teacher and instructor to me, in a most surprizing and unexpected manner.]

I laid all this before the young clergyman, who was greatly affected with it, and said to me, 'Did I not say, Sir, that when this man was converted, he would preach to us all? I tell you, Sir, if this one man be made a true penitent, here will be no need of me; he will make Christians of all in the island.' But, having a little composed myself, I renewed my discourse with Will Atkins.

'But, Will,' said I, 'how comes the sense of this matter to touch you just now?'

W. A. Sir, you have set me about a work that has struck a dart through my very soul: I have been talking about God and religion to my wife,

in order, as you directed me, to make a Christian of her; and she has preached such a sermon to me, as I shall never forget while I live.

R. C. No, no; it is not your wife has preached to you; but when you were moving religious arguments to her, conscience has flung them back upon you.

W. A. Ay, Sir, with such a force as it is not to be resisted.

R. C. Pray, Will, let us know what passed between you and your wife; for I know something of it already?

W. A. Sir, it is impossible to give you a full account of it; I am too full to hold it, and yet have no tongue to express it; but let her have said what she will, and though I cannot give you an account of it, this I can tell you of it, that I resolve to amend and reform my life.

R. C. But tell us some of it. How did you begin, Will? For this has been an extraordinary case, that is certain; she has preached a sermon, indeed, if she has wrought this upon you.

W. A. Why, I first told her the nature of our laws about marriage, and what the reasons were, that men and women were obliged to enter into such compacts, as it was neither in the power of one or other to break; that otherwise order and justice could not be maintained, and men would run from their wives, and abandon their children, mix confusedly with one another, and neither families be kept entire, nor inheritances be settled by a legal descent.

R. C. You talk like a civilian, Will. Could you make her understand what you meant by inheritance and families? They know no such thing among the savages, but marry any how, without any regard to relation, consanguinity, or family; brother and sister; nay, as I have been told, even the father and daughter, and the son and the mother.

W. A. I believe, Sir, you are misinformed; and my wife assures me of the contrary, and that they abhor it: perhaps, for any farther relations, they may not be so exact as we are; but she tells me, they never touch one another in the near relations you speak of.

R. C. Well, what did she say to what you told her?

W. A. She said, she liked it very well, and it was much better than in her country.

R. C. But, did you tell her what marriage was?

W. A. Ay, ay; there began all our dialogue. I asked her, if she would be married to me our way? She asked me, what way that was? I told her, marriage was appointed of God; and here we had a strange talk together, indeed, as ever man and wife had, I believe.

[N. B. This dialogue between Will Atkins and his wife, as I took it down in writing, just after he told it me, was as follows:]

WIFE. Appointed by your God! Why, have you a God in your country?

W. A. Yes, my dear; God is in every country.

WIFE. No your God is my country; my country have the great old Benamuckee god.

W. A. Child, I am very unfit to shew you who God is; God is in heaven, and made the heaven and the earth, the sea, and all that in them is.

WIFE. No makee de earth; no you God makee de earth; no makee my country.

[Will Atkins laughed a little at her expression of God not making her country.]

WIFE. No laugh: why laugh me? This no ting to laugh.

[He was justly reproved by his wife; for she was more serious than he at first.]

W. A. That's true, indeed; I will not laugh any more, my dear.

WIFE. Why you say, you God make all?

W. A. Yes, child, our God made the whole world, and you, and me, and all things; for he is the only true God; there is no God but he; he lives for ever in heaven.

WIFE. Why you no tell me long ago?

W. A. That's true, indeed; but I have been a wicked wretch, and have not only forgotten to acquaint thee with any thing before, but have lived without God in the world myself.

WIFE. What have you de great God in your country, you no know

him? No say O! to him? No do good ting for him? That no impossible!

W. A. It is too true though, for all that: we live as if there was no God in heaven, or that he had no power on earth.

WIFE. But why God let you do so? Why he no make you good live?

W. A. It is all our own fault.

WIFE. But you say me, he is great, much great, have much great power; can make kill when he will; why he no makee kill when you no serve him? No say O! to him? No be good mans!

W. A. That is true; he might strike me dead, and I ought to expect it; for I have been a wicked wretch, that is true; but God is merciful, and does not deal with us as we deserve.

WIFE. But then, do not you tell God tankee for that too?

W. A. No, indeed: I have not thanked God for his mercy, any more than I have feared God for his power.

WIFE. Then you God no God; me no think, believe he be such one, great much power, strong; no makee kill you, though you makee him much angry.

W. A. What! will my wicked life hinder you from believing in God! What a dreadful creature am I! And what a sad truth is it, that the horrid lives of Christians hinders the conversion of heathens.

WIFE. How me tink you have great much God up there, and yet no do well, no do good ting? Can he tell? Sure he no tell what you do.

[She points up to heaven.]

W. A. Yes, yes, he knows and sees all things; he hears us speak, sees what we do, knows what we think, though we do not speak.

WIFE. What! he no hear you swear, curse, speak the great damn?

W. A. Yes, yes, he hears it all.

WIFE. Where be then the muchee great power strong?

W. A. He is merciful; that is all we can say for it: and this proves him to be the true God; he is God and not man; and therefore we are not consumed.

[Here, Will Atkins told us, he was struck with horror, to think how he could tell his wife so clearly, that God sees, and hears, and knows the secret thoughts of the heart,

heart, and all that we do; and yet that he had dared to do all the vile things he had done.]

WIFE. Merciful! what you call dat?

W. A. He is our father and maker; and he pities and spares us.

WIFE. So then he never makee kill, never angry when you do wicked; then he no good himself, or no great able.

W. A. Yes, yes, my dear; he is infinitely good, and infinitely great, and able to punish too; and sometimes, to shew his justice and vengeance, he lets fly his anger to destroy sinners, and make examples; many are cut off in their sins.

WIFE. But no makee kill you yet. Then he tell you, may be, that he no makee you kill; so you make de bargain with him, you do bad ting, he no be angry at you when he be angry at other mans?

W. A. No, indeed, my sins are all presumptions upon his goodness; and he would be infinitely just if he destroyed me, as he has done other men.

WIFE. Well, and yet no kill, no makee you dead! What you say to him for that? You no tell him tankee for all that too!

W. A. I am an unthankful, ungrateful dog, that is true.

WIFE. Why he no makee you much good better? You say he makee you?

W. A. He made me as he made all the world; it is I have deformed myself, and abused his goodness, and have made myself an abominable wretch.

WIFE. I wish you makee God know me; I no makee him angry; I no do bad wicked ting.

[Here, Will Atkins said, his heart sunk within him, to hear a poor untaught creature desire to be taught to know God; and he such a wicked wretch that he could not say one word to her about God, but what the reproach of his own carriage would make most irrational to her to believe; nay, that already she could not believe in God, because he that was so wicked was not destroyed.

W. A. My dear, you mean you wish I could teach you to know God,

not God to know you; for he knows you already, and every thought in your heart.

WIFE. Why then he know what I say to you now; he know me wish to know him. How shall me know who makee me?

W. A. Poor creature! he must teach thee; I cannot teach thee: I'll pray to him to teach thee to know him; and to forgive me that I am unworthy to teach thee.

[The poor fellow was in such an agony at her desiring him to make her know God, and her wishing to know him, that, he said, he fell down on his knees before her, and prayed to God to enlighten her mind with the saving knowledge of Jesus Christ, and to pardon his sins, and accept of his being the unworthy instrument of instructing her in the principles of religion; after which he sat down by her again; and their dialogue went on.

N.B. This was the time when we saw him kneel down and lift up his hands.]

WIFE. What you put down the knee for? What you hold up the hand for? What you say? Who you speak to? What is that?

W. A. My dear, I bow my knees in token of my submission to him that made me. I said O to him, as you call it, and as you say your old men do to their idol Benamuckee; that is, I prayed to him.

WIFE. What you say O to him for?

W. A. I prayed to him to open your eyes and your understanding, that you may know him, and be accepted by him.

WIFE. Can he do that too?

W. A. Yes, he can; he can do all things.

WIFE. But he no hear what you say?

W. A. Yes, he has bid us pray to him; and promised to hear us.

WIFE. Bid you pray? When he bid you? How he bid you? What! you hear him speak?

W. A. No, we do not hear him speak; but he has revealed himself many ways to us.

[Here he was at a great loss to make her understand, that God had revealed

vealed himself to us by his word, and what his word was; but at last he told her thus.]

W. A. God has spoken to some good men in former days, even from heaven, by plain words; and God has inspired good men by his Spirit; and they have written all his laws in a book.

WIFE. Me no understand that. Where is book?

W. A. Alas! my poor creature, I have not this book; but I hope I shall one time or other get it for you to read it.

[Here he embraced her with great affection, but with inexpressible grief that he had not a bible.]

WIFE. But how you makee me know that God teachee them to write that book?

W. A. By the same rule that we know him to be God.

WIFE. What rule, what way you know?

W. A. Because he teaches and commands nothing but what is good, righteous, and holy; and tends to make us perfectly good as well as perfectly happy; and because he forbids and commands us to avoid all that is wicked, that is evil in itself, or evil in its consequences.

WIFE. That me would understand, that me fain see; if he reward all good thing, punish all wicked thing, he teachee all good thing, forbid all wicked thing, he make all thing, he give all thing; he hear me when I say O to him, as you go to do just now; he makee me good, if I wish be good; he spare me, no makee kill me when I no be good; all this you say he do; yes, he be great God; me take, think, believe him be great God; me say O to him too, with you, my dear.

[Here, the poor man said, he could forbear no longer; but, raising her up, made her kneel by him; and he prayed to God aloud, to instruct her in the knowledge of himself by his Spirit; and that by some good providence, if possible, she might some time or other come to have a Bible, that she might read the word of God, and be taught by him to know him.]

This was the time that we saw him lift her up by the hand, and

saw him kneel down by her, as above.]

They had several other discourses, it seems, after this, too long to set down here; and particularly she made him promise, that since he confessed his own life had been a wicked abominable course of provocation against God, that he would reform it, and not make God angry any more, lest he should make him dead, as she called it, and then she should be left alone, and never be taught to know this God better; and lest he should be miserable, as he had told her wicked men should be after death.

This was a strange account, and very affecting to us both, but particularly the young clergyman: he was indeed wonderfully surprized with it; but under the greatest affliction imaginable, that he could not talk to her; that he could not speak English to make her understand him; and as she spoke but very broken English, he could not understand her. However, he turned himself to me, and told me, that he believed there must be more to do with this woman than to marry her. I did not understand him at first, but at length he explained himself; viz. that she ought to be baptized.

I agreed with him in that part readily, and was for going about it presently. 'No, no; hold, Sir,' said he; 'though I would have her baptized by all means, yet I must observe, that Will Atkins, her husband, has, indeed, brought her in a wonderful manner to be willing to embrace a religious life; and has given her just ideas of the being of a God, of his power, justice, and mercy; yet I desire to know of him, if he has said anything to her of Jesus Christ, and of the salvation of sinners; of the nature of faith in him, and the redemption by him; of the Holy Spirit, the resurrection, the last judgment, and a future state.'

I called Will Atkins again, and asked him; but the poor fellow fell immediately into tears, and told us, he had said something to her of all those things, but that he was himself so wicked a creature, and his own conscience so reproached him with his horrid ungodly life, that he trembled at the apprehensions that her know-

ledge

ledge of him should lessen the attention she should give to those things, and make her rather condemn religion than receive it. But he was assured, he said, that her mind was so disposed to receive due impressions of all those things, that if I would but discourse with her she would make it appear to my satisfaction, that my labour would not be lost upon her.

According I called her in, and placing myself as interpreter between my religious priest and the woman, I intreated him to begin with her: but sure such a sermon was never preached by a Popish priest in these latter ages of the world! and, as I told him, I thought he had all the zeal, all the knowledge, all the sincerity of a Christian, without the errors of a Roman Catholick; and that I took him to be such a clergyman as the Roman bishops were before the church of Rome assumed spiritual sovereignty over the consciences of men.

In a word, he brought the poor woman to embrace the knowledge of Christ, and of redemption by him; not with wonder and astonishment only, as she did the first notions of a God, but with joy and faith, with an affection, and a surprizing degree of understanding, scarce to be imagined, much less expressed; and at her own request she was baptized.

When he was preparing to baptize her, I intreated him that he would perform that office with some caution, that the man might not perceive he was of the Roman church, if possible; because of other ill consequences which might attend a difference among us in that very religion which we were instructing the other in. He told me, that as he had no consecrated chapel, nor proper things for the office, I should see he would do it in a manner that I should not know by it that he was a Roman Catholick myself, if I had not known it before: and so he did; for saying only some words over to himself in Latin, which I could not understand, he poured a whole dish full of water upon the woman's head, pronouncing in French very loud, 'Mary,' (which was the name her husband desired me to give her, for I was her godfather) 'I baptize thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.' So that none could

know any thing by it what religion he was of. He gave the benediction afterwards in Latin; but either Will Atkins did not know but it was in French, or else did not take notice of it at that time.

As soon as this was over, he married them. And after the marriage was over, he turned himself to Will Atkins, and in a very affectionate manner exhorted him, not only to persevere in that good disposition he was in, but to support the convictions that were upon him, by a resolution to reform his life; told him it was in vain to say he repented, if he did not forsake his crimes; represented to him how God had honoured him with being the instrument of bringing his wife to the knowledge of the Christian religion; and that he should be careful he did not dishonour the grace of God; and that if he did, he would see the heathen a better Christian than himself; the savage converted, and the instrument cast away.

He said a great many good things to them both, and then recommended them, in a few words, to God's goodness, gave them the benediction again, I repeating every thing to them in English: and thus ended the ceremony. I think it was the most pleasant agreeable day to me that ever I passed in my whole life.

But my clergyman had not done yet; his thoughts hung continually upon the conversion of the thirty-seven savages; and fain he would have staid upon the island to have undertaken it; but I convinced him, 1st. That his undertaking was impracticable in itself; and, 2^{dly}, That, perhaps, I would put it into a way of being done, in his absence, to his satisfaction. Of which by and by.

Having thus brought the affairs of the island to a narrow compass, I was preparing to go on board the ship, when the young man, whom I had taken out of the Spanish ship's company, came to me, and told me, he understood I had a clergyman with me; and that I had caused the Englishmen to be married to the savages, whom they called wives; that he had a match too, which he desired might be finished before I went, between two Christians; which, he hoped, would not be disagreeable to me.

I knew

I knew this must be the young woman who was his mother's servant, for there was no other Christian woman on the island; so I began to persuade him not to do any thing of that kind rashly, or because he found himself in this solitary circumstance. I represented, that he had some considerable substance in the world, and good friends, as I understood by himself, and by his maid also; that the maid was not only poor, and a servant, but was unequal to him, she being twenty-six or twenty-seven years old, and he not above seventeen or eighteen; that he might, very probably, with my assistance, make a remove from this wilderness, and come into his own country again; and that then it would be a thousand to one but he would repent his choice; and the dislike of that circumstance might be disadvantageous to both. I was going to say more, but he interrupted me, smiling, and told me, with a great deal of modesty, that I mistook in my guesses; that he had nothing of that kind in his thoughts, his present circumstances being melancholy and disconsolate enough; and he was very glad to hear, that I had thoughts of putting them in a way to see their own country again; and that nothing should have set him upon staying there, but that the voyage I was going was exceeding long and hazardous, and would carry him quite out of the reach of all his friends; that he had nothing to desire of me, but that I would settle him in some little property in the island where he was; give him a servant or two, and some few necessaries, and he would settle himself here like a planter, waiting the good time when, if ever I returned to England, I would redeem him, and hoped I would not be unmindful of him when I came to England; that he would give me some letters to his friends in London, to let them know how good I had been to him, and what part of the world, and what circumstances I had left him in. And he promised me, that whenever I redeemed him, the plantation, and all the improvements he had made upon it, let the value be what it would, should be wholly mine.

His discourse was very prettily delivered, considering his youth; and was the more agreeable to me, because

he told me positively the match was not for himself. I gave him all possible assurances, that if I lived to come safe to England, I would deliver his letters, and do his business effectually; and that he might depend I would never forget the circumstances I left him in; but still I was impatient to know who was the person to be married: upon which he told me, it was my Jack of all Trades and his maid Susan.

I was most agreeably surprized when he named the match; for, indeed, I had thought it very suitable. The character of that man I have given already; and as for the maid, she was a very honest, modest, sober, and religious young woman; had a very good share of sense; was agreeable enough in her person; spoke very handsomely, and to the purpose; always with decency and good manners, and not backward to speak, when any thing required it, or impertinently forward to speak when it was not her business; very handy and housewifely in any thing that was before her; an excellent manager, and fitted indeed to have been governess to the whole island; she knew very well how to behave herself to all kind of folks she had about her, and to better, if she had found any there.

The match being proposed in this manner, we married them the same day; and, as I was father at the altar, as I may say, and gave her away, so I gave her a portion; for I appointed her and her husband a handsome large space of ground for their plantation; and, indeed, this match, and the proposal the young gentleman made to me, to give him a small property in the island, put me upon parcelling it out among them, that they might not quarrel afterwards about their situation.

This sharing out the land to them I left to Will Atkins; who, indeed, was now grown a most sober, grave, managing fellow, perfectly reformed, exceeding pious and religious, and, as far as I may be allowed to speak positively in such a case, I verily believe, was a true, sincere penitent.

He divided things so justly, and so much to every one's satisfaction, that they only desired one general writing under my hand for the whole; which I caused

I caused to be drawn up, and signed and sealed to them, setting out the bounds and situation of every man's plantation, and testifying, that I gave them thereby, severally, a right to the whole possession and inheritance of the respective plantations or farms, with their improvements, to them and their heirs; reserving all the rest of the island as my own property, and a certain rent for every particular plantation, after eleven years, if I or any one from me, or in my name, came to demand it, producing an attested copy of the same writing.

As to the government and laws among them, I told them I was not capable of giving them better rules than they were able to give themselves; only made them promise me, to live in love and good neighbourhood with one another. And so I prepared to leave them.

One thing I must not omit; and that is, that being now settled in a kind of commonwealth among themselves, and having much business in hand, it was but odd to have seven and thirty Indians live in a nook of the island, independent, and indeed unemployed; for, excepting the providing themselves food, which they had difficulty enough in sometimes, they had no manner of business or property to manage. I proposed therefore to the governor Spaniard, that he should go to them with Friday's father, and propose to them to remove, and either plant for themselves, or take them into their several families as servants, to be maintained for their labour, but without being absolute slaves; for I would not admit them to make them slaves by force by any means, because they had their liberty given by capitulation, and, as it were, articles of surrender, which they ought not to break.

They most willingly embraced the proposal, and came all very cheerful along with him. So we allotted them land and plantations, which three or four accepted of, but all the rest chose to be employed as servants in the several families we had settled; and thus my colony was in a manner settled, as follows: The Spaniards possessed my original habitation, which was the capital city; and extended their plantation all along the side of the brook, which made the creek that I have so often described, as far as my bower;

and as they increased their culture, it went always eastward: the English lived in the north-east part, where Will Atkins and his comrades began, and came on southward and south-west, towards the back part of the Spaniards; and every plantation had a great addition of land to take in, if they found occasion; so that they need not jostle one another for want of room.

All the west end of the island was left uninhabited, that if any of the savages should come on shore there, only for their usual customary barbarities, they might come and go; if they disturbed nobody, nobody would disturb them: and no doubt but they were often ashore, and went away again; for I never heard that the planters were ever attacked or disturbed any more.

It now came into my thoughts, that I had hinted to my friend the clergyman, that the work of converting the savages might, perhaps, be set on foot in his absence, to his satisfaction: and I told him, that now I thought it was put in a fair way; for the savages being thus divided among the Christians, if they would but every one of them do their part with those which came under their hands, I hoped it might have a very good effect.

He agreed presently in that, 'If,' said he, 'they will do their part; but 'how shall we obtain that of them?' I told him, we would call them all together, and leave it in charge with them, or go to them one by one; which he thought best; so we divided it; he to speak to the Spaniards, who were all Papists; and I to the English, who were all Protestants; and we recommended it earnestly to them, and made them promise, that they would never make any distinction of Papist or Protestant, in their exhorting the savages to turn Christians; but teach them the general knowledge of the true God, and of their Saviour Jesus Christ; and they likewise promised us, that they would never have any differences or disputes, one with another, about religion.

When I came to Will Atkins's house, (if I may call it so, for such a house, or such a piece of basket-work, I believe, was not standing in the world again; I say, when I came thither) I found the young woman I have men-

F f tioned

tioned above, and Will Atkins's wife, were become intimates; and this prudent, religious young woman, had perfected the work Will Atkins had begun; and though it was not above four days after what I have related, yet the new baptized savage woman was made such a Christian, as I have seldom heard of any like her in all my observation or conversation in the world.

It next came into my mind, in the morning, before I went to them, that among all the needful things I had to leave with them, I had not left a Bible; in which I shewed myself less considering for them, than my good friend the widow was for me, when she sent me the cargo of tool. from Lisbon, where she packed up three Bibles and a Prayer-book. However, the good woman's charity had a greater extent than ever she imagined; for they were reserved for the comfort and instruction of those that made much better use of them than I had done.

I took one of the Bibles in my pocket, and when I came to William Atkins's tent or house, I found the young woman, and Atkins's baptized wife, had been discoursing of religion together; (for William Atkins told it me with a great deal of joy.) I asked, if they were together now, and he said, 'Yes.' So I went into the house, and he with me, and we found them together very earnest in discourse. 'O, Sir!' says William Atkins, 'when God has sinners to reconcile to himself, and aliens to bring home, he never wants a messenger: my wife has got a new instructor; I knew I was unworthy, as I was incapable of that work. That young woman has been sent hither from heaven; she is enough to convert a whole island of savages.' The young woman blushed, and rose up to go away, but I desired her to sit still. I told her she had a good work upon her hands, and I hoped God would bless her in it.

We talked a little, and I did not perceive they had any book among them, though I did not ask; but I put my hand in my pocket, and pulled out my Bible. 'Here,' said I to Atkins, 'I have brought you an assistant, that, perhaps, you had not before.' The man was so confounded, that he

was not able to speak for some time; but, recovering himself, he takes it with both his hands, and turning to his wife, 'Here, my dear,' says he; 'did not I tell you, our God, though he lives above, could hear what we said! Here is the book I prayed for, when you and I kneeled down under the bush; now God has heard us, and sent it.' When he had said thus, the man fell into such transports of a passionate joy, that between the joy of having it, and giving God thanks for it, tears ran down his face like a child that was crying.

The woman was surprized, and was like to have run into a mistake that none of us were aware of; for she firmly believed God had sent the book upon her husband's petition. It is true, that providentially it was so, and might be taken so in a consequent sense; but I believe it would have been no difficult matter, at that time, to have persuaded the poor woman to have believed, that an express messenger came from heaven on purpose to bring that individual book; but it was too serious a matter, to suffer any delusion to take place: so I turned to the young woman, and told her, we did not desire to impose upon the new convert in her first and more ignorant understanding of things; and begged her to explain to her, that God may be very properly said to answer our petitions, when, in the course of his providence, such things are, in a particular manner, brought to pass as we petitioned for; but we do not expect returns from Heaven in a miraculous and particular manner; and that it is our mercy it is not so.

This the young woman did afterwards effectually; so that there was, I assure you, no priestcraft used here; and I should have thought it one of the most unjustifiable frauds in the world, to have had it so. But the surprise of joy upon Will Atkins is really not to be expressed; and there, we may be sure, was no delusion. Sure no man was ever more thankful in the world for any thing of it's kind than he was for this Bible; and, I believe, never any man was glad of a Bible from a better principle; and though he had been a most profligate creature, desperate, headstrong, outrageous,

ragious, furious, and wicked, to a great degree; yet this man is a standing rule to us all for the well instructing children; viz. that parents should never give over to teach and instruct, or ever despair of the success of their endeavours, let the children be ever so obstinate, refractory, or, to appearance, insensible of instruction; for, if ever God in his providence touches the consciences of such, the force of their education returns upon them, and the early instruction of parents is not lost, though it may have been many years laid asleep; but, some time or other, they may find the benefit of it.

Thus it was with this poor man: however ignorant he was, or divested of religion and Christian knowledge, he found he had some to do with now more ignorant than himself; and that the least part of the instruction of his good father, that could now come to his mind, was of use to him.

Among the rest, it occurred to him, he said, how his father used to insist much upon the inexpressible value of the Bible; the privilege and blessing of it to nations, families, and persons; but he never entertained the least notion of the worth of it till now; when, being to talk to heathens, savages, and barbarians, he wanted the help of the written oracle for his assistance.

The young woman was very glad of it also, for the present occasion, though she had one; and so had the youth on board our ship, among the goods which were not yet brought on shore. And now, having said so many things of this young woman, I cannot omit telling one story more of her and myself, which has something in it very informing and remarkable.

I have related to what extremity the poor young woman was reduced; how her mistress was starved to death, and did die on board that unhappy ship we met at sea; and how the whole ship's company being reduced to the last extremity, the gentlewoman and her son, and this maid, were first hardly used as to provisions, and at last totally neglected and starved; that is to say, brought to the last extremity of hunger.

One day, being discoursing with her upon the extremities they suffered, I asked her if she could describe, by

what she felt, what it was to starve, and how it appeared. She told me, she believed she could; and she told her tale very distinctly thus:

'First, Sir,' said she, 'we had for some days fared exceeding hard, and suffered very great hunger; but now, at last, we were wholly without food of any kind, except sugar, and a little wine, and a little water. The first day, after I had received no food at all, I found myself towards evening, first empty and sickish at my stomach; and nearer night, mightily inclined to yawning, and sleepy. I laid down on a couch in the great cabin to sleep, and slept about three hours, and awaked a little refreshed, having taken a glass of wine when I laid down. After being about three hours awake, it being about five o'clock in the morning, I found myself empty, and my stomach sickish again, and laid down again; but could not sleep at all, being very faint and ill: and thus I continued all the second day, with a strange variety; first hungry, then sick again, with reachings to vomit. The second night, being obliged to go to bed again without any food more than a draught of fair water, and being asleep, I dreamed I was at Barbadoes; and that the market was mightily stocked with provisions; that I bought some for my mistress, and went and dined very heartily.

'I thought my stomach was as full after this, as it would have been after, or at a good dinner; but when I waked, I was exceedingly sunk in my spirits, to find myself in the extremity of famine. The last glass of wine we had I drank, and put sugar into it, because of its having some spirit to supply nourishment; but there being no substance in the stomach for the digesting office to work upon, I found the only effect of the wine was, to raise disagreeable fumes from the stomach into the head; and I lay, as they told me, stupid and senseless, as one drunk, for some time.

'The third day in the morning, after a night of strange and confused inconsistent dreams, and rather dozing than sleeping, I awaked, ravenous and furious with hunger; and I question, had not my under-

standing returned and conquered it; I say, I question whether, if I had been a mother, and had had a little child with me, it's life would have been safe or no.

This lasted about three hours; during which time I was twice raging mad as any creature in Bedlam, as my young master told me, and as he can now inform you.

In one of these fits of lunacy or distraction, whether by the motion of the ship, or some slip of my foot, I know not, I fell down, and struck my face against the corner of a pallet-bed, in which my mistress lay; and with the blow the blood gushed out of my nose; and the cabin-boy bringing me a little basin, I sat down, and bled into it a great deal; and as the blood ran from me, I came to myself; and the violence of the flame, or the fever I was in, abated, and so did the ravenous part of the hunger.

Then I grew sick, and reached to vomit, but could not; for I had nothing in my stomach to bring up. After I had bled some time, I swooned, and they all believed I was dead; but I came to myself soon after, and then had a most dreadful pain in my stomach, not to be described; not like the cholick, but a gnawing eager pain for food; and, towards night, it went off with a kind of earnest wishing or longing for food; something like, as I suppose, the longing of a woman with child. I took another draught of water, with sugar in it, but my stomach loathed the sugar, and brought it all up again; then I took a draught of water without sugar, and that stayed with me; and laid me down upon the bed, praying most heartily that it would please God to take me away; and composing my mind in hopes of it, I slumbered a while; and then waking, thought myself dying, being light with vapours from an empty stomach. I recommended my soul to God, and earnestly wished that somebody would throw me into the sea.

All this while my mistress lay by me, just, as I thought, expiring; but bore it with much more patience than I, and gave the last bit of bread she had to her child, my young master,

who would not have taken it, but she obliged him to eat it; and, I believe, it saved his life.

Towards the morning I slept again: and first, when I awaked, I fell into a violent passion of crying; and after that, had a second fit of violent hunger, so that I got up ravenous, and in a most dreadful condition. Had my mistress been dead, as much as I loved her, I am certain I should have eaten a piece of her flesh with as much relish, and as unconcerned, as ever I did the flesh of any creature appointed for food; and once or twice I was going to bite my own arm. At last, I saw the basin in which was the blood I had bled at my nose the day before; I ran to it, and swallowed it with such haste, and such a greedy appetite, as if I had wondered nobody had taken it before, and afraid it should be taken from me now.

Though after it was down, the thoughts of it filled me with horror, yet it checked the fit of hunger; and I drank a draught of fair water, and was composed and refreshed for some hours after it. This was the fourth day; and thus I held it till towards night, when, within the compass of three hours, I had all these several circumstances over again, one after another; viz. sick, sleepy, eagerly hungry, pain in the stomach, then ravenous again, then sick again, then lunatick, then crying, then ravenous again, and so every quarter of an hour; and my strength wasted exceedingly. At night I laid me down, having no comfort, but in the hope that I should die before morning.

All this night I had no sleep, but the hunger was now turned into a disease, and I had a terrible cholick and griping; wind, instead of food, having found it's way into the bowels; and in this condition I lay till morning, when I was surprized a little with the cries and lamentations of my young master, who called out to me, that his mother was dead. I lifted myself up a little, for I had not strength to rise, but found she was not dead, though she was able to give very little signs of life.

I had then such convulsions in my stomach, for want of some sustenance, that I cannot describe them; with

with such frequent throes and pangs of appetite, that nothing but the tortures of death can imitate. And this condition I was in when I heard the seamen above cry out, "A sail, a sail!" and halloo and jump about as if they were distracted.

I was not able to get off from the bed, and my mistress much less; and my master was so sick, that I thought he had been expiring; so we could not open the cabin-door, or get any account what it was that occasioned such a combustion; nor had we any conversation with the ship's company for two days, they having told us they had not a mouthful of any thing to eat in the ship. And they told us afterwards, they thought we had been dead.

It was this dreadful condition we were in, when you were sent to save our lives. And how you found us, Sir, you know as well as I, and better too.

This was her own relation, and is such a distinct account of starving to death, as, I confess, I never met with, and was exceeding entertaining to me. I am the rather apt to believe it to be a true account, because the youth gave me an account of a good part of it; though I must own not so distinct and so feelingly as his maid; and the rather, because, it seems, his mother fed him at the price of her own life: but the poor maid, though her constitution being stronger than that of her mistress, who was in years, and a weakly woman too, she might struggle harder with it; I say, the poor maid might be supposed to feel the extremity something sooner than her mistress, who might be allowed to keep the last bits something longer than she parted with any to relieve the maid. No question, as the case is here related, if our ship, or some other, had not so providentially met with them, a few days more would have ended all their lives, unless they had prevented it by eating one another; and even that, as their case stood, would have served them but a little while, they being five hundred leagues from any land, or any possibility of relief, other than in the miraculous manner it happened. But this is by the way. I return to my disposition of things among the people.

And first, it is to be observed here,

that, for many reasons, I did not think fit to let them know any thing of the sloop I had framed, and which I thought of setting up among them; for I found, at least at my first coming, such seeds of division among them, that I saw it plainly, had I set up the sloop, and left it among them, they would, upon very light disgust, have separated, and gone away from one another, or perhaps have turned pirates, and so made the island a den of thieves, instead of a plantation of sober and religious people, as I intended it to be; nor did I leave the two pieces of brass cannon that I had on board, or the two quarter-deck guns that my nephew took extraordinary, for the same reason. I thought they had enough to qualify them for a defensive war against any that should invade them; but I was not to set them up for an offensive war, or to encourage them to go abroad to attack others, which, in the end, would only bring ruin and destruction upon themselves, and all their undertakings. I reserved the sloop, therefore, and the guns for their service another way, as I shall observe in it's place.

I have now done with the island. I left them all in good circumstances, and in a flourishing condition, and went on board my ship again the fifth day of May, having been five and twenty days among them; and, as they were all resolved to stay upon the island till I came to remove them, I promised to send some farther relief from the Brazils, if I could possibly find an opportunity; and particularly, I promised to send them some cattle; such as sheep, hogs, and cows: for as to the two cows and calves which I brought from England, we had been obliged, by the length of our voyage, to kill them at sea, for want of hay to feed them.

The next day, giving them a salute of five guns at parting, we set sail, and arrived at the Bay of All-Saints, in the Brazils, in about twenty-two days; meeting nothing remarkable in our passage, but this: that about three days after we sailed, being becalmed, and the current setting strong to the E. N. E. running, as it were, into a bay or gulph on the land side, we were driven something out of our course; and once or twice our men cried,

cried, 'Land to the westward!' but whether it was the continent, or islands, we could not tell by any means.

But the third day, towards evening, the sea smooth, and the weather calm, we saw the sea, as it were, covered, towards the land, with something very black, not being able to discover what it was; but, after some time, our chief mate going up the main shrouds a little way, and looking at them with a perspective, cried out it was an army. I could not imagine what he meant by an army, and spoke a little hastily, calling the fellow a fool, or some such word. 'Nay, Sir,' says he, 'don't be angry, for it is an army, and a fleet too; for I believe there are a thousand canoes, and you may see them paddle along, and they are coming towards us too apace, and full of men.'

I was a little surprized then, indeed, and so was my nephew the captain; for he had heard such terrible stories of them in the island; and having never been in those seas before, that he could not tell what to think of it, but said two or three times we should all be devoured. I must confess, considering we were becalmed, and the current set strong towards the shore, I liked it the worse. However, I bade him not be afraid, but bring the ship to an anchor as soon as we came so near as to know that we must engage them.

The weather continued calm, and they came on apace towards us; so I gave orders to come to an anchor, and furl all our sails. As for the savages, I told them they had nothing to fear from them but fire; and therefore they should get their boats out, and fasten them, one close by the head, and the other by the stern, and man them both well, and wait the issue in that posture. This I did, that the men in the boats might be ready, with sheets and buckets, to put out any fire these savages might endeavour to fix upon the outside of the ship.

In this posture we lay by for them, and in a little while they came up with us; but never was such a horrid sight seen by Christians. My mate was much mistaken in his calculation of their number; I mean, of a thousand canoes; the most we could make of them when they came up being about a hundred and twenty-six, and a great many

of them too; for some of them had sixteen or seventeen men in them, some more, and the least six or seven.

When they came nearer to us, they seemed to be struck with wonder and astonishment, as at a sight which they had, doubtless, never seen before; nor could they at first, as we afterwards understood, know what to make of us. They came boldly up, however, very near to us, and seemed to go about to row round us; but we called to our men in the boats not to let them come too near them.

This very order brought us to an engagement with them without our designing it; for five or six of their large canoes came so near our long-boat, that our men beckoned with their hands to them to keep back; which they understood very well, and went back; but at their retreat about five hundred arrows came on board us from those boats; and one of our men in the long-boat was very much wounded.

However, I called to them not to fire by any means; but we handed down some deal boards into the boat, and the carpenter presently set up a kind of a fence, like waste-boards, to cover them from the arrows of the savages, if they should shoot again.

About an hour afterwards they came all up in a body, a stern of us, and pretty near, so near that we could easily discern what they were, though we could not tell their design. I easily found they were some of my old friends, the same sort of savages that I had been used to engage with; and in a little time more they rowed somewhat farther out to sea, till they came directly broadside with us, and then rowed down straight upon us, till they came so near, that they could hear us speak. Upon this I ordered all my men to keep close, lest they should shoot any more arrows, and make all our guns ready; but, being so near as to be within hearing, I made Friday go out upon the deck, and call out aloud to them in his language, to know what they meant; which accordingly he did. Whether they understood him or not, that I knew not; but as soon as he had called to them, six of them, who were in the foremost or rightest boat to us, turned their canoes from us, and stooping down, shewed us their

their naked backsides; just as if, in English, (saying your presence) they had bid us kiss. — Whether this was a defiance or challenge we knew not; or whether it was done in mere contempt, or a signal to the rest; but immediately Friday cried out, they were going to shoot; and unhappily for him (poor fellow) they let fly about three hundred of their arrows; and, to my inexpressible grief, killed poor Friday, no other man being in their sight. The poor fellow was shot with no less than three arrows, and about three more fell very nigh him; such unlucky marksmen they were.

I was so enraged with the loss of my old servant, the companion of all my sorrows and solitudes, that I immediately ordered five guns to be loaded with small shot, and four with great; and gave them such a broadside as they had never had in their lives before to be sure.

They were not above half a cable's length off when we fired; and our gunners took their aim so well, that three or four of their canoes were overset, as we had reason to believe, by one shot only.

The ill manners of turning up their bare backsides to us gave us no great offence; neither did I know for certain, whether that which would pass for the greatest contempt among us, might be understood so by them or not; therefore, in return, I had only resolved to have fired four or five guns with powder only, which I knew would fright them sufficiently. But when they shot at us directly with all the fury they were capable of, and especially as they had killed my poor Friday, whom I so entirely loved and valued, and who indeed so well deserved it, I not only had been justified before God and man, but would have been very glad, if I could, to have overset every canoe there, and drowned every one of them.

I can neither tell how many we killed, or how many we wounded, at this broadside; but sure such a fright and hurry never was seen among such a multitude. There were thirteen or fourteen of their canoes split and overset in all, and the men all set a swimming; the rest, frightened out of their wits, scoured away as fast as they

could, taking but little care to save those whose boats were split or spoiled with our shot; so I suppose that there were many of them lost; and our men took up one poor fellow swimming for his life, above an hour after they were all gone.

Our small shot from our cannon must needs kill and wound a great many: but, in short, we never knew any thing how it went with them; for they fled so fast, that in three hours, or thereabouts, we could not see above three or four straggling canoes; nor did we ever see the rest any more, for a breeze of wind springing up the same evening, we weighed and set sail for the Brazils.

We had a prisoner indeed, but the creature was so sullen, that he would neither eat nor speak, and we all fancied he would starve himself to death: but I took a way to cure him; for I made them take him and turn him into the long-boat, and make him believe they would toss him into the sea again, and so leave him where they found him, if he would not speak; nor would that do, but they really did throw him into the sea, and came away from him; and then he followed them, for he swam like a cork, and called to them in his tongue, though they knew not one word of what he said. However, at last, they took him in again, and then he began to be more tractable; nor did I ever design they should drown him.

We were now under sail again; but I was the most disconsolate creature alive for want of my man Friday, and would have been very glad to have gone back to the island, to have taken one of the rest from thence for my occasion, but it could not be; so we went on. We had one prisoner, as I have said; and it was a long while before we could make him understand any thing; but, in time, our men taught him some English, and he began to be a little tractable. Afterwards we enquired what country he came from, but could make nothing of what he said; for his speech was so odd, all gutturals, and spoken in the throat in such a hollow and odd manner, that we could never form a word from him; and we were all of opinion, that they might speak that language as well if they were gagged

as otherwise; nor could we perceive that they had any occasion either for teeth, tongue, lips, or palate; but formed their words just as a hunting-horn forms a tune, with an open throat. He told us, however, some time after, when we had taught him to speak a little English, that they were going with their kings to fight a great battle. When he said kings, we asked him how many kings. He said, there were five nation, (we could not make him understand the plural *S*) and that they all joined to go against two nation. We asked him, what made them come up to us. He said, 'To makee te great wonder look.' Where it is to be observed, that all those natives, as also those of Africa, when they learn English, they always add two *e*'s at the end of the words where we use one, and place the accent upon the last of them, as *makeé*, *takeé*, and the like; and we could not break them of it; nay, I could hardly make Friday leave it off, though at last he did.

And now I name the poor fellow once more, I must take my last leave of him. Poor honest Friday! We buried him with all decency and solemnity possible, by putting him into a coffin, and throwing him into the sea; and I caused them to fire eleven guns for him. And so ended the life of the most grateful, faithful, honest, and most affectionate servant, that ever man had.

We now went away with a fair wind for Brazil; and, in about twelve days time, we made land in the latitude of five degrees south of the line, being the north-eastermost land of all that part of America. We kept on S. by E. in sight of the shore, four days, when we made the Cape St. Augustine, and in three days came to an anchor off the Bay of All-Saints, the old place of deliverance, from whence came both my good and evil fate.

Never ship came to this part that had less business than I had; and yet it was with great difficulty that we were admitted to hold the least correspondence on shore: not my partner himself, who was alive, and made a great figure among them; nor my two merchant trustees, nor the fame of my wonderful preservation in the island, could obtain me that favour. But my

partner remembering that I had given five hundred moidores to the prior of the monastery of the Augustines, and three hundred and seventy-two to the poor, went to the monastery, and obliged the prior that then was to go to the governor, and beg leave for me presently, with the captain and one more, besides eight seamen, to come on shore, and no more; and this upon condition absolutely capitulated for, that we should not offer to land any goods out of the ship, or to carry any person away without licence.

They were so strict with us, as to landing any goods, that it was with extreme difficulty that I got on shore three bales of English goods, such as fine broad-cloths, stuffs, and some linen, which I had brought for a present to my partner.

He was a very generous broad-hearted man, though (like me) he came from little at first; and though he knew not that I had the least design of giving him any thing, he sent me on board a present of fresh provisions, wine, and sweetmeats, worth above thirty moidores, including some tobacco, and three or four fine medals in gold. But I was even with him in my present, which, as I have said, consisted of fine broad-cloth, English stuffs, lace, and fine Hollands. Also I delivered him about the value of 100*l.* sterling, in the same goods, for other uses; and I obliged him to set up the sloop which I had brought with me from England, as I have said, for the use of my colony, in order to send the refreshments I intended to my plantation.

Accordingly, he got hands, and finished the sloop in a very few days, for she was already framed, and I gave the master of her such instructions as he could not miss the place; nor did he miss it, as I had an account from my partner afterwards. I got him soon loaded with the small cargo I had sent them; and one of our seamen, that had been on shore with me there, offered to go with the sloop, and settle there, upon my letter to the governor Spaniard to allot him a sufficient quantity of land for a plantation; and giving him some cloaths and tools for his planting-work, which he said he understood, having been an old planter in Maryland, and a buccaneer into the bargain.

I encouraged the fellow by granting all he desired; and, as an addition, I gave him the savage which we had taken prisoner of war, to be his slave, and ordered the governor Spaniard to give him his share of every thing he wanted with the rest.

When we came to fit this man out, my old partner told me, that there was a certain very honest fellow, a Brazil planter of his acquaintance, who had fallen into the displeasure of the church: 'I know not what the matter is with him,' says he; 'but, on my conscience, I think he is a heretick in his heart, and he has been obliged to conceal himself for fear of the inquisition;' that he would be very glad of such an opportunity to make his escape, with his wife and two daughters; and if I would let them go to the island, and allot them a plantation, he would give them a small stock to begin with; for the officers of the inquisition had seized all his effects and estate, and he had nothing left but a little household-stuff and two slaves. 'And,' adds he, 'though I hate his principles, yet I would not have him fall into their hands; for he will assuredly be burnt alive if he does.'

I granted this presently, and joined my Englishman with them; and we concealed the man, and his wife and daughters, on board our ship, till the sloop put out to go to sea; and then (having put all their goods on board the sloop some time before) we put them on board the sloop after she was got out of the bay.

Our seaman was mightily pleased with this new partner; and their stock, indeed, was much alike rich in tools, in preparations, and a farm; but nothing to begin with but as above. However, they carried over with them (which was worth all the rest) some materials for planting sugar-canes, with some plants of canes; which he (I mean, the Portugal man) understood very well.

Among the rest of the supplies sent my tenants in the island, I sent them, by this sloop, three milch cows and five calves, about twenty-two hogs among them, three sows big with pig, two mares and a stone-horse.

For my Spaniards, according to my promise, I engaged three Portugal wo-

men to go; and recommended it to them to marry them, and use them kindly. I could have procured more women, but I remembered, that the poor persecuted man had two daughters, and there were but five of the Spaniards that wanted; the rest had wives of their own, though in another country.

All this cargo arrived safe; and, as you may easily suppose, very welcome to my old inhabitants, who were now (with this addition) between sixty and seventy people, besides little children; of which there were a great many. I found letters at London from them, all by way of Lisbon, when I came back to England, being sent back to the Brazils by this sloop; of which I shall take some notice in it's place.

I have now done with my island, and all manner of discourse about it; and whoever reads the rest of my memorandums, would do well to turn his thoughts entirely from it, and expect to read only of the follies of an old man, not warned by his own harms, much less by those of other men, to beware of the like; not cooled by almost forty years misery and disappointments; not satisfied with prosperity beyond expectation; not made cautious by affliction and distress beyond imitation.

I had no more business to go to the East-Indies, than a man at full liberty, and having committed no crime, has to go to the turnkey at Newgate, and desire him to lock him up among the prisoners there, and starve him. Had I taken a small vessel from England and went directly to the island; had I loaded her, as I did the other vessel, with all the necessaries for the plantation, and for my people; took a patent from the government here, to have secured my property, in subjection only to that of England, which, to be sure, I might have obtained; had I carried over cannon and ammunition, servants, and people to plant, and taking possession of the place, fortified and strengthened it in the name of England, and increased it with people, as I might easily have done; had I then settled myself there, and sent the ship back laden with good rice, as I might also have done in six months time, and ordered my friends to have fitted her out again for our supply; had I done this,

and stayed there myself, I had, at least, acted like a man of common sense: but I was possessed with a wandering spirit, scorned all advantages, pleased myself with being the patron of these people I had placed there, and doing for them in a kind of haughty majestic way, like an old patriarchal monarch; providing for them, as if I had been father of the whole family as well as of the plantation. But I never so much as pretended to plant in the name of any government or nation, or to acknowledge any prince, or to call my people subjects to any one nation more than another; nay, I never so much as gave the place a name; but left it as I found it, belonging to no man, and the people under no discipline or government but my own; who, though I had an influence over them as father and benefactor, had no authority or power to act or command one way or other, farther than voluntary consent moved them to comply; yet even this, had I stayed there, would have done well enough; but as I rambled from them, and came thither no more, the last letters I had from any of them were by my partner's means, who afterwards sent another sloop to the place, and who sent me word, though I had not the letter till five years after it was written, that they went on but poorly, were discontent with their long stay there; that Will Atkins was dead; that five of the Spaniards were come away; and that though they had not been much molested by the savages, yet they had had some skirmishes with them; that they begged of him to write to me, to think of the promise I had made to fetch them away, that they might see their own country again before they died.

But I was gone a wild-goose chase indeed; and they who will have any more of me, must be content to follow me through a new variety of follies, hardships, and wild adventures; wherein the justice of Providence may be duly observed, and we may see how easily Heaven can gorge us with our own desires, make the strongest of our wishes to be our affliction, and punish us most severely with those very things which we think it would be our utmost happiness to be allowed in.

Let no wise man flatter himself with the strength of his own judgment, as

if he was able to chuse any particular station of life for himself. Man is a short-sighted creature, sees but a very little way before him; and as his passions are none of his best friends, so his particular affections are generally his worst counsellors.

I say this with respect to the impetuous desire I had from a youth to wander into the world; and how evident it now was, that this principle was preserved in me for my punishment. How it came on, the manner, the circumstance, and the conclusion of it, it is easy to give you historically, and with it's utmost variety of particulars. But the secret ends of Divine Providence, in thus permitting us to be hurried down the stream of our own desires, are only to be understood of those who can listen to the voice of Providence, and draw religious consequences from God's justice, and their own mistakes.

Be it, had I business, or no business, away I went. It is no time now to enlarge any farther upon the reason or absurdity of my own conduct; but to come to the history, I was embarked for the voyage, and the voyage I went.

I shall only add here, that my honest and truly pious clergyman left me here; a ship being ready to go to Lisbon, he asked me leave to go thither; being still, as he observed, bound never to finish any voyage he began. How happy had it been for me, if I had gone with him!

But it was too late now: all things Heaven appoints are best. Had I gone with him, I had never had so many things to be thankful for, and you had never heard of the second part of the *Travels and Adventures of Robinson Crusoe*. So I must leave here the fruitless exclaiming at myself, and go on with my voyage.

From the *Brasil*s we made directly away over the Atlantick Sea, to the Cape de Bonne Esperance, or, as we call it, the Cape of Good Hope; and had a tolerable good voyage, our course generally south east; now and then a storm, and some contrary winds. But my disasters at sea were at an end; my future rubs and cross events were to befall me on shore, that it might appear, the land was as well prepared to be our scourge as the sea, when Heaven,

ven, who directs the circumstances of things, pleases to appoint it to be so.

Our ship was on a trading voyage, and had a supercargo on board, who was to direct all her motions after she arrived at the Cape; only being limited to certain number of days for stay, by charter-party, at the several ports she was to go to. This was none of my business, neither did I meddle with it at all; my nephew, the captain, and the supercargo, adjusting all those things between them, as they thought fit.

We made no stay at the Cape, longer than was needful to take in fresh water, but made the best of our way for the coast of Coromandel. We were indeed informed, that a French man of war of fifty guns, and two large merchant ships, were gone for the Indies; and, as I knew we were at war with France, I had some apprehensions of them; but they went their own way, and we heard no more of them.

I shall not pester my account, or the reader, with descriptions of places, journals of our voyages, variations of the compass, latitudes, meridian distances, trade-winds, situation of ports, and the like; such as almost all the histories of long navigation are full of, and which make the reading tiresome enough, and are perfectly unprofitable to all that read, except only to those who are to go to those places themselves.

It is enough to name the ports and places which we touched at, and what occurred to us upon our passing from one to another. We touched first at the island of Madagascar; where, though the people are fierce and treacherous, and, in particular, very well armed with lances and bows, which they use with inconceivable dexterity, yet we fared very well with them a while; they treated us very civilly; and, for some trifles which we gave them, such as knives, scissars, &c. they brought us eleven good fat bullocks, middling in size, but very good in flesh; which we took in, partly for fresh provisions for our present spending, and the rest to salt for the ship's use.

We were obliged to stay here for some time, after we had furnished ourselves with provisions; and I, that was always too curious to look into every

nook of the world wherever I came, was for going on shore as often as I could. It was on the east side of the island that we went on shore one evening; and the people, who, by the way, are very numerous, came thronging about us, and stood gazing at us at a distance. As we had traded freely with them, and had been kindly used, we thought ourselves in no danger; but when we saw the people, we cut three boughs out of a tree, and stuck them up at a distance from us, which, it seems, is a mark in that country, not only of truce and friendship, but, when it is accepted, the other side set up three poles or boughs also, which is a signal that they accept the truce too; but then this is a known condition of the truce, that you are not to pass beyond their three poles towards them, nor they come past your three poles or boughs toward you; so that you are perfectly secure within the three poles, and all the space between your poles and theirs is allowed, like a market, for free converse, traffick and commerce. When you go thither, you must not carry your weapons with you; and if they come into that space, they stick up their javelins and lances all at the first poles, and come on unarmed; but if any violence is offered them, and the truce thereby broken, away they run to the poles, and lay hold of their weapons, and then the truce is at an end.

It happened, one evening, when we went on shore, that a greater number of their people came down than usual; but were all very friendly and civil. They brought with them several kinds of provisions, for which we satisfied them with such toys as we had; their women also brought us milk and roots, and several things very acceptable to us, and all was quiet; and we made us a little tent or hut, of some boughs of trees, and lay on shore all that night.

I know not what was the occasion, but I was not so well satisfied to lie on shore as the rest; and the boat lying at an anchor, about a stone's cast from the land, with two men in her to take care of her, I made one of them come on shore; and getting some boughs of trees to cover us also in the boat, I spread the sail on the bottom of the boat, and lay on board, under the co-

ver of the branches of the trees, all night.

About two o'clock in the morning we heard one of our men make a terrible noise on the shore, calling out, for God's sake, to bring the boat in, and come and help them, for they were all like to be murdered; at the same time I heard the firing of five musquets, which was the number of the guns they had, and that three times over; for, it seems, the natives here were not so easily frightened with guns as the savages were in America, where I had to do with them.

All this while I knew not what was the matter; but rousing immediately from sleep with the noise, I caused the boat to be thrust in, and resolved, with three fusils we had on board, to land and assist our men.

We got the boat soon to the shore; but our men were in two much haste: for, being come to the shore, they plunged into the water, to get to the boat with all the expedition they could, being pursued by between three and four hundred men. Our men were but nine in all, and only five of them had fusils with them; the rest, indeed, had pistols and swords, but they were of small use to them.

We took up seven of our men, and with difficulty enough too, three of them being very ill wounded; and that which was still worse was, that while we stood in the boat to take our men in, we were in as much danger as they were in on shore; for they poured their arrows in upon us so thick, that we were fain to barricade the side of the boat up with the benches and two or three loose boards, which, to our great satisfaction, we had, by mere accident, or Providence rather, in the boat.

And yet, had it been day-light, they are, it seems, such exact marksmen, that if they could have seen but the least part of any of us, they would have been sure of us. We had, by the light of the moon, a little sight of them, as they stood pelting us from the shore with darts and arrows; and, having got ready our fire-arms, we gave them a volley; and we could hear, by the cries of some of them, that we had wounded several; however, they stood thus in battle-array on the shore till break of day, which we suppose was,

that they might see the better to take their aim at us.

In this condition we lay, and could not tell how to weigh our anchor, or set up our sail, because we must needs stand up in the boat, and they were as sure to hit us, as we were to hit a bird in a tree with small shot. We made signals of distress to the ship, which, though she rode a league off, yet my nephew, the captain, hearing our firing, and, by glasses, perceiving the posture we lay in, and that we fired towards the shore, pretty well understood us; and, weighing anchor with all speed, he stood as near the shore as he durst with the ship, and then sent another boat, with ten hands in her, to assist us; but we called to them not to come too near, telling them what condition we were in: however, they stood in nearer to us; and one of the men, taking the end of a tow-line in his hand, and keeping our boat between him and the enemy, so that they could not perfectly see him, swam on board us, and made the line fast to the boat; upon which we slipped our little cable, and, leaving our anchor behind, they towed us out of the reach of the arrows, we all the while lying close behind the barricado we had made.

As soon as we were got from between the ship and the shore, that she could lay her side to the shore, we ran along just by them, and we poured in a broad-side among them, loaded with pieces of iron and lead, small bullets, and such stuff, besides the great shot, which made a terrible havock among them.

When we were got on board, and out of danger, we had time to examine into the occasion of this fray; and, indeed, our supercargo, who had been often in those parts, put me upon it; for he said, he was sure the inhabitants would not have touched us, after we had made a truce, if we had not done something to provoke them to it. At length it came out, viz. that an old woman, who had come to sell us some milk, had brought it within our poles, with a young woman with her, who also brought some roots or herbs; and while the old woman (whether she was mother to the young woman or no they could not tell) was selling us the milk, one of our men offered some rudeness to the wench that was with her; at which the old woman made a great

great noise. However, the seaman would not quit his prize, but carried her out of the old woman's sight among the trees, it being almost dark. The old woman went away without her, and, as we suppose, made an outcry among the people she came from; who, upon notice, raised this great army upon us in three or four hours; and it was great odds but we had been all destroyed.

One of our men was killed with a lance that was thrown at him, just at the beginning of the attack, as he sallied out of the tent we had made; the rest came off free, all but the fellow who was the occasion of all the mischief; who paid dear enough for his black mistress, for we could not hear what became of him a great while. We lay upon the shore two days after, though the wind presented, and made signals for him; made our boat sail up shore and down shore several leagues, but in vain; so we were obliged to give him over; and if he alone had suffered for it, the loss had been the less.

I could not satisfy myself, however, without venturing on shore once more, to try if I could learn any thing of him or them. It was the third night after the action, that I had a great mind to learn, if I could by any means, what mischief we had done, and how the game stood on the Indian side. I was careful to do it in the dark, lest we should be attacked again; but I ought, indeed, to have been sure, that the men I went with had been under my command, before I engaged in a thing so hazardous and mischievous, as I was brought into it without my knowledge or desire.

We took twenty stout fellows with us as any in the ship, besides the supercargo and myself; and we landed two hours before midnight, at the same place where the Indians stood drawn up the evening before. I landed here, because my design, as I have said, was chiefly to see if they had quitted the field, and if they had left any marks behind them, or of the mischief we had done them; and I thought, if we could surprize one or two of them, perhaps we might get our man again by way of exchange.

We landed without any noise, and divided our men into two companies,

whereof the boatswain commanded one, and I the other. We neither could hear nor see any body stir when we landed; so we marched up, one body at a distance from the other, to the field of battle. At first we could see nothing, it being very dark; but by and by our boatswain, that led the first party, stumbled and fell over a dead body: this made them halt there awhile; for knowing, by the circumstances, that they were at the place where the Indians had stood, they waited for my coming up. Here we concluded to halt till the moon began to rise, which we knew would be in less than an hour; and then we could easily discern the havock we had made among them. We told two and thirty bodies upon the ground, whereof two were not quite dead; some had an arm, and some a leg, shot off, and one his head: those that were wounded, we supposed they had carried away.

When we had made, as I thought, a full discovery of all we could come at the knowledge of, I was for going on board again; but the boatswain and his party sent me word, that they were resolved to make a visit to the Indian town, where these dogs, as they called them, dwelled, and desired me to go along with them; and if they could find them, as they still fancied they should, they did not doubt, they said, getting a good booty; and it might be, they might find Thomas Jeffries there: that was the man's name we had lost.

Had they sent to ask my leave to go; I knew well enough what answer to have given them; for I would have commanded them instantly on board, knowing it was not a hazard fit for us to run, who had a ship and a ship's loading in our charge, and a voyage to make, which depended very much upon the lives of the men: but as they sent me word they were resolved to go, and only asked me and my company to go along with them, I positively refused it, and rose up (for I was sitting on the ground) in order to go to the boat. One or two of the men began to importune me to go; and, when I still refused positively, began to grumble, and say they were not under my command, and they would go. 'Come, Jack,' says one of the men, 'will you go with me? I will go for one.'

“one.” Jack said he would; and another followed, and then another: and, in a word, they all left me but one, whom, with much difficulty, too, I persuaded to stay. So the supercargo and I, with one man, went back to the boat, where, I told them, we would stay for them; and take care to take in as many of them as should be left; for I told them, it was a mad thing they were going about, and supposed most of them would run the fate of Thomas Jeffries.

They told me, like seamen, they would warrant it they would come off again; and they would take care, &c. So away they went. I intreated them to consider the ship and the voyage; that their lives were not their own, and that they were intrusted with the voyage in some measure; that if they miscarried, the ship might be lost for want of their help; and that they could not answer it to God and man. I said a great deal more to them on that head, but I might as well have talked to the main-mast of the ship: they were mad upon their journey; only they gave me good words, and begged I would not be angry; said they would be very cautious, and they did not doubt but they would be back again in about an hour at farthest; for the Indian town, they said, was not above half a mile off: though they found it above two miles before they got to it.

Well, they all went away, as above; and though the attempt was desperate, and such as none but madmen would have gone about, yet, to give them their due, they went about it warily as well as boldly. They were gallantly armed, that is true; for they had every man a fusil or musquet, a bayonet, and every man a pistol; some of them had broad cutlasses, some of them hangers, and the boatswain and two more had pole-axes: besides all which they had among them thirteen hand-grenadoes. Bolder fellows, and better provided, never went about any wicked work in the world.

When they went out, their chief design was plunder; and they were in mighty hopes of finding gold there; but a circumstance which none of them was aware of, set them on fire with revenge, and made devils of them all. When they came to the few Indian houses, which they thought had been

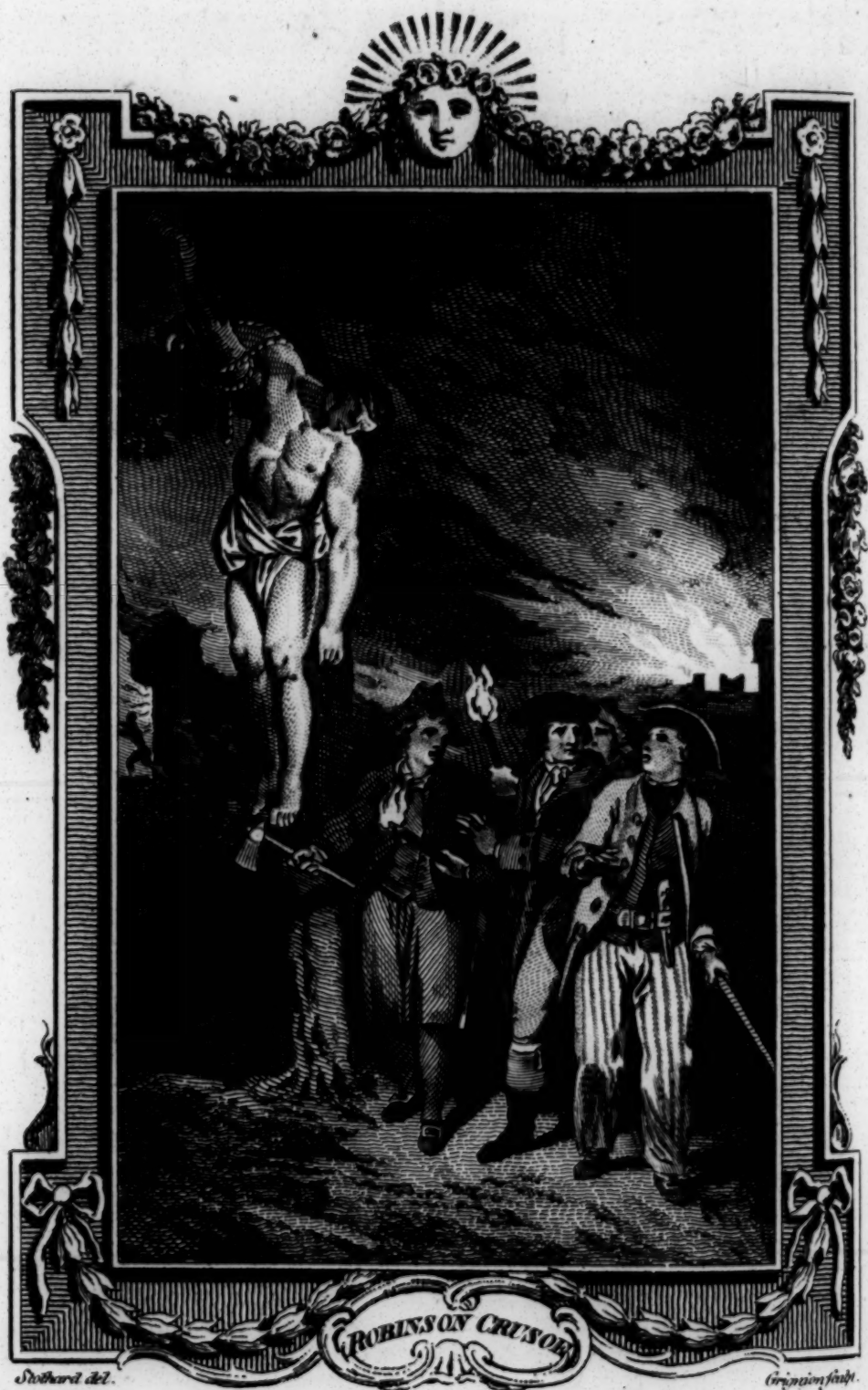
the town, which were not above half a mile off, they were under a great disappointment; for there were not above twelve or thirteen houses; and where the town was, or how big, they knew not: they consulted therefore what to do, and were some time before they could resolve; for if they fell upon these, they must cut all their throats; and it was ten to one but some of them might escape, it being in the night, though the moon was up; and if one escaped, he would run away and raise all the town, so they should have a whole army upon them. Again, on the other hand, if they went away, and left those untouched (for the people were all asleep) they could not tell which way to look for the town.

However the last was the best advice; so they resolved to leave those houses, and look for the town as well as they could. They went on a little way, and found a cow tied to a tree. This they presently concluded would be a good guide to them; for they said the cow certainly belonged to the town before them, or the town behind them; and if they untied her, they should see which way she went: if she went back, they had nothing to say to her; but, if she went forward, they had nothing to do but to follow her. So they cut the cord, which was made of twisted flags, and the cow went on before them. In a word, the cow led them directly to the town, which, as they reported, consisted of above two hundred houses or huts; and in some of these they found several families living together.

Here they found all silent; as profoundly secure as sleep and a country that had never seen an enemy of that kind could make them. Upon this they called another council, to consider what they had to do; and, in a word, they resolved to divide themselves into three bodies, and to set three houses on fire in three parts of the town, and as the men came out, to seize them and bind them, if any resisted; they need not be asked what to do then; and so search the rest of the houses for plunder; but resolved to march silently first through the town, and see what dimensions it was of, and consider if they might venture upon it or no.

They did so, and desperately resolved that they would venture upon them.





them. But while they were animating one another to the work, three of them, that were a little before the rest, called out aloud, and told them they had found Thomas Jeffries. They all ran up to the place, and so it was indeed; for there they found the poor fellow hanged up naked by one arm, and his throat cut. There was an Indian house just by the tree, where they found sixteen or seventeen of the principal Indians, who had been concerned in the fray with us before, and two or three of them wounded with our shot; and our men found they were awake, and talking one to another in that house, but knew not their number.

The sight of their poor mangled comrade so enraged them, as before, that they swore to one another they would be revenged, and that not an Indian who came into their hands should have quarter: and to work they went immediately; and yet not so madly as, by the rage and fury they were in, might be expected. Their first care was to get something that would soon take fire; but after a little search, they found that would be to no purpose, for most of the houses were low, and thatched with flags or rushes, of which the country was full; so they presently made some wildfire, as they call it, by wetting a little powder in the palms of their hands; and, in a quarter of an hour, they set the town on fire in four or five places, and particularly that house where the Indians were not gone to bed. As soon as the fire began to blaze, the poor frightened creatures began to rush out to save their lives; but met with their fate in the attempt, and especially at the door, where they drove them back, the boatswain himself killing one or two with his pole-ax. The house being large, and many in it, he did not care to go in, but called for a hand-grenado, and threw it among them, which, at first, frightened them; but when it burst, made such havock among them, that they cried out in a hideous manner.

In short, most of the Indians who were in the open part of the house were killed or hurt with the grenado, except two or three more, who pressed to the door, which the boatswain and two more kept with the bayonets in the muzzles of their pieces, and dis-

patched all who came that way. But there was another apartment in the house, where the prince or king, or whatsoever he was, and several others were; and they kept in, till the house, which was by this time all of a light flame, fell in upon them, and they were smothered or burnt together.

All this while they fired not a gun, because they would not waken the people faster than they could master them; but the fire began to waken them fast enough, and our fellows were glad to keep a little together in bodies; for the fire grew so raging, all the houses being made of light combustible stuff, that they could hardly bear the street between them; and their business was to follow the fire for the surer execution. As fast as the fire either forced the people out of those houses which were burning, or frightened them out of others, our people were ready at their doors to knock them on the head, still calling and hallooing to one another to remember Thomas Jeffries.

While this was doing, I must confess I was very uneasy, and especially, when I saw the flames of the town, which, it being night, seemed to be just by me.

My nephew, the captain, who was roused by his men too, seeing such a fire, was very uneasy, not knowing what the matter was, or what danger I was in; especially hearing the guns too; for by this time they began to use their fire-arms. A thousand thoughts oppressed his mind concerning me and the supercargo, what should become of us. And at last, though he could ill spare any more men, yet, not knowing what exigence we might be in, he takes another boat, and with thirteen men and himself comes on shore to me.

He was surprized to see me and the supercargo in the boat, with no more than two men, for one had been left to keep the boat: and though he was glad that we were well, yet he was in the same impatience with us, to know what was doing; for the noise continued, and the flame increased. I confess, it was next to an impossibility for any men in the world to restrain their curiosity of knowing what had happened, or their concern for the safety of the men. In a word, the captain told

told me, he would go and help his men, let what would come. I argued with him, as I did before with the men, the safety of the ship, and the danger of the voyage, the interest of the owners and merchants, &c. and told him, I would go, and the two men, and only see if we could, at a distance, learn what was like to be the event, and come back and tell him.

It was all one to talk to my nephew, as it was to talk to the rest before; he would go, he said, and he only wished he had left but ten men in the ship; for he could not think of having his men lost for want of help. He had rather, he said, lose the ship, the voyage, and his life, and all. And so away went he.

Nor was I any more able to stay behind now, than I was to persuade them not to go before; so, in short, the captain ordered two men to row back the pinnace, and fetch twelve men more from the ship, leaving the long-boat at an anchor; and that when they came back, six men should keep the two boats, and six more come after us. So that he left only sixteen men in the ship; for the whole ship's company consisted of sixty-five men, whereof two were lost in the first quarrel, which brought this mischief on.

Being now on the march, you may be sure we felt little of the ground we trod on; and being guided by the fire, we kept no path, but went directly to the place of the flame. If the noise of the guns were surprizing to us before, the cries of the poor people were now quite of another nature, and filled us with horror. I must confess, I never was at the sacking of a city, or at the taking of a town by storm. I have heard of Oliver Cromwell taking Drogheda in Ireland, and killing man, woman, and child; and I had read of Count Tilly sacking of the city of Magdeburg, and cutting the throats of twenty-two thousand of both sexes; but I never had an idea of the thing itself before; nor is it possible to describe it, or the horror which was upon our minds at hearing it.

However, we went on, and at length, came to the town, though there was no entering the streets of it for the fire. The first object we met with was the ruins of a hut or house,

or rather the ashes of it, for the house was consumed; and just before it, plain now to be seen by the light of the fire, lay four men and three women killed, and, as we thought, one or two more lay in the heap among the fire. In short, these were such instances of rage altogether barbarous, and of a fury something beyond what was human, that we thought it impossible our men could be guilty of it; or, if they were the authors of it, we thought that every one of them ought to be put to the worst of deaths. But this was not all; we saw the fire increased forward, and the cry went on just as the fire went on, so that we were in the utmost confusion. We advanced a little way farther, and beheld, to our astonishment, three women naked, crying in a most dreadful manner, and flying as if they had indeed had wings, and after them sixteen or seventeen men, natives, in the same terror and consternation, with three of our English butchers (for I can call them no better) in the rear; who, when they could not overtake them, fired in among them, and one that was killed by the shot fell down in our sight: when the rest saw us, believing us to be their enemies, and that we would murder them, as well as those that pursued them, they set up a most dreadful shriek, especially the women; and two of them fell down as if already dead with the fright.

My very soul shrunk within me, and my blood ran chill in my veins when I saw this; and I believe, had the three English sailors that pursued them come on, I had made our men kill them all. However, we took some ways to let the poor flying creatures know that we would not hurt them; and immediately they came up to us, and kneeling down, with their hands lifted up, made piteous lamentations to us to save them, which we let them know we would do; whereupon they kept all together in a huddle, close behind us, for protection. I left my men drawn up together, and charged them to hurt nobody, but, if possible, to get at some of our people, and see what devil it was possessed them, and what they intended to do; and, in a word, to command them off; assuring them, that if they stayed till day-light, they would have a hundred thousand

thousand men about their ears. I say, I left them, and went among those flying people, taking only two of our men with me; and there was, indeed, a piteous spectacle among them. Some of them had their feet terribly burnt with trampling and running through the fire; others their hands burnt: one of the women had fallen down in the fire, and was almost burnt to death before she could get out again; two or three of the men had cuts in their backs and thighs, from our men pursuing; and another was shot through the body, and died while I was there.

I would fain have learned what the occasion of all this was, but I could not understand one word they said; though by signs I perceived, that some of them knew not what was the occasion themselves. I was so terrified in my thoughts at this outrageous attempt, that I could not stay there, but went back to my own men. I told them my resolution, and commanded them to follow me; when in the very moment came four of our men, with the boatswain at their head, running over the heaps of bodies they had killed, all covered with blood and dust, as if they wanted more people to massacre; when our men hallooed to them as loud as they could halloo, and with much ado one of them made them hear; so that they knew who we were, and came up to us.

As soon as the boatswain saw us, he set up a halloo like a shout of triumph, for having, as he thought, more help come; and, without bearing to hear me, 'Captain,' says he, 'noble captain, I am glad you are come; we have not half done yet. Villains! hell-hound dogs! I will kill as many of them as poor Tom has hairs upon his head. We have sworn to spare none of them; we will root out the very nation of them from the earth.' And thus he ran on, out of breath too with action; and would not give us leave to speak a word.

At last, raising my voice, that I might silence him a little: 'Barbarous dog!' said I, 'what are you doing? I won't have one creature touched more, upon pain of death. I charge you, upon your life, to stop your hands, and stand still here, or you are a dead man this minute!'

'Why, Sir,' says he, 'do you know what you do, or what they have done? If you want a reason for what we have done, come hither.' And with that he shewed me the poor fellow hanging upon a tree, with his throat cut.

I confess, I was urged then myself, and at another time should have been forward enough; but I thought they had carried their rage too far, and thought of Jacob's words to his sons Simeon and Levi, 'Curfed be their anger, for it was fierce; and their wrath, for it was cruel.' But I had now a new task upon my hands; for when the men I carried with me saw the sight, as I had done, I had as much to do to restrain them, as I should have had with the others; nay, my nephew himself fell in with them, and told me, in their hearing, that he was only concerned for fear of their men being overpowered; for, as to the people, he thought not one of them ought to live; for they had all glutted themselves with the murder of the poor man, and that they ought to be used like murderers. Upon these words, away ran eight of my men, with the boatswain and his crew, to compleat their bloody work. And I, seeing it quite out of my power to restrain them, came away pensive and sad; for I could not bear the sight, much less the horrible noise and cries of the poor wretches that fell into their hands.

I got nobody to come back with me but the supercargo and two men, and with these I walked back to the boats. It was a very great piece of folly in me, I confess, to venture back as it were alone; for, as it began now to be almost day, and the alarm had run over the country, there stood about forty men armed with lances and bows at the little place where the twelve or thirteen houses stood, mentioned before; but by accident I missed the place, and came directly to the sea-side; and by that time I got to the sea-side, it was broad day. I immediately took the pinnace, and went on board, and sent her back to assist the men in what might happen.

I observed, that about the time I came to the boat-side the fire was pretty well out, and the noise abated; but in about half an hour after I got on board, I heard a volley of our

H h men's

men's fire-arms, and saw a great smoke. This, as I understood afterwards, was our men falling upon the forty men, who, as I said, stood at the few houses in the way; of whom they killed sixteen or seventeen, and set all those houses on fire, but did not meddle with the women or children.

By that time the men got to the shore again with the pinnace, our men began to appear; they came dropping in, some and some; not in two bodies, and in form, as they went out, but all in heaps, straggling here and there, in such a manner, that a small force of resolute men might have cut them all off.

But the dread of them was upon the whole country. The people were amazed and surprized, and so frightened, that I believe a hundred of them would have fled at the sight of but five of our men. Nor in all this terrible action was there a man who made any considerable defence: they were so surprized between the terror of the fire, and the sudden attack of our men in the dark, that they knew not which way to turn themselves; for if they fled one way, they were met by one party; if back again by another; so that they were every where knocked down. Nor did any of our men receive the least hurt, except one who strained his foot, and another had one of his hands very much burnt.

I was very angry with my nephew, the captain, and indeed with all the men, in my mind, but with him in particular; as well for his acting so out of his duty, as commander of the ship, and having the charge of the voyage upon him, as in his prompting, rather than cooling, the rage of his men in so bloody and cruel an enterprise. My nephew answered me very respectfully; but told me, that when he saw the body of the poor seaman, whom they had murdered in such a cruel and barbarous manner, he was not master of himself, neither could he govern his passion. He owned he should not have done so, as he was commander of the ship; but, as he was a man, and nature moved him, he could not bear it. As for the rest of the men, they were not subject to me at all, and they knew it well

enough, so they took no notice of my dislike.

The next day we set sail; so we never heard any more of it. Our men differed in the account of the number they killed; some said one thing, some another; but, according to the best of their accounts, put all together, they killed or destroyed about a hundred and fifty people, men, women and children, and left not a house standing in the town.

As for the poor fellow, Thomas Jeffries, as he was quite dead, for his throat was so cut that his head was half off, it would do him no service to bring him away; so they left him where they found him, only took him down from the tree where he was hanged by one hand.

However just our men thought this action to be, I was against them in it; and I always, after that time, told them God would blast the voyage; for I looked upon the blood they shed that night to be murder in them: for though it is true that they killed Thomas Jeffries, yet it was as true that Jeffries was the aggressor, had broken the truce, and had violated or debauched a young woman of theirs, who came to our camp innocently, and on the faith of their capitulation.

The boatswain defended this quarrel when we were afterwards on board. He said, it was true, that we seemed to break the truce, but really had not; and that the war was begun the night before by the natives themselves, who had shot at us, and killed one of our men without any just provocation; so that, as we were in a capacity to fight them, we might also be in a capacity to do ourselves justice upon them in an extraordinary manner; that though the poor man had taken liberty with a wench, he ought not to have been murdered, and that in such a villainous manner; and that they did nothing but what was just, and that the laws of God allowed to be done to murderers.

One would think this should have been enough to have warned us against going on shore among heathens and barbarians; but it is impossible to make mankind wise but at their own experience, and their experience seems to be always of most use to them when it is dearest bought.

We

We were now bound to the Gulph of Persia, and from thence to the coast of Coromandel, only to touch at Surat; but the chief of the supercargo's design lay at the Bay of Bengal, where, if he missed of the business outward-bound, he was to go up to China, and return to the Coast as he came home.

The first disaster that befel us was in the Gulph of Persia, where five of our men, venturing on shore on the Arabian side of the Gulph, were surrounded by the Arabs, and either all killed, or carried away into slavery. The rest of the boat's crew were not able to rescue them, and had but just time to get off their boat. I began to upbraid them with the just retribution of Heaven in this case; but the boatswain very warmly told me, he thought I went farther in my censures than I could shew any warrant for in Scripture, and referred to the 13th of St. Luke, ver. 4. where our Saviour intimates, that those men on whom the Tower of Siloam fell, were not sinners above all the Galileans. But that which indeed put me to silence in this case was, that none of these five men who were now lost, were of the number of those who went on shore to the massacre of Madagascar, (so I always called it, though our men could not bear the word massacre with any patience;) and, indeed, this last circumstance, as I have said, put me to silence for the present.

But my frequent preaching to them on this subject had worse consequences than I expected; and the boatswain, who had been at the head of the attempt, came up boldly to me one time, and told me, he found that I continually brought that affair upon the stage; that I made unjust reflections upon it, and had used the men very ill on that account, and himself in particular; that as I was but a passenger, and had no command in the ship, or concern in the voyage, they were not obliged to bear it; that they did not know but I might have some ill design in my head, and, perhaps, call them to an account for it when they came to England; and that therefore, unless I would resolve to have done with it, and also not to concern myself farther with him, or any of his affairs, he would leave the ship; for he did not think it was safe to sail with me among them.

I heard him patiently enough till he had done, and then told him, that I did confess I had all along opposed the massacre of Madagascar, for such I would always call it; and that I had on all occasions spoken my mind freely about it, though not more upon him than any of the rest: that as to my having no command in the ship, that was true, nor did I exercise any authority, only took the liberty of speaking my mind in things which publicly concerned us all. As to what concern I had in the voyage, that was none of his business; I was a considerable owner of the ship, and in that claim I conceived I had a right to speak, even farther than I had yet done, and would not be accountable to him or any one else; and began to be a little warm with him. He made but little reply to me at that time, and I thought the affair had been over. We were at this time in the road to Bengal; and, being willing to see the place, I went on shore with the supercargo, in the ship's boat, to divert myself; and towards evening was preparing to go on board, when one of the men came to me, and told me, he would not have me trouble myself to come down to the boat, for they had orders not to carry me on board. Any one may guess what a surprize I was in at so insolent a message; and I asked the man, who bade him deliver that errand to me. He told me the cockswain. I said no more to the fellow, but bid him let them know he had delivered his message, and that I had given him no answer to it.

I immediately went, and found out the supercargo, and told him the story, adding, what I presently foresaw, viz. that there would certainly be a mutiny in the ship; and intreated him to go immediately on board the ship in an Indian boat, and acquaint the captain of it. But I might have spared this intelligence; for, before I had spoken to him on shore, the matter was effected on board. The boatswain, the gunner, the carpenter, and in a word, all the inferior officers, as soon as I was gone off in the boat, came up to the quarter-deck, and desired to speak with the captain; and there the boatswain, making a long harangue, (for the fellow talked very well) and repeating all he had said to me, told the cap-

tain in a few words, that as I was now gone peaceably on shore, they were loth to use any violence with me; which, if I had not gone on shore, they would otherwise have done, to oblige me to have gone. They therefore thought fit to tell him, that as they shipped themselves to serve in the ship under his command, they would perform it faithfully; but if I would not quit the ship, or the captain oblige me to quit it, they would all leave the ship, and sail no farther with him. And at that word ALL, he turned his face about towards the main-mast, which was, it seems, the signal agreed on between them; at which all the seamen being got together, they cried out, 'One and all! one and all!'

My nephew, the captain, was a man of spirit, and of great presence of mind; and though he was surprized, you may be sure, at the thing, yet he told them calmly, he would consider of the matter; but that he could do nothing in it till he had spoken to me about it. He used some arguments with them, to shew them the unreasonableness and injustice of the thing; but it was all in vain: they swore, and shook hands round, before his face, that they would go all on shore, unless he would engage to them, not to suffer me to come on board the ship.

This was a hard article upon him, who knew his obligation to me, and did not know how I might take it. So he began to talk cavalierly to them: told them, that I was a very considerable owner of the ship, and that in justice he could not put me out of my own house; that this was next door to serving me as the famous pirate Kid had done, who made the mutiny in the ship, set the captain on shore in an uninhabited island, and ran away with the ship; that, let them go into what ship they would, if ever they came to England again, it would cost them dear; that the ship was mine, and that he would not put me out of it; and that he would rather lose the ship, and the voyage too, than disoblige me so much: so they might do as they pleased. However, he would go on shore, and talk with me there; and invited the boatswain to go with him, and perhaps they might accommodate the matter with me.

But they all rejected the proposal; and said, they would have nothing to do with me any more, neither on board nor on shore; and if I came on board, they would go on shore. 'Well,' said the captain, 'if you are all of this mind, let me go on shore and talk with him.' So away he came to me with this account, a little after the message had been brought to me from the cockswain.

I was very glad to see my nephew, I must confess; for I was not without apprehensions that they would confine him by violence, set sail, and run away with the ship; and then I had been stripped naked in a remote country, and nothing to help myself: in short, I had been in a worse case than when I was all alone in the island.

But they had not come to that length, it seems, to my great satisfaction. And when my nephew told me what they had said to him, and how they had sworn, and shook hands, that they would one and all leave the ship if I was suffered to come on board, I told him he should not be concerned at it at all, for I would stay on shore. I only desired he would take care and send me all my necessary things on shore, and leave me a sufficient sum of money, and I would find my way to England as well as I could.

This was a heavy piece of news to my nephew; but there was no way to help it, but to comply with it. So in short he went on board the ship again, and satisfied the men that his uncle had yielded to their importunity, and had sent for his goods from on board the ship. So the matter was over in a very few hours; the men returned to their duty, and I begun to consider what course I should steer.

I was now alone in the remotest part of the world, as I think I may call it; for I was near three thousand leagues by sea farther off from England than I was at my island; only, it is true, I might travel here by land over the Great Mogul's country to Surat; might go from thence to Bassora by sea, up the Gulph of Persia; and from thence might take the way of the caravans, over the Desarts of Arabia, to Aleppo and Scanderoon; from thence by sea again to Italy, and so over land into France; and this, put together, might
bc,

be, at least, a full diameter of the globe; but, if it were to be measured, I suppose it would appear to be a great deal more.

I had another way before me, which was to wait for some English ships, which were coming to Bengal, from Achin, on the island of Sumatra, and get passage on board them for England. But as I came hither without any concern with the English East-India company, so it would be difficult to go from hence without their licence, unless with great favour of the captains of the ships, or of the company's factors; and to both I was an utter stranger.

Here I had the particular pleasure, speaking by contrarieties, to see the ship set sail without me; a treatment, I think, a man in my circumstances scarce ever met with, except from pirates running away with a ship, and setting those that would not agree with their villainy on shore: indeed, this was the next door to it both ways. However, my nephew left me two servants, or rather one companion and one servant: the first was clerk to the purser, whom he engaged to go with me; and the other was his own servant. I took me also a good lodging in the house of an English woman, where several merchants lodged, some French, two Italians, or rather Jews, and one Englishman. Here I was handsomely enough entertained; and, that I might not be said to run rashly upon any thing, I stayed here above nine months, considering what course to take, and how to manage myself. I had some English goods with me of value, and a considerable sum of money; my nephew furnishing me with a thousand pieces of eight, and a letter of credit for more, if I had occasion, that I might not be straitened, whatever might happen.

I quickly disposed of my goods, and to advantage too; and, as I originally intended, I bought here some very good diamonds, which, of all other things, were the most proper for me in my circumstances, because I might always carry my whole estate about me.

After a long stay here, and many proposals made for my return to England, but none falling to my mind, the English merchant, who lodged with me, and with whom I had contracted an intimate acquaintance, came

to me one morning. 'Countryman,' says he, 'I have a project to communicate to you, which, as it suits with my thoughts, may, for aught I know, suit with yours also, when we shall have thoroughly considered it.'

'Here we are posted,' say he; 'you by accident, and I by my own choice, in a part of the world very remote from our own country; but it is in a country where, by us who understand trade and business, a great deal of money is to be got. If you will put a thousand pounds to my thousand pounds, we will hire a ship here, the first we can get to our minds; you shall be captain, I'll be merchant, and we will go a trading voyage to China; for what should we stand still for? The whole world is in motion, rolling round and round; all the creatures of God, heavenly bodies and earthly, are busy and diligent: why should we be idle? There are no drones,' says he, 'living in the world but men: why should we be of that number?'

I liked this proposal very well, and the more, because it seemed to be expressed with so much good will, and in so friendly a manner. I will not say but that I might, by my loose and unhinged circumstances, be the fitter to embrace a proposal for trade, and indeed for any thing else; or otherwise trade was none of my element: however, I might perhaps say, with some truth, that if trade was not my element, rambling was; and no proposal for seeing any part of the world which I had never seen before could possibly come amiss to me.

It was, however, some time before we could get a ship to our mind; and when we got a vessel, it was not easy to get English sailors; that is to say, so many as were necessary to govern the voyage, and manage the sailors which we should pick up there. After some time we got a mate, a boatswain, and a gunner, English; a Dutch carpenter, and three Portuguese foremast men. With these we found we could do well enough, having Indian seamen, such as they are, to make up.

There are so many travellers who have written the history of their voyages and travels this way, that it would be but very little diversion to any body, to give a long account of the

the places we went to, and the people who inhabit there. Those things I leave to others, and refer the reader to those journals and travels of Englishmen, many of which I find are published, and more promised every day. It is enough for me to tell you, that we made the voyage to Achin, in the island of Sumatra, first; and from thence to Siam, where we exchanged some of our wares for opium, and for some arrack; the first, a commodity which bears a great price among the Chinese, and which, at that time, was very much wanted there. In a word, we went up to Susham, made a very great voyage, were eight months out, and returned to Bengal: and I was very well satisfied with my adventure. I observe, that our people in England often admire how the officers which the company send into India, and the merchants which generally stay there, get such very good estates as they do, and sometimes come home worth sixty to seventy, and a hundred thousand pounds at a time.

But it is no wonder: or, at, least we shall see so much farther into it, when we consider the innumerable ports and places where they have a free commerce, that it will then be no wonder; and much less will it be so, when we consider, that at all those places and ports where the English ships come, there is so much and such constant demand for the growth of all other countries, that there is a certain vent for the return, as well as a market abroad for the goods carried out.

In short, we made a very good voyage, and I got so much money by the first adventure, and such an insight into the method of getting more, that, had I been twenty years younger, I should have been tempted to have stayed here, and sought no farther for making my fortune. But what was all this to a man on the wrong side of threescore; that was rich enough, and came abroad more in obedience to a restless desire of seeing the world, than a covetous desire of getting in it? And, indeed, I think it is with great justice that I now call it a restless desire; for it was so. When I was at home, I was restless to go abroad; and now I was abroad, I was restless to be at home. I say, what was this gain to me? I was rich enough already;

nor had I any uneasy desires about getting more money; and therefore the profits of the voyage to me were things of no great force to me, for the prompting me forward to farther undertakings. Hence I thought, that by this voyage I had made no progress at all; because I was come back, as I might call it, to the place from whence I came, as to an home; whereas my eye, which, like that which Solomon speaks of, was never satisfied with seeing, was still more desirous of wandering and seeing. I was come into a part of the world which I never was in before; and that part in particular which I had heard much of, and was resolved to see as much of it as I could; and then, I thought, I might say, I had seen all the world that was worth seeing.

But my fellow-traveller and I had different notions. I do not name this to insist upon my own, for I acknowledge his was most just, and the most suited to the end of a merchant's life; who, when he is abroad upon adventures, it is his wisdom to stick to that as the best thing for him, which he is like to get the most money by. My new friend kept himself to the nature of the thing, and would have been content to have gone like a carrier's horse, always to the same inn, backward and forward, provided he could, as he called it, find his account in it. On the other hand, mine, as old as I was, was the notion of a mad rambling boy, that never cares to see a thing twice over.

But this was not all. I had a kind of impatience upon me to be nearer home, and yet the most unsettled resolution imaginable which way to go. In the interval of these consultations, my friend, who was always upon the search for business, proposed another voyage to me; viz. among the Spice Islands; and to bring home a load of cloves from the Manillas, or thereabouts; places where, indeed, the Dutch do trade, but the islands belong partly to the Spaniards: though we went not so far, but to some other, where they have not the whole power, as they have at Batavia, Ceylon, &c. We were not long in preparing for this voyage; the chief difficulty was, in bringing me to come into it: however, at last, nothing else offering, and finding

finding that really stirring about and trading, the profit being so great, and, as I may say, certain, had more pleasure in it, and more satisfaction to the mind than sitting still, which, to me especially, was the unhappiest part of life, I resolved on this voyage too; which we made very successfully, touching at Borneo, and several islands whose names I do not remember, and came home in about five months. We sold our spice, which was chiefly cloves, and some nutmegs, to the Persian merchants, who carried them away for the gulph; and, making near five of one, we really got a great deal of money.

My friend, when we made up this account, smiled at me. 'Well now,' said he, with a sort of an agreeable insult upon my indolent temper, 'is not this better than walking about here, like a man of nothing to do, and spending our time in staring at the nonsense and ignorance of the Pagans?'—'Why, truly,' said I, 'my friend, I think it is; and I begin to be a convert to the principles of merchandizing; but I must tell you,' said I, 'by the way, you do not know what I am a doing; for if once I conquer my backwardness, and embark heartily, as old as I am, I shall harraßs you up and down the world till I tire you; for I shall pursue it so eagerly, I shall never let you lie still.'

But to be short with my speculations, a little while after this there came in a Dutch ship from Batavia; she was a coaster, not an European trader, and of about two hundred tons burden. The men, as they pretended, having been so sickly, that the captain had not men enough to go to sea with, he lay by at Bengal; and, as if having got money enough, or being willing, for other reasons, to go for Europe, he gave publick notice that he would sell his ship. This came to my ears before my new partner heard of it; and I had a great mind to buy it: so I went home to him, and told him of it. He considers a while, for he was no rash man neither; but musing some time, he replied, 'She is a little too big; but, however, we will have her.' Accordingly, we bought the ship; and, agreeing with the master, we paid for her, and took possession. When we had done so, we

resolved to entertain the men, if we could, to join them with those we had, for the pursuing our business; but on a sudden, they having not received their wages, but their share of the money, as we afterwards learnt, not one of them was to be found. We enquired much about them, and at length were told, that they were all gone together by land, to Agra, the great city of the Mogul's residence; and from thence were to travel to Surat, and so by sea to the Gulph of Persia.

Nothing had so heartily troubled me a good while, as that I missed the opportunity of going with them; for such a ramble, I thought, and in such company as would both have guarded me and diverted me, would have suited mightily with my great design; and I should both have seen the world, and gone homewards too. But I was much better satisfied a few days after, when I came to know what sort of fellows they were; for, in short, their history was, that this man they called captain, was the gunner only, not the commander; that they had been a trading voyage, in which they were attacked on shore by some of the Melaccans, who had killed the captain and three of his men; and that after the captain was killed, these men, eleven in number, had resolved to run away with the ship, which they did, and had brought her in at the Bay of Bengal, leaving the mate and five men more on shore; of whom we shall hear farther.

Well; let them come by the ship how they would, we came honestly by her as we thought; though we did not, I confess, examine into things so exactly as we ought; for we never enquired any thing of the seamen, who, if we had examined, would certainly have faulted in their accounts, contradicted one another, and, perhaps, contradicted themselves; or, one how or other, we should have seen reason to have suspected them: but the man shewed us a bill of sale for the ship to one Emanuel Closterhoven, or some such name, (for I suppose it was all a forgery) and called himself by that name; and we could not contradict him; and, being withal a little too unwary, or at least having no suspicion of the thing, we went through with our bargain.

However, we picked up some English

glish seamen here after this, and some Dutch; and we now resolved for a second voyage to the south-east, for cloves, &c. that is to say, among the Philippine and Malacca isles; and, in short, not to fill this part of my story with trifles, when what is yet to come is so remarkable, I spent, from first to last, six years in this country, tracing from port to port, backward and forward, and with very good success; and was now the last year with my partner, going in the ship above-mentioned on a voyage to China; but designing first to Siam to buy rice.

In this voyage being, by contrary winds, obliged to beat up and down a great while in the Straits of Malacca, and among the islands, we were no sooner got clear of those difficult seas, but we found our ship had sprung a leak, and we were not able, by all our industry, to find out where it was. This forced us to make for some port; and my partner, who knew the country better than I did, directed the captain to put into the River of Cambodia; for I had made the English mate, one Mr. Thompson, captain, not being willing to take the charge of the ship upon myself. This river lies on the north-side of the great bay or gulph which goes up to Siam.

While we were here, and going often on shore for refreshment, there comes to me one day an Englishman, and he was, it seems, a gunner's mate on board an English East-India ship, which rode in the same river, up, at, or near the city of Cambodia. What brought him hither we knew not; but he comes up to me, and speaking English, 'Sir,' says he, 'you are a stranger to me, and I to you; but I have something to tell you that very nearly concerns you.'

I looked steadily at him a good while, and he thought at first I had known him, but I did not. 'If it very nearly concerns me,' said I, 'and not yourself, what moves you to tell it me?'—'I am moved,' says he, 'by the imminent danger you are in; and, for aught I see, you have no knowledge of it.'—'I know no danger I am in,' said I, 'but that my ship is leaky, and I cannot find it out; but I propose to lay her aground to-morrow, to see if I can find it.'—'But, Sir,' says he, 'leaky,

or not leaky, find it or not find it, you will be wiser than to lay your ship on shore to-morrow, when you hear what I have to say to you. Do you know, Sir,' said he, 'the town of Cambodia lies about fifteen leagues up this river? and there are two large English ships about five leagues on this side, and three Dutch.'—'Well,' said I, 'and what is that to me?'—'Why, Sir,' says he, 'is it for a man that is upon such adventures as you are, to come into a port and not examine first what ships there are there, and whether he is able to deal with them? I suppose you do not think you are a match for them.' I was amused very much at his discourse, but not amazed at it; for I could not conceive what he meant; and I turned short upon him, and said, 'Sir, I wish you would explain yourself; I cannot imagine what reason I have to be afraid of any of the company's ships, or Dutch ships; I am no interloper; what can they have to say to me?'

He looked like a man half angry, half pleased; and, pausing a while, but smiling, 'Well, Sir,' says he, 'if you think yourself secure, you must take your chance. I am sorry your fate should blind you against good advice; but assure yourself, if you do not put to sea immediately, you will the very next tide be attacked by five long-boats full of men; and perhaps, if you are taken, you will be hanged for a pirate, and the particulars be examined into afterwards. I thought, Sir,' added he, 'I should have met with a better reception than this for doing you a piece of service of such importance.'—'I can never be ungrateful,' said I, 'for any service, or to any man that offers me any kindness; but it is past my comprehension, what they should have such a design upon me for. However, since you say there is no time to be lost, and that there is some villainous design in hand against me, I will go on board this minute, and put to sea immediately, if my men can stop the leak, or if we can swim without stopping it. But, Sir,' said I, 'shall I go away ignorant of the reason of all this? Can you give me no farther light into it?'

'I can tell you but part of the story,

story, Sir,' says he; 'but I have a Dutch seaman here with me, and I believe I could persuade him to tell you the rest; but there is scarce time for it: but the short of the story is this, the first part of which I suppose you know well enough, viz. that you were with this ship at Sumatra; that there your captain was murdered by the Melaccans, with three of his men; and that you, or some of those that were on board with you, ran away with the ship, and are since turned pirates. This is the sum of the story, and you will all be seized as pirates, I can assure you, and executed with very little ceremony; for you know merchants ships shew but little law to pirates, if they get them in their power.'

'Now you speak plain English,' said I, 'and I thank you; and though I know nothing that we have done like what you talk of, but I am sure we came honestly and fairly by the ship, yet, seeing such work is a doing as you say, and that you seem to mean honestly, I will be upon my guard.'—'Nay, Sir,' said he, 'do not talk of being upon your guard; the best defence is to be out of the danger. If you have any regard to your life, and the lives of all your men, put out to sea without fail at high-water; and as you have a whole tide before you, you will be gone too far out before they can come down; for they will come away at high water; and as they have twenty miles to come, you get near two hours of them by the difference of the tide, not reckoning the length of the way: besides, as they are only boats, and not ships, they will not venture to follow you far out to sea, especially if it blows.'

'Well,' said I, 'you have been very kind in this: what shall I do for you to make you amends?'—'Sir,' says he, 'you may not be so willing to make me amends, because you may not be convinced of the truth of it: I will make an offer to you. I have nineteen months pay due to me on board the ship —, which I came out of England in; and the Dutchman that is with me has seven months pay due to him; if you will make good our pay to

us, we will go along with you; if you find nothing more in it, we will desire no more; but if we do convince you, that we have saved your life, and the ship, and the lives of all the men in her, we will leave the rest to you.'

I consented to this readily; and went immediately on board, and the two men with me. As soon as I came to the ship-side, my partner, who was on board, came out on the quarter-deck, and called to me with a great deal of joy, 'O ho! O ho! we have stopped the leak! we have stopped the leak!'—'Say you so,' said I; 'thank God! but weigh the anchor then immediately.'—'Weigh!' says he: 'what do you mean by that?' 'What is the matter?'—'Ask no questions,' said I, 'but all hands to work, and weigh without losing a minute.' He was surprized; but, however, he called the captain, and he immediately ordered the anchor to be got up; and though the tide was not quite done, yet a little land breeze blowing, we stood out to sea. Then I called him into the cabin, and told him the story at large; and we called in the men, and they told us the rest of it; but as it took us up a great deal of time, so before we had done, a seaman comes to the cabin-door, and calls out to us, that the captain bade him tell us we were chased. 'Chased,' said I, 'by whom and by what?'—'By five sloops, or boats,' said the fellow, 'full of men.'—'Very well,' said I; 'then it is apparent there is something in it.' In the next place I ordered all our men to be called up; and told them, that there was a design to seize the ship, and to take us for pirates; and asked them, if they would stand by us and by one another. The men answered chearfully, that, one and all, they would live and die with us. Then I asked the captain, what way he thought best for us to manage a fight with them: for resist them I resolved we would, and that to the last drop. He said, readily, that the way was to keep them off with our great shot as long as we could, and then to fire at them with our small arms, to keep them from boarding us; but when neither of these would do any longer, we should retire to our

I i close

close quarters : perhaps they had not materials to break open our bulk-heads, or get in upon us.

The gunner had in the mean time orders to bring two guns to bear fore and aft out of the steerage, to clear the deck, and load them with musquet-bullets and small pieces of old iron, and what next came to hand: and thus we made ready for fight; but all this while kept out to sea with wind enough, and could see the boats at a distance, being five large long-boats following us with all the sail they could make.

Two of these boats, which, by our glasses we could see were English, had out-failed the rest, were near two leagues a-head of them, and gained upon us considerably; so that we found they would come up with us: upon which we fired a gun without a shot, to intimate that they should bring to; and we put out a flag of truce, as a signal for parley; but they kept crouding after us till they came within shot. Upon this we took in our white flag, they having made no answer to it, hung out the red flag, and fired at them with shot. Notwithstanding this, they came on till they were near enough for us to call to them with a speaking trumpet, which we had on board; so we called to them, and bade them keep off at their peril.

It was all one, they crouded after us, and endeavoured to come under our stern, so to board us in our quarter. Upon which, seeing they were resolute for mischief, and depending upon the strength that followed them, I ordered to bring the ship to, so that they lay upon our broadside, when immediately we fired five guns at them; one of which had been levelled so true as to carry away the stern of the hindermost boat, and bring them to the necessity of taking down their sail, and running all to the head of the boat to keep her from sinking; so she lay by and had enough of it; but seeing the foremost boat still croud on after us, we made ready to fire at her in particular.

While this was doing, one of the three boats that was behind, being forwarder than the other two, made up to the boat which we had disabled, to relieve her, and we could afterwards see her take out the men. We called again to the foremost boat, and offered a truce to parley again, and to know

what was her business with us; but had no answer; only she crouded close under our stern. Upon this our gunner, who was a very dexterous fellow, run out his two chase guns, and fired at her; but the shot missing, the men in the boat shouted, waved their caps, and came on; but the gunner getting quickly ready again, fired among them a second time; one shot of which, though it missed the boat itself, yet fell in among the men, and we could easily see had done a great deal of mischief among them; but we, taking no notice of that, weared the ship again, and brought our quarter to bear upon them, and firing three guns more, we found the boat was split almost to pieces; in particular, her rudder and a piece of her stern was shot quite away; so they handed their sail immediately, and were in great disorder; but to compleat their misfortune, our gunner let fly two guns at them again: where he hit them we could not tell, but we found the boat was sinking, and some of the men already in the water. Upon this I immediately manned out our pinnace, which we had kept close by our side, with orders to pick up some of the men, if they could, and save them from drowning, and immediately to come on board with them; because we saw the rest of the boats began to come up. Our men in the pinnace followed their orders, and took up three men; one of which was just drowning, and it was a good while before we could recover him. As soon as they were on board, we crouded all the sail we could make, and stood farther out to sea; and we found, that when the other three boats came up to the first two, they gave over their chase.

Being thus delivered from a danger, which, though I knew not the reason of it, yet seemed to be much greater than I apprehended, I took care that we would change our course, and not let any one imagine whither we were going. So we stood out to sea eastward, quite out of the course of all European ships, whether they were bound to China, or any where else within the commerce of the European nations.

When we were now at sea, we began to consult with the two seamen, and enquire first, what the meaning of all

all this should be. The Dutchman let us into the secret of it at once; telling us, that the fellow that sold us the ship, as we said, was no more than a thief that had run away with her. Then he told us how the captain, whose name too he mentioned, though I do not remember it now, was treacherously murdered by the natives on the coast of Malacca, with three of his men; and that he, this Dutchman, and four more, got into the woods, where they wandered about a great while; till at length he in particular, in a miraculous manner, made his escape, and swam off to a Dutch ship, which sailing near the shore, in it's way from China, had sent their boat on shore for fresh water; that he durst not come to that part of the shore where the boat was, but made shift in the night to take in the water farther off, and swimming a great while, at last the ship's boat took him up.

He then told us, that he went to Batavia, where two of the seamen belonging to the ship had arrived, having deserted the rest in their travels; and gave an account, that the fellow who had run away with the ship sold her at Bengal to a set of pirates, which were gone a cruising in her; and that they had already taken an English ship, and two Dutch ships, very richly laden.

This latter part we found to concern us directly, and though we knew it to be false, yet, as my partner said very well, if we had fallen into their hands, and they had had such a prepossession against us beforehand, it had been in vain for us to have defended ourselves, or to hope for any good quarters at their hands; especially considering that our accusers had been our judges, and that we could have expected nothing from them but what rage would have dictated, and ungoverned passion have executed. And therefore it was his opinion, that we should go directly back to Bengal, from whence we came, without putting in at any port whatever; because there we could give an account of ourselves, and could prove where we were when the ship put in, whom we bought her of, and the like; and, which was more than all the rest, if we were put to the necessity of bringing it before the proper judges, we should be sure to have some justice,

and not be hanged first and judged afterwards.

I was some time of my partner's opinion; but after a little more serious thinking, I told him, I thought it was a very great hazard for us to attempt returning to Bengal, for that we were on the wrong side of the Straits of Malacca; and that if the alarm was given, we should be sure to be way-laid on every side, as well by the Dutch of Batavia, as the English elsewhere; that if we should be taken, as it were running away, we should even condemn ourselves, and there would want no more evidence to destroy us. I also asked the English sailor's opinion, who said he was of my mind, and that we should certainly be taken.

This danger a little startled my partner, and all the ship's company; and we immediately resolved to go away to the coast of Tonquin, and so on to China; and from thence pursuing the first design as to trade, find some way or other to dispose of the ship, and come back in some of the vessels of the country, such as we could get. This was approved of as the best method for our security; and accordingly we steered away N. N. E. keeping above fifty leagues off from the usual course to the eastward.

This, however, put us to some inconveniences; for first, the winds, when we came to that distance from the shore, seemed to be more steadily against us, blowing almost Trade, as we call it, from the East and E. N. E. so that we were a long while upon our voyage; and we were but ill provided with victuals for so long a run; and, which was still worse, there was some danger that those English and Dutch ships, whose boats pursued us, whereof some were bound that way, might be got in before us; and if not, some other ship, bound to China, might have information of us from them, and pursue us with the same vigour.

I must confess, I was now very uneasy, and thought myself, including the late escape from the long-boats, to have been in the most dangerous condition that ever I was in through all my past life; for, whatever ill circumstances I had been in, I was never pursued for a thief before; nor had I ever done any thing that merited the name of

dishonest or fraudulent, much less thievish. I had chiefly been mine own enemy; or, as I may rightly say, I had been nobody's enemy but my own. But now I was embarrassed in the worst condition imaginable; for though I was perfectly innocent, I was in no condition to make that innocence appear. And if I had been taken, it had been under a supposed guilt of the worst kind; at least, a crime esteemed so among the people I had to do with.

This made me very anxious to make an escape, though which way to do it I knew not, or what port or place we should go to. My partner, seeing me thus dejected, though he was the most concerned at first, began to encourage me; and describing to me the several ports of that coast, told me, he would put in on the coast of Cochinchina, or the Bay of Tonquin; intending to go afterwards to Macao, a town once in the possession of the Portuguese, and where still a great many European families resided; and particularly the missionary priests usually went thither, in order to their going forward to China.

Hither then we resolved to go; and accordingly, though after a tedious and irregular course, and very much straitened for provisions, we came within sight of the coast very early in the morning; and, upon reflection upon the past circumstances we were in, and the danger, if we had not escaped, we resolved to put into a small river, which, however, had depth enough of water for us, and to see if we could, either over land or by the ship's pinnace, come to know what ships were in any port thereabouts. This happy step was indeed our deliverance; for though we did not immediately see any European ships in the Bay of Tonquin, yet, the next morning, there came into the Bay two Dutch ships, and a third without any colours spread out, but which we believed to be a Dutchman, passed by at about two leagues distance, steering for the coast of China; and in the afternoon went by two English ships, steering the same course: and thus, we thought, we saw ourselves beset with enemies, both one way and the other. The place we were in was wild and barbarous, the people thieves even by occupation or profession; and though, it is true, we had not much to seek of them, and,

excepting a few provisions, cared not how little we had to do with them; yet it was with much difficulty that we kept ourselves from being insulted by them several ways.

We were in a small river of this country, within a few leagues of its utmost limits northward; and by our boat we coasted north-east to the point of land which opens to the great Bay of Tonquin; and it was in this beating-up along the shore, that we discovered as above, that, in a word, we were surrounded with enemies. The people we were among were the most barbarous of all the inhabitants of the coast; having no correspondence with any other nation, and dealing only in fish and oil, and such gross commodities. And it may be particularly seen that they are, as I said, the most barbarous of any of the inhabitants; viz. that among other customs they have this one, that if any vessel have the misfortune to be shipwrecked upon their coast, they presently make the men all prisoners; that is to say, slaves. And it was not long before we found a spice of their kindness this way on the occasion following.

I have observed above, that our ship sprung a leak at sea, and that we could not find it out; and, however it happened, that, as I have said, it was stopped unexpectedly, in the happy minute of our being to be seized by the Dutch and English ships near the Bay of Siam; yet, as we did not find the ship so perfectly tight and sound as we desired, we resolved, while we were in this place, to lay her on shore, take out what heavy things we had on board, which were not many, and to wash and clean her bottom, and, if possible, to find out where the leaks were.

Accordingly, having lightened the ship, and brought all our guns and other moveable things to one side, we tried to bring her down, that we might come at her bottom; for, on second thoughts, we did not care to lay her dry aground, neither could we find out a proper place for it.

The inhabitants, who had never been acquainted with such a sight, came wondering down to the shore to look at us; and seeing the ship lie down on one side in such a manner, and heeling towards the shore, and not seeing our men, who were at work on her bottom

tom with stages, and with their boats on the off-side, they presently concluded, that the ship was cast away, and lay so very fast on the ground.

On this supposition they all came about us in two or three hours time, with ten or twelve large boats, having some of them eight, some ten men in a boat, intending, no doubt, to have come on board and plundered the ship, and if they had found us there, to have carried us away for slaves to their king, or whatever they called him, for we knew nothing who was their governor.

When they came up to the ship, and began to row round her, they discovered us all hard at work on the outside of the ship's bottom and side, washing, and graving, and stopping, as every seafaring man knows how.

They stood for a while gazing at us; and we, who were a little surprized, could not imagine what their design was; but being willing to be sure, we took this opportunity to get some of us into the ship, and others to hand down arms and ammunition to those that were at work, to defend themselves with if there should be occasion: and it was no more than need; for, in less than a quarter of an hour's consultation, they agreed, it seems, that the ship was really a wreck; that we were all at work endeavouring to save her, or to save our lives by the help of our boats: and when we handed our arms into the boats, they concluded, by that motion, that we were endeavouring to save some of our goods. Upon this, they took it for granted they all belonged to them; and away they came directly upon our men, as if it had been in a line of battle.

Our men, seeing so many of them, began to be frightened, for we lay but in an ill posture to fight, and cried out to us to know what they should do. I immediately called to the men who worked upon the stages, to slip them down, and get up the side into the ship; and bade those in the boat to row round and come on board; and those few of us who were on board worked with all the strength and hands we had to bring the ship to rights; but, however, neither the men upon the stage, nor those in the boats, could do as they were ordered, before the Cochinchinese were upon them, and with two of their boats boarded our

long-boat, and began to lay hold of the men as their prisoners.

The first man they laid hold of was an English seaman, a stout strong fellow, who having a musquet in his hand, never offered to fire it, but laid it down in the boat like a fool, as I thought; but he understood his business better than I could teach him; for he grappled the Pagan, and dragged him by main force out of their own boat into ours; where, taking him by the two ears, he beat his head so against the ship's gunnel, that the fellow died instantly in his hands: and in the mean time a Dutchman, who stood next, took up the musquet, and with the but-end of it so laid about him, that he knocked down five of them who attempted to enter the boat; but this was little towards resisting thirty or forty men, who fearless, because ignorant of their danger, began to throw themselves into the long-boat, where we had but five men to defend it. But one accident gave our men a compleat victory, which deserved our laughter rather than any thing else, and that was this.

Our carpenter being prepared to grave the outside of the ship, as well as to pay the seams where he had caulked her to stop the leaks, had got two kettles just let down into the boat, one filled with boiling pitch, and the other with rosin, tallow, and oil, and such stuff as the shipwrights use for that work; and the man that attended the carpenter had a great iron ladle in his hand, with which he supplied the men that were at work with that hot stuff. Two of the enemy's men entered the boat just where this fellow stood, being in the foresheets; he immediately saluted them with a ladleful of the stuff, boiling hot; which so burnt and scalded them, being half naked, that they roared out like two bulls, and enraged with the fire, leaped both into the sea. The carpenter saw it, and cried out, 'Well done, Jack, give them some more of it:' when, stepping forward himself, he takes one of their mops, and dipping it in the pitch-pot, he and his men threw it among them so plentifully, that, in short, of all the men in three boats, there was not one that was not scalded and burned with it in a most frightful pitiful manner, and made such

such a howling and crying, that I never heard a worse noise, and, indeed, nothing like it; for it was worth observing, that though pain naturally makes all people cry out, yet every nation have a particular way of exclamation, and make noises as different from one another as their speech. I cannot give the noise these creatures made a better name than howling, nor a name more proper to the tone of it; for I never heard any thing more like the noise of the wolves, which, as I have said, I heard howl in the forest on the frontiers of Languedoc.

I was never pleased with a victory better in my life; not only as it was a perfect surprize to me, and that our danger was imminent before; but as we got this victory without any bloodshed, except of that man the fellow killed with his naked hands, and which I was very much concerned at; for I was sick of killing such poor savage wretches, even though it was in my own defence, knowing they came on errands which they thought just, and knew no better; and that though it may be a just thing, because necessary, (for there is no necessary wickedness in nature) yet I thought it was a sad life when we must be always obliged to be killing our fellow-creatures to preserve ourselves; and, indeed, I think so still; and I would even now suffer a great deal rather than I would take away the life even of the worst person injuring me. I believe also, all considering people, who know the value of life, would be of my opinion, if they entered seriously into the consideration of it.

But to return to my story. All the while this was doing, my partner and I, who managed the rest of the men on board, had, with great dexterity, brought the ship almost to rights; and having gotten their guns into their places again, the gunner called to me to bid our boat get out of the way, for he would let fly among them. I called back again to him, and bid him not offer to fire, for the carpenter would do the work without him; but bade him heat another pitch-kettle, which our cook, who was on board, took care of. But the enemy was so terrified with what they met with in their first attack, that they would not come on again; and some of them that

were farthest off, seeing the ship swim as it were upright, began, as we supposed, to see their mistake, and gave over the enterprize, finding it was not as they expected. Thus we got clear of this merry fight; and having gotten some rice, and some roots and bread, with about sixteen good big hogs on board two days before, we resolved to stay here no longer, but go forward, whatever came of it; for we made no doubt but we should be surrounded the next day with rogues enough, perhaps more than our pitch-kettle would dispose of for us.

We therefore got all our things on board the same evening, and the next morning were ready to sail. In the mean time, lying at an anchor some distance from the shore, we were not so much concerned, being now in a fighting posture, as well as in a sailing posture, if any enemy had presented. The next day, having finished our work within board, and finding our ship was perfectly healed of all her leaks, we set sail. We would have gone into the Bay of Tonquin, for we wanted to inform ourselves of what was to be known concerning the Dutch ships that had been there; but we durst not stand in there, because we had seen several ships go in, as we supposed, but a little before; so we kept on N.E. towards the isle of Formosa, as much afraid of being seen by a Dutch or English merchant-ship, as a Dutch or English merchant-ship in the Mediterranean is of an Algerine man of war.

When we were thus got to sea, we kept on N.E. as if we would go to the Manillas or the Philippine islands, and this we did that we might not fall into the way of any of the European ships; and then we steered north again, till we came to the latitude of 22 degrees 20 minutes, by which means we made the island of Formosa directly, where we came to an anchor, in order to get water and fresh provisions, which the people there, who are very courteous and civil in their manners, supplied us with willingly, and dealt very fairly and punctually with us in all their agreements and bargains; which is what we did not find among other people, and may be owing to the remains of Christianity which was once planted here by a Dutch missionary

tionary of Protestants, and is a testimony of what I have often observed; viz. that the Christian religion always civilizes the people, and reforms their manners, where it is received, whether it works saving effects upon them or no.

From hence we sailed still north, keeping the coast of China at an equal distance, till we knew we were beyond all the ports of China where our European ships usually come; being resolved, if possible, not to fall into any of their hands, especially in this country, where, as our circumstances were, we could not fail of being entirely ruined; nay, so great was my fear in particular, as to my being taken by them, that I believe firmly, I would much rather have chosen to fall into the hands of the Spanish inquisition.

Being now come to the latitude of 30 degrees, we were resolved to put into the first trading port we should come at; and, standing in for the shore, a boat came off two leagues to us, with an old Portuguese pilot on board, who, knowing us to be an European ship, came to offer his service; which, indeed, we were very glad of, and took him on board: upon which, without asking us whither we would go, he dismissed the boat he came in, and sent it back.

I thought it was now so much in our choice to make the old man carry us whither we would, that I began to talk with him about carrying us to the Gulph of Nanquin, which is the most northern part of the coast of China. The old man said he knew the Gulph of Nanquin very well; but, smiling, asked us, what we would do there.

I told him we would sell our cargo, and purchase China wares, callicoes, raw silks, tea, wrought silks, &c. and so would return by the same course we came. He told us our best port had been to have put in at Macao, where we could not fail of a market for our opium to our satisfaction, and might, for our money, have purchased all sorts of China goods as cheap as we could at Nanquin.

Not being able to put the old man out of his talk, of which he was very opinionated or conceited, I told him we were gentlemen as well as merchants; and that we had a mind

to go and see the great city of Pekin, and the famous court of the Monarch of China. 'Why then,' says the old man, 'you should go to Ningpo, where, by the river that runs into the sea there, you may go up within five leagues of the great canal.' This canal is a navigable made stream, which goes through the heart of all that vast empire of China, crosses all the rivers, passes some considerable hills by the help of sluices and gates, and goes up to the city of Pekin, being in length near two hundred and seventy leagues.

'Well,' said I, 'Seignior Portuguese, but that is not our business now. The great question is, if you can carry us up to the city of Nanquin, from whence we can travel to Pekin afterwards?' Yes, he said, he could do so very well, and there was a great Dutch ship gone up that way just before. This gave me a little shock; a Dutch ship was now our terror, and we had much rather have met the devil, at least if he had not come in too frightful a figure. We depended upon it, that a Dutch ship would be our destruction, for we were in no condition to fight them; all the ships they trade with in those parts being of great burden, and of much greater force than we were.

The old man found me a little confused, and under some concern, when he named a Dutch ship; and said to me, 'Sir, you need be under no apprehension of the Dutch; I suppose they are not now at war with your nation.'—'No,' said I, 'that's true; but I know not what liberties men may take when they are out of the reach of the laws of their own country.'—'Why,' said he, 'you are no pirates, what need you fear? They will not meddle with peaceable merchants, sure!'

If I had any blood in my body that did not fly up into my face at that word, it was hindered by some stop in the vessels appointed by nature to circulate it; for it put me into the greatest disorder and confusion imaginable; nor was it possible for me to conceal it so, but that the old man easily perceived it.

'Sir,' said he, 'I find you are in some disorder in your thoughts at my talk: pray be pleased to go which way you think fit; and, depend upon it,

'it, I'll do you all the service I can.'—'Why, Seignior,' said I, 'it is true, I am a little unsettled in my resolution at this time whether to go in particular; and I am something more so, for what you said about pirates. I hope there are no pirates in these seas! we are but in an ill condition to meet with them; for you see we have but a small force, and but very weakly manned.'

'O! Sir,' said he, 'do not be concerned, I do not know that there have been any pirates in these seas these fifteen years, except one, which was seen, as I hear, in the Bay of Siam about a month since; but you may be assured she is gone to the southward: nor was she a ship of any great force, or fit for the work; she was not built for a privateer, but was run away with by a reprobate crew that were on board, after the captain and some of his men had been murdered by the Malaccans, at or near the island of Sumatra.'

'What!' said I, seeming to know nothing of the matter, 'did they murder the captain?'—'No,' said he, 'I do not understand that they murdered him; but, as they afterwards ran away with the ship, it is generally believed they betrayed him into the hands of the Malaccans, who did murder him; and, perhaps, they procured them to do it.'—'Why then,' said I, 'they deserve death, as much as if they had done it themselves.'—'Nay,' said the old man, 'they do deserve it; and they will certainly have it, if they light upon any English or Dutch ship; for they have all agreed together, that if they meet that rogue, they will give him no quarter.'

'But,' said I to him, 'you say the pirate is gone out of these seas: how can they meet with him then?'—'Why, that is true,' said he, 'they do say so; but he was, as I tell you, in the Bay of Siam, in the river Cambodia, and was discovered there by some Dutchmen who belonged to the ship, and who were left on shore when they run away with her; and some English and Dutch traders being in the river, they were within a little of taking him. Nay,' said he, 'if the foremost boats had been well

seconded by the rest, they had certainly taken him; but he, finding only two boats within reach of him, tacked about, and fired at these two, and disabled them before the other came up; and then standing off to sea, the other were not able to follow him, and so he got away. But they have all so exact a description of the ship, that they will be sure to know him; and wherever they find him, they have vowed to give no quarter to either the captain or the seamen, but to hang them all up at the yard-arm.'

'What!' said I, 'will they execute them right or wrong, hang them first, and judge them afterwards?'—'O! Sir,' said the old pilot, 'there is no need to make a formal business of it with such rogues as those; let them tie them back to back, and set them a diving; it is no more than they rightly deserve.'

I knew I had my old man fast aboard, and that he could do me no harm; so that I turned short upon him: 'Well, now, Seignior,' said I, 'and this is the very reason why I would have you carry us to Nanquin, and not to put back to Macao, or to any other part of the country where the English or Dutch ships come; for, be it known to you, Seignior, those captains of the English and Dutch ships are a parcel of rash, proud, insolent fellows, that neither know what belongs to justice, or how to behave themselves as the laws of God and nature direct; but being proud of their offices, and not understanding their power, they would set the murderers to punish robbers; would take upon them to insult men falsely accused, and determine them guilty without due enquiry; and perhaps I may live to call some of them to an account for it, where they may be taught how justice is to be executed, and that no man ought to be treated as a criminal, till some evidence may be had of the crime, and that he is the man.'

With this I told him, that this was the very ship they had attacked; and gave him a full account of the skirmish we had with their boats, and how foolishly and coward-like they had behaved. I told him all the story of our buying

buying the ship, and how the Dutchmen served us. I told him the reasons I had to believe, that this story of killing the master by the Malaccans was not true, as also the running away with the ship; but that it was all a fiction of their own, to suggest that the men were turned pirates; and they ought to have been sure it was so, before they had ventured to attack us by surprize, and oblige us to resist them; adding, that they would have the blood of those men who were killed there, in our just defence, to answer for.

The old man was amazed at this relation; and told us, we were very much in the right to go away to the north; and that if he might advise us, it should be to sell the ship in China, which we might very well do, and buy or build another in the country. 'And,' said he, 'though you will not get so good a ship, yet you may get one able enough to carry you and all your goods back again to Bengal, or any where else.'

I told him, I would take his advice, when I came to any port where I could find a ship for my turn, or get any customer to buy this. He replied, I should meet with customers enough for the ship at Nanquin, and that a Chinese junk would serve me very well to go back again; and that he would procure me people both to buy one and sell the other.

'Well, but, Seignior,' says I, 'as you say they know the ship so well; I may, perhaps, if I follow your measures, be instrumental to bring some honest, innocent men into a terrible broil, and perhaps be murdered in cold blood; for wherever they find the ship, they will prove the guilt upon the men, by proving this was the ship; and so innocent men may probably be overpowered and murdered.'—'Why,' said the old man, 'I'll find out a way to prevent that also; for as I know all those commanders you speak of very well, and shall see them all as they pass by, I will be sure to set them to rights in the thing, and let them know, that they had been so much in the wrong, that though the people who were on board at first might run away with the ship, yet it was not true that they had turned pirates;

and that in particular, those were not the men that first went off with the ship, but innocently bought her for their trade; and I am persuaded they will so far believe me, as, at least, to act more cautiously for the time to come.'—'Well,' said I, 'and will you deliver one message to them from me?'—'Yes, I will,' says he, 'if you will give it under your hand in writing, that I may be able to prove it came from you, and not out of my own head.' I answered, that I would readily give it under my hand. So I took a pen, and ink, and paper, and wrote at large the story of assaulding me with the long-boats, &c. the pretended reason of it, and the unjust cruel design of it; and concluded to the commanders, that they had done what they not only should have been ashamed of, but also, that if ever they came to England, and I lived to see them there, they should all pay dearly for it, if the laws of my country were not grown out of use before I arrived there.

My old pilot read this over and over again, and asked me several times, if I would stand to it. I answered, I would stand to it as long as I had any thing left in the world; being sensible that I should, one time or other, find an opportunity to put it home to them. But we had no occasion ever to let the pilot carry this letter; for he never went back again. While those things were passing between us by way of discourse, we went forward directly for Nanquin; and, in about thirteen days sail, came to an anchor at the south-west point of the great Gulph of Nanquin; where, by the way, I came by accident to understand, that the two Dutch ships were gone that length before me, and that I should certainly fall into their hands. I consulted my partner again in this exigency, and he was as much at a loss as I was, and would very gladly have been safe on shore almost any where. However, I was not in such perplexity neither, but I asked the old pilot if there was no creek or harbour which I might put into, and pursue my business with the Chinese privately, and be in no danger of the enemy. He told me, if I would sail to the southward about two and forty leagues, there was a little port called Quinchang, where the fathers of

the mission usually landed from Macao, on their progress to teach the Christian religion to the Chinese, and where no European ships ever put in; and, if I thought proper to put in there, I might consider what farther course to take when I was on shore. He confessed, he said, it was not a place for merchants, except that at some certain times they had a kind of a fair there, when the merchants from Japan came over thither to buy the Chinese merchandizes.

We all agreed to go back to this place. The name of the port, as he called it, I may perhaps spell wrong; for I do not particularly remember it, having lost this, together with the names of many other places set down in my little pocket-book, which was spoiled by the water, on an accident which I shall relate in its order; but this I remember, that the Chinese or Japanese merchants we correspond with, call it by a different name from that which our Portuguese pilot gave it, and pronounced it as above, Quinchang.

As we were unanimous in our resolutions to go to this place, we weighed the next day, having only gone twice on shore, where we were to get fresh water; on both which occasions, the people of the country were very civil to us, and brought us abundance of things to sell to us; I mean, of provisions, plants, roots, tea, rice, and some fowls; but nothing without money.

We came to the other port (the wind being contrary) not till five days; but it was very much to our satisfaction; and I was joyful, and I may say thankful, when I set my foot safe on shore; resolving, and my partner too, that if it was possible to dispose of ourselves and effects any other way, though not every way to our satisfaction, we would never set one foot on board that unhappy vessel more; and, indeed, I must acknowledge, that of all the circumstances of life that ever I had any experience of, nothing makes mankind so compleatly miserable as that of being in constant fear. Well does the Scripture say, 'The fear of man brings a snare;' it is a life of death; and the mind is so entirely suppressed by it, that it is capable of no relief; the animal spirits

sink, and all the vigour of nature, which usually supports men under other afflictions, and is present to them in the greatest exigencies, fails them here.

Nor did it fail of its usual operations upon the fancy, by heightening every danger; representing the English and Dutch captains to be men incapable of hearing reason, or distinguishing between honest men and rogues; or between a story calculated for our own turn, made out of nothing, on purpose to deceive, and a true genuine account of our whole voyage, progress, and design; for we might many ways have convinced any reasonable creature that we were not pirates: the goods we had on board, the course we steered, our frankly shewing ourselves, and entering into such and such ports; even our very manner, the force we had, the number of men, the few arms, little ammunition, short provisions; all these would have served to convince any man that we were no pirates. The opium, and other goods we had on board, would make it appear the ship had been at Bengal; the Dutchmen, who, it was said, had the names of all the men that were in the ship, might easily see, that we were a mixture of English, Portuguese, and Indians, and but two Dutchmen on board. These, and many other particular circumstances, might have made it evident to the understanding of any commander, whose hands we might fall into, that we were no pirates.

But fear, that blind, useless passion, worked another way, and threw us into the vapours; it bewildered our understandings, and set the imagination at work, to form a thousand terrible things that, perhaps, might never happen. We first supposed, as indeed every body had related to us, that the seamen on board the English and Dutch ships, but especially the Dutch, were so enraged at the name of a pirate, and especially at our beating of their boats, and escaping, that they would not give themselves leave to enquire whether we were pirates or no; but would execute us off hand, as we call it, without giving us any room for a defence. We reflected, that there was really so much apparent evidence before them, that they would scarce enquire after any more: as, first, That the ship

ship was certainly the same, and that some of the seamen among them knew her, and had been on board her; and, secondly, That when we had intelligence at the river Cambodia, that they were coming down to examine us, we fought their boats and fled; so that we made no doubt but they were as fully satisfied of our being pirates, as we were satisfied of the contrary; and I often said, I knew not but I should have been apt to have taken these little circumstances for evidence, if the tables were turned, and my case was theirs; and have made no scruple of cutting all the crew to pieces, without believing, or perhaps considering, what they might have to offer in their defence.

But let that be how it will, those were our apprehensions; and both my partner and I too scarce slept a night without dreaming of halters and yard-arms; that is to say, gibbets; of fighting, and being taken; of killing, and being killed: and one night I was in such a fury in my dream, fancying the Dutchmen had boarded us, and I was knocking one of their seamen down, that I struck my double fist against the side of the cabin I lay in with such force as wounded my hand most grievously, broke my knuckles, and cut and bruised the flesh; so that it not only waked me out of my sleep, but I was once afraid I should have lost two of my fingers.

Another apprehension I had, was of the cruel usage we should meet with from them if we fell into their hands. Then the story of Amboyna came into my head, and how the Dutch might, perhaps, torture us, as they did our countrymen there, and make some of our men, by extremity of torture, confess those crimes they never were guilty of; own themselves, and all of us, to be pirates; and so they would put us to death with a formal appearance of justice; and that they might be tempted to do this for the gain of our ship and cargo, which was worth four or five thousand pounds put all together.

These things tormented me, and my partner too, night and day; nor did we consider, that the captains of ships have no authority to act thus; and if we had surrendered prisoners to them, they could not answer the destroying us or torturing us, but would be ac-

countable for it when they came into their own country. This, I say, gave me no satisfaction; for, if they will act thus with us, what advantage would it be to us that they would be called to an account for it; or, if we were first to be murdered, what satisfaction would it be to us to have them punished when they came home.

I cannot refrain taking notice here, what reflections I now had upon the past variety of my particular circumstances; how hard I thought it was, that I, who had spent forty years in a life of continued difficulties, and was at last come, as it were, at the port or haven which all men drive at, viz. to have rest and plenty, should be a volunteer in new sorrows by my own unhappy choice; and that I, who had escaped so many dangers in my youth, should now come to be hanged in my old age, and in so remote a place, for a crime I was not in the least inclined to, much less guilty of; and in a place and circumstance, where innocence was not like to be any protection at all to me.

After these thoughts, something of religion would come in; and I would be considering, that this seemed to me to be a disposition of immediate Providence, and I ought to look upon it, and submit to it, as such; that although I was innocent as to men, I was far from being innocent as to my Maker; and I ought to look in, and examine what other crimes in my life were most obvious to me, and for which Providence might justly inflict this punishment as a retribution; and that I ought to submit to this, just as I would to a shipwreck, if it had pleased God to have brought such a disaster upon me.

In its turn, natural courage would sometimes take its place; and then I would be talking myself up to vigorous resolutions, that I would not be taken, to be barbarously used by a parcel of merciless wretches in cold blood; that it was much better to have fallen into the hands of the savages, who were men-eaters, and who, I was sure, would feast upon me when they had taken me, than by those who would, perhaps, glut their rage upon me, by inhuman tortures and barbarities; that, in the case of the savages, I always resolved to die fighting, to the

last gasp; and why should I not do so now, seeing it was much more dreadful to me, at least, to think of falling into these men's hands, than ever it was to think of being eaten by men: for the savages, give them their due, would not eat a man till he was dead, and killed him first, as we do a bullock; but that these men had many arts beyond the cruelty of death. Whenever these thoughts prevailed, I was sure to put myself into a kind of fever, with the agitations of a supposed fight; my blood would boil, and my eyes sparkled, as if I was engaged; and I always resolved, that I would take no quarter at their hands; but even, at last, if I could resist no longer, I would blow up the ship, and all that was in her, and leave them but little booty to boast of.

But how much the greater weight the anxieties and perplexities of these things were to our thoughts while we were at sea, by so much the greater was our satisfaction when we saw ourselves on shore; and my partner told me, he dreamed that he had a very heavy load upon his back, which he was to carry up a hill, and found that he was not able to stand long under it; but the Portuguese pilot came and took it off his back, and the hill disappeared, the ground before him shewing all smooth and plain. And truly it was so; we were all like men who had a load taken off their backs.

For my part, I had a weight taken off from my heart, that I was not able any longer to bear; and, as I said above, we resolved to go no more to sea in that ship. When we came on shore, the old pilot, who was now our friend, got us a lodging, and a warehouse for our goods, which, by the way, was much the same; it was a little house or hut, with a large house joining to it, all built with canes, and pallisadoed round with large canes, to keep out pilfering thieves, of which it seems there were not a few in the country. However, the magistrates allowed us also a little guard, and we had a soldier with a kind of halbert or half-spike, who stood centinel at our door; to whom we allowed a pint of rice, and a little piece of money, about the value of three pence per day, so that our goods were kept very safe.

The fair or mart, usually kept in this place, had been over some time; however, we found that there were three or four junks in the river, and two Japaners, I mean, ships from Japan, with goods which they had bought in China, and were not gone away, having Japanese merchants on shore.

The first thing our old Portuguese pilot did for us, was to bring us acquainted with three missionary Romish priests, who were in the town, and who had been there some time, converting the people to Christianity; but we thought they made but poor work of it, and made them but sorry Christians when they had done. However, that was not our business. One of these was a Frenchman, whom they called Father Simon: he was a jolly, well-conditioned man, very free in his conversation, not seeming so serious and grave as the other two did; (one of whom was a Portuguese, and the other a Genoese) but Father Simon was courteous, easy in his manner, and very agreeable company; the other two were more reserved, seemed rigid and austere, and applied seriously to the work they came about; viz. to talk with and insinuate themselves among the inhabitants, wherever they had opportunity. We often eat and drank with those men: and though I must confess the conversion, as they call it, of the Chinese to Christianity, is so far from the true conversion required to bring heathen people to the faith of Christ, that it seems to amount to little more than letting them know the name of Christ, say some prayers to the Virgin Mary and her Son in a tongue which they understand not, and to cross themselves, and the like; yet it must be confessed, that these religious, whom we call missionaries, have a firm belief that these people shall be saved, and that they are the instruments of it; and, on this account, they undergo not only the fatigue of the voyage, and hazards of living in such places, but oftentimes death itself, with the most violent tortures, for the sake of this work; and it would be a great want of charity in us, whatever opinion we have of the work itself, and the manner of their doing it, if we should not have a good opinion of their zeal, who undertake it with

with so many hazards, and who have no prospect of the least temporal advantage to themselves.

But to return to my story. This French priest, Father Simon, was appointed, it seems, by order of the chief of the mission, to go up to Pekin, the royal seat of the Chinese emperor; and waited only for another priest, who was ordered to come to him from Macao, to go along with him; and we scarce ever met together, but he was inviting me to go that journey with him, telling me, how he would shew me all the glorious things of that mighty empire; and among the rest, the greatest city in the world. 'A city,' said he, 'that your London, and our Paris, put together, cannot be equal to.' This was the city of Pekin; which, I confess, is very great, and infinitely full of people; but, as I looked on those things with different eyes from other men, so I shall give my opinion of them in few words, when I come, in the course of my travels, to speak more particularly of them.

But first, I come to my friar or missionary. Dining with him one day, and being very merry together, I shewed some little inclination to go with him; and he pressed me and my partner very hard, and with a great many persuasions, to consent. 'Why, Father Simon,' says my partner, 'why should you desire our company so much? You know we are heretics, and you do not love us, nor can keep us company with any pleasure.'—'O!' says he, 'you may, perhaps, be good Catholics in time; my business here is to convert heathens; and who knows but I may convert you too?'—'Very well, Father,' said I, 'so you will preach to us all the way.'—'I won't be troublesome to you,' said he; 'our religion does not divest us of good manners: besides,' said he, 'we are here like countrymen; and so we are, compared to the place we are in; and if you are Hugonots, and I a Catholic, we may be all Christians at last; at least,' said he, 'we are all gentlemen, and we may converse so, without being uneasy to one another.' I liked that part of his discourse very well, and it began to put me in mind of my priest that I had left in the Brazils; but this Father Simon did not

come up to his character by a great deal; for though Father Simon had no appearance of a criminal levity in him neither, yet he had not that fund of Christian zeal, strict piety, and sincere affection to religion, that my other good ecclesiastick had of whom I have said so much.

But to leave him a little, though he never left us, nor soliciting us to go with him, but we had something else before us at that time; for we had, all this while, our ship and our merchandize to dispose of; and we began to be very doubtful what we should do, for we were now in a place of very little business; and once I was about to venture to sail for the river of Kiam, and the city of Nanquin. But Providence seemed now more visibly, as I thought, than ever, to concern itself in our affairs; and I was encouraged from this very time to think I should, one way or other, get out of this entangled circumstance, and be brought home to my own country again; though I had not the least view of the manner; and when I began sometimes to think of it, could not imagine by what method it was to be done. Providence, I say, began here to clear up our way a little; and the first thing that offered was, that our old Portuguese pilot brought a Japan merchant to us, who began to enquire what goods we had; and, in the first place, he bought all our opium, and gave us a very good price for it, paying us in gold by weight, some in small pieces of their own coin, and some in small wedges of about ten or eleven ounces each. While we were dealing with him for our opium, it came into my head, that he might perhaps deal with us for the ship too; and I ordered the interpreter to propose it to him. He shrunk up his shoulders at it when it was first proposed to him, but, in a few days after, he came to me with one of the missionary priests for his interpreter, and told me he had a proposal to make to me, and that was this. He had bought a great quantity of goods of us when he had no thoughts (or proposals made to him) of buying the ship; and that, therefore, he had not money enough to pay for the ship; but if I would let the same men who were in the ship navigate her, he would hire the ship to go

to Japan, and would send them from thence to the Philippine Islands with another loading, which he would pay the freight of before they went from Japan; and that, at their return, he would buy the ship. I began to listen to this proposal, and so eager did my head still run upon rambling, that I could not but begin to entertain a notion myself of going with him, and so to sail from the Philippine Islands away to the South Seas; and accordingly I asked the Japanese merchant, if he would not hire us to the Philippine Islands, and discharge us there. He said, no, he could not do that; for then he could not have the return of his cargo; but he would discharge us in Japan, he said, at the ship's return. Well, still I was for taking him at that proposal, and going myself; but my partner, wiser than myself, persuaded me from it, representing the dangers, as well of the seas as of the Japanese, who are a false, cruel, and treacherous people; and then of the Spaniards at the Philippines, more false, more cruel, more treacherous than they.

But to bring this long turn of our affairs to a conclusion; the first thing we had to do, was to consult with the captain of the ship, and with the men, and know if they were willing to go to Japan; and, while I was doing this, the young man, whom, as I said, my nephew had left with me as my companion for my travels, came to me, and told me, that he thought that voyage promised very fair, and that there was a great prospect of advantage, and he would be very glad if I undertook it; but that if I would not, and would give him leave, he would go as a merchant, or how I pleased to order him; that if ever he came to England, and I was there and alive, he would render me a faithful account of his success, and it should be as much mine as I pleased.

I was really loth to part with him; but, considering the prospect of advantage, which was really considerable, and that he was a young fellow as likely to do well in it as any I knew, I inclined to let him go; but, first, I told him I would consult my partner, and give him an answer the next day. My partner and I discoursed about it; and my partner made a most generous

offer. He told me, 'You know it has been an unlucky ship, and we both resolve not to go to sea in it again; if your steward' (so he called my man) 'will venture the voyage, I'll leave my share of the vessel to him, and let him make the best of it; and if we live to meet in England, and he meets with success abroad, he shall account for one half of the profits of the ship's freight to us, the other shall be his own.'

If my partner, who was no way concerned with my young man, made him such an offer, I could do no less than offer him the same; and all the ship's company being willing to go with him, we made over half the ship to him in property, and took a writing from him, obliging him to account for the other; and away he went to Japan. The Japan merchant proved a very punctual honest man to him, protected him at Japan, and got him a licence to come on shore, which the Europeans in general have not lately obtained; paid him his freight very punctually, sent him to the Philippines, loaded with Japan and China wares, and a supercargo of their own, who trafficking with the Spaniards, brought back European goods again, and a great quantity of cloves and other spice; and there he was not only paid his freight very well, and at a very good price, but being not willing to sell the ship then, the merchant furnished him with goods on his own account, that, for some money, and some spices of his own, which he brought with him, he went back to the Manillas, to the Spaniards, where he sold his cargo very well. Here, having gotten a good acquaintance at Manilla, he got his ship made a free ship; and the Governor of Manilla hired him to go to Acapulco in America, on the coast of Mexico, and gave him a licence to land there, and travel to Mexico, and to pass in any Spanish ship to Europe with all his men.

He made the voyage to Acapulco very happily, and there he sold his ship; and having there also obtained allowance to travel by land to Porto Bello, he found means, some how or other, to go to Jamaica with all his treasure; and, about eight years after, came to England exceeding rich; of which

which I shall take notice in it's place. In the mean time, I return to our own particular affairs.

Being now to part with the ship and ship's company, it came before us, of course, to consider what recompence we should give to the two men that gave us such timely notice of the design against us in the river Cambodia. The truth was, they had done us a considerable service, and deserved well at our hands; though, by the way, they were a couple of rogues too; for, as they believed the story of our being pirates, and that we had really run away with the ship, they came down to us, not only to betray the design that was formed against us, but to go to sea with us as pirates; and one of them confessed afterwards, that nothing else but the hopes of going a roguing brought him to do it. However, the service they did us was not the less; and therefore, as I had promised to be grateful to them, I first ordered the money to be paid to them, which they said was due to them on board their respective ships; that is to say, the Englishmen nineteen months pay, and to the Dutchmen seven; and, over and above that, I gave each of them a small sum of money in gold, which contented them very well; then I made the Englishman gunner of the ship, the gunner being now made second mate and purser; the Dutchman I made boatswain; so they were both very well pleased, and proved very serviceable, being both able seamen and very stout fellows.

We were now on shore in China. If I thought myself banished, and remote from my own country at Bengal, where I had many ways to get home for my money, what could I think of myself now, when I was gotten about a thousand leagues farther off from home, and perfectly destitute of all manner of prospect of return!

All we had for it was this; that in about four months time there was to be another fair at that place where we were, and then we might be able to purchase all sorts of the manufactures of the country, and withal might possibly find some Chinese junks or vessels from Nanquin that would be to be sold, and would carry us and our goods whither we pleased. This I liked very well, and resolved to wait; besides,

as our particular persons were not obnoxious, so if any English or Dutch ships came thither, perhaps we might have an opportunity to load our goods, and get passage to some other place in India nearer home.

Upon these hopes we resolved to continue here; but to divert ourselves, we took two or three journies into the country. First, we went ten days journey to see the city of Nanquin, a city well worth seeing indeed; they say it has a million of people in it, which, however, I do not believe. It is regularly built, the streets all exactly straight, and cross one another in direct lines, which gives the figure of it great advantage.

But when I came to compare the miserable people of these countries with ours; their fabricks, their manner of living, their government, their religion, their wealth, and their glory, (as some call it) I must confess I do not so much as think it worth naming, or worth my while to write of, or any that shall come after me to read.

It is very observable, that we wonder at the grandeur, the riches, the pomp, the ceremonies, the government, the manufactures, the commerce, and the conduct of these people; not that it is to be wondered at, or, indeed, in the least to be regarded; but because, having first a notion of the barbarity of those countries, the rudeness and the ignorance that prevail there, we do not expect to find any such things so far off.

Otherwise, what are their buildings to the palaces and royal buildings of Europe? what their trade to the universal commerce of England, Holland, France and Spain? What their cities to ours, for wealth, strength, gaiety of apparel, rich furniture, and an infinite variety? What are their ports, supplied with a few junks and barks, to our navigation, our merchants fleets, our large and powerful navies? Our city of London has more trade than all their mighty empire. One English, or Dutch, or French man of war of 80 guns, would fight with and destroy all the shipping of China. But the greatness of their wealth, their trade, the power of their government, and strength of their armies, is surprizing to us, because, as I have said, considering them as a barbarous nation of pagans, little better

better than savages, we did not expect such things among them; and this, indeed, is the advantage with which all their greatness and power is represented to us; otherwise it is in itself nothing at all: for, as I have said of their ships, so it may be said of their armies and troops; all the forces of their empire, though they were to bring two millions of men into the field together, would be able to do nothing but ruin the country and starve themselves. If they were to besiege a strong town in Flanders, or to fight a disciplined army, one line of German cuirassiers, or of French cavalry, would overthrow all the horse of China; a million of their foot could not stand before one embattled body of our infantry, posted so as not to be surrounded, though they were not to be one to twenty in number; nay, I do not boast if I say, that thirty thousand German or English foot, and ten thousand French horse, would fairly beat all the forces of China. And so of our fortified towns, and of the art of our engineers, in assaulting and defending towns; there is not a fortified town in China could hold out one month against the batteries and attacks of an European army; and at the same time all the armies of China could never take such a town as Dunkirk, provided it was not starved; no, not in ten years siege. They have fire-arms, it is true; but they are awkward, clumsy, and uncertain in going off: they have powder, but it is of no strength. They have neither discipline in the field, exercise to their arms, skill to attack, or temper to retreat; and therefore, I must confess, it seemed strange to me when I came home and heard our people say such fine things of the power, riches, glory, magnificence, and trade of the Chinese, because I saw and knew that they were a contemptible herd or croud of ignorant fordid slaves, subjected to a government qualified only to rule such a people; and, in a word, (for I am now launched quite beside my design) I say, in a word, were not it's distance inconceivably great from Muscovy, and were not the Muscovite empire almost as rude, impotent, and ill-governed a croud of slaves as they, the Czar of Muscovy might, with much ease, drive them all out of their country, and conquer them in

one campaign; and had the czar, who I since hear is a growing prince, and begins to appear formidable in the world, fallen this way instead of attacking the warlike Swedes, in which attempt none of the powers of Europe would have envied or interrupted him, he might by this time have been Emperor of China, instead of being beaten by the King of Sweden at Narva, when the latter was not one to six in number. As their strength and their grandeur, so their navigation, commerce, and husbandry, is imperfect and impotent, compared to the same things in Europe. Also in their knowledge, their learning, their skill in the sciences, they have globes and spheres, and a smatch of the knowledge of mathematics; but when you come to enquire into their knowledge, how short-sighted are the wisest of their students! they know nothing of the motion of the heavenly bodies; and so grossly, absurdly ignorant, that when the sun is eclipsed, they think it is a great dragon has assaulted and run away with it, and they fall a clattering with all the drums and kettles in the country, to fright the monster away, just as we do to hive a swarm of bees.

As this is the only excusation of this kind which I have made in all the account I have given of my travels, so I shall make no more descriptions of countries and people; it is none of my business, or any part of my design; but giving an account of my own adventures through a life of inimitable wanderings, and a long variety of changes, which, perhaps, few have heard the like of, I shall say nothing of the mighty places, desert countries, and numerous people I have yet to pass through, more than relates to my own story, and which my concern among them will make necessary. I was now as near as I can compute in the heart of China, about the latitude of 30 degrees north of the line, for we were returned from Nanquin. I had indeed a mind to see the city of Pekin, which I had heard so much of, and Father Simon importuned me daily to do it. At length his time of going away being set, and the other missionary, who was to go with him, being arrived from Macao, it was necessary that we should resolve either to go or not to go; so I referred him to my partner,

partner, and left it wholly to his choice; who at length resolved it in the affirmative, and we prepared for our journey. We set out with very good advantage as to finding the way; for we got leave to travel in the retinue of one of their mandarins, a kind of viceroy or principal magistrate in the province where they reside, and who take great state upon them, travelling with great attendance, and with great homage from the people, who are sometimes greatly impoverished by them, because all the countries they pass through are obliged to furnish provisions for them and all their attendants. That which I particularly observed, as to our travelling with his baggage, was this; that though we received sufficient provisions both for ourselves and our horses from the country, as belonging to the mandarin, yet we were obliged to pay for every thing we had after the market-price of the country; and the mandarin's reward, or commissary of the provisions, collected it duly from us: so that our travelling in the retinue of the mandarin, though it was a very great kindness to us, was not such a mighty favour in him, but was indeed a great advantage to him, considering there were about thirty other people travelled in the same manner besides us, under the protection of his retinue, or, as we may call it, under his convoy. This, I say, was a great advantage to him, for the country furnished all the provisions for nothing, and he took all our money for them.

We were five and twenty days travelling to Pekin, through a country infinitely populous, but miserably cultivated; the husbandry, œconomy, and the way of living, all very miserable, though they boast so much of the industry of the people; I say, miserable; and so it is, if we, who understand how to live, were to endure it, or to compare it with our own; but not so to these poor wretches, who know no other. The pride of these people is infinitely great, and exceeded by nothing but their poverty, which adds to that which I call their misery. I must needs think the naked savages of America live much more happy, because, as they have nothing, so they desire nothing; whereas these are proud and insolent, and in the main are mere beggars and drudges. Their ostenta-

tion is inexpressible, and is chiefly shewed in their cloaths and buildings, and in their keeping multitudes of servants or slaves, and, which is to the last degree ridiculous, their contempt of all the world but themselves.

I must confess, I travelled more pleasantly afterwards in the deserts and vast wildernesses of Grand Tartary than here; and yet the roads here are well paved and well kept, and very convenient for travellers. But nothing was more awkward to me, than to see such an haughty, imperious, insolent people, in the midst of the grossest simplicity and ignorance; for all their famed ingenuity is no more. My friend, Father Simon, and I, used to be very merry upon these occasions, to see the beggarly pride of those people. For example: coming by the house of a country gentleman, as Father Simon called him, about ten leagues off from the city of Nanquin, we had, first of all, the honour to ride with the master of the house about two miles. The state he rode in was a perfect Don Quixotism, being a mixture of pomp and poverty.

The habit of this greasy don was very proper for a Scaramouch or Merry-Andrew; being a dirty callico, with all the tawdry trappings of a fool's coat, such as hanging-sleeves, taffety, and cuts and slashes almost on every side; it covered a rich taffety vest, as greasy as a butcher, and which testified that his honour must needs be a most exquisite sloven.

His horse was a poor, lean, starved, hobbling creature, such as in England might sell for about thirty or forty shillings; and he had two slaves followed him on foot, to drive the poor creature along; he had a whip in his hand, and he belaboured the beast as fast about the head as his slaves did about the tail: and thus he rode by us with about ten or twelve servants; and we were told he was going from the city to his country seat, about half a league before us. We travelled on gently, but this figure of a gentleman rode away before us; and as we stopped at a village about an hour to refresh us, when we came by the country-seat of this great man, we saw him in a little place before his door eating his repast: it was a kind of garden, but he was easy to be seen; and we were given to understand, that the

more we looked at him the better he would be pleased.

He sat under a tree, something like the palmetto-tree, which effectually shaded him over the head and on the south-side; but under the tree also was placed a large umbrella, which made that part look well enough. He sat lolling back in a great elbow-chair, being a heavy corpulent man, and his meat being brought him by two women slaves: he had two more, whose office, I think; few gentlemen in Europe would accept of their service in; viz. one fed the squire with a spoon, and the other held the dish with one hand, and scraped off what he let fall upon his worship's beard and taffety vest with the other; while the great fat brute thought it below him to employ his own hands in any of those familiar offices, which kings and monarchs would rather do, than be troubled with the clumsy fingers of their servants.

I took this time to think what pain men's pride puts them to; and how troublesome a haughty temper, thus ill-managed, must be to a man of common sense: and, leaving the poor wretch to please himself with our looking at him, as if we admired his pomp, whereas we really pitied and contemned him, we pursued our journey; only Father Simon had the curiosity to stay to inform himself what dainties the country justice had to feed on in all his state; which he said he had the honour to taste of, and which was, I think, a dose that an English hound would scarce have eaten, if it had been offered him; viz. a mess of boiled rice, with a great piece of garlick in it, and a little bag filled with green pepper; another plant which they have there, something like our ginger, but smelling like musk, and tasting like mustard: all this was put together, and a small lump or piece of lean mutton boiled in it; and this was his worship's repast, four or five servants more attending at a distance. If he fed them meaner than he was fed himself, the spice excepted, they must fare very coarsely indeed.

As for our mandarin, with whom we travelled, he was respected like a king; surrounded always with his gentlemen, and attended in all his appearances with such pomp, that I saw

little of him but at a distance; but this I observed, that there was not a horse in his retinue but that our carriers pack-horses in England seem to me to look much better; but they were so covered with equipage, mantles, trappings, and such like trumpery, that you cannot see whether they are fat or lean. In a word, we could scarce see any thing but their feet and their heads.

I was now light-hearted, and all my trouble and perplexity that I have given an account of being over, I had no anxious thoughts about me; which made this journey much the pleasanter to me; nor had I any ill accident attended me, only in the passing or fording a small river my horse fell, and made me free of the country, as they call it; that is to say, threw me in. The place was not deep, but it wetted me all over. I mention it, because it spoiled my pocket-book, wherein I had set down the names of several people and places which I had occasion to remember, and which not taking due care of, the leaves rotted, and the words were never after to be read, to my great loss, as to the names of some places which I touched at in this voyage.

At length we arrived at Pekin. I had nobody with me but the youth whom my nephew the captain had given me to attend me as a servant, and who proved very trusty and diligent; and my partner had nobody with him but one servant, who was a kinsman. As for the Portuguese pilot, he being desirous to see the court, we gave him his passage; that is to say, bore his charges for his company, and to use him as an interpreter, for he understood the language of the country, and spoke good French, and a little English; and, indeed, this old man was a most useful implement to us every where; for we had not been above a week at Pekin, when he came laughing; 'Ah, Seignior Inglese!' said he, 'I have something to tell you will make your heart glad.'—'My heart glad!' said I: 'what can that be?' 'I don't know any thing in this country can either give me joy or grief to any great degree.'—'Yes, yes,' said the old man, in broken English, 'make you glad, me sorrow; sorry he would have said. This made me more

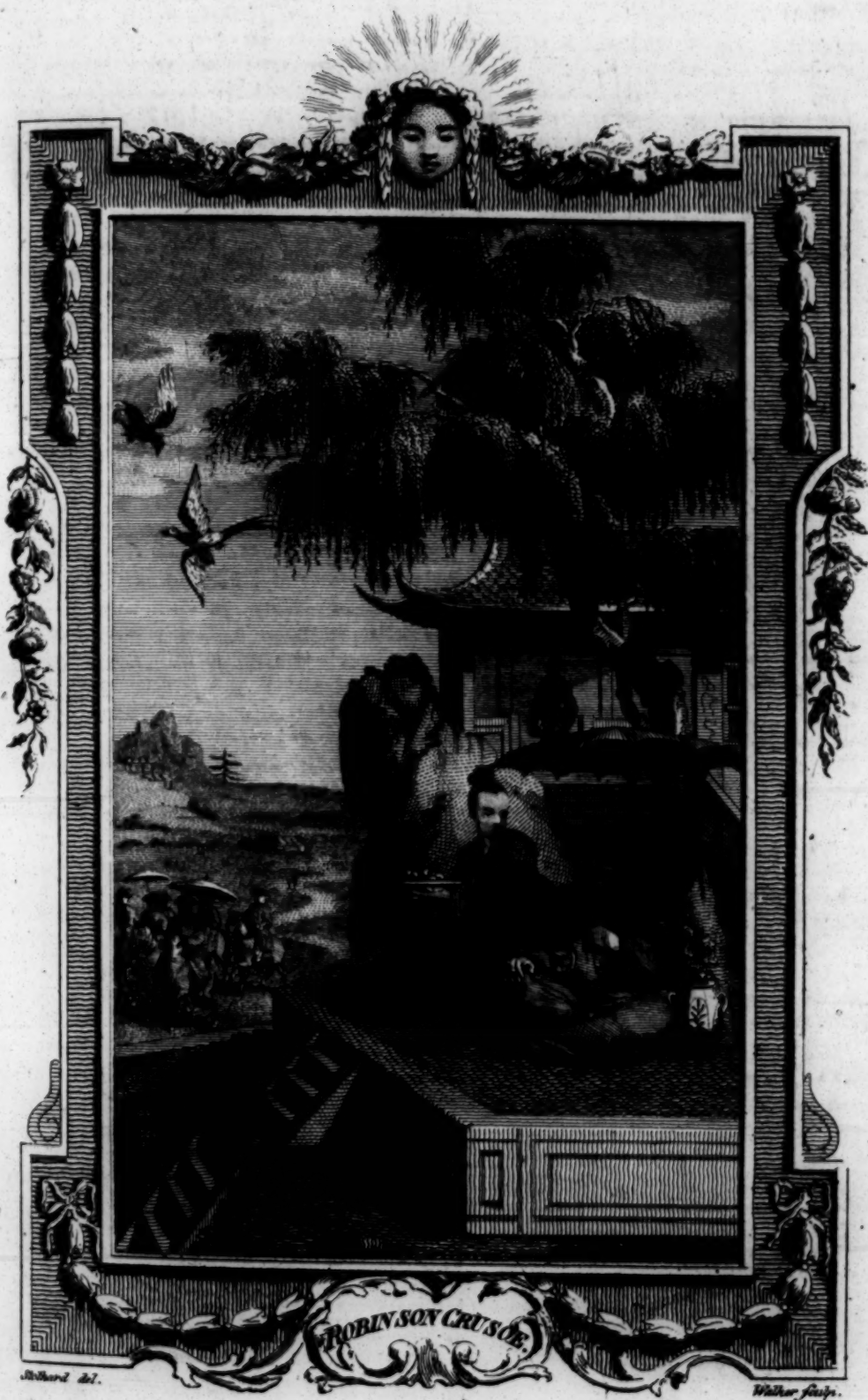


Plate VII.

Published as the Act directs, by Harrison & Co. April 14th 1781

266A

12 1911

more inquisitive. 'Why,' said I, 'will it make you sorry?'—'Because,' said he, 'you have brought me here twenty-five days journey, and will leave me to go back alone; and which way shall I get to my port afterwards, without a ship, without a horse, without *pecune*?' So he called money; being his broken Latin, of which he had abundance to make us merry with.

In short, he told us there was a great caravan of Muscovy and Polish merchants in the city, and they were preparing to set out on their journey by land to Muscovy, within four or five weeks, and he was sure we would take the opportunity to go with them, and leave him behind to go back all alone. I confess I was surprized with this news; a secret joy spread itself over my whole soul, which I cannot describe, and never felt before or since; and I had no power for a good while to speak a word to the old man; but at last I turned to him: 'How do you know this?' said I: 'are you sure it is true?'—'Yes,' said he, 'I met this morning in the street an old acquaintance of mine, an Armenian, or one you call a Grecian, who is among them; he came last from Astracan, and was designing to go to Tonquin, where I formerly knew him, but has altered his mind, and is now resolved to go back with the caravan to Moscow, and so down the river of Wolga to Astracan.'—'Well, Seignior,' said I, 'do not be uneasy about being left to go back alone; if this be a method for my return to England, it shall be your fault if you go back to Macao at all.' We then went to consulting together what was to be done, and asked my partner what he thought of the pilot's news, and whether it would suit with his affairs. He told me he would do just as I would; for he had settled all his affairs so well at Bengal, and left his effects in such good hands, that as we made a good voyage here, if he could vest it in China silks, wrought and raw, such as might be worth the carriage, he would be content to go to England, and then make his voyage back to Bengal by the company's ships.

Having resolved upon this, we agreed,

that if our Portuguese pilot would go with us, we would bear his charges to Moscow, or to England if he pleased; nor, indeed, were we to be esteemed over generous in that part neither, if we had not rewarded him farther; for the service he had done us was really worth all that, and more: for he had not only been a pilot to us at sea, but he had been also like a broker for us on shore; and his procuring for us the Japan merchant, was some hundreds of pounds in our pockets. So we consulted together about it; and, being willing to gratify him, which was, indeed, but doing him justice, and very willing also to have him with us besides, for he was a most necessary man on all occasions, we agreed to give him a quantity of coined gold, which, as I compute it, came to about 175 l. sterling, between us, and to bear his charges, both for himself and horse, except only a horse to carry his goods.

Having settled this among ourselves, we called him, to let him know what we had resolved. I told him, he had complained of our being like to let him go back alone, and I was now to tell him we were resolved he should not go back at all; that as we were resolved to go to Europe with the caravan, we resolved also he should go with us, and that we called him to know his mind. He shook his head, and said it was a long journey, and he had no *pecune* to carry him thither. We told him, we believed it was so, and therefore we had resolved to do something for him, that should let him see how sensible we were of the service he had done us; and also how agreeable he was to us: and then I told him what we had resolved to give him here, which he might lay out as we would do our own; and that as for his charges, if he would go with us, we would set him safe ashore, (life and casualties excepted) either in Muscovy or in England, which he would, at our own charge, except only the carriage of his goods.

He received the proposal like a man transported, and told us, he would go with us over the whole world; and so, in short, we all prepared ourselves for the journey. However, as it was with us, so it was with the other merchants, they had many things to do; and in-

stead of being ready in five weeks, it was four months and some odd days before all things were got together.

It was the beginning of February, our style, when we set out from Pekin. My partner and the old pilot had gone express back to the port where we had first put in, to dispose of some goods which we had left there; and I, with a Chinese merchant, whom I had some knowledge of at Nanquin, and who came to Pekin on his own affairs, went to Nanquin, where I bought ninety pieces of fine damasks, with about two hundred pieces of other very fine silks, of several sorts, some mixed with gold, and had all these brought to Pekin against my partner's return: besides this, we bought a very large quantity of raw silk, and some other goods; our cargo amounting, in these goods only, to about three thousand five hundred pounds sterling, which, together with tea, and some fine calicoes, and three camel-loads of nutmegs and cloves, loaded in all eighteen camels for our share, besides those we rode upon; which, with two or three spare horses, and two horses loaded with provisions, made us, in short, twenty-six camels and horses in our retinue.

The company was very great, and, as near as I can remember, made between three and four hundred horses and camels, and upward of a hundred and twenty men, very well armed, and provided for all events: for, as the Eastern caravans are subject to be attacked by the Arabs, so are these by the Tartars; but they are not altogether so dangerous as the Arabs, nor so barbarous when they prevail.

The company consisted of people of several nations, such as Muscovites chiefly; for there were above sixty of them who were merchants or inhabitants of Moscow, though of them some were Livonians, and to our particular satisfaction five of them were Scots, who appeared also to be men of great experience in business, and very good substance.

When we had travelled one day's journey, the guides, who were five in number, called all the gentlemen and merchants; that is to say, all the passengers, except the servants, to a great council, as they termed it. At this great council every one deposited

a certain quantity of money to a common stock, for the necessary expence of buying forage on the way, where it was not otherwise to be had, and for satisfying the guides, getting horses, and the like. And here they constituted the journey, as they called it; viz. they named captains and officers to draw us all up, and give the command in case of an attack, and gave every one their turn of command. Nor was this forming us into order any more than what we found needful upon the way, as shall be observed in its place.

The road all on this side of the country is very populous, and is full of potters, and earth-makers; that is to say, people that tempered the earth for the China ware; and, as I was going along, our Portuguese pilot, who had always something or other to say to make us merry, came sneering to me, and told me, he would shew me the greatest rarity in all the country; and that I should have this to say of China, after all the ill-humoured things I had said of it, that I had seen one thing which was not to be seen in all the world beside. I was very importunate to know what it was. At last he told me it was a gentleman's house built all with China ware. 'Well,' said I, 'are not the materials of their building the product of their own country; and so it is all China ware, is it not?'—'No, no,' says he, 'I mean, it is a house all made of China ware, such as you call so in England; or, as it is called in our country, porcelain.'—'Well,' said I, 'such a thing may be. How big is it? Can we carry it in a box upon a camel? If we can, we will buy it.'—'Upon a camel!' said the old pilot, holding up both his hands, 'why there is a family of thirty people lives in it.'

I was then curious, indeed, to see it; and when I came to it, it was nothing but this: it was a timber house, or a house built, as we call it in England, with lath and plaister, but all the plaistering was really China ware, that is to say, it was plaistered with the earth that makes China ware.

The outside, which the sun shone hot upon, was glazed, and looked very well; perfectly white, and painted with blue figures, as the large China ware

ware in England is painted, and hard, as if it had been burnt. As to the inside, all the walls, instead of wainscot, were lined up with hardened and painted tiles, like the little square tiles we call gally-tiles in England, all made of the finest China, and the figures exceeding fine indeed, with extraordinary variety of colours, mixed with gold, many tiles making but one figure, but joined so artificially with mortar, being made of the same earth, that it was very hard to see where the tiles met. The floors of the rooms were of the same composition, and as hard as the earthen floors we have in use in several parts of England, especially Lincolnshire, Nottinghamshire, Leicestershire, &c. as hard as stone, and smooth, but not burnt and painted, except some smaller rooms like closets, which were all as it were paved with the same tile; the ceilings, and, in a word, all the plaistering-work in the whole house, were of the same earth; and, after all, the roof was covered with tiles of the same, but of a deep shining black.

This was a China warehouse, indeed, truly and literally to be called so; and, had I not been upon the journey, I could have staid some days to see and examine the particulars of it. They told me there were fountains and fish-ponds in the garden, all paved at the bottom and sides with the same, and fine statues set up in rows on the walks, entirely formed of the porcelain earth, and burnt whole.

As this is one of the singularities of China, so they may be allowed to excel in it; but I am very sure they excel in their accounts of it; for they told me such incredible things of their performance in crockery-ware, for such it is, that I care not to relate, as knowing they could not be true. One told me, in particular, of a workman that made a ship, with all its tackle, and masts, and sails, in earthen-ware, big enough to carry fifty men. If he had told me he launched it, and made a voyage to Japan in it, I might have said something to it indeed; but as it was, I knew the whole story, which was, in short, asking pardon for the word, that the fellow lyed; so I smiled, and said nothing to it.

This odd sight kept me two hours behind the caravan, for which the leader of it for the day fined me about

the value of three shillings; and told me, if it had been three days journey without the wall, as it was three days within, he must have fined me four times as much, and made me ask pardon the next council-day; so I promised to be more orderly; for, indeed, I found afterwards, the orders made for keeping all together were absolutely necessary for our common safety.

In two days more we passed the great China wall, made for a fortification against the Tartars; and a very great work it is, going over hills and mountains in an endless track, where the rocks are impassable, and the precipices such as no enemy could possibly enter, or indeed climb up, or where, if they did, no wall could hinder them. They tell us, its length is near a thousand English miles, but that the country is five hundred in a straight measured line, which the wall bounds, without measuring the windings and turnings it takes; it is about four fathom high, and as many thick in some places.

I stood still an hour or thereabouts, without trespassing on our orders, for so long the caravan was in passing the gate; I say, I stood still an hour to look at it on every side, near and far off; I mean, what was within my view; and the guide of our caravan, who had been extolling it for the wonder of the world, was mighty eager to hear my opinion of it. I told him it was a most excellent thing to keep off the Tartars; which he happened not to understand as I meant it, and so took it for a compliment; but the old pilot laughed. 'O Seignior Inglese,' said he, 'you speak in colours.'—'In colours!' said I; 'what do you mean by that? Why, you speak what looks white this way, and black that way; gay one way, and dull another way: you tell him it is a good wall to keep out Tartars; you tell me by that, it is good for nothing but to keep out Tartars; or, it will keep out none but Tartars. I understand you, Seignior Inglese, I understand you!' said he, joking; but Seignior Chinese understand you his own way.

'Well,' said I, 'Seignior, do you think it would stand out an army of our country people, with a good train of artillery; or our engineers, with two companies of miners? Would they

* they not batter it down in ten days, * that an army might enter in battalia, * or blow it up into the air, foundation * and all, that there should be no sign * of it left?' 'Ay, ay,' said he, 'I know * that.' The Chinese wanted mightily to know what I said, and I gave him leave to tell him a few days after, for we were then almost out of their country, and he was to leave us in a little time afterwards; but when he knew what I had said, he was dumb all the rest of the way, and we heard no more of his fine story of the Chinese power and greatness while he staid.

After we had passed this mighty nothing, called a wall, something like the Picts wall, so famous in Northumberland, and built by the Romans, we began to find the country thinly inhabited, and the people rather confined to live in fortified towns and cities, as being subject to the inroads and depredations of the Tartars, who rob in great armies, and therefore are not to be resisted by the naked inhabitants of an open country.

And here I began to find the necessity of keeping together in a caravan as we travelled; for we saw several troops of Tartars roving about; but when I came to see them distinctly, I wondered more that the Chinese empire could be conquered by such contemptible fellows; for they are a mere herd or croud of wild fellows, keeping no order, and understanding no discipline or manner of fight.

Their horses are poor, lean, starved creatures, taught nothing, and are fit for nothing; and this we found the first day we saw them, which was after we entered the wilder part of the country. Our leader for the day gave leave for about sixteen of us to go a hunting, as they call it; and what was this but hunting of sheep! However, it may be called hunting too; for the creatures are the wildest and swiftest of foot that ever I saw of their kind; only they will not run a great way, and you are sure of sport when you begin the chase; for they appear generally by thirty or forty in a flock, and, like true sheep, always keep together when they fly.

In pursuit of this odd sort of game, it was our hap to meet with about forty Tartars; whether they were hunting mutton as we were, or whether they looked for another kind of prey, I know

not; but as soon as they saw us, one of them blew a kind of horn very loud, but with a barbarous sound that I had never heard before; and, by the way, never care to hear again. We all supposed this was to call their friends about them; and so it was; for in less than half a quarter of an hour, a troop of forty or fifty more appeared at about a mile distance; but our work was over first, as it happened.

One of the Scots merchants of Moscow happened to be amongst us; and as soon as heard the horn, he told us, in short, that we had nothing to do, but to charge them immediately, without loss of time; and, drawing us up in a line, he asked, if we were resolved. We told him, we were ready to follow him: so he rode directly up to them. They stood gazing at us like a mere croud, drawn up in no order, nor shewing the face of any order at all; but as soon as they saw us advance, they let fly their arrows; which, however, missed us very happily: it seems they mistook not their aim, but their distance; for their arrows all fell a little short of us, but with so true an aim, that had we been about twenty yards nearer, we must have had several men wounded, if not killed.

Immediately we halted; and though it was at a great distance, we fired, and sent them leaden bullets for wooden arrows, following our shot full gallop, resolving to fall in among them sword in hand; for so our bold Scot that led us directed. He was, indeed, but a merchant, but he behaved with that vigour and bravery on this occasion, and yet with such a cool courage too, that I never saw any man in action fitter for command. As soon as we came up to them, we fired our pistols in their faces, and then drew; but they fled in the greatest confusion imaginable: the only stand any of them made, was on our right, where three of them stood, and, by signs, called the rest to come back to them, having a kind of scymitar in their hands, and their bows hanging at their backs. Our brave commander, without asking any body to follow him, galloped up close to them, and with his fusil knocked one of them off his horse, killed the second with his pistol, and the third ran away; and thus ended our fight: but we had this misfortune attending it, viz. that all our mutton
that

that we had in chace got away. We had not a man killed or hurt; but, as for the Tartars, there were about five of them killed: how many were wounded, we knew not; but this we knew, that the other party was so frightened with the noise of our guns, that they fled, and never made any attempt upon us.

We were all this while in the Chinese dominions, and therefore the Tartars were not so bold as afterwards; but in about five days we entered a vast great wild desert, which held us three days and nights march; and we were obliged to carry our water with us in great leather bottles, and to encamp all night, just as I have heard they do in the deserts of Arabia.

I asked our guides, whose dominion this was in; and they told me, this was a kind of border, that might be called No Man's Land, being part of the Great Karakathay, or Grand Tartary; but that however, it was reckoned to China: that there was no care taken here, to preserve it from the inroads of thieves; and therefore it was reckoned the worst desert in the whole march, though we were to go over some much larger.

In passing this wilderness, which, I confess, was at the first view very frightful to me, we saw two or three times little parties of the Tartars, but they seemed to be upon their own affairs, and to have no design upon us; and so, like the man who met the devil, if they had nothing to say to us, we had nothing to say to them; we let them go.

Once, however, a party of them came so near, as to stand and gaze at us; whether it was to consider what they should do, viz. to attack us, or not attack us, we knew not; but when we were passed at some distance by them, we made a rear-guard of forty men, and stood ready for them, letting the caravan pass half a mile, or thereabouts, before us. After a while they marched off, only we found they assaulted us with five arrows at their parting; one of which wounded a horse, so that it disabled him; and we left him the next day, poor creature, in great need of a good farrier. We suppose they might shoot more arrows, which might fall short of us; but we saw no more arrows or Tartars at that time.

We travelled near a month after this, the ways being not so good as at first,

though still in the dominions of the emperor of China; but lay, for the most part, in villages, some of which were fortified because of the incursions of the Tartars. When we came to one of these towns (it was about two days and a half's journey before we were to come to the city of Naüm) I wanted to buy a camel, of which there are plenty to be sold all the way upon that road, and of horses also, such as they are, because so many caravans coming that way, they are very often wanted. The person that I spoke to to get me a camel, would have gone and fetched it for me; but I, like a fool, must be officious, and go myself along with him. The place was about two miles out of the village, where it seems they kept the camels and horses feeding under a guard.

I walked it on foot, with my old pilot in company, and a Chinese, being desirous, forsooth, of a little variety. When we came to this place, it was a low marshy ground, walled round with a stone wall, piled up dry, without mortar or earth among it, like a park, with a little guard of Chinese soldiers at the doors. Having bought a camel, and agreed for the price, I came away; and the Chinese man that went with me led the camel, when on a sudden came up five Tartars on horseback; two of them seized the fellow, and took the camel from him, while the other three stepped up to me and my old pilot, seeing us, as it were, unarmed, for I had no weapon about me but my sword, which could but ill defend me against three horsemen. The first that came up, stopped short upon my drawing my sword, (for they are arrant cowards;) but a second coming up upon my left, gave me a blow on the head, which I never felt till afterward, and wondered, when I came to myself, what was the matter with me, and where I was, for he laid me flat on the ground; but my never-failing old pilot, the Portuguese, (so Providence unlooked-for directs deliverances from dangers, which to us are unforeseen) had a pistol in his pocket, which I knew nothing of, nor the Tartars neither; if they had, I suppose they would not have attacked us. But cowards are always boldest when there is no danger.

The old man seeing me down, with a bold heart stepped up to the fellow that had struck me, and laying hold of his

his arm with one hand, and pulling him down by main force a little towards him with the other, he shot him into the head, and laid him dead on the spot; he then immediately stepped up to him who had stopped us, as I said, and before he could come forward again (for it was all done as it were in a moment) made a blow at him with a scymitar, which he always wore; but, missing the man, cut his horse into the side of his head; cut one of his ears off by the root, and a great slice down the side of his face. The poor beast, enraged with the wounds, was no more to be governed by his rider, though the fellow sat well enough too; but away he flew, and carried him quite out of the pilot's reach, and at some distance rising upon his hind legs, threw down the Tartar and fell upon him.

In this interval the poor Chinese came in, who had lost the camel, but he had no weapon; however, seeing the Tartar down, and his horse fallen upon him, he runs to him, and, seizing upon an ugly ill-favoured weapon he had by his side, something like a pole-ax, but not a pole-ax neither, he wrenched it from him, and made shift to knock his Tartarian brains out with it. But my old man had the third Tartar to deal with still; and, seeing he did not fly as he expected, nor come on to fight him as he apprehended, but stood stock-still, the old man stood still too, and falls to work with his tackle to charge his pistol again; but as soon as the Tartar saw the pistol, whether he supposed it to be the same, or another, I know not, but away he scoured, and left my pilot, my champion I called him afterwards, a compleat victory.

By this time I was a little awake; for I thought, when I first began to awake, that I had been in a sweet sleep; but as I said above, I wondered where I was, how I came upon the ground, and what was the matter; in a word, a few minutes after, as sense returned, I felt pain, though I did not know where; I clapped my hand to my head, and took it away bloody; then I felt my head-ach; and then, in another moment, memory returned, and every thing was present to me again.

I jumped up upon my feet instantly, and got hold of my sword, but no enemies in view, I found a Tartar lie dead, and his horse standing very quiet-

ly by him; and, looking farther, I saw my champion and deliverer, who had been to see what the Chinese had done, coming back with his hanger in his hand. The old man, seeing me on my feet, came running to me, and embraced me with a great deal of joy; being afraid before that I had been killed; and seeing me bloody, would see how I was hurt; but it was not much, only what we call a broken head; neither did I afterwards find any great inconvenience from the blow, other than the place which was hurt, and which was well again in two or three days.

We made no great gain, however, by this victory, for we lost a camel and gained a horse; but that which was remarkable, when we came back to the village, the man demanded to be paid for the camel. I disputed it, and it was brought to a hearing before the Chinese judge of the place; that is to say, in English, we went before a justice of the peace. Give him his due, he acted with a great deal of prudence and impartiality; and, having heard both sides, he gravely asked the Chinese man that went with me to buy the camel, whose servant he was. 'I am no servant,' said he; 'but went with the stranger.'—'At whose request?' said the justice. 'At the stranger's request,' said he. 'Why then,' said the justice, 'you were the stranger's servant for the time; and the camel being delivered to his servant, it was delivered to him, and he must pay for it.'

I confess the thing was so clear, that I had not a word to say; but admiring to see such just reasoning upon the consequence, and so accurate stating the case, I paid willingly for the camel, and sent for another; but you may observe, I sent for it; I did not go to fetch it myself any more, I had enough of that.

The city of Naum is a frontier of the Chinese empire; they call it fortified, and so it is, as fortifications go there; for this I will venture to affirm, that all the Tartars in Karakathay, which, I believe are some millions, could not batter down the walls with their bows and arrows; but to call it strong, if it were attacked with cannon, would be to make those who understand it laugh at you.

We

We wanted, as I have said, above two days journey of this city, when messengers were sent express to every part of the road, to tell all travellers and caravans to halt till they had a guard sent to them; for that an unusual body of Tartars, making ten thousand in all, had appeared in the way, about thirty miles beyond the city.

This was very bad news to travellers; however, it was carefully done of the governor, and we were very glad to hear we should have a guard. Accordingly, two days after, we had two hundred soldiers sent us from a garrison of the Chinese on our left, and three hundred more from the city of Naum, and with those we advanced boldly; the three hundred soldiers from Naum marched in our front, the two hundred in our rear, and our men on each side of our camels with our baggage, and the whole caravan in the centre. In this order, and well prepared for battle, we thought ourselves a match for the whole ten thousand Mogul Tartars, if they had appeared; but the next day, when they did appear, it was quite another thing.

It was early in the morning, when marching from a little well-situated town, called Changu, we had a river to pass, where we were obliged to ferry; and had the Tartars had an intelligence, then had been the time to have attacked us, when, the caravan being over, the rear guard was behind; but they did not appear there.

About three hours after, when we were entered upon a desert of about fifteen or sixteen miles over, behold, by a cloud of dust they raised, we saw an enemy was at hand; and they were at hand indeed, for they came on upon the spur.

The Chinese, our guard on the front, who had talked so big the day before, began to stagger, and the soldiers frequently looked behind them; which is a certain sign in a soldier that he is just ready to run away. My old pilot was of my mind; and being near me, he called out. 'Seignior Inglese,' said he, 'those fellows must be encouraged, or they will ruin us all; for if the Tartars come on, they will never stand it.'—'I am of your mind,' said I: 'but what course must be done?'—'Done,' said he, 'let fifty of our men advance, and flank them on each wing,

and encourage them, and they will fight like brave fellows in brave company; but without it they will every man turn his back.' Immediately I rode up to our leader, and told him, who was exactly of our mind; and accordingly fifty of us marched to the right wing, and fifty to the left, and the rest made a line of reserve; for so we marched, leaving the last two hundred men to make another body by themselves, and to guard the camels; only that, if need were, they should send an hundred men to assist the last fifty.

In a word, the Tartars came on, and an innumerable company they were; how many, we could not tell; but ten thousand we thought was the least. A party of them came on first, and viewed our posture, traversing the ground in the front of our line; and as as we found them within gun-shot, our leader ordered the two wings to advance swiftly, and give them a salvo on each wing with their shot, which was done; but they went off, and I suppose went back to give an account of the reception they were like to meet with; and, indeed, that salute clogged their stomachs; for they immediately halted, stood a while to consider of it, and, wheeling off to the left, they gave over the design, and said no more to us for that time, which was very agreeable to our circumstances, which were but very indifferent for a battle with such a number.

Two days after this we came to the city of Naum, or Nauum. We thanked the governor for his care of us, and collected to the value of one hundred crowns, or thereabouts, which we gave to the soldiers sent to guard us; and here we rested one day. This is a garrison indeed, and there were nine hundred soldiers kept here; but the reason of it was, that formerly the Muscovite frontiers lay nearer to them than they do now, the Muscovites having abandoned that part of the country (which lies from the city west for about two hundred miles) as desolate and unfit for use; and more especially, being so very remote, and so difficult to send troops hither for its defence; for we had yet above two thousand miles to Muscovy, properly so called.

After this we passed several great rivers, and two dreadful deserts, one of which we were sixteen days passing

M m

over,

over, and which, as I said, was to be called, No Man's Land; and, on the 13th of April, we came to the frontiers of the Muscovite dominions. I think the first city, or town, or fortress, whatever it might be called, that belonged to the Czar of Muscovy, was called Argun, being on the west side of the river Argun.

I could not but discover an infinite satisfaction, that I was now arrived in, as I called it, a Christian country; or, at least, in a country governed by Christians; for though the Muscovites do, in my opinion, but just deserve the name of Christians, yet such they pretend to be, and are very devout in their way. It would certainly occur to any man who travels the world as I have done, and who had any power of reflection; I say, it would occur to him to reflect, what a blessing it is to be brought into the world where the name of God and of a Redeemer is known, worshipped and adored, and not where the people, given up by Heaven to strong delusions, worship the devil, and prostrate themselves to stocks and stones; worship monsters, elephants, horrible shaped animals, and statues or images of monsters. Not a town or city we passed through but had their pagods, their idols, and their temples, and ignorant people worshipping even the works of their own hands.

Now we came where, at least, a face of the Christian worship appeared, where the knee was bowed to Jesus: and whether ignorantly or not, yet the Christian religion was owned, and the name of the true God was called upon and adored; and it made the very recesses of my soul rejoice to see it. I saluted the brave Scotch merchant I mentioned above, with my first acknowledgment of this; and, taking him by the hand, I said to him, 'Blessed be God, we are once again come among Christians!' He smiled, and answered, 'Do not rejoice too soon, countryman; these Muscovites are but an odd sort of Christians; and but for the name of it, you may see very little of the substance for some months farther of our journey.'

'Well,' said I, 'but still it is better than Paganism, and worshipping of devils.'—'Why, I'll tell you,' said he; 'except the Russian soldiers in

'garrisons, and a few of the inhabitants of the cities upon the road, all the rest of this country, for above a thousand miles farther, is inhabited by the worst and most ignorant of Pagans.' And so indeed we found it.

We were now launched into the greatest piece of solid earth, if I understand any thing of the surface of the globe, that is to be found in any part of the world. We had at least twelve hundred miles to the sea, eastward; we had at least two thousand to the bottom of the Baltick Sea, westward; and almost three thousand miles, if we left that sea, and went on west to the British and French Channels; we had full five thousand miles to the Indian or Persian Sea, south; and about eight hundred miles to the Frozen Sea, north: nay, if some people may be believed, there might be no sea north-east till we came round the pole, and consequently into the north-west, and so had a continent of land into America, no mortal knows where; though I could give some reasons why I believe that to be a mistake too.

As we entered into the Muscovite dominions, a good while before we came to any considerable town, we had nothing to observe there but this; first, that all the rivers run to the east. As I understood by the charts which some of our caravans had with them, it was plain, that all those rivers ran into the great river Yamour, or Gam-mour. This river, by the natural course of it, must run into the East Sea, or Chinese ocean. The story they tell us, that the mouth of this river is choaked up with bulrushes of a monstrous growth, viz. three feet about, and twenty or thirty feet high, I must be allowed to say, I believe nothing of; but as it's navigation is of no use, because there is no trade that way, the Tartars, to whom alone it belongs, dealing in nothing but cattle, so nobody that ever I heard of, has been curious enough either to go down to the mouth of it in boats, or to come up from the mouth of it in ships; but this is certain, that this river running due east, in the latitude of 60 degrees, carries a vast concourse of rivers along with it, and finds an ocean to empty itself in that latitude; so we are sure of sea there.

Some leagues to the north of this ri-

ver there are several considerable rivers, whose streams run as due north as the Yamour runs east; and these are all found to join their waters with the great river Tartarus, named so from the northernmost nations of the Mogul Tartars, who, the Chinese say, were the first Tartars in the world; and who, as our geographers alledge, are the Gog and Magog mentioned in sacred Story.

These rivers running all northward, as well as all the other rivers I am yet to speak of, make it evident, that the northern ocean bounds the land also on that side; so that it does not seem rational in the least to think, that the land can extend itself to join with America on that side, or that there is not a communication between the northern and the eastern ocean: but of this I shall say no more; it was my observation at that time, and therefore I take notice of it in this place. We now advanced from the river Arguna by easy and moderate journies, and were very visibly obliged to the care the Czar of Muscovy has taken, to have cities and towns built in as many places as are possible to place them, where his soldiers keep garrison something like the stationary soldiers placed by the Romans in the remotest countries of their empire, some of which I had read were particularly placed in Britain for the security of commerce, and for the lodging of travellers: and thus it was here; for wherever we came, though at these towns and stations, the garrisons and governor were Russians, and professedly mere pagans, sacrificing to idols, and worshipping the sun, moon, and stars, or all the host of heaven; and not only so, but were of all the heathens and pagans that ever I met with, the most barbarous, except only that they did not eat man's flesh, as our savages of America did.

Some instances of this we met with in the country between Arguna, where we enter the Muscovite dominions, and a city of Tartars and Russians together, called Nertzinskay; in which space is a continued desert or forest, which cost us twenty days to travel over it. In a village near the last of those places I had the curiosity to go and see their way of living, which is most brutish and unsufferable. They had, I suppose, a great sacrifice that day; for there stood out

upon an old stump of a tree, an idol made of wood, frightful as the devil; at least as any thing we can think of to represent the devil can be made. It had a head certainly not so much as resembling any creature that the world ever saw; ears as big as goats horns, and as high; eyes as big as a crown-piece; a nose like a crooked ram's horn, and a mouth extended four-cornered, like that of a lion, with horrible teeth, hooked like a parrot's under bill. It was dressed up in the filthiest manner that you can suppose; its upper garment was of sheep-skins, with the wool outward; a great Tartar bonnet on the head, with two horns growing through it. It was about eight feet high, yet had no feet or legs, or any other proportion of parts.

This scarecrow was set up at the outside of the village, and when I came near to it, there were sixteen or seventeen creatures, whether men or women I could not tell, for they make no distinction by their habits either of body or head; these lay all flat on the ground, round this formidable block of shapeless wood. I saw no motion among them, any more than if they had been logs of wood like their idol: at first I really thought they had been so; but when I came a little nearer, they started up upon their feet, and raised an howling cry, as if it had been so many deep-mouthed hounds, and walked away as if they were displeased at our disturbing them. A little way off from this monitor, and at the door of a tent or hut, made all of sheep-skins and cow-skins dried, stood three butchers: I thought they were such; for when I came nearer to them, I found they had long knives in their hands, and in the middle of the tent appeared three sheep killed, and one young bullock or steer. These, it seems, were sacrifices to that senseless log of an idol; and these three men priests belonging to it, and the seventeen prostrated wretches were the people who brought the offering, and were making their prayers to that stock.

I confess I was more moved at their stupidity, and this brutish worship of an hobgoblin, than ever I was at any thing in my life; to see God's most glorious and best creature, to whom he had granted so many advantages, even by creation, above the rest of the works of his hands, vested with a reasonable soul,

and that soul adorned with faculties and capacities adapted both to honour his Maker, and be honoured by him; I say, to see it sunk and degenerated to a degree so more than stupid, as to prostrate itself to a frightful nothing, a mere imaginary object, dressed up by themselves, and made terrible to themselves by their own contrivance, adorned only with clouts and rags; and that this should be the effect of mere ignorance, wrought up into hellish devotion by the devil himself, who, envying his Maker the homage and adoration of his creatures, had deluded them into such gross, surfeiting, sordid, and brutish things, as one would think should shock nature itself.

But what signified all the astonishment and reflection of thoughts! Thus it was, and I saw it before my eyes; and there was no room to wonder at it, or think it impossible; all my admiration turned to rage, and I rode up to the image or monster, call it what you will, and with my sword cut the bonnet that was on its head in two, in the middle, so that it hung down by one of the horns; and one of our men that was with me took hold of the sheep-skin that covered it, and pulled at it; when, behold, a most hideous outcry and howling ran through the village, and two or three hundred people came about my ears, so that I was glad to scour for it; for we saw some had bows and arrows; but I resolved from that moment to visit them again.

Our caravan rested three nights at the town, which was about four miles off, in order to provide some horses, which they wanted, several of the horses having been lamed and jaded with the badness of the way, and our long march over the last desert; so we had some leisure here to put my design in execution. I communicated my project to the Scots merchant of Moscow, of whose courage I had had sufficient testimony, as above. I told him what I had seen, and with what indignation I had since thought, that human nature could be so degenerate. I told him, I was resolved, if I could get but four or five men well armed, to go with me, to go and destroy that vile, abominable idol; to let them see, that it had no power to help itself, and consequently could not be an object of worship, or to be prayed to,

much less help them that offered sacrifices to it.

He laughed at me. Said he, 'Your zeal may be good; but what do you propose to yourself by it?'—'Propose,' said I, 'to vindicate the honour of God, which is insulted by this devil-worship.'—'But how will it vindicate the honour of God,' said he, 'while the people will not be able to know what you mean by it, unless you could speak to them too, and tell them so; and then they will fight you too, I will assure you; for they are desperate fellows, and that especially in defence of their idolatry.'—'Can we not,' said I, 'do it in the night, and then leave them the reasons in writing, in their own language?'—'Writing!' said he, 'why there is not, in five nations of them, one man that knows any thing of a letter, or how to read a word in any language, or in their own.'—'Wretched ignorance!' said I to him; 'however, I have a great mind to do it; perhaps nature may draw inferences from it to them, to let them see how brutish they are, to worship such horrid things.'—'Look you, Sir,' said he, 'if your zeal prompts you to it so warmly, you must do it; but, in the next place, I would have you consider, these wild nations of people are subjected, by force, to the Czar of Muscovy's dominions; and if you do this, it is ten to one but they will come by thousands to the governor of Nert-zinskay, and complain, and demand satisfaction; and if he cannot give them satisfaction, it is ten to one but they revolt; and it will occasion a new war with all the Tartars in the country.'

This, I confess, put new thoughts into my head for a while; but I harped upon the same string still; and all that day I was uneasy to put my project in execution. Towards the evening the Scots merchant met me by accident in our walk about the town, and desired to speak with me. 'I believe,' said he, 'I have put you off of your good design; I have been a little concerned about it since; for I abhor the idol and idolatry as much as you can do.'—'Truly,' said I, 'you have put it off a little as to the execution of it, but you have not put it

all out of my thoughts; and, I believe, I shall do it still before I quit this place, though I were to be delivered up to them for satisfaction.' — 'No, no,' said he, 'God forbid they should deliver you up to such a crew of monsters! they shall not do that neither; that would be murdering you indeed.' — 'Why,' said I, 'how would they use me?' — 'Use you!' said he; 'I will tell you how they served a poor Russian, who affronted them in their worship just as you did, and whom they took prisoner; after they had lamed him with an arrow, that he could not run away, they took him and stripped him stark naked, and set him upon the top of the idol monster, and stood all round him, and shot as many arrows into him as would stick over his whole body; and then they burnt him, and all the arrows sticking in him, as a sacrifice to the idol.' — 'And was this the same idol?' said I. 'Yes,' said he, 'the very same.' — 'Well,' said I, 'I will tell you a story.' So I related the story of our men at Madagascar, and how they burnt and sacked the village there, and killed man, woman, and child, for their murdering one of our men, just as it is related before: and when I had done, I added, that I thought we ought to do so to this village.

He listened very attentively to this story; but when I talked of doing so to that village, said he, 'You mistake very much; it was not this village, it was almost a hundred miles from this place; but it was the same idol, for they carry him about in procession all over the country.' — 'Well,' said I, 'then that idol ought to be punished for it; and it shall,' said I, 'if I live this night out.'

In a word, finding me resolute, he liked the design, and told me I should not go alone, but he would go with me; but he would go first, and bring a stout fellow, one of his countrymen, to go also with us; 'and one,' said he, 'as famous for his zeal as you can desire any one to be against such devilish things as these.' In a word, he brought me his comrade, a Scotsman, whom he called Captain Richardson; and I gave him a full account of what I had seen, and also of what I intended; and he told me readily,

he would go with me if it cost him his life. So we agreed to go, only we three. I had, indeed, proposed it to my partner; but he declined it. He said, he was ready to assist me to the utmost, and upon all occasions, for my defence; but that this was an adventure quite out of his way. So, I say, we resolved upon our work, only we three, and my man servant, and to put it in execution that night about midnight, with all the secrecy imaginable.

However, upon second thoughts, we were willing to delay it till the next night, because the caravan being to set forward in the morning, we supposed the governor could not pretend to give them any satisfaction upon us when we were out of his power. The Scots merchant, as steady in his resolution to enterprize it, as bold in executing, brought me a Tartar's robe or gown of sheep-skins, and a bonnet, with a bow and arrows, and had provided the same for himself and his countryman, that the people, if they saw us, should not be able to determine who we were.

All the first night we spent in mixing up some combustible matter with aqua-vitæ, gunpowder, and such other materials as we could get; and, having a good quantity of tar in a little pot, about an hour after night we set out upon our expedition.

We came to the place about eleven o'clock at night, and found that the people had not the least jealousy of danger attending their idol. The night was cloudy, yet the moon gave us light enough to see that the idol stood just in the same posture and place that it did before. The people seemed to be all at their rest; only, that in the great hut or tent, as we called it, where we saw the three priests, whom we mistook for butchers, we saw a light, and going up close to the door, we heard people talking, as if there were five or six of them; we concluded therefore, that if we set wildfire to the idol, these men would come out immediately, and run up to the place to rescue it from the destruction that we intended for it; and what to do with them we knew not. Once we thought of carrying it away, and setting fire to it at a distance; but when we came to handle it, we found it too bulky for our carriage;

so we were at a loss again. The second Scotsman was for setting fire to the tent or hut, and knocking the creatures that were there on the head when they came out: but I could not join with that; I was against killing them, if it was possible to be avoided.

'Well then,' said the Scots merchant, 'I will tell you what we will do; we will try to take them prisoners, tie their hands, and make them stand and see their idol destroyed.'

As it happened, we had twine or packthread enough about us, which we used to tie our fire-works together with; so we resolved to attack these people first, and with as little noise as we could. The first thing we did, we knocked at the door; when one of the priests coming to the door, we immediately seized upon him, stopped his mouth, and tied his hands behind him, and led him to the idol, where we gagged him, that he might not make a noise; tied his feet also together, and left him on the ground.

Two of us then waited at the door, expecting that another would come out to see what the matter was; but we waited so long till the third man came back to us; and then, nobody coming out, we knocked again gently, and immediately out came two more, and we served them just in the same manner, but were obliged to go all with them, and lay them down by the idol some distance from one another; when, going back, we found two more were come out to the door, and a third stood behind them within the door. We seized the two, and immediately tied them, when the third stepping back and crying out, my Scots merchant went in after him, and taking out a composition we had made, that would only smok and stink, he set fire to it, and threw it in among them; by that time the other Scotsman and my man taking charge of the two men already bound, and tied together also by the arm, led them away to the idol, and left them there, to see if their idol would relieve them, making haste back to us.

When the furze we had thrown in had filled the hut with so much smok that they were almost sufficated, we then threw in a small leather bag of another kind, which flamed like a candle, and following it in, we found

there were but four people left, who, it seems were two men and two women, and as we supposed had been about some of their diabolick sacrifices. They appeared, in short, frightened to death, at least so as to sit trembling and stupid, and not able to speak neither for the smoke.

In a word, we took them, bound them as we had the other, and all without any noise. I should have said, we brought them out of the house or hut first; for indeed we were not able to bear the smoke any more than they were. When we had done this, we carried them all together to the idol. When we came there, we fell to work with him; and first we daubed him all over, and his robes also, with tar and such other stuff as we had, which was tallow mixed with brimstone; then we stopped his eyes, and ears, and mouth full of gunpowder; then we wrapped up a great piece of wildfire in his bonnet; and then sticking all the combustibles we had brought with us upon him, we looked about to see if we could find any thing else to help to burn him; when my Scotsman remembered, that by the tent or hut where the men were, there lay a heap of dry forage, whether straw or rushes I do not remember; away he and the other Scotsman ran and fetched their arms full of that. When we had done this, we took all our prisoners, and brought them, having untied their feet, and ungagged their mouths, and made them stand up, and set them just before their monstrous idol, and then set fire to the whole.

We stayed by it a quarter of an hour, or thereabouts, till the powder in the eyes, and mouth and ears of the idol blew up, and, as we could perceive, had split and deformed the shape of it; and, in a word, till we saw it burn into a mere block or log of wood; and then setting the dry forage to it, we found it would be soon quite consumed, so we began to think of going away; but the Scotsman said, 'No, we must not go; for these poor deluded wretches will all throw themselves into the fire, and burn themselves with the idol.' So we resolved to stay till the forage was burnt down too, and then we came away and left them.

In the morning we appeared among
our

our fellow-travellers, exceeding busy in getting ready for our journey; nor could any man suggest that we had been any where but in our beds, as travellers might be supposed to be, to fit themselves for the fatigues of that day's journey.

But it did not end so; for the next day came a great multitude of the country-people, not only of this village, but of a hundred more, for aught I know, to the town-gates; and in a most outrageous manner, demanded satisfaction of the Russian governor, for the insulting their priests, and burning their great Cham-Chi-Thaungu; such an hard name they gave the monstrous creature they worshipped. The people of Nertzinskay were at first in a great consternation; for they said the Tartars were no less than thirty-thousand, and that in a few days more they would be one hundred thousand strong.

The Russian governor sent out messengers to appease them, and gave them all the good words imaginable. He assured them he knew nothing of it, and that there had not a soul of his garrison been abroad; that it could not be from any body there; and if they would let him know who it was, they should be exemplarily punished. They returned, haughtily, that all the country revered the great Cham-Chi-Thaungu, who dwelt in the sun, and no mortal would have dared to offer violence to his image but some Christian miscreant; so they called them, it seems; and they therefore denounced war against him, and all the Russians who they said were miscreants and Christians.

The governor, still patient, and unwilling to make a breach, or to have any cause of war alledged to be given by him, the czar having straightly charged him to treat the conquered country with gentleness and civility, gave them still all the good words he could; at last he told them, there was a caravan gone towards Russia that morning, and perhaps it was some of them, who had done them this injury; and that, if they would be satisfied with that, he would send after them to enquire into it. This seemed to appease them a little; and accordingly the governor sent after us, and gave us a particular account how the thing was; intimating withal, that if any in our caravan had done it, they should make their escape; but that,

whether they had done it or no, we should make all the haste forward that was possible; and that, in the mean time, he would keep them in play as long as he could.

This was very friendly in the governor. However, when it came to the caravan, there was nobody knew any thing of the matter; and, as for us that were guilty, we were the least of all suspected; none so much as asked us a question: however, the captain of the caravan, for the time, took the hint that the governor gave us, and we marched or travelled two days and two nights without any considerable stop, and then we lay at a village called Plothus; nor did we make any long stop here, but hastened on towards Jarawena, another of the Czar of Muscovy's colonies, and where we expected we should be safe. But it is to be observed, that here we began, for two or three days march, to enter upon a vast nameless desert, of which I shall say more in it's place; and which, if we had now been upon it, it is more than probable we had been all destroyed. It was the second day's march from Plothus, that, by the clouds of dust behind us at a great distance, some of our people began to be sensible we were pursued. We had entered the desert, and had passed by a great lake called Schanks Ofier, when we perceived a very great body of horse appear on the other side of the lake to the north, we travelling west. We observed they went away west, as we did; but had supposed we should have taken that side of the lake, whereas we very happily took the south side, and in two days more we saw them not, for they, believing we were still before them, pushed on, till they came to the river Udda. This is a very great river when it passes farther north; but when we came to it, we found it narrow and fordable.

The third day they either found their mistake, or had intelligence of us, and came pouring in upon us towards the dusk of the evening. We had, to our great satisfaction, just pitched upon a place for our camp, which was very convenient for the night; for as we were upon a desert, though but at the beginning of it, that was above five hundred miles over, we had no towns to lodge at, and indeed expected none but the city Jarawena, which we had yet

yet two days march to. The desert, however, had some few woods in it on this side, and little rivers, which ran all into the great river Udda. It was in a narrow strait between two small but very thick woods, that we pitched our little camp for that night; expecting to be attacked in the night.

Nobody knew, but ourselves; what we were pursued for; but as it was usual for the Mogul Tartars to go about in troops in that desert, so the caravans always fortify themselves every night against them, as against armies of robbers; and it was therefore no new thing to be pursued.

But we had this night, of all the nights of our travels, a most advantageous camp; for we lay between two woods, with a little rivulet running just before our front; so that we could not be surrounded or attacked any way, but in our front or rear: we took care also to make our front as strong as we could, by placing our packs, with our camels and horses, all in a line on the inside of the river, and we felled some trees in our rear.

In this posture we encamped for the night; but the enemy was upon us before we had finished our situation: they did not come on us like thieves, as we expected, but sent three messengers to us, to demand the men to be delivered to them, that had abused their priest and burnt their god Cham-Chi-Thaungu, that they might burn them with fire; and, upon this, they said they would go away, and do us no farther harm, otherwise they would burn us all with fire. Our men looked very blank at this message, and began to stare at one another, to see who looked with most guilt in their faces; but nobody was the word, nobody did it. The leader of the caravan sent word, he was well assured it was not done by any of our camp; that we were peaceable merchants travelling on our business; that we had done no harm to them, or to any one else; and therefore they must look farther for their enemies who had injured them, for we were not the people: so desired them not to disturb us; for if they did, we should defend ourselves.

They were far from being satisfied with this for an answer, and a great croud of them came down in the morning, by break of day, to our

camp; but, seeing us in such an advantageous situation, they durst come no farther than the brook in our front, where they stood, and shewed us such a number, as, indeed, terrified us very much; for those that spoke least of them; spoke of ten thousand. Here they stood, and looked at us a while, and then setting up a great howl, they let fly a cloud of arrows among us; but we were well enough fortified for that, for we were sheltered under our baggage; and I do not remember that one man of us was hurt.

Some time after this, we saw them move a little to our right, and expected them on the rear, when a cunning fellow, a Cossack, as they call them, of Jarawena, in the pay of the Muscovites, calling to the leader of the caravan, said to him, 'I will go send all these people away to Sibeilka.' This was a city four or five days journey, at least, to the south, and rather behind us. So he takes his bow and arrows; and, getting on horseback, he rides away from our rear directly, as it were, back to Nertzinskay; after this, he takes a great circuit about, and comes to the army of the Tartars, as if he had been sent express to tell them a long story, that the people who had burnt their Cham-Chi-Thaungu were gone to Sibeilka with a caravan of miscreants, as he called them; that is to say, Christians; and that they were resolved to burn the god Scal-Ilar belonging to the Tonguses.

As this fellow was a mere Tartar, and perfectly spoke their language, he counterfeited so well, that they all took it from him, and away they drove in a most violent hurry to Sibeilka, which it seems was five days journey to the south, and in less than three hours they were entirely out of our sight, and we never heard any more of them, nor ever knew whether they went to that other place called Sibeilka or not.

So we passed safely on to the city of Jarawena, where there was a garrison of Muscovites; and there we rested five days, the caravan being exceedingly fatigued with the last day's march, and with want of rest in the night.

From this city we had a frightful desert, which held us three and twenty days march. We furnished ourselves

selves with some tents here, for the better accommodating ourselves in the night; and the leader of the caravan procured sixteen carriages, or waggon, of the country, for carrying our water and provisions: and these carriages were our defence every night round our little camp; so that had the Tartars appeared, unless they had been very numerous indeed, they would not have been able to hurt us.

We may well be supposed to want rest again after this long journey; for in this desert we saw neither house nor tree, nor scarce a bush; we saw, indeed, abundance of the sable-hunters, as they called them: these are all Tartars of the Mogul Tartary, of which this country is a part, and they frequently attack small caravans; but we saw no numbers of them together. I was curious to see the sable-skins they caught; but I could never speak with any of them; for they durst not come near us, neither durst we straggle from our company to go near them.

After we had passed this desert, we came into a country pretty well inhabited; that is to say, we found towns and castles settled by the Czar of Muscovy, with garrisons of stationary soldiers to protect the caravans, and defend the country against the Tartars, who would otherwise make it very dangerous travelling; and his czarish majesty has given such strict orders for the well guarding the caravans and merchants, that if there are any Tartars heard of in the country, detachments of the garrison are always sent to see travellers safe from station to station.

And thus the governor of Adinskoy, whom I had an opportunity to make a visit to, by means of the Scotch merchant who was acquainted with him, offered us a guard of fifty men, if we thought there was any danger, to the next station.

I thought, long before this, that as we came nearer to Europe we should find the country better peopled, and the people more civilized; but I found myself mistaken in both, for we had yet the nation of the Tongueses to pass through, where we saw the same tokens of paganism and barbarity; or worse, than before; only as they were conquered by the Muscovites, and entirely reduced, they were not so dangerous; but for the rudeness of man-

ners, idolatry, and polytheism, no people in the world ever went beyond them. They are clothed all in skins of beasts, and their houses are built of the same. You know not a man from a woman, neither by the ruggedness of their countenances, or their cloaths; and in the winter, when the ground is covered with snow, they live under ground in houses like vaults, which have cavities or caves going from one to another.

If the Tartars had their Cham-Chi-Thaungu for a whole village or country, these had idols in every hut and every cave; besides, they worship the stars, the sun, the water, the snow; and, in a word, every thing that they do not understand, and they understand but very little; so that almost every element, every uncommon thing, sets them a sacrificing.

But I am no more to describe people than countries, any farther than my own story comes to be concerned in them. I met with nothing peculiar to myself in all this country, which I reckon was from the desert which I spoke of last at least four hundred miles, half of it being another desert, which took us up twelve days severe travelling, without house, tree, or bush; but we were obliged again to carry our own provisions, as well water as bread. After we were out of this desert, and had travelled two days, we came to Janezay, a Muscovite city or station, on the great River Janezay. This river, they told us, parted Europe from Asia, though our map-makers, as I am told, do not agree to it; however, it is certainly the eastern boundary of the ancient Siberia, which now makes a province only of the vast Muscovite empire, but is itself equal in bigness to the whole empire of Germany.

And yet here I observed ignorance and paganism still prevailed, except in the Muscovite garrisons. All the country between the River Oby and the River Janezay is as entirely Pagans, and the people as barbarous, as the remotest of the Tartars; nay, as any nation, for aught I know, in Asia or America. I also found, which I observed to the Muscovite governors whom I had opportunity to converse with, that the Pagans are not much the wiser, or the nearer Christianity, for being under the Muscovite govern-

ment; which they acknowledged was true enough: but they said it was none of their business; that if the czar expected to convert his Siberian, or Tonguese, or Tartar subjects, it should be done by sending clergymen among them, not soldiers; and they added, with more sincerity than I expected, that they found it was not so much the concern of their monarch to make the people Christians, as it was to make them subjects.

From this river to the great River Oby, we crossed a wild uncultivated country; I cannot say it is a barbarous soil, it is only barren of people and good management, otherwise it is in itself a most pleasant, fruitful, and agreeable country. What inhabitants we found in it are all Pagans, except such as are sent among them from Russia; for this is the country, I mean on both sides the River Oby, whither the Muscovite criminals that are not put to death are banished, and from whence it is next to impossible they should ever come away.

I have nothing material to say of my particular affairs, till I came to Tobolski, the capital of Siberia, where I continued some time on the following occasion.

We had been now almost seven months on our journey, and winter began to come on apace; whereupon my partner and I called a council about our particular affairs, in which we found it proper, considering that we were bound for England, and not for Moscow, to consider how to dispose of ourselves. They told us of sledges and rein-deer to carry us over the snow in the winter-time; and, indeed, they have such things as it would be incredible to relate the particulars of, by which means the Russians travel more in the winter than they can in summer; because in these sledges they are able to run night and day: the snow being frozen, is one universal covering to nature, by which the hills, the vales, the rivers, the lakes, are all smooth, and hard as a stone; and they run upon the surface without any regard to what is underneath.

But I had no occasion to push at a winter journey of this kind; I was bound to England, not to Moscow, and my route lay two ways; either I must go on as the caravan went till I

came to Jarislaw, and then go off west for Narva and the gulph of Finland, and so either by sea or land to Dantzick, where I might possibly sell my China cargo to good advantage; or I must leave the caravan at a little town on the Dwina, from whence I had but six days by water to Archangel, and from thence might be sure of shipping, either to England, Holland, or Hamburgh.

Now, to go any of these journies in the winter would have been preposterous; for as to Dantzick, the Baltick would be frozen up, and I could not get passage; and to go by land in these countries was far less safe than among the Mogul Tartars; likewise to Archangel in October, all the ships would be gone from thence, and even the merchants who dwell there in summer, retire south to Moscow in the winter, when the ships are gone; so that I should have nothing but extremity of cold to encounter with, with a scarcity of provisions, and must lie there in an empty town all the winter. So that upon the whole I thought it much my better way to let the caravan go, and to make provision to winter where I was; viz. at Tobolski, in Siberia, in the latitude of 60 degrees, where I was sure of three things to wear out a cold winter with; viz. plenty of provisions, such as the country afforded, a warm house, with fuel enough, and excellent company; of all which I shall give a full account in its place.

I was now in a quite different climate from my beloved island, where I never felt cold, except when I had my ague; on the contrary, I had much to do to bear my cloaths on my back, and never made any fire but without doors, and my necessity, in dressing my food, &c. Now I made me three good vests, with large robes or gowns over them to hang down to the feet, and button close to the wrists, and all these lined with furs, to make them sufficiently warm.

As to a warm house, I must confess I greatly dislike our way in England, of making fires in every room in the house in open chimneys, which, when the fire was out, always kept the air in the room cold as the climate. But taking an apartment in a good house in the town, I ordered a chimney to be built like a furnace in the centre of
fix

six several rooms, like a stove; the funnel to carry the smoak went up one way, the door to come at the fire went in another, and all the rooms were kept equally warm, but no fire seen; like as they heat the bagnios in England.

By this means we had always the same climate in all the rooms, and an equal heat was preserved; and how cold soever it was without, it was always warm within; and yet we saw no fire, nor were ever incommoded with any smoke.

The most wonderful thing of all was, that it should be possible to meet with good company here, in a country so barbarous as that of the most northerly parts of Europe, near the Frozen Ocean, and within but a very few degrees of Nova Zembla.

But this being the country where the state criminals of Muscovy, as I observed before, are all banished, this city was full of noblemen, princes, gentlemen, colonels, and in short, all degrees of the nobility, gentry, soldiery, and courtiers of Muscovy. Here were the famous Prince Galilfken, or Galoffken, and his son; the old general Robostisky, and several other persons of note, and some ladies.

By means of my Scotch merchant, whom, nevertheless, I parted with here, I made an acquaintance with several of these gentlemen, and some of them of the first rank; and from these, in the long winter nights in which I stayed here, I received several agreeable visits. It was talking one night with a certain prince, one of the banished ministers of state belonging to the Czar of Muscovy, that my talk of my particular case began. He had been telling me abundance of fine things, of the greatness, the magnificence, and dominions, and the absolute power of the Emperor of the Russians. I interrupted him, and told him, I was a greater and more powerful prince than ever the Czar of Muscovy was, though my dominions were not so large, or my people so many. The Russian grandee looked a little surprized; and, fixing his eyes steadily upon me, began to wonder what I meant.

I told him, his wonder would cease when I had explained myself. First, I told him, I had the absolute disposal of the lives and fortunes of all my

subjects: that notwithstanding my absolute power, I had not one person disaffected to my government or to my person in all my dominions. He shook his head at that, and said, there, indeed, I out-did the Czar of Muscovy. I told him, that all the lands in my kingdom were my own, and all my subjects were not only my tenants, but tenants at will: that they would all fight for me to the last drop; and that never tyrant, for such I acknowledged myself to be, was ever so universally beloved, and yet so horribly feared, by his subjects.

After amusing them with these riddles in government for a while, I opened the case, and told them the story at large, of my living in the island, and how I managed both myself and the people there that were under me, just as I have since minuted it down. They were exceedingly taken with the story, and especially the prince, who told me with a sigh, that the true greatness of life was to be matter of ourselves; that he would not have exchanged such a state of life as mine to have been Czar of Muscovy; and that he found more felicity in the retirement he seemed to be banished to there, than ever he found in the highest authority he enjoyed in the court of his master the czar: that the height of human wisdom was to bring our tempers down to our circumstances, and to make a calm within, under the weight of the greatest storm without. When he came first hither, he said, he used to tear the hair from his head, and the cloaths from his back, as others had done before him; but a little time and consideration had made him look into himself, as well as round himself, to things without. That he found the mind of man, if it was but once brought to reflect upon the state of universal life, and how little this world was concerned in it's true felicity, was perfectly capable of making a felicity for itself, fully satisfying to itself, and suitable to it's own best ends and desires, with but very little assistance from the world. That air to breathe in, food to sustain life, cloaths for warmth, and liberty for exercise, in order to health, compleated, in his opinion, all that the world could do for us; and though the greatness, the authority, the riches, and the pleasures,

which some enjoyed in the world, and which he had enjoyed his share of, had much in them that was agreeable to us, yet he observed, that all those things chiefly gratified the coarsest of our affections; such as our ambition, our particular pride, our avarice, our vanity, and our sensuality, (all which were, indeed, the mere product of the worst part of man) were in themselves crimes, and had in them the seeds of all manner of crimes; but neither were related to, or concerned with, any of those virtues that constituted us wise men, or of those graces which distinguished us as Christians. That being now deprived of all the fancied felicity, which he enjoyed in the full exercise of all those vices, he said, he was at leisure to look upon the dark side of them, where he found all manner of deformity; and was now convinced, that virtue only makes a man truly wise, rich, and great, and preserves him in the way to a superior happiness in a future state; and in this, he said, they were more happy in their banishment than all their enemies were, who had the full possession of all the wealth and power that they (the banished) had left behind him.

'Nor, Sir,' said he, 'do I bring my mind to this politically, by the necessity of my circumstances, which some call miserable; but if I know any thing of myself, I would not go back, no, not though my master, the czar, should call me, and offer to reinstate me in all my former grandeur; I say, I would no more go back to it, than I believe my soul, when it shall be delivered from this prison of the body, and has had a taste of the glorious state beyond life, would come back to the gaol of flesh and blood it is now inclosed in, and leave Heaven to deal in the dirt and grime of human affairs.'

He spake this with so much warmth in his temper, so much earnestness and motion of his spirits, which were apparent in his countenance, that it was evident it was the true sense of his soul. And, indeed, there was no room to doubt his sincerity.

I told him, I once thought myself a kind of a monarch in my old station, of which I had given him an account; but that I thought he was not a monarch only, but a great conqueror;

for that he that has got a victory over his own exorbitant desires, and has the absolute dominion over himself, and whose reason entirely governs his will, is certainly greater than he that conquers a city. 'But, my lord,' said I, 'shall I take the liberty to ask you a question?'—'With all my heart,' said he. 'If the door of your liberty was opened,' said I, 'would not you take hold of it to deliver yourself from this exile?'

'Hold!' said he; 'your question is subtle, and requires some serious just distinctions, to give it a sincere answer; and I will give it you from the bottom of my heart. Nothing that I know of in this world would move me to deliver myself from this state of banishment, except these two: 1st, The enjoyment of my relations; and, 2dly, A little warmer climate. But I protest to you, that to go back to the pomp of the court, the glory, the power, the hurry of a minister of state; the wealth, the gaiety, and the pleasures, that is to say, follies of a courtier; if my master should send me word this moment, that he restores me to all he banished me from, I protest, if I know myself at all, I would not leave this wilderness, these deserts, and these frozen lakes, for the palace of Moscow.'

'But, my lord,' said I, 'perhaps you not only are banished from the pleasures of the court, and from the power, and authority, and wealth, you enjoyed before, but you may be absent too from some of the conveniences of life; your estate, perhaps, confiscated, and your effects plundered; and the supplies left you here may not be suitable to the ordinary demands of life.'

'Aye,' said he, 'that is as you suppose me to be a lord, or a prince, &c. So, indeed, I am; but you are now to consider me only as a man, a human creature, not at all distinguished from another; and so I can suffer no want, unless I should be visited with sickness and distempers. However, to put the question out of dispute; you see our manner: we are in this place five persons of rank; we live perfectly retired, as suited to a state of banishment; we have something rescued from the shipwreck

'wreck of our fortunes, which keeps us from the mere necessity of hunting for our food; but the poor soldiers who are here, without that help, live in as much plenty as we. They go into the woods, and catch fables and foxes; the labour of a month will maintain them a year; and as the way of living is not expensive, so it is not hard to get sufficient to ourselves. So that objection is out of doors.'

I have not room to give a full account of the most agreeable conversation I had with this truly great man; in all which he shewed that his mind was so inspired with a superior knowledge of things, so supported by religion, as well as by a vast share of wisdom, that his contempt of the world was really as much as he had expressed, and that he was always the same to the last; as will appear in the story I am going to tell.

I had been here eight months, and a dark, dreadful, winter I thought it to be; the cold was so intense, that I could not so much as look abroad, without being wrapped in furs, and a mask of fur before my face, or rather a hood, with only a hole for breath, and two for sight. The little daylight we had was, as we reckoned, for three months, not above five hours a day, and six at most; only that the snow lying on the ground continually, and the weather clear, it was never quite dark. Our horses were kept (or rather starved) under ground; and, as for our servants (for we hired servants here to look after our horses and selves) we had every now and then their fingers and toes to thaw and take care of, lest they should mortify and fall off.

It is true, within doors we were warm, the houses being close, the walls thick, the lights small, and the glass all double. Our food was chiefly the flesh of deer, dried and cured in the season; good bread enough, but baked as biscuits; dried fish of several sorts, and some flesh of mutton, and of buffaloes, which is pretty good beef. All the stores of provisions for the winter are laid up in the summer, and well cured: our drink was water mixed with *aqua vite* instead of brandy; and, for a treat, mead instead of wine; which, however, they have excellent good. The hunters, who venture abroad all weathers, fre-

quently brought us in fresh venison, very fat and good; and sometimes bears flesh, but we did not much care for the last. We had a good stock of tea, with which we treated our friends as above; and, in a word, we lived very cheerfully and well, all things considered.

It was now March, and the days grown considerably longer, and the weather at least tolerable; so other travellers began to prepare sledges to carry them over the snow, and to get things ready to be going: but my measures being fixed, as I said, for Archangel, and not for Muscovy or the Baltick, I made no motion, knowing very well, that the ships from the south do not set out for that part of the world till May or June; and that if I was there at the beginning of August, it would be as soon as any ships would be ready to go away; and therefore, I say, I made no haste to be gone, as others did: in a word, I saw a great many people; nay, all the travellers, go away before me. It seems, every year they go from thence to Moscow for trade; viz. to carry furs, and buy necessaries with them, which they bring back to furnish their shops: also others went on the same errand to Archangel; but then they also, being to come back again above eight hundred miles, went all out before me.

In short, about the latter end of May, I began to make all ready to pack up; and as I was doing this, it occurred to me, that seeing all these people were banished by the Czar of Muscovy to Siberia, and yet, when they came there, were at liberty to go whither they would; why did they not then go away to any part of the world wherever they thought fit. And I began to examine what should hinder them from making such an attempt.

But my wonder was over, when I entered upon that subject with the person I have mentioned, who answered me thus: 'Consider, first, Sir,' said he, 'the place where we are; and, secondly, the condition we are in; especially the generality of the people who are banished hither. We are surrounded,' said he, 'with stronger things than bars and bolts; on the north side is an unnavigable ocean, where ship never sailed, and boat never swam; neither, if we had both, could

‘ could we know whither to go with them. Every other way,’ said he, ‘ we have above a thousand miles to pass through the czar’s own dominions, and by ways utterly impassable, except by the roads made by the government, and through the towns garrisoned by his troops; so that we could neither pass undiscovered by the road, or subsist any other way; so that it is in vain to attempt it.’

I was silenced, indeed, at once, and found that they were in a prison, every jot as secure as if they had been locked up in the castle of Moscow: however, it came into my thoughts, that I might certainly be made an instrument to procure the escape of this excellent person, and that it was very easy for me to carry him away, there being no guard over him in the country; and as I was not going to Moscow, but to Archangel, and that I went in the nature of a caravan, by which I was not obliged to lie in the stationary towns in the desert, but could encamp every night where I would, we might easily pass uninterrupted to Archangel, where I could immediately secure him on board an English or Dutch ship, and carry him off safe along with me; and, as to his subsistence, and other particulars, that should be my care, till he should better supply himself.

He heard me very attentively, and looked earnestly on me all the while I spoke; nay, I could see in his very face, that what I said put his spirits into an exceeding ferment; his colour frequently changed, his eyes looked red, and his heart fluttered, that it might be even perceived in his countenance; nor could he immediately answer me when I had done, and, as it were, expected what he would say to it; and after he had paused a little, he embraced me, and said, ‘ How unhappy are we! unguided creatures as we are, that even our greatest acts of friendship are made snares to us, and we are made tempters of one another! My dear friend,’ said he, ‘ your offer is so sincere, has such kindness in it, is so disinterested in itself, and is so calculated for my advantage, that I must have very little knowledge of the world, if I did not both wonder at it, and acknowledge the obligation I have upon me to you for it. But did you believe I was

‘ sincere in what I have so often said to you of my contempt of the world? Did you believe I spoke my very soul to you, and that I had really maintained that degree of felicity here, that had placed me above all that the world could give me, or do for me? Did you believe I was sincere, when I told you I would not go back, if I was recalled even to be all that once I was in the court, and with the favour of the czar my master? Did you believe me, my friend, to be an honest man, or did you think me to be a boasting hypocrite?’ Here he stopped, as if he would hear what I would say; but, indeed, I soon after perceived, that he stopped because his spirits were in motion; his heart was full of struggles, and he could not go on. I was, I confess, astonished at the thing, as well as at the man and used some arguments with him to urge him to set himself free: that he ought to look upon this as a door opened by Heaven for his deliverance, and a summons by Providence, who has the care and good disposition of all events, to do himself good, and to render himself useful in the world.

He had by this time recovered himself. ‘ How do you know, Sir,’ said he, warmly, ‘ but that instead of a summons from Heaven, it may be a feint of another instrument, representing, in all the alluring colours, to me, the shew of felicity as a deliverance, which may in itself be my snare, and tend directly to my ruin? Here I am free from the temptation of returning to my former miserable greatness; there I am not sure, but that all the seeds of pride, ambition, avarice, and luxury, which I know remain in my nature, may revive and take root, and, in a word, again overwhelm me; and then the happy prisoner, whom you see now master of his soul’s liberty, shall be the miserable slave of his own senses, in the full of all personal liberty. Dear Sir, let me remain in this blessed confinement, banished from the crimes of life, rather than purchase a shew of freedom, at the expence of the liberty of my reason, and at the expence of the future happiness which now I have in my view, but shall then, I fear, quickly lose sight of.’

‘for I am but flesh, a man, a mere man; have passions and affections as likely to possess and overthrow me as any man. O! be not my friend and my tempter both together!’

If I was surprized before, I was quite dumb now, and stood silent, looking at him; and, indeed, admired what I saw: the struggle in his soul was so great, that though the weather was extremely cold, it put him into a most violent sweat, and I found he wanted to give vent to his mind; so I said a word or two, that I would leave him to consider of it, and wait on him again; and then I withdrew to my own apartment.

About two hours after, I heard somebody at or near the door of the room, and I was going to open the door; but he had opened it, and came in. ‘My dear friend,’ said he, ‘you had almost overset me, but I am recovered. Do not take it ill that I do not close with your offer; I assure you, it is not for want of a sense of the kindness of it in you; and I came to make the most sincere acknowledgment of it to you; but, I hope, I have got the victory over myself.’

‘My lord,’ said I, ‘I hope you are fully satisfied, that you did not resist the call of Heaven.’—‘Sir,’ said he, ‘if it had been from Heaven, the same Power would have influenced me to accept it; but, I hope, and am fully satisfied, that it is from Heaven that I decline it; and I have an infinite satisfaction in the parting, that you shall leave me an honest man still, though not a free man.’

I had nothing to do but to acquiesce, and make profession to him of my having no end in it, but a sincere desire to serve him. He embraced me very passionately, and assured me, he was sensible of that, and should always acknowledge it; and with that he offered me a very fine present of fables; too much, indeed, for me to accept from a man in his circumstances; and I would have avoided them, but he would not be refused.

The next morning I sent my servant to his lordship with a small present of tea, two pieces of China damask, and four little wedges of Japan gold, which did not all weigh above six ounces, or thereabouts; but were far short of the value of his fables: which, indeed,

when I came to England, I found worth near two hundred pounds. He accepted the tea, and one piece of the damask, and one of the pieces of gold, which had a fine stamp upon it of the Japan coinage, which I found he took for the rarity of it, but would not take any more; and sent word by my servant, that he desired to speak with me.

When I came to him, he told me, I knew what had passed between us, and hoped I would not move him any more in that affair; but that, since I made such a generous offer to him, he asked me, if I had kindness enough to offer the same to another person that he would name to me, in whom he had a great share of concern. I told him, that I could not say I inclined to do so much for any one but himself, for whom I had a particular value, and should have been glad to have been the instrument of his deliverance; however, if he would please to name the person to me, I would give him my answer, and hoped he would not be displeased with me, if he was with my answer. He told me, it was only his son, who, though I had not seen, yet was in the same condition with himself, and above two hundred miles from him, on the other side the Oby; but that, if I consented, he would send for him.

I made no hesitation, but told him I would do it. I made some ceremony in letting him understand, that it was wholly on his account; and that seeing I could not prevail on him, I would shew my respect to him, by my concern for his son. But these things are too tedious to repeat here. He sent away the next day for his son, and in about twenty days he came back with the messenger, bringing six or seven horses, loaded with very rich furs, and which, in the whole, amounted to a very great value.

His servants brought the horses into the town, but left the young lord at a distance till night, when he came incognito into our apartment, and his father presented him to me; and, in short, we concerted there the manner of our travelling, and every thing proper for the journey.

I had bought a considerable quantity of fables, black fox-skins, fine ermines, and such other furs as are very rich; I say, I had bought them in that city
for

for exchange for some of the goods brought from China; in particular, for the cloves and nutmegs, of which I sold the greatest part here, and the rest afterwards at Archangel, for a much better price than I could have done at London; and my partner, who was sensible of the profit, and whose business more particularly than mine was merchandize, was mightily pleased with our stay, on account of the traffick we made here.

It was in the beginning of June, when I left this remote place, a city, I believe, little heard of in the world; and indeed it is so far out of the road of commerce, that I know not how it should be much talked of. We were now come to a very small caravan, being only thirty-two horses and camels in all, and all of them passed for mine, though my new guest was proprietor of eleven of them. It was most natural also, that I should take more servants with me than I had before, and the young lord passed for my steward; what great man I passed for myself, I know not, neither did it concern me to enquire. We had here the worst and the largest desert to pass over that we met with in all the journey; indeed I call it the worst, because the way was very deep in some places, and very uneven in others: the best we had to say for it was, that we thought we had no troops of Tartars and robbers to fear, and that they never came on this side the River Oby, or at least but very seldom; but we found it otherwise.

My young lord had with him a faithful Muscovite servant, or rather a Siberian servant, who was perfectly acquainted with the country; and who led us by private roads, that we avoided coming into the principal towns and cities upon the great road, such as Tumen, Soloy-Kamoskoy, and several others; because the Muscovite garrisons which are kept there, are very curious and strict in their observations upon travellers, and searching lest any of the banished persons of note should make their escape that way into Muscovy. But by this means, as we were kept out of the cities, so our whole journey was a desert, and we were obliged to encamp and lie in our tents, when we might have had good accommodation in the cities on the way. This the young lord was so sensible of,

that he would not allow us to lie abroad, when we came to several cities on the way; but lay abroad himself, with his servant, in the woods, and met us always at the appointed places.

We were just entered Europe, having passed the river Kama, which, in these parts, is the boundary between Europe and Asia; and the first city on the European side was called Soloy-Kamoskoy, which is as much as to say, the great city on the River Kama: and here we thought to have seen some evident alteration in the people, their manners, their habit, their religion, and their business; but we were mistaken; for as we had a vast desert to pass, which, by relation, is near seven hundred miles long in some places, but not above two hundred miles over where we passed it; so, till we came past that horrible place, we found very little difference between that country and the Mogul Tartary; the people mostly Pagans, and little better than the savages of America; their houses and towns full of idols, and their way of living wholly barbarous, except in the cities, as above, and the villages near them, where they are Christians, as they call themselves, of the Greek church; but even these have their religion mingled with so many reliques of superstition, that it is scarce to be known in some places from mere sorcery and witchcraft.

In passing this forest, I thought, indeed, we must, after all our dangers were, in our imagination, escaped, as before, have been plundered and robbed, and perhaps murdered, by a troop of thieves; of what country they were, whether the roving bands of the Ostiachi, a kind of Tartars, or wild people on the banks of the Oby, had ranged thus far, or whether they were the fable-hunters of Siberia, I am yet at a loss to know; but they were all on horseback, carried bows and arrows, and were at first about five and forty in number. They came so near to us, as within about two musquet-shot; and, asking no questions, they surrounded us with their horse, and looked very earnestly upon us twice: at length they placed themselves just in our way; upon which we drew up in a little line before our camels, being not above sixteen men in all; and being drawn up thus, we halted; and sent out the
Siberian

Siberian servant who attended his lord, to see who they were. His master was the more willing to let him go, because he was not a little apprehensive that they were a Siberian troop sent out after him. The man came up near them with a flag of truce, and called to them; but though he spoke several of their languages, or dialects of languages rather, he could not understand a word they said; however, after some signs to him, not to come nearer to them at his peril; so he said he understood them to mean, offering to shoot at him if he advanced; the fellow came back no wiser than he went, only that by their dress, he said, he believed them to be some Tartars of Kalmuck, or of the Circassian hords; and that there must be more of them on the great desert, though he never heard that ever any of them were seen so far north before.

This was small comfort to us; however, we had no remedy. There was on our left-hand, at about a quarter of a mile's distance, a little grove or clump of trees, which stood close together, and very near the road. I immediately resolved we would advance to those trees, and fortify ourselves as well as we could there; for, first, I considered, that the trees would in a great measure cover us from their arrows; and, in the next place, they could not come to charge us in a body. It was, indeed, my old Portuguese pilot who proposed it; and who had this excellency attending him, namely, that he was always readiest and most apt to direct and encourage us in cases of the most danger. We advanced immediately with what speed we could, and gained that little wood; the Tartars or thieves, for we knew not what to call them, keeping their stand, and not attempting to hinder us. When we came thither, we found, to our great satisfaction, that it was a swampy, springy piece of ground; and, on the other side, a very great spring of water, which, running out in a little rill or brook, was a little farther joined by another of the like bigness, and was, in short, the head or source of a considerable river, called afterwards the Wirtska. The trees which grew about this spring, were not in all above two hundred, but were very large, and stood pretty thick; so that as soon as we got in, we saw ourselves per-

fectly safe from the enemy, unless they alighted and attacked us on foot.

But to make this more difficult, our Portuguese, with indefatigable application, cut down great arms of the trees, and laid them hanging, not cut quite off, from one tree to another, so that he made a continued fence, almost round us.

We staid here, waiting the motion of the enemy, some hours, without perceiving they made any offer to stir; when about two hours before night they came down directly upon us; and, though we had not perceived it, we found they had been joined by some more of the same, so that they were near fourscore horse, whereof, however, we fancied some were women. They came on till they were within half a shot of our little wood, when we fired one musquet without ball, and called to them in the Russian tongue to know what they wanted, and bid them keep off; but, as if they knew nothing of what we said, they came on with a double fury directly up to the wood-side, not imagining we were so barricadoed that they could not break in. Our old pilot was our captain, as well as he had been our engineer; and desired of us not to fire upon them till they came within pistol-shot, that we might be sure to kill; and that when we did fire, we should be sure to take good aim. We bade him give the word of command; which he delayed so long, that they were, some of them, within two pikes length of us when we fired.

We aimed so true (or Providence directed our shot so sure) that we killed fourteen of them at the first volley, and wounded several others, as also several of their horses; for we had all of us loaded our pieces with two or three bullets apiece at least.

They were terribly surprized with our fire, and retreated immediately about one hundred rods from us; in which time we loaded our pieces again; and, seeing them keep that distance, we sallied out, and caught four or five of their horses, whose riders, we supposed, were killed; and coming up to the dead, we could easily perceive they were Tartars, but knew not from what country, or how they came to make an excursion of such an unusual length.

About an hour after, they made a motion to attack us again, and rode round our little wood, to see where else they might break in; but finding us always ready to face them, they went off again, and we resolved not to stir from the place for that night.

We slept little, you may be sure; but spent the most part of the night in strengthening our situation, and barricading the entrances into the wood; and keeping a strict watch, we waited for day-light, and when it came, it gave us a very unwelcome discovery indeed; for the enemy, who we thought were discouraged with the reception they had met with, were now increased to no less than three hundred, and had set up eleven or twelve huts and tents, as if they were resolved to besiege us; and this little camp they had pitched was upon the open plain, at about three quarters of a mile from us. We were, indeed, surprized at this discovery; and now, I confess, I gave myself over for lost, and all that I had. The loss of my effects did not lie so near me (though they were very considerable) as the thoughts of falling into the hands of such barbarians at the latter end of my journey, after so many difficulties and hazards as I had gone through; and even in sight of our port, where we expected safety and deliverance. As for my partner, he was raging: he declared, that to lose his goods would be his ruin; and he would rather die than be starved; and he was for fighting to the last drop.

The young lord, as gallant as ever flesh shewed itself, was for fighting to the last drop also; and my old pilot was of the opinion we were able to resist them all, in the situation we then were in: and thus we spent the day in debates of what we should do. But, towards evening, we found that the number of our enemies still increased: perhaps, as they were abroad in several parties for prey, the first had sent out scouts to call for help, and to acquaint them of the booty; and we did not know but by the morning they might still be a greater number; so I began to enquire of those people we had brought from Tobolski, if there was no other, or more private ways, by which we might avoid them in the night, and perhaps either retreat to

some town, or get help to guard us over the desert.

The Siberian, who was servant to the young lord, told us, if we designed to avoid them, and not fight, he would engage to carry us off in the night to a way that went north towards the river Petraz, by which he made no question but we might get away, and the Tartars never the wiser; but he said, his lord had told him he would not return, but would rather chuse to fight. I told him, he mistook his lord; for that he was too wise a man to love fighting for the sake of it; that I knew his lord was brave enough, by what he had shewed already; but that his lord knew better than to desire to have seventeen or eighteen men fight five hundred, unless an unavoidable necessity forced them to it; and that if he thought it possible for us to escape in the night, we had nothing else to do but to attempt it. He answered, if his lord gave him such order, he would lose his life if he did not perform it. We soon brought his lord to give that order, though privately, and we immediately prepared for the putting it in practice.

And first, as soon as it began to be dark, we kindled a fire in our little camp, which we kept burning, and prepared so as to make it burn all night, that the Tartars might conclude we were still there; but as soon as it was dark, that is to say, so as we could see the stars, (for our guide would not stir before) having all our horses and camels ready loaden, we followed our new guide, who I soon found steered himself by the pole, or north-star, all the country being level for a long way.

After we had travelled two hours very hard, it began to be lighter still, not that it was quite dark all night, but the moon began to rise, so that in short it was rather lighter than we wished it to be; but by six o'clock next morning we were gotten near forty miles, though the truth is, we almost spoiled our horses. Here we found a Russian village, named Kirmazinkoy, where we rested, and heard nothing of the Calmuck Tartars that day. About two hours before night we set out again, and travelled till eight the next morning, though not quite so

hastily

hastily as before; and about seven o'clock we passed a little river called Kirtzo, and came to a good large town inhabited by Russians, and very populous, called Ozomys. There we heard that several troops or hords of Calmucks had been abroad upon the desert, but that we were now compleatly out of danger of them, which was to our great satisfaction you may be sure. Here we were obliged to get some fresh horses, and having need enough of rest, we staid five days; and my partner and I agreed to give the honest Siberian who brought us thither the value of ten pistoles for his conducting us.

In five days more we came to Veusima, upon the River Witzogda, which running into the River Dwina, we were there very happily near the end of our travels by land, that river being navigable in seven days passage to Archangel. From hence we came to Lawrenikoy, where the river joins, the 3d of July; and provided ourselves with two luggage boats and a barge for our convenience. We embarked the 7th, and arrived all safe at Archangel the 18th, having been a year, five months, and three days on the journey, including our stay of eight months and odd days at Tobolski.

We were obliged to stay at this place six weeks for the arrival of the ships, and must have tarried longer had not a Hamburger come in above a month sooner than any of the English ships; when, after some consideration that the city of Hamburg might happen to be as good a market for our goods as London, we all took freight with him; and having put our goods on board, it was most natural for me to put my steward on board to take care of them; by which means my young lord had a sufficient opportu-

nity to conceal himself, never coming on shore again, in all the time we staid there; and this he did that he might not be seen in the city, where some of the Moscow merchants would certainly have seen and discovered him.

We sailed from Archangel the 20th of August the same year; and, after no extraordinary bad voyage, arrived in the Elbe the 13th of September. Here my partner and I found a very good sale for our goods, as well those of China as the fables, &c. of Siberia; and dividing the produce of our effects, my share amounted to 3475l. 17s. 3d. notwithstanding so many losses we had sustained, and charges we had been at; only remembering that I had included in this about six hundred pounds worth of diamonds which I had purchased at Bengal.

Here the young lord took his leave of us, and went up the Elbe, in order to go to the court of Vienna, where he resolved to seek protection, and where he could correspond with those of his father's friends who were left alive. He did not part without all the testimonies he could give of gratitude for the service I had done him, and his sense of my kindness to the prince his father.

To conclude, having staid near four months in Hamburg, I came from thence over land to the Hague, where I embarked in the packet, and arrived in London the 10th of January 1705, having been gone from England ten years and nine months.

And here, resolving to harass myself no more, I am preparing for a longer journey than all these, having lived seventy-two years a life of infinite variety, and learned sufficiently to know the value of retirement, and the blessing of ending our days in peace.

1875

4. 20. 84.

10572

